1
2
3
4
5
6
7
8
9
10
11
12
13
14
15
16
17
18
19
20
21
22
23
24
25
26
27
28

UNITED STATES DISTRICT COURT
FOR THE NORTHERN DISTRICT OF TEXAS, FORT WORTH DIVISION

KNIFE RIGHTS, INC.; RUSSELL ARNOLD; JEFFREY FOLLODER; RGA AUCTION SOLUTION d.b.a. FIREARM SOLUTIONS; AND MOD SPECIALTIES,

Plaintiffs,

v.

MERRICK B. GARLAND, Attorney General of the United States; UNITED STATES DEPARTMENT OF JUSTICE,

Defendants.

Case No. 4:23-cv-00547-O

Hon. Judge Reed O'Connor

APPENDIX IN SUPPORT OF PLAINTIFFS' MOTION FOR SUMMARY JUDGMENT

1
2
3
4
5
6
7
8
9
10
11
12
13
14
15
16
17
18
19
20
21
22
23
24
25
26
27
28

APPENDIX INDEX

Exhibit	Document	Author	Doc. No.
A	15 U.S.C. Ch. 29, Title 15, Sections 1241-1245	Legal Citation	000001
B	Declaration of Russell Arnold in Support of Plaintiffs' Motion for Summary Judgment	Russell Arnold	000005
C	Declaration of Jeffrey Folloder in Support of Plaintiffs' Motion for Summary Judgment	Jeffrey Folloder	000010
D	Declaration of Doug Ritter in Support of Plaintiffs' Motion for Summary Judgement	Doug Ritter	000014
E	Excerpts from THE COLLECTOR'S GUIDE TO SWITCHBLADE KNIVES 30 (2001)	Richard V. Langston	000020
F	Excerpts from SWITCHBLADES OF ITALY 7-8 (2003)	TIM ZINSER ET. AL.,	000102
G	Excerpts from Pocket Knives: The Collector's Guide to Identifying, Buying, and Enjoying Vintage Pocket Knives	Bernard Levine	000108
H	National Switchblade Laws Update	Evan Nappen	000114
I	Pocketknife Definition & Meaning: Merrium-Webster	Merrium-Webster Dictionary	000120
J	Excerpts from American Knives: The First History and Collectors' Guide	Harold L. Peterson	000124

K	Knives and the Second Amendment	David B. Kopel, Clayton E. Cramer, & Joseph Olson	000130
L	Excerpts from Swords & Blades of the American Revolution	George G. Neumann	000180
M	Excerpts from Arms and Armor in Early Colonial America 1526-1783	Harold L. Peterson	000186
N	Excerpts from Knife Bible: History & Modern Knowledge	A.J. Cardenal	000192
O	The Second Amendment Rights of Young Adults	David B. Kopel & Joseph G.S. Greenlee	000201
P	Senate Report No. 1429, Juvenile Delinquency, Report of the Committee of the Judiciary United States Senate (85th Cong., 2d sess.) Made by its Subcommittee on Juvenile Delinquency Pursuant to S. Res. 52 as extended (85th Cong., 1st sess.) Together with Individual Views	Senate Report	000321
Q	Hearing Before the Subcommittee to Investigate Juvenile Delinquency of the Committee on the Judiciary United States Senate Eighty-Fifth Congress First Session, Pursuant to S.Res.52 Eighty-Fifth Congress Investigation of Juvenile Delinquency in the United States, December 4, 1957	Subcommittee Hearing Report	000353
R	Senate Report No. 1980	Senate Report	000551
S	Criminal Use of Switchblades	Paul A. Clark	000567

1
2
3
4
5
6
7
8
9
10
11
12
13
14
15
16
17
18
19
20
21
22
23
24
25
26
27
28

T	Excerpts from Antique American Switchblades	Mark Erickson	000623
U	History of Latama Cutlery	Latama Cutlery	000627
V	Declaration of Ken Onion in Support of Plaintiffs' Motion for Summary Judgment	Ken Onion	000636
W	Declaration of Bruce Voyles in Support of Plaintiffs' Motion for Summary Judgment	Bruce Voyles	000747
X	Declaration of LeRoi Price in Support of Plaintiffs' Motion for Summary Judgment	LeRoi Price	000756
Y	Declaration of Mark D. Zalesky in Support of Plaintiffs' Motion for Summary Judgment	Mark D. Zalesky	000762
Z	Declaration of Robert Terzuola in Support of Plaintiffs' Motion for Summary Judgment	Robert Terzuola	000768
AA	Declaration of Ernest Emerson in Support of Plaintiffs' Motion for Summary Judgment	Ernest Emerson	000773
AB	The History of Bans on Types of Arms Before 1900	David B. Kopel & Joseph G.S. Greenlee	000780
AC	*Miller v. Bonta* "Defendants Survey of Relevant Statutes (Pre-Founding – 1888)	State of California, Office of the Attorney General	000955

1
2
3
4
5
6
7
8
9
10
11
12
13
14
15
16
17
18
19
20
21
22
23
24
25
26
27
28

October 6, 2023

Respectfully submitted,

DILLON LAW GROUP, APC

/s/ John W. Dillon

John W. Dillon
California Bar No. 296788
Pro Hac Vice
jdillon@dillonlawgp.com
DILLON LAW GROUP APC
2647 Gateway Road
Suite 105, No. 255
Carlsbad, California 92009
Phone: (760) 642-7150
Fax: (760) 642-7151

AND

/s/ R. Brent Cooper

R. Brent Cooper
Texas Bar No. 04783250
brent.cooper@cooperscully.com
Benjamin D. Passey
Texas Bar No. 24125681)
ben.passey@cooperscully.com
COOPER & SCULLY, P.C.
900 Jackson Street, Suite 100
Dallas, Texas 75202
Phone: (214) 712-9500
Fax: (214) 712-9540

Attorney for Plaintiffs

EXHIBIT A

15 USC Ch. 29: MANUFACTURE, TRANSPORTATION, OR DISTRIBUTION OF SWITCHBLADE KNIVES

From Title 15—COMMERCE AND TRADE

CHAPTER 29—MANUFACTURE, TRANSPORTATION, OR DISTRIBUTION OF SWITCHBLADE KNIVES

Sec.
1241. Definitions.
1242. Introduction, manufacture for introduction, transportation or distribution in interstate commerce; penalty.
1243. Manufacture, sale, or possession within specific jurisdictions; penalty.
1244. Exceptions.
1245. Ballistic knives.

§1241. Definitions

As used in this chapter—

(a) The term "interstate commerce" means commerce between any State, Territory, possession of the United States, or the District of Columbia, and any place outside thereof.

(b) The term "switchblade knife" means any knife having a blade which opens automatically—

(1) by hand pressure applied to a button or other device in the handle of the knife, or

(2) by operation of inertia, gravity, or both.

(Pub. L. 85–623, §1, Aug. 12, 1958, 72 Stat. 562.)

Editorial Notes

References in Text

This chapter, referred to in text, was in the original "this Act", meaning Pub. L. 85–623, which enacted sections 1241 to 1244 of this title and amended section 1716 of Title 18, Crimes and Criminal Procedure.

Statutory Notes and Related Subsidiaries

Effective Date

Pub. L. 85–623, §6, Aug. 12, 1958, 72 Stat. 563, provided that: "This Act [enacting this chapter and amending section 1716 of Title 18, Crimes and Criminal Procedure] shall take effect on the sixtieth day after the date of its enactment [Aug. 12, 1958]."

Short Title of 1986 Amendment

Pub. L. 99–570, title X, §10001, Oct. 27, 1986, 100 Stat. 3207–166, provided that: "This title [enacting section 1245 of this title, amending section 1716 of Title 18, Crimes and Criminal Procedure, and enacting provisions set out as a note under section 1245 of this title] may be cited as the 'Ballistic Knife Prohibition Act of 1986'."

Short Title

Pub. L. 85–623, Aug. 12, 1958, 72 Stat. 562, which enacted this chapter, is popularly known as the "Federal Switchblade Act".

§1242. Introduction, manufacture for introduction, transportation or distribution in interstate commerce; penalty

Whoever knowingly introduces, or manufactures for introduction, into interstate commerce, or transports or distributes in interstate commerce, any switchblade knife, shall be fined not more than $2,000 or imprisoned not more than five years, or both.

(Pub. L. 85–623, §2, Aug. 12, 1958, 72 Stat. 562.)

Statutory Notes and Related Subsidiaries

Effective Date

Section effective on the sixtieth day after Aug. 12, 1958, see section 6 of Pub. L. 85–623, set out as a note under section 1241 of this title.

§1243. Manufacture, sale, or possession within specific jurisdictions; penalty

Whoever, within any Territory or possession of the United States, within Indian country (as defined in section 1151 of title 18), or within the special maritime and territorial jurisdiction of the United States (as defined in section 7 of title 18), manufactures, sells, or possesses any switchblade knife, shall be fined not more than $2,000 or imprisoned not more than five years, or both.

(Pub. L. 85–623, §3, Aug. 12, 1958, 72 Stat. 562.)

Statutory Notes and Related Subsidiaries

Effective Date

Section effective on the sixtieth day after Aug. 12, 1958, see section 6 of Pub. L. 85–623, set out as a note under section 1241 of this title.

§1244. Exceptions

Sections 1242 and 1243 of this title shall not apply to—

(1) any common carrier or contract carrier, with respect to any switchblade knife shipped, transported, or delivered for shipment in interstate commerce in the ordinary course of business;

(2) the manufacture, sale, transportation, distribution, possession, or introduction into interstate commerce, of switchblade knives pursuant to contract with the Armed Forces;

(3) the Armed Forces or any member or employee thereof acting in the performance of his duty;

(4) the possession, and transportation upon his person, of any switchblade knife with a blade three inches or less in length by any individual who has only one arm; or

(5) a knife that contains a spring, detent, or other mechanism designed to create a bias toward closure of the blade and that requires exertion applied to the blade by hand, wrist, or arm to overcome the bias toward closure to assist in opening the knife.

(Pub. L. 85–623, §4, Aug. 12, 1958, 72 Stat. 562; Pub. L. 111–83, title V, §562, Oct. 28, 2009, 123 Stat. 2183.)

Editorial Notes

Amendments

2009—Par. (5). Pub. L. 111–83 added par. (5).

STATUTORY NOTES AND RELATED SUBSIDIARIES

EFFECTIVE DATE

Section effective on the sixtieth day after Aug. 12, 1958, see section 6 of Pub. L. 85–623, set out as a note under section 1241 of this title.

§1245. Ballistic knives

(a) Prohibition and penalties for possession, manufacture, sale, or importation

Whoever in or affecting interstate commerce, within any Territory or possession of the United States, within Indian country (as defined in section 1151 of title 18), or within the special maritime and territorial jurisdiction of the United States (as defined in section 7 of title 18), knowingly possesses, manufactures, sells, or imports a ballistic knife shall be fined as provided in title 18, or imprisoned not more than ten years, or both.

(b) Prohibition and penalties for possession or use during commission of Federal crime of violence

Whoever possesses or uses a ballistic knife in the commission of a Federal crime of violence shall be fined as provided in title 18, or imprisoned not less than five years and not more than ten years, or both.

(c) Exceptions

The exceptions provided in paragraphs (1), (2), and (3) of section 1244 of this title with respect to switchblade knives shall apply to ballistic knives under subsection (a) of this section.

(d) "Ballistic knife" defined

As used in this section, the term "ballistic knife" means a knife with a detachable blade that is propelled by a spring-operated mechanism.

(Pub. L. 85–623, §7, as added Pub. L. 99–570, title X, §10002, Oct. 27, 1986, 100 Stat. 3207–167; amended Pub. L. 100–690, title VI, §6472, Nov. 18, 1988, 102 Stat. 4379.)

EDITORIAL NOTES

AMENDMENTS

1988—Subsec. (a). Pub. L. 100–690, §6472(1), substituted "in or affecting interstate commerce, within any Territory or possession of the United States, within Indian country (as defined in section 1151 of title 18), or within the special maritime and territorial jurisdiction of the United States (as defined in section 7 of title 18), knowingly possesses, manufactures, sells, or imports" for "knowingly possesses, manufactures, sells, or imports".

Subsec. (b). Pub. L. 100–690, §6472(2), struck out "or State" after "Federal".

STATUTORY NOTES AND RELATED SUBSIDIARIES

EFFECTIVE DATE

Pub. L. 99–570, title X, §10004, Oct. 27, 1986, 100 Stat. 3207–167, provided that: "The amendments made by this title [enacting this section, amending section 1716 of Title 18, Crimes and Criminal Procedure, and enacting provisions set out as a note under section 1241 of this title] shall take effect 30 days after the date of enactment of this title [Oct. 27, 1986]."

EXHIBIT B

1
2
3
4
5
6
7
8
9
10
11
12
13
14
15
16
17
18
19
20
21
22
23
24
25
26
27
28

UNITED STATES DISTRICT COURT

FOR THE NORTHERN DISTRICT OF TEXAS, FORT WORTH DIVISION

KNIFE RIGHTS, INC.; RUSSELL ARNOLD; JEFFREY FOLLODER; RGA AUCTION SOLUTION d.b.a. FIREARM SOLUTIONS; AND MOD SPECIALTIES,

Plaintiffs,

v.

MERRICK B. GARLAND, Attorney General of the United States; UNITED STATES DEPARTMENT OF JUSTICE,

Defendants.

Case No. 4:23-cv-00547-O

Hon. Judge Reed O'Connor

DECLARATION OF PLAINTIFF RUSSELL GORDON ARNOLD IN SUPPORT OF PLAINTIFFS' MOTION FOR SUMMARY JUDGMENT

1
2
3
4
5
6
7
8
9
10
11
12
13
14
15
16
17
18
19
20
21
22
23
24
25
26
27
28

DECLARATION OF RUSSELL GORDON ARNOLD

I, Russell Gordon Arnold, declare as follows:

1. I am a party in the above-titled action. I am over the age of 18, have personal knowledge of the facts referred to in this declaration, and am competent to testify to the matters stated below. My declaration is executed in support of Plaintiffs' motion for summary judgment.

2. I am an adult natural person, a citizen of the United States, and a resident of Mansfield, Texas. I am a peaceable, non-violent individual who is eligible to keep and bear arms under State and federal law.

3. I am also the owner and operator of RGA Auction Services, d.b.a. Firearms Solutions. Firearm Solutions is a federally licensed dealer in firearms in located at 2300 Matlock Road, Ste. 3, Mansfield, Texas. In the regular course of business, Firearms Solutions buys, sells, transfers in firearms and firearms accessories in accordance with federal and state law. As a part of our retail sales, Firearms Solutions also sells various forms of knives to our customers.

4. As a part of our retail business, Firearm Solutions owns and operates an online storefront in addition to the brick-and-mortar business. The online storefront is found at www.nsg-firearms.com.

5. As part of its business activities, Firearm Solutions wishes and intends to acquire, possess, carry, and offer for sale, transfer, sell, and distribute through interstate commerce, automatically opening knives for lawful purposes, including self-defense through its brick-and-mortar and online storefronts to all of its law-abiding customers. As present, Firearm Solutions does not acquire, possess, carry, and offer for sale, transfer, sell, and distribute through interstate commerce, automatically opening knives for fear of being criminally prosecuted for violating the Federal Switchblade Act.

1
2
3
4
5
6
7
8
9
10
11
12
13
14
15
16
17
18
19
20
21
22
23
24
25
26
27
28

6. As a part of my business, I would acquire, possess, carry, offer for sale, transfer, sell, and distribute through interstate commerce, automatically opening knives through my brick-and-mortar and online storefronts to all of my law-abiding customers but for the Defendants' enforcement of the policies, practices, and customs at issue in this case and the reasonable fear of arrest, prosecution, and other penalties, including and not limited to fines, imprisonment, loss of property, and the loss of the license to sell firearms for violation of laws prohibiting the introduction, or manufacture for introduction, into interstate commerce, or transportation or distribution in interstate commerce, any automatically opening knives proscribed under the Federal Switchblade Act.

7. I am an active member of Plaintiff Knife Rights, Inc. and am taking part in this litigation to protect my Second Amendment right as well as the Second Amendment rights of similar retailers, my customers, and would-be customers who wish to lawfully purchase, acquire, possess, carry, offer for sale, transfer, sell, and distribute through interstate commerce, automatically opening knives but are prohibited from doing so because of Defendants' enforcement of the Federal Switchblade Act.

8. It is my belief that Defendants' enforcement of the Federal Knife Ban unconstitutionally infringes on my fundamental rights and other similarly situated individuals who reside in Texas and other States within the United States to keep and bear common, constitutionally protected arms — including automatic opening knives or switchblades (as defined) through its restriction on interstate commerce.

9. Through Plaintiffs Complaint and Motion for Summary Judgment, I respectfully request that this Court enter judgment in Plaintiffs favor and grant Plaintiffs motion for Summary Judgment fully or in a way the Court deems proper.

I declare under penalty of perjury under the laws of the United States that the foregoing is true and correct, and this declaration was executed on September 19, 2023, in Mansfield, Texas.

Russell Gordon Arnold

EXHIBIT C

1
2
3
4
5
6
7
8
9
10
11
12
13
14
15
16
17
18
19
20
21
22
23
24
25
26
27
28

UNITED STATES DISTRICT COURT
FOR THE NORTHERN DISTRICT OF TEXAS, FORT WORTH DIVISION

KNIFE RIGHTS, INC.; RUSSELL ARNOLD; JEFFREY FOLLODER; RGA AUCTION SOLUTION d.b.a. FIREARM SOLUTIONS; AND MOD SPECIALTIES, Plaintiffs, v. MERRICK B. GARLAND, Attorney General of the United States; UNITED STATES DEPARTMENT OF JUSTICE, Defendants.	Case No. 4:23-cv-00547-O Hon. Judge Reed O'Connor

DECLARATION OF PLAINTIFF JEFFREY E. FOLLODER IN SUPPORT OF PLAINTIFFS' MOTION FOR SUMMARY JUDGMENT

1
2
3
4
5
6
7
8
9
10
11
12
13
14
15
16
17
18
19
20
21
22
23
24
25
26
27
28

DECLARATION OF JEFFREY E. FOLLODER

I, Jeffrey E. Folloder, declare as follows:

1. I am a party in the above-titled action. I am over the age of 18, have personal knowledge of the facts referred to in this declaration, and am competent to testify to the matters stated below. My declaration is executed in support of Plaintiffs' motion for summary judgment.

2. I am an adult natural person, a citizen of the United States, and a resident of Katy, Texas. I am a peaceable, non-violent individual who is eligible to keep and bear arms under State and federal law.

3. I am also the owner and operator of MOD Specialties, Inc. d.b.a. "MOD Specialties." MOD Specialties is a federally licensed dealer in firearms, located at 20603 Big Wells Dr., Katy, Texas. In the regular course of business, MOD Specialties buys, sells, transfers firearms and firearms accessories in accordance with federal and state law. As a part of our retail sales, MOD Specialties also sells various forms of knives to our customers.

4. As part of its business activities, MOD Specialties wishes and intends to acquire, possess, carry, and offer for sale, transfer, sell, and distribute through interstate commerce, automatically opening knives for lawful purposes, including self-defense through its storefront to all of its law-abiding customers. As present, MOD Specialties does not acquire, possess, carry, and offer for sale, transfer, sell, and distribute through interstate commerce, automatically opening knives for fear of being criminally prosecuted for violating the Federal Switchblade Act.

5. As a part of my business, I would acquire, possess, carry, offer for sale, transfer, sell, and distribute through interstate commerce, automatically opening knives through my storefront to all of my law-abiding customers but for the Defendants' enforcement of the policies, practices, and customs at issue in this case and the reasonable fear of arrest, prosecution, and other penalties, including

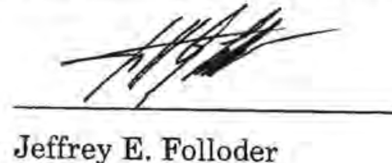
and not limited to fines, imprisonment, loss of property, and the loss of the license to sell firearms for violation of laws prohibiting the introduction, or manufacture for introduction, into interstate commerce, or transportation or distribution in interstate commerce, any automatically opening knives proscribed under the Federal Switchblade Act.

6. I am an active member of Plaintiff Knife Rights, Inc. and am taking part in this litigation to protect my Second Amendment right as well as the Second Amendment rights of similar retailers, my customers, and would-be customers who wish to lawfully purchase, acquire, possess, carry, offer for sale, transfer, sell, and distribute through interstate commerce, automatically opening knives but are prohibited from doing so because of Defendants' enforcement of the Federal Switchblade Act.

7. It is my belief that Defendants' enforcement of the Federal Knife Ban unconstitutionally infringes on my fundamental rights and other similarly situated individuals who reside in Texas and other States within the United States to keep and bear common, constitutionally protected arms — including automatic opening knives or switchblades (as defined) through its restriction on interstate commerce.

8. Through Plaintiffs Complaint and Motion for Summary Judgment, I respectfully request that this Court enter judgment in Plaintiffs favor and grant Plaintiffs motion for Summary Judgment fully or in a way the Court deems proper.

I declare under penalty of perjury under the laws of the United States that the foregoing is true and correct, and this declaration was executed on September 19, 2023, in Katy, Texas.



Jeffrey E. Folloder

EXHIBIT D

1 UNITED STATES DISTRICT COURT
2 FOR THE NORTHERN DISTRICT OF TEXAS, FORT WORTH DIVISION
3
4
5
6
7
8
9
10
11
12
13
14
15
16
17
18
19
20
21
22
23
24
25
26
27
28

KNIFE RIGHTS, INC.; RUSSELL ARNOLD; JEFFREY FOLLODER; RGA AUCTION SOLUTION d.b.a. FIREARM SOLUTIONS; AND MOD SPECIALTIES, Plaintiffs, v. MERRICK B. GARLAND, Attorney General of the United States; UNITED STATES DEPARTMENT OF JUSTICE, Defendants.	Case No. 4:23-cv-00547-O Hon. Judge Reed O'Connor

DECLARATION OF DOUG RITTER IN SUPPORT OF PLAINTIFFS' MOTION FOR SUMMARY JUDGMENT

1 **DECLARATION OF DOUG RITTER**

2 I, Doug Ritter, declare as follows:

3 1. I am not a party in the above-titled action. I am over the age of 18, have
4 personal knowledge of the facts referred to in this declaration, and am competent to
5 testify to the matters stated below. This declaration is executed in support of
6 Plaintiffs' motion for summary judgment.

7 2. I am the Chairman and Executive Director of Knife Rights Foundation,
8 Inc. (Knife Rights).

9 3. Plaintiff Knife Rights, Inc. ("Knife Rights") is a section 501(c)(4) member
10 advocacy organization incorporated under the laws of Arizona with a primary place of
11 business in Gilbert, Arizona. Knife Rights serves its members, supporters, and the
12 public through efforts to defend and advance the right to keep and bear bladed arms.
13 Knife Rights has members and supporters in Texas and states throughout the
14 Country. The interests that Knife Rights seeks to protect in this lawsuit are germane
15 to the organization's purposes. Knife Rights sues on behalf of its members, including
16 the Individual Plaintiffs Russell Arnold and Jeffrey Folloder. Knife Rights, Inc.
17 members include peaceable, law-abiding individuals in Texas that wish to exercise
18 their right to keep and bear arms through the manufacture for sale, sale, transfer,
19 acquisition, purchase, possession, and carriage of automatically opening knives
20 through interstate commerce prohibited under Defendants' enforcement of the
21 Federal Knife Ban.

22 4. Knife Rights also serves its supporters and the public through the
23 promotion of education regarding state and federal knife laws and regulations and the
24 defense and protection of the civil rights of knife owners nationwide. As a part of Knife
25 Rights' efforts to educate knife owners, Knife Rights compiles and reviews the various
26 knife laws and regulations in each state. This compendium helps to ensure that knife
27 owners remain in compliance with federal and states' laws with regard to possessing
28 and carrying various types of knives.

1 5. Knife Rights has published a downloadable app, "LegalBlade," which
2 summarizes each states' knife laws by "Knife Type" and provides the user with
3 information on whether specific knives are legal for "Possession," "Open Carry," and
4 "Concealed Carry" in each state. LegalBlade also provides direct links to each state's
5 relevant knife/weapon statutes.

6 6. As Chairman and Executive Director of Knife Rights and based on my
7 work with various state legislatures, I am familiar with the current status of the
8 federal and state knife laws and regulations in the United States.

9 7. As Chairman and Executive Director of Knife Rights, I have also
10 reviewed the relevant federal statutes that pertain to automatically opening knives or
11 "switchblades." Specifically, I am familiar with the Federal Switchblade Act, 15 U.S.C.
12 §§ 1241-1245, enacted in 1958 as Pub. Law 85-623, and its prohibition on the
13 introduction, manufacture for introduction, transportation, or distribution into
14 interstate commerce of switchblade knives, as defined under 15 U.S.C. § 1241(b).

15 8. Applying the Federal Switchblade Act's definition of "switchblade"
16 pursuant to 15 U.S.C. 1241(b), I visited the websites of various knife manufacturers
17 that manufacture and sell automatic knives throughout the United States.

18 9. Specifically, I visited the following knife manufacturers websites: (a)
19 Bear & Son, (b) Benchmade Knife Co., (c) Buck Knives, (d) Guardian Tactical, (e)
20 Gerber, (f) Hogue, (g) Kershaw, (h) Microtech Knives, (i) Pro-Tech Knives, (j) SOG
21 Knives, (k) Ashville/Paragon Knives, (l) Boker Knives, (m) BRS Bladerunners
22 Systems, (n) Medford Knife & Tool, (o) Colonial Knife, (p) Heretic Knives, (q) Rick
23 Hinderer Knives, (r) Shrade, (s) Spartan Blades, (t) Spyderco, (u) CobraTec, (v)
24 Piranha, (w) RavenCrest Tactical, (x) Templer Knife, (y) Benchmark[1], and (z) Heed
25
26

27 [1] The knife manufacturers Piranha and Benchmark do not have their own websites.
28 However, in my review of online knife retailers I found several models of knives from

1 Industries.

2 10. All of the companies listed above offer knives for sale and distribution
3 that fall under the definition of "switchblade" under 15 U.S.C. 1241(b).

4 11. Based on my review of the above-named knife manufacturer websites,
5 there are at least 26 U.S. based manufacturer/retailers of automatically opening
6 knives that meet 15 U.S.C. 1241(b)'s definition of "switchblade" which currently offer
7 at least one model of "switchblade" for sale.

8 12. On August 8, 2023 I conducted demonstrations of the deployment of
9 various types of folding and fixed blade knives that were videoed for inclusion as an
10 exhibit in this lawsuit. The video is available at the following link:

11 https://kniferights.org/Folding_Knife_Comparison

12 13. The demonstration used a total of 10 folding knives and one fixed blade
13 knife, all currently available for purchase in the U.S. and legal to be possessed and
14 carried in the state of Arizona where the demonstration was done.

15 14. The specific knives used in the demonstration were the (i) Kershaw Mini-
16 Random Task Assisted Thumb Stud Opener (Ken Onion design); (ii) Kershaw Natrix
17 Manual Tab Opener; (iii) Kershaw Natrix Assisted Tab Opener; (iv) Terrain 365 P38
18 DA Double Action Automatic; (v) Terrain 365 P38 AT Manual Thumb Stud Opener;
19 (vi) Pro-Tech TR-5 Automatic; (vii) Pro-Tech TR-5 SA Assisted Thumb Opener; (viii)
20 Hogue Doug Ritter RSK Auto Automatic; (ix) Spyderco Sage Manual Thumb Hole
21 Opener; and (x) Victorinox Swiss Army Tinker; (xi) ESEE Izula (Fixed Blade).

22 15. In this demonstration, I provided a visual comparison of these knives and
23 demonstrations of their operation to establish certain facts.

24 16. First, all of the demonstrated folding knives including manual one hand
25 opening folding knives, assisted opening folding knives and automatically opening
26

27 both Piranha and Benchmark offered for sale that fall under the FSA's definition of
28 "switchblade."

1 (switchblade) folding knives can be opened at equal speeds.

2 17. Second, because there is no practical or functional difference between the
3 opening speed of these various knives having different opening mechanisms, they are
4 all simply variations of common folding pocket knives which are possessed and owned
5 by millions of Americans.

6 18. Third, because there is no practical or functional difference between the
7 opening speed of these various knives, automatically opening (switchblade) folding
8 knives that are prohibited from interstate commerce by the Federal Switchblade Act
9 cannot be "more dangerous" than the other folding knives that are not prohibited.

10 19. Fourth, a folding knife, regardless of opening mechanism, cannot be
11 deployed and put to use as quickly as a fixed blade knife. Additionally, because no
12 folding knife, including an automatically opening (switchblade) folding knife, can be
13 of use for any purpose until it is fully open and held in a position to use for the task at
14 hand, it is not more dangerous than a fixed blade knife that is deployed from its sheath
15 ready to use for the task at hand without repositioning in the hand.

16 20. The one exception to this fact regarding fixed blade knives is folding
17 knives incorporating the "Emerson Opener" ("wave opening feature") that is designed
18 to open as it is being removed from the pocket. As such, they open/deploy faster than
19 any automatically opening folding knife and equal to the deployment speed of a fixed
20 blade knife. To my understanding, these folding knives are legal in approximately 49
21 states— except Massachusetts.

22

23 I declare under penalty of perjury under the laws of the United States that the
24 foregoing is true and correct, and this declaration was executed on September 20, 2023
25 in Gilbert, Arizona.

26 By:

27 Doug Ritter

28

EXHIBIT E

Case 4:23-cv-00547-O Document 20-2 Filed 10/06/23 Page 26 of 555 PageID 144

THE COLLECTOR'S GUIDE TO

SWITCHBLADE KNIVES

An Illustrated Historical and Price Reference

RICHARD V. LANGSTON

KnifeRights MSJ App.000021

THE COLLECTOR'S GUIDE TO SWITCHBLADE KNIVES

THE COLLECTOR'S GUIDE TO SWITCHBLADE KNIVES

An Illustrated Historical and Price Reference

RICHARD V. LANGSTON

PALADIN PRESS • BOULDER, COLORADO

Athens Regional Library
2025 Baxter Street

The Collector's Guide to Switchblade Knives:
An Illustrated Historical and Price Reference
by Richard V. Langston

Copyright © 2001 by Richard V. Langston

ISBN 1-58160-283-9
Printed in the United States of America

Published by Paladin Press, a division of
Paladin Enterprises, Inc.
Gunbarrel Tech Center
7077 Winchester Circle
Boulder, Colorado 80301 USA
+1.303.443.7250

Direct inquiries and/or orders to the above address.

PALADIN, PALADIN PRESS, and the "horse head" design
are trademarks belonging to Paladin Enterprises and
registered in United States Patent and Trademark Office.

All rights reserved. Except for use in a review, no
portion of this book may be reproduced in any form
without the express written permission of the publisher.

Neither the author nor the publisher assumes
any responsibility for the use or misuse of
information contained in this book.

Visit our Web site at: www.paladin-press.com

To Bruce MacDonald and Eddie Wuppesahl:

Duty, honor, courage.

Thanks for the chance to write this book. I wish you could be here to read it.

ACKNOWLEDGMENTS

Although there are many who contribute to a project such as a book, if an author is very lucky he may find a few who, through their belief and backing, actually turn an idea into reality. In that respect I have been truly blessed.

For that I would like to thank my wonderful and patient wife, Judy, as well as my son, Robroy, for all his time and technical assistance.

I would also like to especially thank Mark Erickson. His assistance in assessing and appraising the collection, finding difficult examples of these items, and in general volunteering his time and knowledge to make this project a success was invaluable.

Case 4:23-cv-00547-O Document 20-2 Filed 10/06/23 Page 35 of 555 PageID 153

Table of Contents

Introduction · 1 ·

Section 1: Evolution of the Automatic Knife

Chapter 1: A Little History · 5 ·
Chapter 2: Walden, New York: "The Little Sheffield of America" · 7 ·
Chapter 3: George Schrade: The Father of the Automatic Knife · 11 ·
Chapter 4: The Schrade Cutlery Company · 15 ·
Chapter 5: Companies, Product Lines, and Relationships · 17 ·
Chapter 6: Styles, Kit Knives, and Imports · 25 ·
Chapter 7: Opening Mechanisms · 29 ·
Chapter 8: Categories of Collectible Autos · 33 ·

KnifeRights MSJ App.000030

Case 4:23-cv-00547-O Document 20-2 Filed 10/06/23 Page 36 of 555 PageID 154

SECTION 2

AN ILLUSTRATED REFERENCE FOR IDENTIFYING AND VALUING AUTOMATIC KNIVES

CHAPTER 9: Grading Knives · 37 ·

Sheffield George Wostenholm Celebrated 5-Inch Folding Dirk · 40 ·

Automatic Knife Company Wilzen Patent 3-Inch Model · 41 ·

Hatch Cutlery Company 3 1/4-Inch Model under Wilzen Patent · 42 ·

Press Button One-Armed Man's Knife · 43 ·

Press Button Invincible 5-Inch Model · 44 ·

Press Button Victor 5-Inch Model · 45 ·

Press Button Guardian 5-Inch Model · 46 ·

Press Button Business 4-Inch Model · 47 ·

Press Button 2 7/8-Inch Double Blade "St. Augustine" Commemorative · 48 ·

Press Button 3 3/8-Inch "Home Insurance Company" Advertising Knife · 49 ·

Press Button 3 3/8-Inch Double Blade with Jigged-Bone Handle · 50 ·

Press Button 3 3/8-Inch Double Blade (One File) with Ivory Celluloid Handles · 51 ·

Press Button 3 3/8-Inch "Johann Hoff" Advertising Knife · 52 ·

Press Button 3 3/8-Inch "White Mountain Refrigerators" Advertising Knife · 53 ·

Schrade Cutlery Company Model 1543 3/4, 4 7/8-Inch Clip Blade · 54 ·

Schrade Cutlery Company Model 1543, 4 7/8-Inch Clip Blade · 55 ·

Schrade Cutlery Company Model 1613 3/4, 4 7/8-Inch Saber Blade · 56 ·

Schrade Cutlery Company Model G1543 3/4 Hunter's Pride 4 7/8-Inch Clip Blade · 57 ·

Schrade Cutlery Company Model 1544 3/4 BM Forest King 4 7/8-Inch Clip Blade · 58 ·

Schrade-Made Remington Contract Model R2403, 4 7/8-Inch Clip-Blade · 59 ·

Schrade Cutlery Company Model 1553 3/4, 4 1/4-Inch Clip Blade · 60 ·

Schrade Cutlery Company Model 7444M, 2 7/8-Inch Double Blade with Marine Pearl Celluloid Handles · 61 ·

Schrade Cutlery Company Model 7444E, 2 7/8-Inch Double Blade with Black-and-Pearl Celluloid Handles · 62 ·

Schrade Cutlery Company Salesman's Sample 2 7/8-Inch with File, Blade and Bail, and Imitation Ivory Celluloid Handles · 63 ·

Schrade Cutlery Company Model 0740W Stamped "Office Knife" 3 3/8-Inch Double Blade with Imitation Ivory Celluloid Handles · 64 ·

Schrade Cutlery Company Model SS7404AC, 3 3/8-Inch Double Blade with Black-and-Pearl Celluloid Handles · 65 ·

Schrade Cutlery Company Model 7404ST 3 3/8-Inch with Tortoise Celluloid Handles · 66 ·
Schrade Cutlery Company Model 7404WT 3 3/8-Inch with Imitation Ivory Celluloid Handles · 67 ·
Schrade Cutlery Company Model 7404ACT 3 3/8-Inch Double Blade with Orange-Swirl Celluloid Handles · 68 ·
Schrade Cutlery Company Model 7404 Blue 3 3/8-Inch Double Blade with Blue-Swirl Celluloid Handles · 69 ·
Schrade Cutlery Company Model 7404AC 3 3/8-Inch Double Blade with Mottled-Gray Celluloid Handles · 70 ·
Schrade Cutlery Company Model 7404ACT 3 3/8-Inch Double Blade with Multicolored Celluloid Handles · 71 ·
Schrade Cutlery Company Model 7403, 3 3/8-Inch Double Blade with Jigged-Bone Handles · 72 ·
Schrade Cutlery Company Model 7413, 3 3/8-Inch Double Blade with Clip-Style Main Blade and Jigged-Bone Handles · 73 ·
Schrade Cutlery Company Model 7404KT 3 3/8-Inch Double Blade with Brown Celluloid Handles · 74 ·
Schrade Cutlery Company Model 7404K 3 3/8-Inch Double Blade with Butter-and-Molasses Celluloid Handles · 75 ·
Schrade Cutlery Company Model 7503B 3 3/4-Inch Double-Blade with Bone Handles and Full Bolsters · 76 ·
Schrade Cutlery Company Model 7503T 3 3/4-Inch Double Blade with Bone Handles and Tip Bolsters · 77 ·
Schrade Cutlery Company Model 7504SB 3 3/4-Inch Double Blade with Butter-and-Molasses Handles · 78 ·
Schrade Cutlery Company Model 7504SB 3 3/4-Inch Double Blade with Tortoise Celluloid Handles · 79 ·
Schrade Cutlery Company 4-Inch Fishtail, Possible Prototype · 80 ·
Schrade-Walden Model 155, 4 1/4-Inch with Shackle, Clip Blade · 81 ·
Schrade-Walden Model 155, 4 1/4-Inch without Shackle, Clip Blade · 82 ·
Schrade-Walden 4 1/4-Inch Possible Prototype, Clip Blade · 83 ·
Schrade-Walden Model M.C.-1, 4 1/4-Inch with Jigged Orange-Plastic Handles · 84 ·
Camillus Model M.C.-1, 4 1/4-Inch with Jigged Orange-Plastic Handles · 85 ·
Logan/Smyth Model M.C.-1, 4 1/4-Inch with Jigged Orange-Plastic Handles · 86 ·
Schrade-Walden Model 744, 2 7/8-Inch Double Blade with Embossed Stainless-Steel Handles · 87 ·
Schrade-Walden G1514, 4-Inch Fishtail Bowtie (with Fixed Crossbar) · 88 ·
Schrade-Walden Model 151, 4-Inch Fishtail with Candystripe Celluloid Handles and Clip Blade · 89 ·
Schrade-Walden Model 151, 4-Inch Fishtail with Butterscotch-Swirl Celluloid Handles and Clip Blade · 90 ·
Flylock 5-Inch with Clip Blade · 91 ·
Flylock 4 1/8-Inch with Clip Blade · 92 ·
Flylock 2 7/8-Inch with Embossed Gold Handles and Bail · 93 ·
Flylock 2 7/8-Inch with Embossed Silver Handles · 94 ·
Flylock 3 3/8-Inch with Blue-Swirl Celluloid Handles · 95 ·
Flylock 3 3/8-Inch with Black Composition Imitation Bone Handles and Tip Bolsters · 96 ·
Flylock 9-Inch Letter Opener · 97 ·

Case 4:23-cv-00547-O Document 20-2 Filed 10/06/23 Page 38 of 555 PageID 156

Presto 5-Inch with Brown Jigged-Bone Handles and Clip Blade · 98 ·
Presto 5-Inch with Brown Bone Handles, Clip Blade, Rare Small Tang Marking · 99 ·
Presto 5-Inch with Brown (Brain) Plastic Handles and Clip Blade · 100 ·
Presto 5-Inch with Nickel-Silver Fixed–Cross Guard Bolster and Clip Blade · 101 ·
Presto 5-Inch with Brown Peach-Seed Jigged-Bone Handles, Clip Blade, and Floating Derby Guard · 102 ·
Presto 5-Inch with Brown (Brain) Plastic Handles, Clip Blade, and Floating Derby Guard · 103 ·
Presto Large Commando 5-Inch · 104 ·
Presto Small Commando 4 1/8-Inch · 105 ·
Presto 4 1/8-Inch with Grooved-Bone Handles and Clip Blade · 106 ·
Presto Mark–2 · 107 ·
Presto–George Schrade 3-Inch Pull Ball · 108 ·
JCN Company (Presto–George Schrade Contract) 3-Inch Pull-Ball with Gold-Plate Handles · 109 ·
Presto–George Schrade 3 3/8-Inch Single Blade · 110 ·
Presto–George Schrade Model 6000, 4-Inch Fishtail · 111 ·
Presto 9-Inch Letter Opener with Bone Handles · 112 ·
Presto 8-Inch Letter Opener · 113 ·
Hammer 4 1/4-Inch Candystriped Toothpick with Fixed Guard · 114 ·
Hammer 4 1/4-Inch Candystriped Toothpick · 115 ·
Hammer 4 1/4-Inch Toothpick with White-Pearl Handles · 116 ·
Hammer 4 1/4-Inch Toothpick with Buttermilk Cracked-Ice Handles · 117 ·
Hammer 4 1/4-Inch Toothpick with Cream Cracked-Ice Handles · 118 ·
Hammer 3 1/2-Inch with White Imitation Pearl Handles · 119 ·
Hammer, 3 1/2-Inch with Black Imitation Jigged-Bone Handles · 120 ·
Hammer 3 1/2-Inch with Marbled Gray-Blue Swirl Handles · 121 ·
Edgemaster 3 1/2-Inch with Tan-Swirl Celluloid Handles · 122 ·
Edgemaster 3 1/2-Inch with Green-Swirl Celluloid Handles · 123 ·
Edgemaster 4-Inch Fishtail with Orange-Swirl Handles · 124 ·
Shur-Snap Colonial 4-Inch Fishtail with Yellow-Swirl Plastic Handles · 125 ·
Shur-Snap Colonial 4-Inch Fishtail with Cream/Yellow-Swirl Plastic Handles · 126 ·
Shur-Snap Colonial, 4-Inch Fishtail with Brown-Swirl Handles · 127 ·
Shur-Snap Colonial 4-Inch Fishtail with Caramel-Swirl Handles · 128 ·
Shur-Snap Colonial 4-Inch Fishtail Bowtie with Yellow Celluloid Handles · 129 ·
Shur-Snap Colonial 4-Inch Fishtail Bowtie with Black Imitation Jigged-Bone Handles · 130 ·

Bowie 4-Inch Fishtail · 131 ·

Shur-Snap Jumbo Jack 5-Inch with Fixed Guard · 132 ·

Shur-Snap 4-Inch Stubby with Fixed Guard · 133 ·

Shur-Snap 4-Inch with Plastic Handles, Bail, and Clip Blade · 134 ·

Edgemaster 4-Inch with Plastic Handles, Bail, and Clip Blade 135

A.C. Manufacturing Company Aerial 4 1/2-Inch Back-Spring-Release with Stag Handles · 136 ·

Jaeger Brothers (Made by Aerial Mfg.) 4 1/2-Inch Back-Spring-Release with Stag Handles · 137 ·

Case Model H1211 1/2, 4-Inch Fishtail with Bone Handles · 138 ·

Case Model 5171L 5 1/2-Inch with Stag Bone Handles · 139 ·

Case Model 5161L 4 1/2-Inch with Stag Bone Handles · 140 ·

Case Bradford C61050L 5 1/8-Inch Coke-Style Zipper-Release Model · 141 ·

KA-BAR Grizzly Model 2179L 5 1/2-Inch · 142 ·

KA-BAR Little Grizzly Model 21107L 5 1/4-Inch with Winterbottom Handles · 143 ·

KA-BAR Model 21105, 4 1/2-Inch Bent Lever with Stag Bone Handles · 144 ·

KA-BAR Model 21105 Union (Double Stamped) 4 1/2-Inch with Stag Bone Handles · 145 ·

Queen 5-Inch Toothpick (with Safety) · 146 ·

Queen 5-Inch Toothpick (without Safety) · 147 ·

Remington Model R17, 2 3/4-Inch Pull-Ball · 148 ·

Remington Model R8065 3 3/8-Inch with Yellow Celluloid Handles · 149 ·

J.A.S. 4 1/2-Inch Dual-Action Custom · 150 ·

Virginia INOX 4 5/8-Inch Scrimshaw Lever Release with Shotgun Puller · 151 ·

Baron 4 1/2-Inch Lever Action with Plastic Stag Handles · 152 ·

Boker Tree Brand Model 715, 4 1/4-Inch Side Lever with Etched Spear Blade · 153 ·

Unmarked Boker Style 4 1/2-Inch Side Lever, Complete Back and Interior Hand File Worked · 154 ·

Graef and Schmidt Welkut 4 1/2-Inch Side Lever with Stag Handles and Spear Blade · 155 ·

Deer Hoof 4 1/4-Inch Knife · 156 ·

EDGECO Chinese-Made 4 1/8-Inch Lever Release · 157 ·

NATO Military 4 1/8-Inch Lever Release · 158 ·

Chinese Dragon 4 1/4-Inch Lever Release · 159 ·

FES Champion 3 3/4-Inch · 160 ·

Stiletto Siciliano Italian Set of Four · 161 ·

Stiletto with Tang Mark "INOX," Button Release, 11-Inch (Open) · 162 ·

Ackermanscher Picklock Stiletto 8 3/4-Inch (Open) · 163 ·

Case 4:23-cv-00547-O Document 20-2 Filed 10/06/23 Page 40 of 555 PageID 158

EDGECO 8 3/4-Inch Stiletto with Blue-Plastic Handles · 164 ·

EDGECO 8 3/4-Inch Stiletto with Green-Plastic Handles · 165 ·

Stiletto (Unknown Manufacturer, Currently Being Produced) 8 3/4-Inch with White-Plastic Handles · 166 ·

Rizzuto Korean-Made 8 3/4-Inch (Open) Stiletto · 167 ·

EDGECO 8 3/4-Inch Stiletto with Stag Handles · 168 ·

EDGECO 5-Inch Out-the-Front Model · 169 ·

Top-Button 4 1/2-Inch Out-the Front Pen Knife · 170 ·

EDGE Kit Italian 4 3/4-Inch Out-the-Front Release, Blade Etched, Black Handles · 171 ·

EDGE Italian 4 3/4-Inch Out-the-Front Release with Red Handles · 172 ·

EDGECO Taiwan Front Release 4 3/4-Inch · 173 ·

ONYX 5-Inch Automatic Front-Opening · 174 ·

NATO Military Taiwan 4 3/4-Inch Out-the-Front Model · 175 ·

NATO Military Korea 4 3/4-Inch Front Release · 176 ·

Chinese-Made Model 1600 Smith & Wesson Clone · 177 ·

(Unknown Manufacturer) Stainless-Steel 4 1/2-Inch with Gray Brushed Blade and Scale Release · 178 ·

Smith & Wesson 5-Inch U.S. Army Issue Model · 179 ·

Carl Schlieper 8-Inch (Open) Model · 180 ·

West German 5 1/4-Inch Military Gravity Knife · 181 ·

Bonza 5 1/2-Inch Spring-Assist Model · 182 ·

OSS-Style 4 3/8-Inch Gravity Knife · 183 ·

EDGE Kit Mexican 4 1/4-Inch with Wood Handles and Back Pull Release · 184 ·

Butterfly Knife 4 3/4-Inch · 185 ·

(Unknown Manufacturer) Stainless 4-Inch Lever-Swing Model · 186 ·

Boker–Matic, 4 1/4-Inch Spring-Retraction Release · 187 ·

Meyerco 4 1/2-Inch Strut 'N' Cut Mechanism · 188 ·

EDGECO 4-Inch English Flop-Over Knife · 189 ·

Schrade Cutlery Company 3 1/8-Inch Double-Ring-Opening Knife · 190 ·

Three 1 1/2-Inch Picklock Key Chain Stilettos · 191 ·

Assorted 3-Inch Push Knives · 192 ·

Eagle Pencil Company 2 3/4-Inch Gravity Eraser Knife · 193 ·

Hickok Back-Pull Gentleman's Cam Knife 2 1/2-Inch · 194 ·

SARCO 3-Inch Back-Pull Cam Knife · 195 ·

H.H.H. (German) 2 1/4-Inch Two-Bladed Bottom Spring-Release Knife · 196 ·

Case 4:23-cv-00547-O Document 20-2 Filed 10/06/23 Page 41 of 555 PageID 159

Brevett 2 1/4-Inch Two-Bladed, Bottom Spring-Release with Bail · 197 ·

Figural 2 1/2-Inch 1997 "Hong Kong" Commemorative · 198 ·

Three Chinese-Made Figural 2-Inch Handguns with Blades · 199 ·

Two Chinese-Made Figural 3-Inch Warrior Knives with Roman Motif · 200 ·

European Figural 3-Inch "Venice" Commemorative Knife in the Shape of a Gondola · 201 ·

Edgemaster My-T-Mite 2 1/2-Inch · 202 ·

Snappy Colonial 2 1/2-Inch Fishtail · 203 ·

Imperial Mini Jack 2 1/4-Inch Model · 204 ·

Combination Butane Lighter and 2-Inch Blade · 205 ·

Primitive pre-1900 9-Inch Knife with Gunstock-Pattern Horn Handles · 206 ·

Maxam Tanto 5-Inch Lockback Model · 207 ·

Introduction

This book was written to give the reader an understanding of a much maligned tool, the automatic knife, often referred to as the "switchblade." For many years these utensils were used and appreciated with no more trepidation than a soup spoon. However, in the 1950s switchblades were declared illegal in many places because of media hype; the aspirations of some politicians for a menace to chase (real or imagined); and the public's propensity to be inflamed by such threats as rock and roll, motorcycles, and black leather jackets. These laws vary from state to state and in some cases from locality to locality. To say these laws are nebulous, arbitrary, and capricious is an understatement. As a peace officer for 26 years, I believe that these laws prove the following observation, "Laws enforced unequally are at best unfair, and although stupid laws may be the *law*, they are no less *stupid*. In fact, having unfair or stupid laws may be worse than having no laws."

The fact remains that automatic knives are a definite part of history and deserve to be studied. I hope that reading this volume will give the reader an understanding of their history, as well as some means of determining their value as collector's items.

This book is divided into two sections. The first section explores the background of switchblades and examines who and what played a part in their evolution and why. The second section provides a reference to readers who are

interested in determining—for whatever reason, if only to identify Grandpa's old knife on the mantle—the age, value, and history of their own automatic knives.

To make the reference section more effective, I have included photographs of most of the styles and types of knives offered by knife companies. In the past it has been difficult to find a concise reference with photographs showing the different styles of switchblades and their evolution. Most previous volumes on automatic knives have had only a few photos of these knives because of the age of the knives; instead, they have relied on drawings from old catalogs and diagrams to illustrate the examples. This is because the writers of such volumes did not have access to numerous examples in one place or collection. All of the knives shown in this book are in a private collection, which made it possible for me to include actual photographs of the knives in this book.

The photos show the front and back of each knife, as well as a grading system. It must be noted that the grading of knives is at best subjective. Some evaluators use a system consisting of such terms as *poor (P)*, *fair (F)*, *very good (VG)*, *excellent (E)*, *near mint (NM)*, and *mint (M)*. (The term *mint*, as used in this book, means as new.) Others use a rating system of 1 to 6, with the higher number being the better knife. Both systems often add a plus or minus sign to the grade to make it more specific. To arrive at accurate determinations, many factors must be considered, including, but not limited to, age, condition, and rarity. So what it boils down to is that the value is often in the eye of the beholder and not ironclad. To put it simply, a knife is worth what you are willing to pay for it and directly proportional to how badly you want it.

The knives in this book are given a wide estimated value range and are graded in both systems, with pluses or minuses (e.g., very good = VG/4+). It should be noted that all the knives depicted herein are in working order; therefore, they are not parts knives. The gradation of even one lower designation represents a very large devaluation in the system in older, rarer knives. For example, going from "mint" to the next lower rating of "near mint" (or from a 6 to a 5++) could mean thousands of dollars in the value of a knife.

Availability of the knives also affects their value. Often a scarce knife in marginal condition brings a higher price than a similar but more common model in mint condition. For example, a Press Button Guardian in just functional condition can be worth more than a pristine Invincible model. Both knives are the same size, and the only difference between them is the cross guard. However, the latter was made for almost 30 years, whereas the former was manufactured for only 9 years, making it rarer and thus more valuable.

The reader must also understand that many of these companies made these same style knives under many tang markings (company names). These were called *contract knives*. For example, the Schrade Company produced knives for a multitude of companies under various tang markings, including Keen, Case, and Remington. The value of contract knives is often different from that of knives manufactured under the name of the original maker. It is not my intention to have examples of each tang marking from each company represented in this book, but rather to provide an example of the majority of styles and sizes.

The last major point the reader should understand while reading this book is that all values are retail. That is to say, if you went as a legal buyer to a legal seller (merchant or dealer), these are the price ranges for switchblades in similar conditions that you would most likely have to pay. Of course, you may be fortunate enough to buy a cigar box at a yard sale and find a pristine KA-BAR Grizzly in it for $10, but at least after reading this book, you will understand what you have just purchased, as well as what it is likely worth.

The purpose of the reference section is to allow the reader to identify the variables and have a better understanding of them, *not* to make him an expert appraiser, any more than a person could become a gemologist simply by looking at photographs of diamonds in a book.

SECTION 1

EVOLUTION OF THE AUTOMATIC KNIFE

Chapter 1

A Little History

The idea of writing a book about automatic knives is one that I have had for about 45 years. It began the moment I saw my first switchblade. I was about 7 years old, and an older cousin who was staying at our house showed me a metal, scaled, small folding hunter (what was probably a Presto 4 1/4-inch). It must have made quite an impression on me because I still remember the incident vividly. About two years later my family moved to Walden, New York, which was the home of modern (post–Civil War) U.S.-made automatic knives. Every day on the way to school, I would cross High Bridge and see the remains of the once majestic New York Knife Company. If I walked the two blocks it took to cross the other bridge in town, I would go past the defunct Walden Knife Company, which produced the first practical factory-made automatic knives in this country. This site was where Walden Knife, under the leadership of its president, Edward Whitehead, had formed a partnership in 1894 with George Schrade (who, as we will see in Chapter 3, was truly the father of the automatic mechanism).

In effect, the history of the factory-produced automatic knife in the United States begins with the union between the Walden Knife and George Schrade and ends in 1958, when, for all intents and purposes, the legal manufacture of automatic knives in the United States ended. However, the history of the automatic knife is actually several hundred years old; in one form or another, it is as old as knife making itself.

Man has always sought to improve his utensils, especially those used as weapons. The desire for concealment, comfort, and something a bit different from the next guy's in one's knives is human nature. For the most part, these old (going back to the 1700s) mostly European (e.g., English, German, Spanish) knives were hand-produced custom pieces for the very rich, not factory made. However, there are some exceptions, most notably those made by the Sheffield Company in England, which produced a limited number of standard styles in the 1800s. Suffice it to say that these early knives are now quite rare and expensive and are mentioned here mostly as historical curiosities. You probably won't see them outside museums or in private collections, and so I won't go into a lot of detail on them in this book.

That said, the first knife pictured in this book is an automatic Sheffield, which, all in all, has withstood the years fairly well. It is under the tang marking of George Wostenholm Celebrated, which would date it somewhere between 1850 and 1900. This would make it among the very earliest production auto openers.

Although the Sheffield autos predated him, George W. Korn is credited with the actual invention of the switchblade in 1883. Korn's knives are, as with the Sheffields, among the rarest of these early autos. Among the criteria for selecting knives for this book were that they must be (1) functional and (2) from my personal collection. At this time I cannot offer a photograph of a Korn that meets both of those criteria.

The next historical advance was the Wilzen knife, patented on April 9, 1889. This was a small lever-activated knife that, when the lever on either end was pushed to the left, allowed the blade to open to about 30 degrees, making it possible for the blade to be fully opened without breaking a nail (some of these had a match striker instead of a nail notch). The first examples of these knives were sold by the Auto (Automatic) Knife Company of Middletown, Connecticut (1891–1893). In 1893 Walter Hatch purchased the firm and operated it under the Hatch Cutlery Company name until 1894, when it moved to Buchanan, Michigan. In 1899 production shifted to South Milwaukee, Wisconsin, until sometime in the early 1900s, when the company went out of business. These knives were produced under the Wilzen patent. Examples of both of these rather rare knives appear in the pictorial section of this book. (It should be noted that the Wilzen in this book only has one blade; apparently a blade was lost and the knife repaired at some time during its 110-year lifetime. However, if so, it was done so long ago and so well that it is difficult to determine whether it was actually made that way.)

During this period several other knife mechanisms were offered to the public. The Napanoch Knife Company produced a knife based on patents by Ernst Ruettgers of Brooklyn, New York (December 27, 1898, and December 24, 1901) for the Lever Cutlery Company.

In 1893, W.W. Pellet received a patent for a knife that had blade lifts attached to the top of the blade. Knives made under this patent were marketed with the tang markings of Halstaff and Company and the Pellet's Patent. Although these knives were not full automatics, they were a significant step in the evolution of the mechanical knife. Just as with the evolution of species, many forms are discarded in favor of more effective or efficient designs. This is natural selection at work. That is why many mechanisms are continually being tried and offered to the public. (In Chapter 7 of this book, I discuss various examples of automatic or rapid-opening mechanisms.)

CHAPTER 2

WALDEN, NEW YORK:
"The Little Sheffield of America"

To understand how the switchblade evolved, we must go back to the beginnings of the cutlery industry in this country. Now, it is not my intention to trace the complete history of knives in the United States, only to show how the development of knives in general affected the development of the automatic knife specifically.

The first relatively crude knives or tools in the New World were probably handmade by blacksmiths. Most of them were brought by immigrants from Europe, where the industrial revolution had made their construction possible. This was not a viable solution to a young, vibrant nation where these tools were in great demand. Plus, most of the early settlers had come from the same countries in which the knives were being manufactured, and many of the immigrants had experience making knives in their home countries.

In 1843 one of the earliest U.S. knife factories was established near Waterbury, Connecticut. Many of the cutlers and workers at the Waterville Cutlery Company were Europeans who had immigrated to this country to escape the long hours, poor working conditions, and low wages of their homeland. The expertise and individualism of these early immigrants, combined with the bountiful waterpower of the northeast, led to the development of knife-making firms throughout New England during this period.

NEW YORK KNIFE COMPANY

In 1852, poor wages and working conditions prompted 16 immigrant Sheffield cutlers to leave Waterville and establish the New York Knife Company in Mattawan, New York (later renamed Beacon.) This little village is on the eastern side of the Hudson River across from Newburgh, New York, about 15 miles upriver on the opposite side of West Point. One of these disgruntled cutlers was a man named Thomas J. Bradley, who along with his son, Thomas W. (Tom) Bradley, was instrumental in influencing the history of knife making in this country. Although neither Bradley nor his son ever produced any automatic knives, both figured prominently in determining where and when automatic knives were produced. In their own way the Bradleys became as important as George Schrade in the evolution of spring steel.

In 1856 Bradley moved his New York Knife Company to Walden, New York, a small, growing industrial village about 11 miles west of Newburgh. Walden was soon to become the seat of the cutlery industry in America. The Bradleys and Walden were suited for each other. Prior to 1856 Walden was a small rural village with a few mills: cotton, lumber, and of course grist. The area was not much different from any New England village except it had a waterfall and the Wallkill River running through the middle of it. With abundant and cheap waterpower at their disposal, Bradley and the other cutlers in the area flourished. The New York Knife Company made some of the finest pocket knives ever produced and served as an economic boon for the small town.

The fledgling U.S. cutlery industry did have a problem, however: competition from Europe. Workers' wages and conditions were much better in the United States, which meant that European cutlers could produce knives as good as or better than U.S. products and still ship and sell them here at lower prices than their American counterparts.

Young Tom Bradley was an insightful, intuitive young man who had served well during the Civil War, retiring as a colonel and later receiving the Medal of Honor for his actions during the war. While in the army, the younger Bradley met various people who would later play significant parts in history. One of his acquaintances was a young man from Ohio named William McKinley. It appears that Bradley and McKinley got to know each other quite well, a relationship that later paid dividends for Bradley and the U.S. cutlery industry as a whole.

After the war, Tom returned home to work in the family business. When Tom succeeded his father as president of the New York Knife Company in 1869 or 1870, European imports were driving many U.S. cutlery firms out of business. Bradley refused to lay off any of his workers and kept his production levels up, despite the low demand for U.S.-made knives. Indeed his company produced so many knives that he would tell workers to take boxes of knives home and store them. Needless to say this further endeared him to his workers and to the village of Walden, but his actions later proved good for his business as well.

In 1890 while in the U.S. House of Representatives, Republican William McKinley got the McKinley Tariff Act passed and signed into law by Republican President Benjamin Harrison, shortly before the 1890 midterm elections. The McKinley Tariff Act raised the already high protective duties on most imports, including knives. Suddenly, all the U.S. cutlery firms were scrabbling to get production going, which meant obtaining material, training people, and doing many other things quickly. Bradley simply patted his experienced work force on the back and asked everyone to bring in those boxes of knives they had been storing through the years.

This prosperity was not long lived, however. The tariff act failed to stabilize farm prices while raising those for many household commodities. Resentment from farmers and settlers in the South and West led to the Republicans losing control of Congress in 1890 and of the White House in 1892. So it was no surprise that under pressure McKinley and other Republicans started to favor the more politically expedient position of lowered tariffs. McKinley defeated Democratic candidate William Jennings Bryan in the presidential election of 1896 and again in 1900. In 1901 McKinley was assassinated, and Theodore Roosevelt, who was less friendly to business interests in the East, became president. Bradley, once again reading the proverbial writing on the wall, ran successfully for U.S. Congress in 1902 and sold his family company the next year.

There was yet another way in which the Bradleys influenced the history of the automatic knife. In 1870 a group of employees of the New York Knife Company were on their lunch break, playing the latest form of a

game that had just been actively promoted by (and is often erroneously attributed to) a fellow who went to school about 35 miles away at West Point. His name was Abner Doubleday, and, as I am sure you can guess, the game was baseball. When Colonel Bradley saw his employees playing this new game, he flew into a rage and forbade them to play it while on duty, lunch break or not, because he felt it was "undignified." Some of the employees promptly quit and started the second knife firm in Walden, the Walden Knife Company.

WALDEN KNIFE COMPANY

Walden Knife started as a cooperative venture, as did most of these early cutlery firms. In 1874, the company was incorporated as Walden Knife and bought a factory of its own on the Wallkill River about one-half mile downstream from New York Knife by what is now Walden's lower dam. The locals always referred to this as the "lower shop." (For historical accuracy, it should be noted that the first home of Walden Knife was the Ericsson Engine Company factory.)

The Walden Knife Company played no part in the history of the switchblade until it went into partnership with George Schrade around 1894. This union led to the press-button line of knives, and between 1894 and 1903 Walden Knife and Schrade sold more than a million press-button knives. When George Weller, the company's main stockholder, retired, the E.C. Simmons Company bought his stock and gained control of the company. The knives were then marketed through E.C. Simmons Hardware Company in St. Louis, Missouri. Walden Knife then became home to the Keen Kutter line of knives.

In 1903 George Schrade sold his interest and patents to the company, and by 1911 Walden Knife employed more than 600 workers and made more than 2,500 patterns, including the press-button line. (George Schrade is discussed in more detail in Chapter 3.)

In 1923 Winchester merged with Walden Knife and moved the company to New Haven, Connecticut. Winchester had also absorbed another local knife manufacturer, the Napanoch Knife Company, which had made contract knives for Keen Kutter in the early 1900s.

I bring up these company mergers and acquisitions only to show why all of these knives, and the later Winchesters, seem so close in pattern and style. In some cases, these companies all used the same machines and dies as they changed hands or merged. Also many employees moved with each transaction, so it could very well have been that the same workers were making the knives for the various firms.

In 1923 a few of the Walden Knife employees attempted to resume making knives in Walden. This short-term experiment produced mostly smaller patterns for fraternal organizations. These knives are tang-marked "ORANGE Knife Walden NY," and obviously are quite rare. (The word *orange* was used because Walden is in Orange County.)

• • •

There were eventually three knife companies in Walden (the third being the Schrade Cutlery Company, discussed in Chapter 4), and these three firms produced knives under many labels, brands, and product lines. During the early part of the 20th century as many as half the knives sold in the United States were made in Walden, which was nicknamed the "little Sheffield of America." To this day Walden is one of the few small towns in America with a statue of William McKinley in the town square.

CHAPTER 3

GEORGE SCHRADE:
The Father of the Automatic Knife

George Schrade was truly the father of the American automatic knife. In order for the reader to understand the magnitude of Schrade's contribution to the development and promotion of these knives, I will relate some relevant biographical background about this prolific inventor and entrepreneur.

George Schrade was born the son of Jacob and Henrietta Heim Schrade of Williamsport, Pennsylvania. The Schrades were the parents of four sons, George, William, J. Lewis, and Joseph, all of whom exhibited abilities as practical engineers. From early on George was both handy and inquisitive, and his career included the invention and design of numerous items, including the player piano.

To the public George was best known as the inventor of the press-button knife and the safety push button; however, to cutlery manufacturers he was better known for the various pieces of automatic knife-making machinery that he invented. His cutlery machinery inventions included, among others, the shield-boring machine (for inserting knife shields), the bolster machine (for trimming excess metal from stamping), the heating machine (for hardening blades from tip to tang), the neck

drawing machine (another tempering device), the bone-jigging machine (for inletting patterns on handles), and the cleaver and knife grinder (for sharpening).

As mentioned, the partnership between George Schrade and the Walden Knife Company in Walden was formed in 1894 and lasted until 1903 when Schrade sold his patents and remaining interest to Walden Knife (which by then had become a subsidiary of E.C. Simmons Hardware Company). In 1904 George Schrade and two of his brothers, William and Louis, erected a three-story frame building on East Main Street in Walden and formed the Schrade Cutlery Company (discussed in depth in the next chapter).

Like the Walden Knife Company, Schrade Cutlery Company was known for doing contract work, which is why many similar automatic knives bearing the tang markings of various companies are actually Schrade-made knives. Keen Cutter, Case, Remington, E.C. Simmons, and Sears and Roebuck are just some of these companies that contracted with Schrade for knives.

Around 1907 George Schrade improved the design of his original press-button knives, which had often been criticized for not having a safety. The new design had a button farther down the bolster and a slide-button safety, and could have as many as four automatic blades in one knife.

In 1910 George Schrade sold his interest in the Schrade Cutlery Company to his brother J. Louis and went to England, where he attempted to market his machines. From England, George and his son George M. traveled to Germany; it was there, in Solingen, that George Schrade opened his next factory. It is believed that Schrade picked Solingen because of the quality of steel produced there.

While in Solingen, George Schrade invented a new style of automatic knife, called the *Springer*. This was a side-lever-activated knife that is still made in Germany by some companies (e.g., Boker and Hubertus). Even though Schrade had supposedly sold his patents for this style to a German company, in 1916 the German government confiscated the factory and its equipment for the war effort. In 1916 Schrade returned home to the United States.

In 1917, fresh from his ventures in Germany, Schrade invented still another type of switchblade mechanism, the Flylock. At this point, he licensed or sold his patent rights for the Flylock mechanism to the Challenge Cutlery Company. He then went to work for Challenge, and from 1925 until 1929 these Flylock knives were made under the Challenge name. In 1929 the Challenge Company went bankrupt.

In return for money owed to him by Challenge, Schrade was given some cutlery machinery, enabling him to start still another knife company. In 1929 he opened the George Schrade Knife Company in Bridgeport, Connecticut, using the Presto Knife Company logo. The original Schrade Company (now named the Schrade–Walden Cutlery Company), owned by George's brothers, immediately brought suit against George's new company, claiming infringement on a patent sold to them by George himself. The fact that the patent had run out and that George was the inventor of the original design helped him win the suit. In fact, the case was thrown out, and Schrade–Walden Cutlery had to pay legal costs. (As a long-time student of both the Presto Knife Company and Schrade–Walden Knife Company lines of knives, I must say that they bear a striking resemblance to one another in their structure, styles, and mechanisms.)

George's son George M. joined him at the George Schrade Presto Knife Company. The company produced several other types of knives, some of which were not autos but kept the company financially viable. The company did manufacture a few automatic styles, including the pull ball and flying jack, for its own distribution as well as those produced under contract, such as the Case 4217 or Remington quick point. George Schrade died on September 9, 1940, but his company, under the leadership of son George M. and grandson Theodore, continued to prosper and at one time employed more than 100 people. During World War II the company produced a large push-button knife, called the Commando, for paratroopers. In 1956, Boker Knife bought the George Schrade Presto Knife Company and ran it until 1958 when changes in the law basically forced its closure.

• • •

George Schrade's impact on the cutlery world was truly revolutionary. Even if you exclude his mechanical innovations that advanced the automated manufacturing of knives, his contributions just in the area of automatic knives were overwhelming.

He was directly responsible for the line of automatic knives produced by the Press Button Knife Company (Walden Knife Company affiliation), the Schrade Cutlery Company, the Flylock (Challenge) Knife Company, and the Presto Knife Company. (For more information on the knives produced by these companies, see Chapters 4 and 5.)

CHAPTER 4

THE SCHRADE CUTLERY COMPANY

As already mentioned, in 1904 George Schrade formed the Schrade Cutlery Company with his brothers William and Louis. This company was without a doubt the most influential and important manufacturer of automatic knives in the United States.

A large measure of the success of the Schrade Cutlery Company can be attributed to its modernization of the production process. This process used a system of dies, jigs, and gauges that guaranteed a consistently high quality in its knives. The Schrade Cutlery Company maintained its exacting standards by constantly improving its equipment through the years.

In 1918 Schrade Cutlery opened a branch several miles to the southwest in Middletown (run by another brother, Joseph), which was operated until 1932, when the Great Depression forced its closing. In 1946 the company was sold to the Imperial Knife Associated Companies, owners of the Imperial Knife Company and the Ulster Knife Company. The name at that time was changed to Schrade–Walden Cutlery Corporation. About 10 years later production of the company's knives was moved to Ellenville (some miles to the northwest of Walden), but, for all intents and purposes, by this time the production of switchblades had ceased.

The Schrade Cutlery Company used several tang-marking systems. The first and rarest was "SCHRADE CUT CO. WALDEN, NY. GERMANY," used from

1904. The next was "SCHRADE CUT CO" in a half-circle over "WALDEN, NY" in a straight line. "Schrade Cut Co" was adopted after World War I and used until shortly after World War II. In the mid-1950s this was changed to "SCHRADE WALDEN NY USA" You might find a late automatic knife with this last stamping, but it would be rare because by its adoption virtually all switchblade production had ended. (NOTE: An exception to this was the M.C.-1, about which more below.)

It should be noted that reprints of the Schrade catalog E and supplements, with pictures and descriptions of knives made during the late 1920s and 1930s, are available. The reprint (edited by A.G. Russell) features black and white drawings, as did most of the catalogs of that era. Although the reprints do not show the vibrancy and color of the knives, they do offer a wealth of information about other aspects of the knives.

The knife aficionado who compares the lineup of the original Schrade Press Button knives with the knives made by the Schrade Cutlery Company will be struck by the similarity of the lines and sizes of the knives. There is a line of 2 7/8-inch, two-bladed, double-button knives; 3 3/8-inch, two-bladed, double-button knives; and 3 3/4-inch, two-bladed, double-button knives. These have various blade styles and nail files, and come with or without bolsters.

The line of Schrade folding hunters included a 4 1/4-inch (Model 1553 3/4) and 4 7/8-inch single blade with clip or saber-style blades. The 4 7/8-inch version with floating guard is now called the Hunter's Pride. Other 4 7/8-inch models were the Schrade Hunting Knife and the Forest King, with either celluloid or pyralin handles and bronze or steel linings. Although these were not the same size as Press Button's, they were similar.

Additional styles were also introduced during this period, including the dagger-type push-button, with safety, 4 inches long (some variations in size were made in this style), with or without a fixed blade guard. It is commonly called a "fishtail" because of the distinctive shape of its back bolster. With the fixed cross guard this style is also known as a "bowtie" or "bowtie fishtail."

Other standard-shaped knives that were produced were a 3 3/8-inch and 3 3/4-inch single-blade, single-button styles, as well as at least one model of double 3 3/8-inch blades of stainless steel.

Another interesting auto model was a combination letter opener and safety push-button knife, which incorporates a 3 3/8-inch single-blade knife and a 5 1/2-inch letter opener into one unit.

The new Schrade line did incorporate additional handle materials from the original press-button line (e.g., various colors of celluloid, gold plating, Im jigged bone), thus expanding the options. Still, the main styles and sizes remained the same. (NOTE: The "Im" in the original catalogs refers to the handles actually being jigged bone and not stag or deer antler. The Im designation was later dropped, and the jigged bone was considered a form of stag.)

During World War II both Schrade and Presto made several models of automatic knives for the military. Schrade first made a model approximately 4 1/4 inches long with jigged plastic handles and bail (its civilian model was the same except it had no bail). These knives were essentially the same as the basic 1553 3/4, 4 1/4-inch model (folding hunter) except for the handle material, which was jigged plastic instead of bone stag.

From 1958 through the early 1960s Schrade made a knife on military contract—the lone exception to the company's stoppage of production of automatic knives. This style was named the M.C.-1. It was styled after the 4 1/4-inch folding hunter but was approximately 4 1/2 inches in length with a bail on the 2 1/2-inch knife-blade side of the handle. The handles were bright orange (for visibility), and the other side had a hook-style, manually opening (parachute) shroud cutter. Eventually, three companies (Schrade, Camillus, and Logan/Smyth) produced these knives. Of these three companies' products, that of Logan/Smyth (the last company to produce them) was by far the worst in terms of quality. Ironically, because their poor quality has made it hard to find existing examples in good condition, the Logan/Smyth models have appreciated dramatically in value.

Case 4:23-cv-00547-O Document 20-2 Filed 10/06/23 Page 59 of 555 PageID 177

COMPANIES, PRODUCT LINES, AND RELATIONSHIPS

This chapter explores several automatic knife companies that all started on different tracks but ultimately shared one thing in common: the manufacture of automatic knives.

Press Button, Flylock, and Presto Knife were discussed briefly in the chapters on George Schrade and the Schrade Cutlery Company. In this chapter I will examine the lines of knives each company produced and reiterate how the basic styles—dating back to the press-button knives first produced by Walden Knife—remained virtually the same.

PRESS BUTTON

The Press Button (licensed by George Schrade and a division of the Walden Knife Company) line of automatic knives included basic styles and sizes that were made by all the companies with which George Schrade was involved. Small variances emerged as the knives were refined over the years, but even a novice couldn't help but see the resemblance among the knives from the various companies. Noting the subtle differences, it is almost like looking at succeeding generations of one family.

KnifeRights MSJ App.000054

The initial line of Press Button knives included a group of two-bladed, two-button-release knives that were 2 7/8 inches in length. (Measurements refer to closed lengths unless otherwise specified.) This particular line was called the Ladies' Press Button Knife. This knife was available in sterling silver (denoted by an SS after the model number—e.g., 300 SS). It came with a brass liner and was also available in Im stag, various celluloids, German silver, and pearl. The 300 series had two blades; the 400 series had a nail file in place of the smaller blade; the 600 series also had two blades but was distinguished by having a polished full crocus with cap and bolster. The 700 series also had the cap and bolster but also a nail file, the same as the 400 series. (It must be remembered that these companies did a lot of contract work and would adapt the knives to whatever the customer wanted, such as using various tang markings, handle materials, and advertisements, as well as other small differences.)

The metal-handled knives produced by Press Button (sterling and nickel silver) were usually embossed with ornate designs or pictorial reliefs. Some of the scenes were Old Man Winter, a satyr head, and personalized advertising. There was also a line of what could be called "early commemoratives," including ones for the cities of St. Augustine, Florida, and Washington, D.C.

The next larger line of Push Button knives were the 100 and 200 series of two-bladed pocket knives. These were 3 3/8 inches in length and basically used the same design, mechanisms, and handle material as the 2 7/8-inch versions. The 200 series had a nail file.

Press Button also introduced a line called the Mechanics' Press Button Knives. These larger knives, 3 11/16 inches in length, were made of heavier material to withstand extremely hard use. These knives, Models 115 through 119, were advertised as being sturdier than the smaller models and particularly useful to mechanics, farmers, fishermen, and hunters. They were all supposed to be in Im stag, and their only variation was in the type of blade: 115—clip and spey; 116—spear and spey; 117—clip and pen; 118—spear and pen; 119—clip and spear; 115G—clip and punch; and 117G—spear and punch.

Press Button had two lines of folding one-bladed knives. The smaller line (Models 500, 507, 510, and 517) featured a 4-inch Farmer's Press Button iron-lined (later steel) model with German silver bolsters. This line came with either Im stag or ebony handles and a spear or clip-point blade that was crocus-polished on one side and etched "Business." The larger line (Models 1000, 1005, 1007, 1100, and 1200) comprised the sportsman, hunter, and fisherman lines. They also were handled in Im stag and ebony. The Model 1200 had a saber-style blade, while the 1005 (the Victor Model, which was so etched) had a floating cross guard. The other models (designated Models 1000, 1007, and 1100) with clip, spear, or saber were etched "Invincible." All were crocus-polished on the opposite side.

Press Button also produced the Hobo, a one-handed man's knife also sometimes called the Civil War Veteran's knife. This knife was 5 inches long with a curved handle. The scales were one-piece stamped aluminum embossed with a floral design. The single blade had a cutting edge on the convex arc below the three tines. Most of these were tang-marked "Press Button Knife Company Walden NY." However, some were marked with the name of the medical prosthesis companies that contracted for and sold them. These were one-bladed, one-button knives.

The last Press Button model to consider is the 5-inch folding hunter with a fixed guard, which came out well after Schrade had left Walden Knife. This knife was not produced until 1914, and since Walden Knife stopped production in 1923, it was only produced for nine years, which means it is now hard to find. Unlike the Victor and Invincible models, this 5-inch folding hunter had a fixed cross bar with the guard pointed up on one side and down on the other. The blade is etched with an eagle in flight and a scroll marked "Guardian." It has a clip blade.

FLYLOCK

The Flylock Knife Company was owned by the Challenge Cutlery Company of Bridgeport, Connecticut. The Flylock line included the basic 2 7/8-inch two-button, two-bladed (small pen) knives and the 3 3/8-inch two-button, two-bladed (medium pen) knives, as well as the same knives in 3 1/2 inches. Some had bottom bolsters and folding guards and came with hawkbill, clip, and spear blades. Handle materials for these items included composition, jigged bone, metal, Bakelite, celluloid, imitation jigged bone, sterling silver, and gold

plate. Flylock also had a 7 7/8-inch and a 9-inch letter opener with a one-bladed automatic on one side and regular fixed blade on the other.

In addition to these models, Flylock also had a 3 5/8-inch Boy Scout–type knife with an auto spear-type blade, a regular screwdriver-bottle opener, and an awl that opened manually. Another model was the 3 5/8-inch knife with three blades: sheep's foot, pen knife, and large spear (only the spear operated automatically). Most of the bolsters were of nickel silver.

Of course, Flylock offered other models as well. However, because of the mechanisms used and the limited time in which they were produced, these knives—as well as viable histories and complete catalogs on them—are becoming increasingly difficult to find.

PRESTO

The Presto line of knives was produced by George Schrade Knife Company of Bridgeport, Connecticut. As with any of these companies, none of the specifications given about Presto knives is ironclad. Presto's research and development department tried out all kinds of new ideas, so oddball prototypes or specimens may surface today.

The large folders were produced in a 5-inch version, with floating guard, fixed guard, or straight version (no guard) with clip blades. They had nickel-silver bolsters and handles made of jigged bone, plastic, or metal. A version with the long clip blade was used on several models: the 5-inch folding hunter and 4 1/2-inch one-bladed model in the style of a farmer's jack or Wharncliff knife.

During World War II, Presto also produced 5-inch and 4 1/8-inch folding hunters with shackle for the armed forces. These steel-handled knives were etched "Commando." Presto also contracted knives, but unlike the original Schrade Company (which put the contracting company's name on the tang), Presto would often leave its Presto tang and simply etch the blade with the contracting company's name. For example, "Remington" would be etched on blade and "Presto B port CT" on the tang.

(NOTE: From the beginning all these knives usually bore etchings on their blades denoting their styles. Most of these etchings have long since disappeared because they were electroplated. The least expensive of the etching methods, electroplating was also the least durable. Often salesmen's samples were acid-etched with the model name or the word *sample*. These etchings will last the life of the knife.)

Presto's 4 1/8-inch line of small folders came handled in the same materials as the large folders. Presto also had a hawkbill model and a fixed-guard model, as well as one in the long-clip-blade style. The 3 3/8-inch line of doubles used celluloid, stainless steel, grooved bone, jigged-bone, smooth-bone, and plastic, as well as the usual metal materials. The 3 3/8-inch models were also made in a single-bladed version, with and without bolsters, in long-clip and spear-blade style.

The 2 7/8-inch line of small doubles was, it seems, replaced by another line of small knives called the pull-ball. This knife was 3 inches long. It released its one blade when a small ball (in some cases in the form of a die or an eight-ball) was pulled. These knives were made with all types of handling materials (e.g., aluminum, steel, Bakelite, plastic) and came in a myriad of colors. A 4 1/4-inch version of this style was produced with a jigged-bone handle and long-clip blade.

Many of the pull-balls were contracted to other companies and appeared as Remington or Case models. JCN, a jewelry company, had them made with a shackle and marketed them as fob knives, often in gold plate.

Presto also made an 8 1/4-inch letter opener, in addition to its 9-inch model (similar to the style used by Flylock). The shorter letter opener had a slightly different style fixed blade. Some of the other more unusual models included a 3 7/8-inch clip-style blade with jigged-bone handles, a 3 5/8-inch single blade with long-clip blade and plastic handles, a 3 1/2-inch double blade, and a 3 5/8-inch double switch with both blades on the same side.

Presto also carried a 4-inch line of fishtail knives in celluloid, with and without fixed guards (bowties). Some of these models had bottom and top bolsters of nickel silver, but several models had no bolsters. This line of knives was etched "Presto." The specifics for identification of these are as follows: Model 4000, no guard top and bottom bolsters; Model 4500 top bolster; Model 5000, fixed cross guard top bolster and bottom bolster; Model 5500 fixed cross guard top bolster only, no bottom bolster; and Model 6000 no bolsters.

Presto and Schrade both made contract knives, which bear the names of the contracted companies. Just to cite a couple of examples, Sears and Roebuck at one time sold a beautiful model of the Hunter's Pride, made by Schrade, with a bright red handle under its label, and military bases sold contracted models with etched parachutes on them.

The point is that many variations of these knives exist. Likely, any existing example of a prototype or specialized contract knife in excellent condition will be quite rare. And until prices escalate to the point that it becomes profitable to counterfeit these pieces, they will remain scarce. It is more likely that you may find one of these knives that has had some obvious repair made, such as having a spring replaced or a new handle put on. After all, some of these items are 100 years old, so you can expect that a small slip of metal might have broken and been replaced.

Finally, most of the Presto/George Schrade tang markings will be what is called the "large marking." The most common marking is as follows: "PRESTO, PAT, 30-40 MADE IN USA GEO. SCHRADE KNIFE CO, INC, B'PT, CONN." However, a small tang marking was used on earlier knives: "PRESTO, PAT. PENDING, G.SCHRADE, B'PORT,CT" (still upper case but written in smaller size). This early marking is quite rare and more valuable than the larger version. You may also encounter this earlier marking in large text. It is neither as rare nor valuable as the one with small lettering.

IMPERIAL

The Imperial Knife Company began in 1917 when brothers Michael and Felix Mirando left the Empire Knife Company in Winsted, Connecticut, and started their own firm in Providence, Rhode Island. The Mirandos, who came from several generations of Italian cutlers, started out making skeleton frames for knives intended for pocket watch fobs. The Imperial Knife Company quickly prospered, and in 1919 the Mirandos were joined by a childhood friend from Italy, Domenic Fazzano.

By the 1920s, however, sales of pocket watches had begun to decline because of the introduction of the wrist watch. By 1929, with the effects of the Depression beginning to be felt, Imperial needed new products to replace the slumping fob knives. Imperial filled this void with bumped-up bolster knives and shell-wrapped knives. The public responded well to the lower priced products, and these two knives, as well as several other innovations, proved a boon to the company.

A shell knife is one with a molded, three-dimensional, concave hollow handle over the liner, and often with bolsters overlapping the ends of the handle. This design also proved quite favorable for automatic knives. The shell knife was inexpensive but eye-catching because it came in a wide range of celluloid or painted handle materials.

Imperial's product line included numerous stampings: "IMPERIAL KNIFE COMPANY," "IMPERIAL/PROV. R. I. HAMMER BRAND," "I.K.C.O.," "JACK-MASTER," "TOPSY," and "JACK O MATIC," to name just a few. From 1936 on, the company used the old New York Knife Company logo of the arm and hammer, which it had legally obtained. However, this shared logo was the two companies' only similarity. Imperial also used the circle with a crown in its logo.

By 1940 Imperial was the world's largest cutlery manufacturer, producing up to 100,000 knives per day. During World War II Imperial began to work with Ulster Knife (under the ownership of Albert and Henry Baer) in Ellenville, New York, and Schrade in Walden, New York, to supply various models of knives for the war effort. In 1943 Imperial and Ulster jointly opened the Kingston Knife Cutlery Company. In 1947 Albert and Henry Baer bought out Schrade and formed a partnership with Imperial, creating the Imperial Knife Associated Companies, under the leadership of the Baer brothers, the Mirandos, and Fazzano. In effect, this created the largest automatic knife manufacturer of the time.

Shell knives in serpentine, fishtail, Texas toothpick, and other styles could be produced and sold for a minimal cost. Often, these knives were given away as prizes at carnivals or sold off cardboard racks in candy stores for less than a dollar.

Sales of these low-priced shell knives, coupled with sales of the regular Schrade line of quality automatic knives (both under the Schrade marking and as contract knives for a host of other knife companies), resulted in a huge number of autos being distributed in this country until the enforced end of production in 1958. These same shell-type knives have continued to be produced since 1958 but without the automatic feature.

COLONIAL

At about the same time that Imperial was developing its niche, another company was beginning along similar lines, the Colonial Knife Company. It was founded by brothers Frederick, Dominick, and Anthony Paolantonio, who had learned their knife-making trade in Italy and for a time had worked for the Empire Knife Company. Like Imperial, the Colonial Knife Company was based in Providence, Rhode Island, and specialized in making skeletons for knives used as pocket fobs. In many cases, Colonial's automatic knives were virtually identical to the ones produced by Imperial. Colonial produced knives under many names, including Colonial Ambassador, Old Cutler, Ranger, Forestmaster, Shur-Snap, Topper, and Anvil. (It should be noted that many of these knives were actually produced by Schrade.)

AERIAL (JAEGER)

The Aerial Cutlery Manufacturing Company was founded in Duluth, Minnesota, in 1910 by Fred, Richard, and Chris Jaeger (along with Thomas Madden upon purchase of the Morris Cutlery Company). In 1912 the name was shortened to Aerial Cutlery Company, and the company was moved to Marinette, Wisconsin.

Although Aerial was known mainly for its production of picture-handled knives (a knife with a clear plastic or transparent handle with an advertisement or scene, often a risqué picture) and later barber supplies, razors, and so forth, it also produced a style of switchblade known as the backspring release. A plate at the top of this knife was pushed backward to release the blade. This knife was 4 1/2 inches long and had a 3-inch blade. Various models had handles of bone, celluloid, and (rarely) pearl.

Aerial was in business roughly from 1912 until 1944. It produced knives under several different markings: "Aerial Cutlery Mfg Co., Duluth, MN"; "Aerial Cutlery Mfg. Co., Marinette, WI"; "Jaeger Bros., Marinette, WI"; and "Aerial Cutlery Co., Marinette, WI."

By the mid-1940s Aerial had stopped producing pocket knives. During the war Aerial produced M1 bayonets for the military and continued making barber and beauty supplies. Aerial also did contract work for such customers as Belknap Hardware and Butler Brothers. In addition, a backspring switchblade knife, in bone and with the familiar Dog's Head shield used by Union Cutlery on it, also appeared under the tang marking of "Union Cutlery Co, Olean, N.Y. USA (KA-BAR)." I do not know whether this knife was made on contract from Aerial, but the collector should be aware of its existence.

(NOTE: In 1972 or 1973, almost 30 years after Aerial stopped making these knives, more than 2,000 mint knives were found in a warehouse, some of which were reportedly automatics. They were sold at collectors' market value, which devalued their price. With the unexpected glut now out of the market, the price for Aerial knives has stabilized, and they are becoming rare once again.)

QUEEN CUTLERY

Originally known as the Queen City Cutlery Company from 1919-1945, this Titusville, Pennsylvania, company began as a moonlighting endeavor by six foremen of the Schatt and Morgan Cutlery Company. Its long cutlery history, product line, and numerous tang markings, though interesting, do not pertain to automatic knives, with the exception of one knife: a 5-inch Im jigged bone, black, toothpick style bearing the tang marking of the 1932–1955 queen dot crown tang. Two models of this automatic knife were made: with and without a lock. Neither model locks in the open position. The release is a blade hook and pin. Some of these automatic knives were handled in pearl. Since 1946 the company has been known simply as the Queen Cutlery Company.

KA-BAR (UNION CUTLERY COMPANY/UNION RAZOR COMPANY)

The Union Cutlery Company, known as the Union Razor Company until 1909, of Olean, New York, adopted its famous KA-BAR trademark in 1923. KA-BAR is a well-known and well-researched firm that has had many fine books and articles written about its history and products. KA-BAR never carried a large line of automatic knives, but it did produce several models that are much in demand by collectors today.

The largest of these KA-BAR autos was the 2179L, or Large Grizzly. About 2,000 Large Grizzlies were made, some of which were etched. "KA-BAR" was marked on the front tang, and "UNION CUTLERY CO. OLEAN NY" on the back. The handle on most models, which measured 5 1/2 inches closed, was stag, but a few were celluloid. Because of the brittleness of celluloid and the fact that only a very few of these KA-BAR knives were handled in it to begin with, celluloid-handled Large Grizzlies are extremely scarce today.

KA-BAR also produced the 21107L, or Little Grizzly, automatic knife. Even fewer of these were produced, so it is even rarer than its larger brother. Its handle material was usually winterbottom bone (stag). It was tang-marked "KA-BAR."

The mechanism on both the Large and Little Grizzlies was a bit unusual in that a piece of steel runs along one side of the handle, with the button on the bolster of the other. When it is pressed, it allows the back spring to release and kick out the blade. These are the only two models that KA-BAR made with this mechanism. Both models are massive and beautiful, but I have found the mechanism a bit clumsy.

It has been rumored for years that because of their scarcity and high price some Little Grizzly knives have been copied. There are very few actual photos or even drawings of this knife, so if purchasing one, you should have faith in the seller or be very familiar with the knife.

KA-BAR had a side-lever (bent-lever, no-fulcrum style) 4 1/2-inch auto, as well. The 21105 Model was handled in stag, the 61105 in bone, and the T1105 in celluloid. Actually, the tang markings on the 21105 varied, with the earliest being "UNION CUT CO" (the lever on these was round on the bottom with a hollow in the middle in the shape of a heart-like triangle). The next model made had "UNION CUT CO Olean NY" on one side of the tang and "KA-BAR" on the other. This model had a plain (no design), more rectangular lever with a small rectangular hole. Examples of this model were usually a bit heavier and seemingly thicker than the models that came before or after it. The last in this line was marked "KA-BAR" and had a lever like its predecessor, except that the top of the lever had seven raised horizontal lines across it on the bottom half.

"KA-BAR" also made one other type of auto called the Switchblade Hunter (Model 61126L), which was 4 1/2 inches and had the same action and style as the Jaeger or Aerial (as was previously mentioned). Some of these had a shield in the shape of the Dog's Head in the handle and were marked "Union Cutlery Co" or "Union Cut Co Olean, NY USA."

CASE

The Case Cutlery Company of Bradford, Pennsylvania, is perhaps the best chronicled, researched, and written about knife company in the world. Case had a wide assortment of automatic knives in its line, but many were contract knives made by Schrade or other companies, including fishtails, pull-balls, folding hunters, double pen knives, push knives, and just about any other style in the regular Schrade line. Note that there may be small differences on the Case folding hunter's knife (e.g., a slightly different jigging is used on the Case handles than on the Schrade knives). Collectors should be aware that although these are the same basic knives as produced under the Schrade tang, those with a Case tang mark have a higher value.

Case also had several contract automatic models that weren't made by Schrade. The first models were the 4 3/8-inch 5161L, 5161LSAB, and 6161L. All were side-lever, hinge-release knives made from 1920 to 1940 under the Case-tested "XX" tang. The 6161L model was handled in green bone, the others in stag. Two larger versions of the same knife, the 5171L and 6171L, were also made in the same handle materials, but some were lower bolster stamped. These knives are also found with the "R. Case and Son Bradford, Pennsylvania" tang marking.

The last of the Case automatic knives to be discussed is the automatic zipper knife. There were two models produced from 1920 to 1940 under the tested "XX" tang (they can also be found with the "R. Case and Son, Bradford, Pennsylvania" marking). The first model is the 5 1/8-inch coke-style knife. It has a zipper-button side release, jigged bone handles, and a flat blade. The green-bone model has no lower bolster. The other style was a clasp 5 1/2-inch version and came in Model 5172 (genuine stag) and Model 6172 (green bone). The zipper knife and the 71 lever line (mentioned earlier) are sought after by spring steel

and Case collectors, and command some startling prices. Some are more than 80 years old and they were never produced in great numbers to begin with, so examples in good condition are difficult to find in the collector's market.

CHAPTER 6

STYLES, KIT KNIVES, AND IMPORTS

Many of the knives examined in this chapter are foreign made. The fact is that although automatic knives have been illegal in many parts of the United States since 1958, most of the world's nations have no such restrictions, and manufacturers in these countries have continued making them

STYLES

Side-Lever-Lock

The side-lever-lock (or springer) lever-action knife (sometimes called the *switchblade jack*) was invented by George Schrade when he operated his cutlery company in Germany. It would be difficult (if not impossible) to chronicle the total number of companies and nations that have produced this type of knife. Presently, quality side-lever-lock knives are being produced by Hubertus and Boker in Germany.

Side-lever-lock knives were made of various handle materials (e.g., stag, jigged bone, mother-of-pearl) and in several sizes. Some have multiple blades (although usually only the main blade is automatic), and many of these have fixed guards, which can be used to pull spent shotgun shells from various gauges of barrels. Some knives are still being made this way, but they are mainly for show, since most

Case 4:23-cv-00547-O Document 20-2 Filed 10/06/23 Page 68 of 555 PageID 186

modern shotguns have automatic ejectors. Inexpensive models and makes of these are still produced in China, India, Korea, Spain, and other countries.

There are several variations on the mechanisms used by these knives, usually involving the release (e.g., bent lever, fulcrum). Still, the outward appearance of the knives is the same.
Because there are many fine reference books on the mechanisms of side-lever-lock knives and because a complete study of the collection of this one style, its history, and the companies that made (and still make) it would consume volumes, I will not go into great detail about this style. However, the collector of general automatic knives should have a working knowledge of side-lever-lock knives.

Stiletto

The stiletto style is usually associated with Italy, Spain, France, and Germany. It was an offshoot of the Spanish *navaja* clasp-type knife, which was used for everything from cutting bread and cheese to fighting, and was also influenced by the folding dirk-style knife. Of course, the stiletto was hardly a general-purpose knife, being designed and used primarily as a stabbing knife. Stilettos and their portrayal as the weapon of choice for juvenile delinquents and various unsavory characters contributed heavily to the legislation that outlawed switchblades in this country in 1958.

The stiletto had one slender bayonet-type blade with the point area back to about one-third of the blade in a double edge (or at least if not fully double edged, an unsharpened double on the back of the blade). It was made with fixed and floating cross guards. Handle materials included stag, horn, bone, plastic, mother-of-pearl, and ivory, and their attractiveness usually added to the allure of the knife's sleekness.

Stiletto switchblades lock by having a pin fit into a flat piece of steel on the backspring of the knife. This type of mechanism can use several ways to release the blade from its locked-open position. The method that seems most desirable to present collectors is what is called the picklock, in which the thumb is used to lift the backspring and release the blade. This method was used on earlier stilettos. A lever release on the back of the knife was also used on some models; when this release was pressed, it lifted the backspring.

Many stilettos have a button release, where pressing the button (in the locked-open position) released the blade. (These have no flat piece on the backspring for the pin, and this mechanism is often employed with floating-guard type of knives.)

The release method used most at present is the bolster release, in which pressing the left bolster on the top point and pushing downward swivels the bolster and lifts the flat metal lock off the pin, thus releasing the blade.

The stiletto is a popular knife, and some collectors specialize in it exclusively. It was produced by numerous companies and in many countries, and less expensive versions are still being made all over the world, including many Third World countries. As with the side-lever-release knife, before acquiring a stiletto the general collector should have a good working knowledge of the various mechanisms, places of origin, ages, and relative values of stilettos.

Figural

Figural knives are usually small knives in the shape of an animal or object (e.g., gun, gondola, eagle) with metal handles, or they are made of metal with an embossing depicting an event, animal, or object. These switchblades are usually made as key-chain-type knives and employ various opening mechanisms. Some of them are quite old, and they make an interesting, relatively inexpensive collectible.

KIT KNIVES

Kit knives, a phenomenon of the 1980s, were in effect an attempt to find a legal avenue for the sale of switchblade knives in the United States. The kits are most often associated with the Edge Company. Although the Edge Company eventually stopped selling these automatic knife kits, the initial concept was rather clever. Instead of selling whole knives, Edge sold knife kits and made it abundantly clear that putting them together could be illegal in some places.

The kits offered several styles, including Italian (in-and-out) front releases, stilettos, lever actions, and even a Mexican pull-ball version. The stilettos basically used a screw instead of a rivet to hold the blade to the

front bolster, so by simply attaching the blade to the handle, you had a working spring-steel knife. And since the screw often came loose anyway, the owner could throw it away and use a rivet instead or simply put a drop of epoxy or clear lacquer to hold it in place.

The front (in-and-out styles) came with a full-length spring action and blade, which were put together in a hollow handle. These knives were made as contract knives for Edge and often carried the country of manufacture as well as the Edge logo or tang marking ("EDCO" or "EDGECO"). The high-end stag-handled stilettos were well made and had brass bolsters. The stilettos were of the turn-bolster-release type. These knives were contracted from Korea, China, India, and other places.

The concept of kit knives is still used today, especially for inexpensive imports. Kits can be found today in sealed cardboard-backed plastic packages. The original Edge kits came in plastic bags with instructions. Original unopened kits are rare today, as are etched-blade examples.

The Edge Company also sold an OSS gravity knife and eventually sent all the customers who had purchased them a notification that these knives might not conform to the law. The Edge Company eventually stopped selling these knives and instead started marketing regular knives. As Edge eased out of the auto market, it offered for sale a list of manufacturers that sold automatics.

The Edge concept is still being used by companies selling not only kit knives, but also regular knives that can be adapted for use with a spring. Both are assembled by the owner (if that is his intent.)

I believe that these kit knives will appreciate in value for several reasons. First, they were made during a relatively short time (approximately 10 years). Second, they were expensive and of poor quality obtained (with a few exceptions). Third, they had to be assembled by the individuals who bought them. Even inexpensive automatics made in a factory had some degree of quality control; the kit knives had none. The parts were simply put in a bag or box and sent to the buyer. Many of these actions were faulty; and this, coupled with inexperienced consumers' attempting to put them together, resulted in a high mortality rate for these knives. All these factors led to a scarcity of kit knives in decent condition today—assuming of course that a warehouse full of them is not found in the future. Furthermore, most of these knives, although made under contract, carried the Edge tang or etching, making them easy to differentiate from similar knives produced today.

IMPORTS

With the advent of the Internet there has been yet another turn in the evolution of the automatic knife in the United States. The Net has given those interested in buying switchblades a chance to find sellers from all over the world, thus directly affecting the collector's market. Many styles that up until a few years ago were uncommon have been put back into production and are being marketed over the Internet. Also many of the higher quality and brand-name knives are being manufactured not only by the original companies, such as Hubertus and Boker, but also by companies in China, Korea, India, and various Third World nations, and are being sold at a fraction of the cost of the originals. Although not of the same quality, these cloned knives still perform quite well.

Even in the United States automatic knives are still being made and sold over the counter. Benchmark and Smith & Wesson are two companies that make and sell automatic knives to peace officers and military personnel only.

CHAPTER 7

OPENING MECHANISMS

My intention here is to familiarize the reader with opening mechanisms; this chapter is certainly not meant to be a full discourse on the entire field of alternate opening devices.

FULL-SPRING STYLES

One type of opening mechanism found on many in-and-out front loaders is the double full spring. In front-end in-and-out models, two full-mechanism-length springs are used: one to release the blade and one to retract it. In this type of mechanism there is always tension on one spring, which means that it is the only style of auto that can be stored open or closed. (In general, autos should be stored open to keep the pressure off the spring. In this case, one spring is always under tension.)

Some small European pocket, pen, or souvenir knives also employ a full-length spring. However, it is only a release, and even though some of the knives have two springs, it is not the same mechanism as above, and each spring is for a separate blade (e.g., blade or nail file on each side).

Case 4:23-cv-00547-O Document 20-2 Filed 10/06/23 Page 72 of 555 PageID 190

GRAVITY STYLES

The gravity-style knife, which is in the same category as switchblades according to the law in this country, is a study in itself. So in the interest of brevity, I am only going to touch on several of the better known versions of gravity knives in this book.

The gravity-style knife is just what its name implies: the blade opens because of gravity. This usually means that this type of knife has a hollow handle with a blade in it, so that when the knife is pointed down and a lever or button depressed, the blade is released and falls into the open position. It can be locked in the fully opened or fully closed position. Knives that use the gravity-opening mechanism include the World War II OSS Model knife (now being reproduced), the German paratrooper knife (of which there are several versions), and a style made by Bonza in Germany that, unlike the first two examples, employs a light spring to assist in opening the knife (also being reproduced). By swinging the arm, the user of the spring-assisted Bonza can increase the speed of the blade's release. The original Bonzas are becoming rare.

Gravity-style knives are also made as standard side-opening folders. Some have front-weighted blades (such as Tanta style) and have a thumb knob for opening. However, right from the box, these can be used as a gravity opener (they also have a lock-back feature). These knives are as fast as any automatic ever made and are perfectly legal. Such knives can be purchased for as little as $5, but higher priced versions, which have a well-made ratchet or ball bearing mechanism, are also available and are perfectly legal.

Gravity knives have been around as long as automatics—or because of their simplicity maybe even longer. In the latter part of the 19th century, the Eagle Pencil Company produced a small tube-type knife with a small (about 1 1/4-inch) blade that was gravity-released by pressing a small button on the back of the tube. It was held in place by a small pair of grabbers that opened or closed with the button. The small knife was designed to be used as an "eraser" (or, more accurately, a "scraper" to scrape a mistake off a letter). "Erasing" was also one of the functions of the automatic blades on the Schrade letter opener.

RATCHET STYLES

Not all ratchet knives were the high-tech styles mentioned earlier. Ratchet knives were produced in a size similar to that of the Schrade pull-ball style, mostly after 1958. These ratchet knives also worked by pulling a piece at the back of the knife, which in turn pulled a wheel with notches in it, thereby opening the knife. Pushing the end in closed the knife. Some ratchet knives had animal heads or bottle openers on them and were sold by inexpensive jewelry companies as watch fobs or key chains. Similar models of small ratchet knives were produced by the Schrade and Sergeant Knife companies under such names as Zip it, Switch-a-Roo, and Clip it in the 1980s. These were marketed as a legal alternative to an automatic knife.

BUTTERFLY STYLES

Butterfly knives are usually associated with the Philippines and South Seas, but they are made all over the world. In the right hands, and with a bit of practice on the part of the user, they can be as fast as any style of automatic knife ever made.

The butterfly opening device consists of two handles and a blade, with each handle (actually a half-handle) attached by a pin to each side of the blade. The handles form a hollow to allow the blade to rest inside in the closed position. A small hooking device on the bottom holds the blade closed inside the handles. Flipping the handles opens the knife, and the knife can be secured with the hook in the open position. The handles are often made of metal because the weight assists in flipping the handle.

CUSTOM STYLES

Knives with custom opening mechanisms also present a range of opportunities for the collector. The resurgence of custom knife makers has produced many mechanisms and materials; the quality of these modern cutlers' work can be magnificent. Even though most mechanisms on custom knives are presently

being made by commercial knife companies (mostly European), the variations presented in these custom models are superb: e.g., halo knives (rapid front-release, razor-like blades); split-scale releases (where the scale pivot acts as the release mechanism); remakes of the KA-BAR Grizzly mechanism (with adjustment screws for correct torque and firing). One interesting mechanism is the dual-release knife (or "dually"), a folding Buck (hunter style) that opens, closes, and functions as a normal lock-back knife. However, depressing a flush inlaid circle shield permits the knife to function as an automatic. In fact, the shield is so flush and natural looking that it may be engraved, as might have been done with any such medallion on any knife. One of the first autos to use this style of custom mechanism is tang-marked "JAS." The introduction of this release fostered several variations on this hidden mechanism and can now be found on Buck or Case knives, or even on inexpensive clones of large folding hunters from India, Pakistan, China, and other countries. What the customer can have custom made is limited only by his imagination and budget.

MISCELLANEOUS MECHANISMS

It would be impossible to cover all the opening mechanisms that have been used throughout the years. Still before concluding this chapter, I would like to touch briefly on a few others.

Push

Push knives, which are also a variation of the rapid-opening knife, are made in various forms from key-chain knives to box cutters. Although usually not an expensive item, they can be quite pricey and can be a field of collectibles unto themselves, as with some older Case models.

Push knives use an opening device introduced only a few years ago that is known as the strut-and-cut mechanism, which uses a wheel by the front bolster to open the knife. Boker makes a push knife that uses a split scale, allowing the knife to be pushed into place: the scale is moved back and the blade locked; turning the scale again releases the blade, which is then retracted by a spring.

Flop-Over

Flop-over knives are one of the oldest types of quick-opening knives and are similar to a barber's straight razor. The lever is an extension of the back of the blade, which simply pivots the blade that is secured by one pin in the front bolster.

Lever

Various lever knives have also entered the marketplace as a legal alternative to the switchblade. These are variations of the cam knife.

Ballistic

Ballistic knives extort a spring that literally shoots a blade from the knife when it is fired. The blade can penetrate a 3 3/4-inch piece of plywood at 30 feet. This knife has been around for quite some time; the Russian military used a version of it, which was then cloned by a manufacturer in Florida. Knives with this kind of mechanism, in a live, fireable condition, are quite illegal. Perhaps what is most ironic is that ballistic knives fall into the same category as a 98-year-old 3 3/4-inch Schrade double-safety knife, which would not seem to offer the same threat to society as a ballistic knife.

CHAPTER 8

CATEGORIES OF COLLECTIBLE AUTOS

The field of collecting knives is quite complicated and a subject worthy of its own book. The numerous variations within each category of knife make collecting both challenging and rewarding.

Identifying and valuing knives can be complicated by many factors, and the collector should not be surprised by any oddities he may come across. All the cutlery companies had research and development departments or at least designers who routinely presented new options and models to be incorporated into a company's lineup. Many of the original models were one of a kin., Fortunately some of these early prototypes are still around today to tempt collectors and serve as missing links to help researchers and collectors understand the evolution of switchblades. One example is the Press Button auto with safety (a small tab that could be pushed up to lock the blades), which was the forerunner of the Schrade style (which included a different button and push-up locks). Additionally, some models were produced for only a few years. For example, the Guardian (press-button model) was produced only from 1914 until 1923, which makes existing specimens extremely rare and valuable.

Other factors also yielded some odd knives for today's collector to sort out. For example, certain models often incorporated specific variations for contract companies such as Sears and Roebuck. Even knives that were put together by

factory workers and were not on contract for another company could vary from the original catalog version, so that almost any combination can be found today.

A particular knife could well be a composite of several knives of one or more eras, whether by original intent or by repairs made during its 100-year journey, thus presenting variations on what is commonly found. It is usually not too difficult to tell whether knives are modern counterfeits by looking to see if any modern materials or design elements were employed in their construction, as well as by examining their markings.

Often, producing a special model on contract or adapting a model because of an insufficient supply of a certain handle material or color resulted in the creation of knives that were never catalogued. The same model of Flylock (folding hunter) may have a large or small release button, depending on what was in stock the day it was made. These knives are not fakes; rather, they fill a unique niche in the evolution of the automatic knife. For the collector, a find of this nature that can be authenticated is very exciting.

Essentially, collectors of automatics should decide what model, brands, or types they want to specialize in. Some options include the following:

1. *Pre-1850 one-of-a-kind autos.* Realize, however, that each knife is quite rare and will cost thousands of dollars. For the average collector, this is not a realistic choice.
2. *Switchblades from the Civil War era (1860s) until 1958.* Most of these would fall into the categories and brands described previously in this book. Also, as discussed earlier, aside from a few very early one-of-a-kind foreign knives (e.g., Sheffields or hand-made German, Spanish, and Italian specimens), automatics in this country really began with the partnership between the Walden Knife Company and George Schrade in 1894.
3. *Post-1958 automatics.* This category includes everything made after the year switchblades were outlawed to the present.
4. *Specific types of autos.* Many collectors have become specialists in a particular style of knife—stilettos, for example, which have been bringing excellent prices. Unfortunately, this same fact makes the types that are particularly desirable, especially the older ones, difficult and expensive to obtain. Some collectors even specialize in certain types of mechanisms.
5. *Crossovers.* Within any style of knife (e.g., military), individual companies offer their own fields and crossover fields of collectibles. For example, a Schrade Paratrooper knife might be collected as a knife made by Schrade or as a military knife by someone who specializes in military knives or memorabilia. Knives for one-armed Civil War veterans can be collected both as a press-button auto and an old prosthetic device, also making them crossover collectibles.
6. *Custom knives.* Numerous custom knife makers are making one-of-a-kind automatic knives for their clients, and many are much in demand by collectors. These can be collected based on type or maker.
7. *Knives based on origin.* Some collectors might buy only imports, while others specialize in early American autos. Or collectors might limit their purchases to knives from specific nations (e.g., Germany), manufacturers (e.g., Schrade Cutlery), or areas of the world (e.g., Europe).

What a collector decides to collect is limited only by his imagination and, increasingly, his budget.

SECTION 2

AN ILLUSTRATED REFERENCE FOR IDENTIFYING AND VALUING AUTOMATIC KNIVES

Grading Knives

To say that knife grading is controversial is a gross understatement. There are many different opinions and "systems" for grading knives, but none that is universally accepted. Sentiment, profit margin, pride, and lack of knowledge should not affect the grading of a knife, but the effect that these factors can have on the value placed on specimens can be breathtaking. Knives that have been heavily sharpened and even have some rust on the blade have been classified as "mint" by some knife owners or traders.

As already mentioned, "mint" is probably the most misused term in knife collecting. True mint knives will command much higher prices than even knives that are graded as "near mint"—20 percent or more than a knife with one tiny flaw and 20 to 100 percent more than knives graded as "good to excellent." Mint means just that: in mint condition. The knife should look exactly as it did the day it left the factory with no flaws, not even tiny ones (unless the peculiarity, or defect, was known to have existed when the knife left the factory).

FACTORS IN GRADING KNIVES

The Condition of the Blade

The first thing to consider when grading a knife is the condition of the blade. Is it full length? Has it been sharpened? If so, is the blade still full or down some?

Is it heavily sharpened? Are there heavy scratches on the blade? Has it been "bellied" from oversharpening? Are there signs of rust or pitting?

The darkening of a blade from age, often referred to as its patina, is not a big consideration. Most collectors don't mind the patina and leave the knife as is, but patina can be polished away and one would never be able to tell it had ever been there if polishing is done properly.

A broken blade affects the value tremendously, even if it's just at the tip. Other blade factors that significantly affect the value are nicks, the condition of the tang stamp, and the presence and quality of an etching (if the blade was factory etched).

Type and Condition of the Handles

The next consideration is the type and condition of the handles. The type of handle material often has an important effect on the value. Such materials as jigged bone, tortoise, stag, and pearl often enhance the value of a knife. Many of the old switchblades incorporated celluloid into the handles. It's very important to take proper care of knives when they have celluloid handles because of that material's fragility.

Things to consider when evaluating the condition of the handles are cracks (often found near pins in the handle), breaks, chips, shrinking, and whether the material is original to the knife. Metal bolsters, both tip and full, may also enhance the value of a knife, but their condition must be considered.

Functioning

The next thing to consider when grading a knife is its overall functioning. Does it work as it should? If the spring is broken, you can automatically deduct $50 or more from its value for repairs to make it work properly. If it does function, does the blade open all the way? If so, does it lock in the open position? (Most switchblades require that you activate the release, usually a button, to close the blade.) If you can push the blade closed without activating the release, you most likely have a problem. When the blade is closed, does it "seat" properly (i.e., is the tip of the blade inside the knife and not protruding)? You should also check to make sure the safety functions properly, if the knife was equipped with one.

Availability

Availability is a major factor in assessing the value of an automatic knife. This is the basic theory of supply and demand: rare models of anything demand a much higher price than more common examples. Of course, if a knife is really rare, as in a one-of-a-kind prototype or presentation piece, it can be extremely difficult to place a value on it. If a knife is a truly unique, what is it worth?

Many knives were produced in limited quantities. Certain knives tended to be used more than other types, and it is often harder to find them in "mint" or even "excellent" condition. This should increase the value of such a knife if you do find one in nice condition.

GRADING SYSTEM USED IN THIS BOOK

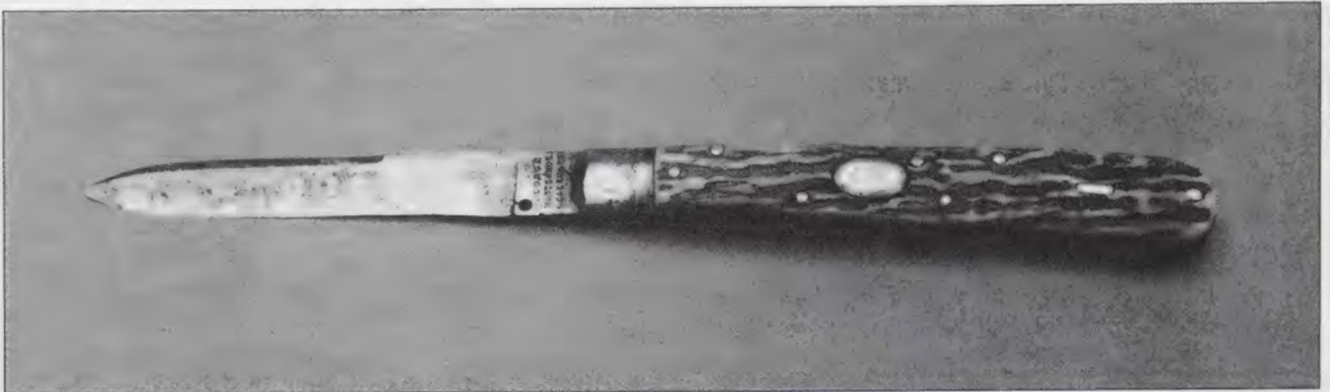
Most grading systems use a name or numerical method to denote the condition and value of each knife. In order to more accurately grade both of these factors, I use a double-designation system. For example, say a knife is in "mint" condition. In my system, outlined below, this knife would be graded M/6. The first element, M, describes the condition of the knife in descriptive form, while the second element, 6, indicates its numerical ranking (based on a scale of 1–6, with 6 being perfect or mint). Note that, if the condition of the knife warrants it, the grade may be further clarified by the addition of a plus (+) or minus (-) sign (or for "near mint" two plus signs). Below is the key to the grades used in this section:

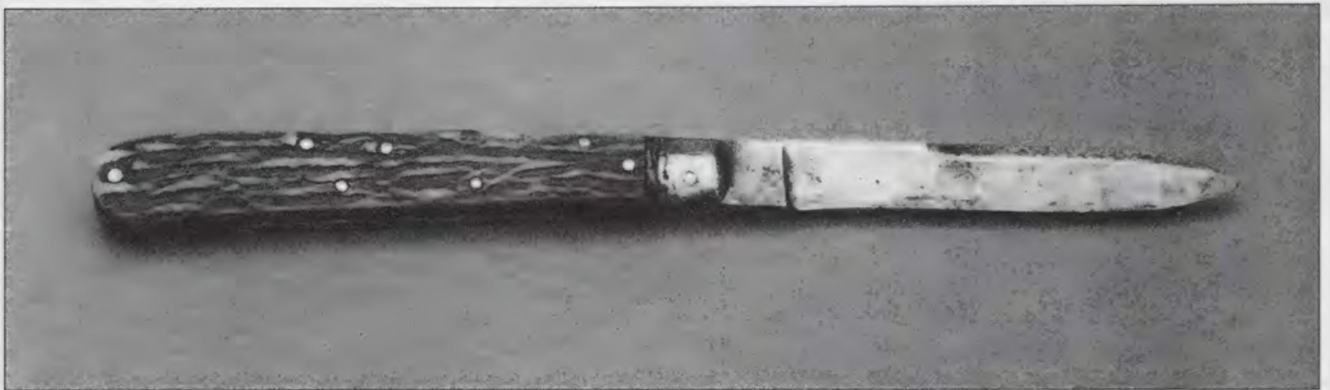
Mint = M/6
Near Mint = NM/5++
Excellent = Ex/5, + or -
Very Good = VG/4, + or -
Good = G/3, + or -
Fair = F/2 (functional but with broken handle, blade, etc.)
Poor = P/1 (parts knife, nonfunctional)

You must remember, however, that there are exceptions to every rule, and this (as well as any other grading system) is only a guide.

On another note, the percentages noted in the descriptions of the blades and handles on the following pages refer to the overall condition of the blade or handle, not to the amount of knife material that survives from its use through the years. Of course, the amount of use would be factored into the percentage reflecting the blade's or handle's overall condition. The percentage is not listed for all the knives because it is not always a significant factor in appraising a knife. For example, sometimes the rarity of a knife overrides the condition of the blade or handle.

All lengths given in the descriptions are closed unless otherwise indicated. With those knives that have front and back photos, the top photo shows the front of the knife.





KNIFE: Sheffield George Wostenholm Celebrated, 5 inches, one-bladed, handle button release, folding dirk, stag bone handles, blade etched "I*XL." Tang marked "GEORGE WOSTENHOLM CELEBRATED." (NOTE: This marking was used from 1850–1890.)

BLADE: 92 percent, approximately 3/16-inch short and sharpened, heavy patina, pitting, but etching is legible and sharp.

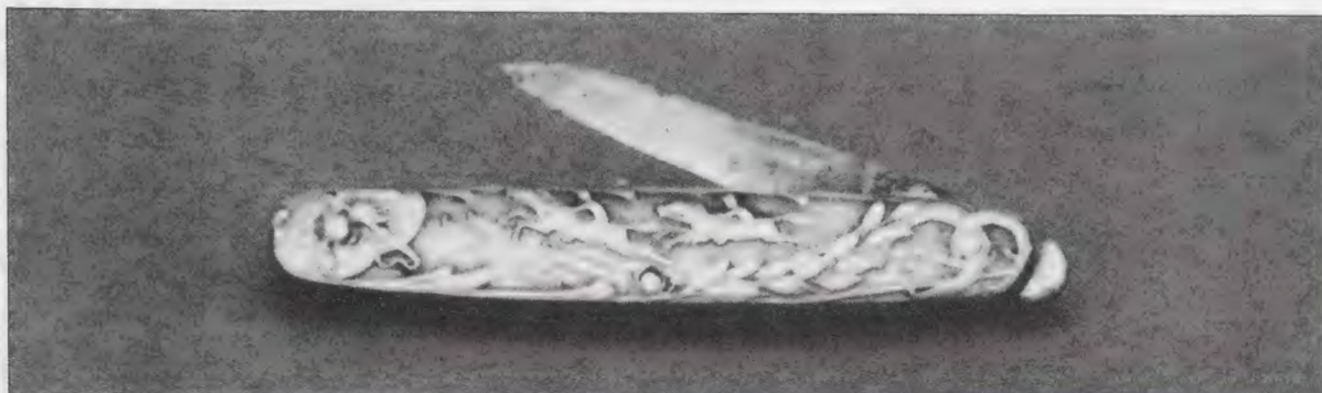
HANDLES: Nice old stag, large diagonal crack across front handle, hairline crack on bottom edge. Old repair with rivet.

FUNCTION: Great snap, locks tight.

COMMENTS: Very rare. Condition not as important on a piece this rare.

VALUE: $2,200–$3,000+ **MINT:** $6,000 G/3

Case 4:23-cv-00547-O Document 20-2 Filed 10/06/23 Page 83 of 555 PageID 201



KNIFE: Automatic Knife Company, under Wilzen patent April 9, 1889; 3 inches; embossed metal handles. Originally a two-bladed, lever-activated model; one blade missing (the repair was apparently done many years ago). One side shows a steeple chase race and horseshoes, the other a group of 19th-century bicycle riders. Tang marked "AUTOMATIC KNIFE CO., WILZEN'S PATENT."

BLADE: 90 percent, 1/16-inch short and sharpened, patina, some pitting.

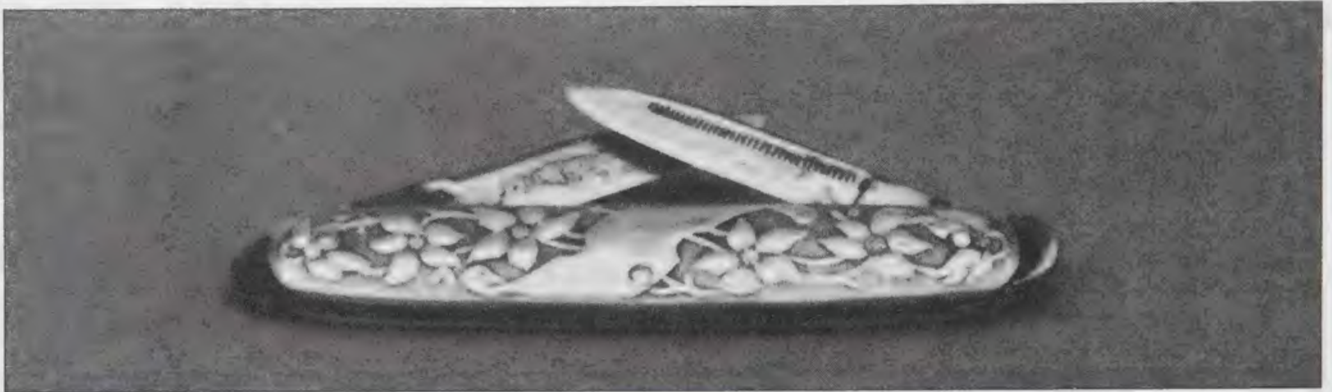
HANDLES: Appear to be cast silver, excellent for age.

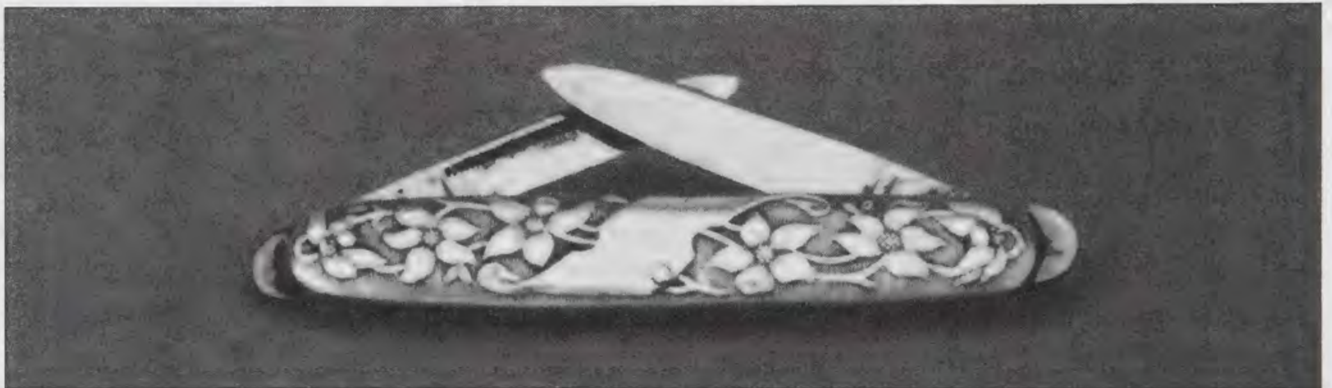
FUNCTION: OK, lever release and blade function correct on remaining blade.

COMMENTS: Examples and photos of these knives in any condition have become quite rare.

VALUE: $375–$450+ **MINT:** $750 VG/4

Case 4:23-cv-00547-O Document 20-2 Filed 10/06/23 Page 84 of 555 PageID 202





KNIFE: Hatch Cutlery Company, 3 1/4 inches, double blade with match striker notches on blades, embossed floral sterling handles, lever-assist knife, sideward movement of lever opens knife 20 percent. The mechanism was designed to allow easier opening of the pocket knife. Manufactured under the Wilzen patent. Tang marked "HATCH CUTLERY CO., SO. MILWAUKEE, WI, PAT. Apr 9, 1889."

BLADE: 90 percent. Main: 1/8-inch short and sharpened, some light pitting. Second: 1/16-inch short and sharpened.

HANDLES: Embossed sterling, floral pattern.

FUNCTION: Lever releases excellent; manually opened blades stiff.

COMMENTS: Patent April 9, 1889. These knives are becoming increasingly rare; examples and photos of them are quite scarce. (NOTE: These knives were produced under the Hatch name when Walter P. Hatch took over the Automatic Knife Company, thereby acquiring the Wilzen lever automatic patent and renaming the company.)

VALUE: $400–$475+ **MINT:** $650 Ex/5

KNIFE: Press Button One-Armed Man's Knife, also called Civil War Veteran's Knife, 5 inches. Handle is silver-colored embossed aluminum. Tang marked "PRESS BUTTON KNIFE CO., WALDEN, N.Y." NOTE: Some of these knives were contracted and distributed by prosthetic device companies; knives under contract companies' tang markings are quite rare and valuable.

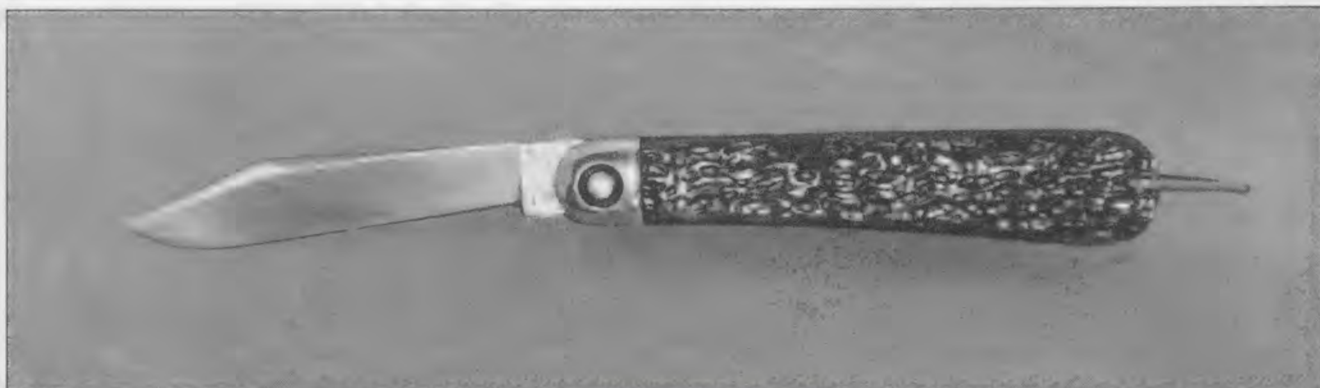
BLADE: 98 percent, patina and light scratches, very full tines.

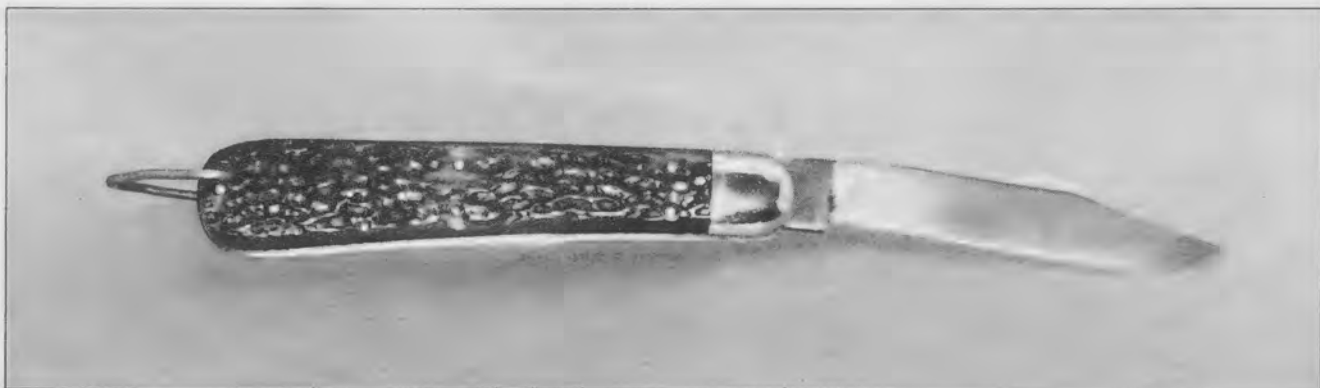
HANDLES: Cast aluminum, very good.

FUNCTION: Excellent, seats deep.

COMMENTS: Hard to find! Most of the examples still around are dented, corroded, or rusted, and often the fork tines are broken.

VALUE: $500–$600 Rare **MINT:** $900 Ex/5





KNIFE: Press Button Invincible Model, 5 inches, clip blade, German silver bolster, steel lined, brown picked-bone handles with shackle. Tang marked "PRESS BUTTON KNIFE CO., WALDEN, N.Y."

BLADE: 95 percent, 1/8-inch short, pitted on backside near tang, sharpened and cleaned.

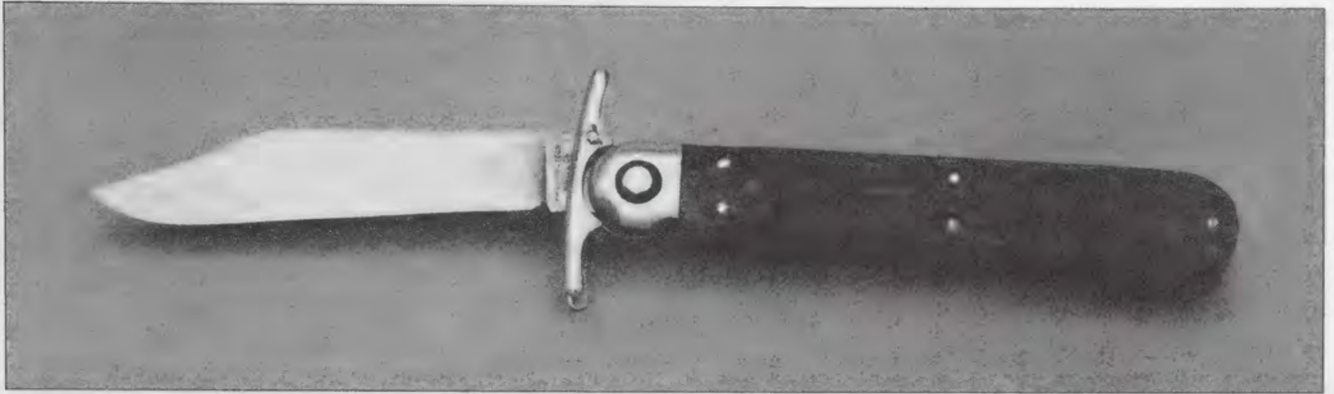
HANDLES: Nice bone.

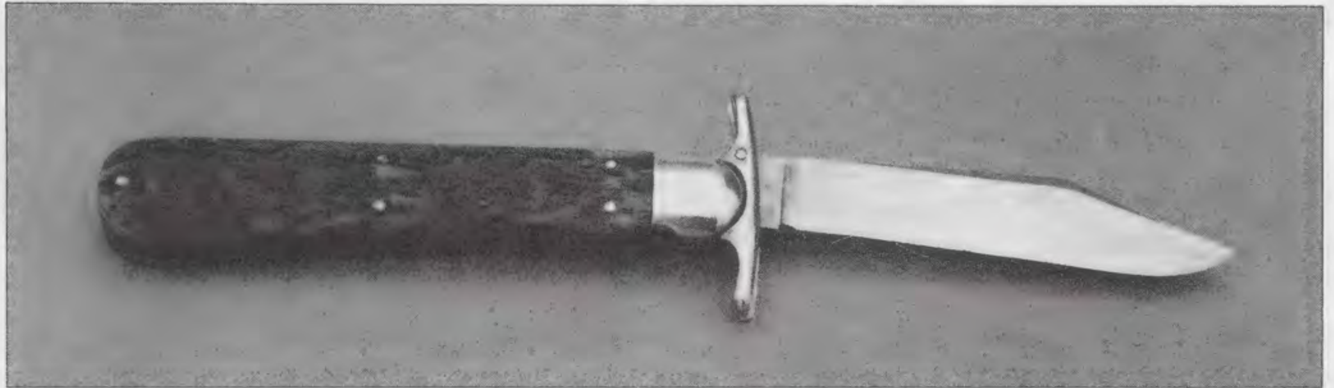
FUNCTION: Good action, seats deep.

COMMENTS: Brass lanyard ring (not original).

VALUE: $275–$350 **MINT:** $550 VG/4+

Case 4:23-cv-00547-O Document 20-2 Filed 10/06/23 Page 87 of 555 PageID 205





KNIFE: Press Button Victor Model, 5 inches, clip blade, German-silver bolster, steel lined, brown picked-bone handles, folding guard. Tang marked "PRESS BUTTON KNIFE CO., WALDEN, N.Y."

BLADE: 96 percent, 3/16-inch short, light sharpening, hint of etch (point of V and top line).

HANDLES: Nice bone, small pin crack on bottom, small repair near bolster.

FUNCTION: Good, seats deep.

COMMENTS: Folding (floating cross bar) guard original and intact (often missing)

VALUE: $350–$450 **MINT:** $650 Ex/5

KNIFE: Press Button Guardian Model, 5 inches, clip blade, steel lined, nickel-silver bolster, fixed cross guard, brown picked-bone handles. Blade lightly etched with eagle and Guardian logo, made around 1914. Rare. Tang marked "PRESS BUTTON KNIFE CO., WALDEN, N.Y."

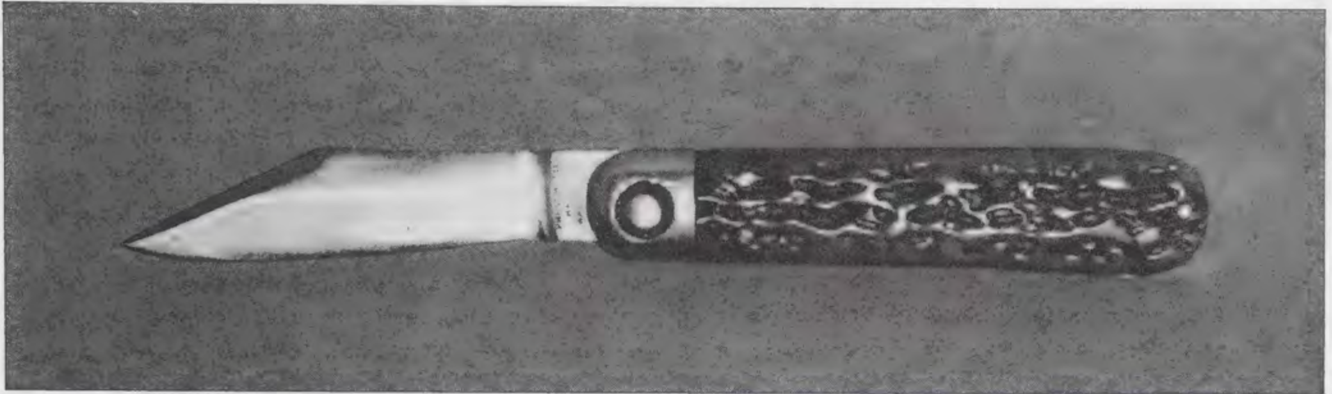
BLADE: 96 percent, 3/16-inch short, some pitting, visible etch (part of eagle and Guardian).

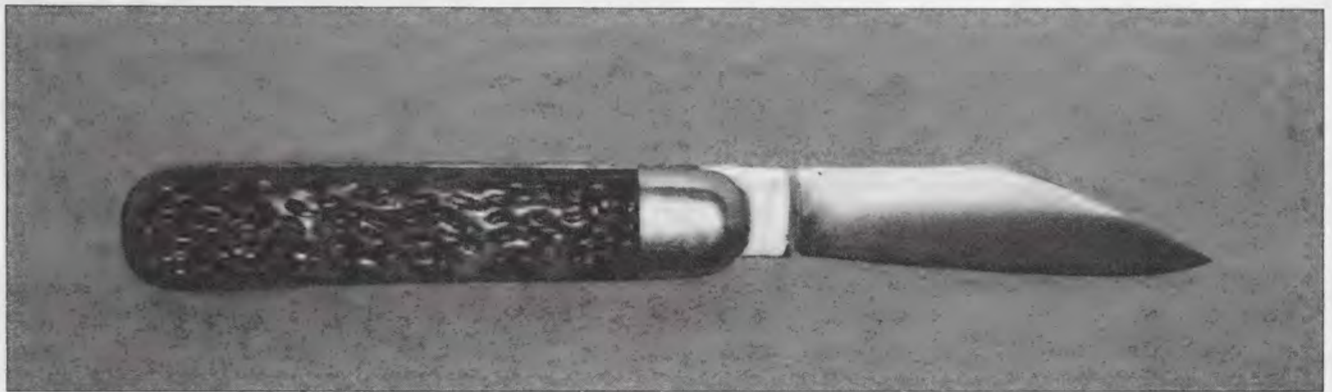
HANDLES: Beautiful bone. Perfect.

FUNCTION: Great; seats well.

COMMENTS: Rare piece! Very authentic. (NOTE: This style was only made from 1914 until 1923 when Press Button went out of business. Any example of them in any condition is highly sought after in the collector's market.)

VALUE: $1,100–$1,500 Rare **MINT:** $2,000 Ex/5





KNIFE: Press Button Business Model, 4 inches, clip blade, steel lined, German-silver bolster, brown picked-bone handles. Tang marked "PRESS BUTTON KNIFE CO., WALDEN, N.Y."

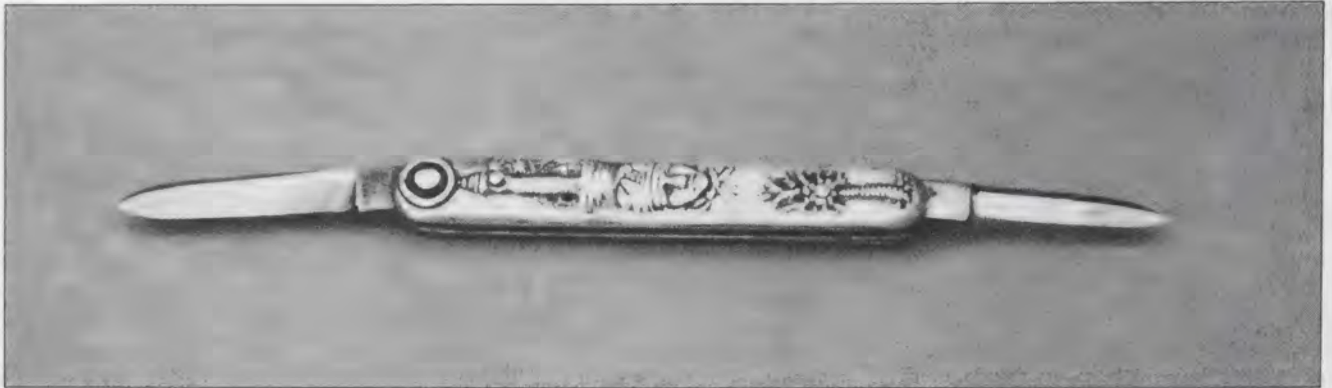
Blade: 1/8-inch short, heavily ground (tang stamp affected).

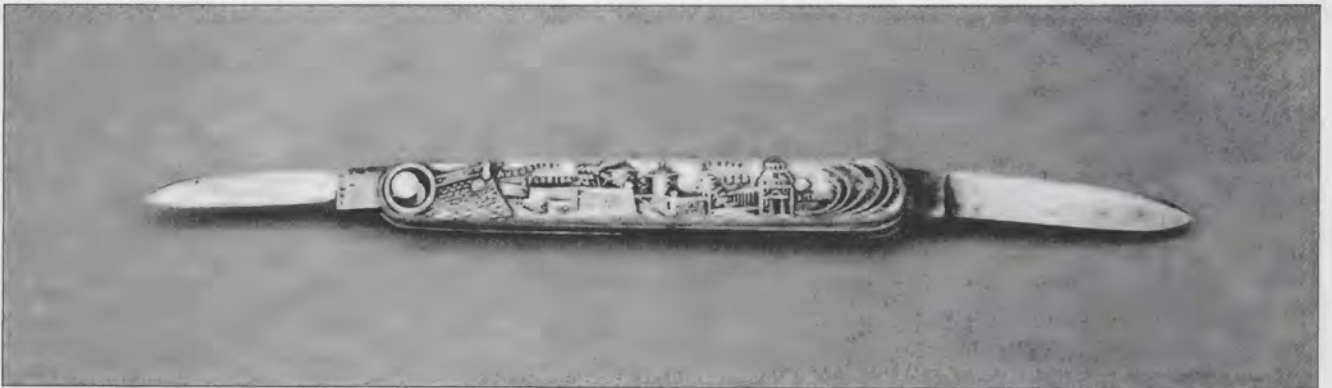
HANDLES: Missing one pin, repaired (piece glued in, bottom pin).

FUNCTION: Sits a little "proud" but works great.

COMMENTS: Hard to find in great shape because they were small enough to be used a lot, and most have been heavily sharpened; good example; very functional.

VALUE: $175–$250 **MINT:** $600 G/3





KNIFE: Press Button, 2 7/8 inches, double blade, sterling-silver, front embossed with Indian and palm tree, back reads "ST. AUGUSTINE, FLORIDA, SETTLED 1565," with scene. Tang marked "PRESS BUTTON KNIFE CO., WALDEN, N.Y."

BLADES: Main: 97 percent, light sharpening and patina. Pen: 98 percent, light sharpening and patina.

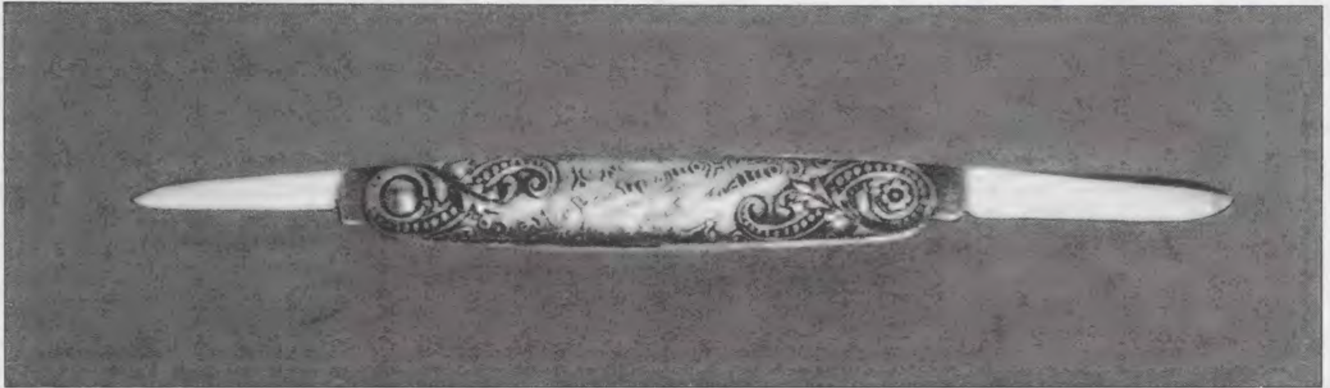
HANDLES: Sterling silver with scenes of historic St. Augustine, Florida; one handle loose.

FUNCTION: Sluggish but works, and pen blade is a little sloppy; but both lock and seat OK.

COMMENTS: This is a rare knife that shows an example of a 2 7/8-inch, double-bladed Walden Press Button knife with embossed metal (sterling) handles. It was one of the first commemorative knives related to the Schrade Company. This policy is still used by the company, which pioneered the concept.

VALUE: $175–$275 **MINT:** $550 G/3

Case 4:23-cv-00547-O Document 20-2 Filed 10/06/23 Page 91 of 555 PageID 209



Knife: Press Button, 3 3/8 inches, embossed sterling handles. One side has Old Man Winter scene, the other side "Compliments of Home Insurance Co., N.Y." Double blade. Tang marked "PRESS BUTTON KNIFE CO., WALDEN, N.Y., U.S. Pat. 470605."

Blade: Main: 90 percent, 3/8-inch short, sharpened, patina and light pitting. Pen: 85 percent, 1/4-inch short, sharpened, patina and light pitting.

Handles: Sterling, missing one pin and patina.

Function: Good action, tight.

Comments: Head of satyr on handles. This represents an example of a 3 3/8-inch, double-bladed Walden Press Button with embossed metal (sterling) handles.

Value: $175–$275 **Mint:** $475 VG/4

Case 4:23-cv-00547-O Document 20-2 Filed 10/06/23 Page 92 of 555 PageID 210

KNIFE: Press Button, 3 3/8 inches, jigged-bone handles, double blade. Tang marked "PRESS BUTTON KNIFE CO., WALDEN, N.Y., U.S. Pat. 470605."

BLADE: Main: 84 percent, 3 3/8-inch short, heavily sharpened, patina, scratched. Pen: 86 percent, 3/16-inch short, heavily sharpened, patina.

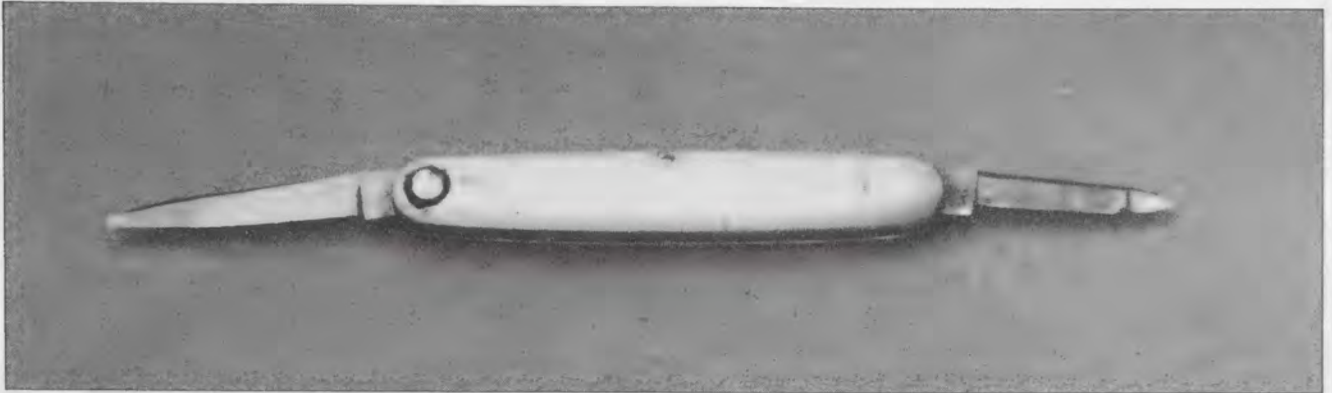
HANDLES: Beautiful jigged bone, perfect!

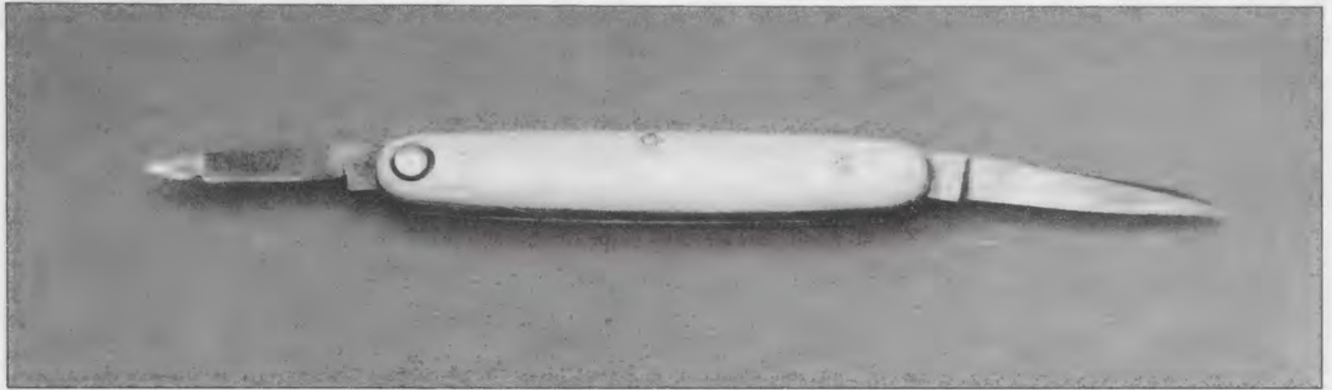
FUNCTION: Both blades "kick back," master a bit high.

COMMENTS: Condition of blades hurts the value.

VALUE: $175–$275 **MINT:** $450 VG/4+

Case 4:23-cv-00547-O Document 20-2 Filed 10/06/23 Page 93 of 555 PageID 211





KNIFE: Press Button, 3 3/8 inches, double blade, small blade nail file, imitation ivory celluloid handles. Tang marked "PRESS BUTTON KNIFE CO., WALDEN, N.Y., U.S. Pat. 470605."

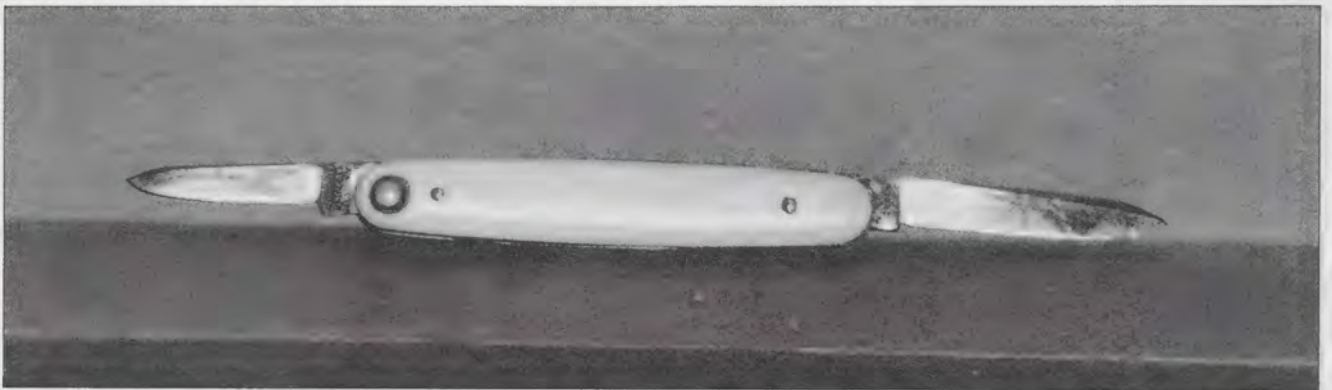
BLADE: Main: 1/4-inch short, heavily sharpened, cleaned and lightly pitted. File: 1/16-inch short; file worn and ground.

HANDLES: Ivory celluloid chipped and a bit rough.

FUNCTION: Both blades sit "proud"; master has "wobble."

COMMENTS: This knife shows the tremendous effect that condition has on value.

VALUE: $75–$150 **MINT:** $350 G/3-



KNIFE: Press Button, 3 3/8 inches, double blade, imitation ivory handles marked "Compliments of Johann Hoff." Tang marked "PRESS BUTTON KNIFE CO., WALDEN, N.Y., U.S. Pat. 470605."

BLADE: Main: 1/8-inch short, sharpened, some rust. Pen: 1/8-inch short, sharpened, light scratches.

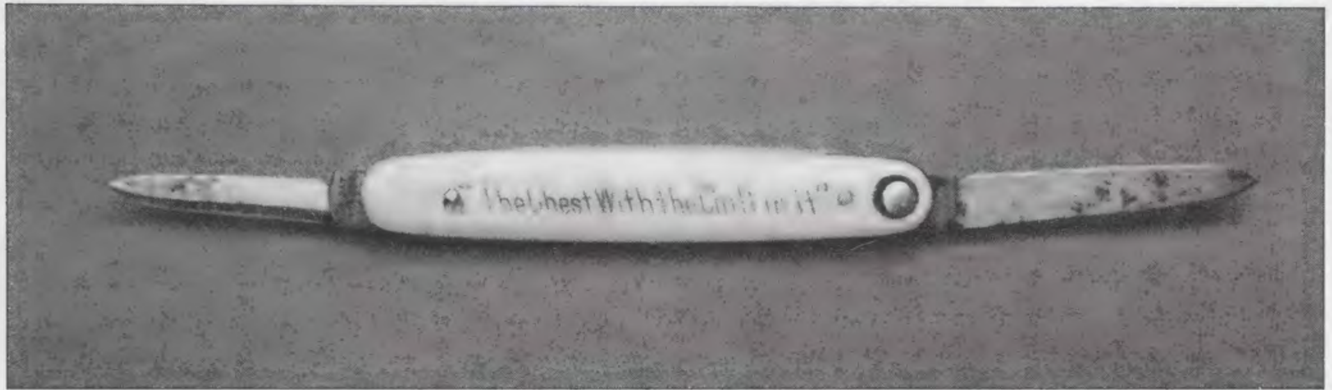
HANDLES: Ivory celluloid. With advertising; front handle loose; slight shrinking.

FUNCTION: Good, small blade sticks, both look and seat OK.

COMMENTS: An example of this company's 3 3/8-inch double-blade advertising type knife in celluloid.

VALUE: $125–$175 **MINT:** $350 VG/4-

Case 4:23-cv-00547-O Document 20-2 Filed 10/06/23 Page 95 of 555 PageID 213



Knife: Press Button, 3 3/8 inches, double blade, imitation ivory handles marked "White Mountain Refrigerators" on one side and "The Chest With the Chill in it" on the other. Tang marked "PRESS BUTTON KNIFE CO., WALDEN, N.Y., U.S. Pat. 470605."

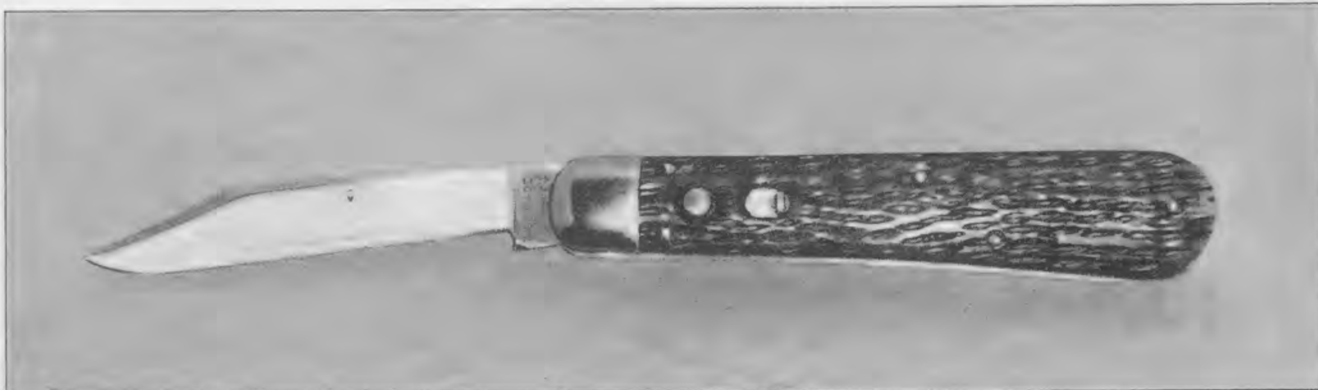
Blade: Main: 1/8-inch short, sharpened, some rust.
Pen: 1/8-inch short, sharpened, some rust.

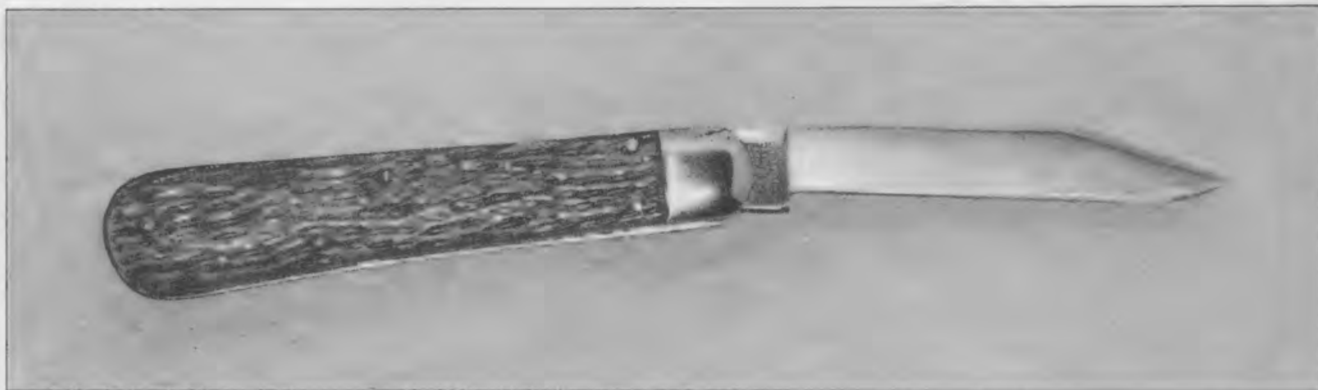
Handles: Ivory celluloid. With advertising.

Function: Good, both lock and seat OK.

Comments: This piece is an example of this company's 3 3/8-inch double-blade, advertising-type knife in celluloid.

Value: $125–$175 **Mint:** $350 VG/4-





KNIFE: Schrade Cutlery Company Model 1543 3/4; 4 7/8 inches, clip blade, steel lined, steel bolster, jigged brown bone handles. Tang marked "SCHRADE CUT. CO., WALDEN, N.Y., U.S. PATS, DEC 21, 09, SEPT 13, 10, JUNE 6, 16."

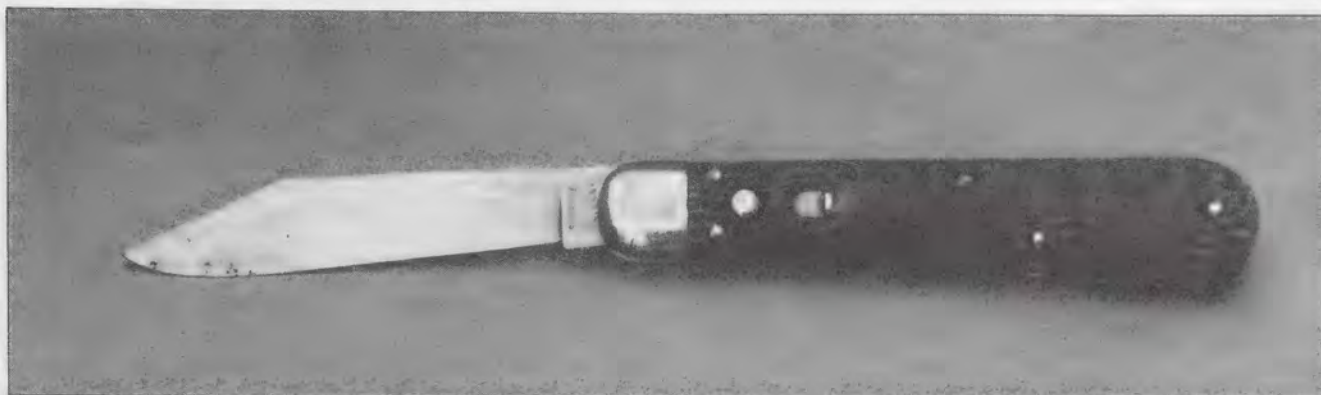
BLADE: 80+ percent, 1/4-inch short, heavily sharpened, patina and light pitting.

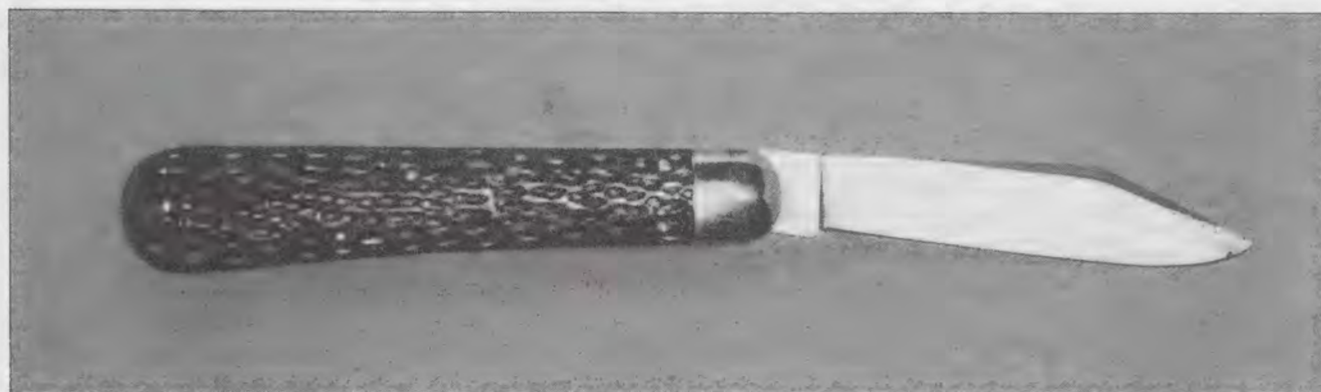
HANDLES: Nice bone, good color, excellent!

FUNCTION: Good action, seats OK.

COMMENTS: Even though the blade is down, good example with excellent handles.

VALUE: $150–$225 **MINT:** $525 G/3





KNIFE: Schrade Cutlery Company Model 1543, 4 7/8 inches, clip blade, steel lined, steel bolster, jigged brown bone handles. Tang marked "SCHRADE CUT. CO., WALDEN, N.Y., U.S. PATS, DEC 21, 09, SEPT 13, 10, JUNE 6, 16."

BLADE: 1/4-inch short, some pitting, scratches, and patina.

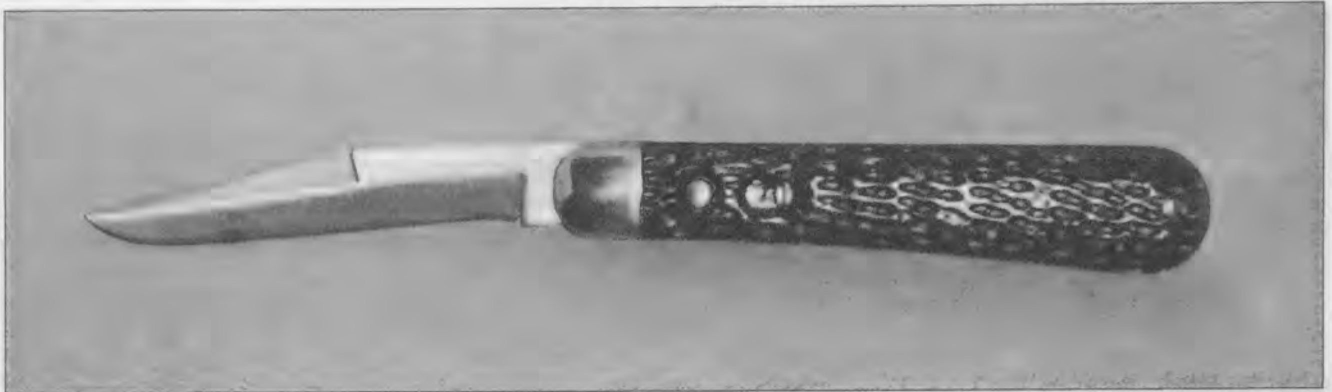
HANDLES: Nice bone, deep jig, 3/8-inch repair near bolster and 5/8-inch crack on front.

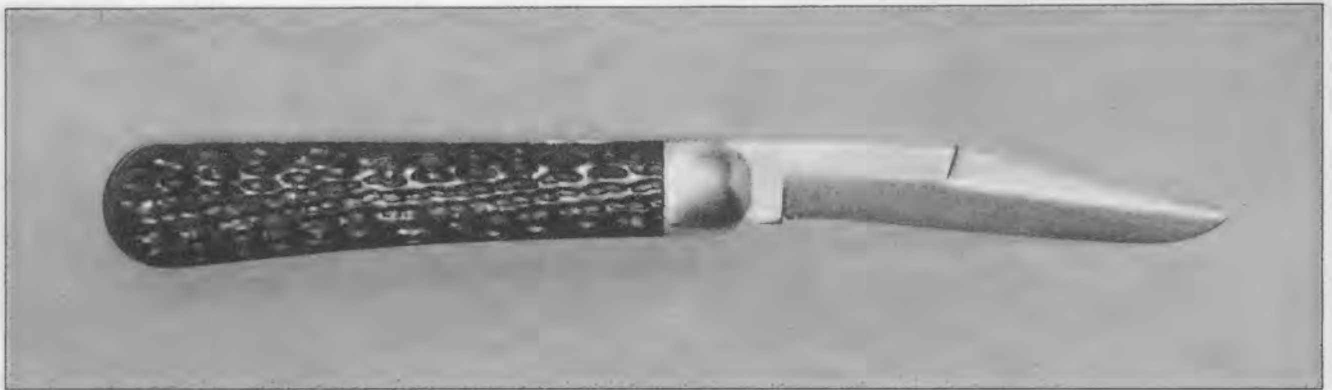
FUNCTION: Good action, seats deep.

COMMENTS: This is a nice knife, but repairs detract from value even when done well.

VALUE: $200–$275 **MINT:** $525 VG/4-

Case 4:23-cv-00547-O Document 20-2 Filed 10/06/23 Page 98 of 555 PageID 216





KNIFE: Schrade Cutlery Company Model 1613 3/4, 4 7/8 inches, saber blade, steel lined, nickel-silver bolster, jigged brown bone handles. Tang marked "SCHRADE CUT. CO., WALDEN, N.Y., U.S. PATS, DEC 21, 09, SEPT 13, 10, JUNE 6, 16."

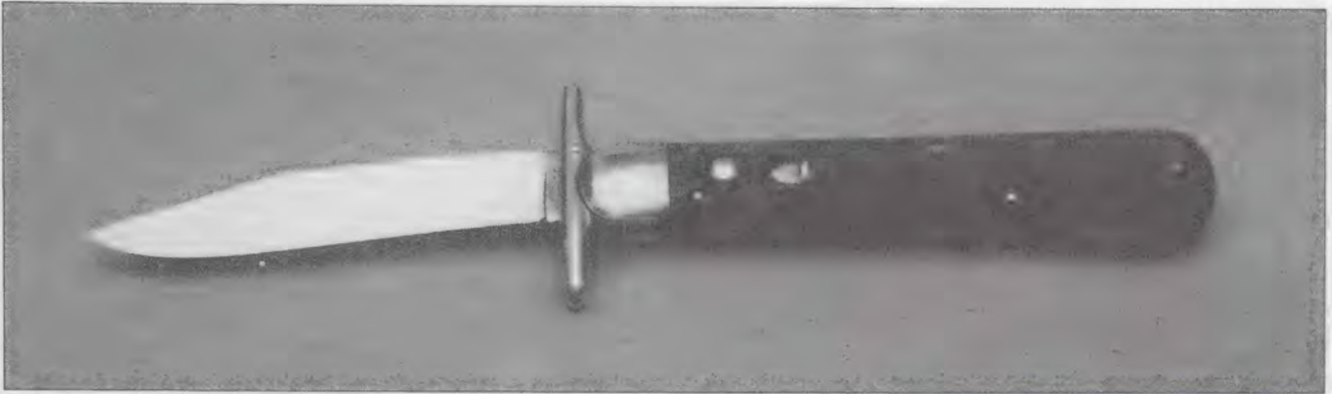
BLADE: 95 percent, 1/8-inch short, heavily sharpened, patina and light pitting, no etch.

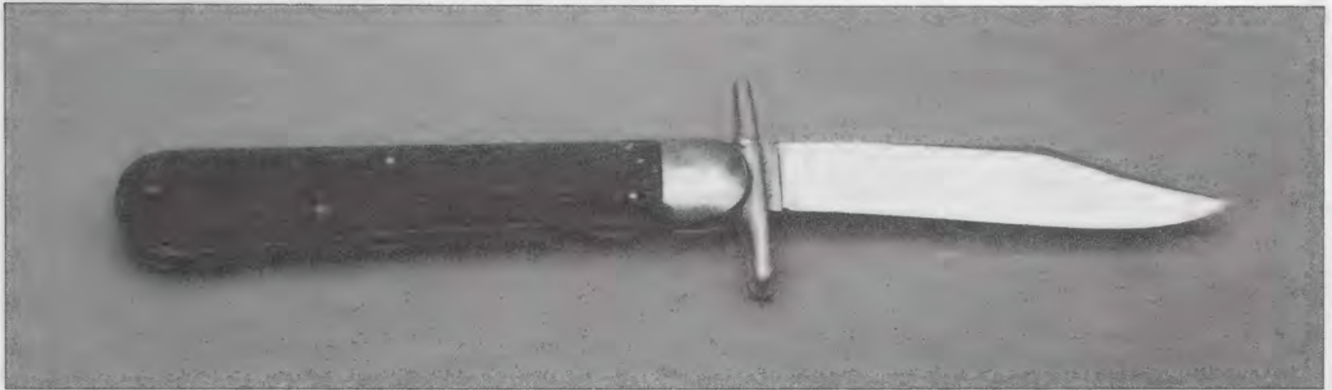
HANDLES: Nice bone, 3/8-inch repair by bolster.

FUNCTION: Great snap! Locks good, seats deep.

COMMENTS: Blade originally etched "Schrade Hunting Knife." This style of blade was only used on the 1613 3/4 model large folding hunter.

VALUE: $250–$325 **MINT:** $600 VG/4-





KNIFE: Schrade Cutlery Company Hunter's Pride Model G1543 3/4, 4 7/8 inches, clip blade, steel lined, nickel-silver bolster, folding guard, jigged-bone handles. Tang marked "SCHRADE CUT. CO., WALDEN, N.Y., U.S. PATS, DEC 21, 09, SEPT 13, 10, JUNE 6, 16."

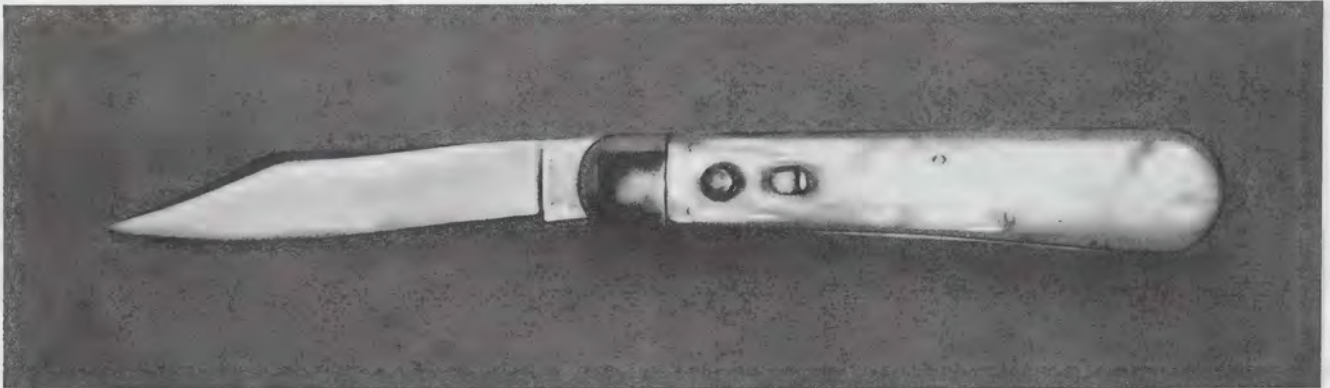
BLADE: 98 percent, 1/16-inch short, very full, light scratches, original nickel guards.

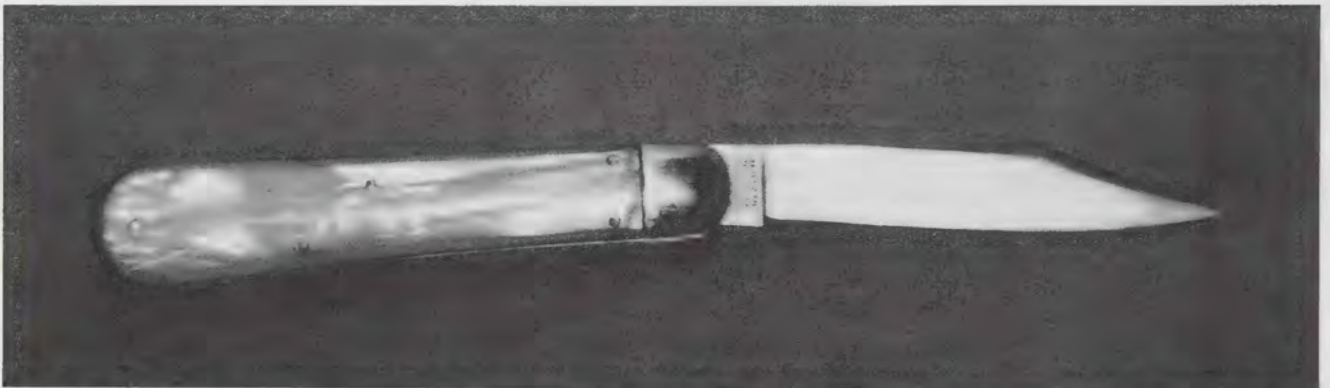
HANDLES: Jigged-bone handles.

FUNCTION: Great action, locks tight, seats deep.

COMMENTS: Blades were electro-etched, and through the years this etching often wore off (original etching "Hunter's Pride"). The floating guard often broke or was missing.

VALUE: $375–$475 **MINT:** $650 Ex/5





KNIFE: Schrade Cutlery Company Forest King Model 1544 3/4 BM, 4 7/8 inches, clip blade, steel lined, nickel-silver bolster, buttermilk celluloid handles. Tang marked "SCHRADE CUT. CO., WALDEN, N.Y., U.S. PATS, DEC 21, 09, SEPT 13, 10, JUNE 6, 16."

BLADE: 95+ percent, scratches, light pitting, sharpened.

HANDLES: Buttermilk, nice.

FUNCTION: Good action, seats well.

COMMENTS: This model was often electro-etched "Forest King." These knives have become quite rare and are sought after because of the celluloid imitation pearl (called "marine pearl" by the Schrade Company) used on the handles.

VALUE: $500-600 **MINT:** $800 Ex/5

About the Author

Richard Langston saw his first automatic knife at age 7 and fell under its spell. His early infatuation was destined to become a life-long love affair when he moved at age 9 with his family to Walden, New York, often referred to as the "Little Sheffield of America" since it was the home of the Schrade Cutlery, New York Knife, and Walden Knife companies. Here, he became fascinated by the stories told by townspeople about these heralded cutlery companies and their products. He loved all the knives, but it was the switchblade that stole his heart.

Rich's abiding interest in these old knives and their manufacturers prompted him to learn as much about them as possible. It soon became apparent to him, however, that there was not an authoritative reference to automatic knives, their history, and their value for collectors, and also that there was a great need for such a guide. Being a father to five children and having a career as a lieutenant with the New York State Department of Correction delayed his being able to produce this reference book. Now that he is retired, Rich is able to do historical research and lecture on the subject that he loves. He and his wife live Wallkill, New York.

If you would like more information about switchblades or would like for Rich to evaluate a knife, he can be reached by e-mail at: lt632ret@frontiernet.net.

ATHENS REGIONAL LIBRARY SYSTEM
3 1001 00031745 4

Athens-Clarke County Library
2025 Baxter Street
Athens, GA 30606
(706) 613-3650
Member: Athens Regional Library System

Case 4:23-cv-00547-O Document 20-2 Filed 10/06/23 Page 106 of 555 PageID 224

It has been more than 20 years since a major work on switchblades has been published, and never has one showcased as many different types of automatic knives as Rich Langston's welcome new book. *The Collector's Guide to Switchblade Knives* contains a history of the early cutlery industry in the United States, a detailed examination of the evolution of switchblade knives, and a user-friendly illustrated guide that helps collectors and novices alike identify all kinds of automatic knives from one-of-a-kind museum-quality antiques to Great-Grandfather's old folder that's been gathering dust in the attic for the past 100 years.

Using a dual grading system, this reference gives an honest appraisal of more than 160 automatic knives based on manufacturer, tang markings, condition, availability, functioning, opening mechanism, and handle and blade materials. All of the knives in this book are from the author's personal collection, which he has been assembling since the age of 7 when he saw his first switchblade and fell under its spell. The knives include examples from the early days of the fledgling cutlery industry in New England to the current imports finding their way into the United States (despite the restrictive laws in the late 1950s that all but outlawed switchblades in this country). New opportunities to acquire and trade switchblades through such Web sites as eBay have sent prices skyrocketing, making older price guides totally unreliable.

This handsome hardcover addition to the cutlery library is for collectors, switchblade aficionados, edged-weapons enthusiasts, historians, or anyone even thinking of buying or selling a switchblade.

A PALADIN PRESS BOOK • ISBN 1-58160-283-9

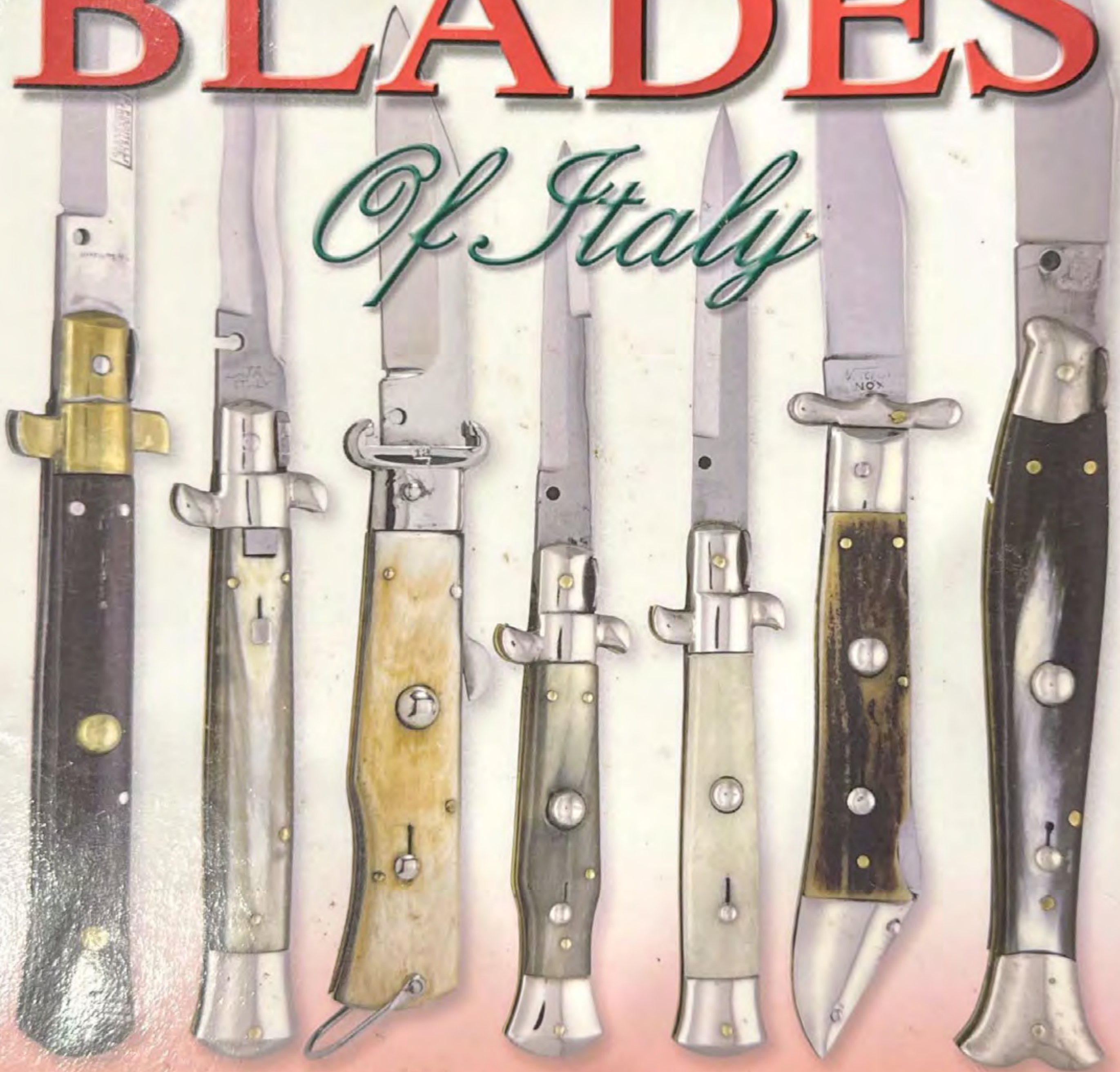
KnifeRights MSJ App.000101

Visit our Web site at www.paladin-press.com

EXHIBIT F

SWITCH BLADES

Of Italy



BY TIM ZINSER, DAN FULLER AND NEAL PUNCHARD
PHOTOGRAPHY BY BEN SALTZMAN

Introduction

Switchblade. The word conjures images from hundreds of movies: James Dean defending his honor at the planetarium; Glenn Ford disarming Vic Morrow in the classroom; Ernest Borgnine and Frank Sinatra facing off in a Honolulu alley. People who have never seen an automatic knife in person have been force-fed media images for fifty years. And those images have endowed the humble automatic knife with some fairly heavy social baggage, demonstrating the old Hollywood axiom that image is everything. Viewed from a pragmatic perspective, the chief historical function of the automatic knife has been that of a simple tool, useful when one needs a knife that is both small and can be opened with one hand. More mothers and grandmothers wielded switchblades in the last century than all the teenage gang bangers together. With the sock stretched over the darning egg, one hand held the work while the handy little Schrade could be opened one-handed to cut the thread. Or the stockman could hold an animal's lead and perform whatever task was at hand by flipping open his Case 6171. Not to be disingenuous, of course, the automatic knife was also identified as a favorite of teenage bad boys at least as early as 1950 ("The Toy that Kills," *Ladies Home Companion*, November 1950, p. 38ff). In any case, both descriptions probably lack something of the truth, especially by the 1950s.

Switchblade. The very word itself may bear some of the responsibility for the negative image that led to its being banned in 1958. And such a perfect word it is. Somehow it is hard to imagine "press button," "push button," "automatic," or even "spring knife" engendering sufficient media and governmental attention to accomplish what the 1958 Switchblade Act accomplished. What a word, *switchblade*. And we don't even know where the word came from. It first appeared in the nineteenth century as a variant of knife switch, a device for closing an electrical circuit, but there is no evidence of any transfer from electricity to automatic knife. Most dictionaries, including those devoted to slang, suggest that the word first appeared about 1946, but provide no etymology or other information about its origin. The most intriguing source suggests that the first written use of the word can

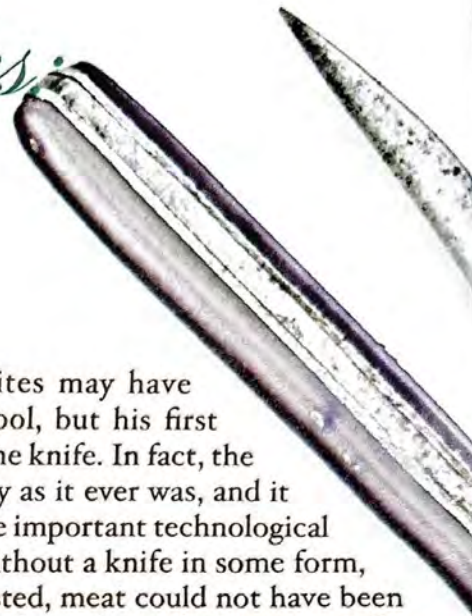
be found in Langston Hughes' poem "The Negro Mother." This is an appealing detail in that much slang has always derived from one subculture or another, and African-American culture has probably been the richest source. The problem is that no available copy of the poem contains the word. This does not mean that Hughes did not use the term, perhaps in an earlier draft, but it creates a dead end to that particular search.

Despite the mystery surrounding the origin of the word, there is one aspect that is nearly universal. Ask anyone, whether a person who has only seen switchblades in the movies or an advanced collector, to close his eyes and visualize a switchblade and almost without exception he will think of an Italian stiletto. Considering that both the term and the knife arrived in this country almost simultaneously in the years after World War II, it is perhaps not surprising that the two are essentially synonymous. Of course, there are switchblades that are not Italian stilettos, and there are Italian stilettos that are not switchblades, but to the mainstream culture of the modern world they amount to the same thing.

So it is not surprising that the hottest area of switchblade collecting and the richest area for historical study is the Italian stiletto—not that much background is known. As with the word itself, much of the history of the Italian switchblade is rather murky, but a good bit of painstaking research has provided some of the answers. Before we dive into that discussion, however, several things need to be observed. First, these Italian switchblades have more in common with baseball cards and comic books than with fine Renaissance daggers or even Randall knives. Even Latama, the purveyor of perhaps the finest quality knives, advertised switchblades as "novelties". And even the Italian craftsmen who made the knives didn't take them seriously. The blades were seldom hardened—meaning that they would not hold an edge—nor were they intended to be working knives or used for anything—except perhaps stabbing. Perhaps part of the enduring charm of the Italian stilettos is their essential uselessness. In truth, their only real virtues are that they look neat and that there is something quintessentially cool about a knife that opens by pushing a button. While there are a few instances of an Italian switchblade being used in a fight—and those instances are very few, despite what unsubstantiated media reports say—it would not be a serious knife fighter's choice of weapon. Any decent fixed-blade military or hunting knife would be a much better choice. But the psychological effect, a slim blade whipping out with a sinister "snick," the characteristic that Hollywood has exploited in over 400 films, that is an advantage that belongs to the switchblade alone.

In the pages that follow, you will see appealing blades, unique knives, beautiful handles, and intricate mechanisms. As with so many collectibles, however, most of these characteristics were incidental to their original manufacture. Collectors wax poetically over the beauty of the horn scales. Enthusiasts talk at length about minor variations in button attachment and placement, about minor variations in mechanism, about differences between steel and brass liners, about short versus long bolsters, about slight differences in blade grinds. Little of this was of importance to the knifemakers themselves except as it made their task easier, speeded up the process, or represented an improvement in function. Which is not to say that the cutlers did nor take pride in their work. In fact, it is the fact that they did take such pride that accounts for much of the knives' appeal today. But these old cutlers were also realists and never thought that they were laboring in "the golden age" of switchblades or turning out *objets d'arts* for the ages.

Before Switchblades: The Folding Knife



A stick for digging termites may have been early man's first tool, but his first tool of significance was the knife. In fact, the knife remains as important today as it ever was, and it could be argued that it was a more important technological advance than even the wheel. Without a knife in some form, grain could not have been harvested, meat could not have been butchered, enemies could not have been dispatched. Do you believe your computer to be indispensable? Consider your knife. You couldn't eat, dress, or shave without the knife in one of its myriad forms. From childbirth to the guillotine, some sharp-edged cutting tool is part of the absolute, visceral fabric of our lives.

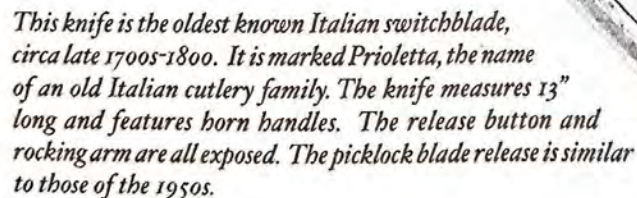
Considering the importance of knives in the development of human civilization, it is little wonder that the history and development of cutlery is an impossibly broad subject for any one study, but before we focus on automatic knives, some background

information may prove useful. From the earliest flint scraper or obsidian blade, there was a steady—but slow—progression in the technology of cutlery from the first metal knives of bronze through the iron age up to the development of steel. Before there could be automatic knives, though, there had to be folding knives. For whatever reason — convenience or concealment one must assume — some enterprising knifemaker living in the Roman Empire created the folding knife. These first folders lacked a backspring and were held in position, open or closed, solely by friction. Early metal springs were used on the first wheelock rifles in the middle of the sixteenth century and were rather too large and crude-looking to have had much attraction for knifemakers.

Today, the term "spring knife" may conjure up an image of a modern automatic, but the term originally referred to the first folding knives to be constructed with a back spring, which helped hold a knife open or closed and was invented sometime around the middle of the eighteenth century. What seems to have made possible this revolutionary step in the history of the folding knife was the invention of a much improved and much smaller spring by the clockmaker Benjamin Huntsman, in 1742.

This modification marked a significant advance in the utility of the folding knife, and the fascination and experimentation with springs that must have been involved resulted shortly thereafter in a spring-fired folding blade knife, a knife better known today as a switchblade. The first spring-fired blade that can be authenticated appeared in Europe, probably Italy, in the late eighteenth century, with knifemakers in other countries, especially France and England, not far behind.

Those first automatic knives of the late 1700s-early 1800s, including those made in Italy, were not so far removed from the modern stiletto-style Italian switchblades. Upon comparison, both



This knife is the oldest known Italian switchblade, circa late 1700s-1800. It is marked Prioletta, the name of an old Italian cutlery family. The knife measures 13" long and features horn handles. The release button and rocking arm are all exposed. The picklock blade release is similar to those of the 1950s.

EXHIBIT G

POCKET-KNIVES

THE COLLECTOR'S GUIDE TO IDENTIFYING, BUYING, AND ENJOYING VINTAGE POCKETKNIVES

Bernard Levine

POCKET-KNIVES

THE COLLECTOR'S GUIDE TO IDENTIFYING, BUYING, AND ENJOYING VINTAGE POCKETKNIVES

Bernard Levine

COURAGE BOOKS

CONTENTS

INTRODUCTION 6

HISTORY OF POCKETKNIVES 9

JACK KNIFE, PEN KNIFE, AND MULTI-BLADE 12

MAKING POCKETKNIVES 23

THE MOST POPULAR BRANDS OF POCKETKNIVES 28

FANCY HANDLES 57

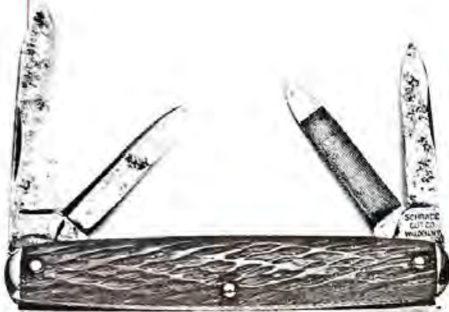
HAND CRAFTED FOLDING KNIVES 63

COUNTERFEITS 67

KEYS TO COLLECTING POCKETKNIVES 70

FURTHER READING 74
USEFUL ADDRESSES 79
INDEX 80

ABOVE
Schrade LB-7 folding hunter, custom scrimshaw deer head by Jim Gullette, Greer, South Carolina, 1979.



ABOVE
Schrade Cutlery Co., Walden, N.Y., four blade senator penknife. Schrade "peach seed" jigged bone.

ABOVE
Schrade Cutlery Co., Walden, N.Y., Safety Push Button Knife, celluloid handles. (Note: in the United States, switchblade knives are illegal to transport in interstate commerce, and illegal to possess in all but two or three states.)

... After 1960 the trademark DIAMOND EDGE was applied to some of these knives.

In 1943 the Mirandos and Fazzano joined forces with Albert M. Baer of Ulster, and in 1946 they together took over Schrade Cutlery Co. The resulting Imperial Knife Associated Companies become the world's leading cutlery manufacturer.

SCHRADE CUTLERY CO./G. SCHRADE/ SCHRADE-WALDEN/IMPERIAL-SCHRADE

George Schrade was one of the most prolific and influential inventors in American cutlery history. In 1892–93 he introduced his Press-Button knife. It was the first switchblade suited to mass production methods, although automatic opening knives made by hand had been around for more than a century.

In 1903 George Schrade sold the rights to this knife, which has the release button in the front bolster, to Walden Knife Co., then owned by E. C. Simmons Hardware Co. The following year, he and his brothers Louis and William started their own Schrade Cutlery Co., also in Walden, New York. Besides a full line of conventional knives, they made Schrade Safety Push Button knives, with the release in the handle and, after 1906, with a sliding safety latch beside the button. More significantly, George Schrade invented and manufactured an array of automatic machines for making and assembling pocketknife components, which were widely adopted across the U.S., and in Britain, France, and Germany.

In 1925 George Schrade formed the George Schrade Knife Co. in Bridgeport, Connecticut. Its ultra-modern knives, such as the patented "Wire-Jack," excite less collector interest today than the more traditional patterns made by Schrade Cutlery Co.

George Schrade died in 1945, and the following year his brothers sold Schrade Cutlery Co. to "Kingston" (Ulster and Imperial, see pages 38 and 39). The resulting Imperial Schrade Associated Companies adopted the brand name SCHRADE-WALDEN for its premium line made in Schrade's old Walden, New York, plant. Schrade-Walden knives are more popular with collectors today than are the older ones from Schrade Cutlery, (perhaps because they are more familiar).

In 1942 Albert M. Baer of Ulster had brought his brother,

Case 4:23-cv-00547-O Document 20-2 Filed 10/06/23 Page 118 of 555 PageID 236

Henry, into the firm. In the early 1950s Henry Baer became the president of the Schrade division, and Schrade's premium "Uncle Henry" line is named after him.

After World War II Imperial Knife Associated Cos. both expanded and consolidated. At various times the firm owned major factories in France, Germany, and England (1977–1982). The Walden operation was closed about 1973. In 1984 Fazzano and the Mirandos sold their interests to Albert M. Baer, and the firm became Imperial Schrade Corporation. All U.S. pocket and sport knife production was consolidated in a new plant in Ellenville. Today all the "Jackmaster" type knives are made in Listowel, Ireland.

Today Schrade offers a wide array of commemorative and limited edition knives for collectors. Best known is the annual "Schrade Scrimshaw" wildlife series, made since 1976.

CAMILLUS CUTLERY CO. In 1894 Charles Sherwood built and operated a small pocketknife plant in Camillus, New York. From 1896 to 1898 he leased it to Millard Robeson. Then,

ABOVE
Annual "Schrade Scrimshaw" wildlife limited edition set.

ABOVE
Two A. W. Wadsworth & Sons, Austria, deerfoot folding knives, imported by Adolph Kastor & Bros., New York, from Bohemia prior to World War I.

KnifeRights MSJ App.000113

EXHIBIT H

You are Viewing a Members-Only article
Click Here to go back to Portal

NATIONAL SWITCHBLADE LAWS UPDATE

Date posted: April 24, 2023

National Switchblade Laws Update

By Evan F. Nappen, Attorney at Law

I wrote the book Knife Laws of the U.S.: Loopholes, Pitfalls & Secrets. Since its publication in 2015 many states have repealed their anti-knife laws.

Here is an update on the progress of the Knife Liberty Movement with regards to switchblade law reform throughout the United States.

45 States now allow possession to one degree or another (as of April 15, 2023).

Case 4:23-cv-00547-O Document 20-2 Filed 10/06/23 Page 121 of 555 PageID 239

36 States have no restrictions on possession or everyday/open carry.

29 States allow concealed carry.

19 Switchblade Ban or Restriction Repeals since 2010: Alaska, Indiana, Kansas, Maine, Missouri, Montana, New Hampshire, Nevada, Ohio, Oklahoma, Pennsylvania, Tennessee, Texas, Virginia and Wisconsin

As of April 15, 2023: Alphabetical listing of a summary of states where civilian possession of switchblade/automatic knives are legal with any limitations noted. Dates are when ban was repealed. (* = Concealed Carry also legal)

Alabama*

Alaska* 2013

Arizona*

Arkansas*

California* (under 2 inches)

Colorado* 2017 (concealed under 3.5 inches for all knives)

Connecticut* (with valid hunting or fishing license OR 1.5 inches and under)

Florida *

Georgia* 2012

Idaho* (vague limitations on concealed carry, but permitted with CCW)

Illinois* 2017 (requires FOID card)

Indiana* 2013

Iowa* (concealed with CCW)

Kansas* 2013

Kentucky

Louisiana* 2018 – 2022 (concealed carry 2022)

Maine 2015

Massachusetts* (1.5 inches or less)

Maryland

Michigan* 2017

Minnesota (for “collectors” and/or as “curios or antiques”)

Mississippi

Missouri 2012

Montana* 2019

Nebraska

Nevada 2015

New Hampshire* 2010

New Jersey (for “lawful purpose” including specifically hunting & fishing, but no sales.)

New York (with valid hunting, fishing or trapping license, but no sales – NOTE: Gravity Knives and Balisongs LEGAL)

North Carolina

North Dakota

Ohio* 2021

Oklahoma* 2015 (Repeal was of the carry ban, possession was already legal)

Oregon* (concealed with CCW)

Pennsylvania 2022

Rhode Island* (concealed must be 3-inches or less)

South Carolina*

South Dakota*

Tennessee* 2014

Texas* (concealed with CCW) 2013

Utah* 2011 (concealed with CCW)

Vermont* (under 3 inches)

West Virginia 2020

Virginia* 2022 (Concealed 2023)

Wisconsin* 2016

Wyoming

Leave a comment

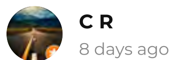
Comment *

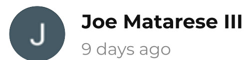
POST COMMENT

What our customers say

Google Rating
4.0 106 reviews

Write a review


C R
8 days ago
My experience with the Evan Nappen law rm was excellent.


Joe Matarese III
9 days ago
Lou and Evan Nappen are the very best with 2A matters in NJ

L Socas
1 month ago
Incredibly invaluable service. Very quick, professional, friendly

STEVEN SALVESEN
1 month ago
They KNOW firearms law.

Case 4:23-cv-00547-O Document 20-2 Filed 10/06/23 Page 124 of 555 PageID 242

They are truly dedicated to the ... court of law. Very satisfied with ... ... Posted on Google

Read more

Read more

Read more

CONTACT US

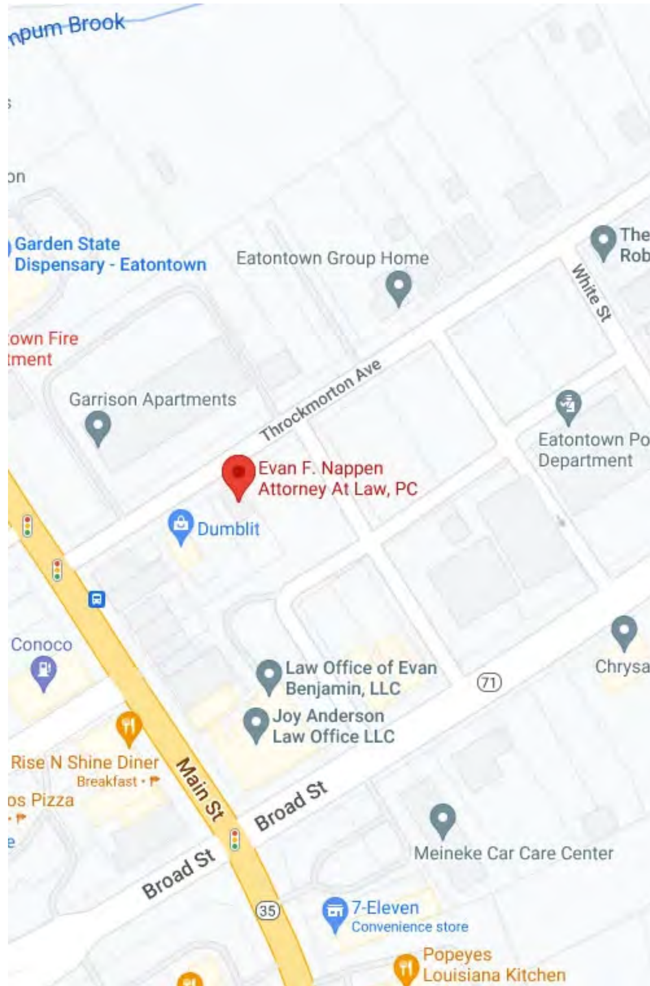
EVAN F. NAPPEN ATTORNEY AT LAW, PC

732-389-8888

Open · Closes 5PM

21 Throckmorton Ave.
Eatontown, NJ 07724

GET DIRECTIONS



Nappen

© 2023 Evan F. Nappen Attorney At Law, PC. All Rights Reserved. Privacy Policy Disclaimer

EXHIBIT I

pocketknife

Dictionary Thesaurus

pocketknife noun

pock·et·knife ˈpä-kət-ˌnīf

Synonyms of *pocketknife* >

: a knife that has one or more blades that fold into the handle and that can be carried in the pocket

Recent Examples on the Web

Old Mustangs had dashboards that resembled a good *pocketknife*, simple and purposeful with bits of tidy icing.

– Sam Smith, *Car and Driver*, 25 July 2023

Ward did not have a *pocketknife* on him, the complaint said.

Dictionary Thesaurus

– Hugh Garvey, *Sunset Magazine*, 21 Apr. 2023

See More

These examples are programmatically compiled from various online sources to illustrate current usage of the word 'pocketknife.' Any opinions expressed in the examples do not represent those of Merriam-Webster or its editors. Send us feedback about these examples.

First Known Use

1676, in the meaning defined above

Time Traveler

The first known use of *pocketknife* was in 1676

See more words from the same year

Dictionary Thesaurus

NGLISH - SPANISH-ENGLISH TRANSLATION

BRITANNICA ENGLISH - ARABIC TRANSLATION

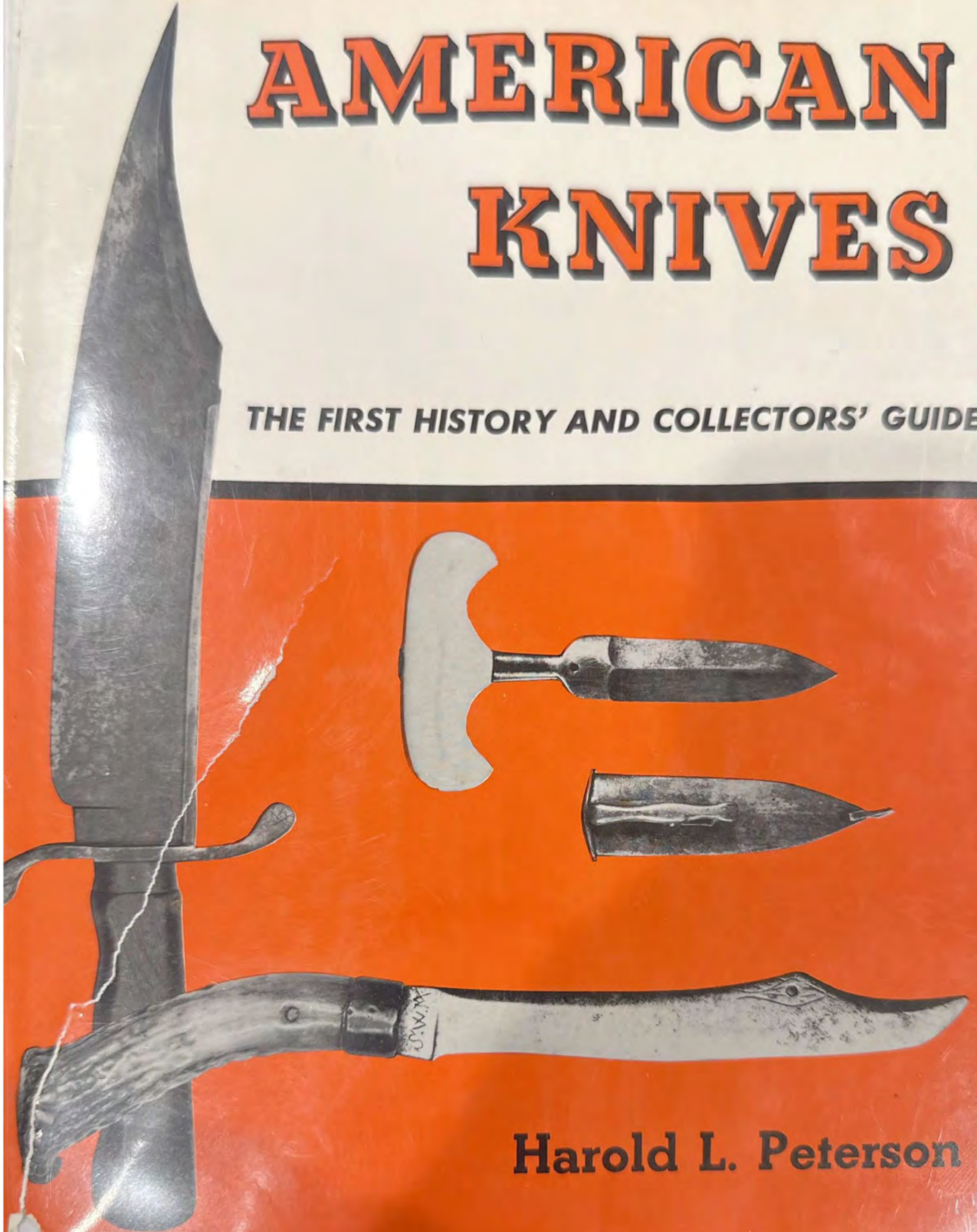
Browse the Dictionary: A B C D E F G H I J K L M N O P Q R S T U V W X Y Z 0-9 BIO GEO

Home | Help | About Us | Shop | Advertising Info | Dictionary API | Contact Us | Join MWU | Videos | Word of the Year | Kid's Dictionary | Law Dictionary | Medical Dictionary | Privacy Policy | Terms of Use

Browse the Thesaurus | Browse the Medical Dictionary | Browse the Legal Dictionary | Browse the Kid's Dictionary

© 2023 Merriam-Webster, Incorporated

EXHIBIT J


AMERICAN
KNIVES
THE FIRST HISTORY AND COLLECTORS' GUIDE
Harold L. Peterson

AMERICAN KNIVES

THE FIRST HISTORY AND COLLECTORS' GUIDE

by
Harold L. Peterson

CHARLES SCRIBNER'S SONS · NEW YORK

CONTENTS

	PREFACE	vii
I	*KNIFE NAMES*	1
II	*KNIVES OF THE EXPLORERS AND COLONISTS*	6
III	*THE BOWIE AND ITS ASSOCIATES*	25
IV	*ARMY KNIVES*	71
V	*NAVAL DIRKS AND OTHER KNIVES*	95
VI	*THE INDIAN AND HIS KNIFE*	115
VII	*POCKET KNIVES*	129
VIII	*THE MANUFACTURE AND SHARPENING OF KNIVES*	143
	APPENDIX *A List of American Makers, Marks and Dealers*	157
	INDEX	173

Case 4:23-cv-00547-O Document 20-2 Filed 10/06/23 Page 133 of 555 PageID 251

CHAPTER VII

POCKETKNIVES

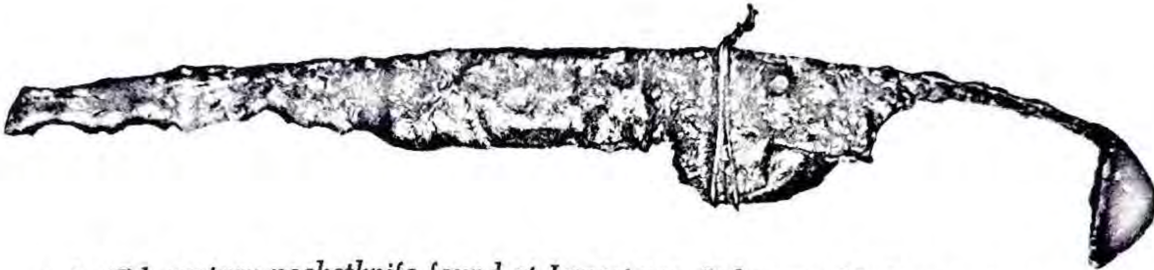


FIGURE 159

Early 17th-century pocketknife found at Jamestown. It has one blade as well as a small cup for measuring powders and so may well have belonged to one of the first apothecaries in the colony.

U. S. NATIONAL MUSEUM

OF ALL the forms of knives, the pocketknife has perhaps been man's most universal companion. Excavated specimens from Roman sites indicate that the folding pocketknife was popular at least as early as the first century A.D. In its infinite variations it is the possession of almost every man today. For centuries it has been both a household neighbor and the comrade of soldiers and sailors; the small boy's dream and the comfort of the aged whittler.

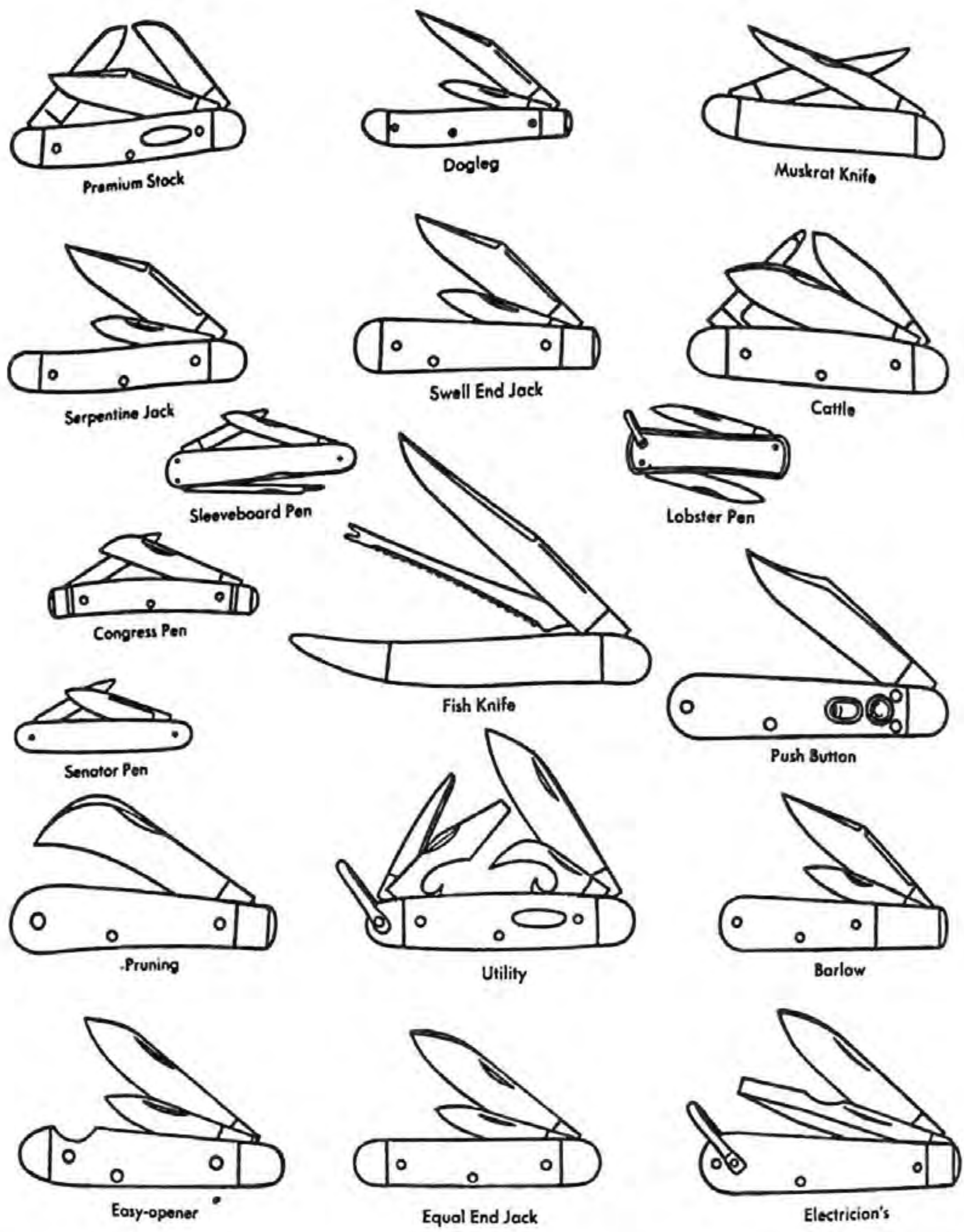
Throughout its history it has been known by a variety of names—clasp knife, pocketknife, jackknife, Barlow knife and penknife are a few of the commonest. Some of these are general terms. Some refer to specific designs.

One of the commonest of the specific names is "jackknife." It is also one of the oldest. European documents record the name as early as 1672, and it is probably much older. It occurs frequently in American colonial documents, and during the Revolution at least two states, New York and New Hampshire, required their militia to carry one. British and French soldiers also carried jackknives during that war, and many have been recovered from various forts and camp sites.

KnifeRights MSJ App.000128

Case 4:23-cv-00547-O Document 20-2 Filed 10/06/23 Page 134 of 555 PageID 252

FIGURE 172



Some of the more popular types of pocketknife made today. FROM *The Cutlery Story* BY LEWIS D. BEMENT, COURTESY THE ASSOCIATED CUTLERY INDUSTRIES.

KnifeRights MSJ App.000129

EXHIBIT K

KNIVES AND THE SECOND AMENDMENT

David B. Kopel,[1] Clayton E. Cramer[2] & Joseph Edward Olson[3]

This Article is the first scholarly analysis of knives and the Second Amendment. Under the Supreme Court's standard in District of Columbia v. Heller*, knives are Second Amendment "arms" because they are "typically possessed by law-abiding citizens for lawful purposes," including self-defense.*

There is no knife that is more dangerous than a modern handgun; to the contrary, knives are much less dangerous. Therefore, restrictions on carrying handguns set the upper limit for restrictions on carrying knives.

Prohibitions on carrying knives in general, or of particular knives, are unconstitutional. For example, bans of knives that open in a convenient way (e.g., switchblades, gravity knives, and butterfly knives) are unconstitutional. Likewise unconstitutional are bans on folding knives that, after being opened, have a safety lock to prevent inadvertent closure.

---

1. Adjunct Professor of Advanced Constitutional Law, Denver University, Sturm College of Law. Research Director, Independence Institute, Denver, Colorado. Associate Policy Analyst, Cato Institute, Washington, D.C. Professor Kopel is the author of fifteen books and over eighty scholarly journal articles, including the first law school textbook on the Second Amendment: NICHOLAS J. JOHNSON, DAVID B. KOPEL, GEORGE A. MOCSARY & MICHAEL P. O'SHEA, FIREARMS LAW AND THE SECOND AMENDMENT: REGULATION, RIGHTS, AND POLICY (Vicki Been et al. eds., 2012). Kopel's website is DAVE KOPEL, http://www.davekopel.org (last visited Aug. 20, 2013).

2. Adjunct History Faculty, College of Western Idaho. Mr. Cramer is the author of CONCEALED WEAPON LAWS OF THE EARLY REPUBLIC: DUELING, SOUTHERN VIOLENCE, AND MORAL REFORM (1999) (cited by Justice Breyer in McDonald v. City of Chicago, 130 S. Ct. 3020, 3132 (2010) (Breyer, J., dissenting)), and ARMED AMERICA: THE REMARKABLE STORY OF HOW AND WHY GUNS BECAME AS AMERICAN AS APPLE PIE (2006), and co-author of, among other articles, Clayton E. Cramer & Joseph Edward Olson, *What Did "Bear Arms" Mean in the Second Amendment?*, 6 GEO. J.L. & PUB. POL'Y 511 (2008) (cited by Justice Scalia in District of Columbia v. Heller, 554 U.S. 570, 588 (2008)), and Clayton E. Cramer, Nicholas J. Johnson & George A. Mocsary, *"This Right is Not Allowed by Governments that Are Afraid of the People": The Public Meaning of the Second Amendment When the Fourteenth Amendment Was Ratified*, 17 GEO. MASON L. REV. 823 (2010) (cited by Justice Alito in *McDonald*, 130 S. Ct. at 3039 n.21, 3041 n.25, 3043). Mr. Cramer's website is CLAYTON CRAMER'S WEB PAGE, http://www.clayton cramer.com (last visited Aug. 20, 2013).

3. Professor of Law, Hamline University School of Law, A.B. University of Notre Dame, J.D. (distinction) Duke University, LL.M. University of Florida. Professor Olson is the author of a book on federal taxation, thirteen articles in various fields, and four amicus briefs to the U.S. Supreme Court on Second Amendment issues, as well as co-author of Clayton E. Cramer & Joseph Edward Olson, *What Did "Bear Arms" Mean in the Second Amendment?*, 6 GEO. J.L. & PUB. POL'Y 511 (2008).

The authors thank Michael P. O'Shea, Eugene Volokh, Robert Dowlut, and Rhonda L. Thorne Cramer for their comments and suggestions.

Introduction

Although Second Amendment cases and scholarship have focused on guns, the Second Amendment does not protect the right to keep and bear firearms. The Amendment protects "arms," of which firearms are only one category. Only about half of U.S. households possess a firearm, and many of those households have only one or two firearms.[4] In contrast, almost every household possesses several knives, not including table knives. This Article analyzes Second Amendment protection for the most common "arm" in the United States—the knife.

Part I explains the differences among various types of edged weapons. It covers bayonets, swords, folding knives, automatic knives, switchblades, gravity knives, butterfly knives, and the targets of knife control in the nineteenth century, namely Bowie knives and Arkansas Toothpicks. After a review of the knives, Part II provides criminological data in support of the intuitively obvious proposition that knives are less dangerous than guns. Part III then analyzes the important nineteenth century jurisprudence involving Bowie knives and Arkansas Toothpicks. Part IV concludes the background review for why knives, as weapons, are constitutionally protected arms and argues that the Second Amendment protects knives generally, thus including all of the knives discussed in the earlier parts (with the possible exception of the now-obscure Arkansas Toothpick).

Part V considers the various standards of review that have been used for Second Amendment cases after the Supreme Court's standard-setting decision in *District of Columbia v. Heller*. Applying even the weakest relevant standard of review, intermediate scrutiny, it seems clear that some knife laws are unconstitutional, namely: bans on knives that open in a convenient manner, such as switchblades, gravity knives, and butterfly knives; bans on folding knives that have a safety lock; and laws that restrict carrying knives more stringently than carrying handguns. Part VI of this Article bolsters the argument that knives are constitutionally protected arms and describes some of the more oppressive, and likely unconstitutional, knife control laws in various states and cities.

---

4. *Variable Owngun: Have Gun in Home*, General Social Survey, http://www3.norc.org/GSS+Website/Browse+GSS+Variables/Subject+Index/ (follow "G" hyperlink; then follow "Guns" hyperlink; then follow "Ownership" hyperlink; then follow "HAVE GUN IN HOME" hyperlink) (last visited Aug. 20, 2013) (when asked if they had a gun in their home, 44.3 percent of those polled said yes, 54.9 percent no, and 0.8 percent refused to answer); Gary Kleck, Point Blank: Guns and Violence in America 54 (1991).

I. KNIVES BY TYPE

In the movie *Crocodile Dundee* (1986), when the hero is threatened by a New York City criminal with a switchblade, he says, "That's not a knife" and then pulls out a much larger blade and says, "*That's* a knife!"[5] Defining the different types of knives is a necessary first step because so much of the history of laws regulating knives is built around distinguishing which types of knives were regulated. Even so, the definition of many knife terms, as used in legislation and common parlance, is very unclear.

For modern general usage of the word knife, Wiktionary.com is a good guide. The website offers three definitions:

> 1. A utensil or a tool designed for cutting, consisting of a flat piece of hard material, usually steel or other metal (the blade), usually sharpened on one edge, attached to a handle. The blade may be pointed for piercing.
> 2. A weapon designed with the aforementioned specifications intended for slashing and/or stabbing and too short to be called a sword. A dagger.[6]
> 3. Any blade-like part in a tool or a machine designed for cutting, such as the knives for a chipper.[7]

This Article will ignore the third definition, which relates to the knives or blades in machines, such as wood-chippers. For the first definition (tools and utensils) and the second definition (short weapons), the physical description is the same; only the purpose of the knife is different. This Article focuses on "knife" as used in both the first and second definitions. In practice, most knives are suitable as tools and as weapons, but, of course, the reason that the Second Amendment is relevant to knives is their use as a weapon, which the first two definitions, and not the third, cover.

This Part presents an overview of knife use, the different types of knives, and how they are distinguished for legal and functional purposes. In addition, it details how many of the legal distinctions

---

5. Actually, the knife in the movie was a prop, and there was no real knife like it. In response to consumer demand, one company has started making a real knife that is a near-replica of the movie knife. *See* Fletcher Knives, *Crocodile Dundee Knife Finally in Production!!!!*, BLADEFORUMS.COM (May 1, 2010, 9:10 AM), http://www.bladeforums.com/forums/showthread.php/737272-Crocodile-Dundee-knife-finally-in-production!!!!. Of course, in New York City, carrying either of those knives is illegal. *See* N.Y.C., N.Y., ADMIN. CODE § 10-133 (2010).

6. In the interest of precision, it should be noted that a "dagger" is a type of knife; all daggers are knives, but most knives are not daggers.

7. *Knife*, WIKTIONARY, http://en.wiktionary.org/wiki/knife (last updated July 11, 2013, 10:19 PM).

Case 4:23-cv-00547-O Document 20-2 Filed 10/06/23 Page 139 of 555 PageID 257

between different types of knives are based on perception, rather than objective definitions related to public safety or the nature of the right to keep and bear arms.

A. Knives as Tools

By far the most frequent use of a knife is as a tool. As the Oregon Supreme Court observed in 1984 while summarizing the history of knives in America, "[i]t is clear, then, that knives have played an important role in American life, both as tools and as weapons. The folding pocketknife, in particular, since the early 18th century has been commonly carried by men in America and used primarily for work, but also for fighting."[8]

The twentieth century, the penknife was an essential accessory for every student or literate adult.[9] As the name suggests, the penknife was used for cutting and slitting a quill or sharpening a pencil.[10] Even after the steel pen rendered the quill obsolete, the term persisted for any small, folding pocketknife.[11] Schoolchildren frequently carried penknives, as is attested by the knife's frequent appearance in elementary school readers of the nineteenth century.[12] Of course, the penknife was also often used for the many other common purposes of knives.

Knives are important tools in many activities, such as hunting, where they are used by sportsman to fillet a fish or skin an animal. Many occupations continue to rely upon utility knives, such as

8. State v. Delgado, 692 P.2d 610, 614 (Or. 1984).

9. *See* Simon Moore, Penknives and Other Folding Knives 25–27 (1988); *see also* John Mason, Mason's First Home & School Reader 75–76 (1874); Charles W. Sanders, The School Reader: Third Book 58 (50th ed. 1846).

10. *See* Moore, *supra* note 9, at 25.

11. *Id.* at 27.

12. *See, e.g.*, Richard Edwards & J. Russell Webb, Analytical Third Reader 161 (1867); Mason, *supra* note 9, at 75–76; Lewis B. Monroe, The Fourth Reader 39–40 (1872); Sanders, *supra* note 9, at 58. As an anecdotal example of this, one of the authors has carried a pocketknife every day of his life since third grade in 1955. He has never given a moment's thought to the legality of this common practice.

roofers,[13] electricians,[14] and construction workers.[15] Knives are often part of combination tools that many Americans carry with them, such as Swiss Army knives and Leatherman Multi-Tools. However, knives with even the most utilitarian purposes, such as box cutters (with a one inch blade), can be used as weapons, as the hijackers demonstrated on 9/11.[16]

B. Bayonets

A bayonet is designed to be mounted on the muzzle of a firearm.[17] Historically, some bayonets were just thrusting weapons with a point and without a sharpened edge.[18] Over the last century, bayonets have become shorter, shrinking from the size of a short sword to the size of a typical knife,[19] and modern bayonets have sharpened edges. Post-World War II designs evolved to recognize the more frequent use of the bayonet as a tool—for example, for opening ration cases or for use as a handheld weapon.[20] As a result, the

---

13. *See, e.g.*, BLACK & DECKER, THE COMPLETE GUIDE TO ROOFING & SIDING 58 (Brett Martin et al. eds., 2004). See *United States v. Irizarry*, 509 F. Supp. 2d 198 (E.D.N.Y. 2007), for details of a prosecution of a person that started when a police officer noticed that the defendant was carrying a "Husky Sure-Grip Folding Knife," which the defendant used at the direction of his employer "for cutting sheet rock." *Id.* at 199–203.

14. *See, e.g.*, GREG FLETCHER, RESIDENTIAL CONSTRUCTION ACADEMY: HOUSE WIRING 67 (2004) (describing use of a knife by electricians for opening boxes, stripping insulation, and as a substitute screwdriver for small screws).

15. *See, e.g.*, MYRON R. FERGUSON, DRYWALL: PROFESSIONAL TECHNIQUES FOR GREAT RESULTS 51 (Matthew Teague & Jessica DiDonato eds., 4th ed. 2012).

16. *Box Cutters Found on Other September 11 Flights*, CNN.COM (Sept. 24, 2001), http://archives.cnn.com/2001/US/09/23/inv.investigation.terrorism/.

17. Note that a rifle with a bayonet on it and without ammunition is functionally equivalent to a Roman spear or javelin. Both are arms.

18. *See* J.H. Bill, *Sabre and Bayonet Wounds; Arrow Wounds*, *in* 2 THE INTERNATIONAL ENCYCLOPEDIA OF SURGERY 101, 101 (John Ashhurst, Jr., ed., 1882) (discussing the nature of bayonet wounds and explaining that the edges of such wounds reflect the unsharpened nature of the edges).

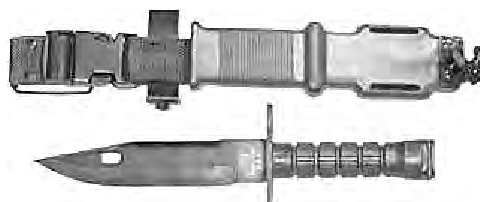
19. *See* STEPHEN BULL, ENCYCLOPEDIA OF MILITARY TECHNOLOGY AND INNOVATION 36 (2004). Older bayonets, such as the World War I version designed for the Springfield 1903-A3 rifle, were thinner, lighter, seventeen-inch versions of the Roman gladius sword and could be used as a short sword. Military fashion in bayonets continued to evolve so that hundreds of thousands of these bayonets were cut down to eight inches in length for use during World War II on the M1 Garand rifle. *See* MARTIN J. BRAYLEY, BAYONETS: AN ILLUSTRATED HISTORY 228-35, 249 (2004); ANTHONY CARTER, THE BAYONET: A HISTORY OF KNIFE AND SWORD BAYONETS 1850–1970, at 115, 121 (1974).

20. *See, e.g.*, JOHN BURGESS, THE WAR COMES TO ME: AN AUTOBIOGRAPHIC HISTORY OF WORLD WAR II 45 (2007) (use of bayonet to open C-rations); HONDON B. HARGROVE, BUFFALO SOLDIERS IN ITALY: BLACK AMERICANS IN WORLD WAR II 136 (1985) (concerning use of bayonets and knifes as handheld weapons in combat).

Case 4:23-cv-00547-O Document 20-2 Filed 10/06/23 Page 141 of 555 PageID 259

blade design became shorter, wider, and thicker, playing multifaceted roles for the late-twentieth-century soldier.[21]

Although anything with a blade can be used as an offensive or defensive arm, World War II saw the introduction of the M4 bayonet, which was specifically designed to be useful as a handheld weapon.[22] In the post-Cold War era, bayonets were designed to serve not only as fighting knives but also as wire cutters, box cutters, or improvised pry bars.[23]



U.S. M9 BAYONET[24]

C. Swords

A sword is "[a] long-bladed weapon having a handle and sometimes a hilt and designed to stab, cut or slash."[25] There is no precise distinction between a short sword and a long knife (such as a long bayonet). Indeed, the long, sharpened-edged bayonets of the late nineteenth and early twentieth centuries were called "sword bayonets."[26] An 1881 dictionary observed a change in social customs: a sword is "a blade of steel, having one or two edges, set in a hilt, and used with a motion of the whole arm. . . . In the [eighteenth] century every gentleman wore a sword; now the use of the weapon is almost confined to purposes of war."[27]

A person can look at a pocketknife, then look at a medieval broad sword with a forty-eight-inch blade, and readily identify which is the "knife" and which is the "sword." However, for intermediate blade length, the distinction is not so clear. What about a

21. *See* BULL, *supra* note 19, at 36 (discussing changing nature of the bayonet post-World War II).

22. *See* BRAYLEY, *supra* note 19, at 232; CARTER, *supra* note 19, at 121.

23. *See* BRAYLEY, *supra* note 19, at 249; BULL, *supra* note 19, at 36; FRED J. PUSHIES, WEAPONS OF DELTA FORCE 64 (2002).

24. From author Cramer's personal collection.

25. *Sword*, WIKTIONARY, http://en.wiktionary.org/wiki/sword (last updated July 11, 2013, 12:22 PM).

26. *See* B.E. Sargeaunt, *The History of the Bayonet*, 44 J. MILITARY SERVICE INST. U.S. 251, 255–56 (1909).

27. THOMAS WILHELM, A MILITARY DICTIONARY AND GAZETTEER 565 (rev. ed. 1881).

fixed blade knife with a fourteen-inch blade or an eighteen-inch machete?

As a Second Amendment issue, the knife/sword distinction is not particularly important. If the Second Amendment protects one, it protects the other.[28] This Article concentrates on knives, but most of the analysis applies equally to swords.

D. Folding Knives

Many state and local regulations distinguish between fixed blade knives and folding knives,[29] possibly because of the misguided assumption that a fixed blade knife is a weapon whereas a folding knife is just a tool. Of course, many utility knives, such as those used for linoleum installation and wood veneering, are fixed blade, as are many sportsmen's knives and virtually all kitchen cutlery.[30]

Some folding knife laws make further distinction between knives that lock open and those that do not; some statutes put folding knives that lock in the same category as fixed blade knives.[31] Legislators may think that a locking, folding knife can be used as a weapon, whereas a folding knife that does not lock is a tool. The reason for this view is simplistic: a locking knife will not close on your hand when it meets resistance in a fight. While this is true, a locking knife also will not close on your hand when it meets resistance when used as a tool. The lock prevents the blade from closing on your fingers; this is equally important when roofing a house and when fighting for your life. The distinction between folding knives that lock and those that do not is therefore not a sound basis upon which to make distinctions of what is a weapon and what is a tool.

Furthermore, most folding knives possess the very useful feature that they can be opened with one hand, which is particularly advantageous when the other hand is otherwise occupied. The traditional

---

28. Just as handguns and long guns are both Second Amendment arms.

29. *E.g.*, KAN. STAT. ANN. § 21-6301(2) (2012) (prohibiting concealed carry of "a dagger . . . dangerous knife, straight-edged razor, [or] stiletto," but exempting "an ordinary pocket knife with no blade more than four inches in length").

30. *See, e.g.*, MIKE BURTON, VENEERING: A FOUNDATION COURSE 28 (rev. ed. 2006).

31. *Compare* CAL. PENAL CODE § 171b (West 2013) (locking folding knives and fixed blade knives where blade exceeds four inches prohibited in government buildings), *and id.* § 626.10(a) (fixed blade knives where the blade exceeds two and one half inches and locking folding knives, regardless of blade length, prohibited on primary and secondary school grounds), *with id.* § 626.10(b) (locking folding knives allowed on college campuses regardless of length, while fixed blade knives longer than two and one half inches prohibited on college campuses).

tall ships motto, "[o]ne hand for yourself and one for the ship,"[32] presents an obvious application for such a knife. Similarly, a rancher holding an animal's lead with one hand can use the other to open a knife and free the beast from an entanglement. This feature shows that folding knives, whether locking or not, can as easily be viewed as tools as they can be viewed as weapons.

In addition to distinctions between folding and fixed blade knives, precisely how the knife opens makes a great deal of difference in many state laws. For example, if the blade is opened by inserting a thumb into a small indentation, hole, or post near the top of the blade and pushing, then it is legally unrestricted in almost all jurisdictions.[33] If, after the thumb has begun pushing on the indentation to open the blade, a spring helps finish the job, then the knife is called an "assisted opening" (AO) knife.[34] Popular models of AO knives include the Kershaw Leek, Benchmade Torrent, and Buck Rush.[35] These knives are legally unrestricted under federal law and most state laws.

Suppose instead that the knife has a button in the handle, and when the button is pushed, a spring then pushes the blade open automatically. Then, the knife is called a "switchblade," which is one type of "automatic knife."[36] Under federal law and a minority of state laws, automatic knives face far greater restrictions.[37]

E. Automatic and Gravity Knives

An automatic knife is biased towards opening via a spring; some type of latch or lock must keep the blade retained in the handle until needed. For example, when the switchblade knife is folded, the internal spring is always pressuring the blade towards opening. The blade is restrained by a latch or lock. When the user presses a button, the latch or lock is released. The blade automatically springs open and typically locks in the open position.

---

32. The Oxford Dictionary of Proverbs 146 (Jennifer Speake & John Simpson eds., 5th ed. 2008).

33. *See infra* notes 40–41, 50–52 and accompanying text.

34. *See* Actuating Opening System for Folding Knife, U.S. Patent No. 8,359,753 (filed Jan. 30, 2008).

35. *See, e.g.*, *Kershaw Assisted Openers & SpeedSafe Knives*, Kershaw Knives Direct, http://www.kershawknivesdirect.com (follow "Assisted Openers" hyperlink under "Categories") (last visited Aug. 20, 2013).

36. *See* Commonwealth v. Lawson, 977 A.2d 583, 583 n.2 (Pa. Super. Ct. 2009) (explaining that automatic knives are forms of switchblades).

37. *See, e.g.*, 15 U.S.C. § 1241(b) (2006); 18 Pa. Cons. Stat. Ann. § 908 (West 2013); Haw. Rev. Stat. § 134–52 (2011).

A second automatic knife is the "out the front" knife (OTF). An OTF is not a folding knife.[38] When the button is pushed, the blade is pushed out the front of the handle by the spring. A third automatic knife is the gravity, or inertia, knife. This knife has no spring; the weighting of the blade and the absence of a bias towards closure are such that, as soon as a lock is released, gravity (if the tip of the knife blade is facing down) or a modest amount of centrifugal force will cause the blade to move into the open position.[39] Then, the blade must be manually locked into the open position or else it will slide back into the handle as soon as any force is applied (e.g., during cutting or thrusting).

Thus, there are three types of knives that are particularly easy to open with one hand: switchblade, out the front, and gravity. Of these, the first two are properly called "automatic knives." However, poorly written statutes create confusion about the definitions. The 1958 Federal Switchblade Act (FSA) limits the importability and interstate commerce of "switchblades."[40] Many state and local laws copy the federal definition.[41] Unfortunately, the federal definition of "switchblade" includes out the front knives, gravity knives, and real switchblades.[42]

Automatic knives were first produced in the 1700s,[43] with the earliest custom made for wealthy customers.[44] By the mid-nineteenth century, factory production of automatic knives made them affordable for ordinary consumers.[45] During World War II, American paratroopers were issued switchblade knives "in case they [became] injured during a jump and needed to extricate themselves from

38. *See* JERRY AHERN, ARMED FOR PERSONAL DEFENSE 77–78 (2010) (explaining how an "out the front" knife works).

39. *See* N.Y. PENAL LAW § 265.00(5) (2013). Gravity knives can be either out-the-front or side-openers. *See* RICHARD V. LANGSTON, THE COLLECTOR'S GUIDE TO SWITCHBLADE KNIVES 30 (2001).

40. 15 U.S.C. § 1242 (1958). Another statute prohibits possession of switchblade knives in territories, overseas, or in "Indian country," except for "any individual who has only one arm" and who uses a blade less than three inches in length. *Id.* §§ 1243–44. Some state laws prohibiting possession or carrying of switchblades also exempt any "one-armed person" from these prohibitions. *E.g.*, MICH. COMP. LAWS ANN. § 750.226a (West 2004).

41. *E.g.*, HAW. REV. STAT. § 134-52 (2011).

42. 15 U.S.C. § 1241(b) (1958). By interpretation, some state laws also cover butterfly knives, which are discussed *infra* Part I.F.

43. *See* LANGSTON, *supra* note 39, at 5–6.

44. *See id.* ("For the most part, these old (going back to the 1700s) mostly European (e.g., English, German, Spanish) knives were hand-produced custom pieces for the very rich, not factory made.").

45. *See id.* One of the first U.S. factories was the Waterville Cutlery Company, founded in 1843 in Waterbury, Connecticut. *Id.* at 7.

their parachutes."[46] The switchblade enabled them to cut themselves loose with only one hand.[47]

In the 1950s, there was great public concern about juvenile delinquency.[48] This concern was exacerbated by popular motion pictures of the day, such as *Rebel Without a Cause* (1955), *Crime in the Streets* (1956), *12 Angry Men* (1957), and *The Delinquents* (1957), as well as the very popular Broadway musical *West Side Story*. These stories included violent scenes featuring the use of automatic knives by fictional delinquents. Partly because of Hollywood's sensationalism, the public associated the switchblade with the juvenile delinquent, who would flick the knife open at the commencement of a rumble with a rival gang or some other criminal activity. This was an important part the origin of the many statutes imposing special restrictions on switchblades.[49]

Recently, there have been two attempts to blur the distinction between automatic knives and non-automatic knives. In 2009, U.S. Customs and Border Protection issued a new regulatory interpretation of the Federal Switchblade Act that would treat most one-hand opening folding knives as automatics.[50] This new interpretation contradicted decades of previous Customs interpretation of the federal switchblade statute and would have covered the non-automatic, assisted opening knives, which have an indentation, hole, or stud to assist opening as opposed to a button that activates a spring.[51] The proposed new interpretation caused such an uproar that Congress

---

46. United States v. Irizarry, 509 F. Supp. 2d 198, 204 (E.D.N.Y. 2007).

47. *Id.*

48. For a general analysis of the interaction between concerns about mass media and its perceived effects on juvenile delinquency in the 1950s, see JAMES GILBERT, A CYCLE OF OUTRAGE: AMERICA'S REACTION TO THE JUVENILE DELINQUENT IN THE 1950s (1986), and FRANKIE Y. BAILEY & DONNA C. HALE, POPULAR CULTURE, CRIME, AND JUSTICE (1998). For a differing point of view emphasizing a failure to understand teenage culture, see David Matza & Gresham M. Sykes, *Juvenile Deliquency and Subterranean Values*, 26 AM. SOC. REV. 712 (1961).

49. *See* GILBERT, *supra* note 48, at 160 (stating that switchblade laws were passed as a result of concerns over juvenile delinquency); THOMAS DOHERTY, TEENAGERS AND TEENPICS: JUVENILIZATION OF AMERICAN MOVIES 40 (rev. ed. 2002) (discussing the media focus on juvenile delinquency and switchblades).

50. *See* U.S. Customs & Border Prot., *Proposed Revocation of Ruling Letters and Revocation of Treatment Relating to the Admissibility of Certain Knives with Spring-Assisted Opening Mechanisms*, CUSTOMS BULL. & DECISIONS, May 22, 2009, at 5.

51. *See id.* A federal switchblade is a knife which "opens automatically . . . by hand pressure applied to a button or other device in the handle of the knife," or where gravity or inertia allows the blade to slide out of the handle. *See* 15 U.S.C. § 1241(b) (2006). New York State law refers to "centrifugal force" (not inertia) in the state definition. N.Y. PENAL LAW § 265.00(5) (2013). Both statutes are attempting to describe the same kind of knife.

quickly revised the federal statute to make it clear that non-automatic folding knives with a bias towards closure are not within the federal definition of "switchblade."[52]

As detailed below, Manhattan District Attorney Cyrus Vance, Jr. has been doing something similar with the New York State switchblade and gravity knife statute.[53] He has been bringing criminal cases against persons who possess, carry, or sell non-automatic folding knives with a bias towards closure and charging them with violation of the state's ban on gravity knives and switchblades. These prosecutions are abusive. Unfortunately, many persons or businesses charged under the statute have lacked the resources to fight the charges by bringing in expert witnesses who can explain knife mechanics to the court.[54] Thus, there have been many out-of-court settlements with retailers, from whom Vance's office has pocketed significant amounts of money.[55]

Partly because of Vance's prosecutions, some state legislatures are proactively preventing similar abuses. These legislatures have repealed their decades-old ban on switchblades, gravity knives, or other banned knives such as dirks, daggers, and stilettos.[56] Other legislatures have enacted preemption statutes that eliminate local

---

52. *See* Department of Homeland Security Appropriations Act of 2010, Pub. L. No. 111-83, sec. 562, § 4, 123 Stat. 2142, 2183 (2009) (codified at 15 U.S.C. § 1244 (2012)).

53. *See* Press Release, N.Y. Cnty. Dist. Attorney's Office, District Attorney Vance Announces Major Investigation of Illegal Knives in New York (June 6, 2010), *available at* http://www.kniferights.org/VancePressRelease062010.pdf; *Knife Rights Contests DA's Claims, Tactics in Knife Retailer Shakedown*, KNIFE RIGHTS, http://www.kniferights.org/index.php?option=com_content&task=view&id=113&Itemid=1 (last visited Oct. 3, 2013). *Cf.* United States v. Irizarry, 509 F. Supp. 2d 198, 209 (E.D.N.Y. 2007) (case arising from a police search of a workman who was seen carrying a Husky Sure-Grip Folding Knife).

54. *Manhattan District Attorney Shakes Down Honest Knife Retailers*, KNIFE RIGHTS, http://www.kniferights.org/index.php?option=com_content&task=view&id=113&Itemid=1 (last visited Oct. 3, 2013). For a civil rights lawsuit based on the Vance prosecutions, see Complaint, *Knife Rights, Inc. v. Vance*, 2011 WL 7567075 (S.D.N.Y. 2011) (No. 11 CV 3918). However, Vance has not exclusively targeted the legally defenseless. *See* Press Release, N.Y. Cnty. Dist. Attorney's Office, *supra* note 53.

55. *Manhattan District Attorney Shakes Down Honest Knife Retailers*, *supra* note 54.

56. *See* H.R. 1665, 2010 Gen. Ct., Reg. Sess. (N.H. 2010) (removing all references to knives in section 159:16 of the New Hampshire Code, which prohibits the carrying of certain weapons); S. 489, 96th Gen. Assemb., 2d Reg. Sess. (Mo. 2012) (repealing switchblade ban in section 571.020 of the Missouri Code); H.R. 2347, 62nd Leg., Reg. Sess. (Wash. 2012) (narrowing and clarifying definition of "spring-blade" knives in section 9.41.250 of the Washington Code); H.R. 2033, 2013 Leg., Reg. Sess. (Kan. 2013) (preempting local ordinances, plus repealing ban on switchblades, dirks, daggers, and stilettos); H.R. 33, 28th Leg., Reg. Sess. (Alaska 2013) (preempting local ordinances; repealing ban on switchblades); H.R. 1563, 118th Gen. Assemb., 1st Reg. Sess. (Ind. 2013) (repealing ban on switchblades); H.R. 1862, 83d Leg., Reg. Sess. (Tex. 2013) (repealing ban on switchblades).

Narrowly defined, a stiletto has "one slender bayonet-type blade with the point area back to about one-third of the blade" and is partially or fully double-edged. Historically, it was particularly popular in Italy, France, Spain, and Germany. LANGSTON, *supra* note 39, at 26.

bans on switchblades and other local knife ordinances that are more restrictive than state law.[57]

F. Butterfly Knives

Butterfly knives, also known as balisongs, are sometimes named explicitly in state or local knife laws and are occasionally considered to fall within a state or local definition of "switchblade."[58] A butterfly knife consists of two handle sections that, when the knife is closed, completely cover the blade.

A Butterfly Knife Open and Closed[59]

By holding one handle and rotating the other handle away from the closed position, it is possible to open the knife and bring the two handles together. The handles may then lock together, although not all do. In some states, the lock is the difference between

57. *See* S. 1015, 108th Gen. Assemb., Reg. Sess. (Tenn. 2013); *supra* note 54.

58. *See, e.g.*, State v. Riddall, 811 P.2d 576, 578–80 (N.M. Ct. App. 1991) (holding that a balisong is a switchblade as defined by New Mexico statute); People v. Quattrone, 260 Cal. Rptr. 44, 44 (Cal. Ct. App. 1989) (holding that a balisong was a switchblade under California statute). *But see, e.g.*, Taylor v. McManus, 661 F. Supp. 11, 14 (E.D. Tenn. 1986) (ruling that balisongs are not switchblades under federal law); State v. Strange, 785 P.2d 563, 566 (Alaska Ct. App. 1990) (ruling that balisongs are neither switchblades nor gravity knives); People v. Mott, 522 N.Y.S.2d 429, 430 (N.Y. Cnty. Ct. 1987) (ruling that balisongs are not gravity knives).

59. Photograph supplied by Knife Rights, Inc.

a legal and an illegal knife.[60] Many experts believe that a butterfly knife is the strongest and safest folding knife because the blade cannot fold closed inadvertently on the operator so long as the operator has a firm grasp on the handles.[61] In contrast, a lock-blade folding knife can experience a lock failure, although this is rare for well-constructed knives.

An experienced operator can also flip the butterfly handle into the open position using only one hand. Like the switchblade, the butterfly knife's use in movies has given it an undeserved reputation as a criminal's weapon.[62] As with the switchblade, opening one is visually interesting and frightening to some persons unfamiliar with knives, creating a belief that it is an extremely dangerous weapon necessitating special legislative attention.[63]

All the knives described above are primarily tools, although they can also be used as weapons. Conversely, knives may be designed as weapons but used primarily as tools. A judge or juror's perception of the purpose of a knife may be quite different from the owner's or the designer's perception. The knives discussed below, however, are ones that some governments have historically believed to need special regulation or prohibition.

G. Bowie Knives and Arkansas Toothpicks

America's first period of knife control was in 1837–1840, when the nation experienced a panic over the Bowie knife and the Arkansas Toothpick.[64] This Section discusses the knives' historical use, while the strange legal history of Bowie knives and Arkansas Toothpicks in the nineteenth century is detailed below in Part III.

---

60. *See, e.g.*, Taylor, 661 F. Supp. at 14–15 (holding that the required step of locking the knife into an open position takes it out of the category of automatic knives).

61. *See Paradox*, COLD STEEL, http://www.coldsteel.com/Product/24P/PARADOX.aspx (last visited Aug. 20, 2013) ("They are designed to rotate 180 degrees around the blade's unique split tang and use strong opposing spring tension to lock the blade open or hold it firmly closed. Don't worry about it taking two hands to get it into action, since once it's opened it will never close inadvertently.").

62. For a representative list of films in which balisongs are used, see *Balisongs in the Movies*, BALISONGCOLLECTOR.COM, http://www.balisongcollector.com/movies.html (last visited Aug. 20, 2013).

63. *See* Michael Burch, *Butterfly Knives Take Wing*, 28 KNIVES 26, 26, 30 (2008).

64. *See* CLAYTON E. CRAMER, CONCEALED WEAPON LAWS OF THE EARLY REPUBLIC 85–96, 105–12 (1999) (discussing the tragedies and breathless newspaper coverage associated with this panic).

The Bowie knife became famous when used by Colonel Jim Bowie at the "Sandbar Fight" by the lower Mississippi River on September 19, 1827.[65] Rezin Bowie, Colonel Jim's brother, was the actual maker of the knife. He described his creation thusly: "The length of the knife was nine and a quarter inches, its width one and a half inches, single-edged, and blade not curved."[66] According to Rezin, the knife was designed for bear hunting.[67] Based on the known details of Rezin's knife, absolutely nothing about it was novel. Its fame soon made this style of knife in high demand and increasingly popular.[68]

Yet, the knife gained such popularity that many people use "Bowie knife" to describe knives that have curved blades or blades much longer than nine inches.[69] Today, a common description of the "Bowie knife" is a large fixed blade (almost always much longer than Rezin's nine inch long blade), sharpened on one edge (per Rezin's original model), with a relatively thick spine and a clip point.[70] This modern usage does not describe Rezin Bowie's original knife. Ironically, it also does not describe the custom knives that professional cutlers later produced for Rezin or Jim Bowie.[71]

The problem of the Bowie knife's notoriety as a fighting knife extends back to the first weeks after the Sandbar Fight. Newspaper and magazine reports of the event were often highly inaccurate.[72] The term "Bowie knife" entered the American vocabulary from these reports and then crossed the Atlantic. American and English manufacturers began using the term for a wide variety of large knives. Some knives had clip points, and others did not; some were straight, and others were curved; some were single-edged, and others were double-edged; some had crossguards, and others did not. There was also great variance in length. The only thing these knives had in common was that they were big, and all of them were considered particularly suitable for self-defense and hunting.[73] Historian Norm Flayderman, an expert in Bowie and other knives,

65. *See* Raymond W. Thorp, Bowie Knife 6–8 (1948); Norm Flayderman, The Bowie Knife: Unsheathing an American Legend 285–89 (2004).

66. R.P. Bowie, *Letter to the Editor*, Planter's Advocate, Aug. 24, 1838, *reprinted in* Marryat, 1 A Diary in America, With Remarks on Its Institutions 291 (1839).

67. *Id.*

68. *See* Flayderman, *supra* note 65, at 491–92.

69. *See* Sears v. State, 33 Ala. 347, 348 (1859); J.R. Edmondson, The Alamo Story: From Early History to Current Conflicts 122–23 (2000).

70. *See* Jim Woods, *How to Pick a Perfect Knife*, Popular Mechanics, Aug. 1982, at 78, 78–80.

71. *See* Flayderman, *supra* note 65, at 491–92.

72. *See id.* at 289–91.

73. *See id.* at 490–92.

both antique and modern, concludes that "there is no one specific knife that can be exactingly described as a Bowie knife."[74]

Today, several states outlaw carrying a "Bowie knife" without defining the term.[75] Thus, today's citizens who are subject to Bowie knife laws have no way of knowing whether they are forbidden to carry a straight knife that closely matches Rezin Bowie's design or the curved knives that are commonly called "Bowie knives." The state's definition may even include a knife that is neither, but has the words "Bowie Knife" written on it.[76] The chilling effect of this vagueness is obvious.

The Arkansas Toothpick's history is interwoven with that of the Bowie knife. There are some Mississippi tax receipts from the antebellum era, as well as some other writings, which expressly distinguish an "Arkansas Toothpick" from a "Bowie knife."[77] Narrowly defined, Arkansas Toothpicks have triangular blades up to eighteen inches long, sharpened on both edges.[78]

ARKANSAS TOOTHPICK[79]

However, Flayderman concludes that "Arkansas Toothpick" was, in its predominant usage, simply another marketing term for "Bowie knife."[80]

II. CRIMINOLOGICAL CONSIDERATIONS: IS A KNIFE MORE DANGEROUS THAN A GUN?

Under the Supreme Court's decision in *District of Columbia v. Heller*, handguns, as a general class, are protected by the Second

74. *Id.* at 490.

75. *See* ALA. CODE § 13A-11-50 (LexisNexis 2005); GA. CODE ANN. § 16-11-127.1 (2011); ME. REV. STAT. ANN. tit. 25, § 2001-A (2012); MISS. CODE ANN. § 97-37-1 (2012); N.C. GEN. STAT. § 14-269 (2011); OKLA. STAT. tit. 21, § 1272 (2011); R.I. GEN. LAWS § 11-47-42 (2012); TEX. PENAL CODE ANN. § 46.01 (West 2012); VA. CODE ANN. § 18.2-308 (2009).

76. *See generally* FLAYDERMAN, supra note 65, at 490.

77. *Id.* at 265–66.

78. *See* WILLIAM FOSTER-HARRIS, THE LOOK OF THE OLD WEST 120–22 (2007).

79. Drawing by Rhonda L. Thorne Cramer.

80. FLAYDERMAN, *supra* note 65, at 265–74.

Case 4:23-cv-00547-O Document 20-2 Filed 10/06/23 Page 151 of 555 PageID 269

Amendment.[81] This is so notwithstanding the frequent use of handguns in violent crimes, including homicide. *Heller* acknowledged that, even though handgun misuse represents a major public safety problem, "[T]he enshrinement of constitutional rights necessarily takes certain policy choices off the table."[82] If handguns may not be prohibited, in spite of the clear public safety concerns, then a category of arm that is less dangerous clearly may not be prohibited, either.

Are knives more dangerous than guns? Quite the opposite. In 2010, "[k]nives or cutting instruments" were used in 13.1 percent of U.S. murders, behind firearms (67.5 percent) and handguns specifically (46.2 percent), but ahead of blunt objects (4.2 percent), shotguns (2.9 percent), and rifles (2.8 percent).[83] The thirteen percent includes *all* knives, including steak knives, butcher knives, linoleum knives, and other "cutting instruments," such as screwdrivers (sharpened and otherwise), straight razors, and other instruments made into weapons by the inventiveness of criminals.[84]

Robberies for which the FBI has detailed information are overwhelmingly committed with firearms (47.9 crimes/100,000 people), not knives or other cutting instruments (9.1/100,000).[85] Knives and other cutting instruments are actually in last place in the FBI statistics for robbery, even behind "other weapon."[86] Similarly, in the category of aggravated assault, sharp objects are in last place for weapon type (47.9/100,000 people), behind firearms (51.8), personal weapons (69.0), and other weapons (83.3). [87]

---

81. District of Columbia v. Heller, 554 U.S. 570, 628–29 (2008) ("The handgun ban amounts to a prohibition of an entire class of 'arms' that is overwhelmingly chosen by American society for that lawful purpose. The prohibition extends, moreover, to the home, where the need for defense of self, family, and property is most acute. Under any of the standards of scrutiny that we have applied to enumerated constitutional rights, banning from the home 'the most preferred firearm in the nation to "keep" and use for protection of one's home and family,' would fail constitutional muster.") (quoting Parker v. District of Columbia, 478 F.3d 370, 400 (D.C. Cir. 2007)).

82. *Id.* at 2822 ("We are aware of the problem of handgun violence in this country, and we take seriously the concerns raised by the many *amici* who believe that prohibition of handgun ownership is a solution.")

83. *See Crime in the United States 2010, Expanded Homicide Data Table 11*, FBI, http://www.fbi.gov/about-us/cjis/ucr/crime-in-the-u.s/2010/crime-in-the-u.s.-2010/tables/10shrtbl11.xls (last visited Aug. 20, 2013). For some homicides, the type of firearm is unknown, which is why the "firearm" figure is higher than the figures for handguns, rifles, and shotguns added together.

84. *See id.*

85. *Crime in the United States 2010, Table 19*, FBI, http://www.fbi.gov/about-us/cjis/ucr/crime-in-the-u.s/2010/crime-in-the-u.s.-2010/tables/10tbl19.xls (last visited Aug. 20, 2013).

86. *Id.*

87. *Id.*

Unsurprisingly, data show that gunshots are more lethal than knife wounds. Harwell Wilson and Roger Sherman's 1960 study of hospital admissions for abdominal wounds found that abdominal stabbing cases ended in death 3.1 percent of the time, while 9.8 percent of abdominal gunshot wounds were lethal.[88] An examination of 165 family and intimate assaults (FIA) in Atlanta, Georgia in 1984 found similar results. Firearms-associated FIAs were three times more likely to result in death than "FIAs involving knives or other cutting instruments."[89]

Another study examined all penetrating traumas ("firearm or stabbing injury") in New Mexico that "presented to either the state Level-1 trauma center or the state medical examiner" from 1978 to 1993.[90] This study found that, although nonfatal injury rates were similar for firearms and stabbing (34.3 per 100,000 persons per year for firearms, 35.1 per 100,000 persons per year for stabbing), firearm fatality rates were much higher than for knives: 21.9 vs. 2.7.[91] In other words, thirty-nine percent of firearm penetrating traumas were fatal, compared to 7.1 percent of knife penetrating traumas. Thus, firearm injuries were 5.5 times more likely to result in death than were knife injuries. Not all of the penetrating traumas in New Mexico were criminal attacks. Fifty-five percent of the penetrating deaths were suicides, and four percent of the penetrating deaths were accidents. There was insufficient information to determine the breakdown of weapon type by category.[92]

Knives in general are far less regulated than firearms. There are no mandatory background checks, no prohibitions on interstate sales (except for switchblades),[93] and no serial number requirements. The least expensive knives are considerably less expensive than the cheapest firearms.[94] Only about half of American homes

---

88. Harwell Wilson & Roger Sherman, *Civilian Penetrating Wounds of the Abdomen*, 153 ANNALS SURGERY 639, 640 (1961).

89. Linda E. Saltzman et al., *Weapon Involvement and Injury Outcomes in Family and Intimate Assaults*, 267 JAMA 3043, 3043 (1992).

90. Cameron Crandall et al., *Guns and Knives in New Mexico: Patterns of Penetrating Trauma, 1978–1993*, 4 ACAD. EMERGENCY MED. 263, 263 (1997).

91. *Id.*

92. *Id.* at 264. As for the remaining firearm deaths classified as "homicide," about six to twelve percent of them were probably justifiable homicides committed with firearms by persons who were not law enforcement officers. This is calculated by multiplying the 7.1–12.9 percent of civilian legal defensive homicides by the percentage of those homicides committed with firearms. KLECK, *supra* note 4, at 114, 148. It is unknown whether a similar percent of the knife homicides were justifiable.

93. *See* 15 U.S.C. § 1242 (2006).

94. Searching Amazon.com on September 29, 2012 found more than 298 matches for "combat knife" under 25 dollars, and 114 matches under 10 dollars. By comparison, even the cheapest single-shot .22 rifles (which would only be used by *very* stupid criminals) at the

Case 4:23-cv-00547-O Document 20-2 Filed 10/06/23 Page 153 of 555 PageID 271

have a gun, but almost every home has several knives, including tools, steak knives, and butcher knives. At the same time, these easily obtained arms are used far less often than firearms for murder, robbery, and aggravated assault. Thus, knives are far less dangerous than guns. Any public safety justification for knife regulation is necessarily less persuasive than the public safety justification for firearms regulation.

III. Bowie Knives and the Nineteenth Century Cases

During the nineteenth century, Bowie knives were commonly present in many areas of the United States. Contemporary sources leave no question that Bowie knives, Arkansas Toothpicks, and similar knives were a common part of American life until well after the Civil War—and not just for decoration, hunting, or slicing tough cuts of meat.[95] "[F]or those crossing the plains," such knives were "a necessity."[96] An account of Gold Rush California describes how masquerade balls in California would generally have "No weapons admitted" signs at the entrance.[97] An observer tells us that:

> [I]t was worth while to go, if only to watch the company arrive, and to see the practical enforcement of the weapon clause. . . . Most men draw a pistol from behind their back, and very often a knife along with it; some carried their bowie-knife down the back of the neck, or in their breast; demure, pious looking men . . . lifted up the bottom of their waistcoast, and revealed the butt of a revolver; others, after having already disgorged a

Cabela's website on the same date was $99.99. The cheapest repeating .22 rifle, the Mossberg 702 Plinkster, was $139.99.

95. A few representative articles of the period illustrating the widespread violence associated with edged weapons (along with many other deadly weapons) include: *Scenes at New Orleans*, The Living Age, Oct.–Dec. 1852, at 528; *Editor's Easy Chair*, 11 Harper's New Monthly Mag. 411, 411–12 (1855); Marryat, *supra* note 66, at 106–10; *Colonel Bowie and his Knife*, Temple Bar, July 1861, at 120; George Combe, 2 on the United States of North America 93–95 (1841); American Anti-Slavery Society, American Slavery as it is 202–05 (1839). Among the well-known authors whose writings about America during this period included mention of Bowie knives were: Charles Dickens, American Notes (1842) and Great Expectations (1861); Oliver Wendell Holmes, Autocrat of the Breakfast Table (1857) (Americans are the "Romans of the modern world . . . our army sword is the short, stiff pointed gladius of the Romans; and the American bowie knife is the same tool, modified to meet the daily want of civil society."); Jules Verne, From the Earth to the Moon (1st English ed. 1873) (1865); Bret Harte, *The Outcasts of Poker Flat*, Overland Monthly, Jan. 1869; Mark Twain, Roughing It (1872); *all cited in* Flayderman, *supra* note 65, at 72–73.

96. Flayderman, *supra* note 65, at 88.

97. J.D. Borthwick, *Three Years in California*, 2 Hutchings' Illustrated Cal. Mag. 169, 171 (1857).

> pistol, pulled up the leg of their trousers, and abstracted a huge bowie-knife from their boot; and there were men, terrible fellows, no doubt, but who were more likely to frighten themselves than any one else, who produced a revolver from each trouser pocket, and a bowie knife from their belt. If any man declared that he had no weapon, the statement was so incredible that he had to submit to be searched.[98]

During the 1850s, because of conflict in the Territory of Kansas between free soil and pro-slavery settlers, anti-slavery groups in New England sent arms to the free soilers, including rifles, revolvers, and Bowie knives.[99]

An important reason that the Bowie knife was typically possessed for self-defense was that it was, in some respects, superior to firearms. The black gunpowder used in the early and mid-nineteenth century was vulnerable to atmospheric moisture. At close quarters, a single-shot firearm has obvious limitations for self-defense. The widespread adoption of the metallic cartridge in the late 1850s, and the Colt's multi-shot revolvers in the 1840s, solved some of these problems, though it was not until the mid-1860s that medium caliber (.38 or larger) firearms with metallic cartridges became common. Before then, the Bowie knife often had a better chance than the handgun of stopping a criminal attacker; at least, a prudent defender would often want to carry a Bowie as a back-up arm.[100]

About a decade after the first appearance of the Bowie knife, some southern states began passing laws against the knife. Alabama imposed a one hundred dollar tax on the transfer of any Bowie knife or Arkansas Toothpick[101]—the equivalent of at least $5,000 in today's money.[102] In 1837, Tennessee prohibited carrying such

98. *Id.*

99. *See* FLAYDERMAN, *supra* note 65, at 106 (citing WILLIAM ELSEY CONNELLEY, THE LIFE OF PRESTON B. PLUMB, 1837–1891 (1913)) (three-term U.S. Senator from Kansas recalls receiving a shipment including 250 Bowie knives); David B. Kopel, *Beecher's Bibles*, *in* 1 GUNS IN AMERICAN SOCIETY: AN ENCYCLOPEDIA OF HISTORY, POLITICS, CULTURE, AND THE LAW 58 (Gregg Lee Carter ed., 2d ed. 2012).

100. *See* FLAYDERMAN, *supra* note 65, at 485–87.

101. An Act To Suppress the Use of Bowie Knives, no. 11, 1837 Ala. Acts Called Sess. 7 (1837).

102. The price of gold in 1840 was fixed at $20.67 per ounce. STATISTICAL ABSTRACT OF THE UNITED STATES 863 (1942). As of June 2, 2013, gold price was $1,387 per ounce, a 6,710 percent increase. *See* GOLDPRICE, http://goldprice.org/. While gold price change alone is not a completely effective measure of price inflation because of changes in production efficiencies, it is at least a good starting point for a proxy.

knives.[103] An attempt to add pistols to the 1838 Tennessee bill failed.[104]

This attempt to regulate knives produced several nineteenth century cases involving Bowie knives.[105] These cases mostly followed the Tennessee Supreme Court's 1840 case, *Aymette v. State*,[106] which was wrong on its facts and later specifically repudiated by *Heller*.[107] The Tennessee Supreme Court in *Aymette* upheld the ban on the concealed carry of Bowie knives and Arkansas Toothpicks, holding that the Tennessee Constitution's guarantee of a right to keep and bear arms for the common defense "does not mean for *private defence*, but being armed, they may as a body, rise up to defend their just rights, and compel their rulers to respect the laws."[108] According to *Aymette*, the Bowie knife was not suitable for "civilized warfare" but was instead favored by "assassins" and "ruffians."[109] Significantly, the

103. An Act to Suppress the Sale and Use of Bowie Knives and Arkansas Tooth Picks in this State, ch. 137, 22 Tenn. Gen. Assemb. Acts 200 (1838).

The Bowie knife was also banned in Arkansas. The ban was repealed on February 5, 1973 in "emergency" legislation, which declared that knife manufacturing "has brought much favorable publicity to this State, that the prohibitions placed upon the sale of Bowie knives are unneeded . . . [and] that that immediate removal of such restrictions would have a favorable impact upon the economy of this state. Therefore an emergency is hereby declared to exist, and this act being necessary for the preservation of the public peace, health and safety . . . ." FLAYDERMAN, *supra* note 65, at 280.

104. *Tennessee Legislature*, DAILY REPUBLICAN BANNER (Nashville), Jan. 13, 1838, at 2.

105. One of the first problems encountered by the anti-Bowie laws was vagueness. In *Haynes v. State*, the Tennessee Supreme Court dealt with the complaint that the statute was vague and overbroad. 24 Tenn. (5 Hum.) 120, 122 (1844). The Tennessee statute applied to "any Bowie knife or knives, or Arkansas tooth picks, or any knife or weapon that shall in form, shape or size resemble a Bowie knife or any Arkansas tooth pick . . . ." Ch. 137, 22 Tenn. Gen. Assemb. Acts 200.

The defendant, Stephen Haynes, was charged in Knox County with carrying "concealed under his clothes, a knife in size resembling a bowie-knife." At trial, the witnesses disagreed about whether Haynes's knife was a Bowie knife. Some said that it was too small and too slim to be a Bowie knife and would properly be called a "Mexican pirate-knife." The jury found Haynes innocent of wearing a Bowie knife but guilty on a second charge "of wearing a knife in size resembling a bowie-knife." *Haynes*, 24 Tenn. (5 Hum.) at 120–21.

The Tennessee Supreme Court agreed that the legislature could not declare "war against the name of the knife" alone. A strict application of the letter of the law might well result in some injustices: "for a small pocket-knife, which is innocuous, may be made to resemble in form and shape a bowie-knife or Arkansas tooth-pick" and would thus be illegal. The court concluded that the law must be construed "within the spirit and meaning of the law" and relied on the judge and jury to make this decision as a matter of fact. *Haynes*, 24 Tenn. (5 Hum.) at 122–23.

106. Aymette v. State, 21 Tenn. (2 Hum.) 154 (1840).

107. *See* District of Columbia v. Heller, 554 U.S. 570, 613 (2008).

108. *Aymette*, 21 Tenn. (2 Hum.), at 157–58 (1840).

109. *See id.* at 158–60. The entire decision in *Aymette* is guided by Tennessee's narrow arms provision: "[T]he words that are employed must completely remove that doubt. It is declared that they may keep and *bear* arms for their *common defence*." *Id.* at 158. The opinion repeatedly ties the right solely to the "common defence."

Tennessee Constitution's guarantee, unlike the Second Amendment, contains the qualifying phrase, "for their common defence," which the U.S. Senate considered and rejected for the Second Amendment.[110]

The other major nineteenth century Bowie knife precedent, which is not part of the *Aymette* line, comes from Texas. In 1859, the Texas Supreme Court, in *Cockrum v. State*, ruled that, under the Texas Constitution's right to arms and the Second Amendment, "[t]he right to carry a bowie-knife for lawful defense is secured, and must be admitted."[111] At the same time, the court upheld enhanced punishment for manslaughter perpetrated with a Bowie knife.[112] The court elaborated on the Bowie knife:

> It is an exceeding destructive weapon. It is difficult to defend against it, by any degree of bravery, or any amount of skill. The gun or pistol may miss its aim, and when discharged, its dangerous character is lost, or diminished at least. The sword may be parried. With these weapons men fight for the sake of the combat, to satisfy the laws of honor, not necessarily with the intention to kill, or with a certainty of killing, when the intention exists. The bowie-knife differs from these in its device and design; it is *the instrument of almost certain death.*[113]

A plausible explanation for this perception of the Bowie knife as "the instrument of almost certain death" is that it made a bloody mess of a person because of the size of its blade. This is especially true when compared to a pen-knife or dagger, but even more so when compared to a bullet (which had almost surgical, cosmetic consequences during the low velocity, black powder era). Hence, the Bowie Knife was a relatively gruesome weapon.[114]

Additionally, the judicial and legislative fear of Bowie knives may have come from concerns about poor people or people of color. As

---

Aymette is the urtext for the "civilized warfare" interpretation of the right to keep and bear arms, by which all persons have a right to own arms, but only arms which are useful for militia purposes. For a sympathetic treatment of the nineteenth century's "civilized warfare" cases, see Michael P. O'Shea, *Modeling the Second Amendment Right to Carry Arms (I): Judicial Tradition and the Scope of "Bearing Arms" for Self-Defense*, 61 AM. U. L. REV. 585, 642–50 (2012).

110. S. JOURNAL, 1st Cong., 1st Sess. 129 (1789).

111. Cockrum v. State, 24 Tex. 394, 402 (1859).

112. *Id.* at 403.

113. *Id.* at 402–03 (emphasis added).

114. Even modern high velocity bullets, while producing large hydrostatic expansions within a person, produce exit wounds only two to three times the diameter of the entry wound. *See* Martin L. Fackler, *Wound Profiles*, WOUND BALLISTICS REV., Fall 2001, at 25 (examining damage in living tissue measured in experiments at the Letterman Army Institute of Research, Wound Ballistics Laboratory).

the defendant's attorney argued before the Texas Supreme Court in *Cockrum*:

> A bowie-knife or dagger, as defined in the code, is an ordinary weapon, one of the cheapest character, accessible even to the poorest citizen. A common butcher-knife, which costs not more than half a dollar, comes within the description given of a bowie-knife or dagger, being very frequently worn on the person. To prohibit such a weapon, is substantially to take away the right of bearing arms, from him who has not money enough to buy a gun or a pistol.[115]

Some other state supreme court decisions picked up where *Aymette* left off, holding that some knives are not militia arms. In *English v. State*, the Texas Supreme Court apparently forgot the *Cockrum* decision and justified a ban on "the carrying of pistols, dirks [a short dagger], and certain other deadly weapons" by arguing that these are not arms of the militia: "The terms dirks, daggers, slungshots, sword-canes, brass-knuckles and bowie knives, belong to no military vocabulary. Were a soldier on duty found with any of these things about his person, he would be punished for an offense against discipline."[116] *English* cites no authority for its claim with respect to the military use of the knives of various sorts, and the claim appears to be false.[117] Similar to *Aymette*, *English* recognized that bayonets and swords, unlike the knives in question, were "arms" protected by the Second Amendment.[118]

Similarly, the West Virginia Supreme Court of Appeals in *State v. Workman* held that the arms protected by the Second Amendment:

> must be held to refer to the weapons of warfare to be used by the militia, such as swords, guns, rifles, and muskets—arms to be used in defending the State and civil liberty—and not to pistols, bowie-knives, brass knuckles, billies, and such other weapons as are usually employed in brawls, street-fights, duels,

115. Cockrum, 24 Tex. at 395–96.

116. English v. State, 35 Tex. 473, 473, 477 (1872).

117. *Id.* at 477–78. For use of the bowie knife as a militia arm, see *infra* notes 124–28 and accompanying text.

118. *English*, 35 Tex. at 476 ("The word 'arms' in the connection we find it in the constitution of the United States, refers to the arms of a militiaman or soldier, and the word is used in its military sense. The arms of the infantry soldier are the musket and bayonet; of cavalry and dragoons, the sabre, holster pistols and carbine . . . .")

> and affrays, and are only habitually carried by bullies, blackguards, and desperadoes, to the terror of the community and the injury of the State.[119]

Heller held that *Aymette* "erroneously, and contrary to virtually all other authorities," read the right to keep and bear arms as limited to the threat to overthrow a tyrannical government.[120] *Heller* repudiated *Aymette* and its progeny, *English* and *Workman*. Moreover, even if *Heller* had adopted *Aymette*'s rule that there is an individual right to own all militia-suitable arms, the Bowie knife is a militia arm. It may not have been standard equipment for the Tennessee militia in 1840, but there is plenty of evidence of its militia use in the rest of the United States.

The Republic of Texas won its independence from Mexico at the Battle of San Jacinto on April 21, 1836. At the decisive phase of the battle, the 700 Texas volunteers were storming the Mexican breastworks. The fighting was hand-to-hand. The Texans had broken their rifles by using them as clubs against the standing army of the Mexican dictator, Antonio Lopez de Santa Anna Perez de Lebron. The Texans next fired their pistols, but had no time to reload. The Texans, "then drawing forth their bowie-knives, literally cut their way through dense masses of living flesh."[121] The Mexican army, "unused to this mode of combat with huge Bowie-knives and the buts [sic] of guns, precipitately gave way; and while the shouts of Goliad and the Alamo rung in their ears, nearly one-half of the Mexican army was laid asleep in . . . death."[122] In an eighteen-minute battle, Texas became a nation.[123]

Bowie knives were most clearly militia arms during the Civil War:

> The Mississippi Riflemen . . . [i]n addition to their rifle, . . . carried a sheath-knife, known as the bowie-knife. . . . This is a formidable weapon in a hand-to-hand fight, when wielded by men expert in its use, as many were in the Southwestern States,

---

119. State v. Workman, 14 S.E. 9, 11 (W. Va. 1891).

120. District of Columbia v. Heller, 554 U.S. 570, 613 (2008).

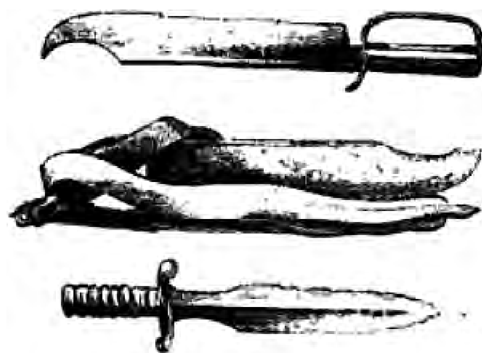
121. CHARLES EDWARDS LESTER, SAM HOUSTON AND HIS REPUBLIC 97 (1846), *quoted in* FLAYDERMAN, *supra* note 65, at 59.

122. EDWARD STIFF, THE TEXAN EMIGRANT 324–25 (1840), *quoted in* FLAYDERMAN, *supra* note 65, at 64. Goliad was the site of another battle, where Santa Anna had murdered 280 American prisoners.

123. *See generally* STEPHEN L. MOORE, EIGHTEEN MINUTES: THE BATTLE OF SAN JACINTO AND THE TEXAS INDEPENDENCE CAMPAIGN (2003).

> where it was generally seen in murderous frays in the streets and bar-rooms.[124]

Other Mississippi militiamen were "armed with the rifles, shot-guns, and knives which they had brought from their homes."[125] As further evidence of the prevalence of Bowie knives among Civil War soldiers, below are contemporary drawings of crudely made daggers and Bowie knives that were "in common use among the insurgent troops from the Mississippi region."[126]



WEAPONS OF THE INSURGENTS. [127]

While the then-Southwest (Mississippi, Louisiana, Arkansas, and Texas) was the Bowie knife's original territory, the knife was ubiquitous on both sides of the Civil War, carried by soldiers from every part of the nation.[128] The claims of *Aymette* and *Workman* that knives were not militia arms are clearly erroneous.

---

124. BENSON J. LOSSING, 1 PICTORIAL HISTORY OF THE CIVIL WAR IN THE UNITED STATES OF AMERICA 479 n.2 (1866).

125. *Id.* at 541 n.2.

126. *Id.*

127. *Id.* Other accounts referencing soldiers carrying Bowie knives, without apparently being in violation of military discipline, include COMTE DE PARIS, 1.3 HISTORY OF THE CIVIL WAR IN AMERICA 271 (Louis F. Tasistro trans., 1875); JAMES R. GILMORE, PERSONAL RECOLLECTIONS OF ABRAHAM LINCOLN AND THE CIVIL WAR 110–11 (1899); D.M. KELSEY, DEEDS OF DARING BY BOTH BLUE AND GRAY 300 (1883); WM. H. RUSSELL, THE CIVIL WAR IN AMERICA 175 (1861); SAMUEL M. SCHMUCKER, THE HISTORY OF THE CIVIL WAR IN THE UNITED STATES: ITS CAUSE, ORIGIN, PROGRESS AND CONCLUSION 987 (1865); SAMUEL M. SCHMUCKER, 1 A HISTORY OF THE CIVIL WAR IN THE UNITED STATES; WITH A PRELIMINARY VIEW OF ITS CAUSES 188 (1863); John G. Walker, *Jackson's Capture of Harper's Ferry*, *in* 2 BATTLES AND LEADERS OF THE CIVIL WAR 604, 607 (Robert Underwood Johnson & Clarence Clough Buel eds., 1887).

128. *See* FLAYDERMAN, supra note 65, at 125–68.

IV. KNIVES AS CONSTITUTIONALLY PROTECTED ARMS

This Part explains how knives are protected by the Second Amendment. Section A points out that the Second Amendment is for "arms," not just for "firearms." Being a militia-suitable arm is sufficient, but not necessary, for the Second Amendment to apply, and Section B details the history of knives as militia arms. *Heller*'s determination that handguns are within the scope of the Second Amendment was mainly based on the fact that handguns are useful for self-defense; Section C shows that knives are also useful for self-defense. Courts that have interpreted the Second Amendment have recognized the enormous technological improvements in firearms since 1791. In contrast, as Section D explains, the knives of today are not very different from the knives of 1791. Accordingly, Second Amendment protection of modern knives is especially clear. Part E argues that, under modern Second Amendment doctrine, the right to carry knives in public places for lawful self-defense must at least be co-extensive with the right to carry handguns.

A. Which Arms does the Constitution Protect?

According to *District of Columbia v. Heller*, the Second Amendment guarantees "the individual right to possess and carry weapons in case of confrontation."[129] *Heller* ruled that "the Second Amendment extends, prima facie, to all instruments that constitute bearable arms," with "arms" defined (pursuant to a Founding Era dictionary) as "any thing that a man . . . takes into his hands, or useth . . . to cast at or strike another."[130]

As a starting point, all knives seem to be within the scope of the Second Amendment, just as all firearms are. Like firearms, a knife can be carried by an individual and used as a weapon. Of course, some knives, like some firearms, are better suited to this purpose than others, but all knives and all firearms can be possessed, carried, and used in case of confrontation. The *Heller* opinion, however, excludes some types of arms from Second Amendment protection: "weapons not typically possessed by law-abiding citizens for lawful purposes, such as short-barreled shotguns."[131]

129. District of Columbia v. Heller, 554 U.S. 570, 592 (2008).

130. *Id.* at 581–82 (quoting T. CUNNINGHAM, 1 A NEW AND COMPLETE LAW DICTIONARY (1764)).

131. *Id.* at 625. For an application, see *People v. Yanna*, 824 N.W.2d 241, 242, 245 (2012) (holding unconstitutional a state law "which prohibits possession of Tasers and stun guns by

Heller makes it clear that the protected arms are not solely those that are suitable for militia use. The right to bear arms "did not refer only to carrying a weapon in an organized military unit" but also included doing so as part "of the natural right of defense."[132] By this reasoning, any weapon that could be used for either militia duty or for private self-defense qualifies as an "arm." Although militia use is not necessary to show that something is a Second Amendment "arm," militia use is sufficient to do so. Knives are indisputably militia arms.

B. Knives as Militia Arms

Knives have long been part of American military equipment. The federal Militia Act of 1792 required all able-bodied free white men between eighteen and forty-five to possess, among other items, "a sufficient bayonet."[133] This establishes both that knives were common *and* were arms for militia purposes. Colonial militia laws required that men (and sometimes all householders, regardless of sex) own not only firearms but also bayonets or swords; the laws sometimes required carrying swords in non-militia situations, such as when going to church.[134] In New England, the typical choice for

---

private individuals;" Tasers, "while plainly dangerous, are substantially less dangerous than handguns," which *Heller* found protected).

132. *Heller*, 554 U.S. at 585.

133. Militia Act, ch. 33, 1 Stat. 271 (1792).

134. For laws of the colonies of New Hampshire, New Haven, New Jersey, New Plymouth, New York, North Carolina, Rhode Island, and Virginia, see: An Act for the Regulating of the Militia, N.H. May 13, 1718, *in* Acts and Laws, Passed by the General Court or Assembly of His Majesties Province of New-Hampshire in New-England 91 (B. Green 1726) (requiring that all soldiers and householders have "a good Sword or Cutlash"); Records of the Colony and Plantation of New Haven, from 1638 to 1649, at 25–26 (Charles J. Hoadly ed., Case, Tiffany & Co. 1857) (requiring everyone that bears arms have "a sworde"); *id.* at 131, 201 (all males aged sixteen to sixty must have "a sword"); Aaron Leaming & Jacob Spicer, The Grants, Concessions, and Original Constitutions of the Province of New Jersey 78 (2d ed., Honeyman & Co. 1881) (1752) (every male aged sixteen to sixty must have "a sword and belt"); The Compact with the Charter and Laws of the Colony of New Plymouth 115 (William Brigham ed., Dutton and Wentworth 1836) (every Sunday, one quarter of the men, on a rotating basis, must carry arms to church; along with a gun and ammunition, carrying a "sword" was required); 1 Documents Relating to the Colonial History of the State of New York 50 (Berthold Fernow ed., Weed, Parsons & Co. 1887) (militiamen must have a good gun and bayonet); An Act for the Better Regulating the Militia of this Government, N.C. 1715, *in* 23 The State Records of North Carolina 29 (Walter Clark ed., Nash Bros. 1904) (a fine for those not appearing with a "well-fixed sword" when ordered); An Act for the Better Regulating of the Militia, *in* Laws and Acts of Rhode Island, and Providence Plantations Made from the First Settlement in 1636 to 1705, *reprinted in* The Earliest Acts and Laws of the Colony of Rhode Island and Providence Plantations, 1647–1719 at 57, 106–07 (John D. Cushing ed., 1977) ("a Sword or Bayenet"); Acts and Laws, Of His Majesties Colony of Rhode-Island, and Providence Plantations in America 87, *reprinted in* The

persons required to own a bayonet or a sword was the sword because most militiamen fulfilled their legal obligation to possess a firearm by owning a "fowling piece" (an ancestor to the shotgun, particularly useful for bird hunting), and these firearms did not have studs upon which to mount a bayonet.[135]

Well after the nation's founding, knives continued to be an important tool for many American soldiers. During World War II, American soldiers, sailors, and airmen wanted and purchased fixed blade knives, often of considerable dimensions.[136] At least in some units, soldiers were "authorized an M3 trench knife, but many carried a favorite hunting knife."[137] The Marine Corps issued the Ka-Bar fighting knife.[138] As one World War II memoir recounts, "[t]his deadly piece of cutlery was manufactured by the company bearing its name. The knife was a foot long with a seven-inch-long by one-and-a-half-inch-wide blade. . . . Light for its size, the knife was beautifully balanced."[139] Vietnam memoirs report that Ka-Bar and similar knives were still in use, but "not everybody is issued a Ka-Bar knife. There are not enough to go around. If you don't have one, you must wait until someone is going home from Vietnam and gives his to you."[140] Even today, some Special Forces units regularly carry combat knives.[141]

EARLIEST ACTS AND LAWS OF THE COLONY OF RHODE ISLAND AND PROVIDENCE PLANTATIONS, 1647–1719 at 135, 223 (John D. Cushing ed., 1977) ("one good Sword, or Baionet"); An Act for the Better Supply of the Country with Armes and Ammunition, Act 4, Va. Apr. 1684, in 3 THE STATUTES AT LARGE; BEING A COLLECTION OF ALL THE LAWS OF VIRGINIA, FROM THE FIRST SESSION OF THE LEGISLATURE, IN THE YEAR 1619, at 13 (William Waller Hening ed., Samuel Pleasants 1812) (soldiers must furnish themselves with "a sword, musquet and other furniture fitt for a soldier"); An Act for the Better Regulation of the Militia, ch. 2, Va. Nov. 1738, in 5 THE STATUTES AT LARGE, *supra*, at 16–17 (militiamen who are "horse-men" must have a sword or cutlass).

135. *See* CLAYTON E. CRAMER, ARMED AMERICA: THE REMARKABLE STORY OF HOW AND WHY GUNS BECAME AS AMERICAN AS APPLE PIE 97–98 (2006).

136. *See* Walter E. Burton, *Knives for Fighting Men*, POPULAR SCIENCE, July 1944, at 150, 150, 153.

137. GORDON L. ROTTMAN, U.S. SPECIAL WARFARE UNITS IN THE PACIFIC THEATER 1941–45, at 27 (2005).

138. To be precise, "Ka-Bar" is only one manufacturer of post-WWII fighting knives. "Ka-Bar" is sometimes used in a generic sense, in the same way some people call any cola soda a "Coke."

139. E.B. SLEDGE, WITH THE OLD BREED: AT PELELIU AND OKINAWA 21 (Presidio Press 2007) (1981).

140. *See, e.g.*, JOHN CORBETT, WEST DICKENS AVENUE: A MARINE AT KHE SANH 149 (2003).

141. *See, e.g.*, PUSHIES, *supra* note 23, at 63–64.

C. Protection Beyond Militia Arms

The Second Amendment does not protect solely militia arms. As *Heller* points out, those in the Founding Era valued firearms in part because they were useful "for self-defense and hunting."[142] Thus, knives that are useful for self-defense or hunting are also within the scope of the Second Amendment.[143]

In the past, some states imposed special restrictions on certain types of knives while leaving swords alone.[144] Often, the particular knives singled out for extra restrictions were those that could open most easily, likely because legislatures feared that such knives would be used offensively.[145]

The distinction, however, does not make much sense. Guns can be used offensively or defensively. The very characteristic that makes a gun so useful for defense—the ability to project force at a distance, rather than in close contact—also makes the gun particularly dangerous as an offensive weapon. The difference between offensive and defensive is not the type of gun but the intent of the user and the circumstances of use. The same is true for anything with a blade; the characteristics that make any particular bladed instrument handy for self-defense will also make it usable for offense. Again, the user, not the instrument, is the difference.

The question of whether knives qualify as a type of arm suitable for self-defense seems almost trivial. Knives are self-evidently useful for self-defense. Indeed, almost every type of knife would be useful for self-defense against an attacker armed with fists or other personal weapons, a knife, or an impact weapon such as a billy club.[146] Although a knife is most definitely not an ideal defensive weapon against an attacker armed with a handgun, at very close range, as is the case with many crimes of violence, it would generally be more effective than barehanded defense or begging for mercy.

In some situations, a knife might not be the best choice for self-defense because to use it requires one to be inches from the attacker. Nonetheless, it can be an effective deterrent to attack for

142. District of Columbia v. Heller, 554 U.S. 570, 599 (2008).

143. A knife that is useful for hunting does not have to be a knife that is useful for taking the animal; a knife that can be used to clean the meat off the animal would also qualify.

144. *E.g.*, An Act to Suppress the Sale and Use of Bowie Knives and Arkansas Tooth Picks in this State, ch. 137, 22 Tenn. Gen. Assemb. Acts 200 (1838) (banning carrying or purchasing Bowie knives and Arkansas Toothpicks, but affecting no other weapon).

145. *See supra* Part I.E–F.

146. There are specialized knives whose blades are surrounded such that they can be used to cut rope or seat belts but are essentially useless as a stabbing weapon. Butter knives are also useless for self-defense. A ban on them would not violate the Second Amendment because they are only useful as tools.

Case 4:23-cv-00547-O Document 20-2 Filed 10/06/23 Page 164 of 555 PageID 282

the same reason that a firearm is; the attacker must decide whether the risk of being seriously injured or killed justifies continuing the attack. In at least some situations, the attacker will see the knife and remember an urgent appointment elsewhere.

Some schools of self-defense instruction, such as Michael Janich's Martial Blade Concepts, specialize in teaching defensive knife use.[147] Many people, including police officers carrying defensive handguns, also carry a backup defensive knife, in case the handgun malfunctions or runs out of ammunition.[148] The Ka-Bar TDI Law Enforcement knife is designed for this purpose, with a small fixed blade and a distinctive angled grip made for carrying on a belt.[149]

A knife may also be the best or only available defensive choice for persons who, for a variety of reasons, may choose not to own a firearm. Most knives are substantially cheaper than the cheapest firearm. The poorest Americans are also the most at risk of being victims of crime.[150] A ten-dollar knife may be an option where a $130 used rifle is not.

Similarly, a person who chooses a knife for self-defense may live in an area where firearms (even after the *McDonald v. Chicago* decision, which incorporated the Second Amendment against state and local government[151]) are more strictly regulated than knives. For example, a knife that can be bought and taken home right away provides at least some protection during the period of days, weeks, or months that it may take to get government permission to own a firearm.

A person may also be reluctant to own a firearm out of concern that he may be unable to adequately secure it from his children. Although knives are still dangerous, a parent may conclude that the danger of a knife is sufficiently self-evident to a child, and that it represents a very minor risk compared to a firearm. While many people keep their guns in a safe or lockbox, almost every home has

---

147. *See* MARTIAL BLADE CONCEPTS: PRACTICAL PERSONAL-DEFENSE SKILLS FOR TODAY'S WORLD, http://www.martialbladeconcepts.com/Home.aspx (last visited Aug. 20, 2013).

148. *See, e.g.*, Greg Ellifritz, *Should Police Officers Carry Fixed Blade Knives?*, ACTIVE RESPONSE TRAINING (Feb. 4, 2013), http://www.activeresponsetraining.net/should-police-officers-carry-fixed-blade-knives; Randall, *Police Knives: Carrying and Training*, BLUESHEEPDOG.COM, http://www.bluesheepdog.com/police-knives/ (last visited Aug. 20, 2013).

149. *TDI Law Enforcement Knife*, KA-BAR, http://www.kabar.com/knives/detail/76 (last visited Aug. 20, 2013).

150. *See* PATSY KLAUS & CATHY MASTON, BUREAU OF JUSTICE STATISTICS, CRIMINAL VICTIMIZATION IN THE UNITED STATES, 1995, at 21 tbl.14 (2000) (victimization rates by annual family income: 75.0/1,000 for those from families with income below $7,500, dropping consistently in every income category to 37.7/1,000 for those at $75,000 per year and above).

151. McDonald v. City of Chicago, 130 S. Ct. 3020 (2010).

several kitchen knives lying in drawers or in a block on the kitchen counter.

The fact that knives in general may be less effective for self-defense than handguns does not generally strip knives of Second Amendment protection. Whether a particular arm is the ideal choice for self-defense does not affect whether that arm is constitutionally protected. In *Heller*, Dick Heller owned a .22 caliber revolver, which is about the weakest self-defense firearm possible.[152] The Court upheld Mr. Heller's right to own the gun, despite the fact that a higher caliber handgun would be more effective at stopping an attacker.[153] Likewise, a folding knife with a three-inch blade is not as powerful a defensive arm as a sword or a handgun. The Second Amendment protects individual discretion to choose which defensive arm is most suitable for the individual, based on his or her particular circumstances.

D. *Technological Changes*

Heller explicitly rejected the notion that the Second Amendment protects only the types of arms that were in existence in 1789, when Congress sent the Second Amendment to the states for ratification.[154] Claiming that the Second Amendment only protects 1789 guns is like saying that the First Amendment protects only the hand cranked printing press and not television. On the other hand, if a particular firearm model is a modern equivalent of a 1789 flintlock rifle, musket, or 1789 handgun, then it is clear that such a firearm is within the Second Amendment's scope.

Virtually every modern knife is comparable to the knives of 1789. Knives and other edged weapons were at least as common in English and U.S. society in the eighteenth century as they are today, appearing frequently in a variety of contexts. They were commonly

152. *Compare .22 Results in fps*, BALLISTICS BY THE INCH, http://www.ballisticsbytheinch.com/22.html (last visited Aug. 20, 2013), *with .25 Auto Results in fps*, BALLISTICS BY THE INCH, http://www.ballisticsbytheinch.com/25auto.html (last visited Aug. 20, 2013).

153. District of Columbia v. Heller, 554 U.S. 570, 629–31 (2008) (upholding Heller's right to possess a handgun in his home); *see also* Jorge Amselle, *Choosing the Best Caliber for Self-Defense*, AMERICAN RIFLEMAN (May 4, 2011), http://www.americanrifleman.org/articles/best-caliber-self-defense/ ("[The .38 special] cartridge is considered by many experts to be the minimum necessary for adequate personal protection."); Paul W. Abel, *Calibers for Defense*, SHOOT-N-IRON PRAC. SHOOTING & TRAINING ACAD., http://www.shoot-n-iron.com/calibers-for-defense.asp (last visited Aug. 22, 2013) ("I personally do not recommend either [.32 or .25 calibers] for defensive purposes. Both calibers are lacking in velocity and bullet expansion.").

154. *See Heller*, 554 U.S. at 582.

sold, carried, used as tools,[155] and occasionally misused as offensive weapons.[156]

While modern knives are made of superior materials, from a functional perspective knives have advanced far less since 1789 than have firearms, printing presses, or the myriad of other technologies whose constitutional protections are indisputable.[157] Even the switchblade is old; the first spring-ejected blades appeared in Europe in the late eighteenth century.[158]

Gun prohibition advocates have long argued that modern firearms are far more deadly than single-shot, muzzle-loading firearms of 1789 and thus do not enjoy the protections of the Second Amendment.[159] They lost that argument in *Heller*.[160] There is no similar argument with respect to knives. While firearms have changed from single-shot to multi-shot, the knives of 2013 have exactly one blade, just like the knives of 1789.

---

155. *See, e.g.*, W. LUDLAM, AN INTRODUCTION AND NOTES, ON MR. BIRD'S METHOD OF DIVIDING ASTRONOMICAL INSTRUMENTS 6 (1786) (for making astronomical instruments); PHILIP LUCKOMBE & WILLIAM CASLON, A CONCISE HISTORY OF THE ORIGIN AND PROGRESS OF PRINTING 351 (1770) (used in setting type); TEMPLE HENRY CROKER ET AL., 3 THE COMPLETE DICTIONARY OF ARTS AND SCIENCES, "Tanning Engines" (describing the machine used for tanning leather).

156. *See, e.g.*, King v. Hardy, in THE PROCEEDINGS IN CASES OF HIGH TREASON, UNDER A SPECIAL COMMISSION OF OYER AND TERMINER 303–05 (1794) (a merchant in London describing his sale of knives with springs that hold them open; "they lay in my show glass, and in the window for public sale."); King v. Chetwynd, NO. 8 PART 3 THE PROCEEDINGS ON THE KING'S COMMISSIONS OF THE PEACE, AND OYER AND TERMINER 313 (1743) (a dispute over a slice of a cake led to an assault involving a pocket knife); *Particulars of Margaret Nicholson's Attempt to Assassinate His Majesty*, 10 THE EUROPEAN MAG., AND LONDON REV. 117 (1786) (describing Margaret Nicholson's attempt on King George III's life).

157. *See* Clayton E. Cramer & Joseph Edward Olson, *Pistols, Crime and Public*, 44 WILLIAMETTE L. REV. 699, 716–22 (2008) (comparing firearms to other advancing technologies which enjoy constitutional protections).

158. TIM ZINSER ET AL., SWITCHBLADES OF ITALY 7–8 (2003).

159. *See Heller*, 554 U.S. at 582 ("Some have made the argument, bordering on the frivolous, that only those arms in existence in the 18th century are protected by the Second Amendment.").

160. *Id.* ("We do not interpret constitutional rights that way. Just as the First Amendment protects modern forms of communications, *e.g.*, Reno v. American Civil Liberties Union, 521 U.S. 844, 849 (1997), and the Fourth Amendment applies to modern forms of search, *e.g.*, Kyllo v. United States, 533 U.S. 27, 35–36 (2001), the Second Amendment extends, prima facie, to all instruments that constitute bearable arms, even those that were not in existence at the time of the founding.").

Case 4:23-cv-00547-O Document 20-2 Filed 10/06/23 Page 167 of 555 PageID 285

E. The Scope of the Right to Keep and Bear Knives

Heller addressed not only the right to keep a gun in the home but also the right to *bear* arms. Although *Heller* allows carry bans in "sensitive places," the opinion recognized a general right to carry.[161] Some lower courts have resisted *Heller*'s language about the right to carry, and the issue may need another Supreme Court case for a final resolution.[162]

Today, in forty-two states, adults who pass a fingerprint-based background check and a safety training class can obtain a permit to carry a handgun for lawful protection.[163] As a practical matter, the right to bear arms is already in effect in these states. In some states, these licenses are specifically for concealed *handguns* and do not allow the licensee to carry a concealed knife.[164] The reason for this peculiar situation is that these laws were enacted with the support of the National Rifle Association and other gun rights activist groups that were concerned about the right to carry firearms and did not pay attention to other arms, such as knives.[165] A few years ago, Knife Rights—the first proactive organization dedicated to

161. *See id.* at 584 ("At the time of the founding, as now, to 'bear' meant to 'carry.' When used with 'arms,' however, the term has a meaning that refers to carrying for a particular purpose—confrontation.") (citations omitted).

162. *See, e.g.*, Smith v. U.S., 20 A.3d 759, 764 (D.C. 2011) (affirming the conviction of a Washington, D.C. police officer, wrongfully terminated and awaiting reinstatement, who was arrested for carrying a handgun within the District); Piszczatoski v. Filko, 840 F. Supp. 2d 813, 820 (D.N.J. 2012) ("The Second Amendment does not protect an absolute right to carry a handgun for self-defense outside the home, even if the Second Amendment may protect a narrower right to do so for particular purposes under certain circumstances."); Richards v. County of Yolo, 821 F. Supp. 2d 1169, 1174 (E.D. Cal. 2011) ("Based upon this, Heller cannot be read to invalidate Yolo County's concealed weapon policy, as the Second Amendment does not create a fundamental right to carry a concealed weapon in public."). *But see* Moore v. Madigan, 702 F.3d 933, 942 (7th Cir. 2012) (overturning a ban on carrying in any form, open or concealed); People v. Aguilar, 2013 IL 112116 (Second Amendment is violated by a general ban on bearing arms).

163. Clayton E. Cramer & David B. Kopel, *"Shall Issue": The New Wave of Concealed Handgun Permit Laws*, 62 TENN. L. REV. 679 (1995); O'Shea, *supra* note 109, at 598–601. With the exception of California, Delaware, Hawaii, Maryland, Massachusetts, New Jersey, New York, and Rhode Island, all the other states have an objective process by which most law-abiding adults can obtain a permit to carry, or do not need a permit. *See generally* BUREAU OF ALCOHOL, TOBACCO, FIREARMS AND EXPLOSIVES, STATE LAWS AND PUBLISHED ORDINANCES — FIREARMS (31st ed. 2011), *available at* https://www.atf.gov/files/publications/download/p/atf-p-5300-5-31st-editiion/2010-2011-atf-book-final.pdf.

164. Oregon is fairly typical in prohibiting concealed carry of any knife "that projects or swings into position by force of a spring or by centrifugal force [or] any dirk [or] dagger," OR. REV. STATS. § 166.240 (2011), but allows concealed carry of a *firearm* if licensed, *id.* §§ 166.250, .291. Idaho, by comparison, prohibits carrying "any dirk, dirk knife, bowie knife, dagger, pistol, revolver or any other deadly or dangerous weapon" unless the carrier is licensed to carry a concealed *weapon.* IDAHO CODE ANN. § 18-3302(7) (2013).

165. *See About NRA-ILA*, NRA-ILA, http://www.nraila.org/about-nra-ila.aspx (last visited Aug. 20, 2013).

knives—was created.[166] Had such an organization existed when these concealed carry laws were enacted, inclusion of knives would have been more likely.

Given the current understanding of the Second Amendment and the criminological evidence discussed above, if a state government decides that a particular individual is responsible enough to carry a concealed, loaded handgun in public places throughout the state, the state cannot forbid that person from carrying a concealed knife.

V. STANDARDS OF REVIEW

Post-*Heller* courts are using a wide variety of analytical tools to evaluate Second Amendment claims. Sometimes, a statute is so flagrantly unconstitutional that there is no need to formulate a multi-step test.[167] A law that prohibits activity "near" the core right of self-defense (such as a ban on target ranges) may receive "not-quite strict scrutiny."[168] Alternatively, a court might apply the "history and tradition" test.[169] Some courts have used intermediate scrutiny, particularly for laws that involve persons who have already demonstrated themselves to be more likely than most to misuse a firearm.[170] This Part tests some knife laws against the weakest possible relevant standard, intermediate scrutiny.[171] Although intermediate scrutiny is not the correct standard in all cases, these analyses are telling because if a knife control fails intermediate scrutiny, then it will fail all of the more rigorous standards as well.

As *U.S. v. Skoien* states, "[i]n its usual formulation, [the intermediate scrutiny] standard of review requires the government to establish that the challenged statute serves an important governmental interest and the means it employs are substantially related

---

166. *See* Richard Grant, *Move Over, NRA. Meet the Knife Lobby*, MOTHER JONES (Nov./Dec. 2012), http://www.motherjones.com/politics/2012/12/knife-rights-second-amendment.

167. *See, e.g.*, *Moore*, 702 F.3d at 942 (holding a near-complete ban on bearing arms unconstitutional).

168. *See, e.g.*, Ezell v. City of Chicago, 651 F.3d 684, 708–09 (7th Cir. 2011) (granting a preliminary injunction against a ban on firing ranges).

169. *See* Heller v. District of Columbia (*Heller II*), 670 F.3d 1244, 1274–75 (D.C. Cir. 2011) (Kavanaugh, J., dissenting) (suggesting that restrictions be analyzed under an approach based on text, history, and tradition).

170. *See, e.g.*, United States v. Skoien, 614 F.3d 638, 641–44 (7th Cir. 2010) (en banc) (applying something similar to intermediate scrutiny to a ban on possessing firearms for persons convicted of domestic violence misdemeanors).

171. Rational basis is not available because a fundamental right is involved. *See* District of Columbia v. Heller, 554 U.S. 570, 628 n.27 (2008); McDonald v. City of Chicago, 130 S. Ct. 3020, 3050 (2010).

to the achievement of that interest."[172] Courts have repeatedly held that, under intermediate scrutiny, it is not enough for the government to assert that it has a legitimate public interest.[173] In *Turner Broadcasting System, Inc. v. FCC*, the Court ruled that, under intermediate scrutiny, the government "must demonstrate that the recited harms are real, not merely conjectural, and that the regulation will in fact alleviate these harms in a direct and material way."[174]

This Part applies intermediate scrutiny to three particular types of knife laws: laws that ban possessing certain knives in the home (Section A), laws that allow carrying knives for some purposes but not for self-defense (Section B), and laws that allow carrying handguns but not knives (Section C). The Article argues that all three types of laws fail intermediate scrutiny.

A. Home Possession

Criminal prosecutions for home possession of knives are rare, for the obvious reason that only in unusual circumstances would such possession come to the attention of law enforcement. Nevertheless, the statutes on home possession violate the Second Amendment because law-abiding persons are not able to possess certain knives in their homes. Most jurisdictions that have a ban on home possession of a certain knife also forbid the sale of such a knife, thus making it doubly impossible for a law-abiding person to have the knife at home.

Justifying a ban on home possession or the sale or transfer of a constitutionally protected arm requires the government to offer more than "impressionistic observations" in order to pass intermediate scrutiny.[175] The government must also demonstrate that replacing the banned category of knives with some other, equally dangerous arm would not easily defeat the ban. For example, a ban on revolvers with two-inch barrels would have no public safety benefit if semiautomatic pistols of similar dimensions remained legal. As long as the purchase and possession of a ten-inch Wusthof Chef's

---

172. U.S. v. Skoien, 587 F.3d 803, 805 (7th Cir. 2009), *vacated en banc*, 614 F.3d 638 (7th Cir. 2010).

173. *See, e.g.*, Turner Broadcasting System, Inc. v. FCC, 512 U.S. 622, 661–66 (1994) ("This obligation to exercise independent judgment when First Amendment rights are implicated is not a license to reweigh the evidence *de novo,* or to replace Congress' factual predictions with our own. Rather, it is to assure that, in formulating its judgments, Congress has drawn reasonable inferences based on substantial evidence.").

174. *Id.* at 664.

175. *See* State v. Delgado, 692 P.2d 610, 612 (Or. 1984).

Knife is legal, can any knife ban actually produce a genuine reduction in injuries? Thus, bans on the home possession of switchblades, gravity knives, Bowie knives, and so on are probably unconstitutional.

B. Carrying for Limited Purposes

Lower courts still disagree about the scope of the Second Amendment right to bear arms, and the issue may eventually be decided by the Supreme Court.[176]

Even before the Supreme Court directly recognized that the Second Amendment protects a right to keep and bear arms for personal as well as collective uses, there were still other constitutional limits on carry bans. In the 1995 case *City of Akron v. Rasdan*, the Ohio Court of Appeals upheld a city ordinance banning the carrying of knives "having a blade two and one-half inches in length or longer" against claims of overbreadth and vagueness, but ruled that the ordinance went too far in prohibiting "an *unreasonable* amount of activity that is inherently innocent, harmless, and useful. The most obvious examples of this type of innocent activity include carving, hunting, fishing, camping, scouting, and other recreational activities in which carrying a knife is an integral and often essential part of that activity."[177]

This is an accurate but not comprehensive list. One particularly important item is missing: self-defense. Because knives with blades of longer than two and one-half inches are among Second Amendment "arms" post-*Heller* and especially post-*McDonald, Rasdan* must be read as protecting a right to carry such knives for lawful defense of self and others. The *Rasdan* court distinguished the Akron ordinance from ordinances that were upheld in decisions such as *City of Seattle v. Riggins* and *People v. Ortiz* because the laws in those other states provided "a sufficient number of exceptions to criminal liability" to qualify as "reasonable exercises of the police power."[178]

---

176. *See, e.g.*, Moore v. Madigan, 702 F.3d 933 (7th Cir. 2012) (holding that a near-complete ban on carrying firearms in public is unconstitutional), *reh'g denied*, 708 F.3d 901 (7th Cir. 2013); Kachalsky v. County of Westchester, 701 F.3d 81 (2d Cir. 2012) (holding that a statute requiring applicants show a special need for self-protection before being granted a license to carry did not violate Second Amendment), *cert. denied*, 133 S. Ct. 1806 (2013) (denying petition despite seven amicus briefs in support, including a brief from twenty states).

177. City of Akron v. Rasdan, 663 N.E.2d 947, 950–53 (1995).

178. *Id.* at 953 (citing City of Seattle v. Riggins, 818 P.2d 1100, 1104 (Wash. Ct. App. 1991); People v. Ortiz, 479 N.Y.S.2d 613, 619 (N.Y. Crim. Ct. 1984)).

Case 4:23-cv-00547-O Document 20-2 Filed 10/06/23 Page 171 of 555 PageID 289

Notably, the *Rasdan* court was using the rational basis standard, but, after *Heller* and *McDonald*, rational basis does not suffice.[179] If there is going to be a general ban, with exceptions for permissible purposes for carrying (e.g., while hunting or hiking), then there must be an exception that encompasses lawful self-defense. It is possible that laws which set forth conditions for lawful defensive carry, such as a licensing system, might be evaluated under intermediate scrutiny,[180] but a law which categorically outlaws defensive carry is necessarily unconstitutional.[181]

C. Bans on Carrying Certain Knives but not Handguns

As detailed below in Part VI, some state or local laws allow carrying one knife of a certain blade length while forbidding carrying another knife that has the same blade length, based on whether the knife is a folder or a fixed blade, is a folder that can or cannot be locked, or is a folder that is opened with one mechanism rather than another. To meet even the intermediate standard of scrutiny, laws making such distinctions must be based on clear evidence that these features are a public safety problem, rather than mere conjecture.[182] Given that *Heller* tells us that a handgun ban cannot pass intermediate scrutiny,[183] it seems very doubtful that any of the distinctions in the above paragraph can pass intermediate scrutiny.

If there is a right to carry handguns, then a ban on carrying a knife longer than X inches must be based on evidence that such a knife is more dangerous than a handgun. Given the quality of twenty-first century handguns, this is an impossible showing. Any rule of interpretation that allowed more restrictive laws for the

---

179. *See* District of Columbia v. Heller, 554 U.S. 570, 628 n.27 (2008); McDonald v. City of Chicago, 130 S. Ct. 3020, 3050 (2010).

180. *See, e.g.*, Kachalsky (2d Cir. 2012).

181. *See, e.g.*, Ezell v. City of Chicago, 651 F.3d 684 (7th Cir. 2011); People v. Aguilar, No. 112116, 2013 WL 112116 (Ill. Sept. 12 2013).

182. In cases on commercial speech and in other First Amendment contexts, the Supreme Court has similarly held that "conjecture" does not satisfy the government interest requirement. *See, e.g.*, Nixon v. Shrink Missouri Gov't PAC, 528 U.S. 377, 392 (2000) ("We have never accepted mere conjecture as adequate to carry a First Amendment burden."); Edenfield v. Fane, 507 U.S. 761, 770–71 (1993) (noting that the government's "burden is not satisfied by mere speculation or conjecture," but only by "demonstrat[ing] that the harms [the government] recites are real and that its restriction will in fact alleviate them to a material degree").

183. *Heller*, 554 U.S. at 628–29 ("Under any of the standards of scrutiny that we have applied to enumerated constitutional rights, banning from the home 'the most preferred firearm in the nation to "keep" and use for protection of one's home and family,' would fail constitutional muster.").

Case 4:23-cv-00547-O Document 20-2 Filed 10/06/23 Page 172 of 555 PageID 290

bearing of edged weapons than for firearms cannot qualify as alleviating "these harms in a direct and material way" and thus fails intermediate scrutiny.[184]

Besides lethality, there are some other ways in which knives are less dangerous than handguns. A gunshot fired in self-defense may pass through the criminal and hit an innocent bystander, or a defensive shot may miss the criminal and hit a bystander. The same is true for criminal misuse of guns.[185] These risks occur not only in public places but also from shots fired within a residence. In contrast, a knife used for self-defense has no risk to innocent bystanders similar to a stray bullet.

Because knives are less dangerous than handguns, which may legally be carried, any law that regulates the possession or carrying of knives, even the biggest and scariest knives (for those persons who find them scary), is indefensible under intermediate scrutiny. At the least, intermediate scrutiny requires an "important" government interest;[186] it is difficult to see how the government could even have a rational interest, let alone an important interest, in preventing the carrying of knives by people who can lawfully carry handguns.

VI. EXAMPLES OF KNIFE LAWS THAT POSE CONSTITUTIONAL PROBLEMS

State and local knife laws are often bewilderingly complex, and, as a result, it is very easy for a person with no criminal intent to break these laws. Prosecutors and police do not treat the severe state and local laws as relics of the nineteenth century. Instead, the laws are often vigorously enforced today against persons who are not engaged in *malum in se* behavior.

The enormous political attention on gun regulation means that most Americans have relatively little idea of the extent to which knives are subject to startlingly severe laws. These laws frequently concern carrying but may also forbid manufacture, sale, purchase,

184. *See* Turner Broadcasting System, Inc. v. FCC, 512 U.S. 622, 664 (1994); People v. Yanna, 824 N.W.2d 241, 244–45 (Mich. App. 2012).

185. *See, e.g.*, Lawrence W. Sherman et al., *Stray Bullets and "Mushrooms": Random Shootings of Bystanders in Four Cities, 1977–1988*, 5 J. QUANTITATIVE CRIMINOLOGY 297, 297 (1989) (There was a "rapid increase in both bystander woundings and killings since 1985 in all four cities. . . . [But] total bystander deaths appear to comprise less than one percent of all homicides in these cities."); H. Range Hutson et al., *Adolescents and Children Injured or Killed in Drive-By Shootings in Los Angeles*, 330 NEW ENG. J. MED. 324, 325 (1994) ("Among the victims who had firearms injuries, 122 (28 percent) had no gang affiliation . . .").

186. *See, e.g.*, Craig v. Boren, 429 U.S. 190, 197 (1976).

Case 4:23-cv-00547-O Document 20-2 Filed 10/06/23 Page 173 of 555 PageID 291

or even possession in one's home of a knife. In many respects, the variations in state and local knife regulation are far more curious and unexpected than the variations in gun regulation. Even within a particular state, the variations of what and where something is legal can be confusing.

One reason for the anomaly is that almost all states have some form of legislative or judicial preemption for gun control.[187] Thus, in many states, local governments are greatly restricted in what, if any, gun control laws they may enact, and gun laws are supposed to be uniform within the state.[188] In contrast, only a few states have knife preemption, and those are recent enactments.[189]

A. Washington

Washington is one of the many states without knife preemption. Leslie Riggins was arrested in 1988 in Seattle while waiting for a bus because he had a knife in a sheath on his belt.[190] He was charged with possession of a fixed blade knife.[191] Riggins explained that he originally intended to go fishing with his brother outside of Seattle, but because of a change of plans, Riggins had "ended up using the knife to assist in roofing his brother's house."[192]

Riggins might well have had reason to believe that he was within his rights to carry the knife. One part of the Seattle ordinance prohibiting carrying a fixed blade knife exempted "[a] licensed hunter or licensed fisherman actively engaged in hunting and fishing activity including . . . travel related thereto."[193] When Riggins started his travels, he had planned to go fishing and thus was within the "travel related thereto" exemption.[194] Another exemption protected "[a]ny person immediately engaged in an activity related to a

187. *Firearms Preemption Laws*, NRA-ILA (Dec. 16, 2006), http://www.nraila.org/news-issues/fact-sheets/2006/firearms-preemption-laws.aspx?s=Preemption&st=&ps=.

188. *See* Stephen P. Halbrook, 2 Firearms Law Deskbook app. A (2010).

189. *See* Act of Apr. 29, 2010, ch. 204, 2010 Ariz. Sess. Laws 1005 (codified at Ariz. Rev. Stat. Ann. § 13-3120 (2012)) (first state to preempt knife laws); Restrictions on Political Subdivisions Regarding the Regulation of Knives, ch. 272, 2011 Utah Laws 1092 (codified at Utah Code Ann. §§ 10-8-47.5, 17-50-332 (2012)); An Act Relative to State Authority Over Firearms and Ammunition, ch. 139, 2011 N.H. Laws 141 (codified at N.H. Rev. Stat. Ann. § 159:26 (2012)); Act of May 2, 2012, act 753, 2012 Ga. Laws (codified at Ga. Code Ann. § 16-11-136 (2012)).

190. City of Seattle v. Riggins, 818 P.2d 1100, 1101 (Wash. Ct. App. 1991), *rev'd*, 846 P.2d 1394 (Wash. Ct. App. 1993).

191. Seattle, Wash., Mun. Code § 12A.14.080(B) (2013).

192. *Riggins*, 818 P.2d at 1101.

193. Mun. Code § 12A.14.100(A).

194. *See Riggins*, 818 P.2d at 1101.

lawful occupation which commonly requires the use of such knife, provided such knife is carried unconcealed."[195] Here is where Riggins ended up in trouble. Earlier in the day, Riggins had been using the knife for such a purpose (roofing his brother's house), but by the time he returned home by bus, he was no longer *immediately* engaged in that activity.[196] At this point, his only hope for an exemption from the "dangerous knife" carrying ban would have been "carrying such knife in a secure wrapper or in a tool box."[197]

The state appellate court held that Riggins did not fall within "any one of the three fairly broad exemptions" to Seattle's knife ordinance, and the court was unwilling to recognize that a day that had started with Riggins's knife exempted for a fishing trip had changed as his plans changed.[198] Nothing in the *Riggins* decision suggests that Riggins had engaged in any behavior that was either dangerous or criminal. Had Riggins gone fishing with his brother and, at the end of the day, been returning home by bus, there would have been no criminal conviction.

Washington has a strong state constitutional guarantee of the right to keep and bear arms, and the Washington State Supreme Court has enforced this provision conscientiously when the case has involved a firearm.[199] However, the intermediate appellate court brushed off Riggins's constitutional claim, gave the ordinance "every presumption . . . of constitutionality," and upheld the Seattle ordinance under a mere "reasonable and substantial" test.[200]

The *Riggins* decision was in 1991 and involved only the state constitution. Both *District of Columbia v. Heller* (2008) and *McDonald v. Chicago* (2010) struck down bans on the possession of handguns without even needing to resort to a standard of scrutiny; the ban on handgun possession in those cases was so plainly contrary to the constitutional text that there was no need to proceed to choosing a

195. MUN. CODE § 12A.14.100(B).

196. *See Riggins*, 818 P.2d at 1101, 1104 ("Riggins has failed to show that his conduct falls within one of the ordinance's exemptions.").

197. MUN. CODE § 12A.14.100(C).

198. *See Riggins*, 818 P.2d at 1102, 1104, *rev'd on other grounds*, 846 P.2d 1394 (Wash. Ct. App. 1993).

199. *See, e.g.*, State v. Rupe, 683 P.2d 571, 594–97 (Wash. 1984) (ordering defendant's ownership of an AR-15 excluded from penalty phase of murder trial because of chilling effect on right to keep and bear arms).

200. *Riggins*, 818 P.2d at 1102–03 ("Where legislation tends to promote the health, safety, morals, or welfare of the public and bears a reasonable and substantial relationship to that purpose, every presumption will be indulged in favor of constitutionality."), *rev'd on other grounds*, 846 P.2d 1394 (Wash. Ct. App. 1993).

Case 4:23-cv-00547-O Document 20-2 Filed 10/06/23 Page 175 of 555 PageID 293

level of scrutiny.[201] The *Riggins* approach to the Washington Constitution's protections is therefore contrary to the approach that the U.S. Supreme Court outlined for Second Amendment cases since, according to the Supreme Court, broad bans on ownership or carrying (keeping and bearing) are *per se* unconstitutional. Were *Riggins* to come before the Washington Supreme Court today, it would almost certainly strike down Seattle's overly broad ban on carrying such knives. An example of the federal approach to broad bans after *Heller/McDonald* occurred in 2012 when the Seventh Circuit correctly applied the *Heller/McDonald* model to Illinois, which was the only state to prohibit defensive gun carrying in public places.[202] Because the ban was per se unconstitutional, Judge Richard Posner's decision struck down the Illinois ban without needing to get into three-tiered scrutiny.[203] The Washington State Supreme Court would be obligated not simply to consider the constitutionality of the Seattle ordinance with respect to the Washington State Constitution, but with the much more demanding standards of *McDonald*.

Alternatively, a future Washington state court might simply apply the *Riggins* "substantial" test (which echoes the language of intermediate scrutiny) with some genuine rigor and ask whether there was any substantial relation to public safety in an ordinance that would have let a future defendant similarly situated to Riggins carry his knife home in one way after a day of fishing but required that he carry it in a different way after a day of roofing. As in any case involving heightened scrutiny (strict or intermediate), the burden of proof would be on the government.[204] Depending on how the Supreme Court finally decides what standard of scrutiny to apply to the Second Amendment, an appeal to the Second Amendment

201. *See* District of Columbia v. Heller, 554 U.S. 570, 628–29 (2008) ("Under any of the standards of scrutiny that we have applied to enumerated constitutional rights, banning from the home 'the most preferred firearm in the nation to "keep" and use for protection of one's home and family,' would fail constitutional muster."); McDonald v. City of Chicago, 130 S. Ct. 3020, 3050 (2010) ("In Heller, we held that the Second Amendment protects the right to possess a handgun in the home for the purpose of self-defense. Unless considerations of stare decisis counsel otherwise, a provision of the Bill of Rights that protects a right that is fundamental from an American perspective applies equally to the Federal Government and the States.").

202. *See* 720 Ill. Comp. Stat. 5/24-1 (2011), *invalidated by* Moore v. Madigan, 702 F.3d 933 (7th Cir. 2012); People v. Aguilar, No. 112116, 2013 WL 112116, at *5–8 (Ill. Sept. 12 2013) (Striking down a comprehensive ban on carrying loaded firearms in public places and by someone who was hardly an upstanding citizen: "That said, we cannot escape the reality that in this case, we are dealing not with a reasonable regulation but with a comprehensive ban.").

203. *See Madigan*, 702 F.3d at 941–42.

204. *See, e.g.*, Craig v. Boren, 429 U.S. 190, 196–204 (1976).

might produce a similar result to *Riggins*, or strike down the Seattle ordinance.

B. California

Can a person legally carry a knife in California? He can carry a fixed blade knife on California's college campuses if the blade is not longer than two-and-one-half inches.[205] Folding knives are unrestricted by state law on college campuses,[206] though some campuses may have more restrictive rules. On primary and secondary school grounds, the law is the same for fixed blades as on college campuses (banned if more than two-and-one-half inches), but all folding knives are banned, regardless of blade length, if the blade can lock open.[207] On the other hand, a person can carry a knife with a fixed blade up to four inches into a government building.[208] He can also carry a folding knife into a government building with a blade up to four inches, but *only if* the blade does not lock open.[209]

Heller affirmed the permissibility of special restrictions on arms carrying in "sensitive places, such as schools and government buildings."[210] However, even presuming that California can legally enact some special restrictions on knife carrying in those places, the actual restrictions are irrational. There is no reason why lock-blade folders are allowed and non-locking folders are banned in one location while just the opposite is the rule in another location.

For carrying in public places in general (not in sensitive places), California law is at least coherent at the state level. A person can openly carry any knife. He can concealed carry almost any folding knife. The one exception is that he cannot carry a switchblade with a blade longer than two inches in any fashion, open or concealed.[211]

However, California has no preemption for knife laws, and some California cities, such as Los Angeles, Oakland, and San Francisco, have their own, more restrictive (and inconsistent) ordinances. Los Angeles prohibits open carry of knives with blades that are three

205. *See* CAL. PENAL CODE § 626.10(b) (West 2013).
206. *See id.*
207. *Id.* § 626.10(a). A folder that does not lock open is more dangerous because the blade might fold in unexpectedly and cut a hand. Persons who are familiar with knife safety therefore usually prefer to carry folders that lock open.
208. *See id.* § 171b(3).
209. *Id.*
210. District of Columbia v. Heller, 554 U.S. 570, 626 (2008).
211. CAL. PENAL CODE § 21510 (West 2012).

inches or longer (with some exemptions).[212] Similarly, Oakland prohibits carrying knives with blades three inches or longer, but also "any snap-blade or spring-blade knife" (older terms for switchblades), regardless of knife length.[213] San Francisco prohibits loitering while carrying a concealed knife with a blade three inches or more long, or carrying a concealed switchblade knife of any length.[214] Because of the complexity of California state laws and local ordinances, it would be very easy to unintentionally break the law while carrying a knife with no criminal intent.

C. District of Columbia

The District of Columbia is already famous for its unusual and extreme firearms laws, some of which were struck down in *Heller* and others of which are the subjects of ongoing litigation.[215] The District is also the home of equally severe knife laws. D.C. law prohibits not only carrying a pistol without a license but also "any deadly or dangerous weapon capable of being so concealed."[216] This prohibition applies not simply in public places; the statute adds an additional penalty for doing so "in a place other than the person's dwelling place, place of business, or on land possessed by the person."[217]

It does not matter whether the knife is actually carried concealed. The fact that the knife is *concealable* makes open carrying a crime. The punishment for carrying in the home is "a fine of not more than $1,000 or imprisonment for not more than 1 year, or both."[218] In other words, carrying a carving knife (or even a paring knife) to the dining room table in the District of Columbia appears to be a criminal offense.

Prosecutions for home carry of knives seem to be rare in D.C., likely because such carrying would rarely come to the attention of

212. LOS ANGELES, CAL., MUN. CODE § 55.10 (2012) (exemptions include "where a person is wearing or carrying a knife or dagger for use in a lawful occupation, for lawful recreational purposes, or as a recognized religious practice, or while the person is traveling to or returning from participation in such activity.").

213. OAKLAND, CAL., MUN. CODE §§ 9.36.010–.020 (2012).

214. SAN FRANCISCO, CAL., MUN. POLICE CODE, art. 17 § 1291 (2012).

215. *See* Heller v. District of Columbia (*Heller II*), 670 F.3d 1244, 1248–49 (D.C. Cir. 2011) (affirming basic registration requirements for rifles and a ban on many semi-automatic rifles and on detachable rifle magazines holding more than ten rounds, while remanding for further consideration of long gun registration period and of unusual registration requirements for all guns, such as fingerprinting, training, and periodic re-registration).

216. *See* D.C. CODE § 22-4504(a) (2012).

217. *Id.*

218. *Id.* § 22-4515.

law enforcement. In *Heller*, the Supreme Court struck down a similar D.C. ban on carrying guns that even prohibited a person who had a lawfully registered rifle in the home from carrying the gun from the bedroom into the kitchen in order to clean it.[219] Like the D.C. gun carry ban, the D.C. knife carry ban is grotesquely overbroad and a plain violation of the Second Amendment.

D. New York

Glenn Reynolds's recent article, *Second Amendment Penumbras*, argues that, by analogy to the First Amendment, the "chilling effect" doctrine should be applied to the right to keep and bear arms.[220] While Reynolds's arguments concern firearms, they just as accurately apply to knife laws. Many restrictions and regulations adopted "[d]uring our nation's interlude of hostility toward guns in the latter half of the twentieth century" suggest that:

> the underlying goal is to discourage people from having anything to do with firearms at all. . . . At present, Americans face a patchwork of gun laws that often vary unpredictably from state to state, and sometimes from town to town. Travelers must thus either surrender their Second Amendment rights, or risk prosecution.[221]

One example of the chilling effect of knife regulation comes from New York City. Defendant John Irizarry was arrested in Brooklyn when a police officer noticed a folding knife sticking out of his pocket.[222] The police officer decided (as it turns out, incorrectly) that this was a gravity knife[223] and stopped Irizarry. Irizarry explained that he used the "Husky Sure-Grip Folding Knife" as part of his job, as did indeed turn out to be the case. The police officer arrested him anyway, leading to the discovery of a concealed pistol.

Irizarry sought to suppress the discovery of the pistol because the search was subsequent to an arrest for something that was not a crime. The federal court ruled in Irizarry's favor because the knife in question was not a gravity knife within the definition of New York

219. *See* District of Columbia v. Heller, 554 U.S. 570, 630–31, 635 (2008).

220. Glenn Harlan Reynolds, *Second Amendment Penumbras*, 85 S. CAL. L. REV. 247, 251 (2012).

221. *Id.* at 251–52.

222. United States v. Irizarry, 509 F. Supp. 2d 198, 199 (E.D.N.Y. 2007).

223. The precise definition of a "gravity knife" is discussed *supra* Part III.E. Irizarry's knife was plainly not a gravity knife. *See id.* at 210.

law, but also because "[t]he widespread and lawful presence of an item in society undercuts the reasonableness of an officer's belief that it represents contraband."[224] The defendant's Husky Sure-Grip Folding Knife is a proprietary product sold by Home Depot, which sold 67,341 units in 2006 in New York state alone.[225] The manufacturer of a competing but similar knife reported that it sold 1,765,091 units nationally in 2006.[226] Although the courts did eventually find in Irizarry's favor, any observer of what happened would rightly conclude that carrying even a completely legal knife in New York City is looking for trouble with the police. These onlookers would therefore choose not to exercise their constitutional right to carry knives, meaning their conduct would be chilled.

The courts ruled for Irizarry, but the New York City government did not learn its lesson. In 2010, Manhattan District Attorney Cyrus Vance, Jr. threatened criminal charges against Home Depot, Ace Hardware, and a number of hardware, general, and sporting goods retailers for selling knives that the District Attorney characterized as "illegal knives."[227] As a result of the threat of criminal prosecution and to avoid going to trial on charges, these retailers signed settlement agreements and turned over $1.9 million to finance a so-called public education campaign and other anti-knife efforts by the District Attorney.[228]

The specific claimed violations in this instance involved gravity knives or switchblades. Again, as in the *Irizarry* case, Home Depot pointed out that "[t]hese are common knives" often used in construction and home improvement projects.[229] Some of the arrests associated with these "illegal knives" demonstrate that the definition of "gravity knife" under New York law is subject to abusive prosecution. New York police arrested the noted painter John Copeland a few months after District Attorney Vance's aforementioned settlement with the chain stores for carrying a Benchmade three-inch folding knife, on the allegation that it was a "gravity knife."[230]

Although charges were eventually dropped against Copeland because his lawyer was able to show that Copeland is a serious artist

224. *Id.* at 209.

225. *Id.* at 203–04.

226. *Id.* at 204.

227. *See* Press Release, N.Y. Cnty. Dist. Attorney's Office, *supra* note 53.

228. *See id.*

229. John Eligon, *14 Stores Accused of Selling Illegal Knives,* N.Y. TIMES (June 17, 2010), http://www.nytimes.com/2010/06/18/nyregion/18knives.html?_r=1&.

230. *See* Melissa Grace, *Artist Furious for Being Busted on Weapons Possession Over a Pocket Knife He Uses for Work*, DAILY NEWS (Jan. 26, 2011), http://www.nydailynews.com/new-york/artist-furious-busted-weapons-possession-pocket-knife-work-article-1.155163#ixzz2KSCt0Z5z.

and used the knife in his work for cutting canvas,[231] it does not take much effort to imagine the results if someone who lacked a national reputation or a well-paid attorney had been arrested under the same circumstances. Police arrested Copeland because they thought that they saw a knife in his pants pockets. There was no allegation of any criminal misuse.[232]

Another example of the zeal with which New York City enforces its knife laws—with no connection to criminal misuse—is the story of Clayton Baltzer. Baltzer's "fine-arts class at Baptist Bible College & Seminary in Clarks Summit, Pa." went on a field trip to the Metropolitan Museum of Art.[233] In a subway station, a plainclothes police officer grabbed Baltzer by the arm because his pocketknife clip was visible.[234] Unlike Copeland, Baltzer was convicted and sentenced to a $125 fine and two days of community service. Baltzer has learned his lesson: "I don't plan on visiting New York unless I have to."[235]

E. State Regulation of Switchblades

One of the most important state supreme court decisions regarding knives is *State v. Delgado*.[236] There, the Oregon Supreme Court struck down Oregon's ban on the manufacture, sale, transfer, carrying, or possession of switchblades on the grounds that it violated

---

231. *Id.*

232. *See id.*

233. Jeb Phillips, *Bible-College Student's Pocketknife Spoils Trip to New York City*, COLUMBUS DISPATCH (June 12, 2012), http://www.dispatch.com/content/stories/local/2012/06/12/knife-trouble-in-a-new-york-minute.html.

234. New York City's Administrative Code has the unusual requirement that all knives be carried concealed. *See* N.Y.C., N.Y., ADMIN. CODE § 10-133 (2010). The officer interpreted the visibility of the clip as a violation of the law:

> Baltzer has carried a pocketknife almost everywhere since he was a 14-year-old camp counselor. He clips it on his pocket so that the clip is visible, but the knife isn't. He always uses two hands to open it, the way most people would a regular pocketknife. . . .
>
> In Baltzer's telling, the officer tried to flick it open and couldn't. He handed it to another officer, who did flick it open after several tries.
>
> Baltzer was arrested and charged with the highest degree of misdemeanor under New York law. He had another knife in his backpack, a fixed-blade one he used to whittle for kids at a special-needs camp in Pennsylvania. He forgot he had it in his bag. Police confiscated that one, too.

Phillips, *supra* note 233.

235. Phillips, *supra* note 233.

236. State v. Delgado, 692 P.2d 610 (Or. 1984).

the Oregon Constitution's "right to bear arms" provision.[237] The defendant, Joseph Delgado, "was walking with a companion on a public street. The two appeared disorderly to an officer nearby, and when the defendant reached up as he passed a street sign and tapped or struck it with his hand, the officer confronted both individuals and conducted a pat down search."[238] In the course of that search, officers found a switchblade knife concealed in Delgado's pocket, which he claimed that he carried for self-defense.[239]

The Oregon Supreme Court built upon a previous decision, *State v. Kessler*, which had recognized that "the term 'arms,' as contemplated by the constitutional framers, was not limited to firearms but included those hand-carried weapons commonly used for personal defense."[240] *Kessler* had recognized that possession of billy clubs was protected in one's home.[241] *Delgado* extended *Kessler*'s decision and recognized that a switchblade knife was also a protected arm under the state's constitution.[242]

The state argued that the switchblade knife "is an offensive weapon used primarily by criminals."[243] The Oregon Supreme Court decided that the distinction between defensive and offensive weapons was unpersuasive because the characteristics of defensive and offense of weapons strongly overlap: "It is not the design of the knife but the use to which it is put that determines its 'offensive' or 'defensive' character."[244]

The Oregon Supreme Court also engaged in originalist analysis, observing that possessing and carrying pocketknives is deeply embedded in European and American history. The court wrote that "knives have played an important role in American life, both as tools and as weapons. The folding pocketknife, in particular, since the early 18th century has been commonly carried by men in America and used primarily for work, but also for fighting."[245]

What about the switchblade? The state had argued that the switchblade is fundamentally different from its historical ancestor, the folding pocketknife, which would have been known when the Oregon Constitution was drafted in 1859. The Oregon Supreme Court was not persuaded:

237. *Id.* at 610.
238. *Id.* at 611.
239. *Id.*
240. *See id.* at 611 (citing State v. Kessler, 614 P.2d 94, 98 (Or. 1980)).
241. *Kessler*, 614 P.2d at 100.
242. *Delgado*, 692 P.2d at 611, 614.
243. *Id.* at 612.
244. *Id.*
245. *Id.* at 613–14.

> We are unconvinced by the state's argument that the switchblade is so "substantially different from its historical antecedent" (the jackknife) that it could not have been within the contemplation of the constitutional drafters. They must have been aware that technological changes were occurring in weaponry as in tools generally. . . . This was the period of development of the Gatling gun, breach loading rifles, metallic cartridges and repeating rifles. The addition of a spring to open the blade of a jackknife is hardly a more astonishing innovation than those just mentioned.[246]

The Oregon Supreme Court noted that the 1958 Federal Switchblade Act was based on the theory that switchblades were "almost exclusively the weapon of the thug and the delinquent."[247] The *Delgado* court, however, observed that the relevant congressional testimony "offers no more than impressionistic observations on the criminal use of switch-blades."[248] The *Delgado* decision did not completely forbid the state from regulating the manner in which a switchblade might be carried. The state could prohibit the concealed carry of a switchblade; the complete prohibition on sale, transfer, manufacture, or possession, however, was unconstitutional.[249]

Unlike Oregon, some states continue to ban even the home possession of switchblades.[250] If switchblades are "typically possessed . . . for lawful purposes," then the bans are unconstitutional under *Heller*. Of course, in a state where switchblades are banned, everyone who owns a switchblade is, by definition, a criminal. Besides that, bans on the sale of switchblades will have made it impossible for law-abiding citizens to obtain them, so the switchblades will not be in "typical" use in that state. A law passed during a moral panic sixty years ago might thus end up trumping the Constitution because its prohibition has made that weapon "not typically possessed . . . for lawful purposes."[251]

We can see this problem in *Lacy v. State*, in which the Indiana Court of Appeals upheld a ban on the possession of automatic knives on the grounds that "switchblades are primarily used by

---

246. *Id.* at 614.

247. *Id.* at 612 (quoting S. REP. NO. 85-1980 (1958), *reprinted in* 1958 U.S.C.C.A.N. 3435).

248. *Id.*

249. *See id.* at 614.

250. *E.g.*, COLO. REV. STAT. § 18-12-102 (2012) (possession of gravity or switchblade knives is a felony, even in one's home); TENN. CODE ANN. § 39-17-1302 (2012) (possession, manufacture, transportation, repair, or sale of a switchblade knife is a class A misdemeanor).

251. *See* District of Columbia v. Heller, 554 U.S. 570, 625 (2008).

criminals and are not substantially similar to a regular knife or jackknife."[252] If they are illegal, then by definition they will be "primarily used by criminals,"[253] as any prohibited arm would be.

Lacy quotes *Crowley Cutlery Co. v. U.S.* to refute the Oregon Supreme Court's position in *Delgado* that switchblade knives are not intrinsically different from other knives.[254] *Crowley* argued that switchblade knives "are more dangerous than regular knives because they are more readily concealable and hence more suitable for criminal use."[255] It requires no expert testimony to demonstrate that this claim is incorrect. A switchblade knife's handle, when closed, must be at least as long as the blade. In this respect, it is no different from any folding knife; the enclosure must be slightly longer than the blade. No switchblade knife can be any more concealable than its non-automatic counterpart.

Besides that, all one need do is look at states where switchblades are not banned, and one will see that switchblades are indeed typically possessed by law-abiding citizens for legitimate purposes.

Conclusion

Knives are among the "arms" protected by the Second Amendment. They easily fit with the Supreme Court's *Heller* definition of protected arms, namely that they be usable for self-defense and typically owned by law-abiding citizens for legitimate purposes.

Statutes that ban or impose special restrictions based on how a knife opens, or on whether an opened knife can be locked open, cannot survive any form of heightened scrutiny analysis. Indeed, many laws regulating knives cannot even survive rational basis scrutiny. As we have previously observed, knives are among the arms that Americans have a right to bear, and their lower lethality relative to handguns means that there is not even a *rational basis* for laws that regulate carrying knives more restrictively than carrying handguns.

---

252. Lacy v. State, 903 N.E.2d 486, 492 (Ind. Ct. App. 2009).

253. *See id.* at 488, 491–92.

254. Delgado, 692 P.2d at 614 ("We are unconvinced by the state's argument that the switch-blade is so 'substantially different from its historical antecedent' (the jackknife) that it could not have been within the contemplation of the constitutional drafters. They must have been aware that technological changes were occurring in weaponry as in tools generally.")

255. Crowley Cutlery Co. v. United States, 849 F.2d 273, 278 (7th Cir. 1988). Note that the plaintiff's suit had far more serious problems than the question of the criminal nature of switchblades. The Court of Appeals wrote: "this is not to say that the issue of the Switchblade Knife Act's constitutionality necessarily is frivolous. It is the specific grounds articulated by Crowley that are frivolous, and make the suit frivolous." *Id.* at 279.

This Article has not aimed to resolve definitively every question about knife laws in the United States. Rather, it has endeavored to provide a starting point for further study and to examine some of the prohibitions that may be most clearly unconstitutional under the Second Amendment. In a practical sense, the most frequent way that Americans exercise their Second Amendment rights is by owning and carrying knives. Knife rights are worthy of judicial protection and of further scholarly study.

EXHIBIT L

Swords & Blades of the American Revolution

the encyclopedia of
bladed weapons—
swords, bayonets, spontoons,
halberds, pikes, knives,
daggers, and axes—
used by both sides,
on land and sea,
in America's struggle
for independence

by George C. Neumann

Swords & Blades of the American Revolution

by George C. Neumann

Rebel Publishing Co., Inc.

Contents

	Preface	6
Chapter 1	BLADES IN THE EARLY COLONIES	8
Chapter 2	COLD STEEL ON THE BATTLEFIELD	16
Chapter 3	LINES OF BAYONETS: The Ultimate Weapon!	22
Chapter 4	THE FLASHING SWORD: Draw Me Not Without Reason Sheath Me Not Without Honor!	51
Chapter 5	STATELY POLEARMS: A Lingering of Prior Centuries	190
Chapter 6	KNIVES AND DAGGERS: Carve, Skin, Stab, and Scalp	227
Chapter 7	THE BELT AND CAMP AXE: To Clear the Land and Defend It!	252
	Glossary of Terms	276
	Nomenclature Summary	278
	Bibliography	280
	Index	285

[C]arve, Skin, Stab, and Scalp

Knives and daggers were personal necessities to the early American. They served him in a wide variety of uses, including cleaning game, home chores, fighting, trading with the Indians, and as cooking-eating utensils.

THREE BASIC KNIFE CATEGORIES

Although there was great variance in individual design, most can be classified into three general categories.

The Belt Knife For use as both a tool and a weapon; a single-edged blade (with or without a false edge) designed primarily for cutting, but also capable of a stabbing stroke.

The Dagger Developed for fighting, it normally mounted a symmetrical tapering blade having at least two edges. The design is most effective as a thrusting and stabbing weapon.

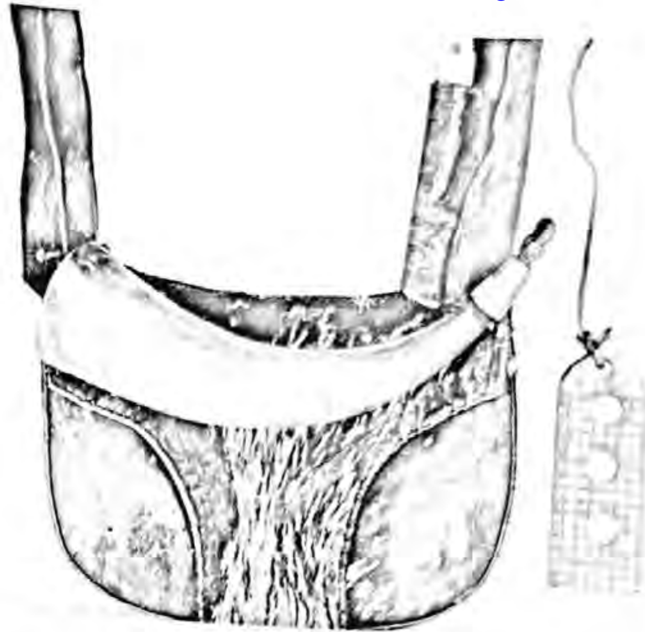
The Dirk Originally it denoted an even-tapering blade similar to the dagger, with only one edge sharpened; about the end of the American Revolution the term began to describe short naval side arms mounting either dagger or knife blades.

EARLY ATLANTIC COLONIES 1607-1700

In the 1500's daggers were considered normal articles of dress for European gentlemen. During the first half of the 1600's, however, they began to disappear from portraits of the aristocracy. Knives and daggers were losing their cultural significance to the civilian sword (see "small swords", Chapter IV).

In the colonies these short-edged weapons had very real importance, and references continue to mention their employment here through the 1600's. Scant description survives of the actual pieces carried by the colonists during this period, but it is assumed that the contemporary European designs predominated. The prevailing practice stressed daggers for the skilled fighting man and knives for everyday use.

The Utility Knife While military men emphasized the dagger, most colonists carried knives for their daily needs—utilizing both fixed and folding blades. They also found it an important commodity in trading with



6.VI RIFLEMAN'S "PATCH KNIFE": The American rifleman usually carried his accessories in a hunting bag with a shoulder strap and powderhorn. His small knife for cutting bullet patches and minor chores was often carried in a sheath attached to the strap (as shown here), the inboard side of the bag, or in the bag itself. Note the loading block (which held bullets already wrapped for fast loading).

The Sgian Dubh It was also the practice by many Scots to carry a small companion knife to the dirk. References in the first half of the 18th century describe its popular carrying place as in the sleeve near the arm pit. By the end of the 1700's it had acquired the name "sgian dubh" ("black knife"), and was inserted into the top of the stocking. Most have a straight knife blade and a dark carved wooden grip (often heather root). The great majority of surviving sgian dubhs date after 1800.

POCKET KNIVES (#33.K to #56.K)

Folding knives have been found in Roman sites as early as the 1st century, and by the 1700's they had undergone little basic change. As America developed and its frontiers moved inland, the custom of wearing belt knives waned in coastal areas. The result was a great increase in folding knives to the point where they became almost universal accessories. Specimens vary from long (10-12 inches) bladed varieties for fighting, to small 2-3 inch specimens for trimming quill pens. Contemporary references called them "pocket knives", "jackknives" (origin of this name uncertain), "clasp knives", "spring knives", and "folding knives".

At the time of the Revolutionary War they were apparently used by a great majority of soldiers to serve their numerous personal needs. Orders from New York, New Hampshire, and Massachusetts actually listed them as required accessories.

Because of this widespread use, surviving examples vary greatly, but were mostly single-bladed (with or without a holding spring), and had a simple metal handle mounted with panels of wood, horn, bone, iron, ivory, or mother-of-pearl. Although multi-accessory blades for the jackknife did not become popular until the 1850's, some 18th century specimens are found with forks, fleams (bleeders), saws, or heavy needles. *(Note: Unless otherwise identified, all photographed weapons and equipment are from the author's personal collection.)*

EXHIBIT M

Case 4:23-cv-00547-O Document 20-2 Filed 10/06/23 Page 192 of 555 PageID 310

ARMS AND ARMO
===preowned===
N/A
MISCELLANEOUS/MISCE ... =GREEN/ECOMM=

HAROLD L. PETERSON

Arms and Armor in Colonial America

1526-1783

KnifeRights MSJ App.000187

Arms and Armor in Colonial America 1526–1783

Harold L. Peterson

with a new Introduction by
Beverly A. Straube
JAMESTOWN REDISCOVERY
ASSOCIATION FOR THE PRESERVATION OF VIRGINIA ANTIQUITIES

DOVER PUBLICATIONS, INC.
Mineola, New York

THE COMPANY OF MILITARY COLLECTORS & HISTORIANS

Through its Reviewing Board, takes pride in sponsoring this book and in recommending it as a standard work of reference in the field of American military history.

COLONEL HARRY C. LARTER, USA, Ret.
President

REVIEWING BOARD

COLONEL ARCADI GLUCKMAN, USA, Ret.
MR. C. O. v. KIENBUSCH
LIEUTENANT COLONEL HERMANN W. WILLIAMS, JR., USAR
COLONEL FREDERICK P. TODD, USAR, *Editor-in-Chief*

WASHINGTON, D. C.

Contents

BOOK I

THE AGE OF COLONIZATION AND EXPLORATION
1526-1688

		Page
Introduction		3
Chapter 1.	Firearms	7
Chapter 2.	Ammunition and Equipment	53
Chapter 3.	Edged Weapons	69
Chapter 4.	Armor	103

BOOK II

THE FRENCH WARS AND THE REVOLUTION
1689-1783

Introduction		155
Chapter 5.	Firearms	159
Chapter 6.	Ammunition and Equipment	227
Chapter 7.	Edged Weapons	253
Chapter 8.	Armor	307
Appendix: The Compleat Souldier		317
Bibliography		337
Index		347

Chapter Three

Edged Weapons

IT WAS STATED previously that the early colonist's firearm was his most important single weapon. It should not be deduced from this, however, that he could have carried on with that weapon alone. Edged weapons were also absolutely necessary. Firearms were needed to engage an enemy at a distance, but once the conflict became hand-to-hand, they were useless because of the length of time required to load them. The bayonet with which the modern soldier converts his gun to a polearm did not come into general use in America until after the close of the period under consideration, and so the explorers and settlers were forced to carry separate weapons. Also, during the early years there were certain groups, notably the Spanish lancers, the pikemen, and some of the targeteers who carried no firearms at all. These groups, however, gradually disappeared as they were found to be impractical in woodland warfare. Finally, there were some specialized edged weapons such as arms emblematic of rank or justice, hatchets, and the like designed and used for specific purposes.

Of all the various forms of edged weapons, the one in most widespread usage throughout the whole period was the sword. All men on military duty whether they carried a firearm or not were required to have a sword. Since all able-bodied men in a colony were normally called upon for such duty, this meant that all had to be familiar with the use of that weapon. Consequently, it is not surprising frequently to find more swords than guns listed in inventories and estates, or to learn that more have survived the ravages of time. It is interesting to note also that when Captain John Smith left Virginia in 1608 he reported that there were on hand in the colony more swords than men and that in 1618 a Committee for Smythes Hundred in Virginia recommended that 40 swords and daggers be provided for 35 men expecting to come from England.[1]

EXHIBIT N

KNIFE BIBLE

History & Modern Knowledge

A. J. Cardenal, MSc ICT, MSc GIS
Geographic Information Scientist

with **Sharon Steel,** *as* **Culinary Contributor**

Content Disclaimer:

This book was written with the intent to educate readers on knives and some of their uses. This book covers different types of knives, knife brands, and knife steels. The book or its authors do not encourage readers to purchase such items if the particular jurisdiction where they reside does not grant them the permission to legally purchase and own such items. This book also covers knife exercises, knife maintenance, bushcraft, knife fighting, culinary arts, and knife history. The book or its authors do not encourage readers to engage in activities that can be harmful or hazardous to themselves or others. We also to not encourage readers to engage in illegal activities with any form of item considered a lethal weapon, such as a knife. Before engaging in activities that involve a knife, consult with a local attorney to make sure laws are not broken. In addition, working or training with knives can be physically and mentally demanding, therefore consult with a physician before engaging in such activity. The book or its authors are not responsible for any activity performed by its readers, under any circumstance.

***Warning:** Reader discretion is advised. Some of the content in this book is not suited for minors/children under the age of 18. Some of the content might be upsetting in nature and can trigger a negative, unwanted response in certain readers, such as trauma survivors, individuals with common phobias and readers with visual sensitivities. This book contains violent content, which may be too intense for some readers. The content in this book is intended for an older audience.*

Knife Bible, History & Modern Knowledge. Copyright © 2022 by A.J. Cardenal.

All rights reserved. Printed in the United States of America.

No part of this book may be used or reproduced in any manner whatsoever without written permission except in the case of brief quotations embodied in critical articles and reviews.

For information address Knife Bible, LLC,

P.O. Box 1358, Leesburg, VA 20177

https://www.knifebible.com

FIRST EDITION

Designed by A. J. Cardenal

ISBN 978-0-578-82945-6 (hardcover)

TABLE OF CONTENTS

1. Beginnings
    - a. History of the Knife // 19
        - i. Stone Age // 20
        - ii. Copper Age // 22
            1. Linear-Band Keramic (LBK) Culture // 23
        - iii. Bronze Age // 24
            1. Cucuteni-Trypillia Culture // 24
            2. Funnel-Beaker Culture // 25
            3. Maykop Culture // 25
            4. Yamnaya Culture // 26
            5. Corded Ware Culture // 27
            6. Battle Axe Culture // 28
            7. The Koryos // 28
            8. Egyptian Empire // 29
        - iv. Iron Age // 32
            1. Zhou Dynasty // 32
            2. The Sword of Goujian // 33
            3. The Scythians // 33
            4. The Persian Empire // 35
            5. Sparta // 37
            6. Macedonia // 38
            7. The Parthians // 39
            8. Han Dynasty // 40
            9. Celts of Britain // 41
            10. Germanic People // 42
            11. Punic Wars // 43
            12. The Roman Empire // 44
            13. The Gupta Empire of India // 51
        - v. Middle Ages // 52
            1. Attila the Hun and The Sword of Mars // 54
            2. The Vandals // 54
            3. Byzantine Empire // 55
            4. Charlemagne and The Sword of Joyeuse // 57
            5. The Viking Age // 57
            6. The Kievan Rus // 62
            7. Samurai // 64
            8. El Cid and His Mystical Sword // 67
            9. Medieval India & the Mughal Empire // 68
            10. Genghis Khan & the Mongol Empire // 74
            11. William Wallace – Battle of Stirling Bridge // 76
            12. The Ottoman Empire // 77
            13. The Aztecs // 81
        - vi. The Renaissance Period // 82
            1. Hundred Years' War // 89
            2. Ming Dynasty // 94

3. The Landsknechts // 96
4. Polish Winged Hussars // 97
5. Early Settlers of America // 98

vii. Knives of the 1600s // 99
1. Dining Knife // 99
2. Early Western European Folding Knife // 100
3. The First Steel-Edge Straight Razor // 103
4. Colonial Ironworks // 104
5. Eating Utensils in Colonial America // 104

viii. The Age of Enlightenment // 105
1. Seven Years' War/French and Indian War // 105
2. Butterfly Knife a.k.a Balisong // 106

ix. The Industrial Revolution // 107
1. Switch Blades // 107
2. Laguiole // 108
3. Hoe-Shaped Razor // 108
4. American Revolutionary War & Declaration of Independence // 109
5. The United States and Territorial Expansion // 111

x. American Frontier // 113
1. James Bowie and his Infamous Fighting Knife // 114
2. American Civil War // 115
3. A Return to Nature // 118

xi. The 1900s // 119
1. World War I // 120
2. The Great Depression // 125
3. World War II // 126

xii. Knives of the Indigenous People // 131
1. The Ulu // 131
2. The Karambit // 133
3. Parang – Jungle Knife // 134
4. Golok // 135
5. The Dayak Mandau Sword // 136
6. Bolo Knife // 136
7. The Puukko // 137
8. Leuku // 140

b. Modern Knives // 143

i. Influential People in the Knife Community (Past & Present) // 144

ii. Knife Companies // 161
1. Chris Reeve Knives // 163
2. ESEE Knives // 167
3. Fallkniven // 171
4. Gransfors Bruk // 175
5. LionSTEEL // 179
6. L.T. Wright Knives // 183
7. Opinel // 189
8. TOPS Knives // 193
9. Victorinox Swiss Army // 197

2. Evolution

a. Steel // 203

- i. Blade Steels and their Performance Levels // 204
- ii. Steels v. Low Temperatures // 207
- iii. Knife Steels // 209
  1. Alloying Elements // 209
  2. Carbon Steels // 210
  3. Tool Steels // 212
  4. Stainless Steels // 217
  5. Atypical Steels // 226
  6. Laminated Steels // 227
- iv. Blade Coating v. No Coating // 230
- v. Blade Grinds // 232
- vi. Blade Types // 233
- vii. Knife Tangs // 234
- viii. Edge Tpes // 235
- ix. Knife Parts - Fixedblade // 236
- x. Knife Parts - Folder // 237
- xi. Straight Razor Grinds // 238
- xii. Traditional Pocketknife Designs // 239
- xiii. Knife Handle Material // 241
- xiv. Knifemaking // 248
  1. Forging // 248
  2. Stock Removal // 252
- xv. Blade Maintenance // 255
  1. Knife Sharpening // 255
  2. Knife Storage // 276

3. Revelation

a. Knife Applications // 279

- i. Culinary // 281
  1. Knife Types // 283
  2. KIKUICHI // 287
  3. What to Look for in a Knife // 292
  4. Profile: Chef Mike Pirolo // 295
  5. How Much Should You Pay // 298
  6. Coltelleire Berti // 301
  7. Your Essentials // 306
  8. Messermeister // 319
  9. Grip It Cut It // 326
  10. Profile: Christina Martinez // 329
  11. Outdoor Living // 333
      a. Profile: The Whole Ox // 337
      b. Profile: Jacqueline Pirolo // 343
      c. Opinel // 346
  12. Care & Storage // 347
  13. Chelsea Miller Knives // 353

ii. Bushcraft Techniques // 361
   1. Field Maintenance Kit // 363
   2. Water // 364
   3. Processing Game // 365
   4. Cooking // 365
   5. Shelter // 366
   6. Campsite // 366
   7. Orientation // 368
   8. Chopping // 370
   9. Batoning // 372
   10. Tent Pegs // 372
   11. Splitting Wedge // 373
   12. Notching/Carving // 374
   13. Traditional Fire-Starting Methods // 376
   14. Tinder // 382
   15. Selecting Firewood // 393
iii. Wood Carving // 397
iv. Using a Saw // 403
v. Using an Axe to Process Firewood // 404
vi. Using a Hatchet to make Kindling // 405
vii. Knots // 406
viii. Grip Exercises // 407
ix. Knife Fighting // 411

b. Knife Superstitions // 421
c. Purchasing a Knife // 424
d. Social Media Highlights // 428
e. Janka Hardness Rating Bar Chart // 430
f. Angle Sharpening Guide // 433
g. Rockwell Hardness Test // 434
h. Knife Company List // 435

THE INDUSTRIAL REVOLUTION (1760–1840)

The Industrial Revolution marked the beginning of a new era for humanity. Industrialization led to machine mass production of goods, which resulted in the replacement of rigorous handmade workflows. The meticulous approach that went into producing crafted items was now the job of machines. Iron making, textiles, and various other industries were influenced by many new innovations of the nineteenth century. The Industrial Revolution, which began in Britain, rapidly gained momentum as it was reproduced throughout the world, impacting the traditional lifestyles of all social classes. The infrastructure of countries changed dramatically, as now there were more rapid ways to commute, communicate, and manufacture goods. As the wheels of industrialization spun faster, engines burned greater fuel, thereby releasing more energy into the atmosphere. This period, though necessary for bringing forth the modern age, also marked an important transition where this robust locomotive was steaming toward a new epoch, with little sign of slowing down. Advancements in metallurgy made it possible for the development of stronger, more efficient steels, which could be used in a number of applications, one of which was knives. Stronger knife steels meant that blades would not break as often and could maintain an edge for longer periods of time.

Switchblades

In the mid-eighteenth century, switchblades made their first appearance in Sheffield, England. These knives became popular for their spring-loaded blades, which would "fold out" from the handle with the simple push of a button. Around the late eighteenth century, spring-operated knives were used as folding spike bayonets, also referred to as "pigstickers," on flintlock guns. By the nineteenth century, the design of the knife changed, offering a more pocket-friendly style that gained widespread popularity in Europe. Over time, several variations of the switchblade were created by French, Spanish, Italian, and American knifemakers, each offering their own unique variations on how the blade would be exposed. These variations were either via pushbutton or lever-lock. With the arrival of the Industrial Revolution, switchblades began to be mass produced and sold at lower costs, therefore making them more readily available. In the early 1900s, George Schrade, Founder of Geo. Schrade Knife Co., dominated the American switchblade market, with his automatic versions of jackknives and pocketknives. When the mid-1900s rolled in, these knives were mass produced by various companies worldwide, and advertised as "compact, versatile multi-purpose tools." George Schrade died in 1945 and his sons sold Geo. Schrade Knife Co. in 1956 to the Boker Knife Co. of New Jersey.

When American soldiers returned from Europe after World War II, they brought back the stiletto-style switchblades to the States. First introduced in Italy in the 1950s, this style of switchblade appeared more threatening, due to its double edge and needle tip design. The simultaneous rise in crime on American streets by people who just so happened to be carrying switchblades, raised eyebrows in communities and did not help to subdue its already threating appearance. News outlets had a field day misrepresenting the stiletto-style switchblade, further pushing a heightened state of fear into the community. By this point, people viewed the knife as a violent, lethal weapon that had no place in our society. In the late 1950s, the switchblade was condemned, and anyone seen with this knife was categorically viewed as a criminal. Negative news portrayal of the knife ultimately gained the attention of the United States Congress, resulting in the banned sale of switchblade knives, which led to the inevitable closure of the Geo. Schrade Knife Co. in 1958. The ban on switchblades not only occurred in the United States though, as countries throughout Europe also prohibited the sale of these knives.

The closure of the Geo. Schrade Knife Co. did not mark end of the company, because earlier in 1946,

Schrade Cutlery Co. (Schrade's second knife company), was purchased by Imperial Knife Associated Companies. Long story short, the modern Schrade company is derived from this predecessor.

Laguiole

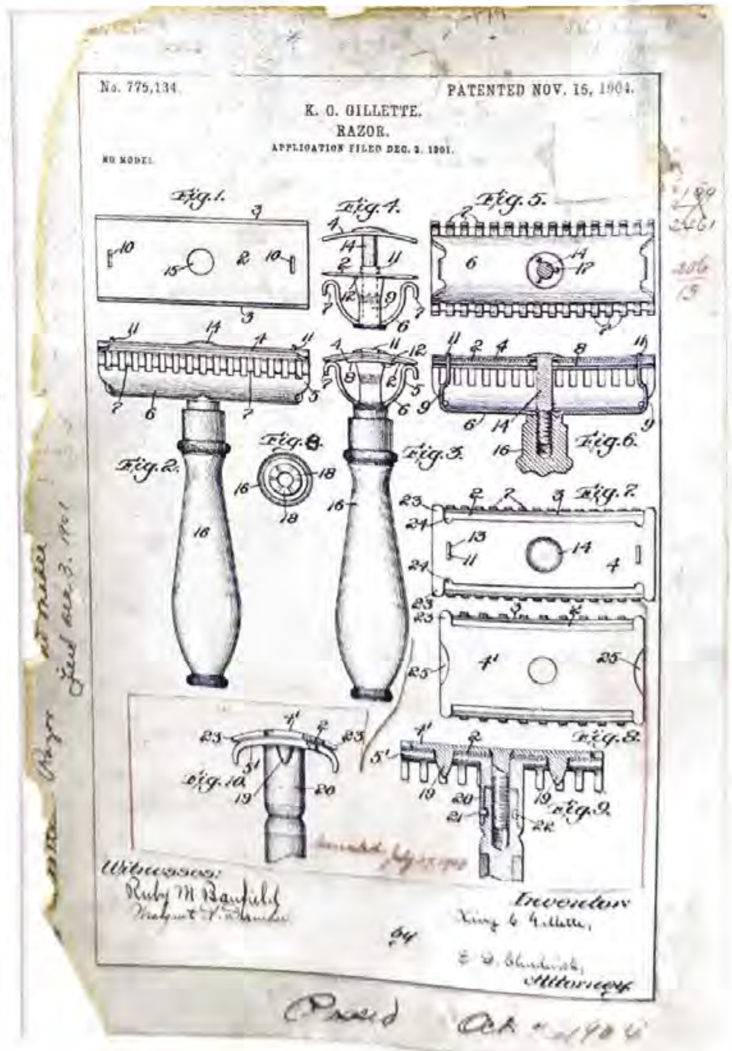
In 1829, Laguiole was founded by Pierre-Jean Calmels in Laguiole, France, a commune located in the Aveyron department of southern France. In 1829, Calmels conceived of the very first knives. One was a pocketknife called the *capuchadou*, meant to be used during one's daily tasks from field to table. The other was a variation of the original Spanish navaja. This pocketknife was approximately a quarter of the size and slimmer in design, in comparison to the original. Calmels's "navaja" sometimes featured a corkscrew, which in 1880, was included in the knife's permanent design. This effortless feature linked his Laguiole to the emergence of a "bottled wine society."

Hoe-shaped Razor

In 1847, a man by the name of William Henson invented the hoe-shaped razor, though it did not gain widespread popularity until 1880. In the early twentieth century, King Camp Gillette, a travelling salesman, combined the hoe-shape razor with a double-edge disposable/replaceable razor. The problem at the time was that the razors were not as easy to manufacture. After some thorough research and a partnership with MIT Professor William Nickerson, Gillette figured out a way to stamp out the blades from thin sheets of high carbon steel. Their efforts resulted in the first batch of *Gillette* razors that were released for use by 1903.

Fig. 80.
U.S. National Archives
National Archives Identifier: 7451921
Local Identifier: 775134
Creator(s): Department of the Interior. Patent Office. (1849 - 1925) (Most Recent)
From: Series: Utility Patent Drawings, 1837 - 1911
Record Group 241: Records of the Patent and Trademark Office, 1836 - 1978

This item was produced or created: 11/15/1904
The creator compiled or maintained the series between: 1837 - 1911



KnifeRights MSJ App.000200

EXHIBIT O

THE SECOND AMENDMENT RIGHTS OF YOUNG ADULTS

By David B. Kopel[1] & Joseph G.S. Greenlee[2]

Contents

Introduction 495

I. The Supreme Court 499

A. District of Columbia v. Heller 499

B. Principles from Other Supreme Court Cases 505

1. The militia is protected by the Second Amendment 505

2. 18-to-20-year-olds have historically been understood as part of the militia 505

3. Militiamen were required to supply their personal arms, which the government could not deprive them of 507

II. Glossary, and cultural background 510

A. Glossary of arms and accoutrements in militia laws 511

1. Firearms ignition systems 512

2. Types of firearms 514

3. Edged or bladed weapons and accoutrements 518

4. Ammunition and related accoutrements 520

5. Gun care 521

6. Arms carrying and storage 522

7. Pole arms 523

8. Horses and tack accoutrements 524

9. Armor 525

10. Other field gear 525

B. Types of persons covered by arms mandates 526

---

[1] Adjunct Professor of Constitutional Law, Denver University, Sturm College of Law; Research Director, Independence Institute, Denver, Colorado; Associate Policy Analyst, Cato Institute, Washington, D.C., http://davekopel.org.

[2] Fellow in Constitutional Studies and Firearms Policy, Millennial Policy Center; Steamboat Institute, Emerging Leaders Advisory Council; J.D. 2014, Denver University, Sturm College of Law, http://josephgreenlee.org.

Electronic copy available at: https://ssrn.com/abstract=3205664

Case 4:23-cv-00547-O Document 20-2 Filed 10/06/23 Page 208 of 555 PageID 326

C. "Trained to arms from their infancy" 530
III. The Colonial and Founding Periods 533
A. New Jersey: "all able-bodied Men, not being Slaves … between the Ages of sixteen and fifty Years" 536
B. Maryland: "his her or their house" 540
C. North Carolina: Land grants for properly armed persons "above the age of fourteen years" 544
D. South Carolina: "all male persons in this Province, from the age of sixteen to sixty years" 548
E. New Hampshire: males under seventy 551
F. Delaware: "every Freeholder and taxable Person" 555
G. Pennsylvania: No service "without the consent of his or their parents or guardians, masters or mistresses" 559
H. New York: "every able bodied male person Indians and slaves excepted" 564
I. Rhode Island: parents and masters must furnish arms 568
J. Vermont: "the freemen of this Commonwealth, and their sons" .. 570
K. Virginia: "ALL men that are fittinge to beare armes, shall bringe their peices to the church" 573
L. Massachusetts Bay: "from ten yeares ould to the age of sixsteen yeares" 583
M. Plymouth Colony: "each man servant" 586
N. Georgia: No going to church without arms 587
O. Connecticut: "all persons shall beare Armes that are above the age sixteene yeeres" 588
IV. Federal Laws 589
V. Nineteenth and Early Twentieth Century State Laws and Cases—and Their Role in Modern Litigation 595
A. State Laws and Cases 596
B. Modern Circuit Cases 601
1. Rene E. 601
2. National Rifle Association v. Bureau of Alcohol, Tobacco, Firearms, Explosives 601
3. National Rifle Association v. McCraw 603
4. Horsley v. Trame 604

Electronic copy available at: https://ssrn.com/abstract=3205664

Case 4:23-cv-00547-O Document 20-2 Filed 10/06/23 Page 209 of 555 PageID 327

5. Ezell v. City of Chicago 605
VI. Current State Laws 605
A. State laws with special arms restrictions on young adults 606
B. Policy 611
VII. Conclusion 613

INTRODUCTION

Since the Supreme Court's 2008 decision in *District of Columbia v. Heller*, lower courts have analyzed diverse Second Amendment issues. One question is whether young adults—that is, persons aged 18-to-20—have Second Amendment rights. This article suggests that they do. Indeed, under *Heller*'s originalist methodology, this is an easy question.

Heller provided a methodology for determining whether a person, activity, or arm is protected by the Second Amendment.[3] The Court analyzed founding-era sources, including constitutional text and history, to determine the scope of the Second Amendment at the time of ratification.[4] The Court also looked to 19th century sources, but explained that these "do not provide as much insight into its original meaning as earlier sources."[5] We will take the same approach in this article to determine whether young adults aged 18-to-20 have the right to keep and bear arms.

Part I examines what the Supreme Court has said, explicitly and implicitly, about the Second Amendment rights of young adults.

Parts II and III survey colonial and founding-era sources. Part II begins with a glossary of various terms that were used in militia statutes. These show some of the arms and accoutrements that Americans were required to possess. The various items illustrate that the right to arms does not include only firearms and ammunition. The right also includes, for example, edged weapons and gun-cleaning equipment. Part II also describes the arms culture of early America, where it was a point of national pride that people were trained to arms "from their infancy."

Part III then surveys all the militia statutes from the earliest colonial days through 1800. The survey pays particular attention to two issues. The first is the age for militia service or for other forms of mandatory arms

[3] District of Columbia v. Heller, 554 U.S. 570, 595 (2008).
[4] *Id.* at 576 ("In interpreting this text, we are guided by the principle that '[t]he Constitution was written to be understood by the voters; its words and phrases were used in their normal and ordinary as distinguished from technical meaning.'") (quoting United States v. Sprague, 282 U.S. 716, 731 (1931)).
[5] *Id.* at 614.

Electronic copy available at: https://ssrn.com/abstract=3205664

Case 4:23-cv-00547-O Document 20-2 Filed 10/06/23 Page 210 of 555 PageID 328

possession. As the statutes demonstrate, arms possession was mandatory for militiamen and for other categories of people. In some colonies, for example, every head of a house, regardless of gender, had to possess arms. So did men who were too old for militia service. The most common ages for mandatory militia service were from 16 to 60. But by the end of the eighteenth century, the militia mandate had been narrowed in most states to 18 until 45 or 50.

The second issue in Part III is the types of arms that militiamen—and the many other people required to possess arms—were supposed to own. Part III tracks the evolution of these laws, as they become more specific about requiring various accoutrements—such as gun cleaning equipment, holsters, and ammunition storage devices—and the laws' attempts to ensure that the public possesses modern arms.

Part IV describes federal laws regarding the ages for arms possession. These include the 1792 statute making 18-year-olds into members of the federal militia (as they are today, by statute), the 1968 Gun Control Act setting age limits on purchases in gun stores, and the 1994 federal law restricting handgun possession by persons under 18.

Part V covers the five leading post-*Heller* federal circuit court cases on age limits for exercising Second Amendment rights. Two of these cases relied heavily on cases and statutes from the nineteenth century; thus, in the course of discussing the cases, we survey the nineteenth century developments. By the end of the century, a substantial minority of states that placed some restrictions on handgun acquisition by persons under 21.

Finally, Part VI describes some of the present-day state laws that limit firearms acquisition or possession by young adults (18 to 20). Part VI also considers various past and present age limits in American law for different activities, such as voting, vices (e.g., alcohol, gambling), marriage, and the right to keep and bear arms.

In conclusion, this article finds that there is some historical precedent for extra regulation for handgun acquisition by young adults, and very little for extra restrictions on long gun acquisition. Pursuant to *Heller*, extra regulations for young adults may be permissible, but prohibitions or quasi-prohibitions are not. The Second Amendment rights of young adults include a core right affirmed in *Heller*: acquiring and keeping a handgun in the home for lawful self-defense.

Electronic copy available at: https://ssrn.com/abstract=3205664

I. THE SUPREME COURT

Consider the following syllogism:

> The militia has the right to keep and bear arms;
> 18-to-20-year-olds are part of the militia;
> Therefore, 18-to-20-year-olds have the right to keep and bear arms.

The Supreme Court's precedents have held that items one and two are correct.[6] As will be detailed in Part III, those precedents are correct because colonial and Founding Era militia statutes included young adults.

The *Heller* case affirmed that militiamen have the right to arms and also held that the Second Amendment right is not exclusively for the militia.[7] Further, according to *Heller*, whoever does have the right to arms has that right for all lawful purposes; these include not only militia service, but also self-defense, hunting, target practice, and so on.[8]

A. *District of Columbia v. Heller*

The *Heller* Court held that the Second Amendment guarantees an individual right, and the right is not dependent on service in a militia. But the Court made clear that the militia is protected. Indeed, all nine Justices agreed that individual militiamen are protected by the Second Amendment. The disagreement between the Justices was whether the right extends beyond the militia, with the majority holding that it does.

The majority stated:

> the Second Amendment's prefatory clause announces the purpose for which the right was codified: to prevent elimination of the militia. The prefatory clause does not suggest that preserving the militia was the only reason Americans valued the ancient right; most undoubtedly thought it even more important for self-defense and hunting. But the threat that the new Federal Government would destroy the citizens' militia by taking away their arms

---

6 *See* discussion *infra* Part I.

7 *Heller*, 554 U.S. at 596; *see also* discussion *infra* Part IA.

8 *Id.* at 614 ("[T]he right to keep arms involves, necessarily, the right to use such arms for all the ordinary purposes, and in all the ordinary modes usual in the country, and to which arms are adapted, limited by the duties of a good citizen in times of peace.") (quoting Andrews v. State, 50 Tenn. (3 Heisk.) 165, 178-79 (1871)). *Cf.* David B. Kopel & Joseph G.S. Greenlee, *The Federal Circuits' Second Amendment Doctrines*, 61 ST. L.U.L.J. 193, 204-12 (2017) (surveying post-*Heller* federal Circuit Court decisions, which unanimously find that the right to arms includes self-defense, militia, hunting, target shooting, and all other lawful purposes).

Electronic copy available at: https://ssrn.com/abstract=3205664

Case 4:23-cv-00547-O Document 20-2 Filed 10/06/23 Page 212 of 555 PageID 330

> was the reason that right—unlike some other English rights—was codified in a written Constitution.[9]

The dissenting opinions similarly recognized that the Second Amendment prevented the militia from being disarmed. Justice Stevens's dissent stated that "the purpose of the Amendment [was] to protect against congressional disarmament, by whatever means, of the States' militias."[10] The Amendment protects "the collective action of individuals having a duty to serve in the militia that the text directly protects,"[11] because the Amendment "was a response to concerns raised during the ratification of the Constitution that the power of Congress to disarm the state militias and create a national standing army posed an intolerable threat to the sovereignty of the several States."[12]

Justice Breyer's dissent noted the "general agreement among the Members of the Court that the principal (if not the only) purpose of the Second Amendment is found in the Amendment's text: the preservation of a 'well regulated Militia.'"[13] After all, the first clause of "[t]he Amendment itself tells us that militia preservation was first and foremost in the Framers' minds."[14]

Although the dissents disagreed with the majority that the right extends beyond the militia, the Court was unanimous that individuals in the militia were fully protected by the Second Amendment, and that the right was codified because the Founders and the public were horrified by the prospect of the government disarming the militia. As explained below, the militias of every colony and state, and the federal militia, included 18-to-20-year-olds. Young adults have been part of the militia from the seventeenth century through the twentyfirst. As Justice Breyer pointed out, the District of Columbia's militia at the time *Heller* was decided included "[e]very able-bodied male citizen resident within the District of Columbia, of the age of 18 years and under the age of 45 years."[15]

The *Heller* majority further indicated that 18-to-20-year-olds have Second Amendment rights by explaining:

---

9 *Heller*, 554 U.S. at 599. The majority added: "Does the preface fit with an operative clause that creates an individual right to keep and bear arms? It fits perfectly, once one knows the history that the founding generation knew and that we have described above." *Id.* at 598. Because one reason the right was codified was to protect the militia, an interpretation that did not include the entire militia would destroy this "perfect fit."

10 *Id.* at 660–61 (Stevens, J., dissenting). Justice Stevens's dissent was joined by Justices Souter, Ginsburg, and Breyer.

11 *Id.* at 645.

12 *Id.* at 637.

13 *Id.* at 706 (Breyer, J., dissenting). Justice Breyer's dissent was joined by Justices Souter, Ginsburg, and Stevens.

14 *Id.* at 715.

15 D.C. CODE ANN. § 49-401 (West 1889); *Heller*, 554 U.S. at 707 (Breyer, J., dissenting).

Electronic copy available at: https://ssrn.com/abstract=3205664

Case 4:23-cv-00547-O Document 20-2 Filed 10/06/23 Page 213 of 555 PageID 331

> the ordinary definition of the militia [i]s all able-bodied men. From that pool, Congress has plenary power to organize the units that will make up an effective fighting force. That is what Congress did in the first Militia Act, which specified that "each and every free able-bodied white male citizen of the respective states, resident therein, who is or shall be of the age of eighteen years, and under the age of forty-five years (except as is herein after excepted) shall severally and respectively be enrolled in the militia." Act of May 8, 1792, 1 Stat. 271. To be sure, Congress need not conscript every able-bodied man into the militia, because nothing in Article I suggests that in exercising its power to organize, discipline, and arm the militia, Congress must focus upon the entire body. Although the militia consists of all able-bodied men, the federally organized militia may consist of a subset of them.[16]

Because the militia consists of "all able-bodied men," because "Congress has plenary power to organize … an effective fighting force" "from that pool" of "able-bodied men," and because "[t]hat is what Congress did in the first Militia Act" by organizing the able-bodied men between eighteen and forty-five, the Court recognized 18-to-20-year-olds as part of the militia; as such, they necessarily have the right to keep and bear arms.

Perhaps, one could argue, that although 18-to-20-year-olds were part of the militia, they were not trusted with arms outside of their militia service. But the *Heller* majority rejects this, since it affirms the right to arms for all lawful purposes.[17] While the English militia of the time was often supplied with centrally-stored arms that were only brought out for practice days, American militiamen were expected to keep their own arms at home, and to be proficient with those arms.[18]

As *Heller* explained, "the conception of the militia at the time of the Second Amendment's ratification was the body of all citizens capable of military service, who would bring the sorts of lawful weapons that they

---

16 *Heller*, 554 U.S. at 596.

17 *Id.* at 636-37 ("Whether [the Second Amendment] also protects the right to possess and use guns for nonmilitary purposes like hunting and personal self-defense is the question presented by this case. The text of the Amendment, its history, and our decision in *United States v. Miller,* 307 U.S. 174, 59 S.Ct. 816, 83 L.Ed. 1206 (1939), provide a clear answer to that question." (citation omitted)). *See also* McDonald v. City of Chicago, 561 U.S. 742, 780 (2010) ("the Second Amendment protects a personal right to keep and bear arms for lawful purposes, most notably for self-defense within the home."); Caetano v. Massachusetts, 136 S. Ct. 1027, 1028 (2016) (per curiam) ("the [lower] court used 'a contemporary lens' and found 'nothing in the record to suggest that [stun guns] are readily adaptable to use in the military.' But *Heller* rejected the proposition 'that only those weapons useful in warfare are protected.'") (citing *Heller*, 554 U.S. at 624–25) (internal citation omitted).

18 NICHOLAS J. JOHNSON, DAVID B. KOPEL, GEORGE A. MOCSARY & MICHAEL P. O'SHEA, FIREARMS LAWS AND THE SECOND AMENDMENT: REGULATION, RIGHTS, AND POLICY 110-11, 136-40, 175-86, 237-40 (2d ed. 2017) (comparing and contrasting English and American militia and arms cultures and laws).

Electronic copy available at: https://ssrn.com/abstract=3205664

possessed at home to militia duty."[19] The Court quoted with approval a previous Supreme Court decision, *United States v. Miller*, discussed *infra*, which stated that "ordinarily when called for [militia] service [able-bodied] men were expected to appear bearing arms supplied by themselves and of the kind in common use at the time."[20]

The Court also quoted "the most famous" late 19th-century legal scholar: "judge and professor Thomas Cooley, who wrote a massively popular 1868 Treatise on Constitutional Limitations." Cooley explained that "[t]he alternative to a standing army is 'a well-regulated militia,' but this cannot exist unless the people are trained to bearing arms."[21] Further, as quoted by the Court, "to bear arms implies something more than the mere keeping; it implies the learning to handle and use them in a way that makes those who keep them ready for their efficient use."[22]

Similarly, the Court quoted John Norton Pomeroy, another late-19th-century scholar, stating that the purpose of the Second Amendment is

> to secure a well-armed militia .... But a militia would be useless unless the citizens were enabled to exercise themselves in the use of warlike weapons. To preserve this privilege, and to secure to the people the ability to oppose themselves in military force against the usurpations of government, as well as against enemies from without, that government is forbidden by any law or proceeding to invade or destroy the right to keep and bear arms.[23]

And the Court quoted Benjamin Vaughan Abbott, another late-19th-crentury scholar, who said: "Some general knowledge of firearms is important to the public welfare; because it would be impossible, in case of war, to organize promptly an efficient force of volunteers unless the people had some familiarity with weapons of war."[24]

The *Heller* dissent was of a similar mind, explaining that "the Framers recognized the dangers inherent in relying on inadequately trained militiamen 'as the primary means of providing for the common defense.'"[25] The dissent acknowledged that "during the Revolutionary War, '[t]his force, though armed, was largely untrained, and its deficiencies were the subject of

---

[19] *Heller*, 554 U.S. at 627.

[20] *Id.* at 624 (quoting United States v. Miller, 307 U.S. at 179).

[21] *Heller*, 554 U.S. at 616-17.

[22] *Id.* at 617-18 (quoting THOMAS M. COOLEY, THE GENERAL PRINCIPLES OF CONSTITUTIONAL LAW IN THE UNITED STATES OF AMERICA 271 (1880)); *Id.* at 617 ("Cooley understood the right not as connected to militia service, but as securing the militia by ensuring a populace familiar with arms.").

[23] *Id.* at 618 (quoting J.N. POMEROY, AN INTRODUCTION TO THE CONSTITUTIONAL LAW OF THE UNITED STATES § 239 152-53 (1868)).

[24] *Id.* at 619 (citing B. ABBOTT, JUDGE AND JURY: A POPULAR EXPLANATION OF THE LEADING TOPICS IN THE LAW OF THE LAND 333 (1880)).

[25] *Id*. at 653 (quoting Perpich v. Dep't of Def., 496 U.S. 334, 340 (1990)).

Electronic copy available at: https://ssrn.com/abstract=3203664

Case 4:23-cv-00547-O Document 20-2 Filed 10/06/23 Page 215 of 555 PageID 333

bitter complaint.'"[26] The dissent quoted George Washington stating that, "The firmness requisite for the real business of fighting is only to be attained by a constant course of discipline and service."[27] And Alexander Hamilton, who wrote that "War, like most other things, is a science to be acquired and perfected by diligence, by perseverance, by time, and by practice."[28]

These sources show that those in the militia were expected not only to provide their own arms, but also to practice with them frequently. All nine Justices shared that understanding.

The majority made clear that the right included, but was not limited to, the militia. "'Keep arms' was simply a common way of referring to possessing arms, for militiamen *and everyone else*."[29] The Court cited an opinion by the Georgia Supreme Court which "perfectly captured the way in which the operative clause of the Second Amendment furthers the purpose announced in the prefatory clause…":

> The right of the whole people, *old and young*, men, *women and boys*, and *not militia only*, to keep and bear arms of every description, and not such merely as are used by the militia, shall not be infringed, curtailed, or broken in upon, in the smallest degree; and all this for the important end to be attained: the rearing up and qualifying a well-regulated militia, so vitally necessary to the security of a free State.[30]

Heller's most definitive recognition that 18-to-20-year-olds have Second Amendment rights came in the Court's discussion of who "the people" in the Second Amendment are. The operative clause of the Second Amendment states that "the right of *the people* to keep and bear arms, shall not be infringed."[31] As the Court observed, "*the 'militia' in colonial America*

---

[26] *Id.* (citing Frederick Bernays Wiener, *The Militia Clause of the Constitution*, 54 HARV. L. REV. 181, 182 (1940)).

[27] *Id.* at 654.

[28] *Id.* at 653 n.17 (Stevens, J., dissenting) (The Federalist No. 25). While these statements from Washington and Hamilton expressed frustration with the militia, they nonetheless demonstrate that the Founders rejected the idea of disarming a substantial segment of the militia, leaving them largely untrained and unfamiliar with firearms when called to duty. *See also* MARK W. KWASNY, WASHINGTON'S PARTISAN WAR: 1775–1783, at 337-38 (1996) ("Washington learned to recognize both the strengths and the weaknesses of the militia. As regular soldiers, militiamen were deficient.…He therefore increasingly detached Continentals to support them when operating against the British army.…Militiamen were available everywhere and could respond to sudden attacks and invasions often faster than the army could. Washington therefore used the militia units in the states to provide local defense, to suppress Loyalists, and to rally to the army in case of an invasion.…Washington made full use of the partisan qualities of the militia forces around him. He used them in small parties to harass and raid the army, and to guard all the places he could not send Continentals.…Rather than try to turn the militia into a regular fighting force, he used and exploited its irregular qualities in a partisan war against the British and Tories.").

[29] *Heller*, 554 U.S. at 583 (emphasis in original).

[30] *Id.* at 612–13 (quoting Nunn v. State, 1 Ga. 243, 251 (1846)) (emphasis added).

[31] U.S. CONST., amend. II (emphasis added).

Electronic copy available at: https://ssrn.com/abstract=3205664

Case 4:23-cv-00547-O Document 20-2 Filed 10/06/23 Page 216 of 555 PageID 334

consisted of a subset of 'the people'—those who were male, able bodied, and within a certain age range."[32] Thus, because 18-to-20-year-olds were part of the militia, 18-to-20-year-olds were also part of "the people." It is "*the right of the people* to keep and bear arms" that the Second Amendment protects.[33]

As *Heller* observed, "Logic demands that there be a link between the stated purpose and the command."[34] The prefatory clause may assist in interpreting the operative clause.[35] The Second Amendment's prefatory clause makes it clear that, at a minimum, the main clause protects the entire militia.

The *Heller* Court held that the core of the Second Amendment includes keeping a handgun in the home for lawful defense.[36] The Supreme Court reiterated that holding in *McDonald v. City of Chicago*.[37] In the modern United States, some young adults maintain their own homes. Some of them are married. Some of them are raising children in their home. To deprive these householders of the right to possess a handgun in their homes for lawful defense thus infringes on the core of their Second Amendment rights.

The Supreme Court's "first in-depth examination of the Second Amendment"[38] demonstrated that 18-to-20-year-olds have Second Amendment rights, because: 1) the militia is protected by the Second Amendment; 2) 18-to-20-year-olds have historically been understood as part of the militia; and 3) militiamen were required to supply their personal arms, which the government could not deprive them of. But the Court had established this long before *Heller*.

---

32 *Heller*, 554 U.S. at 580 (emphasis added). Elsewhere, the majority quoted Thomas Cooley with approval: "The meaning of the provision undoubtedly is, that *the people, from whom the militia must be taken*, shall have the right to keep and bear arms." *Id.* at 617 (emphasis added). The quotation similarly treats the militia as a subset of "the people."

33 The Court's full discussion on "the people":

What is more, in all six other provisions of the Constitution that mention "the people," the term unambiguously refers to all members of the political community, not an unspecified subset. As we said in *United States v. Verdugo–Urquidez,* 494 U.S. 259, 265, 110 S.Ct. 1056, 108 L.Ed.2d 222 (1990):

> "'[T]he people' seems to have been a term of art employed in select parts of the Constitution .... [Its uses] sugges[t] that 'the people' protected by the Fourth Amendment, and by the First and Second Amendments, and to whom rights and powers are reserved in the Ninth and Tenth Amendments, refers to a class of persons who are part of a national community or who have otherwise developed sufficient connection with this country to be considered part of that community."
>
> This contrasts markedly with the phrase "the militia" in the prefatory clause. As we will describe below, the "militia" in colonial America consisted of a subset of "the people"—those who were male, able bodied, and within a certain age range.

Heller, 554 U.S. at 580.

34 *Id.* at 577.

35 *Id.* at 577-78.

36 *Id.* at 628, 635 ("the home [is] where the need for defense of self, family, and property is most acute;" "the right of law-abiding, responsible citizens to use arms in defense of hearth and home.").

37 McDonald v. City of Chicago, 561 U.S. 742, 886 (2010).

38 *Heller*, 554 U.S. at 635.

Electronic copy available at: https://ssrn.com/abstract=3203664

B. Principles from Other Supreme Court Cases

1. The militia is protected by the Second Amendment

While the text of the Second Amendment[39] is sufficient to prove that the Founders understood the militia as having the right to keep and bear arms, the Court emphasized the point in *United States v. Miller*:[40] "With obvious purpose to assure the continuation and render possible the effectiveness of [militia] forces the declaration and guarantee of the Second Amendment were made. It must be interpreted and applied with that end in view."[41] While *Miller* has been criticized for its "conceptually flawed concentration on the amendment's militia purpose,"[42] since the case had little to do with the militia, *Miller* correctly affirmed that the Second Amendment prevents the government from rendering militia forces ineffective. Disarming 18-to-20-year-olds would render them ineffective militia forces in the Founders' view, especially because militiamen were expected to provide their own arms.

2. 18-to-20-year-olds have historically been understood as part of the militia

That 18-to-20-year-olds were included in the federal militia and each state's militia at the time of the founding will be established below, in Parts III and IV. But it is also important to note that the Supreme Court has in every instance understood the militia to include 18-to-20-year-olds.

Citing the constitutional militia, as identified in Article 1, Section 8 of the Constitution, the Court in *Hamilton v. Regents of the University of California*, explained that "[u]ndoubtedly every state has authority to train its able-bodied male citizens of suitable age appropriately to develop fitness, should any such duty be laid upon them, to serve in the United States Army or in state militia (always liable to be called forth by federal authority to execute the laws of the Union, suppress insurrection, or repel invasion…)"[43] The *Hamilton* case involved university students who did not wish to participate in the mandatory militia training required by state law. Then as now, many students at the University of California were ages 18 to 20.

---

39 The Second Amendment provides: "A well regulated Militia, being necessary to the security of a free State, the right of the people to keep and bear Arms, shall not be infringed." U.S. CONST., amend. II.

40 United States v. Miller, 307 U.S. 174, 178 (1939).

41 *Id.* at 178.

42 Don B. Kates, *Handgun Prohibition and the Original Meaning of the Second Amendment*, 82 MICH. L. REV. 204, 259 (1983).

43 Hamilton v. Regents of the Univ. of Cal., 293 U.S. 245, 260 (1934) (citing U.S. CONST., art. 1, § 8, cls. 12, 15 and 16).

Electronic copy available at: https://ssrn.com/abstract=3205664

Case 4:23-cv-00547-O Document 20-2 Filed 10/06/23 Page 218 of 555 PageID 336

The *Miller* Court recognized that "the debates in the Convention, the history and legislation of Colonies and States, and the writings of approved commentators . . . show plainly enough that the Militia comprised all males physically capable of acting in concert for the common defense. 'A body of citizens enrolled for military discipline.'"[44] *Miller* then offered examples:

The General Court of Massachusetts in 1784 "provided for the organization and government of the Militia. It directed that the Train Band should 'contain all able bodied men, from sixteen to forty years of age, and the Alarm List, all other men under sixty years of age.'"[45]

The New York Legislature in 1786 "directed: 'That every able-bodied Male Person, being a Citizen of this State, or of any of the United States, and residing in this State, (except such Persons as are herein after excepted) and who are of the Age of Sixteen, and under the Age of Forty-five Years, shall … be enrolled.'"[46]

The General Assembly of Virginia in 1785, the U.S. Supreme Court explained, "directed that 'All free male persons between the ages of eighteen and fifty years,' with certain exceptions, 'shall be inrolled or formed into companies.'"[47]

In *Perpich v. Department of Defense*, the Court acknowledged that "[i]n the early years of the Republic" Congress "command[ed] that every able-bodied male citizen between the ages of 18 and 45 be enrolled" in the militia.[48] *Perpich* also pointed out that at the turn of the twentieth century, the "The Dick Act divided the class of able-bodied male citizens between 18 and 45 years of age into an 'organized militia' to be known as the National Guard of the several States, and the remainder of which was then described as the 'reserve militia,' and which later statutes have termed the 'unorganized militia.'"[49] As the Court noted, "[i]t is undisputed that Congress was acting pursuant to the Militia Clauses of the Constitution in passing the Dick Act."[50]

In *Presser v. Illinois*, the Court declared:

> It is undoubtedly true that *all citizens capable of bearing arms* constitute the reserved military force or reserve militia of the United States as well as of the states, and, in view of this prerogative of the general government, as well as of its general powers, the states cannot, even laying the constitutional provision in question out of view, prohibit *the people* from

---

44 *Miller*, 307 U.S. at 179. This language was favorably quoted in *Heller*, 554 U.S. at 595.

45 *Id.* at 180 (quoting The General Court of Massachusetts, January Session 1784 (Laws and Resolves 1784, c. 55, pp. 140, 142)).

46 *Id.* at 180-81 (quoting New York Legislature, an Act passed April 4, 1786 (Laws 1786, c. 25)).

47 *Id.* at 181 (quoting The General Assembly of Virginia, 1785 (12 Hening's Statutes, c. 1, p. 9 et seq.)).

48 Perpich v. Dep't of Def., 496 U.S. 334, 341-43 (1990).

49 *Id.* at 342.

50 *Id.*

Electronic copy available at: https://ssrn.com/abstract=3203664

Case 4:23-cv-00547-O Document 20-2 Filed 10/06/23 Page 219 of 555 PageID 337

> keeping and bearing arms, so as to deprive the United States of their rightful resource for maintaining the public security, and disable *the people* from performing their duty to the general government.[51]

Thus, the *Presser* Court, like the *Heller* Court, specified that the militia is part of "the people"—as in "the people" who have the right "to keep and bear arms" protected by the Second Amendment.[52] The militia identified by the *Presser* Court consists of "all citizens capable of bearing arms," which most certainly includes 18-to-20-year-olds, since the federal militia statute at the time included 18-to-20-year-olds.[53]

3. Militiamen were required to supply their personal arms, which the government could not deprive them of

According to the Supreme Court, militiamen were required to provide their own private firearms and were expected to achieve and maintain proficiency with those arms to ensure the effectiveness of the militia.

As *Miller* put it, "the debates in the Convention, the history and legislation of Colonies and States, and the writings of approved commentators . . . show . . . that ordinarily when called for service these men [in the militia] were expected to appear bearing arms *supplied by themselves* and of the kind in common use at the time."[54] The *Miller* Court provided founding-era examples from Massachusetts, New York, and Virginia: New York required "[t]hat every Citizen so enrolled and notified . . . provide himself, at his own Expense, with a good Musket or Firelock, a sufficient Bayonet and Belt, a Pouch with a Box therein to contain not less than Twenty-four Cartridges suited to the Bore of his Musket or Firelock, each Cartridge containing a proper Quantity of Powder and Ball, two spare Flints, a Blanket and Knapsack."[55]

---

[51] Presser v. Illinois, 116 U.S. 252, 265-66 (1886) (emphasis added).

[52] *Cf.* Voisine v. United States, 136 S. Ct. 2272, 2291 (2016) (Thomas, J., dissenting) ("To be constitutional, therefore, a law that broadly frustrates an individual's right to keep and bear arms must target individuals who are beyond the scope of the 'People' protected by the Second Amendment.").

[53] *See infra* Part IV.
Following precedent, the Court's opinion in *McDonald* incorporated the Second Amendment on the basis of the Fourteenth Amendment's Due Process Clause, which protects every "person." Concurring, Justice Thomas preferred to use the Fourteenth Amendment's Privileges or Immunities Clause, which protects "citizens." *McDonald*, 561 U.S. at 850 (Thomas, J., concurring). Because non-citizens who have declared their intent to naturalize are subject to militia duty, they would have to be within the scope of "the militia" and therefore "the people" who are protected by the Second Amendment. *See* 10 U.S.C. § 246 (2019) (including in the militia all able-bodied males from 17 to 45 "who are, or who have made a declaration of intention to become, citizens of the United States.")

[54] *Miller*, 307 U.S. at 179 (emphasis added).

[55] *Id*. at 180–81 (quoting New York Legislature, an Act passed April 4, 1786 (Laws 1786, c. 25)).

Electronic copy available at: https://ssrn.com/abstract=3205664

Case 4:23-cv-00547-O Document 20-2 Filed 10/06/23 Page 220 of 555 PageID 338

Massachusetts mandated each militiaman to "equip himself, and be constantly provided with a good fire arm, &c."[56]

Under Virginia law,

> The defense and safety of the commonwealth depend upon having its citizens properly armed and taught the knowledge of military duty." So "[e]very officer and soldier shall appear . . . armed, equipped, and accoutred, as follows: * * * every non-commissioned officer and private with a good, clean musket carrying an ounce ball, and three feet eight inches long in the barrel, with a good bayonet and iron ramrod well fitted thereto, a cartridge box properly made, to contain and secure twenty cartridges fitted to his musket, a good knapsack and canteen, and moreover, each non-commissioned officer and private shall have at every muster one pound of good powder, and four pounds of lead, including twenty blind cartridges . . . .And every of the said officers, non-commissioned officers, and privates, *shall constantly keep* the aforesaid arms, accoutrements, and ammunition, ready to be produced whenever called for by his commanding officer.[57]

Recently, in the 2016 *Caetano v. Massachusetts*, the Court reaffirmed that "*Miller* and *Heller* recognized that militiamen traditionally reported for duty carrying 'the sorts of lawful weapons that they possessed at home.'"[58]

Or as the 1990 Court said in *Perpich*, "in the early years of the Republic, Congress . . . command[ed] that every able-bodied male citizen between the ages of 18 and 45 . . . *equip himself* with appropriate weaponry…."[59] The Court wrote that Congress's "choice of a dual enlistment system [for the militia] is just as permissible as the 1792 choice to have the members of the militia arm themselves."[60]

---

[56] *Id.* at 180 (quoting The General Court of Massachusetts, Jan. sess. 1784 (Laws and Resolves 1784, c. 55, pp. 140, 142)).

As in some other states, militiamen "under the control of parents, masters or guardians" were expected to be supplied with arms by their parents, masters, or guardians. General Court of Massachusetts, *supra*, at 142–43. *See also* Part III (listing statutes that required parents, masters, or guardians to supply arms to their dependents). In a militia where duty began at age 16, there would be plenty of militiamen who were not yet living independently, and who could not afford their own arms. As for young people who were already supporting themselves, they typically had to provide their own arms.

Citing seventeenth century laws from the colony of Massachusetts, *Miller* noted that "[c]lauses intended to insure the possession of arms and ammunition by all who were subject to military service appear in all the important enactments concerning military affairs." *Miller*, 307 U.S. at 180 (citing Osgood, 1 The American Colonies In The 17th Century, ch. XIII).

[57] *Miller*, 307 U.S. at 181-82 (The General Assembly of Virginia, October, 1785 (12 Hening's Statutes c. 1, p. 9 et seq.)) (emphasis added).

[58] Caetano v. Massachusetts, 136 S. Ct. 1027, 1032 (2016).

[59] Perpich v. Dep't of Def., 496 U.S. 334, 341-43 (1990) (emphasis added).

[60] *Id.* at 350. Under the modern dual enlistment system, volunteers in the National Guard dually enlist in the National Guard of their state and in the National Guard of the United States. The Guardsmen are state actors unless called into federal service. In either capacity, their arms are supplied by the federal government. The National Guard is the "organized" part of the militia. 10 U.S.C. § 246

Electronic copy available at: https://ssrn.com/abstract=3205664

Case 4:23-cv-00547-O Document 20-2 Filed 10/06/23 Page 221 of 555 PageID 339

The Court said something similar in *Houston v. Moore* in 1820.[61] The Court stated that the congressional militia statutes were within Congress's enumerated Article I militia power to declare "what arms and accoutrements the officers and privates shall provide themselves with."[62]

In other cases, the Court has confirmed that depriving militiamen of their personal arms would violate their right to keep and bear arms. As discussed above, the *Presser* Court explained that because the Constitution authorizes Congress to call forth the armed citizenry, "the states cannot . . . prohibit the people from keeping and bearing arms, so as to deprive the United States of their rightful resource for maintaining the public security, and disable the people from performing their duty to the general government."[63] Since Congress needs to be able to depend on the people being armed, the states cannot disarm them. The *Presser* Court's vision depends on an armed populace.[64]

In *McDonald*, the Court found

> the 39th Congress' response to proposals to disband and disarm the Southern militias is instructive. Despite recognizing and deploring the abuses of these militias, the 39th Congress balked at a proposal to disarm them. Disarmament, it was argued, would violate the members' right to

---

(2019). The "unorganized" militia is all other able-bodied males ages 18 to 45, except for ministers and other exempt persons. 10 U.S.C. § 247 (2019).

61 Houston v. Moore, 18 U.S. (5 Wheat.) 1 (1820).

62 *Id.* at 14.

63 *Presser v. Illinois*, 116 U.S. 252, 265-66 (1886); U.S. CONST., art I, § 8, cl. 16 ("To provide for calling forth the Militia to execute the Laws of the Union, suppress Insurrections and repel Invasions.") (Calling Forth Clause).

The *Presser* point was reiterated with approval in a 1900 case:

> In *Presser* v. *Illinois*, 116 U. S. 252, 29 L. ed. 615, 6 Sup. Ct. Rep. 580, it was held that the Second Amendment to the Constitution, in regard to the right of the people to bear arms, is a limitation only on the power of Congress and the national government, and not of the states. It was therein said, however, that as all citizens capable of bearing arms constitute the reserved military force of the national government the states could not prohibit the people from keeping and bearing arms, so as to deprive the United States of their rightful resource for maintaining the public security, and disable the people from performing their duty to the general government.

Maxwell v. Dow, 176 U.S. 581, 597 (1900), *abrogated on other grounds by* Williams v. Florida, 399 U.S. 78 (1970). *Presser* had been interpreted to hold that the right to keep and bear arms is not one of the Fourteenth Amendment "privileges or immunities of citizens of the United States" protected from state infringement. Similar holdings applied to most of the rest of the Bill of Rights. The work of incorporating items in the Bill of Rights into the Fourteenth Amendment has instead been accomplished by the Due Process of Law clause of the Fourteenth Amendment. *See*, *e.g.*, McDonald v. City of Chicago, 561 U.S. 742 (2010) (plurality opinion by Justice Alito relies on Due Process; concurrence by Justice Thomas relies on Privileges or Immunities).

64 *See also Houston*, 18 U.S. (5 Wheat.) at 52 (Story, J., dissenting) ("Yet what would the militia be without organization, arms, and discipline?").

Electronic copy available at: https://ssrn.com/abstract=3205664

Case 4:23-cv-00547-O Document 20-2 Filed 10/06/23 Page 222 of 555 PageID 340

> bear arms, and it was ultimately decided to disband the militias but not to disarm their members.[65]

Thus, the *McDonald* Court suggested what the *Presser* Court flat out said: individual militiamen could not be deprived of their private firearms.

Nothing the Supreme Court has ever written about the militia can be construed to exclude 18-to-20-year-olds. The Court has repeatedly confirmed that militiamen were expected to provide their own private firearms, and to be proficient with those arms. What is more, the Court has twice stated that the militia is a subset of "the people"—the same "people" the Second Amendment protects. Finally, the Court has recognized that any law that would disarm "the people"—and especially the militia—would be unlawful.

The Court's unwavering descriptions of the militia and the young adults therein are solidly supported by the historical record. Besides the colonial period and Founding Era sources quoted by the Court above, we will in Part III examine *every* colonial and state militia statute up to 1800. They demonstrate that young adults are part of the militia.

II. GLOSSARY, AND CULTURAL BACKGROUND

Before surveying the early state laws, we provide some background. Part A is a glossary of terms used in colonial and state laws regarding equipment that members of the public were required to possess. As will be detailed in Part III, the requirements often applied beyond militiamen. The arms mandates encompassed the militia, many males not in the militia, and sometimes women.

Previous scholarship has not paid much attention to the particular arms that were required. Because American discussion of the right to keep and bear arms has been so fixated on gun control, scholars have noted that most militiamen needed a long gun, while officers and cavalry needed handguns. This is true as far as it goes, but there was much more. Requirements for a knife, a sword, or both were very common.

Of course ammunition was mandatory Post-*Heller*, courts have readily accepted that ammunition is part of the right to arms and is likewise subject to the arms rights limits that were articulated in *Heller*.[66] In addition to the

[65] *McDonald*, 561 U.S. at 780 (citations omitted).

[66] *See*, *e.g.*, Jackson v. City & Cty. of San Francisco, 746 F.3d 953, 967-68 (9th Cir. 2014) ("the right to possess firearms for protection implies a corresponding right to obtain the bullets necessary to use them") (internal quotations omitted); United States v. Pruess, 703 F.3d 242, 245 (4th Cir. 2012) (treating Supreme Court legal rules about guns as having the same meaning for ammunition); Ezell v. City of Chicago, 651 F.3d 684, 704 (7th Cir. 2011) ("The right to possess firearms for protection implies a corresponding right to acquire and maintain proficiency in their use; the core right wouldn't mean much without the training and practice that make it effective."); Herrington v.

Electronic copy available at: https://ssrn.com/abstract=3205664

ammunition that would have to be brought to militia muster, further reserves kept at ammunition were required.[67]

Also mandatory was equipment for the cleaning and carrying of arms and ammunition. Horsemen had to have certain horse tack, and everyone needed various field gear, such as knapsacks and blankets.

Next, in Part B, we explain the American attitude that prevailed during the seventeenth and eighteenth centuries: part of what makes America different from—and better than—Europe, is that Americans start becoming proficient with arms when they are children.

A. Glossary of arms and accoutrements in militia laws

English spelling did not begin to become standardized until the late eighteenth century, so the reader will find that the statutes spell many of the words below in diverse ways.

The militia statutes required possession of arms (e.g., guns, swords), ammunition, and also equipment for arms—including repair, maintenance, carrying, storage, and home manufacture. The most common term for the other items was *accoutrements*: "Generally defined as a soldier's personal equipment excepting clothes and weapons."[68] These would include "cartridge boxes, pouches, belts, scabbards, canteens, knapsacks, powder horns, etc."[69] They are necessarily part of the Second Amendment right, since

United States, 6 A.3d 1237, 1243 (D.C. 2010) (right to ammunition is coextensive with the right to firearms); Andrews v. State, 50 Tenn. (3 Heisk.) 165, 178 (1871) ("The right to keep arms, necessarily involves the right . . . to purchase and provide ammunition suitable for such arms").

[67] A muster is a periodic assembly of militiamen; the militiamen must prove that they have the certain requisite arms by bringing them the muster. To "pass muster" is to pass the inspection. A muster would not necessarily involve drill or practice. As detailed in Part III, some militia statutes required militiamen (and others) to possess reserves of bullets and gunpowder at home, beyond the quantity that would have to be brought to muster.

[68] GEORGE C. NEUMANN & FRANK J. KRAVIC, COLLECTOR'S ILLUSTRATED ENCYCLOPEDIA OF THE AMERICAN REVOLUTION 8 (1975); *see also Accoutrements Definition,* CHARLES JAMES, AN UNIVERSAL MILITARY DICTIONARY (4th ed. 1816) ("ACCOUTREMENTS, in a military sense, signify habits, equipage, or furniture of a soldier, such as buffs, belts, pouches, cartridge boxes, &c.").

An older, similar term was "furniture," in the sense of furnishing. For example, the first written guarantee of arms rights in Anglo-American law was the 1606 Virginia charter. It gave settlers the perpetual right to import "the Goods, Chattels, Armour, Munition, and Furniture, needful to be used by them, for their said Apparel, Food, Defence or otherwise." 7 Federal and State Constitutions Colonial Charters, and Other Organic Laws of the States, Territories, and Colonies Now or Heretofore Forming the United States of America 3783, 3786 (Francis Newton Thorpe ed., 1909). As of 1606 (and for long after), the word "armor" included arms. The word "apparel" in the Virginia Charter had the narrow meaning of equipment for fighting, including defensive clothing, and the broader meaning of other necessities, such as ordinary clothing.

[69] NEUMANN & KRAVIC, *supra* note 68, at 8.

Electronic copy available at: https://ssrn.com/abstract=3205664

they are necessary to the use of arms.[70] In the same sense, "the freedom of the press" is not just about owning printing presses, but also includes the relevant accessories, such as printing ink, ink magazines, moveable type, etc., and indeed the entire system of gathering, publishing, and distributing periodicals, pamphlets, and books.[71]

1. Firearms ignition systems

Matchlock. When the English settlers began arriving in Virginia in 1607, the predominant ignition system for firearms was the matchlock. When the trigger is pulled, a slow-burning cord is lowered to a small pan (the *priming pan* or *firing pan*). The lit end of the cord ignites a small quantity of gunpowder in the firing pan. The flame from the gunpowder travels along a narrow channel to the touch-hole—a small hole next to the main charge of gunpowder, in the gun's barrel. The flame that enters via the touchhole ignites the main powder charge.

The matchlock was the main type of ignition system in Great Britain during the seventeenth century.[72] Although the first English settlers came to America with matchlocks, Americans upgraded to more sophisticated guns (flintlocks) much earlier than the British did, because the burning cord makes it much more difficult to have a firearm always ready for immediate use. The

---

[70] Constitutional rights thus implicitly protect those closely related acts necessary to their exercise. "There comes a point ... at which the regulation of action intimately and unavoidably connected with [a right] is a regulation of [the right] itself." Hill v. Colorado, 530 U.S. 703, 745, 120 S.Ct. 2480, 147 L.Ed.2d 597 (2000) (Scalia, J., dissenting). The right to keep and bear arms, for example, "implies a corresponding right to obtain the bullets necessary to use them," Jackson v. City and County of San Francisco, 746 F.3d 953, 967 (C.A.9 2014) (internal quotation marks omitted), and "to acquire and maintain proficiency in their use," Ezell v. Chicago, 651 F.3d 684, 704 (C.A.7 2011). See District of Columbia v. Heller, 554 U.S. 570, 617-618, 128 S.Ct. 2783, 171 L.Ed.2d 637 (2008) (citing T. Cooley, General Principles of Constitutional Law 271 (2d ed. 1891) (discussing the implicit right to train with weapons)); United States v. Miller, 307 U.S. 174, 180, 59 S.Ct. 816, 83 L.Ed. 1206 (1939) (citing 1 H. Osgood, The American Colonies in the 17th Century 499 (1904) (discussing the implicit right to possess ammunition)); Andrews v. State, 50 Tenn. 165, 178 (1871) (discussing both rights). Without protection for these closely related rights, the Second Amendment would be toothless. Likewise, the First Amendment "right to speak would be largely ineffective if it did not include the right to engage in financial transactions that are the incidents of its exercise." McConnell v. Federal Election Comm'n, 540 U.S. 93, 252, 124 S.Ct. 619, 157 L.Ed.2d 491 (2003) (Scalia, J., concurring in part, concurring in judgment in part, and dissenting in part).

> The same goes for the Sixth Amendment and the financial resources required to obtain a lawyer…

Luis v. United States, 136 S. Ct. 1083, 1097-98 (2016) (Thomas, J., concurring).

[71] In the Bill of Rights, "the press" and "arms" are synecdoches. That is, they use a part of a term to refer to the whole—like calling an automobile "my wheels." "The press" refers not only to printing presses, but also to communications that do not involve a printing press, such as handwritten flyers or television broadcasting. Likewise, "arms" includes defensive devices (armor) and devices that raise an alarm (literally, a call to arms). *See* David B. Kopel, *The First Amendment Guide to the Second Amendment*, 81 TENN. L. REV. 417, 448 (2014).

[72] JOHNSON ET AL., *supra* note 18, at 140–42.

Electronic copy available at: https://ssrn.com/abstract=3203664

matchlock's burning cord also impeded concealment in the woods.[73] Matchlocks usually did not work at all in the rain, and only sometimes in the damp.[74] The safety problem of burning rope near gunpowder is apparent.

The slow-burning cord is called the *match* or *match rope*.[75] The cord burns on both ends.[76] When matchlocks were the predominant firearm, militia statutes might also specify the requirement for a sufficient quantity of match, expressed by the total length of match rope.

Firelock or *flintlock*.[77] In a flintlock, the gunpowder is ignited by flint striking a piece of steel and producing sparks. The steel is a part of the gun. The flint (which eventually wears out and must be replaced) is held in the jaws of a movable vise that is a part of the gun.

Flintlocks are faster to reload and to fire than matchlocks. And they are much less likely to *misfire* (fail to ignite).[78]

Many militia statutes from the latter eighteenth century specify that the firearm must be a firelock *or* some more specific type of firearm (e.g., musket, rifle). This is a violation of the rule against surplusage, since the other type of firearm would still be a flintlock. The rule against surplusage was not as prominent in eighteenth century drafting as it is today.

Lock, *gun lock*. What we today call the *action* of a firearm. It is the part of the gun that performs the mechanical work of firing the ammunition. It has small moving parts that must be carefully fitted to each other. The distinction between a matchlock and a flintlock was the difference in the lock.

All of the types of guns described in the next section could be either matchlocks or flintlocks (except when specifically noted otherwise). Matchlocks were the most common in the early seventeenth century, but were subsequently displaced by flintlocks. As noted above, Americans were

---

73 *Id.* at 220.

74 *Id.*

75 GEORGE C. NEUMANN, BATTLE WEAPONS OF THE AMERICAN REVOLUTION 6 (2011).

76 *Id.* at 6-7. The rope was usually made from flax tow or hemp tow. *Id.* "Tow" is defined *infra*, text at note 140. It was soaked in saltpeter (a gunpowder ingredient). The two ends of the cord would be ignited the same way that any other fire was ignited at the time, such as by striking two pieces of metal against each other, or rubbing two sticks to create a spark. What we call "matches" in the twenty-first century are paper or wood sticks with sesquisulfide of phosphorus attached to the tip. As common consumer items, they were preceded in the nineteenth century by matchsticks with white phosphorus tips. The principle was discovered in 1669, but it was not practical to apply due to the difficulty in obtaining phosphorus. *See* Anne Marie Helmenstine, *History of Chemical Matches*, THOUGHTCO. (Jan. 3, 2018), https://www.thoughtco.com/history-of-chemical-matches-606805

77 RICHARD M. LEDERER, JR., COLONIAL AMERICAN ENGLISH 88 (1985).

78 A well-trained user could fire up to five shots per minute, depending on the gun. W.W. GREENER, THE GUN AND ITS DEVELOPMENT 66-67 (9th ed. 2010); CHARLES C. CARLTON, THIS SEAT OF MARS: WAR AND THE BRITISH ISLES 1585-1746, at 171-73 (2011). Because ignition time (the interval from when the trigger is pressed until the shot is fired) is shorter for flintlocks, shooting at a moving target became much easier. TOM GRINSLADE, FLINTLOCK FOWLERS: THE FIRST GUNS MADE IN AMERICA 13 (2005).

Electronic copy available at: https://ssrn.com/abstract=3205664

Case 4:23-cv-00547-O Document 20-2 Filed 10/06/23 Page 226 of 555 PageID 344

much quicker to adopt flintlocks than were their British cousins. This is one of the many ways that Americans and British arms cultures have diverged since the earliest times.[79]

By the time of the Revolution, the large majority of American and British guns were flintlocks, although presumably there may have been some poorer people whose only gun was an old matchlock.

2. Types of firearms

Guns that can fire more than one shot without reloading are called *repeaters*. They were invented in the late sixteenth century, but they were much less common than single-shot guns.[80] Until the second quarter of the nineteenth century, repeaters were much more expensive to produce than single-shot guns. All the guns described below (except for the *blunderbuss*) could be repeaters, but relatively few of them were.

Musket. The musket is a long gun which has a smooth *bore* (the interior of the barrel). If the bore is not smooth, but instead has grooves, the firearm is a *rifle*, not a classic musket.[81] Muskets are not highly accurate, but they did not need to be. The standard European fighting method of the time was massed lines of infantry, so a high rate of fire in the enemy's general direction was sufficient.

Bastard musket. Shorter and lighter than a standard musket.

---

79 *See* JOHNSON ET AL., *supra* note 18, at 171-74, 239-40 (summarizing divergence of American and British arms cultures, in part because Americans adopted much of Indian arms culture).

80 *Id.* at 142–44, 223–24; David B. Kopel*, Firearms Technology and the Original Meaning of the Second Amendment*, REASON (Apr. 3, 2017, 9:34 PM), https://reason.com/volokh/2017/04/03/firearms-technology-and-the-or.

81 Rifled muskets were invented in the latter part of the 18th century but did not see widespread use by Americans in this period.

Electronic copy available at: https://ssrn.com/abstract=3203664

Snaphaunce. An early version of the flintlock.[82] "During the 17th century, *snaphaunce* commonly referred to any flintlock system."[83]

Fusee, *fuse*, *fuze*, *fuzee*, *fusil*. Often, a synonym for flintlock.[84] More precisely, "a light, smoothbore shoulder arm of smaller size and caliber than the regular infantry weapon."[85]

Carbine or *carabine*. In the seventeenth century, a long gun with a smaller bore than a musket. By the eighteenth, also shorter and lighter than a musket. Well-suited for horsemen.[86] The word could "denote almost any small-calibre firearm irrespective of barrel length."[87]

Caliver. A matchlock larger than a carbine but smaller than a musket.[88]

The various smaller long guns typically had smaller bores (the empty interior of the barrel). Their smaller bullets were less powerful but were more aerodynamically stable at longer distance. Also, the smaller bore meant that a given quantity of lead could produce more bullets for the particular gun.

Fowling piece. A smoothbore long gun well-suited for bird hunting. In contrast to the classic musket, a fowling piece had a lighter barrel and stock, and its muzzle was slightly flared, to increase the velocity of the birdshot.[89]

---

[82] PATRICK A. MALONE, THE SKULKING WAY OF WAR: TECHNOLOGY AND TACTICS AMONG THE NEW ENGLAND INDIANS 34 (1991) (explaining that "[t]he true snaphaunce, rarely used in New England" differs from the "true" flintlock in how the cover of the firing pan is connected to the rest of the gun lock. American sources often do not use the different terms with precision.).

"Snaphaunce" may derive from the Dutch word for "chicken thief," based on "the occupation of the inventors." GEORGE CAMERON STONE, A GLOSSARY OF THE CONSTRUCTION, DECORATION AND USE OF ARMS AND ARMOR IN ALL COUNTRIES AND IN ALL TIMES 233 (1999). The mechanical action of a snaphaunce (and of a flintlock), "resembled the pecking motion of a bird." BILL AHEARN, MUSKETS OF THE REVOLUTION AND THE FRENCH & INDIAN WARS 98 (2005). The resemblance "appears to be the origin of the term cock which was the English 18th-century word used for this component." *Id.*

The "cock" (sometimes called the "hammer") is the pivoting part of the flintlock that holds the flint in screw-tightened jaws. When the trigger is pressed, the cock falls forward so that the flint strikes an immobile piece of hardened steel (the *frizzen*, *steel*, or *battery*). The collision produces a shower of sparks that fall into the firing pan and ignite the gunpowder. NEUMANN, *supra* note 75, at 7.

To cock a gun is to pull the cock (or today, the hammer) backwards so that it is ready fire. JAMES, *supra* note 68. The *sear* is an internal part that holds the cock in its backwards position. The more advanced sears of the eighteenth century had an intermediate position (half-cock) that facilitated loading, without risk of the gun firing. If the sear malfunctioned and released the cock, then the gun "went off half-cocked."

[83] NEUMANN, *supra* note 75, at 8 (italics in original).

[84] STONE, *supra* note 82, at 242; JIM MULLINS, OF SORTS FOR PROVINCIALS: AMERICAN WEAPONS OF THE FRENCH AND INDIAN WAR 53, 65 (2008) (when matchlock muskets, snaphaunces, and true flintlocks were used by European armies, "fusil" or "fire-lock" meant a flintlock musket; by the mid-eighteenth century, "the term 'fusil', 'fuzee' or 'fusee' came to be used by the English to denote a wide variety of light-weight guns."). "Fusil" was also used to mean "carbines."

[85] NEUMANN, *supra* note 75, at 19.

[86] STONE, *supra* note 82, at 163.

[87] STUART REID, THE FLINTLOCK MUSKET: BROWN BESS AND CHARLEVILLE 1715-1865 (2016).

[88] STONE, *supra* note 82 at 158.

[89] J. N. GEORGE, ENGLISH GUNS AND RIFLES 85 (Palladium Press 1999) (1947); GRINSLADE, *supra* note 78, at 5.

Electronic copy available at: https://ssrn.com/abstract=3205664

During the Revolution, many fowling pieces were employed as militia arms. Ideally, although not always in practice, they would be retrofitted to allow for the attachment of a bayonet.[90]

Rifle. A long gun with interior grooves (*rifling*). The grooves make the bullet spin on its axis, greatly improving aerodynamic stability and thus adding considerable range. Little-used in New England prior to the Revolution, but popular elsewhere, especially in frontier areas.

Pistol. Any handgun. (Unlike today, when a semi-automatic pistol is distinct from a revolver.) Most handguns of the time were single-shot, although there were some expensive models that could fire multiple shots without reloading.[91] Handguns ranged from large holster pistols to small pocket pistols.[92] They were often carried by officers.[93]

Blunderbuss. The name perhaps comes from the Dutch "donder-buse" or "thunder gun."[94] The blunderbuss was notable for its flared muzzle, which made reloading easier while riding on a stagecoach or aboard a water vessel. It could be loaded with a single very large bullet, but the more common load was twenty large pellets, or even up to fifty.[95] It was devastating at close range, but not much use beyond twenty yards.[96] In the Revolution, it was most useful for "street control, sentry duty and as personal officer

---

90 GRINSLADE, *supra* note 78, at 5, 54, 63 ("In times of Indian raids or war, the family fowling-piece served the need for a fighting gun."); MULLINS, *supra* note 84, at 49 (The classic fowling piece lacked the musket's swivels for attachment of a sling.).
The first identifiably American-made arms are fowling pieces built in the seventeenth century by Dutch settlers in the Hudson River Valley. AHEARN, *supra* note 82, at 101. As the American fowler evolved, influenced by the English and by immigrant French Huguenot gunsmiths, "The result was the development of a unique variety of American long fowler. These American long guns served as an all-purpose firearm. When loaded with shot, they were suited to hunt birds and small game, and when loaded with a ball, they could provide venison for the table. In times of emergency, they were needed for militia, and more than a few saw service in the early colonial wars as well as the Revolution." *Id.* As a British officer noted after the battles of Lexington and Concord in 1775, ''These fellows were generally good marksmen, and many of them used long guns made for Duck-Shooting.'' FREDERICK MACKENZIE, A BRITISH FUSILIER IN REVOLUTIONARY BOSTON, BEING THE DIARY OF LIEUTENANT FREDERICK MACKENZIE, ADJUTANT OF THE ROYAL WELCH FUSILIERS, JANUARY 5-APRIL 30, 1775, at 67 (Allen French ed., 1926; rprnt. ed. 1969) (quoting an unnamed officer).

91 CHARLES WINTHROP SAWYER, FIREARMS IN AMERICAN HISTORY: 1600 TO 1800, at 194-98, 215-16 (1910) (late eighteenth century American pistols with two to four rounds); NEUMANN, *supra* note 75, at 259 (double-barreled pistols used by many French officers).

92 LEE KENNETT & JAMES LAVERNE ANDERSON, THE GUN IN AMERICA: THE ORIGINS OF NATIONAL DILEMMA 208-11 (1975).

93 NEUMANN, *supra* note 75, at 231, 275 (explaining that most pistols were smoothbores, but some models had rifling).

94 D.R. BAXTER, BLUNDERBUSSES 13 (1970); GEORGE, *supra* note 89, at 59.

95 GEORGE, *supra* note 89, at 92-93.

96 *See* Baxter, *supra* note 94; James D. Forman, The Blunderbuss 1560-1900 (1994).

Electronic copy available at: https://ssrn.com/abstract=3203664

weapons."[97] A blunderbuss could be a very large handgun.[98] Or it could have a short stock attached and be used as a shoulder arm.

Horse-pistols. "[S]o called from being used of horseback, and of a large size."[99]

Case of pistols. Handguns were often sold in matched pairs.[100] A "case of pistols" is such a pair. Also called a "brace of pistols."

Gun. In the usage of the time, any long gun, but not a handgun.

Peece, *peice.* Today, *piece*. Any firearm.

In the period before the Revolution, most American gunsmiths used imported locks (the moving part of the firearm).[101] The use of recycled parts was also common.[102] So, for example, a damaged fowling piece might be repaired with some lock parts scavenged from a musket. Thus, the above categories of firearms should not be viewed as rigidly divided. There were many hybrids.[103] The variety of American firearms and edged weapons was further increased by the fact that America at all times, including after the Revolution, was a major export market for older, surplus European arms—not only from the United Kingdom, but also from Germany, France, Spain, and the low countries; to these would be added firearms scavenged from the various European armies that fought in colonial wars or the American Revolution.[104]

Whatever the specifics of any state or colony's arms requirements, Americans went to war with a very wide variety of personal arms, not always necessarily in precise compliance with the narrowest definitions of arms that might appear in a militia equipment statute. At Valley Forge in 1777, Baron Von Steuben was encamped with the Continental Army, most of whose members had brought their personal firearms to service. Von Steuben observed that "muskets, carbines, fowling pieces, and rifles were found in the same company."[105]

---

[97] NEUMANN, *supra* note 75, at 20.

[98] *See*, *e.g.*, *id.*, at 247 ("blunderbuss holster pistol").

[99] JAMES, *supra* note 68, at 638; *see also* NEUMANN, *supra* note 75, at 263 (American horseman pistol).

[100] Clayton E. Cramer & Joseph Edward Olson, *Pistols, Crime, and Public: Safety in Early America*, 44 WILLAMETTE L. REV. 699, 709, 719 (2008).

[101] GRINSLADE, *supra* note 78, at 1, 5, 15, 23-25.

[102] *Id.*

[103] ERIK GOLDSTEIN & STUART MOWBRAY, THE BROWN BESS 40-41 (2010); GRINSLADE, supra note 78, at 5, 23 ("The distinction between fowlers and muskets in the eighteenth century was not always clear-cut. Those manufactured from existing parts shared a common appearance, often combining aspects of both fowler and musket."). For example, the locks from French muskets that were captured during France's various wars in North America were often recycled into use on American fowlers.

[104] GEORGE G. NEUMANN, SWORDS & BLADES OF THE AMERICAN REVOLUTION 7, 53 (3d ed. 1991).

[105] Friedrich Kapp, The Life of Frederick William Von Steuben 117 (2d ed. 1859), https://ia802700.us.archive.org/33/items/lifeoffrederickw00kappuoft/lifeoffrederickw00kappuoft.pdf.

Electronic copy available at: https://ssrn.com/abstract=3205664

Case 4:23-cv-00547-O Document 20-2 Filed 10/06/23 Page 230 of 555 PageID 348

3. Edged or bladed weapons and accoutrements

Most firearms could fire only one shot, after which the user might have to take several seconds to reload. So, at close quarters, a firearm would be good for only one shot. If a person carried a pair of pistols (a *brace*), then he or she could fire two shots. But there would be no time to reload anything more against an adversary who was within arm's reach. So edged weapons were essential to self-defense.[106]

Bayonet. A dagger or other straight knife that can be attached to the front of a gun. The word comes from Bayonne, France, the bayonet-manufacturing capital.[107]

The bayonet could be used for all the purposes of any knife. In European-style combat—and much of the combat of the American Revolution—when the two armies met at close quarters, the bayonet would be attached to the end of the long gun, so that the long gun could be used as spear or pole-arm. Compared to muskets, rifles were longer, thinner, and more fragile, and thus poorly suited for use with a bayonet.

Some militiamen who lacked bayonets used daggers for up-close fighting.[108] Typically they had a double-edged blade, about six to ten inches long.[109]

Knife. Same meaning as today.

Jack knife. As today, a folding pocket knife. Blades could range from three to twelve inches.[110] Primarily for use as a tool, although available as a last-resort weapon.

Sword. Same meaning as today. The next four items are types of swords. Some militia statutes required a "sword or hanger" or a "sword or cutlass," or some similar formulation. Again, this is a violation of the rule against surplusage, but that rule was apparently not much in mind when statutes were drafted in the eighteenth century.

---

[106] Harold L. Peterson, Arms and Armor in Colonial America 1526-1783, at 69-101 (Dover 2000) (1956).

[107] Bayonne had long been a manufacturing center for cutlery and weapons. While it is generally agreed that bayonets were invented around 1640, there are several stories about how the invention happened. Logan Thompson, Daggers and Bayonets: A History 61-62 (1998). According to one version, "Some peasants of the Basque provinces, whilst on an expedition against a company of bandits, having used all their ammunition, were driven to the desperate necessity of inserting their long knives into the mouths of their arquebuses [an early type of long gun], by which means they routed their adversaries." W.W. Greener, The Gun and Its Development 626 (9th ed. 1910).

[108] Neumann, *supra* note 104, at 228.

[109] *Id.* at 229-30.

[110] *Id.* at 231. Some jackknives were multitools, also containing forks, saws, heavy needles, or "bleeders" (used to pierce veins in medical treatment). *Id.* at 231, 248.

Electronic copy available at: https://ssrn.com/abstract=3203664

Case 4:23-cv-00547-O Document 20-2 Filed 10/06/23 Page 231 of 555 PageID 349

Broad sword. Has a straight, wide, single-edged blade. "It was the military sword of the 17th century as distinguished from the civil sword, the rapier. It was also the usual weapon of the common people."[111]

Hanger. By one definition, a "short sword (blade averaging twenty-five inches) having at least one cutting edge.[112] Alternatively, a lightweight saber.[113] A classic saber has a curved blade, thick back, and a handguard.[114]

Cutlass or *cutlash.* In the seventeenth and early eighteenth century, "used interchangeably with the term 'hanger'."[115]

Simeter. Today, *scimitar*. Precisely speaking, a sword with a very curved blade that is narrow and thick. Often associated with Persia or the Middle East.[116] In usage of the time, "a short sword with a convex edge."[117]

Scabbard or *bucket.* The former remains in modern usage. A container for carrying or storing the sword. Similar to a holster for pistols.

Belt, *girdle*, or *strap.* A sword or bayonet could be carried in a waist belt.[118] A belt could also be used for attaching holsters, scabbards, etc. Some equipment could be held by shoulder belts.[119]

Swivel. Rings on a firearm to which a sling can be attached.[120]

Hatchet. Same meaning as today. "'Axe', 'hatchet', and 'tomahawk' were used interchangeably in America during most of the 18th century."[121]

Tomahawk. In a militia context, similar to a hatchet. Before European contact, Indian tomahawks had a stone attached to the end and were used as clubs, but not as cutting tools. Indian-European trade put steel blades into Indian hands, and led to the development of the bladed tomahawk, familiar to viewers of cinematic Westerns.[122] One popular American innovation was the pipe tomahawk, which could be used for smoking as well as cutting.[123]

---

111 STONE, *supra* note 82, at 150-51.

112 NEUMANN, *supra* note 104, at 54.

113 STONE, *supra* note 82, at 280 (also, a Scotch word for dagger).

114 In the modern sport of fencing, "saber" has a narrower definition. The saber is one of three types of modern fencing swords, the others being épée and foil.

115 NEUMANN, *supra* note 104, at 58.

116 STONE, *supra* note 82, at 544 (cross-referencing "scimiter" to "shamshir"), 550-53.

117 JAMES, *supra* note 68, at 789.

118 *Id.* at 51.

119 *Id.* "Girdle" at the time was the same as "belt." LEDERER, *supra* note 77, at 102.

120 JAMES, *supra note* 68, at 388.

121 NEUMANN, *supra* note 104, at 253. The "American axe" was smaller than its European ancestor, and better-suited for carrying in a belt. Redesign of the pole, the attachment mechanism, and the blade shape made the American axe sturdier and better suited for chopping. *Id.* at 255-57.

122 HAROLD L. PETERSON, AMERICAN INDIAN TOMAHAWKS 8-9 (2d ed. 1971).

123 NEUMANN, *supra* note 104, at 257.

Electronic copy available at: https://ssrn.com/abstract=3205664

Case 4:23-cv-00547-O Document 20-2 Filed 10/06/23 Page 232 of 555 PageID 350

4. Ammunition and related accoutrements

Powder. All of the gunpowder of the seventeenth and eighteenth centuries was what we today call *blackpowder*. It is a mixture of sulfur, charcoal, and saltpeter (which comes from decayed animal waste) and can be produced at home.[124]

Bullets. All bullets of the time were spheres. As described above, most of the guns of the seventeenth and eighteenth centuries were smoothbores.[125] They could be loaded with either a single bullet (a *ball*, better for long distances) or several smaller pellets (*shot*, better for bird-hunting, and for defense at shorter distances). Many militia statutes required the possession of "sizeable" bullets.[126] At the least, this rules out the tiny pellets that would be used for hunting small birds like partridges or doves.

Swan shot and *goose shot*. Multiple large pellets suitable for hunting the aforesaid birds.[127] Today, used in shotguns. In the seventeenth and eighteenth century, usable in all smoothbore handguns or long guns, which is to say all firearms except rifles.

Buck-shot. Multiple large pellets for deer hunting. Today, one of the largest types of shotgun pellets.[128]

Ramrod. Today, the vast majority of new firearms are breechloaders. They are loaded from the back of the gun, near the firing chamber. Breechloaders were invented in the mid-seventeenth century, but they were very expensive.[129] By far the most common guns at the time were muzzleloaders, which are loaded from the front of the gun, the *muzzle.*

To load a muzzleloader, the user first pours gunpowder down the muzzle. Next, the user uses a pole, the ramrod, to ram the bullet all the way down the barrel.[130]

The ramrod is also used for cleaning a gun and for extracting an unfired bullet, as described below.

Scour or *scowerer.* A ramrod.[131]

Match. The slow-burning cord used to ignite a matchlock. If quantities are specified, one fathom equals six feet.

---

[124] *See generally* DAVID CRESSY, SALTPETER: THE MOTHER OF GUNPOWDER (2012). Modern gunpowder, invented in the latter part of the nineteenth century, burns more efficiently, and thus produces much less smoke and residue.

[125] JOHNSON ET AL., *supra* note 18, at 220-23.

[126] *See infra* Parts III.A. (N.J.), B. (Md.), C. (N.C.), E. (N.H.), H. (N.Y.), and J. (Vt.).

[127] *Cf.* R.A. STEINDLER, THE FIREARMS DICTIONARY 250 (1970). "Swan drops" used for hunting swan weigh 29 grains each and are .268 inches in diameter. "Goose drops" were smaller than swan drops. *Id.*

[128] *Id.* at 250 (largest shotgun pellets are "small & large buck shot").

[129] JOHNSON ET AL., *supra* note 18, at 142-44.

[130] STEINDLER, *supra* note 127, at 188 (ramrod is usually wood, but can be metal; also usable as a cleaning tool).

[131] JAMES, *supra* note 68, at 791.

Electronic copy available at: https://ssrn.com/abstract=3203664

Wadding. Made of tow, hay, or straw. Rammed into the gun after the powder has been poured, and before the bullet is rammed down, it prevented the powder from scattering.[132]

Patches. Often the bullet would be wrapped in linen or some other fabric.[133] This made it easier to ram the bullet down the barrel. The patch also helped to provide a gas seal around the bullet; the seal kept the expanding gas of the gun powder explosion from escaping the barrel before the bullet did. The expanding gas was thus kept behind the bullet, the better to increase the velocity of the traveling bullet.

Cartouche, Cartridge. Paper cartridges were in use by the mid-seventeenth century.[134] These were cylinders that contained a premeasured amount of gunpowder, plus the bullet. The user would tear open the cartridge and then pour the powder into the muzzle. Then the user would ram the bullet down the muzzle. Although paper cartridges were common at the time of the Revolution, some gun users, including riflemen and many militiamen, still poured in gunpowder from a flask or horn, rather than from cartridges.[135]

Flints. For igniting the powder in a flintlock firearm. Since the flint is softer than the steel that the flint strikes, it will eventually need to be replaced.[136] So militia laws often mandated possession of certain quantities of flints.

5. Gun care

To reach all the way down the muzzle and to the bottom of the barrel, cleaning tools would often be attached to the *ramrod* or *scour*, described above.[137]

Worm. A corkscrew-shaped device attached to the end of the ramrod. Used for cleaning and also for extracting an unfired bullet and other ammunition components from a firearm.[138]

Brush. As in modern gun cleaning, a small brush.

---

132 *Id.* at 612.

133 *See*, *e.g.*, JOHN G.W. DILLIN, THE KENTUCKY RIFLE 15, 50, 65 (Palladium Press 1998) (1924); William De V. Foulke, Foreword, in *id.* at vi, viii; GREENER, *supra* note 78, at 623-24.

134 REID, *supra* note 87, at 20 (quoting JOHN VERNON, THE YOUNG HORSEMAN 10 (1644)).

135 NEUMANN & KRAVIC, *supra* note 68, at 66.

136 REID, *supra* note 87, at 33. A properly shaped flint (one that had been well-knapped) would need to be replaced after about ten to fifteen shots. *Id*.

137 GOLDSTEIN & MOWBRAY, *supra* note 103, at 53. The tip of the ramrod would be threaded for attachment of cleaning equipment. *Id.*

138 NEUMANN & KRAVIC, *supra* note 68, at 264; STEINDLER, *supra* note 127, at 278. Also, "wormer." LEDERER, *supra* note 77, at 246.

Electronic copy available at: https://ssrn.com/abstract=3205664

Wire or *wier.* Also, *picker.* The priming wire was for cleaning the flashpan and the touch hole—the small hole where the fire from the priming pan connected with the main powder charge.[139]

Tow. Tow is a loose ball of coarse and unspun waste fibers from hemp or linen production.[140] It is used for gun cleaning, for wadding, and for tinder.[141]

Screw driver. This has the same meaning as today. A screw driver is used for cleaning and repairs, especially for the gun lock.[142] Also, it can be used to loosen or tighten the cock's jaws in order to change the flint.[143]

6. Arms carrying and storage

Holster. This has the same modern definition. A holster is used for carrying a handgun or a short long gun, usually attached to the body by a belt or can be attached to a horse saddle.[144] Some later statutes specify that the holsters must have bear skin covers.[145]

Scabbard or *bucket.* Similar to a holster.[146]

Horn, *powderhorn*, or *flask.* This is used for gunpowder carrying.[147] For most colonists, the most common horn came from cattle, rams or similar animals.[148]

Charger, *shot bag* (or *pouch*, *badge*). The charger is a bulb-shaped flask for carrying powder, attached to metal components that release a premeasured quantity of powder. [149] *Shot bag/pouch/badge* may refer to this device.[150] The terms may also refer to bags for carrying bullets.[151]

---

139 NEUMANN & KRAVIC, *supra* note 68, at 264.

140 *Id.* at 269; MULLINS, *supra* note 82, at 48.

141 MULLINS, *supra* note 84, at 48; NEUMANN & KRAVIC, *supra* note 68, at 161, 262.

142 MULLINS *supra* note 84, at 48 (explaining that the screwdriver is necessary to remove the lock for cleaning and oiling).

143 NEUMANN & KRAVIC, *supra* note 68, at 264.

144 *Holster Definition*, MERRIAM-WEBSTER DICTIONARY, https://www.merriam-webster.com /dictionary/holster (last visited Jan. 13, 2019).

145 *See infra* Parts III.E. (N.H.), F. (Del.), and G. (Penn.)

146 *Scabbard Definition*, MERRIAM-WEBSTER DICTIONARY, https://www.merriam-webster.com /dictionary/scabbard#other-words (last visited Jan. 13, 2019); *Bucket Definition*, 1 THE NEW SHORTER OXFORD ENGLISH DICTIONARY 293 (4th ed. 1993) ("4. A (usu. leather) socket or rest for a whip, carbine, or lance.").

147 *Powderhorn Definition*, MERRIAM-WEBSTER DICTIONARY, https://www.merriam-webster.com/ dictionary/powder%20horn (last visited Jan. 13, 2019).

148 RAY RILING, THE POWDER FLASK BOOK 13 (1953). See *id*. at 171 for instructions on how to make a horn.

149 STONE, *supra* note 82, at 563.

150 RILING, *supra* note 148, at 256-57, 430-31.

151 *See* MULLINS, *supra* note 84, at 43-44.

Electronic copy available at: https://ssrn.com/abstract=3203664

Cover for the lock. As noted above, a *gun lock* (today, it is called the *action*) is the part of the gun that performs the mechanical work of firing the ammunition.[152] A cover protects the gun lock from the elements.[153]

Wax. This is used to protect firearms from rain.[154] For example, it can be used to cover the opening of the muzzle and prevent water from entering.[155]

Cartouche box. This is what we call a cartridge box today. Its purpose is for storage and carrying of cartridges.[156]

Bandelero or *cross belt*. Today, it is referred to as a *bandolier*. A waist or shoulder belt with attachments for carrying units of ammunition or of premeasured powder, usually in the form of a leather strip worn over the chest, containing cartridges in individual loops.[157] The cross belt is a pair of crossing strips, or a single belt "passing obliquely across the breast."[158]

Mould. Today, it is called a *mold*. It is used to cast molten lead into ammunition balls.[159] This shows that militiamen, and all the other persons subject to arms mandates, were expected to be able to produce their own ammunition.

7. Pole arms

Pike. This is a spear with a thrusting or cutting weapon attached to the end.[160] European armies of the seventeenth century were usually a mixture of pikemen and musketmen.[161] The use of pikes declined during the eighteenth century, especially in America.[162] In the first two years of the Revolution, when some soldiers lacked firearms, pikes were re-introduced for infantry, since they were readily made from locally available materials.[163]

---

152 *Glossary of Firearms Related Terms*, THE FIREARMS GUIDE, http://www.thefirearms.guide/glossary (last visited Jan. 13, 2019).

153 JAMES, *supra* note 68, at 444 (explaining that a "lock-cover" is "a piece of leather or oil-cloth").

154 Doug Wicklund, *Caring for Your Collectible Firearms*, NAT'L RIFLE ASS'N, 2-3, http://www.nramuseum.org/media/1007361/caring%20for%20your%20collectible%20firearms%20by%20doug%20wicklund.pdf (last visited Jan. 13, 2019).

155 *Id.*

156 RILING, *supra* note 148, at 483. "Cartouche" is the French word for "cartridge." Cartouche boxes were used for carrying paper cartridges; these contained the bullet and a measured quantity of gunpowder, wrapped in paper. *Id.*

157 STONE, *supra* note 82, at 91-92; NEUMANN, *supra* note 75, at 21.

158 *Crossbelt Definition*, MERRIAM-WEBSTER DICTIONARY, https://www.merriam-webster.com/dictionary/crossbelt (last visited Jan. 13, 2019).

159 NEUMANN, *supra* note 75, at 21. Some molds were for a single bullet, while others could cast multiple bullets. *Id.*

160 STONE, *supra* note 82, at 501.

161 RODNEY HILTON BROWN, AMERICAN POLEARMS, 1526-1865: THE LANCE, HALBERD, SPONTOON, PIKE, AND NAVAL BOARDING WEAPONS 17-18 (1967).

162 *Id.* at 18, 34.

163 NEUMANN, *supra* note 104, at 192-93.

Electronic copy available at: https://ssrn.com/abstract=3205664

The pikes used during the Revolutionary War were usually twelve to sixteen feet long, could be anchored in the ground, and were especially useful for defending entrenched positions.[164]

Espontoon or *spontoon.* This is a six-foot-long pole-arm, similar to a pike but shorter.[165] It was carried by Revolutionary infantry officers.[166] "It was an officer's primary weapon, since it allowed him to keep his eyes on the battle at all times … Furthermore, his signals could be seen from a distance in the din and disorder of the battlefield, when voice commands might be indistinguishable."[167]

Lance. It is a horseman's spear, the same meaning as today.[168]

8. Horses and tack accoutrements

Dragoon or *trooper*. This means a horse-mounted soldier.[169]

Saddle. This has the same meaning as today.[170]

Bridle. This also has the same as today.[171]

Pillion. This refers to a rear extension on a saddle allowing for a second rider.[172]

Valise holsters. These are saddle-mounted holsters, similar to modern *saddlebags*, that could be used for carrying large handguns.[173]

Breastplate. Straps that prevent the saddle or harness from sliding. They attach to the front of the saddle.[174]

---

164 *Id.* at 193.

165 *Id.* at 191.

166 *Id.* at 191-92.

167 Joseph Mussulman, *Espontoon*, DISCOVERING LEWIS & CLARK, http://www.lewis-clark.org/article/2366 (last visited Jan. 13, 2019) ("For Lewis and Clark the espontoon also served as a walking-stick on rough or slippery terrain, as a prop to steady a rifle for a long shot, and as a weapon. Lewis killed a rattlesnake with his (May 26, 1805), and Clark killed a wolf (May 29, 1805)."); *see also* STONE, *supra* note 82, at 580. *See generally* MERIWETHER LEWIS AND WILLIAM CLARK, THE JOURNALS OF THE LEWIS & CLARK EXPEDITION (Gary Moulton ed. 1983).

168 STONE, *supra* note 82, at 407-09. *See generally* BROWN, *supra* note 161.

169 LEDERER, *supra* note 77, at 72 (dragoon). "Whereas cavalry fought on horseback, dragoons scouted, pursued, and moved on horseback, but dismounted to fight." *Id*. The militia statutes do not appear to have such a precise meaning. Some statutes call anyone with a horse a "dragoon," and other statutes call anyone with a horse a "trooper." The statutes do not distinguish cavalry from dragoons/troopers.

170 *Saddle Definition*, MERRIAM-WEBSTER DICTIONARY, https://www.merriam-webster.com/dictionary/saddle (last visited Jan. 13, 2019).

171 *Bridle Definition*, MERRIAM-WEBSTER DICTIONARY, https://www.merriam-webster.com/dictionary/bridle (last visited Jan. 13, 2019).

172 *Pillion Definition*, CAMBRIDGE DICTIONARY, https://dictionary.cambridge.org/us/ dictionary/english/pillion (last visited Jan. 13, 2019).

173 *Valise Definition*, MERRIAM-WEBSTER DICTIONARY, https://www.merriam-webster.com/dictionary/valise (last visited Jan. 13, 2019).

174 Jane Myers, Horse Safe: A Complete Guide to Equine Safety 83 (2005).

Electronic copy available at: https://ssrn.com/abstract=3203664

Crupper. This has a similar function to a breastplate, except it attaches to the rear of the saddle or harness.[175] Alternatively, it can be armor for a horse's hind quarters.[176]

Spurs. This definition has remained the same.[177] Militia statutes might also specify boots suitable for being attached to spurs.

Hands. This is the standard unit of measure for a horse's height.[178] Today, one hand is equivalent to four inches.[179] The typical minimum size for a militia horse was 14 or 14 ½ hands (66 or 68 inches).[180] The measure is from the ground to the horse's withers, the top of its shoulders.[181]

9. Armor

In the early decades of American settlement, when Indians with arrows were the principal opponent, many Americans wore armor on at least part of their bodies.[182] For purposes of mobility, leather or quilted jackets became popular; they would not always stop an arrow, but they couldmitigate its damage.[183] Once the Indians acquired firearms in large quantities, armor was generally abandoned.[184] By the time of the Revolution, most soldiers did not wear armor; the exceptions were body armor for some specialized engineers, and metal headgear for cavalry.[185]

10. Other field gear

Knapsack, blanket, and canteen. These are the same as modern definitions.[186]

---

[175] *Crupper Definition*, MERRIAM-WEBSTER DICTIONARY, https://www.merriam-webster.com/dictionary/crupper (last visited Jan. 13, 2019).

[176] STONE, *supra* note 82, at 195.

[177] *Spur Definition*, MERRIAM-WEBSTER DICTIONARY, https://www.merriam-webster.com/dictionary/spur (last visited Jan. 13, 2019).

[178] *Hand*, ENCYCLOPEDIA BRITANNICA, https://www.britannica.com/science/hand-measurement (last visited Jan. 13, 2019).

[179] *Id.*

[180] *See* 1 JOURNAL OF THE HOUSE OF REPRESENTATIVES OF THE UNITED STATES, BEING THE FIRST SESSION OF THE FIRST CONGRESS-3RD SESSION OF THE 13TH CONGRESS, MARCH 4, 1789–SEPT. 13, 1814, at 814 (1826); Parts III.C. (North Carolina) and III.F. (Delaware) *infra*.

[181] *Hand*, *supra* note 178.

[182] PETERSON, *supra* note 106, at 132-42.

[183] *Id.* at 142-51; *See also id.* at 43 (noting 1645 Massachusetts General Court mandate that every family have "a canvas coat quilted with cotton wool as defense against arrows").

[184] *Id.* at 149.

[185] *Id.* at 307-16.

[186] Knapsack Definition, Merriam-Webster Dictionary, https://www.merriam-webster.com/dictionary/knapsack (last visited Jan. 13, 2019); Blanket Definition, Merriam-Webster Dictionary, https://www.merriam-webster.com/dictionary/blanket (last visited Jan. 13, 2019);

Electronic copy available at: https://ssrn.com/abstract=3205664

Case 4:23-cv-00547-O Document 20-2 Filed 10/06/23 Page 238 of 555 PageID 356

Haversack. This bag is like a knapsack but carried over only one shoulder.[187]

B. Types of persons covered by arms mandates

In modern times, when we think about "the militia," we are mainly thinking about males 18 to 45 (or in previous times, 16 to 50 or 60, *infra*). (As used in this article, the ages mean "at least X" and "under Y." In other words, if the militia was males ages 16 to 50, the militia obligation would begin on a person's sixteenth birthday, and end on his fiftieth birthday.) Precisely speaking, these enrolled men were a subset of the whole militia—the whole militia consisting of everyone who was able to fight, as detailed in Part I. The enrolled militiamen had to engage in group drills and might be marched away from home for military service. In the seventeenth and eighteenth centuries, the scope of persons who were required to possess arms was broader than just the enrolled militia.[188]

The arms requirements for other categories of persons were sometimes contained in statutes with the title "militia," and sometimes in other statutes.[189] Likewise, statutes requiring that males 16-60 be armed were often but not always titled as "militia" laws.

The categories below explain the different classes of people who might have to be armed. Examples of the statutory uses of the various terms below will be found in Part III, the survey of seventeenth and eighteenth century militia statutes.

Trained band. This was the term in some states or colonies for the enrolled portion of the militia that is required to participate in training (i.e. males 16 or 18 to 45, 50, or 60).[190] It could be sent away from home for military missions, although deployments outside the colony or state were disfavored.[191]

The phrase was copied from Elizabethan England. There, "trained band" referred to a subset of the enrolled militia who received extra training; membership in the English trained band was based on social class. Yeomen—small farmers who owned their own land—could be in the trained band, while lower classes, such as tenants, were not.[192] In American usage, though, "trained band" or "band," usually refer to the entire enrolled militia.

Canteen Definition, MERRIAM-WEBSTER DICTIONARY, https://www.merriam-webster.com/dictionary/canteen (last visited Jan. 13, 2019).

[187] *Haversack Definition*, MERRIAM-WEBSTER DICTIONARY, https://www.merriam-webster.com/dictionary/haversack (last visited Jan. 13, 2019).

[188] *See infra* Part III.

[189] *Id.*

[190] *Id.*

[191] *Id.*

[192] JOHNSON ET AL., *supra* note 18, at 110.

Electronic copy available at: https://ssrn.com/abstract=3203664

One early statute in Maryland did provide extra training for a subset of the enrolled militia. Unlike in England, this subset was chosen by merit—physical fitness and courage—rather than by class.[193]

Alarm list. This refers to every other male who was capable of fighting. They were required to possess the same specified arms as members of the trained band (i.e., the enrolled militia) but were not required to participate in training or to serve in ordinary expeditions.[194]

Alarm list duty was limited to emergencies, especially, to join in defense of the town or community when under attack. People on the alarm list were primarily: 1. People with an occupational exemption from trained band service (e.g., physicians in some colonies), or 2. People above the age for trained band service.[195] For example, someone who was fifty-two years old. Alarm list duty would usually have some upper limit, such as age sixty or seventy.

In practice, when a town was under attack, everyone who could fight would fight, including women and children.[196]

State armies. Although sometimes described as part of the militia, state armies were distinctive in several regards. State armies were established for temporary periods during wartime.[197] They fought in Indian Wars, in the numerous wars against the French colonies in America, and the Revolution.[198]

Unlike militia service, state army service was not a universal obligation of every able-bodied male. State armies were select forces with longer enlistment terms than the ordinary militia.[199] They were more willing to be deployed to other states or colonies.[200] To the extent possible, their ranks were filled by volunteers.[201] To the extent necessary, conscription was used, with each town or other locality having an obligation to supply a certain number of men.[202] State armies comprised a considerable fraction of

---

193 *See infra* Part III.B (1658 statute).

194 *See infra* Part III.

195 *Id.*

196 *See*, *e.g.*, STEVEN C. EAMES, RUSTIC WARRIORS: WARFARE AND THE PROVINCIAL SOLDIERS ON THE NEW ENGLAND FRONTIER, 1689-1748, at 28-29 (2011).

197 JOHNSON ET AL., *supra* note 18, at 226, 281.

198 *Id.* at 225, 235, 283. The wars with the French were the War of the League of Augsburg (1689-97) (known in America as King William's War), the War of the Spanish Succession (1701-13) (Queen Anne's War, in America), and the War of Jenkins' Ear (1741-48) (against France's ally Spain; including an attempted Spanish invasion of Georgia). The latter war blended into the War of the Austrian Succession (1744-48) (King George's War). Finally, the French & Indian War (1754-63) (known to the British as the Great War for Empire). *Id.* at 245. For participation by the armies of the various colonies, *see, e.g.*, RENÉ CHARTRAND, COLONIAL AMERICAN TROOPS 1610–1774 (2002) (3 vols.).

199 JOHNSON ET AL., *supra* note 18, at 226, 281.

200 *Id.* at 226, 281.

201 *Id.* at 226-27.

202 *Id.* at 194, 226-228, 230.

Electronic copy available at: https://ssrn.com/abstract=3205664

Case 4:23-cv-00547-O Document 20-2 Filed 10/06/23 Page 240 of 555 PageID 358

American fighters during the Revolution, fighting alongside the Continental Army and the state militias.[203]

Householder, *freeholder, taxable person*, *titheable person.* Many statutes required that these persons possess arms, whether or not they were enrolled in the militia.

A householder is the head of a house, regardless of sex.[204] For example, a widow, or any other woman living independently could be a householder.

A *freeholder* owns real property. A single woman could be a freeholder.

The meaning of "taxable" "titheable" (or tithable) person, varied by jurisdiction; some laws exempted government officials, or "immigrants, indigents, and incapacitated persons."[205] In Virginia, everyone over 16 except for free white women was titheable (that is, taxable under a head or capitation tax).[206] The revenue could be used for a colony or state's established church[207]or for secular purposes.[208]

A man aged 65 years old might be too old for the enrolled militia, but he could still be taxable or titheable. Depending on the laws of the particular colony, he might still be required to possess arms.

A fifty-two-year-old widow maintaining her own household would not be in the enrolled militia or the alarm list but would be required to keep arms as a householder. Depending on her colony's laws, she might also be a taxable or titheable person.

Accordingly, women were sometimes legally required to possess arms in Massachusetts, Maryland, Delaware, New Hampshire, Vermont, and Connecticut.[209] Although they were never required to serve in the enrolled

---

[203] *Id.* at 203, 281, 283.

[204] *Householder Definition*, MERRIAM-WEBSTER DICTIONARY, https://www.merriam-webster.com/dictionary/householder (last visited Jan. 13, 2019).

[205] *See* John Witte, Jr., *Tax Exemption of Church Property: Historical Anomaly or Valid Constitutional Practice?* S. CAL. L. REV. 363, 371-72 (1991).

[206] *See* Terri L. Snyder, *Marriage on the Margins: Free Wives, Enslaved Husbands, and the Law in Early Virginia*, 30 L. & HIST. REV. 141, 166 (2012):

> Local courts were especially anxious to establish accurate lists of all taxable persons in any given jurisdiction. Throughout the colonial period, definitions of which persons were taxable changed, but by 1723, everyone over the age of 16 was taxable, except for free white women. And it certainly was the case that individuals concealed their dependents in order to reduce their annual tax burden. In order to prevent them from so doing, Virginia law required households to provide a list of tithables to the tax collector.

See also James R. Campbell, *Dispelling the Fog about Direct Taxation*, 1 BRIT. J. AM. LEG. STUD. 109, 163 n. 215 (2012) (Massachusetts "poll taxes were imposed on the same set of tithable persons that Virginia and North Carolina taxed").

[207] *See* Godwin v. Lunan, Jeff. 96, 104, 1771 WL 3, 5 (Va. 1771).

[208] *See* Commonwealth v. Justices of Fairfax Cty. Court, 4 Va. (2 Va. Cas.) 9, 10 (1815) ("to erect the bridges and causeways in the said mandamus mentioned, and to levy the cost of the same on the tithable persons of the said county of Fairfax").

[209] *See* Part III, *infra*.

Electronic copy available at: https://ssrn.com/abstract=3203664

militia, they were part of the militia in the broadest sense: all able-bodied persons capable of bearing arms.

Servants. The statutes detailed in Part III sometimes have special rules for servants. For example, a statute requiring people to provide their own arms may include an exception requiring a master provide his or her servant with arms. Since the servant was, by definition, not living independently, the servant might be not be able to afford all the necessary arms and accoutrements. Many servants were free laborers. They were free persons who entered into voluntary contracts to supply services, such as household help or farm work.

Indentured servants were free immigrants who had signed contracts entitling the other party to use or sell their labor for a period of years.[210] For example, a poor Englishman, Irishman, or German who wished to emigrate to America might receive free passage in exchange for an indenture for several years, four years being most common.[211] The indenture contract was assignable; the master might use the indented laborer for a while, and then sell the indenture to someone else.[212] Other indentured servants were convicted criminals who had been given a choice between execution in England, or transportation to America followed by a period of indentured servitude, usually seven years.[213] Like slaves, indentured servants were not legally free; they could not marry, travel, or trade without their master's consent.[214]

At the end of an indenture, the former master was usually required to give the former servant "freedom dues"—land, goods, or money allowing the ex-servant to begin independent life.[215] In Maryland, Virginia, North Carolina, and South Carolina, freedom dues included a gun for male ex-servants.[216]

Bought servants. An indentured servant was also called a "bought servant."[217] Some militias statutes excluded "bought" or "indented" servants or allowed militia service only with the master's consent. Presumably, this was to prevent indentured servants from choosing militia service as a means

---

[210] Mary Sarah Bilder, The Struggle over Immigration: Indentured Servants, Slaves, and Articles of Commerce, 61
MO. L. REV. 743, 752-53 (1996).

[211] *Id*. at 754-56.

[212] *Id*. at 758.

[213] *Id*. at 754, 756-57.

[214] *Id*. at 758.

[215] *Id*. at 759.

[216] OHNSON ET AL., supra note 18, at 185-86.

[217] See York Freedom Suits (1685-1715), VIRTUAL JAMESTOWN, http://www.virtualjamestown.org/yorkfreedomsuits1685_1715.html (last visited Jan. 13, 2019) (Mar. 24, 1686/7 judgement that plaintiff, "having truely served her Limited time as a bought Servant" of decedent, should be paid her freedom dues out of decedent's estate) (quoting 7 York County Deeds, Orders, and Wills 292).

Electronic copy available at: https://ssrn.com/abstract=3205664

to evade their indenture contracts. Textually, the "bought servant" statutes did not apply to free laborers, who were hired servants.

Slaves were also called "servants" or sometimes "servants for life."[218] Imported slaves were Africans sold by Africans to trans-Atlantic slave traders, following capture in war or kidnapping.[219] Non-imported slaves were Indians captured in war (often by other Indians, and then sold to the English); their slavery/servitude was not necessarily for life.[220] Although slaves were bought and sold, the term "bought servant" does not seem to encompass them, at least as the term was used in Pennsylvania.[221]

As Part III details, practices varied about whether indentured servants or slave servants were part of the enrolled militia. In general, the former were usually included, and the latter usually excluded, but there were exceptions in both directions.

C. "Trained to arms from their infancy"

Firearms were a way of life in early America. It was common for American children to be familiar with firearms, a circumstance that gave the Americans confidence leading up to the Revolutionary War. On July 8, 1775, the Continental Congress warned King George III that the Americans' superiority with arms, due to their training beginning in childhood, would make them a formidable foe: "Men trained to Arms from their Infancy, and animated by the Love of Liberty, will afford neither a cheap or easy Conquest."[222]

---

[218] *E.g.*, Respublica v. Betsey, 1 U.S. (1 Dall.) 469, 470 (Pa. 1789) ("The words 'freemen and free-women,' seem to have been used in opposition to the word 'slaves,' or 'servants for life'") (interpreting Pennsylvania's gradual abolition statute in favor of Betsey's freedom).

[219] *The Capture and Sale of Enslaved Africans*, INT'L SLAVERY MUSEUM, http://www.liverpoolmuseums.org.uk/ism/slavery/africa/capture_sale.aspx (last visited Jan. 13, 2019) (also noting that some Africans were sold to European traders as criminal punishment or for default on debt); Sheldon M. Stern, *It's Time to Face the Whole Truth About the Atlantic Slave Trade*, HIST. NEWS NETWORK (Aug. 13, 2007), https://historynewsnetwork.org/article/41431.

[220] *See* Robin v. Hardway, Jeff. 109, 1772 WL 11 (Va. 1772) (noting 1670 Virginia statute "that all servants not being Christians, imported into this country by shipping, shall be slaves for their life time," but "Indians taken in war by any other nation, and by that nation that takes them sold to the English…shall serve, if boys and girls, until thirty years of age, if men and women, twelve years and no longer.").

[221] *See* Gary B. Nash, *Slaves and Slave Owners in Colonial Philadelphia*, in AFRICAN AMERICANS IN PENNSYLVANIA: SHIFTING HISTORICAL PERSPECTIVES 43, 46 (Joe Trotter & Eric Ledell Smith eds. 1997) (quoting 1756 message from Pennsylvania Assembly to the Governor, complaining about British recruitment of Pennsylvania indentured servants for the British army in the French & Indian War: "If the Possession of a bought Servant…is… rendered precarious…the People [will be] driven to the Necessity of providing themselves with Negro Slaves…").

[222] 1 JOURNALS OF THE AM. CONGRESS FROM 1774-1788, at 106-11 (adopted July 8, 1775) (1823) (emphasis added).

Electronic copy available at: https://ssrn.com/abstract=3203664

This same argument was asserted by John Zubly, a Savannah minister and recent immigrant from Switzerland.[223] He warned the British that "In the strong sense of liberty, and the use of firearms almost from the cradle, the Americans have vastly the advantage over men of their rank almost every where else."[224] He added that American children were "shouldering the resemblance of a gun before they are well able to walk."[225]

Similarly, David Ramsay, a legislator from South Carolina and delegate to the Continental Congress, pointed out that, "Europeans, from their being generally unacquainted with fire arms are less easily taught the use of them than Americans, who are from their youth familiar with these instruments of war."[226] He noted that "[f]or the defence of the colonies, the inhabitants had been, from their early years, enrolled in companies, and taught the use of arms."[227]

Thomas Jefferson, explained what was going on in America to his Scottish friend: "[w]e are all in arms, exercising and training old and young to the use of the gun."[228] Once the Revolution began, Jefferson suggested that the reasons American battle casualties were so much lower than British ones was "our superiority in taking aim when we fire; every soldier in our army having been intimate with his gun from his infancy."[229]

So too was Jefferson. His father, Colonel Peter Jefferson, taught him to use a firearm at a young age.[230] When Thomas was 10 years old, his father was confident enough to send the boy into the wilderness alone with nothing but his firearm, to learn self-reliance.[231] By the time Thomas was 14, his father "had already taught him to sit his horse, fire his gun, boldly stem the Rivanna when the swollen river was 'Rolling red from brae to brae,' and press his way with unflagging foot through the rocky summits of the contiguous hills in pursuit of deer and wild turkeys."[232]

---

[223] *Zubly, John Joachim*, BIOGRAPHICAL DIRECTORY OF THE U.S. CONGRESS, http://bioguide.congress.gov/scripts/biodisplay.pl?index=Z000015 (last visited Jan. 13, 2019).

[224] PETER A. DORSEY, COMMON BONDAGE: SLAVERY AS METAPHOR IN REVOLUTIONARY AMERICA 53 (2009).

[225] *Id.*

[226] 1 DAVID RAMSAY, THE HISTORY OF THE AMERICAN REVOLUTION 181 (Liberty Fund 1990) (1789).

[227] *Id.* at 178.

[228] 3 Am. Archives 4th Ser. (Clark & Force) 621 (1840).

[229] Letter from Thomas Jefferson to Giovanni Fabbroni (June 8, 1778), *in* THOMAS JEFFERSON, WRITINGS 760 (Merrill D. Peterson, ed.,1984). In precise legal usage, "infancy" meant the same as "minority." The word was not used exclusively in the modern sense, in which an "infant" is younger than a toddler. As the above quotes indicate, toddler age was when some Americans began learning to use arms.

[230] *Id.*

[231] DUMAS MALONE, JEFFERSON THE VIRGINIAN 46-47 (1948) (Vol. 1 of Dumas Malone, Jefferson and His Time).

[232] HENRY S. RANDALL, 1 THE LIFE OF THOMAS JEFFERSON 14-15 (1865). The "brae to brae" quote is a verse popularized by Sir Walter Scott. 1 MEMOIRS OF THE LIFE OF SIR WALTER SCOTT, part 4, ch. 2, at 52 (1838).

Electronic copy available at: https://ssrn.com/abstract=3205664

Case 4:23-cv-00547-O Document 20-2 Filed 10/06/23 Page 244 of 555 PageID 362

Having valued the firearms training of his childhood, Thomas Jefferson suggested that his 15-year-old cousin, Peter Carr, become similarly acquainted with firearms.[233] Jefferson told Carr that "a strong body makes a strong mind," and recommended two hours of exercise every day. Jefferson continued: "[a]s to the species of exercise, I advise the gun. While this gives a moderate exercise to the body, it gives boldness, enterprise and independence to the mind. . . . Let your gun therefore be the constant companion of your walks."[234] "Another nephew tells us that Jefferson believed every boy should be given a gun at the age of ten, as Jefferson himself had been."[235]

The Adamses felt the same way. "Militiamen on the way to Lexington and Concord stopped at a farm in Braintree, Massachusetts. To their amusement, 8-year-old John Quincy Adams, son of Abigail and John Adams, was executing the manual of arms with a musket taller than he was."[236] When John Adams had been a nine-or ten-year-old schoolboy, he loved to engage in sports, "above all, in shooting, to which diversion I was addicted to a degree of ardor which I know not that I ever felt for any other business, study, or amusement."[237] He would leave his gun by the schoolhouse door, so that he could go hunting as soon as classes ended.[238]

Ordinary people were just as determined to teach the young how to use arms. John Andrews, an aid to British General Thomas Gage, recounted an incident in which Redcoats were unsuccessfully trying to shoot at a target on the Boston Common.[239] When an American mocked them, a British officer dared the American to do better. The American repeatedly hit the target.[240] As Andrews noted, "The officers as well as the soldiers star'd, and tho't the Devil was in the man. Why, says the countryman, I'll tell you *naow*. I have got a *boy* at home that will toss up an apple and shoot out all the seeds as its coming down."[241]

Or in the words of the *Boston Gazette*, "[b]esides the regular trained militia in New-England, all the planters sons and servants are taught to use

---

233 THOMAS JEFFERSON, WRITINGS 816-17 (Merrill D. Peterson ed. 1984).

234 *Id.*

235 Kates, *supra* note 42, at 229 (1983) (citing T. JEFFERSON RANDOLPH, NOTES ON THE LIFE OF THOMAS JEFFERSON (Edgehill Randolph Collection) (1879)).

236 DAVID HACKETT FISCHER, PAUL REVERE'S RIDE 289 (1995). A manual of arms is a drill in which the gun user presents the firearm or other arm in a series of positions (e.g., right shoulder arms, left shoulder arms, fix bayonet, unfix bayonet, etc.). *Manual of Arms Definition*, VOCABULARY.COM, https://www.vocabulary.com/dictionary/manual%20of%20arms (last visited Jan. 13, 2019).

237 3 DIARY AND AUTOBIOGRAPHY OF JOHN ADAMS 257-59 (Lyman Henry Butterfield ed., 1961).

238 *Id.* When the schoolmaster told him to stop, he stored the gun at the nearby home of an old woman. *Id.*

239 Letter dated Oct. 1, 1774, 1 Am. Archives 4th Ser. (Clark & Force) 58-59 (1840).

240 *Id.*

241 *Id.*

Electronic copy available at: https://ssrn.com/abstract=3203664

the fowling piece from their youth, and generally fire balls with great exactness at fowl or beast."[242]

Later, during the debates on ratification of the Constitution, Virginia's Richard Henry Lee emphasized: "to preserve liberty, it is essential that the whole body of the people always possess arms, and be taught alike, *especially when young*, how to use them."[243]

III. THE COLONIAL AND FOUNDING PERIODS

Before we begin a colony-by-colony survey of militia laws, we can summarize some common characteristics of laws among the colonies and states, from the creation of different colonies in the seventeenth or early eighteenth century, through the end of the eighteenth century.

First, the most common age for militia duty was 16 to 50 years. The maximum often went as high as 60. The minimum was sometimes 18, and never higher (except for one 19-year period in Virginia). In 1792, Congress enacted the Uniform Militia Act (hereinafter UMA), to govern militia when called into federal service. The federal ages were 18 to 45, and several states revised their laws to make the state militia ages conform to the federal militia ages.[244]

The survey below in this Part III includes over 250 different enactments, as colonies and states revised and updated their militia laws. They also include many instances in which the colony or state enacted a militia statute that by its terms would expire in one year or a few years. Then, at the appropriate time, the colony would pass a new militia law, with the same terms as the old law. Because the royal governors, appointed by the king, would control the militia once it was in active service, some colonial legislatures were averse to permanent militia laws, which might give the royal governor too much unilateral power.[245]

The frequent renewals and revisions of colonial and early state militia laws reflect the legislatures' continuing determination that persons over 18-

---

[242] BOSTON GAZETTE, Dec. 5, 1774, at 4; *See also* HAROLD F. WILLIAMSON: WINCHESTER: THE GUN THAT WON THE WEST 3 (1952) (quoting English visitor to New England in 1774, "in the cities you scarcely find a Lad of 12 years that does not go a Gunning"); DAVID HARSANYI, FIRST FREEDOM: A RIDE THROUGH AMERICA'S ENDURING HISTORY WITH THE GUN 57-58 (2018) (quoting 1760s visitor to the Valley of Virginia: "A well grown boy at the age of twelve or thirteen years was furnished with a small rifle and a shot-pouch. He then became a fort soldier, and has his port-hole assigned him. Hunting squirrels, turkeys and raccoons soon make him expert in the use of his gun.") (citing Daniel Boorstin, *The Therapy of Distance*, 27 AMERICAN HERITAGE (no. 4 June 1976)).

[243] 17 DOCUMENTARY HISTORY OF THE RATIFICATION OF THE CONSTITUTION 363 (John P. Kaminski & Gaspare J. Saladino eds. 1995) (emphasis added).

[244] Uniform Militia Act, 1 Stat. 271-72 (1792).

[245] *See, e.g.*, Theodore H. Jabbs, The South Carolina Colonial Militia, 1663-1733 (1973) (unpublished Ph.D. dissertation, U. of N.C. Chapel Hill) (available in ProQuest Dissertations & Theses Global).

Electronic copy available at: https://ssrn.com/abstract=3205664

years-old be well-armed. The *only* militia law that did not have a minimum age of 18 or less was from Virginia in 1738–57.[246]

Before discussing militia laws of the colonies and states one-by-one, we should emphasize that the militia was *not* the only institution in which young adults were required to use arms. Three related duties also required young adults (like other adults) to bring their arms to help protect the community. All of these had long-established roots in common law. Sometimes the colonies enacted relevant statutes, but often they simply relied on the common law tradition.

First, all able-bodied men from 15 or 16 to 60 were obliged to join in the "hue and cry" (*hutesium et clamor*) to pursue fleeing criminals.[247] Pursuing citizens were allowed to use deadly force if necessary to prevent escape.[248]

Second, there was "watch and ward"—guard duty for towns and villages. "Ward" was the daytime activity, and "watch" the nighttime activity.[249] The patrols would be arranged by a sheriff, constable, justice of the peace, or other official.[250]

Third, there was the *posse comitatus*. This is the power of the sheriff, coroner, magistrate, or other officials to summon all able-bodied males to assist in keeping the peace.[251] Posse service could include a few men helping a sheriff serve a writ, or it could include many men helping a sheriff suppress a riot.[252] The traditional minimum age for posse service was 15 or 16 years; some commentators said the upper age limit was 70, while others said there was no limit.[253] Shortly before being appointed to the U.S. Supreme Court

---

[246] *See infra* Part III.K.

[247] Statute of Winchester, 13 Edward I, chs. 4-6 (1285) (formalizing hue and cry system; requiring all men aged fifteen to sixty to possess arms and armor according to their wealth; lowest category, having less than "Twenty Marks in Goods," must have swords, knives, bows, and other small arms)

[248] *See* 2 FREDERICK POLLOCK & FREDERIC W. MAITLAND, THE HISTORY OF ENGLISH LAW BEFORE THE TIME OF EDWARD I, at 575-81 (1895); 4 WILLIAM BLACKSTONE, COMMENTARIES *290-91 (describing hue and cry as still in operation); Statute of Winchester, 13 Edward I, chs. 4-6 (1285).

[249] ELIZABETH C. BARTELS, VOLUNTEER POLICE IN THE UNITED STATES 2 (2014).

[250] MICHAEL DALTON, OFFICIUM VICECOMITUM: THE OFFICE AND AUTHORITIE OF SHERIF 6, 40 (Lawbook Exchange 2009) (1923) (sheriff's oath includes supervising the watch and ward, by reference to his oath specifically to uphold the Statute of Winchester); WILLIAM ALFRED MORRIS, THE MEDIEVAL ENGLISH SHERIFF 150, 228-29, 278 (1927); WILLIAM LAMBARDE, EIRENARCHA 185, 341 (London, Newbery & Bynneman 1581); FERDINANDO PULTON, DE PACE REGIS & REGNI 153a-153b (Lawbook Exchange 2007) (1609).

[251] David B. Kopel, The Posse Comitatus and the Office of Sheriff: Armed Citizens Summoned to the Aid of Law Enforcement, 104 J. CRIM. L. & CRIMINOLOGY 761, 763 (2015).

[252] See *id*. at 796.

[253] CYRUS HARRELD KARRAKER, THE SEVENTEENTH-CENTURY SHERIFF: A COMPARATIVE STUDY OF THE SHERIFF IN ENGLAND AND IN THE CHESAPEAKE COLONIES, 1607−1689, at 176-77 (1930) (reprinting an April 29, 1643, warrant for summoning the posse comitatus, applying to persons above the age of sixteen years and "under the age of three score years and able to travel, with such arms or weapons as they have or can provide"); Mordecai M'Kinney, The United States CONSTITUTIONAL MANUAL 260 (Harrisburg, Penn., Hickock & Cantine 1845) (all men above the

Electronic copy available at: https://ssrn.com/abstract=3205664

Case 4:23-cv-00547-O Document 20-2 Filed 10/06/23 Page 247 of 555 PageID 365

by President Washington, James Wilson stated in 1790 that "No man above fifteen and under seventy years of age, ecclesiastical or temporal, is exempted from this service."[254]

The *posse* was a vital institution not only in colonial days, but throughout the nineteenth century. As the Supreme Court explained in 1855, a sheriff "may command the *posse comitatus* or power of the country; and this summons, every one over the age of fifteen years is bound to obey, under pain of fine and imprisonment."[255]

The duties of hue and cry, watch and ward, and *posse comitatus* were male only. However, as will be detailed below, some colonies also required arms possession by any householder, regardless of sex. In addition, most of the colonies required arms carrying under certain circumstances, such as when traveling out of town, or when going to public assemblies, especially to church.[256] Usually these laws applied without age limits (i.e., to any able-bodied traveler), or to anyone able to bear arms. Sometimes they applied to militiamen, whose minimum age was 16 or 18.[257]

In short, the age at which Americans were expected to use their own arms to help enforce the law (including by defending themselves) usually was age 15 or 16. These requirements encompassed the vast majority of males, and also included some females. The age at which Americans were expected to bring their own arms to serve in a military capacity, in the militia, usually was 16 or 18.

In the following survey of militia laws, the states are listed in the order that they ratified the Second Amendment.[258]

---

age of fifteen years, "not aged or decrepid"); GEORGE WEBB, THE OFFICE AND AUTHORITY OF A JUSTICE OF PEACE 252 (Williamsburg, William Parks 1736) ("all Males Persons therein, whether Freemen, or Servants, above the Age of 15 Years, and able to travel") (citing LAMBARDE, supra note 250, at 309); EDWARD COKE, 2 INSTITUTES OF THE LAWS OF ENGLAND 194 (Lawbook Exchange 2002) (1628) (ch. 17) ("being above 15 and under 70"); HENRY POTTER, THE OFFICE AND DUTY OF A JUSTICE OF THE PEACE 243 (Raleigh, Joseph Gales 1816); JOHN STEPHEN, SUMMARY OF THE CRIMINAL LAW 46 (Philadelphia, J.S. Littell 1840) (ages fifteen and over, with no upper age limit).

254 JAMES WILSON, *Lectures on Law*, *in* 2 COLLECTED WORKS OF JAMES WILSON 1017 (Kermit L. Hall & Mark David Hall eds., 2007) (Ch. VII, "The Subject Continued. Of Sheriffs and Coroners").

255 South v. Maryland *ex rel.* Pottle, 59 U.S. (1 How.) 396, 402 (1856).

256 NICHOLAS J. JOHNSON, DAVID B. KOPEL, GEORGE A. MOCSARY & MICHAEL P. O'SHEA, FIREARMS LAW AND THE SECOND AMENDMENT: REGULATION, RIGHTS, AND POLICY 183-85 (2d ed. 2017).

257 *Id.*

258 The colonial and early state laws are available in the Session Laws Library of Hein Online. Many are also available on Google Books or other public Internet sources, as indicated by the URL in the footnote.

Electronic copy available at: https://ssrn.com/abstract=3205664

Case 4:23-cv-00547-O Document 20-2 Filed 10/06/23 Page 248 of 555 PageID 366

A. New Jersey: "all able-bodied Men, not being Slaves … between the Ages of sixteen and fifty Years"

The English took control of what became New Jersey in 1664, ousting the Dutch from their "New Netherland" colony.[259] New Jersey's first militia act was passed in 1704. It required "[t]hat every Captain within this Province … make a true and perfect List of all the Men … between the Age of Sixteen and Fifty years … Every one of which so listed shall be sufficiently armed with one good sufficient Musquet or Fuzee well fixed, a Sword or Bagonet, a Cartouch-box or Powder-horn, a pound of Powder, and twelve sizeable Bullets."[260] The next militia act, passed roughly a decade later, kept the same requirements for the arms and ages of militiamen.[261]

A 1722 statute retained the sixteen to fifty ages, while revising the ammunition requirements.[262] After the 1722 act expired, it was replaced by a 1730 law with the same ages and arms,[263] which was continued in 1739.[264]

On May 8, 1746, a renewed militia act was necessary because America had been drawn into Great Britain's most recent war with France and Spain. Like earlier statutes, the 1746 act set the militia age "between the Age of Sixteen and Fifty Years" and required that each militiaman "be sufficiently armed with one good sufficient Musket or Fuzee well fixed, a Sword or Bayonet, a Cartouch-Box or Powder-Horn," plus bullets and powder.[265] This act was continued in 1749,[266] 1753,[267] 1766,[268] 1770,[269] and 1771.[270]

Also in 1746, New Jersey passed an act to raise 500 troops for a state army expedition against Canada. [271] This act made it unlawful for an officer

---

259 *A Short History of New Jersey*, NJ.GOV, https://www.nj.gov/nj/about/history/short_history.html (last visited Jan. 13, 2019).

260 2 BERNARD BUSH, *LAWS OF THE ROYAL COLONY OF NEW JERSEY* 49 (1980). The Act provided an exception for "Ministers, Physitians, School-Masters, Civil Officers of the Government, the Representatives of the General assembly, and Slaves." This act was continued in 1711. *Id.* at 96 (Sixth Assembly, First Session 6 Dec. 1710 – 10 Feb. 1710/11).

261 *Id.* at 133. This Act repeated the exemptions of the 1709 Act and added an exception for "Millers." *Id.*

262 *Id.* at 289 ("three Charges of Powder and three sizeable Bullets").
The exceptions in the 1722 Act were for "the Gentlemen of his Majestys Council and the Representatives of General Assembly, Ministers of the Gospel, the Civil Officers of the Government, and all Field Officers and Captains that here-to-fore bore Commission in the Militia of this Province, and all that now do or shall hereafter bear such Commission, Physitians, School-Masters, Millers, and Slaves." *Id.*

263 *Id.* at 410 (limited to seven years).

264 1738/9 N.J. Laws ch. 165 (limited to seven years).

265 3 BERNARD BUSH, *LAWS OF THE ROYAL COLONY OF NEW JERSEY* 5 (1980).

266 1749 N.J. Laws ch. 232.

267 1753 N.J. Laws ch. 257.

268 1766 N.J. Laws ch. 422.

269 1770 N.J. Laws ch. 520.

270 1771 N.J. Laws ch. 539.

271 BUSH, *supra* note 265, at 15.

Electronic copy available at: https://ssrn.com/abstract=3203664

"to inlist any young Men under the Age of Twenty One Years, or any Slaves who are so for Term of Life, bought Servants, or Apprentices, without the Express Leave in Writing of their Parents or Guardians, Masters or Mistresses."[272] Similarly, during the French & Indian War, acts to raise small groups of state army soldiers (one in 1755[273] and two in 1756[274]) set the minimum age at twenty-one for enlistment for out-of-colony service without consent of a parent, guardian, or master.

Permission from parents or masters was necessary for enlistment in the state army, but not the in-state militia. A 1757 supplement to the militia act kept the age for militia "between the Age of Sixteen and Fifty Years."[275]

Two decades later, in the midst of the Revolutionary War, New Jersey passed a 1777 militia act, "to defeat the Designs of the *British* Court, and to preserve and defend the Freedom and Independence of the United States of *America*."[276] "[A]ll able-bodied Men, not being Slaves … between the Ages of sixteen and fifty Years … and [] capable of bearing Arms" constituted the militia.[277] This act was set to automatically expire after one year.[278] The following year a new act was put in place. Again, the militia was "all effective Men between the Ages of sixteen and fifty Years."[279]

Near the end of the war, in 1781, New Jersey passed its militia law that would be in place when it ratified the Second Amendment on November 20, 1789:[280]

> And Be It Enacted, That the Captain or Commanding Officer of each Company shall keep a true and perfect List or Roll of all effective Men

[272] *Id*.
[273] *Id*. at 307.
[274] *Id*. at 385, 425.
[275] *Id*. at 502. The Act excepted "the Gentlemen of his Majesty's Council, the Representatives of the General Assembly, Protestant Ministers of the Gospel of every Denomination and Persuasion, Magistrates, Sheriffs, Coroners, Constables, and all Field Officers, and Captains, who heretofore have, now do, or hereafter shall bear such Commissions; Ferry Men, one Miller to each Grist Mill, bought Servants, and Slaves."
[276] 1776 N.J. *Laws* 26.
[277] *Id.*
[278] *Id*.
[279] 1778 N.J. Laws 44-45. This Act excluded "the Delegates representing this State in the Congress of the United States, the Members of the Legislative-Council and General Assembly, the Judges and Justices of the Supreme and Inferior Courts, the Judge of the Court of Admiralty, the Attorney-General, the Secretary, the Treasurer, the Clerks of the Council and General Assembly, the Clerks of the Courts of Record, the Governor's private Secretary, Ministers of the Gospel of every Denomination, the Presidents, Professors and Tutors of Colleges, Sheriffs and Coroners, one Constable for each Township, to be selected by the Court of Quarter-Sessions of the County, two Ferrymen for each publick Ferry on the Delaware, below the Falls at Trenton, and one for every other publick Ferry in this State, and Slaves."
[280] 1 JOURNAL OF THE HOUSE OF REPRESENTATIVES OF THE UNITED STATES, BEING THE FIRST SESSION OF THE FIRST CONGRESS-3RD SESSION OF THE 13TH CONGRESS, MARCH 4, 1789–SEPT. 13, 1814, at 313-14 (1826).

Electronic copy available at: https://ssrn.com/abstract=3205664

Case 4:23-cv-00547-O Document 20-2 Filed 10/06/23 Page 250 of 555 PageID 368

> between the Ages of sixteen and fifty Years, residing within the District of such Company . . . And Be It Enacted, That every Person enrolled as aforesaid shall constantly keep himself furnished with a good Musket, well fitted with a Bayonet, a Worm, a Cartridge-Box, twenty-three Rounds of Cartridges sized to his Musket, a Priming Wire, Brush, six Flints, a Knapsack and Canteen, under the Forfeiture of Seven Shillings and Sixpence for Want of a Musket, and One Shilling for Want of any other of the aforesaid Articles, whenever called out to Training or Service . . . Provided always, That if any Person be furnished as aforesaid with a good Rifle-Gun, the Apparatus necessary for the same, and a Tomahawk, it shall be accepted in Lieu of the Musket and the Bayonet and other Articles belonging thereto.[281]

The act further required that "each Person enrolled…also keep at his Place of Abode one Pound of good merchantable Gunpowder and three Pounds of Ball sized to his Musket or Rifle…"[282] At least three times a year, a Sergeant would inspect the home of every man between sixteen and fifty to ensure he had the proper "Arms, Accoutrements, and Ammunition."[283]

In 1792, Congress enacted the UMA, organizing the militia of the United States, pursuant to enumerated powers under Article I, section 8, clause 16.[284] It provided a detailed list of equipment and defined the federal militia as free white males aged 18 to 45.[285] (The Act is discussed in Part IV, *infra*.) Over the next several years, most states revised their militia statutes to bring their state militias into conformity with the federal militia. Since individuals were subject to a militia summons from their state or the federal government, the state governments were making it easier for state militiamen to simultaneously comply with federal requirements.

New Jersey was one of the first states to take account of the federal law, enacting a new militia law in 1792.[286] The minimum age was raised to 18, and maximum age lowered to 45.[287] Copying the federal law, New Jersey required that "every non-commissioned Officer and Private of the Infantry (including Grenadiers, Light Infantry and Artillery) until supplied with Ordnance and Field Artillery, shall have a good Musket or Firelock, a sufficient Bayonet and Belt, two spare Flints and a Knapsack, a Pouch with a Box not less than twenty-four Cartridges suited to the Bore of his Musket or Firelock, each Cartridge containing a proper Quantity of Powder and Ball; or with a good Rifle, Knapsack, Pouch and Powder-Horn, twenty Balls suited

---

281 1780 N.J. Laws 42-43.
282 *Id.*
283 1780 N.J. Laws 43.
284 Uniform Militia Act, 1 Stat. 271 (1792).
285 *Id.*
286 1792 N.J. Laws 850.
287 *Id.* at 853.

Electronic copy available at: https://ssrn.com/abstract=3203664

to the Bore of his Rifle, and a Quarter of a Pound of Powder; and shall appear so armed, accoutred and provided, when called out to exercise or into Service."[288]

As for commissioned officers, they had to be "armed with a Sword or Hanger and Espontoon."[289] And for "those of Artillery . . . with a Sword or Hanger, a fuzee, bayonet and belt, and a Cartridge-Box containing twelve Cartridges."[290] Troops of Horse had to provide themselves with "a Sword and Pair of Pistols."[291] Light-Horsemen and Dragoons had to provide themselves with "a Pair of Pistols, a Sabre and Cartouch-Box containing twelve Cartridges for Pistols."[292]

A 1797 supplement required the assessor of each town to compare the list of 18-to-45-year-olds in the community to the list of persons enrolled for military duty, and to ensure that everyone 18 and older who was not exempted was keeping the proper arms and fulfilling his militia duties.[293]

A 1799 revision eliminated non-whites from the militia.[294] Persons who were granted militia exemptions (e.g., physicians, clergy) had to pay a three-dollar annual fee.[295] In case the militia were "called into actual service," exempted persons too would be liable to serve.[296]

As with all militia acts, there was financial punishment for people who neglected their duties to acquire requisite arms, to meet for training, and to serve.[297] For militiamen who were "minors, living with their parents, and others having the proper care of charge of them, and those of apprentices," the fines were to "be paid by their respective parents, guardians, masters or mistresses, or levied of their respective goods and chattels."[298]

Military forces of the period used music for morale and for signals during the heat of combat. New Jersey provided rules for voluntary enlistment of military musicians: "any youth of the age of twelve years, and not exceeding the age of eighteen years, shall, with the consent of approbation of his parents, attach himself to any company of militia for the purpose of learning to beat the drum, play on the fife or blow the trumpet."[299]

---

288 *Id.* at 852.
289 *Id.*
290 *Id.*
291 *Id.*
292 *Id.* at 852–53.
293 1797 N.J. Laws 219-20.
294 1799 N.J. Laws 609.
295 WILLIAM PATERSON, LAWS OF THE STATE OF NEW JERSEY 441 (1800).
296 *Id.*
297 *Id.* at 440.
298 *Id.*
299 *Id.* at 448.

Electronic copy available at: https://ssrn.com/abstract=3205664

Case 4:23-cv-00547-O Document 20-2 Filed 10/06/23 Page 252 of 555 PageID 370

B. Maryland: "his her or their house"

Maryland's arms mandate extended to every head of a house, regardless of sex or age. A 1638/9 act required

> that every house keeper or housekeepers within this Province shall have ready continually upon all occasions within his her or their house for him or themselves and for every person within his her or their house able to bear armes one Serviceable fixed gunne of bastard muskett boare one pair of bandeleers or shott bagg one pound of good powder foure pound of pistol or muskett shott and Sufficient quantity of match for match locks and of flints for firelocks and before Christmas next shall also find a Sword and Belt for every such person as aforesaid.[300]

Further, "every householder of every hundred haveing in his family three men or more able to beare armes shall Send one man completely armed for every such three men and two men for every five and so proportionately."[301] The act contemplated many persons within a family, including minors, bearing arms.[302]

A 1654 act mandated "that all persons from 16 yeares of age to Sixty shall be provided with Serviceable Armes & Sufficient Amunition of Powder and Shott ready upon all occasions."[303]

In 1658, the Council of Maryland adopted "Instructions directed by the Governor and Councell to the severall Captaines of the respective Commissions."[304] Captains had to make "a perfect list" of "all persons able to beare Armes within theyr respective divisions that is of all men betweene 16 and 60 yeares of Age." From that list, the "fittest" people were to be

---

300 1 PROCEEDINGS AND ACTS OF THE GENERAL ASSEMBLY OF MARYLAND JANUARY 1637/8—SEPTEMBER 1664, at 77 (William Hand Browne ed, 1883). For dates in this article, readers should be aware that in the English-speaking countries, the calendar changed from Old Style (Julian) to New Style (Gregorian) in 1752. Under the Old Style, the New Year began on March 25 (the traditional date of the Annunciation to the Virgin Mary), not January 1. So, the people of Maryland considered the above date to be 1638, not 1639. We have generally rendered dates in New Style. Scholars using Western European date citations between 1582 (when France adopted the New Style calendar) and 1752 should be aware that the days between January 1 and March 24 may be assigned to a different year, depending on the country. The shift can also move the calendar date as far forward as 11 days; for example, July 1 Old Style can become July 12 New Style. The shift occurs because New Style remedied the incorrect number of leap year days in Old Style. New Style omits leap years every 100 years, except for every 400th year. So, under New Style, there was no leap year day in 1800 or 1900, but there was one in 2000.

301 *Id.* at 77-78.

302 *Id.*

303 *Id.* at 347.

304 3 PROCEEDINGS OF THE COUNCIL OF MARYLAND, 1636-1667, at 345 (reprint 1965), ARCHIVES MD. ONLINE, http://aomol.msa.maryland.gov/000001/000003/html/am3--345.html (last visited Jan. 13, 2019).

Electronic copy available at: https://ssrn.com/abstract=3203664

selected to form the "constant Trayned Band."[305] In addition, every householder had to provide himself and "every man able to beare Armes in his house" with sufficient ammunition and a well-fixed gun.[306]

Twenty years later, a new militia act kept the ages "between sixteen and sixty yeares of age."[307] Like its predecessors, it required that each "appeare and bring with him one good serviceable fixed Gunn and six shoots of Powder."[308] Troopers were required to bring their own horses, and "to find themselves with sword Carbine Pistolls Holsters & Amunition."[309]

The 1681 militia law retained the age and arms requirements,[310] and was continued in 1682.[311] Ages and arms remained the same in successor acts of 1692,[312] 1695,[313] 1698,[314] 1699,[315] 1704,[316] 1708,[317] 1709,[318] 1711,[319]

---

305 *Id.* (basing fitness on "theyr Ability of Body, Estate, & Courage.")

306 *Id.*

307 7 PROCEEDINGS AND ACTS OF THE GENERAL ASSEMBLY, OCTOBER 1678-NOVEMBER 1683, at 53 (1889), ARCHIVES MD. ONLINE, http://aomol.msa.maryland.gov/000001/000007/html/am7--53.html (last visited Jan. 13, 2019).

308 *Id.* at 54.

309 *Id.* at 55.

310 *Id.* at 188.

311 *Id.* at 438.

312 13 PROCEEDINGS AND ACTS OF THE GENERAL ASSEMBLY, APRIL 1684-JUNE 1692, at 554 (1894), ARCHIVES MD. ONLINE, http://aomol.msa.maryland.gov/000001/000013/html/am13--554.html (last visited Jan. 13, 2019).

313 Also, in 1695, Maryland took an additional step to ensure that militiamen maintained the arms they were required to provide themselves, by marking them so they could be identified and so that potential buyers knew not to purchase those arms. 38 ACTS OF THE GENERAL ASSEMBLY HITHERTO UNPUBLISHED 1694-1698, 1711-1729, at 55 (1918), ARCHIVES MD. ONLINE, http://aomol.msa.maryland.gov/000001/000038/html/am38--55.html (last visited Jan. 13, 2019).

314 1698 Md. Acts 99, https://quod.lib.umich.edu/e/evans/N29557.0001.001/1:9.44?rgn=div2;view=fulltext.

315 22 PROCEEDINGS AND ACTS OF THE GENERAL ASSEMBLY, MARCH 1697/8-JULY 1699, at 562-63 (1883), ARCHIVES MD. ONLINE, http://aomol.msa.maryland.gov/000001/000022/html/am22--562.html (last visited Jan. 13, 2019).

316 26 PROCEEDINGS AND ACTS OF THE GENERAL ASSEMBLY, SEPTEMBER,1704-APRIL, 1706, at 269-70 (1906), ARCHIVES MD. ONLINE, http://aomol.msa.maryland.gov/000001/000026/html/am26--269.html (last visited Jan. 13, 2019).

317 27 PROCEEDINGS AND ACTS OF THE GENERAL ASSEMBLY, MARCH,1707-NOVEMBER, 1710, at 370 (1907), ARCHIVES MD. ONLINE, http://aomol.msa.maryland.gov/000001/000027/html/am27--370.html (last visited Jan. 13, 2019).

318 *Id.* at 483.

319 38 ARCHIVES MD. ONLINE, *supra* note 313, at 128.

Electronic copy available at: https://ssrn.com/abstract=3205664

Case 4:23-cv-00547-O Document 20-2 Filed 10/06/23 Page 254 of 555 PageID 372

1714,[320] 1715,[321] 1719,[322] 1722,[323] and 1733.[324]

In 1756, Maryland passed another militia act, and kept the militia age at 16 to 60.[325] This act changed the ammunition requirement to "nine Charges of Gun-powder and nine Sizeable Bulletts." Troopers needed to provide themselves with "a pair of good Pistols a good Sword or Hanger half a pound of Gun-powder and twelve Sizeable Bulletts and a Carbine --well fixed with a good Belt Swivel and Buckett."[326]

The Conventions of the Province of Maryland that took place in Annapolis in 1775 and 1776 produced two militia laws. Both Conventions determined "[t]hat every able bodied effective freeman within this province, between sixteen and fifty years of age . . . enroll himself in some company of militia."[327] The 1777 convention retained the new maximum of 50 years and excluded non-whites.[328] A 1778 militia act did not change the ages or arms requirements.[329]

Then in 1781, the legislature passed "An Act to raise two battalions of militia for reinforcing the continental army, and to complete the number of select militia." The minimum age remained sixteen.[330] The new law ordered local governments to draft one or two men to serve the Continental Army. It allowed lieutenants to play favorites: "to ease the good people, from the draught, every free male idle person, above 16 years of age, who is able bodied, and hath no visible means of an honest livelihood, may be adjudged

---

320 29 Proceedings and Acts of the General Assembly, Oct. 25, 1711-Oct. 9, 1714, at 437 (1909).

321 30 Proceedings and Acts of the General Assembly, April 26, 1715-August 10, 1716, at 277 (1910), Archives Md. Online, http://aomol.msa.maryland.gov/000001/000030/html/am30--277.html (last visited Jan. 13, 2019).

322 36 Proceedings and Acts of the General Assembly, July 1727-August 1729 with an appendix of statutes previously unpublished enacted 1714-1726, at 534 (1916), Archives Md. Online, http://aomol.msa.maryland.gov/000001/000036/html/am36--534.html (last visited Jan. 13, 2019).

323 34 Proceedings and Acts of the General Assembly, October 1720-1723, at 480 (1914), Archives Md. Online, https://msa.maryland.gov/megafile/msa/speccol/sc2900/sc2908/000001/000034/html/am34--480.html (last visited Jan. 13, 2019).

324 39 Proceedings and Acts of the General Assembly, 1733-1736, at 113 (1919), Archives Md. Online, http://aomol.msa.maryland.gov/000001/000039/html/am39--113.html (last visited Jan. 13, 2019).

325 52 Proceedings and Acts of the General Assembly, 1755-1756, at 450 (1935), Archives Md. Online, https://msa.maryland.gov/megafile/msa/speccol/sc2900/sc2908/000001/000052/html/am52--450.html (last visited Jan. 13, 2019).

326 *Id.* at 458.

327 78 Proceedings of the Conventions of the Province of Maryland, 1774-1776, at 20 (1836), Archives Md. Online, http://aomol.msa.maryland.gov/000001/000078/html/am78--20.html (last visited Jan. 13, 2019); *id.* at 74.

328 An Act to Regulate Militia, 1777 Md. Laws, Ch. XVII, Sec. II (expired in 1785), http://aomol.msa.maryland.gov/megafile/msa/speccol/sc4800/sc4872/003180/html/m3180-0361.html .

329 203 HANSON'S LAWS OF MARYLAND 1763-1784, at 192-93 (1787), ARCHIVES MD. ONLINE, http://aomol.msa.maryland.gov/000001/000203/html/am203--192.html (last visited Jan. 13, 2019).

330 MARYLAND HISTORICAL SOCIETY, 18 ARCHIVES OF MARYLAND: MUSTER ROLLS AND OTHER RECORDS OF SERVICE OF MARYLAND TROOPS IN THE AMERICAN REVOLUTION 1775-1783 at 374 (1900).

Electronic copy available at: https://ssrn.com/abstract=3205664

a vagrant by the lieutenant, and by such adjudication he is to be considered as an enlisted soldier."[331]

When Maryland ratified the Second Amendment on December 19, 1789,[332] every militia it had ever assembled consisted of men sixteen and older, who provided their own firearms.

The first time Maryland increased its militia age was in 1793, when it modified its laws to align with the federal Uniform Militia Act of 1792. This new militia statute raised the minimum age to eighteen and lowered the maximum age to forty-five.[333]

A 1793 supplement included a provision for a "one complete company of infantry annexed to each regiment within this state, to be furnished with arms and accoutrements at the expense of the state … composed of men between the ages of twenty-one and thirty years."[334] This provision for select companies of infantry did not change the requirement for all other able bodied males between 18 and 45 to enroll in the general militia, and to provide their own personal arms.[335] As the Act explained, "the privates and non-commissioned officers of the said company, as they shall respectively arrive at the age of thirty years, shall be dismissed from the company … and

---

[331] 203 HANSON'S LAWS OF MARYLAND 1763-1784, at 279 (1787), ARCHIVES MD. ONLINE, http://aomol.msa.maryland.gov/000001/000203/html/am203--279.html (last visited Jan. 13, 2019).

[332] 1 JOURNAL OF THE HOUSE OF REPRESENTATIVES OF THE UNITED STATES, *supra* note 280, at 307-09.

[333] WILLIAM KILTY, THE LAWS OF MARYLAND: 1785-1799, ch. LIII, at 455 (1800), https://play.google.com/books/reader?id=SZxaAAAAYAAJ&hl=en&pg=GBS.PT447. There were exemptions for "quakers, menonists and tunkers, and persons conscientiously scrupulous of bearing arms, and the apprentices of their trade." Excusal on grounds of disability required a certificate from "the surgeon of the regiment to which he shall belong, or some reputable physician in his neighbourhood." *Id.* at 460. Quakers, Mennonites, and Dunkers are pacifist Protestant denominations. The Dunkers are also known as the Church of the Brethren and have Baptist roots.

[334] A Supplement to the Act, Entitled, An Act to Regulate and Discipline the Militia of this State, 1798 Md. Laws, Ch. C, Section XXIII, ARCHIVES MD. ONLINE, http://aomol.msa.maryland.gov/megafile/msa/speccol/sc4800/sc4872/003181/html/m3181-1319.html (last visited Jan. 13, 2019). These state-provided arms were to be used only for militia duty. If used for "hunting, gunning or fowling" or not kept "clean and in neat order," the firearm would be forfeited to the state and the militiaman would be forced to obtain a private firearm, which by comparison, was perfectly legal and expected to be used for non-militia purposes. *Id.* at Ch. C, Section XXX.

[335] Since the supplemental act did not address the arms requirement established in the original act passed earlier that year, the following provision still applied:

> That every citizen so enrolled and notified, shall, within six months thereafter, provide-himself with a good musket or firelock, a sufficient bayonet and belt, two spare flints, and a knapsack; a pouch with a box therein, to contain not less than twenty-four cartridges suited to the bore of his musket or firelock, each cartridge to contain a proper quantity of powder and, ball; or with a good rifle, knapsack, shot-pouch and powder-horn, twenty balls suited to the bore of his rifle, and a quarter of a pound of powder, and shall appear so armed, accoutred and provided, when called out to exercise or into service.

KILTY, *supra* note 333, ch. LIII, at 455.

Electronic copy available at: https://ssrn.com/abstract=3205664

shall be subject to militia duty in the same manner as other citizens above the age of thirty years."[336]

In 1799, Maryland's final militia act of the eighteenth century copied federal law by calling for "all able bodied white male citizens between 18 and 45 years of age."[337]

C. North Carolina: Land grants for properly armed persons "above the age of fourteen years"

In 1663, eight noblemen were granted the Carolina territory—which included what is now North Carolina and South Carolina—as a reward for their support of King Charles II as he was "restored" to the throne. The Charter of Carolina gave these men the authority to "to levy, muster and train all sorts of men, of what condition or wheresoever born … to make war and pursue the enemies."[338]

Pursuant to "Concessions and Agreements" in 1664, "All inhabitants and freemen of Carolina above seventeen years of age and under sixty shall be bound to bear arms and serve as soldiers whenever the grand council shall find it necessary."[339] To encourage settlement and to ensure that the settlers would be able to protect themselves, land grants were given to every properly armed freeman, every freewoman with an armed servant, plus additional land for each armed person produced who was "above the age of fourteen years" and had "a good firelock or matchlock bore, twelve bullets to the pound, ten pounds of powder, and twenty pounds of bullets."[340] The Fundamental Constitutions of Carolina in 1669 repeated the 1664 Concessions and Agreements rules for people 17-60.[341]

A 1712 letter from North Carolina's acting Governor Thomas Pollock to Lord John Carteret recalled that "at the last assembly with much struggling we obtained a law that every person between 16 and 60 years of age able to carry arms that would not go out to the war against the Indians, should forfeit and pay £5."[342]

---

336 *Id.* at Ch. C, Section XXX.
337 1 THOMAS HERTY, A DIGEST OF THE LAWS OF MD. 369 (1799).
338 CHARTER OF CAROLINA (Mar. 24, 1663), http://avalon.law.yale.edu/17th_century/nc01.asp.
339 AMERICA'S FOUNDING CHARTERS: PRIMARY DOCUMENTS OF COLONIAL AND REVOLUTIONARY ERA GOVERNANCE 232 (Jon L. Wakelyn ed. 2006) (Concessions and Agreements, Jan. 11, 1664) (available on Google Books).
340 *Id.* at 210-11.
341 1 THE STATE RECORDS OF NORTH CAROLINA 205 (1886).
342 *Id.* at 877 (letter of Sept. 20, 1712). The war was North Carolina and its Indian allies against the Tuscarora Indians and their Indian allies. *See* DAVID LA VERE, THE TUSCARORA WAR: INDIANS, SETTLERS, AND THE FIGHT FOR THE CAROLINA COLONIES (2016). The Cartaret family were among the proprietors of North Carolina. STEWART E. DUNAWAY, LORD JOHN CARTERET, EARL GRANVILLE: FAMILY HISTORY AND THE GRANVILLE GRANTS IN NORTH CAROLINA 56 (2013).

Electronic copy available at: https://ssrn.com/abstract=3205664

The minimum militia age of sixteen was maintained in a 1715 act, declaring that "the Militia of this Governmt. shall consist of all the Freemen within the same between the years of Sixteen years & Sixty."[343] This included free blacks. Each militiaman had to provide himself with "a good Gun well-fixed Sword & at least Six Charges of Powder & Ball."[344]

The enrollment of all freemen of all colors aged 16 to 60 was retained in a 1740 act.[345] These freemen had to appear with "a good Gun well fixed and a Sword or Cutlass and at least twelve Charges of powder and Ball or Swan Shot"[346] (Swan shot is large shotgun pellets.)

The next act in 1746 kept the same ages, but included servants in addition to freemen.[347] It also slightly modified the arms requirement, mandating that each militiaman appear with "a Gun, fit for service, a Cartouch Box, and a Sword, Cutlass, or Hanger [a type of sword], and at least Twelve Charges of Powder and Bail, or Swan Shot, and Six Spare Flints"[348] This act was extended for another five years in 1749,[349] and another three years in 1754.[350] The 1756 act slightly modified the necessary arms and equipment, specifically requiring tools for gun cleaning.[351] When this act was amended and continued in 1759, the arms and ages were unchanged.[352]

The 1760 law introduced different arms mandates for mounted militiamen, including a pair of handguns plus a lightweight long gun. Every trooper (horseman) needed "Holsters, Housing, Breast-Plate and Crupper, a Case of good Pistols, a good Broad Sword, Twelve Charges of Powder, Twelve sizeable Bullets, a Pair of Shoe-Boots, with suitable Spurs, and a Carbine well fixed, with a good Belt, Swivel and Bucket."[353]

---

343 1715 N.C. Sess. Laws 29.

344 *Id.*

345 *An Act for the better Regulating the Militia of this Government*, N.C. OFF. ARCHIVES & HIST., http://www.ncpublications.com/Colonial/editions/Acts/militia.htm (last updated Dec. 31, 2000).

346 *Id.*

347 An Act for the better Regulating the Militia of this Government, 1746 N.C. Sess. Laws 244, http://docsouth.unc.edu/csr/index.php/document/csr23-0016.

348 *Id.*

349 An Act for Altering, Explaining, and Continuing an Act, Intituled, an Act for the better Regulating the Militia in this Government, 1749 N.C. Sess. Laws 330, http://docsouth.unc.edu/csr/index.php/document/csr23-0022.

350 1754 N.C. Sess. Laws 266, http://docsouth.unc.edu/csr/index.php/document/csr25-0031.

351 An Act for the better Regulation of the Militia, and for other Purposes, 1756 N.C. Sess. Laws 334, http://docsouth.unc.edu/csr/index.php/document/csr25-0034 ("a well fixed Gun, and a Cartridge Box, and a Sword, Cutlass or Hanger, and have at least nine Charges of Powder and Ball, or Swan Shot, and three spare Flints, and a Worm and Picker").

352 An Act to Amend and Continue an Act, Intituled, an Act for the better Regulation of the Militia, and for other Purposes, 1759 N.C. Sess. Laws 393, http://docsouth.unc.edu/csr/index.php/document/csr25-0040.

353 An Act for Appointing a Militia, 1760 N.C. Sess. Laws 521, http://docsouth.unc.edu/csr/index.php/document/csr23-0040. This act was continued later that same year, and again in 1762. An Act to amend and continue an Act intitled An Act for appointing a Militia, 1760 N.C.

Electronic copy available at: https://ssrn.com/abstract=3205664

Case 4:23-cv-00547-O Document 20-2 Filed 10/06/23 Page 258 of 555 PageID 376

The militia act of 1764 had similar age and arms requirements, except that swan shot was now mandatory for infantry.[354] The act was continued in 1766.[355] Then in 1768, "sizeable Bullets" were restored as an acceptable alternative to swan shot.[356]

The 1770 act eliminated a conscientious objector exemption and ordered "all Male Persons of the people called Quakers, between the age of Sixteen and Sixty" to enlist in the militia.[357] Additionally, the act provided that "the Father or where there is no Father living, the Mother of each and every Person under the age of Twenty One Years, shall be liable to the Payment of the Fines becoming due from their respective sons so under age."[358]

The 1774 militia act retained the age and arm requirements.[359] Perhaps reflecting wartime arms shortages, the 1777 act was less specific about particular firearms, requiring only that "each Militia soldier shall be furnished with a good Gun, shot bag and powder horn, a Cutlass or Tomahawk."[360] The maximum age was reduced: "the Militia of every County shall consist of all the effective men from sixteen to fifty years of age."[361]

With the American Revolution raging, the 1779 act kept the maximum age of 50 and the minimum of 16.[362] Religious exemptions were restored for "Quakers, Menonists, Dunkards, and Moravians."[363] "[E]ach Militia Soldier [had to] be furnished with a Good Gun, Shot bag a Cartouch Box or powder Horn, a Cutlass or Tomahawk."[364]

Sess. Laws 535, http://docsouth.unc.edu/csr/index.php/document/csr23-0041; 1762 N.C. Sess. Laws 585, http://docsouth.unc.edu/csr/index.php/document/csr23-0043.

354 An Act for appointing a Militia, 1764 N.C. Sess. Laws 596, http://docsouth.unc.edu/csr/index.php/document/csr23-0044.

355 An Act to amend & Continue An Act, Intitled An Act for Appointing a Militia, 1766 N.C. Sess. Laws 496, http://docsouth.unc.edu/csr/index.php/document/csr25-0049.

356 An Act for establishing a Militia in this Province, 1768 N.C. Sess. Laws 761, http://docsouth.unc.edu/csr/index.php/document/csr23-0049.

357 An Act for an Addition to, and Amendment of an Act, entitled, An Act for Appointing a Militia, 1770 N.C. Sess. Laws 787, http://docsouth.unc.edu/csr/index.php/document/csr23-0051.

358 *Id.* at 788. Similarly, "the master, and where there is no master, the mistress of all such Apprentices and Servants shall be liable to the Payment of Fines becoming Due from their respective Apprentices and Servants." *Id.*

359 An Act to Establish a Militia for the Security and Defence of this Province, 1774 N.C. Sess. Laws. 940-41, http://docsouth.unc.edu/csr/index.php/document/csr23-0054.

360 An Act to Establish a Militia in this State, 1777 N.C. Sess. Laws 1, http://docsouth.unc.edu/csr/index.php/document/csr24-0001.

361 *Id.*

362 An Act to Regulate and Establish a Militia in this State, 1779 N.C. Sess. Laws 190, https://docsouth.unc.edu/csr/index.php/document/csr24-0005.

363 *Id.* "Menonists" encompasses several Protestant sects who trace their origin to the Dutch pacifist priest Menno Simons. "Dunkards" derived their name from their practice of full-immersion baptism. Moravians descend from the early fifteenth century Czech Protestant reformer Jan Hus. Mainly from central Europe, they became pacifist after failed uprisings in the seventeenth century.

364 *Id.* at 191.

Electronic copy available at: https://ssrn.com/abstract=3205664

The 1781 act was more flexible on the requisite arms. Infantry needed "a good gun and shot bag, and powder horn or cartouch box, and havre sack."[365] Cavalry troopers needed "a gun, sword, and cartouch box."[366]

The following year, "An Act for Raising troops to compleat the Continental Battalions of this State, and other purposes" was passed. This was a draft for the Continental Army. Subject to the draft were "all the inhabitants . . . between the ages of sixteen and fifty."[367] To prevent the widespread community practice of filling draft ranks with the most vulnerable and least motivated, the act specified that "no British or Hessian deserter who hath not been a resident of this State twelve months, or orphan or apprentice under eighteen years of age, Indian, sailor or negro slave, shall be received as a substitute for any class volunteer or draft whatever."[368] So a 19-year-old who was drafted could hire an older man to serve as a substitute, but could not hire a 17-year-old orphan.

After the war was over, the 1785 act raised the minimum militia age to 18. Militiamen included "all freemen and indented servants" (but not servants for life, a/k/a slaves). Militiamen had to arm themselves with "a well fixed gun and cartouch-box, with nine charges of powder made into cartridges and sizeable bullets or swan-shot, and one spare flint, worm and picker."[369]

North Carolina's 1787 militia law[370] was in effect when it ratified the Second Amendment on December 22, 1789.[371] The militia law kept the militia as "all freemen and indented servants within this State, from eighteen to fifty years of age."[372] The required arms and equipment were now more specific and varied by role in the militia.[373]

For commissioned officers in the infantry, "side arms" (handguns) "or a spontoon" (a pole arm). For private and non-commissioned officers, a musket or rifle, plus a cartridge box, powder horn, shot pouch "in good condition," "nine charges of powder made into cartridges with sizeable balls

---

365 An Act to regulate and establish a Militia in this State, 1781 N.C. Sess. Laws 359, http://docsouth.unc.edu/csr/index.php/document/csr24-0010.

366 *Id.* at 366.

367 An Act for Raising troops to compleat the Continental Battalions of this State, and other purposes, 1782 N.C. Sess. Laws 413, http://docsouth.unc.edu/csr/index.php/document/csr24-0012.

368 *Id.* at 414.

369 An Act for Establishing a Militia in This State, 1785 N.C. Sess. Laws 710, http://docsouth.unc.edu/csr/index.php/document/csr24-0016.

370 An Act for Establishing a Militia in this State, 1787 N.C. Sess. Laws 813, http://docsouth.unc.edu/csr/index.php/document/csr24-0017.

371 1 JOURNAL OF THE HOUSE OF REPRESENTATIVES OF THE UNITED STATES, *supra* note 280, at 311–12.

372 An Act for Establishing a Militia in this State, 1787 N.C. Sess. Laws 813, http://docsouth.unc.edu/csr/index.php/document/csr24-0017.

373 *Id.* at 814.

Electronic copy available at: https://ssrn.com/abstract=3205664

Case 4:23-cv-00547-O Document 20-2 Filed 10/06/23 Page 260 of 555 PageID 378

or swan-shot," a spare flint, and one worm and picker.[374] As for artillerymen, they "shall be armed and accoutred with small arms in the same manner of the infantry, except the non-commissioned officers, who shall have swords instead of fire-arms."[375]

Horsemen, whether officers or privates, needed "a strong, serviceable horse, at least fourteen hands high, with a good saddle, bridle, holsters, one pistol, horseman's sword and cap, a pair of shoe boots and spurs," plus "a proper cartouch-box and cartridges all in good order."[376]

North Carolina's next militia bill, passed on December 29, 1792, conformed to the federal Uniform Militia Act of 1792. The minimum age remained 18, while the maximum dropped to 45. The mandatory arms paralleled the federal statute. Each infantryman was required to "provide himself with a good musket or firelock, a sufficient bayonet and belt, two spare flints, a knapsack, a pouch with a box therein to contain not less than 24 cartridges suited to the bore of his musket or firelock, each cartridge to contain a proper quantity of powder and ball ; or with a good rifle, knapsack, shot-pouch and powder-horn, 20 balls suited to the bore of his rifle, and a quarter of a pound of powder."[377]

The state's final militia act of the eighteenth century was passed in 1796. It improved consistency with federal law and kept the previous age and arms requirements.[378]

D. South Carolina: "all male persons in this Province, from the age of sixteen to sixty years"

South Carolina was formally separated from North Carolina in 1729 but began making its own laws before that. Its first militia statute was enacted in 1703.[379] It included "all and every the inhabitants from the age of sixteen years to sixty."[380] It required "each person or soldier" to appear "with a good sufficient gun, well fixed, a good cover for their lock, one good cartridge box, with at least twenty cartridges of good powder and ball, and one good belt or girdle, one ball of wax sticking at the end of the cartridge box, to defend the

---

374 *Id.*
375 *Id.*
376 *Id.*
377 1792 N.C. Sess. Laws 33, https://babel.hathitrust.org/cgi/pt?id=nc01.ark:/13960/t8sb53g1g; view=1up;seq=33.
378 1796 N.C. Sess. Laws 57, https://babel.hathitrust.org/cgi/pt?id=nc01.ark:/13960/t6n02562t; view=1up;seq=57.
379 9 THE STATUTES AT LARGE OF SOUTH CAROLINA: CONTAINING THE ACTS RELATING TO ROADS, BRIDGES AND FERRIES, WITH AN APPENDIX, CONTAINING THE MILITIA ACTS PRIOR TO 1794, at 617 (David J. McCord ed., 1841), https://books.google.com/books/about/The_Statutes_at_ Large_of_South_Carolina.html?id=t7Q4AAAAIAAJ.
380 *Id.*

Electronic copy available at: https://ssrn.com/abstract=3203664

arms in rain, one worm, one wier and four good spare flints, also a sword, bayonet or hatchet."[381]

The arms and age requirements were retained in the 1707 militia act.[382] This act was revived and continued in 1721.[383] The 1721 act made only minor changes for arms; militiamen now had to bring at least a quarter pound of powder, and only twelve cartridges instead of twenty.[384] Additionally, troops of horse or dragoons had to provide themselves with "holsters and a pair of pistols, a carbine and sword."[385] The next act, in 1734, was identical to 1721.[386]

South Carolina's 1737/8 militia act is lost.[387] A 1739 supplement did make it clear that militia arms were to be kept at home: "all persons who are liable to bear arms, shall constantly keep in their houses such arms, furniture, ammunition and accoutrements."[388]

A 1747 act affirmed that it was "lawful to . . . call together all male persons in this Province, from the age of sixteen to sixty years." It also made "every person liable to appear and bear arms . . . keep in his house, or at his usual place of residence, and bring with him to such muster, exercise or training, one gun or musket, fit for service, a cover for his lock, one cartridge box," twelve cartridges, horn or flask filled with at least a quarter pound of gun powder, a shot pouch with appropriate bullets, "one girdle or belt, one ball of wax . . . to defend his arms in rain, one worm and picker, four spare flints, a bayonet, sword or hatchet."[389]

The next militia act was passed over four decades later, in 1778.[390] It applied to "all male free inhabitants . . . from the age of sixteen to sixty years."[391] Every militiaman had to "constantly keep in good repair, at his place of abode . . . one good musket and bayonet, or a good substantial smooth bore gun and bayonet, a cross belt and cartouch box" that could hold thirty-six rounds, "twelve rounds of good cartridges," plus "half a pound of spare powder and twenty-four spare rounds of leaden bullets or buck-shot," a cover for the gunlock, wax, worm picker, and "one screw driver or

---

381 *Id.* at 618.
382 *Id.* at 625-26.
383 *Id.* at 631.
384 *Id.* at 632.
385 *Id.* at 639.
386 *Id.* at 641.
387 3 THE STATUTES AT LARGE OF SOUTH CAROLINA 487 (Thomas Cooper, ed., 1838) ("The original not to be found.").
388 9 THE STATUTES AT LARGE OF SOUTH CAROLINA, *supra* note 379, at 643.
389 *Id.* at 645-47. This act was followed in 1760 by an act establishing and regulating the artillery company that was formed out of the Charleston militia. *Id.* at 664.
390 *Id.* at 666.
391 *Id.* at 672.

Electronic copy available at: https://ssrn.com/abstract=3205664

Case 4:23-cv-00547-O Document 20-2 Filed 10/06/23 Page 262 of 555 PageID 380

substantial knife." Instead of the musket plus bayonet, a militiaman could choose "one good rifle-gun and tomahawk or cutlass."[392]

South Carolina's 1782 militia act kept the minimum age at 16 but lowered the maximum age to 50.[393] A temporary act in 1783 left the age and arms requirements unchanged.[394]

The minimum age was raised for the first time in South Carolina's history in the militia act of 1784, which defined the militia when the state ratified the Second Amendment on January 19, 1790.[395] The 1784 act "excused from militia duty, except in times of alarm . . . all persons under the age of eighteen years or above the age of fifty years."[396] Thus, men under 18 or over 50 could still be forced to serve in an emergency.

The necessary arms were revised in 1791. Firearms were "a good musket and bayonet . . . or other sufficient gun."[397] Edged arms were "a good and sufficient small sword, broad sword, cutlass or hatchet."[398] Along with the usual cartouch box, powder horn or flask, shot bag or pouch, spare flint, and ammunition.[399]

Almost exactly one year later, on December 21, 1792, an act[400] was passed that continued the Acts of 1784 and 1791, until the state could "arrange the militia agreeable to the Act of the United States in Congress."[401] The South Carolina militia expressly included free people of every color within the state: "all free negroes and Indians, (nations of Indians in amity with the State excepted,) Moors, mulattoes and mestizoes,[402] between the ages of eighteen and forty-five, shall be obliged to serve in the said militia."[403]

Finally, in 1794, the state organized its militia "in conformity with the act of Congress."[404] The South Carolina militia was "every citizen who shall,

---

392 *Id.* at 672-73.
393 *Id.* at 682.
394 *Id.* at 688.
395 1 JOURNAL OF THE HOUSE OF REPRESENTATIVES OF THE UNITED STATES, *supra* note 280, at 309–11.
396 9 THE STATUTES AT LARGE OF SOUTH CAROLINA, *supra* note 379, at 689–90.
397 *Id.* at 691.
398 *Id.*
399 *Id.*
400 *Id.* at 347-59.
401 *Id.* at 358.
402 Mixed-race descent of whites and Indians. The Indian amity language meant that an Indian who lived among South Carolinians was subject to militia duty. Because Indian tribes were legally separate nations, Indians of friendly tribes who lived with the tribe could not be subject to militia duty.
403 *Id.* at 358.
404 8 THE STATUTES AT LARGE OF SOUTH CAROLINA: CONTAINING THE ACTS RELATING TO CORPORATIONS AND THE MILITIA 485 (David J. McCord ed., 1841), https://books.google.com.fj/books?id=4EgUAAAAYAAJ.

Electronic copy available at: https://ssrn.com/abstract=3203664

from time to time, arrive at the age of eighteen years."[405] It excluded "all persons under the age of eighteen, and above the age of forty-five years."[406] Additionally, "all free white aliens or transient persons, above the age of eighteen and under the age of forty-five years, who have resided or hereafter shall or may reside in this state for the term of six months [were] subject and liable to do and perform all patrol and militia duty which shall or may be required by the commanding officer" of the district."[407] The required arms were the same as the federal Uniform Militia Act.[408]

E. New Hampshire: males under seventy

New Hampshire's first militia act was passed in 1687.[409] It demanded "that no person whatsoever above Sixteene yeares of age remaine unlisted."[410] Equipment was "a well fixed musket" with a barrel at least three feet.[411] The caliber was large: "the bore for a bullett of twelve to the pound."[412] Also necessary were bandoliers and a cartridge box, plus bullets and powder.[413] Officers had the option of allowing their men to have "a good pike and sword" instead of the musket.[414]

As for horsemen, "every soldier belonging to the horse" had to bring "a good serviceable horse covered with a good saddle with holsters breastplate and crupper a case of good pistolls and sword and halfe a pound of powder and twenty sizable bulletts . . . And every trooper have at his usuall place of abode a well fixed Carabine with belt and swivel."[415]

The next act, in 1692, changed the militia from all "persons" over sixteen to all males over 16.[416] For arms, everyone had to be "well provided

---

405 *Id.* at 487.

406 *Id.* at 492.

407 *Id.* at 493. The "patrol" was the slave patrol—nighttime patrols to catch slaves who were off their master's land, and to search slave quarters for weapons. The patrol and the militia had separate origins and were legally distinct. However, as the text indicates, below the Mason-Dixon line, the patrol and the militia were related. *See generally* SALLY E. HADDEN, SLAVE PATROLS: LAW AND VIOLENCE IN VIRGINIA AND THE CAROLINAS (2001).

408 8 THE STATUTES AT LARGE OF SOUTH CAROLINA: CONTAINING THE ACTS RELATING TO CORPORATIONS AND THE MILITIA, *supra* note 404, at 498. This law was supplemented later in 1794, but the supplement did not affect the age limits nor arms requirements. *Id.* at 501-02.

409 1 LAW OF NEW HAMPSHIRE: PROVINCE PERIOD 221 (Albert Stillman Batchellor ed., 1904), https://play.google.com/store/books/details?id=YSgTAAAAYAAJ.

410 *Id.*

411 *Id.*

412 *Id.* That is, one pound of lead would make twelve bullets. This was slightly larger than .75 caliber, which is 13 round bullets per pound. RED RIVER BRIGADE, http://www.redriverbrigade.com/lead-ball-per-pound/ (last visited Jan. 13, 2019).

413 1 LAWS OF NEW HAMPSHIRE: PROVINCE PERIOD, *supra* note 397.

414 *Id.*

415 *Id.* at 221-22

416 *Id.* at 537.

Electronic copy available at: https://ssrn.com/abstract=3205664

Case 4:23-cv-00547-O Document 20-2 Filed 10/06/23 Page 264 of 555 PageID 382

w'th a well fixed gun or fuse," plus "Sword or hatchet."[417] Along with the typical colonial requirements for gunpowder and bullets, a knapsack, a cartridge box, a powder horn, and flints.[418]

The above had stated how much ammunition the militiaman had to bring when called to muster—the periodic militia inspections for sufficiency of arms. Besides that, every militiaman had to keep more at home: "every Sooilder Shall have at his habitation & abode one pound of good pouder & twenty Sizable bullets."[419]

A 1704 act did not change the militia ages or arms.[420] But the following act did. "An Act for the Regulating of the Militia" in 1718 established New Hampshire's first upper militia age limit, providing that "all Male Persons from Sixteen Years of Age to Sixty [] shall bear Arms."[421]

The primary arms mandate applied to "every Listed Souldier and Housholder (except Troopers)."[422] In other words, the head of a house was required to have the specified arms, even if the head were not militia-eligible. These arms were "a well fix'd, Firelock Musket, of Musket or Bastard-Musket bore, the Barrel not less than three foot and a half long; or other good Fire-Arms, to the satisfaction of the Commission Officers of the Company."[423] Now, the mandatory equipment included gun cleaning tools: "a Worm and Priming Wire fit for his Gun."[424] Mandatory edged arms were "a good Sword or Cutlash."[425]

As for horsemen, they needed "a Carbine, the Barrel not less than Two Foot and half long, with a Belt and Swivel, a Case of good Pistols with a Sword or Cutlash, a Flask or Cartouch Box, One Pound of good Powder, Three Pound of sizeable Bullets, Twenty Flints, and a good pair of Boots, and Spurs."[426]

Acts passed in 1719[427] and 1739/40[428] did not affect the age limits or arms requirements. A 1754 revision made the parents over persons under twenty-one liable for fines imposed for their sons' militia delinquency or neglect.[429]

---

417 *Id.*

418 *Id.*

419 *Id.*

420 2 ALBERT STILLMAN BATCHELLOR, LAWS OF NEW HAMPSHIRE, PROVINCE PERIOD 61-62 (1913), https://play.google.com/store/books/details?id=PbxGAQAAIAAJ.

421 *Id.* at 284.

422 *Id.* at 285.

423 *Id.*

424 *Id.*

425 *Id.*

426 *Id.*

427 *Id.* at 347 ("An Act in Addition to the Act for the Regulating the Militia").

428 *Id.* at 575 ("An Act in Addition to an Act Entituled, An Act for Regulating the Militia").

429 3 LAWS OF NEW HAMPSHIRE, PROVINCE PERIOD 83 (Henry Harrison Metcalf ed., 1915), https://play.google.com/store/books/details?id=n7xGAQAAIAAJ.

Electronic copy available at: https://ssrn.com/abstract=3205664

Case 4:23-cv-00547-O Document 20-2 Filed 10/06/23 Page 265 of 555 PageID 383

Thus, the social expectation of the time was that parents would ensure that their sons sixteen and older had particular guns, swords, and so on, and that the sons would keep the arms in good condition and practice with them.

In 1773, New Hampshire lowered the maximum militia age from 60 to 50, "it having been found by Experience that persons attending after the Age of Fifty Years was not for the Publick advantage."[430]

After the Revolution began, a comprehensive new militia law was enacted.[431] It retained the recently established age limits of 16 to 50.[432]

Any "good Fire Arm" was acceptable. Also mandatory was a "good Ramrod."[433] The latter was used to ram the bullet down the muzzle, into the firing chamber. It was essential to the use of a muzzle-loading gun. While some militia statutes specified a ramrod, many left it to implication. By requiring that a gun be "well fixed" or "good," the less specific statutes implicitly required all appropriate accoutrements, including the ramrod.

For gun cleaning, the worm and priming wire had long been mandated. The new laws had an additional item: a brush.[434]

Two types of edged weapons were needed. First, "a Bayonet fitted to his Gun."[435] In close quarters fighting, an infantryman would attach the bayonet to the front of his gun. Then the gun would be used as a spear. Since there was a bayonet, there had to be "a Scabbard and Belt therefor."[436]

Besides the bayonet, one additional edged weapon was mandatory: "a Cutting Sword, or a Tomahawk or Hatchet."[437]

The ammunition items were: "Pouch containing a Cartridge Box, that will hold fifteen Rounds of Cartridges at least, a Hundred Buck Shot, a Jack Knife and Tow for Wadding, six Flints, one Pound of Powder, forty Leaden Balls fitted to his Gun."[438]

Finally, field supplies: "Knapsack and Blanket, a Canteen or Wooden Bottle sufficient to hold one Quart."[439]

Persons who were self-sufficient had to supply themselves with the required items. As for others, "all Parents, Masters, and Guardians, shall

---

[430] *Id.* at 590.

[431] 4 LAWS OF NEW HAMPSHIRE, REVOLUTIONARY PERIOD 39 (Henry Harrison Metcalf ed., 1916) ("An Act for forming and regulating the Militia within the State of New Hampshire in New England, and for repealing all the Laws heretofore made for that purpose"), https://play.google.com/store/books/details?id=P71GAQAAIAAJ.

[432] *Id.*

[433] *Id.* at 42.

[434] *Id.*

[435] *Id.*

[436] *Id.*

[437] *Id.*

[438] *Id.*

[439] *Id.*

Electronic copy available at: https://ssrn.com/abstract=3205664

Case 4:23-cv-00547-O Document 20-2 Filed 10/06/23 Page 266 of 555 PageID 384

furnish and equip those of the Militia which are under their Care and Command."[440]

In the War of Independence—for national survival—arms duties were expanded even to 65-year-olds. All men "from Sixteen years of Age to Sixty five" who were *not* part of the militia ("the Training Band") were required to provided themselves the same "Arms and Accoutrements." This applied to men "of sufficient Ability" (able-bodied).[441]

Later, four years into the war, in 1780, New Hampshire enacted a new militia law.[442] The militia was ages sixteen and fifty.[443] The militiamen had to attend musters and drills, and sometimes had to march off to fight in distant locations.

Under the 1780 law, all males under 70 who were capable of bearing arms were put on the "alarm list."[444] This meant that they had to have all the same arms and gear as militiamen.[445] If there were an attack on their town, or nearby, they would come forth with their arms.

The New Hampshire statute reflected a common American practice. Whenever a small town was attacked, everybody who was able would fight as needed, including women, children, and the elderly.[446]

The 1780 firearms requirement was more specific than its 1776 predecessor, requiring "a good Musquet."[447] The bayonet was still mandatory, but a second edged weapon was not.[448] Captains and Subalterns were to be "furnished with a half pike or Espontoon" (pole arms) or a "Fusee [lightweight long gun] and Bayonet and also with a Sword or Hanger."[449]

In 1786, New Hampshire repealed all previous militia laws, and enacted a comprehensive new statute.[450] This was the state's militia law when it ratified the Second Amendment on January 25, 1790.[451] The minimum age remained at 16—where it had been throughout all of New Hampshire's

---

440 *Id.*

441 *Id.* at 46.

442 *Id.* at 273 ("An Act for Forming & Regulating The Militia within this State, and for Repealing All the Laws heretofore made for that Purpose.").

443 *Id.* at 274.

444 *Id.* at 276.

445 *Id.*

446 *See*, *e.g.*, STEVEN C. EAMES, RUSTIC WARRIORS: WARFARE AND THE PROVINCIAL SOLDIERS ON THE NEW ENGLAND FRONTIER, 1689-1748, at 28-29 (2011).

447 *Id.* at 276-77.

448 *Id.*

449 *Id.* at 277.

450 5 LAWS OF NEW HAMPSHIRE, FIRST CONSTITUTIONAL PERIOD 177 (Henry Harrison Metcalf ed., 1916), https://play.google.com/store/books/details?id=iKkwAQAAMAAJ._An addition to this act was passed in September of 1786, but it did not affect the age limits or arms requirements. *Id.* at 197.

451 1 JOURNAL OF THE HOUSE OF REPRESENTATIVES OF THE UNITED STATES, *supra* note 280, at 303-04.

Electronic copy available at: https://ssrn.com/abstract=3205664

history. The maximum age fell to 40, its lowest yet.[452] Older men were on the alarm list until age 60.[453]

Arms were the same as in 1780.[454] As before, militiamen "under the care of parents masters or Guardians" were "to be furnished by them with such Arms and accoutrements."[455]

A 1792 militia law introduced a racial element; the militia consisted of "every free, able bodied white male citizen of this State resident therein who is, or shall be of the age of eighteen years and under the age of Forty years."[456]

The 1792 arms requirements were mostly the same as before, with some additional details. For example, commissioned officers had to have "a pair of Pistols, the holsters of which to be covered with bear-skin Caps."[457] Commissioned officers might have an espontoon (a pole arm often used for signaling), but field officers would not.[458] Again, "parents, Masters, or Guardians" had to furnish their charges with "Arms and Accoutrements."[459] And again they were "liable for the neglect and non appearance of such persons . . . under their care."[460]

In 1795 the starting militia age was lowered back to sixteen, where it had been until recently.[461] Perhaps the 1792 age-eighteen law was in deference to the federal Uniform Militia Act passed earlier that year. Later, the people decided that they wanted to keep their traditional lower age.

F. Delaware: "every Freeholder and taxable Person"

First a colony of Sweden and then the Netherlands, Delaware was taken by the English in 1664. Initially, New York claimed it. A statute New York passed in 1671 to defend against Indian attacks along the Delaware River became Delaware's first militia act. It required "That every Person that can

---

452 5 LAWS OF NEW HAMPSHIRE, FIRST CONSTITUTIONAL PERIOD, *supra* note 450, at 177.

453 *Id.* at 178.

454 *Id.* at 180.

455 *Id.* at 179. Also, as usual, "Parents Masters and Guardians shall be liable for the Neglect and Non Appearance of such persons as are under their Care and are liable by Law to train." *Id.* at 181.

456 6 LAWS OF NEW HAMPSHIRE, SECOND CONSTITUTIONAL PERIOD 84-85 (N.H. Sec'y of State ed., 1917) (available on Google Books).

457 *Id.* at 88.

458 *Id.* at 89.

459 *Id.*

460 *Id.*

461 *Id.* at 263-64 ("[E]very free, able bodied, white male citizen of this State resident therein who is or shall be of the age of sixteen years, and under forty years of age, under such exceptions as are made in this act, shall be enrolled in the Militia, and shall in all other respects be considered as liable to the duties of the Militia, in the same way and manner, as those of the age of eighteen years and upwards. And every citizen enrolled and liable as aforesaid; shall, while under the age of twenty one years be exempt from a poll tax.").

Other additions to the 1792 militia law were enacted in 1793. *Id.* at 110 (assigning certain militia units to regiments), 1795 (*id.* at 279), and 1798 (*id.* at 545).

Electronic copy available at: https://ssrn.com/abstract=3205664

beare Arms from 16 to 60 years of Age, bee allways provided with a convenient proportion of Powder & Bullett fit for Service, and their mutual Defence."[462]

Eventually, Delaware got its own legislature, but the three compact counties were too small to merit a royal governor. Consequently, the Governor of Pennsylvania was also the Governor of Delaware. Delaware did not enact a militia statute until 1740.[463] It required "all the inhabitants and freemen" aged fifteen to sixty-three to "provide and keep . . . a well-fixed firelock or musket," plus ammunition supplies and cleaning tools.[464]

The next year, a new law required males from 17 to 50 years to enlist. Besides that, everyone else who was living self-sufficiently ("every Freeholder and taxable Person") had to have the same arms as militiamen.[465]

Because "the Subjects of the French King, and their Savage Indian Allies . . . in the most cruel and barbarous Manner, attacked and murdered great Numbers" of colonists, the Assembly of the Counties of New Castle, Kent, and Sussex enacted a militia law in 1756.[466] This militia law for the French & Indian War was for the people to "assert the just Rights, and vindicate the Honour, of His Majesty's Crown, but also to defend themselves and their Lives and Properties, and preserve the many invaluable Rights and Privileges that they enjoy under their present Constitution and Government."[467]

The militia law covered every male "above Seventeen and under Fifty Years of Age (except bought Servants, or Servants adjudged to serve their Creditors)."[468] The gun was to be a musket or rifle.[469] The next year the militia act was extended "so long as the War proclaimed by his Majesty against the French King shall continue and no longer."[470]

After the Revolution began, Delaware enacted several militia statutes in 1778. The foundational act "establishing a Militia within this State" included "each and every able-bodied, effective, Male white Person between the Ages of Eighteen and Fifty."[471] Militiamen had to provide their own

---

[462] GEORGE H. RYDEN, DELAWARE—THE FIRST STATE IN THE UNION 103-104 (1938), https://archives.delaware.gov/wp-content/uploads/sites/156/2017/05/DE_Terc_Publications.pdf.

[463] 1 LAWS OF THE STATE OF DELAWARE 175 (1797), https://play.google.com/store/books/details?id=GXJKAAAAYAAJ).

[464] *Id.* at 175, 178.

[465] RYDEN, *supra* note 462, at 117. A "freeholder" owned real property. Single women could be freeholders. A tenant was not a freeholder, but could be a taxable person.

[466] ARTHUR VOLLMER, MILITARY OBLIGATION: DELAWARE ENACTMENTS 179 (1947).

[467] *Id.*

[468] *Id.*

[469] *Id.* at 180.

[470] RYDEN *supra* note 462, at 126.

[471] AN ACT of the General Assembly of the Delaware State for establishing a militia within the said state, 1778 Del. Acts, March Adjourned Session 3-4. The several acts from the March 1778 session are separately paginated, so each new act begins on its own page 1.

Electronic copy available at: https://ssrn.com/abstract=3203664

Case 4:23-cv-00547-O Document 20-2 Filed 10/06/23 Page 269 of 555 PageID 387

"Musket or Firelock with a Bayonet," plus the cartridge box, cartridges, priming wire, brush, and six flints. For 18-to-20-year-olds who could not afford the mandatory arms, the parents had to provide them, if the parents could afford them.[472]

Another law punished people who bought from militiamen the arms or accoutrements that militiamen were supposed to always keep. If the illicit buyer were a man 18 to 50, the punishment could include six months' service in the militia.[473] The third act in 1778 provided regulations for the militia "whilst under Arms or embodied" (i.e., in active service).[474] A 1779 supplement specified the punishment for persons between 18 and 50 who failed to appear for militia duty with the required arms.[475]

A comprehensive new militia act in 1782 included "every able-bodied effective Male white Inhabitant between the Ages of eighteen and fifty years."[476] Again, parents who could afford to had to provide the required arms to persons aged 18-to-20 who could not afford them.[477] Arms were the same as before.[478]

The act that established the militia when Delaware ratified the Second Amendment on January 28, 1790,[479] was passed in 1785.[480] Each white male 18-50 whose taxes were at least twenty shillings a year had to provide equipment "at his own expence."[481] As for apprentices and persons over 18 and under 21, their parent or guardian would provide the arms—*if* the militiaman's estate were at least eighty pounds, or if the parent paid "six pounds annually towards the public taxes."[482]

Arms were "a musket or firelock, with a bayonet," a cartridge box with twenty-three cartridges, "a priming wire, a brush and six flints, all in good order."[483] Fines for neglect were to be paid by militiamen "of full age or by the parent or guardian of such as are under twenty-one years."[484] The

---

472 *Id.* at 4-5.

473 An Act against Desertion, and harboring Deserters, or dealing with them in Certain Cases, 1778 Del. Acts Mar. Adjourned Sess. 1-3.

474 Rules and Articles, for the better regulating of the militia of this State, whilst under Arms or embodied, 1778 Del. Acts Mar. Adjourned Sess. 1.

475 A Supplement to an Act, intitled, An Act for establishing a Militia within this State, 1778 Del. Acts Oct. Regular Sess. 14.

476 AN ACT for establishing a Militia within this State, 1, Jan. Adjourned Sess. 1782, http://heinonline.org/HOL/P?h=hein.ssl/ssde0069&i=1.

477 *Id.* at 3.

478 *Id.*

479 1 JOURNAL OF THE HOUSE OF REPRESENTATIVES OF THE UNITED STATES, *supra* note 280, at 307.

480 An Act for Establishing a Militia, 1785 Del. Acts. May Adjourned Sess. 11.

481 *Id* at 13.

482 *Id.*

483 *Id.*

484 *Id.*

Electronic copy available at: https://ssrn.com/abstract=3205664

Case 4:23-cv-00547-O Document 20-2 Filed 10/06/23 Page 270 of 555 PageID 388

guardian could charge his ward for the expense when the time came for "settling the accounts of his guardianship."[485]

Like most states, Delaware enacted a new militia law after the federal Uniform Militia Act passed in 1792. Delaware's 1793 act included "each and every free able bodied white male citizen of this state, who is or shall be of the age of eighteen years, and under the age of forty-five years."[486] However, "all young men under the age of twenty-one years, and all servants purchased *bona fide*, and for a valuable consideration, [were] exempted from furnishing the necessary arms, ammunition and accoutrements . . . and [were] exempted from militia duties and fines during such minority or servitude, except in cases of rebellion, or an actual or threatened invasion."[487]

In other words, servants and males 18 to 20 would not be fined if they did not participate in drills. Additionally, they would not be fined if they lacked the requisite equipment. Of course, if they wanted to keep arms and train, they could.

Required arms mostly tracked the federal law, with some more detail for horsemen.[488]

A 1796 supplement revised the organization and regulation of the militia, and again included able-bodied white males from 18 to 45.[489] The act also forbade volunteer militias, because there were "a number of free able bodied white men in this state, between the ages of eighteen and forty-five years, who neglect and refuse to muster and do militia duty, in the companies

---

485 *Id.*

486 2 LAWS OF THE STATE OF DELAWARE 1134 (1797), https://babel.hathitrust.org/cgi/pt?num=1134&u=1&seq=641&view= image&size=100&id=njp.32101042903870&q1=twenty-one.

487 *Id.* at 1135. In other words, hired servants were part of the enrolled militia. Indentured servants were not, except in emergencies. Textually, slaves were "purchased…for a valuable consideration," but we are not certain whether they too would be part of the militia during an emergency. *Cf. supra* note 221 (distinguishing "bought" servants from African slaves).

488 *Id.* at 1136.

> [E]very non-commissioned officer and private of the infantry (including grenadiers and light infantry, and of the artillery shall have a good musket or firelock, a sufficient bayonet and belt, two spare flints and a knapsack, a pouch, with a box therein to contain not less than twenty-four cartridges suited to the bore of his gun, each cartridge to contain a proper quantity of powder and ball, or with a good rifle, knapsack, shot pouch and powder horn, twenty balls suited to the bore of his rifle, and a quarter of a pound of powder; the commissioned officers of the infantry shall be armed with a sword or hanger, and an espontoon, and those of artillery with a sword or hanger, a fuzee, bayonet and belt, and a cartridge box to contain twelve cartridges; the commissioned officers of the troops of horse shall furnish themselves with good horses of at least fourteen hands and a half high, and shall be armed with a sword and pair of pistols, the holsters of which shall be covered with bear skin caps; each light-horseman or dragoon shall furnish himself with a serviceable horse at least fourteen hands and an half high, a good saddle, bridle, mail pillion and valise holsters, and a breast plate and crupper, a pair of boots and spurs, a pair of pistols, a sabre, and cartouch box to contain twelve cartridges for pistols; the artillery and horse shall be uniformly clothed in regimentals, to be furnished at their own expence.

489 *Id.* at 1225.

Electronic copy available at: https://ssrn.com/abstract=3205664

in which they have been enrolled . . . and yet meet together with arms in bodies distinguished and known by the name of Volunteer Companies."[490]

Delaware's hostility to volunteer companies was not the national norm. In fact, the federal Uniform Militia Act expressly recognized independent volunteer companies.[491] The UMA set forth the conditions and regulations for independent militia service in the federal militia.[492]

Delaware passed its final militia act of the eighteenth century in 1799.[493] The scope of the militia remained the same.[494] The arms were mostly the same: for the infantryman, "a good musket" plus a bayonet, or "a good rifle." Commissioned officers needed "a sword or hanger, a fusee, bayonet," and troopers had to be "armed with a sabre and pair of pistols." [495]

Men 18 to 20 were again exempted from fines for non-performance of militia duties "during such minority, except in cases of rebellion or any actual invasion of this State."[496]

G. Pennsylvania: No service "without the consent of his or their parents or guardians, masters or mistresses"

In the days when Pennsylvania was claimed by New York, a 1671 law required "every person that can bear arms from 16 to 60 years of age, be always provided with a convenient proportion of powder and bullet fit for service, and their mutual defence."[497] This meant "at least one pound of powder and two pounds of bullet."[498] As backup to insufficient armament by the people, "his Royal Highness' Governor [N.Y. Gov. Francis Lovelace] is

---

490 *Id.* at 1234 (noting that besides the concern about the state militia, Delaware also worried about "the assembling of large bodies of armed men, who do not acknowledge, and refuse to submit to, the legal military establishment.").

491 More effectually to provide for the National Defence by establishing an Uniform Militia throughout the United States (Uniform Militia Act) (UMA), 1 Stat. 271, 274, §§ 10-11.

492 *Id.* (providing "And whereas sundry corps of artillery, cavalry, and infantry now exist in several of the said states, which by the laws, customs, or usages thereof have not been incorporated with, or subject to the general regulations of the militia: SEC. 11. Be it enacted, That such corps retain their accustomed privileges, subject, nevertheless, to all other duties required by this Act, in like manner with the other militia").

493 An Act to Establish an Uniform Militia throughout this State, 3 Del. Laws 82 (1798), https://babel.hathitrust.org/cgi/pt?q1=militia;id=njp.32101042904340;view=image;seq=88;start=1;sz=10;page=search;num=82.

494 *Id.*

495 *Id.* at 84-85. Unlike muskets or fowling pieces, rifles of the time were too fragile to use with bayonets.

496 *Id.* at 84.

497 *Ordinances for Defence*, in DUKE OF YORKE'S BOOK OF LAWS 450 (1664), https://babel.hathitrust.org/cgi/pt?q1=ARMS;id=hvd.32044022680946;view=image;start=1;sz=10;page=root;size=100;seq=466;num=450.

498 *Id.*

Electronic copy available at: https://ssrn.com/abstract=3205664

Case 4:23-cv-00547-O Document 20-2 Filed 10/06/23 Page 272 of 555 PageID 390

willing to furnish them out of the magazine or stores, they being accountable and paying for what they shall receive, to the Governor or his order."[499]

Five years later, it was mandated that:

> Every Male within this Goverment from Sixteen to Sixty years of age, or not freed by public Allowance, shall if freeholders at their own, if sons or Servants at their Parents and Masters Charge and Cost, be furnished from time to time and so Continue well furnished with Armes and other Suitable provition hereafter mentioned . . . Namely a good Serviceable Gun, allowed Sufficient by his Military Officer to be kept in Constant fitness for present Service, with a good sword bandeleers or horne a worme a Scowerer a priming wire Shott Badge and Charger one pound of good powder, four pounds of Pistol bullets or twenty four bullets fitted to the gunne, four fathom of Serviceable Match for match lock gunn four good flints fitted for a fire lock gunn.[500]

As for horsemen, their mandatory arms were "Holsters, Pistolls, or Carbine, and a good Sword."[501]

Pennsylvania became a separate colony in 1681, following a royal grant to the Quaker aristocrat William Penn.[502] Early Pennsylvania was the only colony without an organized functional militia.[503] Political power was in the hands of Quakers, many of whom (not all) were pacifists.[504] Additionally, the Quakers had generally non-violent relations with Indians, and thus less need for collective self-defense.[505]

However, after the French & Indian War began in 1754, George Washington raised and paid for an army of Virginians to fight the French in the Ohio River Valley, and attitudes began to change.[506] Because of non-Quaker immigration, Quaker hegemony over Pennsylvania politics had been challenged in the previous decades.[507] Then in 1755 Pennsylvania passed an

---

[499] *Id.*

[500] CHARTER TO WILLIAM PENN, AND LAWS OF THE PROVINCE OF PENNSYLVANIA, PASSED BETWEEN THE YEARS OF 1682 AND 1700, PRECEDED BY DUKE OF YORK'S LAWS IN FORCE FROM THE YEAR 1676 TO THE YEAR 1682, at 39 (1676).

[501] *Id.* at 43.

[502] *Pennsylvania History 1681-1776: The Quaker Province*, PA. HIST. & MUSEUM COMMISSION, http://www.phmc.state.pa.us/portal/communities/pa-history/1681-1776.html (last visited Jan. 13, 2019).

[503] *Id.*

[504] DAVID B. KOPEL, THE MORALITY OF SELF-DEFENSE AND MILITARY ACTION: THE JUDEO-CHRISTIAN TRADITION 384-89 (2017) (describing diverse Quaker views on defense of self and others, during and before the American Revolution).

[505] PAUL A.W. WALLACE, INDIANS IN PENNSYLVANIA 142-46 (2d ed. 2005); *see also*, Thomas J. Sugrue, *The Peopling and Depeopling of Early Pennsylvania: Indians and Colonists, 1680-1720*, 116 PA. MAG. HIST. & BIO. 3 (Jan. 1992) (explaining the relationship of Penn's settlers with the Indians as, although not typically characterized by war, not always idyllic and generous).

[506] WALLACE, *supra* note 505, at 147-59.

[507] JACK D. MARIETTA, THE REFORMATION OF AMERICAN QUAKERISM, 1748-1783, at 132-22 (2007).

Electronic copy available at: https://ssrn.com/abstract=3205664

Case 4:23-cv-00547-O Document 20-2 Filed 10/06/23 Page 273 of 555 PageID 391

act to formalize voluntary militias wanting to defend the colony.[508] The 1755 militia law explained the assembly was respecting the conscience rights of Quakers (most of whom were unwilling to fight) *and* the conscience rights of people of other faiths, who did want to join in associations for community defense.[509]

Minors and indentured servants could not join the new militia without the consent of their superiors: "no youth under the age of twenty-one years nor any bought servant or indented apprentice shall be admitted to enroll himself or be capable of being enrolled in the said companies or regiments without the consent of his or their parents or guardians, masters or mistresses, in writing under their hands first had and obtained."[510] Later in 1755, as the pressures of war were growing, the assembly adopted a non-binding resolution "that it be recommended to all male white persons within this province, between the ages of sixteen and fifty years, who have not already associated, and are not conscientiously scrupulous of bearing arms, to join the said [militia] association immediately."[511]

Five months later, Pennsylvania imposed a special tax on "every male white person capable of bearing arms, between the ages of sixteen and fifty years" who had *not* joined a militia.[512] This penalty was reaffirmed by "Resolutions directing the Mode of Levying Taxes on Non-Associators in Pennsylvania" two months later.[513] Finally, the entire militia act was repealed on July 7, 1756.[514]

In 1755, and the first half of 1756, Quakers had been under pressure.[515] They were willing to pay taxes in general, knowing that some of the revenue would be used for military activity.[516] Most of them were pacifists, and they were not only unwilling to fight, but they were also unwilling to pay a special tax levied on them for not fighting, especially because they knew the tax would be used for the military.[517]

---

[508] 5 THE STATUTES AT LARGE OF PENNSYLVANIA FROM 1682-1801, at 197 (1898), https://babel.hathitrust.org/cgi/pt?view=image;size=125;id=mdp.39015050623548;q1=militia;page=root;seq=203;num=197;orient=0.

[509] *Id.* (The act began: "Whereas this province was first settled by (and a majority of the assemblies ever since been of) the people called Quakers, who, though they do not, as the world is now circumstanced, condemn the use of arms in others, yet are principled against bearing arms themselves." The militia/associator statute was non-compulsory for everyone: "for them by any law to compel others to bear arms and exempt themselves would be inconsistent and partial").

[510] *Id.* at 200.

[511] 8 THE STATUTES AT LARGE OF PENNSYLVANIA FROM 1682 TO 1801, at 492 (1902).

[512] *Id.* at 539.

[513] *Id.* at 512.

[514] 5 STATUTES AT LARGE OF PENNSYLVANIA, *supra* note 508, at 201, https://babel.hathitrust.org/cgi/pt?view=image;size=125;id=mdp.39015050623548;q1=militia;page=root;seq=207;num=201.

[515] MARIETTA, *supra* note 507, at 141-58.

[516] *Id.* at 136-37.

[517] KOPEL, *supra* note 504, at 388.

Electronic copy available at: https://ssrn.com/abstract=3205664

Case 4:23-cv-00547-O Document 20-2 Filed 10/06/23 Page 274 of 555 PageID 392

During the eighteenth century, Americans grappled with how to deal with conscientious objectors.[518] Sometimes a mutually acceptable accommodation was found.[519]

Once the Revolutionary War began, Pennsylvania had to create a formidable militia. By this time, non-Quakers held the political power.[520] The new militia law of 1777 was for "every male white person usually inhabiting or residing within his township, borough, ward or district between the ages of eighteen and fifty-three years capable of bearing arms."[521]

For conscientious objectors, Pennsylvania adopted a variant of the practice used in some other colonies: the reluctant man subject to militia service could pay for a substitute to serve in his stead. In some states, this would be simply be a negotiated contract between the conscript and the substitute. In Pennsylvania, the fee or penalty was apparently to be paid to the militia itself, which could then hire a substitute.[522] Pennsylvania allowed for appeals if the objector thought the fee too high.[523] For militiamen 18 to 20, the parents could appeal the fee, as could masters of indentured servants who were 18 to 20.[524]

The 1777 Act was non-specific on equipment, requiring only a militiaman's "arms and accoutrements" be "in good order."[525] This Act was supplemented in 1777, without affecting age limits or arms.[526]

A new Act in 1780, five years into the Revolutionary War, kept the ages at 18 to 53, and reiterated the non-specific mandate for arms and accoutrements "in good order."[527] This Act was Pennsylvania's militia act

---

[518] *See* LIBERTY AND CONSCIENCE: A DOCUMENTARY HISTORY OF CONSCIENTIOUS OBJECTORS IN AMERICA THROUGH THE CIVIL WAR 3-67 (Peter Brock ed. 2002). For example, the constitutions of Vermont, New Hampshire, Kentucky, and Tennessee included specific protections for conscientious objectors. JOHNSON ET AL., *supra* note 18, at 293, 296, 386. When ratifying the Constitution, the states of Maryland, Virginia, North Carolina, and Rhode Island asked for conscientious objector protections for the federal militia power. *Id.* at 313, 322, 327, 328. James Madison included such a protection in his draft of what became the Second Amendment, but the clause was removed in the Senate, based on the argument that that matter was best left to legislative discretion. *Id.* at 335-37.

[519] *See generally* LIBERTY AND CONSCIENCE, *supra* note 518 (describing examples of persecution and tolerance). Accommodations were easier for the non-Quaker pacifists, who did not object to paying war taxes or special fees for exemptions from military duty. *Id.* at 48.

[520] MARIETTA, *supra* note 507, at 219-20 (noting that from 1774 onward the Pennsylvania Assembly was under control of non-Quakers who advocated vigorous confrontation with Great Britain).

[521] 9 THE STATUTES AT LARGE OF PENNSYLVANIA FROM 1682 TO 1801, at 77 (1903); MARIETTA, *supra* note 507, at 225-29.

[522] 9 STATUTES AT LARGE OF PENNSYLVANIA, *supra* note 521, at 77.

[523] *Id.*

[524] *Id.* at 87 ("[I]f any parent, guardian, master or mistress of any person between the ages of eighteen and twenty-one years or of any other person made liable to serve in the militia by this act shall think him or herself aggrieved by any of the rates, fines or sum or sums of money agreed for in the procuring of substitutes . . . he, she or they may appeal").

[525] *Id.* at 80.

[526] *Id.* at 131.

[527] 10 THE STATUTES AT LARGE OF PENNSYLVANIA FROM 1682 TO 1801, at 144-46 (1904).

Electronic copy available at: https://ssrn.com/abstract=3205664

when it ratified the Second Amendment on March 10, 1790.[528] There was a supplement in 1780,[529] repeal and replacement of that supplement in 1783,[530] more supplements in 1783[531] and 1788,[532] and a repeal of parts of those supplements in 1790.[533] None of these changed the ages or the arms.

During the Revolutionary War, not long after the 1780 Militia Act had been enacted, the assembly established the Pennsylvania Volunteers.[534] The Pennsylvania Volunteers were a state army, similar to the armies raised by other states. Every militia company had to "provide or hire one able-bodied man not less than eighteen or more than forty-five years of age" to serve in the Pennsylvania Volunteers.[535] Notably, the whites-only provision from the militia law was omitted. As was true throughout the seventeenth and eighteenth centuries in America, whatever racial limits existed on militia or other military service tended to be repealed or overlooked under the pressure of wartime exigencies.[536]

After Congress passed the federal UMA in 1792, Pennsylvania enacted conforming legislation in 1793.[537] The Act tracked the federal militia definition: free white males 18 to 45.[538] The mandatory arms and accoutrements within the Act copied the extensive federal list.[539]

Like neighboring Delaware, Pennsylvania relaxed the peacetime requirements for young adults.[540] "[A]ll young men under the age of twenty-one years, and all servants purchased bona fide and for a valuable consideration," had to enroll in the militia.[541] But "during such minority or servitude," they were exempt from training and from fines for not having the

---

528 1 JOURNAL OF THE HOUSE OF REPRESENTATIVES OF THE UNITED STATES, *supra* note 280, at 306-07.

529 10 STATUTES AT LARGE OF PENNSYLVANIA, *supra* note 527, at 225.

530 11 THE STATUTES AT LARGE OF PENNSYLVANIA FROM 1682 TO 1801, at 91-93 (1906). (The new 1783 supplement stated that it applied to "young men who have arrived to the age of eighteen years.").

531 *Id.* at 161.

532 13 THE STATUTES AT LARGE OF PENNSYLVANIA FROM 1682 TO 1801, at 41 (1908).

533 *Id.* at 451, https://books.google.com/books?id=HRxEAAAAYAAJ&printsec=frontcover&source=gbs_ge_summary_r&cad=0#v=onepage&q=MILITIA&f=false.

534 10 STATUTES AT LARGE OF PENNSYLVANIA, *supra* note 527, at 191.

535 *Id.*

536 JOHNSON ET AL., *supra* note 18, at 194.

537 14 THE STATUTES AT LARGE OF PENNSYLVANIA FROM 1682 TO 1801, at 454 (1909), https://babel.hathitrust.org/cgi/pt?q1=militia;id=mdp.39015050623514;view=image;start=1;sz=10;page=root;size=100;seq=460;num=454.

538 *Id.* at 455.

539 *Id.* at 457-58.

540 2 Laws of the State of Delaware 1135 (1797).

541 14 STATUTES AT LARGE OF PENNSYLVANIA, *supra* note 537, at 456.

Electronic copy available at: https://ssrn.com/abstract=3205664

Case 4:23-cv-00547-O Document 20-2 Filed 10/06/23 Page 276 of 555 PageID 394

requisite equipment.[542] The exception did not apply "in cases of rebellion, or an actual or threatened invasion of this or any of the neighboring states."[543]

Pennsylvania's final militia act of the eighteenth century was passed in 1799.[544] It kept the previous act's age limits of 18 and 45,[545] as well as the peacetime exemptions.[546] However, the new act explicitly allowed "sons who are not subject to the militia law may be admitted as substitutes for their fathers."[547] In other words, if a 42-year-old father were summoned into the militia, the 17-year-old son could choose to serve in his stead. The arms requirements were slightly modified, with more elaboration of accoutrements for horsemen, and making sure handgunners had "bear skin caps" for their holsters.[548]

H. New York: "every able bodied male person Indians and slaves excepted"

New York's first militia act came among The Duke of York's Laws in 1665.[549] It provided that:

> Every Male within this Government from Sixteen to Sixty years of age, or not freed by public Allowance, shall if freeholders at their own, if sons or Servants at their Parents and Masters Charge and Cost, be furnished from time to time and so Continue well furnished with Armes and other Suitable provition hereafter mentioned: under the penalty of five Shillings for the least default therein Namely a good Serviceable Gun, allowed Sufficient by his Military Oficer to be kept in Constant fitness for present Service, with a good sword bandeleers or horne or worme a Scowerer a priming wire Shott Badge and Charger one pound of good powder, four pounds of Pistol bullets or twenty four bullets fitted to the gunne, four fathom of Serviceable Match for match lock gunn four good flints fitted for a fire lock gunn.[550]

---

542 *Id.*
543 *Id.*
544 16 THE STATUTES AT LARGE OF PENNSYLVANIA FROM 1682 TO 1801, at 276 (1911), https://play.google.com/store/books/details?id=zRtEAAAAYAAJ&rdid=book-zRtEAAAAYAA J &rdot=1.
545 *Id.*
546 *Id.* at 278.
547 *Id.* at 297.
548 *Id.* at 281.
549 1 THE COLONIAL LAWS OF NEW YORK FROM THE YEAR 1664 TO THE REVOLUTION, INCLUDING THE CHARTERS TO THE DUKE OF YORK, THE COMMISSION AND INSTRUCTIONS TO COLONIAL GOVERNORS, THE DUKES LAWS, THE LAWS OF THE DONAGAN AND LEISLER ASSEMBLIES, THE CHARTERS OF ALBANY AND NEW YORK AND THE ACTS OF THE COLONIAL LEGISLATURES FROM 1691 TO 1775 INCLUSIVE 49-50 (1896).
550 *Id.*

Electronic copy available at: https://ssrn.com/abstract=3205664

Troopers had to "keepe and maintaine a good Horse Fitted with Sadle, bridle, Holsters, Pistolls or Carbine, and a good Sword."[551]

The act additionally provided that: "In defence of himself his wife Father or Mother Children or Servants a man may Lawfully use force to resist any attempt made to that purpose."[552] Thus, the right of 18-to-20-year-olds to use arms in self-defense was expressly guaranteed.

A 1684 law ensured that persons exempted from the militia still kept the militia arms in their homes.[553]

In 1691, New York lowered the minimum militia age, so that "noe person whatsoever from fiftieen to Sixty years of Age remaine unlisted."[554]

The arms were typical of the time: For every foot soldier, "a well fixed muskett or fuzee" for officers, "a good pike or Sword or lance and pistoll."[555] At home, every foot soldier was to have "one pound of good powder and three pound of Sizeable bulletts," and every Trooper (horseman) had to "have at his usuall place of abode a well fixed Carabine with belt and Swivell and two pounds of fine powder with Six pounds of Sizeable bulletts."[556]

The minimum age for militia service was raised back to 16 in 1702.[557] The militia arms remained unchanged.[558] The 1702 act was continued in 1706,[559] 1708,[560] 1709,[561] 1710,[562] 1711,[563] 1712,[564] 1713,[565] 1715,[566] 1716,[567] 1717,[568] 1718,[569] and 1720.[570]

A new act in 1721 applied to every "[p]erson whatsoever from Sixteen to Sixty Years of Age."[571] Foot soldier equipment was nearly the same as before.[572] Many subsequent acts kept the same age limits and arms

---

551 *Id.* at 54.
552 *Id.* at 15.
553 *Id.* at 161 ("all persons though freed from Training by the Law yet that they be obliged to Keep Convenient armes and ammunition in Their houses as the Law directs to others").
554 *Id.* at 231.
555 *Id.* at 232.
556 *Id.* "Fine powder" is gunpowder made of very small grains. Small grains burn faster and more uniformly. Hence, "fine powder" propels the bullet faster than does powder with larger grains.
557 *Id.* at 500.
558 *Id.* at 500-01.
559 *Id.* at 591.
560 *Id.* at 611.
561 *Id.* at 675.
562 *Id.* at 706.
563 *Id.* at 745.
564 *Id.* at 778.
565 *Id.* at 781.
566 *Id.* at 868.
567 *Id.* at 887.
568 *Id.* at 917.
569 *Id.* at 1001.
570 2 THE COLONIAL LAWS OF NEW YORK FROM THE YEAR 1664 TO THE REVOLUTION 1 (1894).
571 *Id.* at 84-85.
572 *Id.*

Electronic copy available at: https://ssrn.com/abstract=3205664

Case 4:23-cv-00547-O Document 20-2 Filed 10/06/23 Page 278 of 555 PageID 396

requirements. There were new acts (all which had interim continuations) in 1724,[573] 1739,[574] 1743,[575] and 1744.[576] The 1746 act told soldiers to appear with nine rounds of ammunition, rather than the previous minimum of six.[577] The requirement was lowered back to six in 1755.[578] The age and arms requirements remained the same in the acts of 1764[579] and 1772.[580]

On April 1, 1775, less than three weeks before the Revolutionary War would begin, New York enacted a new militia law.[581] This act retained the same arms requirements as its predecessors, and kept the minimum age at 16, but lowered the maximum age to 50.[582]

The 1775 law was for "every Person."[583] In the middle of the war, in 1778, the 1775 law was narrowed to "every able bodied male person Indians and slaves excepted."[584] The new arms requirement was "a good musket or firelock fit for service," plus the bayonet, sixteen rounds of ammunition, and the usual accoutrements.[585]

In 1778, the British, "adopted terror tactics across upstate New York to divert American forces away from more southern battle fields and to inhibit American's ability to produce food and supplies from the large war effort."[586] A statute that year established "a night watch in the counties of Ulster, Tryon,

---

573 *Id.* at 187. The act was continued in 1728, *id.* at 421; and in 1730, *id.* at 657; then in 1731, *id.* at 698; again in 1732, *id.* at 734; and in 1733, *id.* at 858; and 1735, *id.* at 905; and 1736, *id.* at 922; and 1737, *id.* at 947.

574 3 COLONIAL LAWS OF NEW YORK FROM THE YEAR 1664 TO THE REVOLUTION 3 (1894), https://babel.hathitrust.org/cgi/pt?id=umn.319510021585399;view=1up;seq=11. The act was continued in 1740, *id.* at 69; in 1741, *id.* at 168; and 1742, *id.* at 224.

575 *Id.* at 296.

576 *Id.* at 385. This act was continued in 1745. *Id.* at 510.

577 *Id.* at 511, 513. This act was continued in 1746, *id.* at 621; then again in 1747, *id.* at 648; then in 1753, *id.* at 962; and again in 1754, *id.* at 1016.

578 *Id.* at 1051. This act was continued twice in 1756, 4 COLONIAL LAWS OF NEW YORK FROM THE YEAR 1664 TO THE REVOLUTION 16, 101 (1894), https://babel.hathitrust.org/cgi/pt?id=mdp.39015011398438;view=1up;seq=22; twice in 1757, *id.* at 187, 293; then in 1759, *id.* at 363; in 1760, *id.* at 475; in 1761, *id.* at 553; in 1762, *id.* at 636; and in 1763, *id.* at 698.

579 *Id.* at 767; continued in 1765, *id.* at 852; in 1766, *id.* at 915; and in 1767, *id.* at 952.

580 5 COLONIAL LAWS OF NEW YORK FROM THE YEAR 1664 TO THE REVOLUTION 342 (1894), https://babel.hathitrust.org/cgi/pt?id=mdp.39015011398420;view=1up;seq=348.

581 *Id.* at 732.

582 *Id.*

583 *Id.* at 342.

584 LAWS OF THE STATE OF NEW YORK: PASSED AT THE SESSIONS OF THE LEGISLATURE HELD IN THE YEARS 1777, 1778, 1779, 1780, 1781, 1782, 1783, AND 1784, INCLUSIVE, BEING THE FIRST SEVEN SESSIONS 62 (1886), https://books.google.com/books?id=D8GwAAAAMAAJ&printsec=frontcover&source=gbs_ge_summary_r&cad=0#v=snippet&q=%22every%20able%20bodied%20male%20person%20Indians%20and%20slaves%20excepted%22&f=false. (Hereinafter LAWS OF THE STATE OF NEW YORK: PASSED AT THE SESSIONS 165-66.) The act was amended in 1778, *id.* at 86, and 1779, *id.* at 157. The age limits and arms requirements were unaffected.

585 *Id.*

586 Stefan Bielinski, *Albany County*, *in* THE OTHER NEW YORK: THE AMERICAN REVOLUTION BEYOND NEW YORK CITY, 1763-1787, at 165-66 (Joseph S. Tiedemann & Edward R. Fingerhut eds. 2006).

Electronic copy available at: https://ssrn.com/abstract=3203664

Case 4:23-cv-00547-O Document 20-2 Filed 10/06/23 Page 279 of 555 PageID 397

Charlotte, Dutchess, and Albany."[587] Service on the watch was required of "every able bodied male inhabitant, Indians and slaves excepted…from sixteen years of age till sixty."[588]

A 1780 act "to raise troops for the defence of the frontiers" required "all the male inhabitants (slaves excepted) of the age of sixteen years and upwards" to provide themselves with "a good musket or firelock" plus seventeen rounds of ammunition.[589]

Militia acts of 1780 and 1782 retained the age limits and arms requirements of 1778.[590]

In 1783, New York passed "AN ACT to authorize his excellency the governor to raise troops for the defence of the frontiers."[591] It included "all the male inhabitants and sojourners of the age of sixteen years and upwards . . . excepting slaves," and ordered each of them to possess the usual equipment.[592]

In 1786, New York passed the law defining its militia.[593] That was the definition in effect when the state ratified the Second Amendment on February 24, 1790.[594] The law defined the New York militia as "every able-bodied male person, being a citizen of this state, or of any of the United States, and residing in this state (except such persons as are herein after excepted) and who are of the age of sixteen, and under the age of forty-five years."[595]

The arms were "a good musket or firelock," 24 bullets, "a sufficient bayonet" and other standard items."[596] In 1787, New York amended the 1786 law without change to ages or arms.[597]

Finally, in 1793 New York aligned with the federal UMA.[598] The minimum age rose to 18, while the maximum remained at 45—both ages the

---

587 LAWS OF THE STATE OF NEW YORK PASSED AT THE SESSIONS, *supra* note 584, at 94.
588 *Id.* at 95.
589 *Id* at 232.
590 *Id.* at 237, 441.
591 *Id.* at 529.
592 *Id.*
593 1 LAWS OF THE STATE OF NEW YORK: COMPRISING THE CONSTITUTION, AND THE ACTS OF THE LEGISLATURE, SINCE THE REVOLUTION, FROM THE FIRST TO THE FIFTEENTH SESSION, INCLUSIVE 227 (Thomas Greenleaf 1792), https://books.google.com/books?id=9Hs4AAAAIAAJ&pg=PA26&dq=new+york+state+laws+1779&hl=en&sa=X&ved=0ahUKEwiCvauHn_LZAhVEVWMKHSToDG8Q6AEIKTAA#v=onepage&q=militia&f=false.
594 1 JOURNAL OF THE HOUSE OF REPRESENTATIVES OF THE UNITED STATES, *supra* note 280, at 304-06.
595 *Id.*
596 *Id.* at 228.
597 *Id.* at 454.
598 3 LAWS OF THE STATE OF NEW YORK: COMPRISING THE CONSTITUTION AND THE ACTS OF THE LEGISLATURE, SINCE THE REVOLUTION, FROM THE FIRST TO THE TWENTIETH SESSION, INCLUSIVE 58 (1797), https://books.google.com/books?id=Mns4AAAAIAAJ&printsec=frontcover&source=gbs_ge_summary_r&cad=0#v=onepage&q=militia&f=false.

Electronic copy available at: https://ssrn.com/abstract=3205664

Case 4:23-cv-00547-O Document 20-2 Filed 10/06/23 Page 280 of 555 PageID 398

same as for the federal militia.[599] The arms requirement copied the federal statute.[600]

I. Rhode Island: parents and masters must furnish arms

Rhode Island established a militia in 1673, consisting of persons from 16 to 60 years old.[601] Each militiaman was required to "at all times hereafter have on[e] good gun or muskitt Fitt for Service one pound of good powder & thirty bullits at Least."[602] If a son or servant had no valuable estate of his own, his parents or master would be liable for any fines imposed upon him.[603] A 1677 revision retained the laws for ages and arms.[604]

A 1700 statute specified that persons subject to militia service also had to serve on watch and ward (day and night guard duty in towns).[605] The Act elaborated on the arms requirements, mandating that each militiaman appear with a "Good & Sufficient muskett or Fuze a Sword or Bayenet, Catooch box or Bandelers wth twelve Bulets fit for his Piece half a Pound of Powder & Six good Flints."[606]

A 1718 law provided that "all male Persons . . . from the Age of Sixteen, to the Age of Sixty Years, shall bear Arms."[607] Arms were "one good Musket, or Fuzee, the Barrel whereof not to be less than three foot and an half in length," plus a sword or bayonet, a pound of gunpowder, thirty bullets, six flints, and a cartridge box.[608]

---

599 *Id.*

600 *Id.*

601 LAWS AND ACTS OF HER MAJESTIES COLONY OF RHODE ISLAND, AND PROVIDENCE-PLANTATIONS MADE FROM THE FIRST SETTLEMENT IN 1636 TO 1705, at 23 (1896), https://books.google.com/books?id=VZs0AQAAMAAJ&pg=PA48&lpg=PA48&dq=%22an+act+for+ye+better+regulating+ye+militia%22+%2B+%22rhode+island%22&source=bl&ots=HHzuITQDoD&sig=UB5aPjlcOOwaXouze0Dru3PGdUI&hl=en&sa=X&ved=0ahUKEwiT6a3MpL_aAhVq4oMKHb9jB0oQ6AEIKzAA#v=onepage&q=at%20least&f=false.

602 *Id.*

603 *Id.*

604 *Id.* at 25.

605 *Id.* at 48. The statute was miswritten: "all persons wthn this Colony Above ye Age of Sixteen Years & Under ye Age of Sixteen Yeares as well housekeepers as others Shall be Obliged to watch or ward." Read literally, no one was required for perform watch and ward, since no one can be "Above" and "Under" the "Age of Sixteen Years." Presumably the intended and understood upper age limit remained 60.

606 *Id.*

607 THE CHARTER AND THE ACTS AND LAWS OF HIS MAJESTIES COLONY OF RHODE-ISLAND, AND PROVIDENCE-PLANTATIONS IN AMERICA, 1719, at 86 (Sidney S. Rider, ed. 1895), https://archive.org/details/thecharteractsla00rhod/page/86.

608 *Id.* at 87.

Electronic copy available at: https://ssrn.com/abstract=3205664

The next act appeared in 1755, at the beginning of the French & Indian War.[609] It did not revise ages or arms.[610] An addition in 1756 made the parents of militiamen under 21 liable for unpaid fines for neglect of duty.[611] A 1774 amendment left arms and ages unchanged.[612]

Rhode Island created a state army in 1776, a regiment to serve for three months.[613] The Rhode Island army was to be "composed of six Men as Soldiers of every Hundred of the male Inhabitants of Sixteen Years of Age, and upwards."[614] As the quota indicates, at least some of the soldiers were to be raised by conscription, with each town to supply a quota if there were not sufficient volunteers. The soldiers of this regiment had the option of having the town provide their arms, or an enlistment bonus was available for soldiers who furnished their own arms.[615]

This policy of soldiers providing their own arms was typical during the Revolution.[616] The Continental Army generally refused volunteers who could not supply their own arms.[617] State armies sometimes accepted unarmed volunteers, while offering bonuses to recruits with their own arms.[618]

A new militia law was enacted in 1779.[619] The new law would be Rhode Island's militia act when it ratified the Second Amendment on June 7, 1790.[620] The lower age limit remained at 16, but the upper age limit dropped to 50.[621] "[E]ach and every effective Man as aforesaid [had to] provide, and at all times be furnished, at his own Expence (excepting such Persons as the Town-Councils of the Towns in which they respectively dwell or reside shall adjudge unable to purchase the same) with one good Musquet, and a Bayonet fitted thereto, with a Sheath and Belt, or Strap, for the same, one Ram-rod, Worm, Priming-wire and Brush, and one Cartouch-Box."[622]

---

[609] An Act in Addition to the several Acts regulating the Militia in this Colony, 1755 R.I. Laws, Jan. Sess. 71.

[610] *Id*.

[611] An Act in addition to, and Amendment of the several Acts regulating the Militia, 1756 R.I. Laws, Feb. Sess. 73.

[612] An Act in addition to, and amendment of, an Act entitled "An Act regulating the Militia of this Colony," 1774 R.I. Laws, Dec. Sess. 150.

[613] An Act for raising a Regiment, to serve for Three Months, 1776 R.I. Laws, Nov. Called Sess. 6.

[614] *Id.*

[615] *Id.* at 7.

[616] JOHNSON ET AL., supra note 18, at 283.

[617] *Id.*

[618] *Id.*

[619] An Act for the better forming, regulating and conducting the military Force of this State, 1779 R.I. Laws, Oct. Regular Sess. 29.

[620] 1 JOURNAL OF THE HOUSE OF REPRESENTATIVES OF THE UNITED STATES, supra note 280, at 312-13.

[621] An Act for the better forming, regulating and conducting the military Force of this State, 1779 R.I. Laws, Oct. Regular Sess. 29.

[622] *Id.* at 32.

Electronic copy available at: https://ssrn.com/abstract=3205664

Case 4:23-cv-00547-O Document 20-2 Filed 10/06/23 Page 282 of 555 PageID 400

Then in 1781 Rhode Island passed a law to raise a militia force of 1,200 men, with the statutory guarantee that the term of service would be only one month, and they were "not to be marched out of" the state.[623] The number of men each county raised depended on the number of militia-aged men (16 to 50) within that county.[624] "[E]ach of the non-commissioned Officers and Soldiers" had to "furnish himself with a good Musket, Bayonet, Cartouch-Box, Knapsack, and Blanket."[625] Later that year, a similar law aimed to raise another 500 "able-bodied effective Men."[626] Again, the number of required recruits per county was based on the number of militia-aged men within the county.[627] Arms were the same as before, except that "a good Fire-Arm," was sufficient, rather than only a musket.[628]

Following the 1792 federal UMA, a 1794 law adopted the federal ages and arms.[629] More militia laws were passed in 1795, 1796, 1798, and 1799, none of them altering ages or arms.[630]

J. Vermont: "the freemen of this Commonwealth, and their sons"

Vermont declared its independence from the competing claims of New York and New Hampshire in January 1777.[631] A constitution was adopted in July.[632] Because New York and New Hampshire still claimed Vermont, Vermont was rebuffed from its attempt to send delegates to Congress. So,

---

[623] An Act for embodying and bringing into the Field Twelve Hundred able-bodied effective Men, of the Militia, to serve within this State for One Month, from the Time of their Rendezvous, and no longer Term, and not to be marched out of the same, 1781 R.I. Laws, Feb. Adjourned Sess. 5.

[624] *Id.*

[625] *Id.* at 8.

[626] An Act for incorporating and bringing into the Field Five Hundred able-bodied effective Men, of the Militia, to serve within this State for one Month, from the Time of their Rendezvous, and no longer, and not to be marched out of the same, 1781 R.I. Laws, May Second Sess. 11.

[627] *Id.*

[628] *Id.* at 15.

[629] An Act to organize the Militia of this State, 1794 R.I. Laws, Mar. Adjourned Sess. 14.

[630] An Act establishing a Company of Horse, by the Name of The Independent Light Dragoons of the Second Regiment of Militia in the County of Newport, 1795 R.I. Laws, Jan. Adjourned Sess. 33; An Act in Addition to, and Amendment of, the Act entitled "An Act to organize the Militia of this State," 1796 R.I. Laws, Feb. Adjourned Sess. 33; An Act for calling out the Militia, 1798 R.I. Laws, June Adjourned Sess. 13; An Act in Addition to an Act, entitled "An Act to organize the Militia of this State," 1799 R.I. Laws, Feb. Sess. 17.

[631] Harvey Strum & Paul G. Pierpaoli, Jr., Vermont, in THE ENCYCLOPEDIA OF THE WARS OF THE EARLY AMERICAN REPUBLIC, 1783-1812: A POLITICAL, SOCIAL, AND MILITARY HISTORY 705 (Spencer C. Tucker et al. eds. 2014).

[632] *Id.*; Celise Schnieder, The Green Mountain Boys Constitute Vermont, in THE CONSTITUTIONALISM OF AMERICAN STATES 79 (George E. Connor & Christopher W. Hammons eds. 2008); Sanford Levinson, The 21st Century Rediscovery of Nullification and Secession in American Political Rhetoric: Frivolousness Incarnate, or Serious Arguments to be Wrestled With? 67 ARK. L. REV. 17, 49 (2014). See generally FREDERIC FRANKLYN VAN DE WATER, THE RELUCTANT REPUBLIC: VERMONT, 1724-91 (1941); Peter S. Onuf, State-Making in Revolutionary America: Independent Vermont as a Case Study, 67 J. AM. HIST. 797 (1981).

Electronic copy available at: https://ssrn.com/abstract=3203664

starting in 1777, it operated as something of an independent republic. Vermont had its own currency and postal service, and exchanged ambassadors with France and the Netherlands.[633] In 1791, Vermont applied to join the Union, and was admitted.[634]

The 1777 Vermont Constitution drew on Pennsylvania's 1776 Constitution, which was the first state constitution adopted after the Declaration of Independence.[635] Vermont copied Pennsylvania's right to hunt: "that the inhabitants of this State, shall have liberty to hunt and fowl, in seasonable times, on the lands they hold, and on other lands (not enclosed)."[636]

Vermont's Declaration of Rights included human rights language, based on models from Pennsylvania, Massachusetts, and Virginia, that would, with variations in wording, become ubiquitous in American state constitutions:

> That all men are born equally free and independent, and have certain natural, inherent and unalienable rights, amongst which are the enjoying and defending life and liberty; acquiring, possessing and protecting property, and pursuing and obtaining happiness and safety.[637]

and

> That every member of society hath a right to be protected in the enjoyment of life, liberty and property, and therefore, is bound to contribute his proportion towards the expense of that protection, and yield his personal service, when necessary, or an equivalent thereto.[638]

This language is irreconcilable with a law that requires a person to contribute his personal service but deprives that person of the right to protect his own life.

The Constitution further provided "[t]hat the people have a right to bear arms for the defence of themselves and the State."[639] This language is irreconcilable with a law that requires a person to bear arms for the defense of the state but would prohibit that person from bearing arms for defense of himself.

---

633 Strum & Pierpaolia, supra note 631.
634 Levinson, supra note 632, at 50.
635 Schneider, supra note 632, at 82.
636 VT. CONST. ch. II, art. XXXIX (1777), http://avalon.law.yale.edu/18th_century/vt01.asp.
637 *Id.* at ch. II, art. I.
638 *Id.* at ch. I, art. IX.
639 *Id.* at ch. I, art. XV.

Electronic copy available at: https://ssrn.com/abstract=3205664

Case 4:23-cv-00547-O Document 20-2 Filed 10/06/23 Page 284 of 555 PageID 402

The Vermont Constitution's Declaration of Rights was separate from the Plan or Frame of Government.[640] The latter provided that "[t]he freemen of this Commonwealth, and their sons, shall be trained and armed for its defence, under such regulations, restrictions and exceptions, as the General Assembly shall, by law, direct."[641]

In 1779, Vermont enacted a statute "for forming and regulating the militia; and for encouragement of military skill, for the better defence of this state."[642] It provided that "all male persons, from sixteen years of age to fifty, shall bear arms."[643] The arms mandate was not militia-only; it applied to "every listed soldier and other householder."[644]

The firearm could be "a well fixed firelock, the barrel not less than three feet and a half long, or other good fire-arms."[645] The edged arm was to be "a good sword, cutlass, tomahawk or bayonet."[646] For cleaning, a soldier or "other householder" needed "a worm, and priming-wire, fit for each gun." Suitable ammunition storage for a solider could be with "a cartouch box, or powder-horn and bullet-pouch."[647] Adequate supplies were at least a pound of gun powder, four pounds of bullets, "and six good flints."[648]

Militia regulations were changed twice in 1780, and again in 1781,[649] but the age limits and arms requirements were not impacted.[650]

In 1786, Vermont wrote a new constitution.[651] The convention entertained and rejected a proposal to change the 1777 language of "a right to bear arms for the defence of themselves and the State" into "a right to bear arms for the defence of the community."[652]

The same year, a new militia act kept the minimum militia age at 16, but lowered the maximum age to 45.[653] The gun mandate was changed to "a good musket or firelock."[654] The bayonet was now mandatory.[655] The new

---

640 See *Id.* at ch. I-II.

641 *Id.* at ch. II, art. 5.

642 VERMONT STATE PAPERS, BEING A COLLECTION OF RECORDS AND DOCUMENTS, CONNECTED WITH THE ASSUMPTION AND ESTABLISHMENT OF GOVERNMENT BY THE PEOPLE OF VERMONT; TOGETHER WITH THE JOURNAL OF THE COUNCIL OF SAFETY, THE FIRST CONSTITUTION, THE EARLY JOURNALS OF THE GENERAL ASSEMBLY, AND THE LAWS FROM THE YEAR 1779 TO 1786, INCLUSIVE 305 (1823).

643 *Id.* at 307.

644 *Id.*

645 *Id.*

646 *Id.*

647 *Id.*

648 *Id.*

649 1781 Vt. Acts Feb. Sess. viii.

650 VERMONT STATE PAPERS, supra note 642, at 415; 1780 Vt. Acts Mar. Sess. i.

651 VERMONT STATE PAPERS, supra note 642, at 518; VT. CONST. (1786), http://avalon.law.yale.edu/18th_century/vt02.asp (last visited Jan. 13, 2019).

652 VERMONT STATE PAPERS, supra note 642, at 518.

653 1786 Vt. Acts Oct. Sess. 6.

654 *Id.*

655 *Id.* at 8.

Electronic copy available at: https://ssrn.com/abstract=3205664

law made separate provisions for horsemen; each dragoon had to provide "a case of good pistols, a sword or cutlass not less than three and one half feet in length," plus a pound of gunpowder, "three pounds of sizeable bullets," and eight flints.[656] Since horsemen would have at least two guns (the pair of handguns) they needed a bigger supply of flints.[657]

Ages and arms were kept the same in the 1787 militia act.[658] This was the act in effect when Vermont ratified the Second Amendment on November 3, 1791.[659]

In 1793, Vermont revised its constitution again and also passed a militia act in response to the federal UMA. Vermont's 1793 constitution kept the same arms guarantees as before.[660] The new militia act repealed all previous militia laws.[661] The new law applied to "each and every free, able-bodied white male citizen . . . who is, or shall be of the age of sixteen years, and under the age of forty-five."[662] Like New Hampshire, Vermont diverged from the federal act by keeping a minimum militia age of sixteen.[663]

Every non-commissioned officer and private had to "constantly keep himself provided with a good musket, with an iron or steel rod, a sufficient bayonet and belt, two spare flints, a priming wire and brush, and a knapsack ; a cartridge box and pouch, with a box therein, sufficient to contain not less than twenty-four cartridges suited to the bore of his musket."[664] Horsemen were required to provide themselves with "a pair of pistols, and sabre, and cartridgebox to contain twelve cartridges for pistols."[665] Cavalry officers needed "a pair of pistols, and sword."[666]

K. Virginia: "ALL men that are fittinge to beare armes, shall bringe their peices to the church"

Virginia enacted a myriad of laws in the seventeenth century regarding firearms ownership, many of which allowed or required 18-to-20-year-olds to bear arms. It was not until 1639 that Virginia enacted a statute expressly

---

656 *Id.* at 7.
657 *Id.*
658 1787 Vt. Acts Feb. & Mar. Sess. 94.
659 JOURNAL OF THE FIRST SESSION OF THE SENATE OF THE UNITED STATES OF AMERICA, BEGUN AND HELD AT THE CITY OF NEW YORK, MARCH 4, 1789, AND IN THE THIRTEENTH YEAR OF THE INDEPENDENCE OF THE SAID STATES 377-78 (1820).
660 VT. CONST. (1793).
661 1793 Vt. Acts – Oct. Sess. 19.
662 *Id.* at 20.
663 1 LAWS OF NEW HAMPSHIRE: PROVINCE PERIOD, 1679-1702, at 221 (Albert Stillman Batchellor ed., 1904).
664 1793 Vt. Acts – Oct. Sess. at 30.
665 *Id.* at 26.
666 *Id.*

Electronic copy available at: https://ssrn.com/abstract=3205664

Case 4:23-cv-00547-O Document 20-2 Filed 10/06/23 Page 286 of 555 PageID 404

requiring arms ownership.[667] Previous statutes simply assumed that everyone already did possess arms, and thus ordered arms-carrying when traveling, going to church, or working in the fields. The church mandate reflected the general risks of travel, and the more specific risk that when a large number of people are densely gathered indoors, they are easy targets for hostiles intent on mass killing.

- 1623: "That no man go or send abroad without a sufficient partie will armed."[668]
- 1624: "That men go not to worke in the ground without their arms (and a centinell upon them)."[669]
- 1624: "That the commander of every plantation take care that there be sufficient of powder and amunition within the plantation under his command and their pieces fixt and their arms compleate."[670]
- 1632: "NOE man shall goe or send abroade without a sufficient party well armed."[671]
- 1632: "NOE man shall goe to worke in the grounds without theire armes, and a centinell uppon them"[672]
- 1632: "ALL men that are fittinge to beare armes, shall bringe their pieces to the church"[673]
- 1632: "NOE man shall goe to worke in the grounds without theire armes, and a centinell uppon them places where the commander shall require it"[674]

---

667 1 WILLIAM WALLER HENING, THE STATUTES AT LARGE: BEING A COLLECTION OF ALL THE LAWS OF VIRGINIA, FROM THE FIRST SESSION OF THE LEGISLATURE, IN THE YEAR 1619, at 226 (1809).

668 *Id.* at 127.
The above dates are listed by the New Style year, whose new year begins on January 1. Until 1752, Englishmen used the Old Style calendar, whose new year begins on March 25. Thus, the above enactment in March is 1624 to the modern reader but was considered 1623 by Virginians of the time.

669 *Id.*

670 *Id.*

671 *Id.* at 173.

672 *Id.*

673 *Id.*

674 *Id.* at 198.

Electronic copy available at: https://ssrn.com/abstract=3203664

- 1632: "ALL men that are fittinge to beare armes, shall bringe their peices to the church"[675]
- 1639: "ALL persons except negroes to be provided with arms and ammunition or be fined at pleasure of the Governor and Council"[676]
- 1643: "masters of every family shall bring with them to church on Sundays one fixed and serviceable gun with sufficient powder and shott"[677]
- 1645: "all negro men and women, and all other men from the age of 16 to 60" could be drafted to carry on war against the Indians.[678] This indicates that persons over 16 were considered capable of bearing arms.
- 1659: "That every man able to beare armes have in his house a fixt gunn two pounds of powder and eight pound of shott at least"[679]
- 1662: "that every man able to beare armes have in his house a fixed gun, two pound of powder and eight pound of shot at least"[680]
- 1676: "that in goeing to churches and courts in those tymes of danger, all people be enjoyned and required to goe armed for their greate security"[681]

Also in 1676, Virginia enacted a law "for the safeguard and defence of the country against the Indians."[682] The number of militiamen to be supplied by the counties was based on "the number of tytheables of each county."[683] Persons over 16 were considered titheable (required to pay a tax), thus indicating that the minimum age for the militia was 16.[684]

Laws in 1676 expressly authorized persons to carry arms anywhere, but not in large groups. After a short-lived rebellion involving crowds of armed men, the legislature prohibited armed gatherings of more than five people:

---

675 *Id.*
676 *Id.* at 226.
677 *Id.* at 263.
678 *Id.* at 292.
679 *Id.* at 525.
680 2 WILLIAM WALLER HENING, THE STATUTES AT LARGE: BEING A COLLECTION OF ALL THE LAWS OF VIRGINIA, FROM THE FIRST SESSION OF THE LEGISLATURE, IN THE YEAR 1619, at 126 (1823).
681 *Id.* at 333.
682 *Id.* at 326.
683 *Id.* at 350.
684 *Id.* at 84 (defining what persons are tithable).

Electronic copy available at: https://ssrn.com/abstract=3205664

Case 4:23-cv-00547-O Document 20-2 Filed 10/06/23 Page 288 of 555 PageID 406

> whereas by a branch of an act of assembly made in March last, liberty is granted to all persons to carry their armes wheresoever they goe, which liberty hath beene found to be very prejudiciall to the peace and wellfaire of this colony. Bee it therefore further enacted by this present grand assembly, and the authority thereof, and it is hereby enacted, that if any person or persons shall, from and after publication of this act, presume to assemble together in armes to the number of five or upwards without being legally called together in armes the number of five or upwards, they be held deemed and adjudged as riotous and mutinous, and that they be proceeded against and punished accordingly.[685]

Acts passed in 1679[686] and 1682[687] made no changes to the ages or arms requirements of militiamen. In 1684, arms requirements were made more specific, and separate standards were enacted for mounted militiamen:[688]

> every trooper of the respective colonies of this country, shall furnish and supply himself with a good able horse, saddle, and all arms and furniture, fitt and compleat for a trooper, and that every foot soldier, shall furnish himselfe, with a sword, musquet and other furniture fitt for a soldier, and that each trooper and foot soldier, be provided with two pounds of powder, and eight pounds of shott, and shall continually keep their armes well fixt, cleane, and fitt for the king's service.[689]

These more specific arms requirements were complemented by another law establishing troops of horsemen.[690] Horsemen's arms requirements were now more detailed, requiring three guns: "a case of pistolls, a carbine, sword and all other furniture usuall and necessary for horse souldiers or troopers."[691]

Militia-related acts were passed in 1692,[692] 1693,[693] 1695,[694] and 1699,[695] but none of them addressed age limits or arms requirements.

In 1701, "An act for the better strengthening the frontiers and discovering the approaches of an enemy" was passed.[696] It provided 500-

---

685 *Id.* at 381. The precipitating event was Bacon's Rebellion, a short-lived uprising of frontiersman who marched on the capital because they were disgruntled with the colonial government's failure to protect them from Indians. *See* JAMES D. RICE, TALES FROM A REVOLUTION: BACON'S REBELLION AND THE TRANSFORMATION OF EARLY AMERICA (2013).

686 2 HENING, *supra* note 682, at 433.

687 *Id.* at 498.

688 3 WILLIAM WALLER HENING, THE STATUTES AT LARGE: BEING A COLLECTION OF ALL THE LAWS OF VIRGINIA, FROM THE FIRST SESSION OF THE LEGISLATURE, IN THE YEAR 1619, at 13 (1823).

689 *Id.* at 14.

690 *Id.* at 17.

691 *Id.*

692 *Id.* at 98, 115.

693 *Id.* at 119.

694 *Id.* at 126.

695 *Id.* at 176.

696 *Id.* at 205.

Electronic copy available at: https://ssrn.com/abstract=3205664

Case 4:23-cv-00547-O Document 20-2 Filed 10/06/23 Page 289 of 555 PageID 407

acre land grants, with the proviso that the grantee keep "upon the said land one christian man between sixteen and sixty years of age perfect of limb, able and fitt for service."[697] Such men should be "continually provided with a well fixt musquett or fuzee, a good pistoll, sharp simeter, tomahauk and five pounds of good clean pistoll powder and twenty pounds of sizable leaden bulletts or swan or goose shott to be kept within the fort directed by this act besides the powder and shott for his necessary or usefull shooting at game..."[698] In other words, the frontier guardians would keep at home small quantities of gunpowder for ordinary use, but their larger reserves of gunpowder would be kept in a fort. The gunpowder of the time was blackpowder, which is volatile, so large quantities often were centrally stored, ideally in reinforced brick buildings.[699]

Virginia's first elaborate militia act was passed in 1705.[700] The militia included "all male persons whatsoever, from sixteen to sixty years of age . . . to serve in horse or foot."[701] An infantryman needed "a firelock, muskett or fusee well fixed, a good sword," cartridge box, and ammunition.[702] He had to bring six rounds of ammunition to muster. Additionally, he had to "have at his place of abode two pounds of powder and eight pounds of shott, and bring the same into the field with him when thereunto specially required."[703]

A horseman needed the usual tack and ammunition accoutrements along with a pair of pistols and a sword.[704] He had to bring eight rounds of ammunition to muster.[705] At his usual place of abode, he also had to keep a well fixed carabine, two pounds of powder and eight pounds of shot.[706]

The act made it unlawful for creditors to seize a militiaman's arms as payment for debts.[707] If a creditor nevertheless took someone's militia equipment, the seizure would "be unlawful and void."[708] Any "officer or person that presumes to make or serve the same" (e.g., a sheriff serving a writ of attachment) would "be lyable to the suit of the party grieved, wherein double damages shall be given upon recovery."[709] Later in the century, the

---

697 *Id.*
698 *Id.* at 206-07.
699 JOHNSON ET AL., *supra* note 18, at 250.
700 3 HENING, *supra* note 688, at 335.
701 *Id.* at 336.
702 *Id.*
703 *Id.*
704 *Id.* at 338.
705 *Id.*
706 *Id.*
707 *Id.* (The required arms and accoutrements were "free and exempted at all times from being impressed upon any account whatsoever, and likewise from being seized or taken by any manner of distress, attachment, or writt of execution.")
708 *Id.*
709 *Id.*

Electronic copy available at: https://ssrn.com/abstract=3205664
KnifeRights MSJ App.000284

federal UMA would likewise make militia equipment immune from seizure for debts.[710]

Subsequent Virginia acts of 1705[711] and 1711[712] kept the age and arms rules. A 1720 act appropriated one thousand pounds to distribute "to each christian titheable [subject to taxation], one firelock, musket, one socket,[713] bayonet fitted thereto, one cartouch box, eight pounds bullet, two pounds powder, until the whole one thousand pounds be laid out."[714]

A 1723 act made "the colonel, or chief officer of the militia of every county, have full power and authority to list all free male persons whatsoever, from twenty-one to sixty years of age, within his respective county, to serve in horse or foot."[715] However, "nothing in this act contained, shall hinder or debar any captain from admitting any able-bodied white person, who shall be above the age of sixteen years, to serve in his troop or company, in the place of any person required by this act to be listed."[716] In other words, 16-20-year-olds could be hired or could volunteer as substitutes for older men.

The arms requirements were elaborate. For horsemen, a good serviceable horse, tack accoutrements, "holsters, and a case of pistols, cutting sword, or cutlace, and double cartouch box."[717] At home, they had to keep a carbine, plus "one pound of powder, and four pounds of shot."[718]

Infantry needed "a firelock, musquet, or fuzee, well fixed, and bayonet fitted to such musquet or fuzee, or a good cutting sword or cutlace," along with the cartridge box.[719] Reserves to be kept at home were the same powder and shot as for horsemen.[720]

Again, militiamen's arms were immune from creditors.[721]

---

710 1 Stat. 271, § 1 (1792) ("And every citizen so enrolled, and providing himself with the arms, ammunition and accoutrements, required as aforesaid, shall hold the same exempted from all suits, distresses, executions or sales, for debt or for the payment of taxes.").

711 3 HENING, *supra* note 688, at 362.

712 4 WILLIAM WALLER HENING, THE STATUTES AT LARGE: BEING A COLLECTION OF ALL THE LAWS OF VIRGINIA, FROM THE FIRST SESSION OF THE LEGISLATURE, IN THE YEAR 1619, at 9 (1823).

713 Located near the muzzle of a gun, the socket was used to attach the bayonet to the gun, so that the gun could be used as a pole-arm at close quarters. J.N. GEORGE, ENGLISH GUNS AND RIFLES 80-81 (1947).

714 4 HENNIG, *supra* note 712, at 77-78.

715 *Id.* at 118.

716 *Id.* at 125.

717 *Id.*

718 *Id.*

719 *Id.*

720 *Id.* at 120.

721 *Id.* at 121.

> And for an encouragement of every soldier to provide and furnish himself, according to the directions of this act, and his security to keep his horse, arms and ammunition, when provided, *Be it enacted, by the authority aforesaid*, That the horses and furniture, arms and ammunition, provided and kept, in pursuance of this act, be free and exempted at all items from being impressed upon any account whatsoever; and likewise, from being seized or taken by any manner of distress, attachment, or writ of execution. And that

Electronic copy available at: https://ssrn.com/abstract=3205664

Acts passed in 1727,[722] 1732,[723] and 1734[724] made no changes to the militia ages or arms.

Virginia's 1738 act "for the settling and better Regulation of the Militia,"[725] appears to be the only militia act in the colonial or founding era that excluded persons aged 18-to-20. The militia under this act consisted of "all male persons, above the age of one and twenty years."[726]

With the French & Indian War underway, Virginia passed several militia-related acts in 1757. The first act augmented the already-existing forces in the field by allowing officers to add certain men between 18 and 50.[727] Reflecting a still greater need for additional forces, Virginia's 1757 militia act restored the minimum age to 18 and set the maximum age at 60.[728] Soldiers had to furnish themselves with "a firelock well fixed, a bayonet fitted to the same," and keep an extra pound of powder and "four pounds of ball" at home.[729]

Three other acts were passed in 1757; the first preventing mutiny and desertion,[730] the second preventing invasions and insurrections,[731] and the third protecting against Indian attacks.[732] None addressed militia ages.

Acts passed in 1758[733] and 1759[734] made no changes to the militia's age limits or arms requirements.

Like other colonies, Virginia had various exemptions from militia duty. A 1762 amendment ensured that "every person so exempted shall always keep in his house or place of abode such arms, accoutrements, and ammunition, as are by the [1757] act required to be kept by the militia."[735] The 1757 act was continued in 1771.[736]

> every distress, seizure, attachment, or execution, made or served upon any of the premises, be unlawful and void: And that the officer or person that presumes to make or serve the same, be liable to the suit of the party grieved: wherein double damages shall be given upon a recovery.

722 *Id.* at 197.
723 *Id.* at 323.
724 *Id.* at 395.
725 5 WILLIAM WALLER HENING, THE STATUTES AT LARGE: BEING A COLLECTION OF ALL THE LAWS OF VIRGINIA, FROM THE FIRST SESSION OF THE LEGISLATURE, IN THE YEAR 1619, at 16 (1823).
726 *Id.*
727 7 WILLIAM WALLER HENING, THE STATUTES AT LARGE: BEING A COLLECTION OF ALL THE LAWS OF VIRGINIA, FROM THE FIRST SESSION OF THE LEGISLATURE, IN THE YEAR 1619, at 69, 70 (1823).
728 *Id.* at 93.
729 *Id.* at 94. This act was continued in 1759. *Id.* at 274.
730 *Id.* at 87. This act was continued in 1758, *id.* at 169, and 1759, *id.* at 280.
731 *Id.* at 106. This act was continued in 1758, *id.* at 237, and 1759, *id.* at 384.
732 *Id.* at 121.
733 *Id.* at 171. This act was amended in 1758, but the ages and arms of militiamen remained unchanged. *Id.* at 251.
734 *Id.* at 279.
735 *Id.* at 534, 537. The printed volume does not have a page 535 or 536.
736 8 WILLIAM WALLER HENING, THE STATUTES AT LARGE: BEING A COLLECTION OF ALL THE LAWS OF VIRGINIA, FROM THE FIRST SESSION OF THE LEGISLATURE, IN THE YEAR 1619, at 503 (1823).

Electronic copy available at: https://ssrn.com/abstract=3205664

The American Revolution began on April 19, 1775, when armed Americans resisted British attempts to seize firearms and gunpowder at Lexington and Concord, Massachusetts. In Virginia, A Convention of Delegates for the Counties and Corporations in the Colony of Virginia was held in the summer of 1775. The first enactment of the Convention was "An ordinance for raising and embodying a sufficient force, for the defence and protection of this colony."[737] The ordinance established militia age limits of 16 and 50.[738] Every militiaman had to "furnish himself with a good rifle, if to be had, or otherwise with a tomahawk, common firelock, bayonet, pouch, or cartouch box, three charges of powder and ball, and appear with the same at the place appointed for mustering, and shall constantly keep by him one pound of powder and four pounds of ball."[739]

In 1777, Virginia passed its first militia act as a state, with Patrick Henry as governor.[740] "An Act for regulating and disciplining the Militia" applied to "all free male persons, hired servants [not indentured], and apprentices, between the ages of sixteen and fifty years."[741] "The county lieutenant, colonels, lieutenant colonels, and major" had to appear "with a sword."[742] Every captain and lieutenant needed a "firelock and bayonet, a cartouch box, a sword, and three charges of powder and ball."[743] Ensigns needed a sword.[744] Non-commissioned officers and privates had to have

> a rifle and tomahawk, or good fire-lock and bayonet, with a pouch and horn, or a cartouch or cartridge box, and with three charges of powder and ball; and, moreover, each of the said officers and soldiers shall constantly keep

---

[737] 9 WILLIAM WALLER HENING, THE STATUTES AT LARGE: BEING A COLLECTION OF ALL THE LAWS OF VIRGINIA, FROM THE FIRST SESSION OF THE LEGISLATURE, IN THE YEAR 1619, at 9 (1823). According to the statutory compiler, "In the original, the title of this ordinance is wanting; nor are any of the chapters numbered. The title is here inserted from the Chancellors' Revisal, edi 1785, p. 30, and the late edition of the Ordinances of 1816, p. 29." *Id.*

[738] *Id.* at 16.

[739] *Id.* at 28. A militia ordinance passed at the Convention held the following year did not change the militia ages. *Id.* at 139. Nor did an act passed in October of 1776. *Id.* at 267.
A report from July 28, 1775, mentioned a British major who was killed in action, and had four balls lodged in his body. "The Americans load their rifle-barrel guns with a ball slit almost in four quarters, which when fired out of those guns breaks into four pieces and generally does great execution." Alexander Purdie, VA. GAZETTE (Oct. 20, 1775), http://research.history.org/DigitalLibrary/va-gazettes/VGSinglePage.cfm?IssueIDNo=75.P.74.

[740] 9 HENNIG, *supra* note 737, at 267.

[741] *Id.* This act was amended in 1781, but the amendment did not change the required arms or ages. 10 WILLIAM WALLER HENING, THE STATUTES AT LARGE: BEING A COLLECTION OF ALL THE LAWS OF VIRGINIA, FROM THE FIRST SESSION OF THE LEGISLATURE, IN THE YEAR 1619, at 416 (1823).

[742] 9 HENING, *supra* note 737, at 268.

[743] *Id.*

[744] *Id.*

Electronic copy available at: https://ssrn.com/abstract=3203664

Case 4:23-cv-00547-O Document 20-2 Filed 10/06/23 Page 293 of 555 PageID 411

> one pound of powder and four pounds of ball, to be produced whenever called for by his commanding officer.[745]

Virginia also passed an act in 1777 to raise troops for the Continental Army.[746] "[A]ble bodied young men above the age of sixteen years" were eligible for enlistment.[747]

Another 1777 act required "all free born male inhabitants of this state, above the age of sixteen years" to "renounce and refuse all allegiance to George the third" and swear to "be faithful and bear true allegiance to the commonwealth of Virginia, as a free and independent state."[748] Because 16-year-olds were old enough to fight, they were old enough to decide whether their loyalty lay with the king or the commonwealth.

Another statewide law in 1777 left arms and ages unchanged.[749]

The militia laws had educational exemptions, but these were tightened in May 1777, by "An act for regulating and disciplining the militia of the city of Williamsburg and borough of Norfolk."[750] Its purpose was "FOR forming the citizens of Williamsburg, borough of Norfolk, and the professors and students of William and Mary college, into a militia." The William & Mary militia included "all male persons between the ages of sixteen and fifty years."[751]

Later that year, an October 1777 "Act for speedily recruiting the Virginia Regiments on the continental establishment and for raising additional troops of Volunteers" called for drafting single men above eighteen and with no children for the Continental Army.[752]

Virginia passed many militia laws in 1778, but none of these changed the militia ages or arms.[753] Nor did the militia-related acts passed in 1779.[754]

Three acts regarding the militia were passed in 1781. The first was "to raise two legions for the defence of the state."[755] Neither this act, nor its amendment added that same year, altered the arms or ages of militiamen.[756]

---

745 *Id.* at 268-69.
746 *Id.* at 275.
747 *Id.*
748 *Id.* at 281.
749 *Id.* at 291.
750 *Id.* at 313.
751 *Id.*
752 *Id.* at 337, 339.
753 *Id.* at 445, 449, 452, 454, 458.
754 10 HENING, *supra* note 741, at 18, 23, 28, 32, 83. One act, entitled "An Act for raising a body of Volunteers for the defence of the commonwealth," allowed two battalions responsible for protecting the western frontiers to furnish themselves "with such clothing, arms, and accoutrements, as are most proper for that service." *Id.* at 20.
755 *Id.* at 391.
756 *Id.* at 410.

Electronic copy available at: https://ssrn.com/abstract=3205664

Case 4:23-cv-00547-O Document 20-2 Filed 10/06/23 Page 294 of 555 PageID 412

The second 1781 act was "for ascertaining the number of militia in this state."[757] It ordered "captains or commanding officers of the respective companies in their several counties," to make "an exact list of each company, distinguishing all such as are under eighteen years of age."[758]

The third 1781 act was "for enlisting soldiers to serve in the continental army."[759] It made no mention of arms or ages, but it did require that a Continental soldier be at least "five feet four inches tall."[760]

A 1782 act added some equipment detail for cavalry: "horseman's sword and cap, one pistol, and a pair of holsters."[761]

In 1784, Virginia increased its militia's minimum age to 18, and kept the maximum age at 50.[762] Militiamen were required to appear "armed, equipped, and accoutred" according to rank.[763] "The county lieutenants, lieutenant colonels commandant, and majors, with a sword; the captains, lieutenants, and ensigns, with a sword and espontoon."[764] Noncommissioned officers and privates needed to supply themselves "with a good clean musket, carrying an ounce ball,[765] and three feet eight inches long in the barrel, with a good bayonet and iron ramrod well fitted thereto."[766] Plus also "a cartridge box properly made, to contain and secure twenty cartridges" and "a good knapsack and canteen."[767]

Previously, militiamen had simply been told to keep an extra pound of powder and four pounds of lead at home, and to bring it with them if they were called into action. Now, to prove that they possessed such quantities, they had to bring to "every muster…twenty blind cartridges."[768] Further "each sergeant shall have a pair of moulds fit [to] cast balls for their respective companies."[769]

Finally, "the militia of the counties westward of the Blue Ridge, and the counties below adjoining thereto," could forego the muskets, and instead choose "good rifles with proper accoutrements."[770]

---

757 *Id.* at 396.
758 *Id.*
759 *Id.* at 433.
760 *Id.*
761 11 WILLIAM WALLER HENING, THE STATUTES AT LARGE: BEING A COLLECTION OF ALL THE LAWS OF VIRGINIA, FROM THE FIRST SESSION OF THE LEGISLATURE, IN THE YEAR 1619, at 173 (1823).
762 *Id.* at 476.
763 *Id.* at 478.
764 *Id.*
765 That meant 16 balls to the pound of lead. This is slightly smaller than .69 caliber, which is 15 balls to the pound. *Lead ball, per pound*, RED RIVER BRIGADE (Jan. 26, 2014), http://www.redriverbrigade.com/lead-ball-per-pound/.
766 11 HENING, *supra* note 761, at 478-79.
767 *Id.* at 479.
768 *Id.* The meaning of "blind cartridge" is obscure. It may mean a standard paper cartridge.
769 *Id.*
770 *Id.*

Electronic copy available at: https://ssrn.com/abstract=3203664

The following year, Virginia passed the act[771] that defined its militia when it ratified the Second Amendment on December 15, 1791,[772] making the Amendment part of the Constitution. Virginia ratified nine other amendments on the same day, enshrining them in the Constitution, and making December 15 the birthday of the Bill of Rights.[773]

The 1785 Virginia act included in the general militia "all free male persons between the ages of eighteen and fifty years."[774] Some young men would get extra training in a

> light company to be formed of young men, from eighteen to twenty-five years old, whose activity and domestic circumstances will admit of a frequency of training, and strictness of discipline, not practical for the militia in general, and returning to the main body, on their arrival at the latter period, will be constantly giving thereto a military pride and experience, from which the best of consequences will result.[775]

These light companies were "in all respects [] subject to the same regulations and orders as the rest of the militia."[776] For all the militia, the requisite arms were the same as before.[777]

On December 22, 1792, Virginia passed a new militia law in response to the federal Uniform Militia Act, to "carry the same into effect."[778] The act provided for the continuation of the same "light company" "of young men from eighteen to twenty-five years age" that had been established in Virginia's previous militia act.[779] The 1792 Virginia law made no changes in the age limits. A 1799 amendment did not address ages or arms.[780]

L. Massachusetts Bay: "from ten yeares ould to the age of sixsteen yeares"

Virginia's ratification of the Second Amendment and of nine other Amendments made the Bill of Rights the supreme law of the land, effective

---

771 12 WILLIAM WALLER HENING, THE STATUTES AT LARGE: BEING A COLLECTION OF ALL THE LAWS OF VIRGINIA, FROM THE FIRST SESSION OF THE LEGISLATURE, IN THE YEAR 1619, at 9 (1823). This act was amended in 1786, but it did not impact the age limits or arms requirements. *Id.* at 234.

772 JOURNAL OF THE FIRST SESSION OF THE SENATE OF THE UNITED STATES OF AMERICA, *supra* note 659, at 361.

773 U.S. CONST. amends. I-X.

774 12 HENING, *supra* note 771, at 10.

775 *Id.* at 14-15.

776 *Id.* at 15.

777 *Id.* at 12.

778 13 WILLIAM WALLER HENING, THE STATUTES AT LARGE: BEING A COLLECTION OF ALL THE LAWS OF VIRGINIA, FROM THE FIRST SESSION OF THE LEGISLATURE, IN THE YEAR 1619, at 340 (1823).

779 *Id.* at 344.

780 2 THE STATUTES AT LARGE OF VIRGINIA: FROM OCTOBER SESSION 1792, TO DECEMBER SESSION 1806 [I.E. 1807], INCLUSIVE, IN THREE VOLUMES, (NEW SERIES,) BEING A CONTINUATION OF HENING 141 (1835).

Electronic copy available at: https://ssrn.com/abstract=3205664

December 15, 1791.[781] The three states that had not yet acted—Massachusetts, Georgia, and Connecticut—therefore had no reason to take up the issue. Yet in all three of these states, ratification of the Second Amendment and the rest of the Bill of Rights was placed on the legislative agenda in early 1939. These 1939 ratifications were apparently enacted to make a statement at a time when right-wing fascists (e.g., Mussolini, Hitler, Franco), and left-wing fascists (e.g., Stalin, Mao) were wantonly murdering disarmed victims. The first state to ratify in 1939 was Massachusetts, on March 2.[782]

In the colonial period and Founding Era, the Bay State had especially strong laws for mass armament. In 1631, Massachusetts Bay enacted a law mandating that all adult males be armed.[783] A 1637 statute required everyone 18 and older to "come to the publike assemblies with their muskets, or other peeces fit for servise, furnished with match, powder, & bullets."[784]

Young people of both sexes were expected to be proficient with arms. A 1645 statute mandated that "all youth within this jurisdiction, from ten yeares ould to the age of sixsteen yeares, shalbe instructed, by some one of the officers of the band,[785] or some other experienced souldier…upon the usuall training dayes, in the exercise of armes, as small guns, halfe pikes, bowes & arrows."[786] There was an exemption for conscientious objectors; youths would not have to train "against their parents minds."[787]

In the 1770 Boston Massacre, British soldiers fired on a crowd that was pelting them with stones and ice balls. John Adams served as defense attorney.[788] Both sides agreed that the soldiers and the crowd each had the right to carry arms for self-defense. "The court's charge to the jury asserted the traditional duty of private persons to respond to the hue and cry and to carry arms: 'It is the duty of all persons (except women, decrepit persons, and infants under fifteen) to aid and assist the peace officers to suppress riots

---

781 U.S. CONST. amends. I-X.

782 JOURNAL OF THE SENATE OF THE COMMONWEALTH OF MASSACHUSETTS 369 (1939). For the essential similarity of the totalitarian "fascist," "communist," or "national socalist" regimes, *see*, *e.g.*, Arthur M. Schlesinger, Jr., The Vital Center: The Politics of Freedom (1949).

783 KYLE F. ZELNE, A RABBLE IN ARMS: MASSACHUSETTS TOWNS AND MILITIAMEN DURING KING PHILIP'S WAR 28 (2009).

784 1 RECORDS OF THE GOVERNOR AND COMPANY OF THE MASSACHUSETTS BAY IN NEW ENGLAND 190 (Nathaniel B. Shurtleff ed., 1853).

785 The "trained band." In American usage, either the militia in general, or an elite militia unit that received extra training. In British usage, only an elite unit.

786 2 RECORDS OF THE GOVERNOR AND COMPANY OF THE MASSACHUSETTS BAY IN NEW ENGLAND 99 (Nathaniel B. Shurtleff ed., 1853).

787 *Id.*

788 JOHN ADAMS, 3 LEGAL PAPERS OF JOHN ADAMS 5-6 (L. Kinvin Wroth & Hiller B. Zobel eds., 1965).

Electronic copy available at: https://ssrn.com/abstract=3203664

& c. when called upon to do it. They may take with them such weapons as are necessary to enable them effectually to do it.'"[789]

As political tensions mounted, the British tried to suppress political meetings. They could not do so, for the Redcoats were far outnumbered by armed Americans, including teenagers. When British General sent two companies of Redcoats to dissolve an illegal town meeting in Salem, soldiers backed down when swarms of armed patriots began to appear.[790] Gage's aide John Andrews wrote:

> there was upwards of three thousand men assembled there from the adjacent towns, with full determination to rescue the Committee if they should be sent to prison, even if they were Oblig'd to repel force by force, being sufficiently provided for such a purpose; as indeed they are all through the country—every male above the age of 16 possessing a firelock with double the quantity of powder and ball enjoin'd by law.[791]

At the time Massachusetts ratified the Constitution on February 6, 1788, its militia laws provided for "the train-band to contain all able-bodied men, from sixteen to forty years of age, and the alarm-list all other men under fifty years of age."[792]

Every militiaman "not under the control of parents, masters or guardians, and being of sufficient ability therefore in the judgment of the selectmen of the town in which he shall dwell," had to "equip himself, and be constantly provided with a good fire-arm," plus a ramrod, cleaning tools, a bayonet and scabbard, a cartridge box to hold "fifteen cartridges at least," plus six flints, one pound of powder, forty leaden balls suitable for this firearm, a haversack, blanket, and canteen."[793] Officers and cavalrymen had to provide themselves with horses plus associated equipment, and a carbine (a shorter, lighter-weight long gun, well-suited for use while mounted).[794]

Militiamen who failed to equip themselves with the required arms could be fined.[795]

Regarding militiamen who *were* "under the control of parents, masters or guardians," the parent, master, or guardian was responsible for providing the equipment, and could be fined for failure to do so.[796] Both servants and

---

789 *Id.* at 285.

790 RAY RAPHAEL, A PEOPLE'S HISTORY OF THE AMERICAN REVOLUTION: HOW COMMON PEOPLE SHAPED THE FIGHT FOR INDEPENDENCE 55 (2002).

791 *Id.*

792 I. THOMAS & E.T. ANDREWS, THE PERPETUAL LAWS OF THE COMMONWEALTH OF MASSACHUSETTS FROM THE ESTABLISHMENT OF ITS CONSTITUTION IN THE YEAR 1780 TO THE END OF THE YEAR 1800, at 339 (1801).

793 *Id.* at 340-41.

794 *Id.* at 347.

795 *Id.* at 341.

796 *Id.*

Electronic copy available at: https://ssrn.com/abstract=3205664

young people who were living at home were, presumably, not yet earning enough income to live independently, so they might not be able to afford their own arms.

For older militiamen who were genuinely unable to afford arms, the town would be responsible for providing them.[797] The donated arms remained town property and could not be sold by the militiaman.[798]

M. Plymouth Colony: "each man servant"

By 1939, Plymouth had long ceased to exist as an independent political entity. Even in the early days, it had been overshadowed by its larger and culturally similar neighbor, the Massachusetts Bay Colony. In 1691, Plymouth chose assimilation with Massachusetts; it was a defensive measure, since New York was trying to annex Plymouth.[799] So we cover Plymouth Colony in order with Massachusetts Bay.

Plymouth's first written arms mandate came in 1632.[800] "[E]very freeman or other inhabitant must provide for himselfe and each under him able to beare arms a musket and other serviceable peece with bandeleroes and other apurtanances," plus two pounds of powder and 10 pounds of bullets.[801] This was reenacted in 1636, specifying that it included "each man servant."[802] As in Massachusetts, the master had to provide the arms for the servants, many of whom presumably could not afford their own.[803]

A 1643 update revised the required firearms.[804] A comprehensive recodification in 1671 specified that the militia is "every man from the age sixteen and upwards."[805] It also required smiths to repair arms and to charge the same rates they charged for other work.[806] In 1676, old-fashioned matchlocks (ignited by burning cord) were no longer acceptable for the militia; the gun had to be a flintlock or a snaphaunce (ignited by a spark from flint striking steel).[807] A 1681 revision added the requirement to possess a sword or cutlass.[808]

---

[797] *Id.*
[798] *Id.*
[799] DAVID S. LOVEJOY, THE GLORIOUS REVOLUTION IN AMERICA 347 (1972).
[800] THE COMPACT WITH THE CHARTER AND LAWS OF THE COLONY OF NEW PLYMOUTH 30-31 (William Brigham ed., 1836).
[801] *Id.* at 31.
[802] *Id.* at 44-45.
[803] *Id.*
[804] *Id.* at 74 (service guns should be matchlocks, snaphaunces [an early version of the flintlock], or flintlocks, not longer than four and a half feet, and of a bore at least the size of a caliver or a bastard musket).
[805] *Id.* at 285-86.
[806] *Id.* at 286.
[807] *Id.* at 184.
[808] *Id.* at 192.

Electronic copy available at: https://ssrn.com/abstract=3205664

Case 4:23-cv-00547-O Document 20-2 Filed 10/06/23 Page 299 of 555 PageID 417

Like the other colonies, Plymouth had many indentured servants. After their term of service was completed, they became legally free. The age of attaining freedom would vary of course, but it could include people in their late teens or early twenties. Former male servants, or other male single persons, could not set up their own households unless they possessed the requisite arms and ammunition.[809] If they did not, they had to work for someone who would buy the arms and ammunition for them.[810]

N. Georgia: No going to church without arms

Georgia did not get around to ratifying the Second Amendment until March 18, 1939.[811] It was only three days after Hitler had invaded Czechoslovakia. As was the typical Nazi practice, one of the first acts of the dictatorship was to confiscate arms from the new subjects.[812]

In 1791, when the Second Amendment became part of the Constitution, Georgia required males between 16 and 50 to serve in the militia and provide their own arms.[813] The arms requirement was "one rifle musket, fowling-piece or fusee fit for action, with a cartridge box or powder-horn answerable for that purpose with six cartridges or powder and lead equal thereto and three flints."[814]

A 1770 Georgia law, copied from South Carolina, imposed fines on those in the militia who came to church unarmed.[815]

---

809 *Id.* at 35.

810 *Id.* On top of the individual requirement to possess arms, towns had to have their own: two flintlocks and two swords per 30 men. *Id*. at 84. These could be available as a reserve in case of breakage during war; they could also be furnished to persons who could not afford their own.

811 ACTS AND RESOLUTIONS OF THE GENERAL ASSEMBLY OF THE STATE OF GEORGIA 1414 (1939).

812 *See*, *e.g.*, THE TIMES (London), Mar. 16, 1939, at 16b.

> Immediately a proclamation, bordered in red and bearing the German eagle and swastika which is now familiar to every Czech town and village, was posted…Under this proclamation no one was allowed in the streets after 8 p.m. . . .; all popular gatherings were forbidden; and weapons, munitions, and wireless sets were ordered to be surrendered immediately. Disobedience of these orders, the proclamation ended, would be severely punished under military law.

813 19 (pt. 2) THE COLONIAL RECORDS OF THE STATE OF GEORGIA 348 (Allen D. Candler ed., 1911), https://books.google.com/books?id=1TMTAAAAYAAJ&printsec=frontcover&source=gbs_ge_summary_r&cad=0#v=onepage&q&f=false.

814 *Id.* at 353.

815 19 (pt. 1), *id.* at 137-40. Georgia continued to mandate the carrying of arms in non-militia contexts in the nineteenth century. An 1806 law required "All male white inhabitants . . . from the age of eighteen to forty-five years . . . to appear and work upon the several roads, creeks, causeways, water-passages, and bridges" and to "carry with him one good and sufficient gun or pair of pistols, and at least nine cartridges to fit the same, or twelve loads of powder and ball, or buck shot." OLIVER H. PRINCE, DIGEST OF THE LAWS OF THE STATE OF GEORGIA 407, 409 (1822), https://books.google.com/books?id=9tUtYuEuWC0C&pg=PA339&dq=georgia+1786+laws&hl=en&sa=X&ved=0ahUKEwjj9Ym0nafeAhVhpoMKHaLIC0IQ6AEIRzAF#v=onepage&q=%22gun%22&f=false.

Electronic copy available at: https://ssrn.com/abstract=3205664

O. Connecticut: "all persons shall beare Armes that are above the age sixteene yeeres"

The Nutmeg State was also slow in its Second Amendment ratification, finally acting on April 19, 1939.[816] The date was the anniversary of the battles of Lexington and Concord, when the American Revolution had begun in 1775.[817] On that date, American militia and irregulars had repulsed British efforts to confiscate arms. But 164 years later, totalitarianism was on the march. Italian tyrant Mussolini had invaded Albania on Good Friday, April 7, 1939, and conquered the small nation in a few days.[818]

When Connecticut was founded in 1636, its government ordered that "every souldier" should have "in his own howse in a readiness" two pounds of gunpowder and twenty lead bullets.[819] A more detailed law in 1637 ordered "that all persons shall beare Armes that are above the age sixteene yeeres."[820] Commissioners and church officers were exempt.[821] "[E]very military man" had to have "continually in his house" half a pound of powder and two pounds of bullets.[822] Towns were required to have specified reserves of gunpowder and lead bullets.[823]

Central stores of bullets and gunpowder were important in case of extended fighting. The colonists' personal supplies of ammunition might run out. During wartime, roads might be captured by the enemy, so a town might not be able to bring in more gunpowder and lead from outside.

In 1650, the colony ordered "[t]hat all persons that are above the age of sixteene yeares, except magistrates and church officers, shall beare Armes…; and every male person … aboue the said Age, shall have in continuall readines, a good muskitt or other gunn, fitt for service, and allowed by the Clark of the Band."[824]

---

[816] JOURNAL OF THE SENATE OF THE STATE OF CONNECTICUT, JAN. SESS., 1939: PART 2, at 1403 (1939), https://babel.hathitrust.org/cgi/pt?id=mdp.39015067981400;view=1up;seq=193.

[817] *See*, *e.g.*, ALLEN FRENCH, THE DAY OF CONCORD AND LEXINGTON: THE NINETEENTH OF APRIL, 1775 (1984).

[818] Albania had won its independence from the Ottoman Empire, in a 1908-12 war in which Albanians demanded, inter alia, the right to bear arms. But in 1928 King Zog, an authoritarian ruler, had banned arms for all tribes but his own. OWEN PEARSON, ALBANIA AND KING ZOG: INDEPENDENCE, REPUBLIC AND MONARCHY 1908-1939, at 21, 26-27, 299, 304 (2005).

[819] 1 PUBLIC RECORDS OF THE COLONY OF CONNECTICUT 3 (J. Hammond Trumbull ed., 1850).

[820] *Id.* at 15.

[821] *Id.*

[822] *Id.*

[823] *Id.* at 15-16.

[824] *Id.* at 542-43; CODE OF 1650, BEING A COMPILATION OF THE EARLIEST LAWS AND ORDERS OF THE GENERAL COURT OF CONNECTICUT 72-73 (Silas Andrus ed., 1822).

Electronic copy available at: https://ssrn.com/abstract=3203664

New Haven, a separate colony until 1662, required males 16 to 60 to have "a good serviceable gun…to be kept in a constant fitness in all Respects for service."[825] Also necessary were a "a good sword," bandoleers, a powder horn, worm, scourer, priming wire, shot bag, charger, "and whatsoever else is necessary for such service."[826] The ammunition minimum was at least "a pound of good powder" plus "four pounds of pistol bullets" or twenty-four long gun bullets, plus match for a matchlock or flints for a flintlock.[827]

Connecticut ratified the Constitution a week after Georgia on January 9, 1788. Under the state law of the time, "[A]ll male Persons, from sixteen Years of Age to Forty-five, shall constitute the Military Force of this State."[828] Although not part of "the military force," all "Householders under fifty-five Years of Age" had to "be furnished at their own Expence" with the same arms as the militia.[829]

These arms were "a well fixed Musket, the Barrel not less than three Feet and an Half long, and a Bayonet fitted thereto, with a Sheath and Belt or Strap for the same."[830] Militiamen, males under fifty-five, and householders also needed a ramrod, worm, priming-wire, and cartridge box with "fifteen rounds of Cartridges, made with good Musket Powder and Ball, fitting his Gun."[831] Also needed were "six good Flints" and "one Canteen holding not less than three Pints."[832]

Light-Dragoons (horsemen) had to have "a Case of good Pistols…one Pound of good Powder, three Pounds of sizable Bullets, twelve Flints, a good pair of Boots and Spurs."[833]

IV. FEDERAL LAWS

The Continental Congress, consisting of delegates from the thirteen colonies,[834] began exercising powers of national sovereignty in 1774.[835] Independence was formally declared in 1776. In 1781, the Continental

---

825 NEW-HAVEN'S SETTLING IN NEW-ENGLAND AND SOME LAWES FOR GOVERNMENT: PUBLISHED FOR THE USE OF THAT COLONY 60-61 (1656).

826 *Id.* at 61. The worm was a device for cleaning the barrel and for extracting an unfired bullet from a firearm. The priming wire was for cleaning the touch hole—the small hole where the fire from the priming pan connected with the main powder charge in the barrel.

827 *Id.*

828 ACTS AND LAWS OF THE STATE OF CONNECTICUT IN AMERICA 144 (1786).

829 *Id.* at 145.

830 *Id.* at 150.

831 *Id.*

832 *Id.*

833 *Id.*

834 Georgia was unrepresented at the 1774 Convention because it was preoccupied by an Indian uprising, and dependent on the British for supplies.

835 *Documents from the Continental Congress and the Constitutional Convention, 1774 to 1789*, LIBR. CONGRESS, https://www.loc.gov/collections/continental-congress-and-constitutional-convention-from-1774-to-1789/articles-and-essays/timeline/1773-to-1774/ (last visited Jan. 13, 2019).

Electronic copy available at: https://ssrn.com/abstract=3205664

Case 4:23-cv-00547-O Document 20-2 Filed 10/06/23 Page 302 of 555 PageID 420

Congress turned into the Confederation Congress, when the Articles of Confederation were ratified.[836] During the Revolution, the Congress did its best to provide for the Continental Army. But management of the wartime militia was far beyond the administrative capacity of the Congress.

Under the Articles of Confederation, every state was obliged to "always keep up a well regulated and disciplined militia, sufficiently armed and accoutered."[837] While the militias were a state responsibility, the Confederation Congress could requisition the states to supply land forces "for the common defense."[838] Also, Congress could appoint militia officers above the rank of colonel when the state militia forces were in national service.[839] Under a federal requisition, the state legislature had the duty to "raise the men and cloath, arm and equip them in a soldier like manner," with the Confederation Congress paying the expense.[840]

The Confederation Congress drew up a militia plan, putting married men and single men in different classes. The militia were to be "All the free male inhabitants of each state from 20 to fifty, except such as the laws of the State shall exempt, to be divided into two general classes; one class to consist of married and the other class of single men."[841] Required arms for infantry and dragoons were similar to, although less detailed than, the state laws.[842]

The Articles of Confederation gave Congress few powers to legislate directly on the people, instead requiring Congress to act through the state governments. As far as we can tell, the 1783 congressional militia plan did not have much influence.

The United States Constitution, proposed in 1787 and ratified in 1789, was intended to change things. Congress was given a list of enumerated powers, by which it could directly act on the people.[843] Article I, section 8

---

836 ARTICLES OF CONFEDERATION OF 1781.

837 ARTICLES OF CONFEDERATION OF 1781, art. VI.

838 ARTICLES OF CONFEDERATION OF 1781, art. VII.

839 *Id.*

840 ARTICLES OF CONFEDERATION OF 1781, art. IX.

841 25 JOURNALS OF THE CONTINENTAL CONGRESS 741 (Oct. 23, 1783), https://memory.loc.gov/cgi-bin/query/r?ammem/hlaw:@field(DOCID+@lit(jc02544).

842 Each class to be formed into corps of Infantry and Dragoons, organized in the same manner as proposed for regular troops.

> Those who are willing to be at the expense of equipping themselves for Dragoon service to be permitted to enter into that corps, the residue to be formed into the Infantry; this will consult the convenience and inclinations of different classes of citizens.
>
> Each officer of the Dragoons to provide himself with a horse, saddle &c. pistols and sabre, and each non-commissioned officer and private with the preceding articles and these in addition, a carbine and cartouch box, with twelve rounds of powder and ball for his carbine, and six for each pistol.
>
> Each officer of the Infantry to have a sword, and each non-commissioned officer and private, a musket, bayonet and cartouch box, with twelve-rounds of powder and ball.

Id. at 741-42.

843 U.S. CONST., art. I, § 8.

Electronic copy available at: https://ssrn.com/abstract=3203664

Case 4:23-cv-00547-O Document 20-2 Filed 10/06/23 Page 303 of 555 PageID 421

contained two militia clauses.[844] Clause 15 (the Calling Forth Clause) gave Congress power "To provide for calling forth the Militia to execute the Laws of the Union, suppress Insurrections and repel Invasions."[845] Clause 16 (the Arming Clause) gave Congress power:

> To provide for organizing, arming, and disciplining, the Militia, and for governing such Part of them as may be employed in the Service of the United States, reserving to the States respectively, the Appointment of the Officers, and the Authority of training the Militia according to the discipline prescribed by Congress.[846]

After several years of prodding by President Washington, Congress exercised its power to organize and to provide for arming the federal militia. The Militia Act of 1792 (Uniform Militia Act) was signed into law by President Washington on May 8, 1792.[847] The Act provided:

> That each and every free able-bodied white male citizen of the respective States, resident therein, who is or shall be of age of eighteen years, and under the age of forty-five years (except as is herein after excepted) shall severally and respectively be enrolled in the militia, by the Captain or Commanding Officer of the company, within whose bounds such citizen shall reside, and that within twelve months after the passing of this Act. And it shall at all time hereafter be the duty of every such Captain or Commanding Officer of a company, to enroll every such citizen as aforesaid, and also those who shall, from time to time, arrive at the age of 18 years, or being at the age of 18 years, and under the age of 45 years (except as before excepted) shall come to reside within his bounds; and shall without delay notify such citizen of the said enrollment, by the proper non-commissioned Officer of the company, by whom such notice may be proved. That every citizen, so enrolled and notified, shall, within six months thereafter, provide himself with a good musket or firelock, a sufficient bayonet and belt, two spare flints, and a knapsack, a pouch, with a box therein, to contain not less than twenty four cartridges, suited to the bore of his musket or firelock, each cartridge to contain a proper quantity of powder and ball; or with a good rifle, knapsack, shot-pouch, and powder-horn, twenty balls suited to the bore of his rifle, and a quarter of a pound of powder; and shall appear so armed, accoutred and provided, when called out to exercise or into service, except, that when called out on company

[844] U.S. CONST., art. I, § 8.
[845] U.S. CONST., art. I, § 8, cl. 15.
[846] U.S. CONST., art. I, § 8, cl. 16.
[847] More effectually to provide for the National Defence by establishing an Uniform Militia throughout the United States,1 Stat. 271 (1792) (Uniform Militia Act) (UMA). The UMA was sometimes called the Second Militia Act, since a statute enacted earlier that year had provided a system for calling forth the militia in times of necessity. To provide for calling forth the Militia to execute the laws of the Union, suppress insurrections and repel invasions, 1 Stat. 264 (1792).

Electronic copy available at: https://ssrn.com/abstract=3205664

Case 4:23-cv-00547-O Document 20-2 Filed 10/06/23 Page 304 of 555 PageID 422

> days to exercise only, he may appear without a knapsack. That the commissioned Officers shall severally be armed with a sword or hanger, and espontoon; and that from and after five years from the passing of this Act, all muskets from arming the militia as is herein required, shall be of bores sufficient for balls of the eighteenth part of a pound; and every citizen so enrolled, and providing himself with the arms, ammunition and accoutrements, required as aforesaid, shall hold the same exempted from all suits, distresses, executions or sales, for debt or for the payment of taxes.[848]

The legislative history of the Militia Act reveals why eighteen was selected as the minimum age. Secretary of War Henry Knox had presented an ambitious militia plan to Congress in 1790.[849] Knox wanted to create a national select militia, founded on intensive training of males aged 18 to 20.[850] Even in a Federalist-dominated Congress, the idea was anathema. As opponents pointed out, the nascent federal government did not have the administrative capability to establish an effective national militia.

For the more realistic 1792 statute, Knox explained that "[t]he period of life in which military service shall be required of the citizens of the United States [was] to commence at eighteen."[851] Knox acknowledged that "military age has generally commenced at sixteen," but Knox instead set the bar at 18 because "the youth of sixteen do not commonly attain such a degree of robust strength as to enable them to sustain without injury the hardships incident to the field."[852] Knox also stated that "all men of the legal military age should be armed."[853] Representative Jackson of Georgia agreed "that from eighteen to twenty-one was found to be the best age to make soldiers of."[854]

Knox's first, rejected, plan had implied that the select militia of 18-20 would be armed by the federal government. This brought stern objection:

> Representative Wadsworth warned that supporters of the federal arming proposal seemed to be suggesting that large segments of the population would be armed by the government, with the attendant dangers: "At first it appeared to be intended for the benefit of poor men who were unable to spare money enough to purchase a firelock: but the gentleman from Delaware (Mr. Vining) had mentioned apprentices and young men in their non-age: he would be glad to know whether there was a man within these walls, who wished to have so large a proportion of the community by the United States, and liable to be disarmed by the government, whenever it should be thought proper." Masters could be expected to furnish arms to

---

848 *Id.*
849 1 ANNALS OF CONG. app. 2141-61 (Jan. 18, 1790).
850 *Id.* at 2146.
851 *Id.*
852 *Id.* at 2153.
853 *Id.* at 2145-46.
854 *Id.* at 1860.

Electronic copy available at: https://ssrn.com/abstract=3205664

> their apprentices. As to other young men, "their parents would rather give them guns of their own, than let them take others from the U.S. which were liable to be taken away at the very moment they were most wanted."[855]

The notion that the federal government might be able to take provided arms away from 18-to-20-year-olds set off alarm bells.

The idea that 18-year-olds should be part of the militia was hardly controversial. They had been part of every colonial and state militia from the very beginning, except for a nineteen-year period in Virginia in the middle of the eighteenth century. George Washington believed that 18 was the ideal age for militia enrollment.[856] Nearly a decade before he signed the Militia Act of 1792, he wrote to Alexander Hamilton that, "the Citizens of America … from 18 to 50 Years of Age should be borne on the Militia Rolls" and "so far accustomed to the use of [arms] that the Total strength of the Country might be called forth at a Short Notice on any very interesting Emergency."[857]

Congress made no changes to the 1792 Militia Act until the Civil War, when an 1862 revision removed the word "white" from the definition of the militia.[858]

By the early twentieth century, the 1792 Act was in obvious need of revision. Muskets, powderhorns, and flints were no longer the appropriate equipment for militiamen. President Theodore Roosevelt, a gun enthusiast and National Rifle Association (NRA) member,[859] declared: "Our militia law is obsolete and worthless."[860]

A new law, the Dick Act (named for its sponsor, Charles Dick) repealed the 1792 Act and replaced it with the modern definition of the militia of the United States.[861] This militia consisted of all able-bodied male citizens between 18 and 45 years of age, and also aliens who have declared intent to naturalize.[862] The "organized militia" was the National Guard of the several States.[863] Everyone else was part of the "reserve militia," which later statutes labeled the "unorganized militia."[864]

---

855 14 DOCUMENTARY HISTORY OF THE FIRST FEDERAL CONGRESS: DEBATES IN THE HOUSE OF REPRESENTATIVES 62 (1992).

856 26 THE WRITINGS OF GEORGE WASHINGTON 389 (John C. Fitzpatrick ed., 1938).

857 *Id.*

858 Militia Act of 1862, 12 Stat. 597 (July 17, 1862).

859 For information on Roosevelt, guns, and the NRA, *see*, *e.g.*, THEODORE ROOSEVELT, HUNTING TIPS OF A RANCHMAN (NRA Heritage Library 1999) (1885); THEODORE ROOSEVELT, GOOD HUNTING: IN PURSUIT OF BIG GAME IN THE WEST (1907); Ashley Halsey, Jr., *Theodore Roosevelt, Trailblazer among Hunter-Conservationists,* THE AMERICAN RIFLEMAN, June 1972, at 14, 16.

860 14 MESSAGES AND PAPERS OF THE PRESIDENTS 6672 (Bureau of National Literature, 1917).

861 Dick Act, ch. 196, 32 Stat. 775 (1903).

862 *Id.*

863 *Id.*

864 *Id.*

Electronic copy available at: https://ssrn.com/abstract=3205664

There was no mandate for personal possession of arms. Nor, except for the National Guard, was there any provision for the federal government to provide arms.

In the current version of the statute:

> (a) The militia of the United States consists of all able-bodied males at least 17 years of age and, except as provided in section 313 of title 32, under 45 years of age who are, or who have made a declaration of intention to become, citizens of the United States and of female citizens of the United States who are members of the National Guard.
>
> (b) The classes of the militia are--
> (1) the organized militia, which consists of the National Guard and the Naval Militia; and
> (2) the unorganized militia, which consists of the members of the militia who are not members of the National Guard or the Naval Militia.[865]

In 1903, Congress created the National Board for the Promotion of Rifle Practice (NBPRR).[866] It did not require citizens to possess arms or to practice with them, but it encouraged them to do so. The NBPRR developed a close relationship with the NRA, which had been founded in 1871, growing from concerns about the poor marksmanship of Union soldiers during the Civil War.[867] By statute, the NBPRR and the NRA were linked.[868] The NRA was the NBPRR's agent for distributing heavily discounted surplus arms to the American public, via NRA gun clubs.[869]

The National Guard Association (an association of state entities), the National Board for the Promotion of Rifle Practice (a federal entity), and the National Rifle Association (a membership organization) developed a close and mutually supportive relationship. Their boards of directors often overlapped.[870]

Through this relationship, over the course of the twentieth century the federal government put millions of military-grade firearms into the hands of

---

865 10 U.S.C. § 246 (2019). There are various occupational exemptions; conscientious objectors may be required to perform noncombat duty. 10 U.S.C. § 247 (2019).

866 *The National Matches History*, CIVILIAN MARKSMANSHIP PROGRAM http://thecmp.org/competitions/cmp-national-matches/the-national-matches-history/ (last visited Jan. 13, 2019).

867 *A Brief History of the NRA*, NAT'L RIFLE ASS'N (2018), https://home.nra.org/about-the-nra/.

868 Act of Mar. 3, 1905, ch. 1416, 33 Stat. 986-87.

869 *Id.*

870 JEFFREY A. MARLIN, THE NATIONAL GUARD, THE NATIONAL BOARD FOR THE PROMOTION OF RIFLE PRACTICE, AND THE NATIONAL RIFLE ASSOCIATION: PUBLIC INSTITUTIONS AND THE RISE OF A LOBBY FOR PRIVATE GUN OWNERSHIP 182 (May 10, 2013) (unpublished Ph.D. dissertation, Ga. St. U.), https://scholarworks.gsu.edu/history_diss/33/; RUSSELL S. GILMORE, CRACKSHOTS AND PATRIOTS: THE NATIONAL RIFLE ASSOCIATION AND AMERICA'S MILITARY-SPORTING TRADITION, 1871-1929 (1974) (unpublished Ph.D. dissertation, Univ. of Wisc.) (available in ProQuest Dissertations & Theses Global).

Electronic copy available at: https://ssrn.com/abstract=3203664

private American citizens, including young adults aged 18 to 20. This bore fruit in World War II. With the National Guard federalized and sent into overseas service, coastal security was provided by the unorganized militia, "whose ages ranged from 16 to 65, served without pay and provided their own arms."[871]

The federal Gun Control Act of 1968 required all persons "engaged in the business" of selling firearms to obtain a Federal Firearms License.[872] ("FFL"; the term is used for both the license and the licensee.) An FFL may not deliver a handgun to a person under 21, or a rifle or shotgun to a person under 18.[873] As the Supreme Court later noted, the 1968 Act aimed to keep guns away from "juveniles, criminals, drug addicts, and mental incompetents."[874]

The FFL rule for handgun deliveries will be discussed in Part V.B., which examines the unsuccessful challenge to the statute in *NRA v. BATF* (5th Cir.).

In 1994, Congress prohibited handgun possession by minors (under 18), with certain exceptions.[875] That law was upheld by the First Circuit in *Rene E.*, which is discussed below in Part V.A.

V. NINETEENTH AND EARLY TWENTIETH CENTURY STATE LAWS AND CASES—AND THEIR ROLE IN MODERN LITIGATION

Our article in the previous issue of the Southern Illinois University Law Journal surveyed nineteenth and early twentieth century state laws and cases about firearms restrictions on young people.[876] We also examined the five leading post-Heller federal circuit cases involving challenges to state or federal arms laws aimed at young people. In this Part, we will summarize the findings from that Article. In the interests

871 Don B. Kates, *Handgun Prohibition*, 82 MICH. L. REV. 204, 272, (1983) (citing Office of the Assistant Secretary of Defense, U.S. Dept. of Defense, *U.S. Home Defense Forces Study*, 58, 62-63 (1981)).

872 Gun Control Act of 1968, Pub. L. No. 99-308, 100 Stat. 449, 450 (1968); 18 U.S.C. § 923, 27 C.F.R. § 478.41.

873 18 U.S.C. § 922(b)(1) (2019).

874 Huddleston v. United States, 415 U.S. 814, 828 (1974). The federal legislation aimed to curb crime by keeping "firearms out of the hands of those not legally entitled to possess them because of age, criminal background, or incompetency." *Id.* at 824.
A study of the 1968 law found that it had no impact on the share of 18-to-20-year-olds arrested for homicide, robbery, or aggravated assault. Gary Kleck, *The Impact of the 1968 Gun Control Act's Restrictions on Handgun Purchases by Persons Age 18 to 20* (2011), https://ssrn.com/abstract=1843526.

875 18 U.S.C. 922(x)(2) (2019).

876 David B. Kopel & Joseph G.S. Greenlee, *History and Tradition in Modern Circuit Cases on the Second Amendment Rights of Young People*, 43 S. ILL. U. L.J. 119 (2018).

Electronic copy available at: https://ssrn.com/abstract=3205664

of concision, many of the footnotes and many details of the discussion from the original article are omitted in this summary.

A. State Laws and Cases

As in the colonial period and the Founding Era, there were no age-based arms restrictions in the early republic or the Jacksonian period. The first age restrictions appear in the South shortly before the Civil War. In 1856 Alabama prohibited giving handguns to male minors. In 1860 Kentucky outlawed providing handguns to minors, free blacks, or slaves. Other than these two laws, age-based restrictions did not appear until the last quarter of the nineteenth century.

As of 1899, there were forty-six states in the Union. Nineteen of them had some sort of law involving handguns and minors and the other twenty-seven had no such laws. No state criminalized handgun possession by minors. Ten states generally prohibited handgun transfers to minors; four of those ten had exceptions for self-defense, hunting, or home possession, and Alabama's law was only for males. Of these ten statutes, five expressly prohibited loans, while the other five were phrased in terms that could be construed to refer only to permanent dispositions.

Three other states did not restrict transfers in general, but did restrict sales (Delaware, Mississippi) or dealer sales (Wisconsin). Five states required parental consent for handgun transfers to minors (Illinois, Iowa, Kentucky, Missouri, and Texas). Nevada simply prohibited concealed carry.

No state restricted long gun purchases by minors, long gun loans to minors, or other long gun transfers to minors, such as gifts.

Modern courts have cited about a dozen cases that involved these statutes. We examined each of those cases, as well as precedents used in those cases. The majority of those cases did not involve constitutional issues. Instead, the decisions were about rules for issues on appeal, the facts of tort liability in a particular situation, and so on.

Four cases did have some substantive analysis of the rights of young people. Tennessee's *State v. Callicutt* (1878) upheld a statute against giving handguns to minors.[877] *Callicutt* was explicitly founded on the Tennessee Supreme Court's 1840 *Aymette v. State.*[878] According to *Aymette*, the Second Amendment right to "bear" arms only means bearing arms while actively serving in a militia.[879] The *Heller* Court expressly denounced *Aymette*: "This odd reading of the right is, to be sure, not the one we adopt."[880] Accordingly, *Calicutt* should have little weight as a modern precedent.

---

877 State v. Callicutt, 69 Tenn. 714 (1878).
878 Aymette v. State, 21 Tenn. (2 Hum.) 154 (1840).
879 *Id.* at 158.
880 District of Columbia v. Heller, 554 U.S. 570, 613 (2008).

Electronic copy available at: https://ssrn.com/abstract=3205664

The Georgia Supreme Court in 1911 upheld a 1910 statute that prohibited the carrying of firearms without a license and did not make licenses available to persons under 18.[881] The same statute made it illegal to "knowingly sell, or furnish, any minor with 'any pistol, dirk, bowie knife, or sword cane, except under circumstances justifying their use in defending life, limb, or property.'"[882]

The Georgia court in *Glenn v. State* made numerous errors. First, it interpreted the statute as a complete prohibition on persons under 18 from possessing pistols.[883] The interpretation is plainly incorrect, since the statute expressly allowed possession for self-defense.

Second, the Georgia court asserted in dicta that all modern handguns could be banned for everyone.[884] Of course, that assertion is contrary to *Heller*.[885] That assertion was also contrary to the Georgia Supreme Court's 1846 decision in *Nunn v. State*, which struck down a state ban on almost all handguns.[886] The *Nunn* decision is quoted and lauded by *Heller* more than any other precedent.[887] As of 1846, repeating handguns were already well-established and common in the market.

Most egregiously, the *Glenn* court upheld the statute under the theory that minors have *no* rights that the legislature is bound to respect:

> It is entirely within the province of the Legislature, in the exercise of the police power of the state, to prohibit, on the part of minors, the exercise of any right, constitutional or otherwise, although it might only have the right in the case of adults to regulate and restrict such rights.[888]

Glenn's ratio decidendi is contrary to modern precedent.[889] It is also plainly wrong under the law of the time. If Glenn were correct that minors have no constitutional rights, then the Georgia Constitution of 1877, which

---

881 Glenn v. State, 72 S.E. 927 (Ga. Ct. App. 1911).

882 *Id.* at 928.

883 *Id.* ("We conclude, therefore, that the act of 1910 not only prohibits minors under the age of 18 years from obtaining license to have a pistol or revolver on their persons, but that the clear intendment of said act is to prevent minors from having about their persons at all this character of weapons, and this construction is in harmony with the general legislation of the state on the subject of minors.").

884 *Id.* at 929.

885 *Heller*, 554 U.S. 570.

886 Nunn v. State, 1 Ga. 243 (1846).

887 *Heller*, 554 U.S. 570.

888 *Glenn*, 72 S.E. at 928-29.

889 *See, e.g.*, Application of Gault, 387 U.S. 1, 13 (1967) (holding that "neither the Fourteenth Amendment nor the Bill of Rights is for adults alone" and that juveniles have the right to counsel, right to notice of charges, right to confront and cross-examine witnesses, and right against self-incrimination); Tinker v. Des Moines Indep. Cty. Sch. Dist., 393 U.S. 503, 511 (1969) ("Students in school as well as out of school are 'persons' under our Constitution. They are possessed of fundamental rights which the State must respect…").

Electronic copy available at: https://ssrn.com/abstract=3205664

Case 4:23-cv-00547-O Document 20-2 Filed 10/06/23 Page 310 of 555 PageID 428

was still in effect in 1911, would have been no barrier to the Georgia legislature enacting laws against some or all minors: to take their property without due process of law, to banish them from the state, to inflict cruel and unusual punishments on them, to require Georgia minors to profess belief in an official state religion, to punish their dissent from said religion as heresy, to forbid them from criticizing government officials of Georgia, to search their houses without warrants, to forbid them to petition government, and to punish them with ex post facto laws and bills of attainder.[890] The absurdity of the proposition is self-evident.

The most thorough analysis of the arms rights of young people came from the Kansas Supreme Court in *Parman v. Lemmon*.[891] The case was initially decided one way, then reversed following rehearing, so that the original dissent became the opinion of the court.

The issue was whether a 20-gauge Winchester pump-action shotgun was a "dangerous weapon" prohibited by the Kansas statute that made it a misdemeanor to "sell, trade, give, loan or otherwise furnish any pistol, revolver or toy pistol, by which cartridges or caps may be exploded, or any dirk, bowie knife, brass knuckles, sling shot, or other dangerous weapons, to any minor, or to any person of notoriously unsound mind."[892]

Applying esjudem generis, the court held that long guns are not covered by the phrase "dangerous weapons."[893] The shotgun "is such a common implement that, if the lawmakers intended to include it in the prohibited list, it is extremely unlikely they would have failed to mention it."[894]

Moreover, "the right of the people to keep and bear arms … is a basic principle of statecraft of deep concern to all who are clothed with authority and who feel their responsibility to hand on undiminished to future generations those liberties which are our proud American heritage."[895]

The experience from the first days of the Atlantic colonies through the Indian Wars of the late nineteenth century in Kansas had meant that

> the rifle over the fireplace and the shotgun behind the door were imperatively necessary utensils of every rural American household. And it was just as imperative that the members of such household, old and young, should know how to handle them. And it was almost equally true that,

---

[890] *See* GA. CONST. of 1877, art. I, § 1, parts 3, 7, 12, 15, 16, 24, § 3, part 2 (enumerating prohibitions on aforesaid types of government action, and not limiting the protections to only adults).

[891] Parman v. Lemmon, 244 P. 227 (Kan. 1925).

[892] *Id.* at 228 (citing R. S. 38-701). R.S. 38–702 made it unlawful for minors to possess these "dangerous weapons." *Id.*

[893] "The rule, 'ejusdem generis' ordinarily limits the meaning of general words to things of the same class as those enumerated under them." *Id.* at 229 (citing 2 Words and Phrases, Second Series, 225).

[894] *Id.* at 232 (Mason, J., dissenting) (later became opinion of the court).

[895] *Id.* at 231 (Dawson, J., dissenting) (later became opinion of the court).

Electronic copy available at: https://ssrn.com/abstract=3205664

Case 4:23-cv-00547-O Document 20-2 Filed 10/06/23 Page 311 of 555 PageID 429

> unless a man were trained in the use of the rifle and shotgun in his boyhood, he seldom learned to use them.[896]

Announcing the reversal following the petition for rehearing, the Kansas Court explained:

> [I]t is reasonable to conclude that the Legislature did not intend to make law violators of 60 per cent. of the militia of the state, it being estimated that 60 per cent. of the personnel of that body are minors; that it did not intend to prohibit students under 21 years of age in the colleges from taking military training; that it did not intend to prohibit young men under 21 years of age from taking out hunters' licenses and hunting, that it did not intend to prohibit young men who have not yet reached the age of 21, who reside on the farms and ranches, from carrying and using shotguns and rifles when necessity requires.
>
> These suggestions and many others have had the consideration of the court. We do not deem it necessary to discuss the question at length, nor to analyze the cases. We are of the opinion that, if the Legislature of 1883 had intended to include shotguns in the prohibited list of dangerous weapons, it would have specifically mentioned them.
>
> . . .
>
> By a change of view on the part of some of the Justices, the dissenting opinion at the time of the first decision has now become the controlling voice of the court, and further discussion is needless.[897]

None of the Justices in *Parman* seemed to see a problem with the law against giving handguns to minors, which the Justices characterized as being needed occasionally for self-defense; the court's focus was on long guns, which it characterized as the typical arm of rural self-defense, the ordinary arm of the militia, and a daily tool for rural life.

The final case that involved arms and minors was Virginia's *United States v. Blakeney*.[898] It did not involve any law that targeted the arms rights of minors. Instead, the issue was application of the general rule that minors could not enter into enforceable contracts without the consent of their parent or guardian.[899] (In the latter twentieth century, the age of majority for exercise of contract and property rights without parental consent would be

---

[896] *Id.*

[897] *Id.* at 233.

[898] *United States v. Blakeney*, 44 Va. (3 Gratt.) 405 (1847).

[899] *Id.*

Electronic copy available at: https://ssrn.com/abstract=3205664

Case 4:23-cv-00547-O Document 20-2 Filed 10/06/23 Page 312 of 555 PageID 430

lowered to 18 in most states, the age that continues to prevail as the national norm.)

The Supreme Court of Appeals of Virginia held that 18-to-20-year-old "minors" were to be treated as adults in the context of bearing arms.[900] Blakeney was a 19-year-old who volunteered for military duty, and regretting his decision, argued that a minor could not enter into a valid contract.[901] The court held the contract valid, based in part on the fact that as a 19-year-old, Blakeney had the mental and physical capacity to bear arms.[902]

The court explained that "children" were exempted from military service because they are incapable of handling arms:

> No person is naturally exempt from taking up arms in defence of the State; the obligation of every member of society being the same. They only are excepted who are incapable of handling arms, or supporting the fatigues of war. This is the reason why old men, children, and women are exempted.[903]

By contrast, "We know, as a matter of fact, that at the age of eighteen, a man is capable intellectually and physically of bearing arms."[904] And since 18-year-olds were just as capable as 21-year-olds of both carrying arms and consenting to military service, the court held that 18-to-20-year-olds were bound by military enlistments just as adults over 21 were.[905] The general rule about contracts

> has no application to the subject. The capacity of all citizens or subjects able to bear arms to bind themselves to do so by voluntary enlistment, is in itself a high rule of the public law, to which the artificial and arbitrary rule of the municipal law forms no exception.[906]

In sum, the statutory and case law record on the nineteenth and early twentieth centuries provide no support for age-based restrictions on long guns. There were a minority of states with age-based restrictions on handguns. The largest group in the minority would be those that either banned retail sales or required parental permission for sales. Laws broad enough to prohibit parents from letting minors use handguns existed in five states. Few cases from the period address the arms rights of minors, and of those, hardly any can be considered valid precedents in light of *Heller* and other modern doctrine.

---

900 *Id.* at 414-15.
901 *Id.* at 406-07.
902 *Id.* at 425.
903 *Id.* at 408.
904 *Id.* at 418.
905 *Id.* at 416.
906 *Id.* at 409–10.

Electronic copy available at: https://ssrn.com/abstract=3205664

B. Modern Circuit Cases

Our Article in the previous issue reviewed the nineteenth and early twentieth century history and tradition in the context of their use by the five post-*Heller* Circuit Court of Appeals cases examining the arms rights of young people. We will summarize the analysis of those cases.

1. Rene E.

In *United States v. Rene E.*, the First Circuit upheld the 1994 federal statute (discussed in Part IV) that prohibits handgun possession by persons under 18.[907] The court emphasized the importance of the statute's exceptions, such as self-defense in the home, ranching, hunting, militia service, and so on.[908]

For historical support, *Rene E.* relied primarily on the state cases discussed above.[909] This is thin support, for reasons that we summarized above, and detailed in the previous Article.

Regarding the Founding, *Rene E.* could not cite any original American source—hardly surprising in light of the many statutes detailed in Part III, *supra*. The colonial and early state governments had repeatedly mandated that persons 16 and older (or sometimes 18, 15, or 10) be armed.

Instead, the First Circuit cited some modern law review articles stating that the Founders believed that unvirtuous persons could be disarmed.[910] The paradigmatic examples in these articles were persons who were disloyal to the government during wartime, as well as slaves and hostile Indians. The point of the article is true enough, but nothing from the colonial or founding periods indicates that young people were considered unvirtuous people who should be disarmed. The statutory evidence is quite the opposite.

2. National Rifle Association v. Bureau of Alcohol, Tobacco, Firearms, Explosives

In this case, the Fifth Circuit upheld the 1968 federal statute that prohibits persons 18-20 from buying handguns in retail stores.[911] The statute does not prohibit young adults from acquiring firearms from persons who are

---

[907] United States v. Rene E., 583 F.3d 8 (1st Cir. 2009).
[908] *Id.* at 13-14.
[909] *Id.* at 14-15.
[910] *Id.* at 15-16.
[911] Nat'l Rifle Ass'n v. Bureau of Alcohol, Firearms, and Explosives, 700 F.3d 185 (5th Cir. 2012); 18 U.S.C. § 922(x)(2) (2019).

Electronic copy available at: https://ssrn.com/abstract=3205664

Case 4:23-cv-00547-O Document 20-2 Filed 10/06/23 Page 314 of 555 PageID 432

not "engaged in the business of selling arms."[912] The statute allows persons 18 and older to buy long guns from stores (and from others).

The strongest part of the court's historical analysis was its list of state statutes. As discussed above, by 1899 there were fifteen states that prohibited minors from buying handguns in stores, and three more that required parental permission. These restrictions were not the majority approach, but neither were they eccentric.

For earlier history, the opinion was weaker. As the court stated (without citation), gun control laws did exist at the time of the Second Amendment and before.[913] This was true, but there were no age restrictions on buying, owning, or carrying firearms.

There were laws that "targeted particular groups for public safety reasons."[914] These were laws aimed at slaves, Indians, and, during wartime, "laws that confiscated weapons owned by persons who refused to swear an oath of allegiance to the state or to the nation."[915] The disarmament of persons not considered citizens (slaves and Indians), or who demonstrated disloyalty, should not create precedent for targeting other "particular groups" whose loyalty is unquestioned.[916] The Fifth Circuit also cited William Rawle, whose 1825 constitutional law treatise was cited with approval in *Heller*.[917] Rawle, as fully quoted in *Heller*, wrote that persons who "abused" the right to arms could be disarmed.[918] The Fifth Circuit chopped Rawle to make it appear that he supported disarmament of people who had never abused the right, but whom the government might consider prospectively dangerous.[919]

Like the Georgia Supreme Court in the 1911 *Glenn* case, the Fifth Circuit resorted to the claim that minors lack constitutional rights.[920] As the court pointed out, the age majority at common law was 21.[921] Therefore,

> If a representative citizen of the founding era conceived of a 'minor' as an individual who was unworthy of the Second Amendment guarantee, and conceived of 18–to–20–year–olds as 'minors,' then it stands to reason that

---

912 *NRA v. BATF*, 700 F.3d at 189.
913 *Id.* at 200.
914 *Id.*
915 *Id.*
916 *Id.*
917 *Id.* at 201.
918 WILLIAM RAWLE, A VIEW OF THE CONSTITUTION OF THE UNITED STATES OF AMERICA 125-26 (William S. Hein & Co. 2003) (2d ed. 1829), https://books.google.com/books?id=akEbAAAAYAAJ&printsec=frontcover&source=gbs_ge_summary_r&cad=0#v=onepage&q&f=false; District of Columbia v. Heller, 554 U.S. 570, 607-08 (2008) (quoting RAWLE, A VIEW OF THE CONSTITUTION OF THE UNITED STATES OF AMERICA).
919 *NRA v. BATF*, *supra* note 918, 700 F.3d at 201 (quoting RAWLE, *supra* note 913).
920 *Id.*
921 *Id.*

Electronic copy available at: https://ssrn.com/abstract=3205664

> the citizen would have supported restricting an 18–to–20–year–old's right to keep and bear arms.[922]

The Fifth Circuit's speculation is contrary to all the evidence. Persons under 21 were certainly minors under the common law of the Founding Era. Thus, their independent exercise of contract and property rights was limited. However, there is no evidence "a representative citizen" (or anyone else) in the Founding Era considered all minors "unworthy of the Second Amendment guarantee."[923] To the contrary, state and federal laws of the Founding Era are unanimous that minors aged 18-to-20 *were* considered worthy of the Second Amendment guarantee. As had been the case from the earliest colonial days, they were part of the militia and were required to possess their own arms. Massive and uncontradicted evidence from the Founding Era shows that 18-to-20-year-olds *did* have the right to keep and bear arms, and indeed were required by law to exercise that right.

Assuming arguendo that young adults have Second Amendment rights, the Fifth Circuit applied intermediate scrutiny. The court chose intermediate scrutiny in part because the federal law did not prohibit minors from acquiring handguns for home defense or for other lawful purposes.[924]

The Fifth Circuit found laws against 18-20-year-olds supportable by *Heller*'s emphasis on arms possession by "responsible" citizens.[925] As the Fifth Circuit accurately stated, persons 18-to-20 commit gun crimes at a higher rate than do older people.[926] The same can be said of persons 21-to-25, who commit crimes at a higher rate than do people over 25. The same is true for persons 60-to-65, who commit crimes at a higher rate than do persons over 65. The same point can also be made based on race. Americans of some races commit violent crimes at higher rates than persons of other races. Likewise, males perpetrate violent crimes at a much higher rate than females.

As the Fifth Circuit acknowledged, law-abiding, responsible citizens are at the core of the Second Amendment right.[927] Their rights should not be forfeited because of irresponsible behavior by other persons of the same age, race, or sex.

3. National Rifle Association v. McCraw

Here the Fifth Circuit upheld the Texas statute that prevented 18-to-20-year-olds from applying for a license to carry handguns for lawful protection

---

922 *Id.* at 202.
923 *Id.*
924 *Id.* at 206-07 (quoting District of Columbia v. Heller, 554 U.S. 570, 628-30, 635 (2008)).
925 *Id.* at 206.
926 *Id.* at 206-07.
927 *Id.*

Electronic copy available at: https://ssrn.com/abstract=3205664

Case 4:23-cv-00547-O Document 20-2 Filed 10/06/23 Page 316 of 555 PageID 434

in public places.[928] Having recently decided *NRA v. BATF*, the Fifth Circuit did not engage in further historical analysis.[929] The court reiterated the *BATF* theory that "the conduct burdened by the Texas scheme likely 'falls outside the Second Amendment's protection.'"[930] Also like the *BATF* court, the *McCraw* court applied intermediate scrutiny in an abundance of caution and upheld the law for similar reasons.[931]

However, the court skipped part of the intermediate scrutiny analysis. In strict scrutiny, the government must prove that there is no "less restrictive alternative." Under the more relaxed standard of intermediate scrutiny, the government must prove that there is no "substantially less burdensome alternative." The plaintiffs had argued that instead of banning licensed carry for young adults, Texas could have a more rigorous licensing system for young adults, compared to applicants over 21. The *McCraw* court dismissed that alternative and said that "less restrictive alternative" is not part of intermediate scrutiny.[932] True enough, but "substantially less burdensome alternative" is part of intermediate scrutiny, and the court offered no explanation for refusing to consider it.

4. Horsley v. Trame

Illinois requires that residents obtain a firearm owner's identification (FOID) card before acquiring or possessing a firearm.[933] In *Horsley v. Trame*, the plaintiff challenged the requirement that FOID card applicants between 18 and 21 obtain the consent of a parent or guardian.[934] The parental permission rule has a safety valve, by which an applicant can instead apply for consent from the Director of the Illinois firearms license office.[935] If the office denies the permission, the applicant can appeal to a court.[936]

The Seventh Circuit decided that it need not decide whether it agreed with the Illinois Attorney General that the Second Amendment does not

---

928 Nat'l Rifle Ass'n of Am., Inc. v. McCraw, 719 F.3d 338 (5th Cir. 2013).

929 *Id.*

930 *Id.* at 347 (quoting Nat'l Rifle Ass'n v. Bureau of Alcohol, Firearms, and Explosives, *supra* note 911, 700 F.3d at 203).

931 *Id.*

932 *Id.* at 349.

933 430 ILL. COMP. STAT. 65 (2013).

934 Horsley v. Trame, 808 F.3d 1126 (7th Cir. 2015). The law, 430 ILL. COMP. STAT. 65/4(a)(2)(i), requires an applicant to submit evidence that "[h]e or she is 21 years of age or over, or if he or she is under 21 years of age that he or she has the written consent of his or her parent or legal guardian to possess and acquire firearms and firearm ammunition and that he or she has never been convicted of a misdemeanor other than a traffic offense or adjudged delinquent, provided, however, that such parent or legal guardian is not an individual prohibited from having a Firearm Owner's Identification Card…"

935 430 ILL. COMP. STAT. 65/10 (2013).

936 *Id.*

Electronic copy available at: https://ssrn.com/abstract=3205664

Case 4:23-cv-00547-O Document 20-2 Filed 10/06/23 Page 317 of 555 PageID 435

apply to persons under 21.[937] Regardless, the law was valid since it is not prohibitory, since young adults have a higher crime rate, and since the parental permission law has a safety valve similar to what has been allowed for abortion.[938]

5. *Ezell v. City of Chicago*

Ezell challenged a Chicago ordinance that prohibited anyone under 18 from entering a shooting range.[939] Chicago argued that persons under 18 have no Second Amendment rights.[940] But the nineteenth century statutes on handgun sales were not much help for a total ban on practice with any firearm. As the Seventh Circuit observed, "There's zero historical evidence that firearm training for this age group is categorically unprotected. At least the City hasn't identified any, and we've found none ourselves."[941]

Chicago was "left to rely on generalized assertions about the developmental immaturity of children, the risk of lead poisoning by inhalation or ingestion, and a handful of tort cases involving the negligent supervision of children who were left to their own devices with loaded firearms."[942] Since the government could address these concerns with "a more closely tailored age restriction—one that does not *completely extinguish* the right of older adolescents and teens in Chicago to learn how to shoot in an appropriately supervised setting at a firing range," the law violated the Second Amendment.[943]

VI. CURRENT STATE LAWS

Part VI surveys current state laws that impose special limits on arms possession or acquisition by young adults. We do not include state statutes that mimic federal law (such as preventing gun stores from selling handguns to young adults). We do not address state laws that apply only to persons under 18. Nor do we address laws, such as the Texas law discussed in the *McCraw* case above, that set the minimum age for a defensive handgun carry license at 21. The majority of states do set 21 as the carry permit age, while a minority set the age at 18. A few states, such as Texas, which have a general rule of 18, allow carry permits for young adults in certain circumstances, such

---

[937] *Horsley*, 808 F.3d at 1130.

[938] *See id.* at 1127, 1130-32.

[939] Ezell v. City of Chicago (*Ezell II*), 846 F.3d 888 (7th Cir. 2017). The *Ezell I* case held unconstitutional the city's ban on all shooting ranges within city limits. Ezell v. City of Chicago (*Ezell I*), 651 F.3d 684 (7th Cir. 2011).

[940] *Id.* at 896.

[941] *Id.*

[942] *Id.* at 898.

[943] *Id.* (emphasis in original).

Electronic copy available at: https://ssrn.com/abstract=3205664

Case 4:23-cv-00547-O Document 20-2 Filed 10/06/23 Page 318 of 555 PageID 436

as a young adult who is currently serving in, or has been honorably discharged from, the armed forces.[944]

As has been true throughout American history, state militia laws include 18-to-20-year-olds. Fifteen state constitutions specify that the starting age for militia service is 18.[945] Two state constitutions, Indiana and Wyoming, specify the starting militia age as 17.[946] Uniquely, the Kansas Constitution makes 21 the starting militia age.[947] The constitutions of Illinois and Montana used to declare that the militia was males 18 to 45; the constitutions were revised to broaden the militia obligation to all able-bodied persons, regardless of age or sex.[948] For many other states, the constitution grants the legislature authority to define the militia, and the legislature has passed laws including 18-to-20-year-olds.

Section A of Part VI describes state laws imposing special limits on firearms acquisition or possession by young adults. Section B discusses the varying age limits for different activities, past and present.

A. State laws with special arms restrictions on young adults

California. "No person, corporation, or firm shall sell, loan, or transfer a firearm to a minor, nor sell a handgun to an individual under 21 years of age."[949] The only circumstance under which a Californian aged 18-20 may purchase a handgun is if the handgun is an antique.[950]

Parents and grandparents (with parental permission) may loan long guns to minors for indefinite periods.[951] Other persons may loan long guns to minors (with parental permission) for up to 30 days.[952]

---

944 TEX. CODE ANN. § 411.172(g).

945 ARIZ. CONST. art. XVI, § 1; ARK. CONST. art. XI, § 10; COLO. CONST. art. XVII, § 1; IDAHO CONST. art. XIV, § 1; IOWA CONST. art. VI, § 1; KY. CONST. § 219; ME. CONST. art. VII, § 5; MISS. CONST., § 214; N.M. CONST. art. XVIII, § 1; N.D. CONST. art. XI, § 16; OHIO CONST. art. IX, § 1; S.C. CONST. art. XIII, § 1; S.D. CONST. art. XV, § 1; UTAH CONST. art. XV, § 1; WASH. CONST. art. X, § 1.

946 IND. CONST. art. XII, § 1; WYO. CONST. art. XVII, § 1.

947 KAN. CONST. art. VIII, § 1.

948 ILL. CONST. of 1870, art. XII, § 1; MONT. CONST. of 1889, art. XIV, § 1. Illinois now provides that "The State militia consists of all able-bodied persons residing in the State except those exempted by law." ILL. CONST. art. XII, § 1; MONT. CONST. art. VI, § 13(2).1.
In both states, current laws show that the newer provisions still include 18-to-20-year-olds. *See* 20 ILL. COMP. STAT. 1805/1 ("All able-bodied citizens of this State . . . between the ages of 18 and 45 . . . shall be subject to military duty and designated as the Illinois State Militia"); MONT. CODE ANN. § 10-1-103(1) ("the organized militia [] consists of the national guard and the Montana home guard"); 32 U.S.C. § 313 ("To be eligible for original enlistment in the National Guard, a person must be at least 17 years of age and under 45").

949 CAL. PENAL CODE § 27505(a) (West 2011).

950 *Id.* (b)(1).

951 *Id.* (b)(2), (3).

952 *Id.* (b)(4).

Electronic copy available at: https://ssrn.com/abstract=3205664

A parent may loan a handgun to a minor for sporting activities, agriculture, ranching, or theatrical and entertainment events that use firearms props.[953] The loan may last no longer than "the amount of time that is reasonably necessary to engage in" the activity.[954]

Other persons may loan handguns to minors for the same purposes, if written permission from the parent or legal guardian is presented to the lender.[955] The same time limits apply, with the addition proviso that the loan may never exceed ten days.[956]

Thus, a minor may never be transferred a handgun for lawful defense of self and others, even in the parental home, and even in situations of imminent peril.

Connecticut. A state certificate is necessary to own a handgun, and only persons at least 21 years old may apply for the certificate.[957]

Delaware. No person shall sell to someone under 21 "any pistol or revolver, or stiletto, steel or brass knuckles, or other deadly weapon made especially for the defense of one's person."[958] The prohibition does not apply "to toy pistols, pocket knives or knives used for sporting purposes and in the domestic household, or surgical instruments or tools of any kind."[959]

District of Columbia. Persons may only possess firearms that have been registered with the Municipal Police Department.[960] Persons under 18 may not register. Persons 18 to 20 may register if the registrant provides a notarized permission statement from a parent or guardian.[961] In the notarized statement, the parent or guardian must "assume[] civil liability for all damages resulting from the actions of such applicant in the use of the firearm to be registered; provided further, that such registration certificate shall expire on such person's 21st birthday."[962]

Florida. "A person younger than 21 years of age may not purchase a firearm. The sale or transfer of a firearm to a person younger than 21 years of age may not be made or facilitated by a licensed importer, licensed manufacturer, or licensed dealer."[963] Thus, persons under 21 may borrow firearms, or receive them as gifts from private

953 *Id.* (b)(5)(A).
954 *Id.* (b)(5)(B).
955 *Id.* (6)(A), (B).
956 *Id.* (6)(C), (D).
957 CONN. GEN. STAT. § 29-36f(a).
958 DEL. CODE ANN. tit. 24, § 901.
959 *Id.* § 903.
960 D.C. CODE § 7-2502.01(a).
961 *Id.* § 7-2502.03(a)(1)(A).
962 *Id.* § 7-2502.03(a)(1)(B).
963 FLA. STAT. § 790.065(13) (2018).

Electronic copy available at: https://ssrn.com/abstract=3205664

Case 4:23-cv-00547-O Document 20-2 Filed 10/06/23 Page 320 of 555 PageID 438

persons. The restrictions on persons under 21 do not apply to servicemembers.[964]

Hawaii. Permits to acquire firearms may be issued "to citizens of the United States of the age of twenty-one years or more."[965] Permits may also be issued to aliens under certain circumstances, including to aliens 18 or older "for use of rifles and shotguns for a period not exceeding sixty days, upon a showing that the alien has first procured a hunting license."[966]

Illinois. To purchase or own a firearm, a person must have a Firearm Owner's Identification (FOID) Card.[967] Applicants under 21 must have written permission from a parent or guardian.[968] The parent giving permission must not be someone who is prohibited from owning a firearm (e.g., a convicted felon).[969] The under-21 applicant must, in addition to satisfying generally applicable eligibility requirements, have no misdemeanor convictions other than traffic offenses, and must never have been adjudged delinquent.[970]

As discussed in the section on *Horsely v. Trame*, *supra*, there is a safety valve provision for situations in which parental permission is denied or is unavailable. Any applicant who is denied can petition the Director of State Police for relief.[971] The applicant may present evidence, and the State Attorney must be notified and have an opportunity to oppose the petition for relief. The applicant must prove that "granting relief would not be contrary to the public interest."[972] A rejected applicant may appeal to state court.[973]

Iowa. In 2017, the legislature repealed a law that had forbidden minors under 14 from temporarily possessing a handgun under any circumstances, even while under direct parental supervision at a target range.[974]

Under current law, anyone who "sells, loans, gives, or makes available a rifle or shotgun or ammunition for a rifle or shotgun to a minor" is guilty of a serious misdemeanor.[975] Anyone who does the same for a handgun or handgun ammunition is guilty of a serious misdemeanor.[976]

---

[964] *Id.*
[965] HAW. REV. STAT. § 134-2(d) (2017).
[966] *Id.*
[967] 430 ILL. COMP. STAT. 65/2.
[968] *Id.* 65/4(a)(2)(i).
[969] *Id.*
[970] *Id.*
[971] *Id.* 65/10(c).
[972] *Id.* 65/10(c)(3).
[973] *Id.*
[974] IOWA CODE § 724.22(8); 2017 Iowa Acts 555.
[975] IOWA CODE, *supra* note 975, § 724.22(1).
[976] *Id.* § 724.22(2). Ammunition in .22 caliber is considered rifle ammunition, not handgun ammunition. *Id.* § 724.22(6).

Electronic copy available at: https://ssrn.com/abstract=3205664

However, a parent, guardian, spouse (if over 18), or anyone else with express permission from such persons may allow a minor to possess rifles, shotguns, and ammunition therefor.[977]

For handguns, the authorizing parent, guardian, or spouse must be over 21, and the person under 21 may possess the handgun only while under direct supervision.[978] Alternatively, the supervision may be provided by an instructor.[979] Any supervisor or instructor who is intoxicated at the time is guilty of child endangerment.[980]

If the minor with the handgun is under 14, the parent, guardian, or spouse is strictly liable for any resulting damages.[981]

Persons 18-to-20 may possess firearms and ammunition without need for parental or spousal permission "while on military duty or while a peace officer, security guard or correctional officer" if the job requires it.[982] They may also possess arms while receiving instruction from an instructor who is at least 21.[983]

It is unlawful to store a loaded gun in such a manner that "a minor under the age of fourteen years is likely to gain access to the firearm" without the permission of the minor's parent.[984] Storage is *per se* compliant with the statute if the gun has a trigger lock or is "placed in a securely locked box or container, or placed in some other location which a reasonable person would believe to be secure from a minor under the age of fourteen years."[985] There is no violation of the law unless a minor does actually access the firearm, and then unlawfully exhibits the firearm in a public place or injures someone by using the firearm unlawfully.[986] There is no violation "if the minor obtains the firearm as a result of an unlawful entry by any person."[987]

Maryland. Under Maryland law, a "regulated firearm" is a handgun or certain long guns that have been labeled "assault weapons."[988] Of course there are still laws for other guns, namely rifles and shotguns that are not "assault weapons," but these laws are less stringent than the laws for "regulated firearms."

In general, a person under 21 may not possess a regulated firearm.[989] Possession is allowed for temporary transfers if the person under 21 will be

---

977 *Id.* § 724.22(3).
978 *Id.* § 724.22(5).
979 *Id.*
980 *Id.* § 724.22(9).
981 *Id.* § 724.22(8).
982 *Id.* § 724.22(4).
983 *Id.*
984 *Id.* § 724.22(7).
985 *Id.*
986 *Id.*
987 *Id.*
988 MD. CODE ANN. PUB. SAFETY § 5-101(r) (2018).
989 *Id.* § 5-133(d)(1).

Electronic copy available at: https://ssrn.com/abstract=3205664

Case 4:23-cv-00547-O Document 20-2 Filed 10/06/23 Page 322 of 555 PageID 440

"under the supervision of another who is at least 21 years old" and the parents or guardian consent.[990] Possession is also allowed if the person needs the firearm for employment.[991] Temporary transfers are also permitted to participants in marksmanship training who are supervised by an instructor.[992] Also lawful is "the possession of a [regulated] firearm for self-defense or the defense of others against a trespasser into the residence of the person in possession or into a residence in which the person in possession is an invited guest."[993]

Massachusetts. A "Class A" license is necessary to possess a handgun or long guns that are dubbed "assault weapons."[994] The Class A license also functions as a license to carry; the issuing law enforcement agency has the discretion to issue the license to allow carrying only for sports and target practice, or to issue as a defensive carry permit.[995] Class A licenses may not be issued to persons under 21.[996]

New Jersey. In general, persons under 18 may not "purchase, barter or otherwise acquire a firearm" and persons under 21 may not do so for handguns.[997] Further, no one under 18 "shall possess, carry, fire or use a firearm."[998] The same is true for handguns for persons under 21.[999]

Exceptions are for gun use "[i]n the actual presence or under the direct supervision of his father, mother or guardian, or some other person" who has the appropriate gun possession permit from the state.[1000] Also allowed is "competition, target practice, instruction, and training" at a firing range.[1001] Finally, persons can possess the guns "during the regularly designated hunting season," if they have a hunting license and have passed a hunter safety course.[1002]

New York. A license is necessary to possess a handgun.[1003] Licenses may be issued only to persons who are at least 21.[1004] But if the applicant has been honorably discharged from the armed forces, no age restriction applies.[1005]

---

990 *Id.* § 5-133(d)(2)(i).
991 *Id.* § 5-133(d)(2)(v).
992 *Id.* § 5-133(d)(2)(iv).
993 *Id.* § 5-133(d)(2)(vi).
994 MASS. GEN. LAWS ch. 140, § 131(a).
995 *Id.* § 131(d).
996 *Id.* § 131(d)(iv).
997 N.J. STAT. ANN. § 2C:58–6.1(a).
998 *Id.* § 2C:58–6.1(b).
999 *Id.*
1000 *Id.* § 2C:58–6.1(b)(1).
1001 *Id.* § 2C:58–6.1(b)(3). The range must have been approved by a local governing body or by the National Rifle Association. *Id.*
1002 *Id.* § 2C:58–6.1(b)(4).
1003 N.Y. PENAL LAW § 400.00(15).
1004 *Id.* § 400.00(1).
1005 *Id.*

Electronic copy available at: https://ssrn.com/abstract=3205664

Ohio. No one shall sell any firearm to a person under 18, or a handgun to a person under 21.[1006] Nor shall anyone "furnish" such guns to such persons, "except for lawful hunting, sporting, or educational purposes, including, but not limited to, instruction in firearms or handgun safety, care, handling, or marksmanship under the supervision or control of a responsible adult."[1007] Persons 18-to-20 may acquire handguns if they are law enforcement officers or active duty members of the armed forces who have received certain training.[1008]

Rhode Island. A permit is necessary to purchase or acquire a handgun.[1009] Permits are not issued to persons under 21.[1010]

B. Policy

In American law, different activities have been subject to different age limits. Under the U.S. and state constitutions, the age for service in elective offices is sometimes 18, but also may be 21, 25, 30, or (for President) 35.[1011] Activities that are considered by some to be vices—such as alcohol, tobacco, recreational marijuana, and gambling—have sometimes been prohibited, sometimes unregulated, and sometimes had age limits of 18 or 21.[1012] The trend of the 1960s and the 1970s was for lower age limits for vices, while in recent decades many states have moved to 21.

Perhaps the most important decision a person will ever make is marriage. Certainly, the decision to marry is more momentous than the decision about whether to drink a beer. Today, in every state, the age for marriage *without* parental consent is 16, 17, or 18.[1013] The age is lower (or there is no age limit) when there is parental consent.[1014]

In every state, the age at which a criminal defendant can be prosecuted as an adult is no older than eighteen, and usually younger. Eighteen-year-olds are subject to conscription into the U.S. military, notwithstanding vehement parental objection. With parental consent, persons under 18 may enlist in the U.S. Armed Forces.[1015]

[1006] OHIO REV. CODE ANN. § 2923.21(A)(1)-(2).

[1007] *Id.* (A)(3).

[1008] *Id.* (B).

[1009] 11 R.I. GEN. LAWS ANN. § 11-47-35.

[1010] *Id.* § 11-47-35(a)(1).

[1011] *See, e.g.*, U.S. CONST. art II, § 1 (35 for President); ILL. CONST. art. V, § 3 (25 for statewide constitutional officers); IOWA CONST. art. III, § 4 (21 for the Iowa House of Representatives).

[1012] *See, e.g.*, Michael Phillip Rosenthal, *The Minimum Drinking Age for Young People: An Observation*, 92 DICK. L. REV. 649 (1988).

[1013] *State-by-State Marriage "Age of Consent" Laws*, FINDLAW (2018), https://family.findlaw. com/ marriage/state-by-state-marriage-age-of-consent-laws.html.

[1014] *Id.*

[1015] *Are You Eligible to Join the Military?*, MILITARY.COM (2018), https://www.military.com/join-armed-forces/join-the-military-basic-eligibility.html.

Electronic copy available at: https://ssrn.com/abstract=3205664

Case 4:23-cv-00547-O Document 20-2 Filed 10/06/23 Page 324 of 555 PageID 442

For voting, the usual starting age used to be 21. That was lowered to 18 by the Twenty-Sixth Amendment, ratified in 1971, and applying to all federal and state elections.[1016] That young adults did not have voting rights in the Founding Era is not evidence that young adults lacked arms rights. Some states had property requirements for voting, and higher property requirements for election to the legislature or the governorship.[1017] No one would contend that people who did not own a certain amount of property were excluded from the Second Amendment.

After the Nineteenth Amendment in 1920 guaranteed women the right to vote, Justice Sutherland, writing for the Court, praised "the great—not to say revolutionary—changes which have taken place since that utterance, in the contractual, political, and civil status of women, culminating in the Nineteenth Amendment."[1018] Although laws could still take into account the physical differences between men and women, laws could not treat women like children, by imposing special restrictions on female contract rights that could not constitutionally be imposed on men.[1019]

Although Justice Sutherland's strong defense of the competence and free choices of women was later swept away when the New Deal Supreme Court abandoned nearly all judicial protection of the right of contract, Justice Sutherland turned out to be on the right side of history. Since the 1970s, very few laws that impose special disabilities on account of sex are considered constitutional.

Similar observations can be made about the rights of young adults, and the constitutional guarantee of their voting rights in 1971. The trend over the last half-century has been towards recognizing that people who bear the burdens of adulthood—including military conscription and liability to criminal prosecution as an adult—also have the rights of adulthood. In general, the rights of young adults include the same contract and property rights as of older persons. The only notable exception to the trend of recognizing young adult rights has been re-raising the age for various "vices," such as alcohol. Under American law, none of these vices are constitutionally protected; instead, these vices can be—and sometimes have been—prohibited for the entire population, regardless of age.[1020]

[1016] U.S. CONST. amend. XXVI.

[1017] *See* DONALD S. LUTZ, POPULAR CONSENT AND POPULAR CONTROL: WHIG POLITICAL THEORY IN EARLY STATE CONSTITUTIONS 90-91 (1980) (Ga., S.C., Pa., N.C., and N.H. limited voting to taxpayers; Mass. required £60 of property, N.J. £20, and N.Y. £20; Md. required 50 acres, and Del. a freehold).

[1018] *See* Adkins v. Children's Hospital, 261 U.S. 525, 553 (1923), *overruled by* West Coast Hotel Co. v. Parrish, 300 U.S. 379 (1937); U.S. CONST. amend. XIX.

[1019] *Adkins*, *supra* note 1018, at 401 ("nor is there ground for distinction between women and men, for, certainly, if women require a minimum wage to preserve their morals men require it to preserve their honesty").

[1020] *See* Rosenthal, *supra* note 1012.

Electronic copy available at: https://ssrn.com/abstract=3205664

Case 4:23-cv-00547-O Document 20-2 Filed 10/06/23 Page 325 of 555 PageID 443

The right to arms is just the opposite. While the Twenty-First Amendment affirms very broad state power over alcohol, up to and including prohibition, the Second Amendment guarantees the right to keep and bear arms.[1021] As has been detailed above, the original meaning of the Second Amendment recognized that young adults have a right and duty to keep and bear arms.

VII. CONCLUSION

If the Second Amendment is interpreted according to the original public meaning, as *Heller* says it must be, the Constitution contains a clear rule for the arms rights of young adults. It is beyond dispute that when the Second Amendment was ratified, young adults had the right to keep and bear arms. State and colonial assemblies collectively legislated on the militia hundreds of times, revising many subjects. The militia entry age was 15-18. Sixteen was the most common. The only 21-year-old law existed for two decades in colonial Virginia; that law was repealed long before the Second Amendment was adopted. From the first federal militia laws to the present, the militia of the United States has always included eighteen-year-olds. During the nineteenth and twentieth centuries, the federal government worked to put arms in their hands.

According to *Heller*, the innermost core of the Second Amendment is the right to keep a handgun in the home for lawful self-defense. Laws that prohibit or nearly prohibit young adults from doing so are unconstitutional.

[1021] U.S. CONST. amends. II, XXI.

Electronic copy available at: https://ssrn.com/abstract=3205664

EXHIBIT P

85TH CONGRESS } SENATE { REPORT
2d Session } { No. 1429

JUVENILE DELINQUENCY

REPORT

OF THE

COMMITTEE ON THE JUDICIARY
UNITED STATES SENATE
(85th Cong., 2d sess.)

MADE BY ITS SUBCOMMITTEE ON
JUVENILE DELINQUENCY

PURSUANT TO

S. Res. 52 as extended
(85th Cong., 1st sess.)

TOGETHER WITH

INDIVIDUAL VIEWS

MARCH 27, 1958.—Ordered to be printed

UNITED STATES
GOVERNMENT PRINTING OFFICE
20008 WASHINGTON : 1958

COMMITTEE ON THE JUDICIARY*

JAMES O. EASTLAND, Mississippi, *Chairman*

ESTES KEFAUVER, Tennessee
OLIN D. JOHNSTON, South Carolina
THOMAS C. HENNINGS, Jr., Missouri
JOHN L. McCLELLAN, Arkansas
JOSEPH C. O'MAHONEY, Wyoming
SAM J. ERVIN, Jr., North Carolina
JOHN A. CARROLL, Colorado
ALEXANDER WILEY, Wisconsin
WILLIAM LANGER, North Dakota
WILLIAM E. JENNER, Indiana
ARTHUR V. WATKINS, Utah
EVERETT McKINLEY DIRKSEN, Illinois
JOHN MARSHALL BUTLER, Maryland
ROMAN L. HRUSKA, Nebraska

SUBCOMMITTEE TO INVESTIGATE JUVENILE DELINQUENCY IN THE UNITED STATES

(85th Congress)

THOMAS C. HENNINGS, Jr., Missouri, *Chairman*

SAM J. ERVIN, Jr., North Carolina
ESTES KEFAUVER, Tennessee
JOHN A. CARROLL, Colorado
WILLIAM LANGER, North Dakota
ALEXANDER WILEY, Wisconsin
JOHN MARSHALL BUTLER, Maryland

JAMES L. SULLIVAN, *Chief Counsel*
ERNEST A. MITLER, *Special Counsel*
CARL L. PERIAN, *Research Director*

*The late Honorable Matthew M. Neely of West Virginia served as a member of both the Committee on the Judiciary and the Subcommittee To Investigate Juvenile Delinquency until his death on January 18, 1958.

CONTENTS

		Page
I.	The national juvenile delinquency picture	1
II.	Activities of the subcommittee	2
III.	Problems studied during 1957	4
IV.	Legislation of the subcommittee	4
	Switchblade knives	5
	Firearms legislation	7
	Résumé of subcommittee legislation	8
V.	Armed Forces induction policies	8
VI.	Study of institutions for juvenile delinquents	13
	Recommendations	16
VII.	The handling of delinquent and incorrigible children in the public school systems	16
VIII.	Other activities of the subcommittee	20
IX.	Delinquency among Indian children	21
	Statement of Senator Alexander Wiley	24

89001°—58 S. Rept., 85-2, vol. 1——90

85TH CONGRESS 2d Session | SENATE | REPORT No. 1429

JUVENILE DELINQUENCY

MARCH 27, 1958.—Ordered to be printed

Mr. HENNINGS, from the Committee on the Judiciary, submitted the following

REPORT

Senate Resolution 89, which was adopted by the Senate on June 1, 1953, provided that the Committee on the Judiciary, or any authorized subcommittee thereof, was authorized and directed to conduct a full and complete study of juvenile delinquency in the United States. It stipulated that such an investigation give special attention to (1) determining the extent and character of juvenile delinquency in the United States and its causes and contributing factors, (2) the adequacy of existing Federal laws dealing with youthful offenders, (3) sentences imposed on, or other correctional action taken with respect to, youthful offenders by Federal laws dealing with youthful offenders, and (4) the extent to which juveniles are violating Federal laws relating to the sale or use of narcotics.

Pursuant to the authorization in Senate Resolution 89, the Senate Subcommittee To Investigate Juvenile Delinquency was organized and commenced an investigation of juvenile delinquency. Although the time limitation of the original resolution was January 31, 1954, the Senate has each year since that time authorized a continuation of the study. During 1957 the subcommittee operated pursuant to Senate Resolution 52,* agreed to January 30, 1957, as amended by Senate Resolution 191.

I. THE NATIONAL JUVENILE DELINQUENCY PICTURE

In previous reports of the subcommittee, it was indicated that the upward trend in juvenile delinquency among those in the 10 to 17 years of age group has been in evidence since 1948. In 1956, for the eighth consecutive year there was a tremendous increase in the number of juvenile court cases. During that year, there were 520,000 juvenile delinquency cases brought before the juvenile courts. (That year was the first time data were collected on a national representative sample of juvenile courts by the Children's Bureau of the Department of Health, Education, and Welfare.) This constitutes a 21 percent

*On January 29, 1958, by an order of the Senate the time for filing reports was extended to February 21, 1958, and by a further order on February 21, 1958, was extended to March 17, 1958. On March 17, 1958, by a further order of the Senate, the time was extended to March 31, 1958.

increase in 1956 over 1955, or the largest yearly increase in any of the previous 8 years. This increase seems to be substantiated by the FBI arrest data for children under 18 which shows a 17 percent increase in 1956 over 1955. This figure represents 2.2 percent of the children in the 10 to 17 years of age group of our population.

In the 8-year period from 1948 through 1956, juvenile court cases more than doubled while the child population of that age group increased only 19 percent. As in previous years, the increase is at a much greater rate in rural areas than in urban areas, and the ratio of 5 boy delinquents to every 1 girl delinquent is still in evidence.

Based on the Bureau of Census predictions for the number of boys and girls in the 10 to 17 year age group in 1965, we will have approximately 44 percent more children in this category than in 1956. Once again, the subcommittee's prediction still holds that if our delinquency rate continues its upward trend at the same rate it has during the years 1948 through 1956, approximately a million children will appear before the courts in 1965.

In the year 1956, there were upwards of 1,300,000 boys and girls coming to the attention of local law-enforcement officers. Approximately one-fourth of the police cases are referred to juvenile courts. The remaining juvenile court cases are referred from individuals and other agencies in the community.

Although we feel that much progress has been made in the development of new and dynamic programs for the handling of the delinquency problem, we realize that it is an on-going, long-range problem and one that requires on-going, long-range scrutiny, evaluation, reevaluation, and study. In spite of our progress in the field of delinquency, we find a 21 percent increase in juvenile court cases in the latest year for which we have complete data—and only 3 percent of this increase can be attributed to the increase in population of children of juvenile court age. While many may wonder at the apparent lack of success of our efforts to combat delinquency, the subcommittee feels that if it were not for these efforts our delinquency rates would be increasing at an even greater pace than at present.

II. Activities of the Subcommittee

During the past 4 years the Subcommittee To Investigate Juvenile Delinquency has investigated a number of environmental and psychological situations, which are all germane to the subject of juvenile delinquency. Because of the makeup of the staff, which includes people with training in the fields of both law and the social sciences, we have been able to go into areas concerning delinquency which previously were virgin fields. Because of the nature of the subcommittee, we have been able to investigate many situations which necessitated not only the power to subpena and investigate legally, but the social-psychological knowledge to interpret and intelligently react to the data we gathered. As a result, the subcommittee has come up with many sound bills, reports, and recommendations backed and given the sanction of both the legal professions and the behavioral and educational sciences.

Where it was felt Federal action or Federal legislation was necessary as a remedy or solution, such action was initiated or the needed legislation introduced. Where it was felt necessary to make strong recom-

Case 4:23-cv-00547-O Document 20-2 Filed 10/06/23 Page 333 of 555 PageID 451

mendations to organizations such as the movie industry, the television industry, the comic book industry, the post office, and a host of other institutions throughout the United States, they have been made through the reports of the subcommittee. In addition, attention has been focused nationally on many areas throughout the United States that had problems that were specific to the area, but also had nationwide implications. This technique has had far-reaching effects in stimulating local communities to action, State governments to action, and indeed the Federal Government to action.

In going throughout the country, the subcommittee would gather in one place and at one time experts from the many, many fields of human endeavor that might touch upon delinquency, and through the interchange of ideas we have crystallized many plans for action, many thoughts, and much more competent activity in relation to the delinquency problem. The subcommittee has, in effect, acted as a catalyst, bringing about the combination of many heretofore diverse elements in the field of juvenile delinquency. By applying the prestige of the United States Senate to a situation, we have encouraged and actually achieved the difficult task of getting various institutions, organizations, and agencies within communities to forfeit the individual nature of their activities and to combine and coordinate their efforts in an attempt to combat their own delinquency problems.

The volume of correspondence and the nature of the requests and inquiries made to the subcommittee and the stature of the organizations requesting the information that we have, testifies to the fact that the Nation looks in part to the Federal Government for leadership in finding solutions to so vexing a problem. In carrying out its function of investigation, study, evaluation, and dissemination of information received, the subcommittee has listened to and examined some 1,200 witnesses in public and executive hearings, studied the programs of scores of local community agencies, State agencies, and Federal agencies, collected statistics on a great number of factors relating to delinquency, analyzed and made recommendations in regard to studies and statutes, and conducted a variety of hearings in 26 cities.

Our most recent effort has been the development of what the subcommittee calls a total community plan for the handling of juvenile delinquency. The subcommittee observed throughout its years of study that the main problems in the handling of juvenile delinquency are (1) the lack of trained and skilled workers in the field of delinquency; and (2) where these workers are available to agencies, there is a lack of coordination, guidance, and accountability by a central administrative body, which in turn waters down their effectiveness. In view of the first problem, the subcommittee has been steadfastly attempting to get State and city officials to enact legislation which would alleviate the shortage of trained personnel in this field by providing motivation in the form of funds and grants.

In relation to the second problem, the subcommittee in December 1957 planned extensive hearings in the city and State of New York, from which it hoped to develop this total community plan to promote the concept of a central administrative agency for coordinating the activities of all agencies and institutions handling delinquency in any one geographical or political area. Information acquired through our investigations and from the testimony of the many witnesses from public and private agencies in New York is to be incorporated into

a detailed and extensive report. From the nature and volume of the correspondence received by the subcommittee, we know this information is needed and desired throughout the United States.

Unfortunately, because of the chairman's illness we were unable to complete the hearings in New York, and we are now in the process of gathering a wealth of data from that city and from that State which will be included in a report to be issued this year.

III. Problems Studied During 1957

During 1957, the subcommittee, under Senate Resolution 52, as amended by Senate Resolution 191, continued its investigations into the causes and contributing factors and related areas of juvenile delinquency as outlined in the resolutions.

The subcommittee conducted studies and investigations on a limited basis in five major areas. These included (1) the interstate traffic in guns and switchblade knives used by many youths and youth gangs in large urban areas; (2) the recruitment and induction of juvenile offenders and former juvenile offenders into the Armed Forces; (3) methods of handling incorrigible and delinquent children in the school systems of several large cities; (4) a preliminary investigation by subcommittee staff members of a number of State training schools with the view of determining how the Federal Government can assist in strengthening and improving the treatment programs in these schools; and (5) a hearing in New York City which centered around that city's programs for the prevention, treatment, and rehabilitation of juvenile delinquents. The ultimate object of these hearings is to develop a model system of coordinating the activities in any geographic or political area for other cities to utilize in handling their juvenile delinquency problem.

IV. Legislation of the Subcommittee

During the 1st session of the 85th Congress, the subcommittee drafted and introduced 11 pieces of legislation which it was believed would aid in remedying situations discovered during previous investigations. Included in this legislation were S. 2558, a bill which would outlaw interstate transportation of switchblade knives to help keep them out of the hands of juveniles; three measures aimed at improving facilities and programs for the treatment of juvenile drug addicts were introduced as a result of the subcommittee's hearings on that subject; and the so-called omnibus bill, which was introduced in the 84th Congress and passed by the Senate near the end of that session, was refined in light of later study and reintroduced in the 85th Congress as S. 431. This is one of the most important pieces of legislation ever to be proposed for alleviating the juvenile delinquency problem across the Nation, and, if enacted into law, should greatly increase the effectiveness of agencies and institutions fighting delinquency.

Staff members participated in hearings held by other committees on bills which were originally introduced by this subcommittee. One of these bills, S. 1659, which proposed that the District of Columbia enter into the reciprocal enforcement of support agreement with other States, was reported out of the District Committee as S. 2032 and passed in July of 1957. The passage of this bill closed a great loophole

in the welfare services of the District of Columbia and the States surrounding it.

Members of the staff also reevaluated the so-called border legislation, which had been introduced in the previous Congress as S. 959. The purpose of this bill was—

> to prohibit juveniles unaccompanied by parent or guardian from going outside the United States without a permit issued by the Attorney General for such purpose.

The object of the original measure was to keep juveniles under 18 from exposure to prostitution, liquor, narcotics, and pornographic literature, which were found to be readily available to them in several towns along the United States-Mexico border. Preliminary investigation indicated that the above conditions still exist. Letters of inquiry were sent to the attorneys general of all the Southwestern States and to district attorneys of all border towns. Venereal disease, narcotics, and prostitution figures were brought up to date to support the following proposed legislation—a concurrent resolution requesting the President and the Department of State to initiate negotiations for a treaty with the Republic of Mexico (1) to control the movement of unescorted juveniles entering border communities and (2) to alleviate by cooperative action the serious conditions of narcotics traffic, vice, and pornography that exist in many Mexican border towns. This could be implemented by the utilization of existing statutes whereby the Department of State can order the immigration authorities to impose departure control through cards of identification. This procedure is provided for in the Code of Federal Regulations (title 22, par. 53.5, based on sec. 215) of the Immigration and Naturalization Act (Public Law 414, 82d Cong.). While this law authorizes travel control over United States citizens only during wartime or in a national emergency, Presidential Proclamation 3004, January 23, 1953 (vol. 18, Federal Register), activates this statute. Conferences were held by the subcommittee staff with representatives of the Bureau of Immigration and Naturalization and the Department of State. The subcommittee has failed in its efforts to develop any interest on the part of the people concerned with this problem in terms of legislative proposals or executive action.

Switchblade knives

An investigation was conducted by the staff of the subcommittee into the use of dangerous weapons by juveniles, with special emphasis on the interstate traffic and importation of switchblade knives. The major manufacturers, importers, and many of the major distributors of switchblade knives were interviewed and their methods of operation studied.

In an effort to determine the severity of the problem on a community level, the major police departments in the United States were sent questionnaires. Other questionnaires were mailed to a selected number of mail-order purchasers of these knives.

S. 2558 was introduced in the 1st session of the 85th Congress and is presently pending before the Senate Committee on Interstate and Foreign Commerce. Under existing law, there is no penal prohibition against the interstate movement of switchblade knives. S. 2558, if enacted into law, would prohibit interstate traffic in these knives and

has special provisions for dealing with those selling to a person under the age of 18 years.

The subcommittee's investigation disclosed that many of these knives were manufactured abroad and distributed by firms in this country who handle numerous items in addition to switchblade knives.

It was established that these items were being widely distributed through the mail by distributors to the various States that had local laws prohibiting possession, sale, or distribution of switchblade knives. This fact, the subcommittee feels, points out the need for Federal control of the interstate shipment of these instruments, since local legislation is being systematically circumvented through the mail-order device.

In the United States, 2 manufacturers have a combined production of over 1 million switchblade knives a year. Both concerns are important cutlery manufacturers and the manufacture of switchblade knives represents only a small part of their business. It is estimated that the total traffic in this country in switchblade knives exceeds 1,200,000 per year.

The questionnaires returned by police chiefs throughout the country indicate that many switchblade knives have been confiscated from juveniles. The police chiefs, almost without exception, indicate that these vicious weapons are on many occasions the instrument used by juveniles in the commission of robberies and assaults. Of the robberies committed in 1956, 43.2 percent were by persons under 21 years of age. A switchblade knife is frequently part of the perpetrator's equipment in this type of crime. In New York City alone in 1956, there was an increase of 92.1 percent of those under 16 arrested for the possession of dangerous weapons, one of the most common of which is the switchblade knife.

Out of several hundred questionnaires sent by the subcommittee to purchasers of switchblade knives, whose names were derived from a distributor's mailing list, 133 responses have been received. Seventy-five percent of the purchasers were under 20 years of age, and of this group, 43 percent were between 11 and 15 years of age. Of the persons responding to the questionnaire, only a small portion claimed that the knives were secured for a constructive purpose.

In addition to the interviews with manufacturers and distributors and the receipt of information from questionnaires, staff contact was made with some of the purchasers in the immediate area and numerous retail stores. The proprietors of these stores conceded that the bulk of the demand for switchblade knives came from juveniles, some as young as 8 or 9 years of age.

A major outlet for the switchblade knife are military supply stores which are located near military installations. Some of the manufacturers and distributors felt that the purchase of these articles by military personnel, even though they might be 17- and 18-year-olds, was not objectionable. A questionnaire sent to the provost marshal in most of the major Army installations established that the possession of these knives was contrary to post regulations and that frequent assaults had occurred in which these knives had been used within the confines of the installation. These articles are not used in connection with training for military purposes. The one exception is an order for automatic-opening knives that was placed by the Department of Defense for parachutists to use in cutting their ropes. However, these

knives were issued directly to military personnel and were not secured through Army-Navy supply stores.

During 1956 at Fort Bragg, N. C., it was necessary for the military police to confiscate from personnel 161 switchblade knives—an average of 3 a week. At Fort Sill, Okla., 75 of these knives were confiscated as a result of aggravated assault in 1956. In the area of Fort Bliss, Tex., alone, there are more than 20 establishments selling these knives.

One of the largest manufacturers and several of the major distributors of switchblade knives said they would be glad to abandon manufacturing and distributing the article if it were banned on a Federal footing.

In response to the subcommittee's questionnaire, police chiefs from all sizable communities, with few exceptions, uniformly supported the enactment of legislation prohibiting the interstate traffic in these articles.

Although over 20 States have an explicit prohibition against the sale of the automatic-opening knife, and many more have a general kind of prohibition against possession with intent to use any kind of dangerous article, the dissemination of approximately 1,200,000 of these articles, many of them going into the States where there are local prohibitions against their distribution and many of them getting into the hands of juveniles, shows the need for Federal controls.

The proposed legislation directed against the interstate traffic in these articles provides for a maximum fine of $2,000 and/or a 5-year prison sentence, with a maximum fine of $5,000 if an interstate sale is made to a juvenile under 18.

Firearms legislation

Questionnaires were sent to police departments throughout the United States concerning the interstate movement of firearms and its impact on juvenile delinquency. The questionnaire was directed at the desirability of including pistols and revolvers in the type of firearms that must be registered with the Treasury Department under the National Firearms Act. At present they are exempt from registration. The other point of inquiry was to learn the views of police chiefs on an amendment to the Federal Firearms Act (15 U. S. C. 901–909).

This proposed amendment would require a manufacturer or dealer, licensed pursuant to the Federal Firearms Act, to conform with all State laws governing the purchase of firearms. At present a manufacturer or dealer, licensed pursuant to the Federal Firearms Act (15 U. S. C. 901–909), is required to predetermine and observe State laws governing the purchase of firearms only in instances where the State requires that a license be obtained for the purchase of such firearms. The underlying purpose of the suggested change in the law is to broaden the pertinent sections of the Federal Firearms Act (15 U. S. C. 902 (c)) to require the Federal licensed manufacturer or dealer to conform with all State statutes relative to the sale, purchase, and possession of firearms. This would mean that in any State that had such legislation, the Federal out-of-State licensed manufacturer or dealer shipping firearms into the State would be required to notify a designated authority of the sale.

At present, many firearms are moving across State lines and falling into the hands of young persons without the knowledge of the author-

Case 4:23-cv-00547-O Document 20-2 Filed 10/06/23 Page 338 of 555 PageID 456

ities. The reaction of the police chiefs to the questionnaire was mixed, and further study is being given to the problem before a definite position is taken. However, it was firmly established that firearms can move with considerable freedom from State to State in a manner sometimes inimical to the public good. It was found to be easy for a juvenile to respond to a gun ad in many of the magazines and to secure a weapon through the mail.

The following résumé indicates the bills that have been introduced by the subcommittee and the present status of the bills:

New legislation, 85th Cong.

Bill No.	Comments
S. 676	A bill to amend sec. 2314, title 18, U. S. Code, with respect to the transportation in interstate commerce of articles obtained by false or fraudulent pretenses, representations, or promises or through any scheme or artifice to defraud. (Senators Kefauver, Langer, and Hennings—Referred to Committee on the Judiciary.)
S. 980	A bill to authorize the establishing by the Surgeon General of an aftercare posthospital treatment program for drug addiction and for other purposes. (Senators Kefauver, Hennings, Langer, Payne, and Javits—Referred to the Committee on Labor and Public Welfare.)
S. 981	A bill to create an Advisory Committee on Drug Addiction in the Department of Health, Education, and Welfare. (Senators Kefauver, Hennings, Langer, Payne, and Javits—Referred to the Committee on Labor and Public Welfare.)
S. 982	A bill to establish a hospital of the Public Health Service in one of the Pacific Coast States, especially equipped for the treatment of persons addicted to the use of habit-forming drugs. (Senators Kefauver, Hennings, Langer, and Javits—Referred to the Committee on Labor and Public Welfare.)
S. 2558	A bill to amend title 18, U S. Code, to prohibit interstate traffic in switchblade knives and to prevent these instruments from getting into the hands of juveniles. (Senators Kefauver, Hennings, Butler, and Clark—Referred to the Committee on Interstate and Foreign Commerce.)

Resubmitted legislation, 85th Cong.

85th Cong. bill No.	84th Cong. bill No.	Comments
S. 355	S. 2103	A bill to amend the law relating to indecent publications in the District of Columbia. (Senators Kefauver, Hennings, and Langer—Referred to the Committee on District of Columbia.
S. 356	S. 2100	A bill to amend the act entitled "An act to create a juvenile court in the District of Columbia," so as to provide for the appointment of a referee. (Senators Kefauver, Hennings, and Langer—Referred to the Committee on District of Columbia.)
S. 357	S. 2101	A bill to amend sec. 7 of the Juvenile Court Act of the District of Columbia. This bill puts the Director of Social Work under the judge. (Senators Kefauver, Hennings, and Langer—Referred to the Committee on District of Columbia.
S. 431	S. 728 and S. 4207	A bill to provide for assistance to and cooperation with States in strengthening and improving State and local programs for the diminution, control, and treatment of juvenile delinquency. (Senators Kefauver, Hennings, and Langer—Referred to the Committee on Labor and Public Welfare.)
S. 588	S. 3021	A bill to amend title 18, United States Code, to make unlawful certain practices in connection with the placing of minor children for permanent free care or for adoption. (Senators Kefauver, Langer, and Thye—Referred to Committee on the Judiciary.)
S. 1659	S. 2105	A bill to make uniform the law of reciprocal enforcement of support in the District of Columbia. (Senators Hennings, Kefauver, and Langer—Referred to the Committee on District of Columbia, reported out as S. 2032, and passed into law.)

V. Armed Forces Induction Policies

In our Report No. 130, issued early in 1957, the subcommittee indicated the problems attendant to induction or recruitment by the Armed Forces of former delinquents. The summary of recommenda-

tions in that report indicated that because of the great number of former delinquents who make up the available manpower pool for the United States Armed Forces, the rejection of all of them would not be feasible. We further indicated that the indiscriminate admission of all former delinquents into the armed services is just as unwise. While we felt that the present policy of the Air Force, for example, of admitting some delinquents and rejecting others is a desirable procedure, we indicated that the present criteria for doing so were unsound. The subcommittee recommended that detailed studies of the careers of former delinquents who have already served in the Armed Forces be made to determine those delinquents who did perform well as against those who did not perform well. From these studies, prediction scales could then be developed to more efficiently use our manpower in any future emergency.

During the course of the year the subcommittee found that the Air Force had initiated such a study at Lackland Air Force Base. A wealth of data was gathered by persons in the field of juvenile delinquency and criminology who were hired as consultants to the Air Force, and upwards of $900,000 was spent in conducting the research. However, because of lack of funds to complete the study, the Air Force Research and Development Center dropped the project and the data are now stored in a warehouse at Lackland. The information contained in them is not being utilized by the Air Force or anyone else, and its is the opinion of the subcommittee that the final stage of this vast research—the analysis of the data gathered and the setting up of the prediction scales—should be completed if the money already spent is not to be a total loss. Over and above this, the value of the prediction scale that could be derived from this information is inestimable to the safety and future of this Nation.

The subcommittee staff studied a series of military establishments responsible for the induction and recruitment of Armed Forces personnel. Recruiting officers were interviewed at the station level, at a United States Army recruiting district which recruits personnel for 1 of the 6 Army areas in the United States, and at the corresponding Army Headquarters.

In regard to the acceptance of former juvenile delinquents for service in the Armed Forces, the recruiting manuals of the various services stipulate certain offenses that, once committed, make the individuals ineligible for entry into the service. There is no compromise. No attempt is made to determine whether or not the former delinquent has been rehabilitated and is presently a good prospect for service. The fact that he committed the offense precludes his serving and the recruiting officer has no alternative but to refuse to accept the application.

On the other hand, the recruiter has the discretion of admitting potential recruits with minor violations. (It is ironic that while a single traffic offense may not preclude the entry of a youth into the service, the commission of 2 or 3 traffic offenses requires a waiver and can result in the individual being refused entry. On the other hand, an adult with a similar series of traffic offenses is not ineligible to enter the service.)

There is a third group of former delinquents who are eligible for being waived into the service. In order to accomplish this, the recruiter must fill out waiver forms which are in turn sent to the com-

mander of his recruiting district. At this stage, the available record of the former delinquent is studied and a recommendation is made to either accept or reject the potential recruit. (If the juvenile court record is not made available, the individual's case is not even considered, which is a problem discussed in another part of this report.) This recommendation is then forwarded to the headquarters command of the Army area where final disposition is made of the case.

At this stage an individual with no particular background in the field of crime or delinquency determines on the basis of the information supplied him by the commander of the recruiting district whether or not the waiver should be granted. The subcommittee was told by the officers at the intermediate level (who made the more adequate study of the individual) that sometimes there seemed to be no rhyme or reason for some of the action taken on their recommendations. At times people that they strongly recommended be rejected were accepted at headquarters command of the Army area or vice versa. The subcommittee was given examples of persons with minor offenses being rejected while a person with a relatively serious offense was accepted. The subcommittee plans to study this situation further and issue a report, suggesting changes in this procedure.

Another problem indicated in Report No. 130 was the controversy between correctional people in the field of delinquency, many of whom regard their records on former delinquents as confidential, and the military recruitment and induction personnel, who need this information as a basis for rejection or acceptance of any former delinquent. This situation was most acute in those areas where the juvenile court refused to cooperate with recruiting officers which ended any chance the former delinquent might have had of getting into the service. Many juvenile courts justify this stand, however, by claiming that the recruiters are not qualified to interpret the records which many times include psychiatric data.

On the other hand, recruiters claim that juvenile court judges give enlistment in the service as an alternative to probation or sentence. This practice was so common that the Armed Forces issued regulations to prohibit the entry of any person who was released from probation in order to enlist.

In order to gain an exact picture of the practices of juvenile courts in regard to this problem, the subcommittee staff sent 250 questionnaires to juvenile courts throughout the Nation. We found a wide variety of practices that ranged from a complete rejection of any attempts by the military to gain information on the record of a former delinquent to a workable arrangement with the military to aid them in the determination of acceptance or rejection.

The following excerpts from several questionnaires indicate the wide divergence in philosophy of various juvenile courts on this problem and the difficulties encountered at times due to the nonuniformity of State laws in regard to releasing the records of former delinquents. The following statements are in answer to the question:

> Have you ever denied records requested by a juvenile delinquent or by a recruiting officer for the purpose of enlisting the juvenile in some branch of the armed services?

Hon. Leo J. Yehle, judge of children's court, county of Onondaga, Syracuse, N. Y.:

> Have not denied records requested by a delinquent. It is our policy in accordance with our law to deny records to the armed services and others.

Hon. W. Rhodes Clay, judge, county court of Fayette County, Lexington, Ky.:

> No. But I believe denial in some instances would have been more just to the applicant because of wrong conclusions by recruiting officer or staff in examining the records.

Hon. William R. Collinson, judge of juvenile court, Greene County, Springfield, Mo.:

> Such information has never been denied. However, under the new Juvenile Code of Missouri going into effect August 29, 1957, the disclosure of this type of information is expressly prohibited by law except upon written order of the judge of the juvenile court having jurisdiction. All recruiting offices and selective service boards should be required to operate in accordance therewith.

Hon. Arthur L. Eno, judge, district court of Lowell, Lowell, Mass.:

> Yes. Records are given to recruiting officers, providing only that the consent is given by the juvenile offender himself or his parents, or with the permission of the presiding justice of this court.

Hon. John J. Connelly, judge, Boston Juvenile Court, Boston, Mass:

> No. Two or three years ago, because of the enlistment and selective service officers denying the right of service to boys and girls who had made a mistake because of their immaturity and childhood and from that time had been good citizens, we threatened to withhold records of delinquency. The armed services in this area are now cooperating with our court by the more judicious use of records.

Hon. Carlton F. McNally, judge, courthouse, St. Paul, Minn.:

> We do not turn over files to any branch of the armed services, since we feel that the record itself is a private one. However, upon written authorization from the parents or guardian of the juvenile, the probation department gives information from the file—selecting all relevant information.

Hon. Forrest R. Shanaman, judge, courthouse, Reading, Pa.:

> Yes, when the complaint was a minor one, or when the delinquent act was not considered symptomatic behavior, or when the boy was with a group and was not the instigator.

Hon. Orman W. Ketcham, judge, juvenile court of the District of Columbia, Washington, D. C.:

> It has been the policy of this court to deny such requests made by recruiting officers. Requests by juvenile delinquents to inspect their own legal (as distinct from social)

records are usually granted. However, the court makes an exception in cases where, in its judgment, the nature of the offense—homicide, arson, sexual perversion—would clearly tend to disqualify the former juvenile delinquent from enlistment in the military service.

The following statements are in answer to the question:

> Have there been any instances in your court in the last year where the probation period of a delinquent was wāived on condition that he enlist in some branch of the armed services? Do you favor or oppose this policy?

(Hon. Harry L. Eastman) John J. Mayar, director of social services, Cuyahoga County Juvenile Court, Cleveland, Ohio:

> No. This court is firmly opposed to using enlistment in the armed services as an alternative to probation or commitment to an institution. We believe it is most unwise for a judge in any court, not just juvenile, to state to the delinquent or defendant in an adult court words to the effect that if he doesn't enlist in some branch of the service, he will be "sent away." The armed services have a great deal to offer the young men and women of our country, but his experience is is something which the boy himself should want and not something which is offered to him as an alternative to being committed to a training school. We are most willing, as a rule, to cooperate fully with the recruiting office in releasing our jurisdiction in those cases where it is believed that the individual would make a good member of the armed services and where the plan for enlistment was initiated by the boy and his family and not the court.

Hon. French Clements, judge, Probate Court of Vanderburgh County, Evansville, Ind.:

> In the past year no probation period has been waived on condition that subject enlist in any branch of the armed services. I am opposed to waiving a probation period for the sole purpose of permitting or forcing any person to enlist in any branch of the armed services. A situation could exist which would warrant a release from probation to enable one to enlist.

Hon. W. W. Woolfolk, judge, Fulton County Juvenile Court, Atlanta, Ga.:

> It depends upon the individual person involved. There have been instances where a recruiting officer would check a boy out and find that everything else was in order and would ask that the court dismiss him from probation so that he could enter the armed services free of civil restraints. There have been some instances where the court felt that the offense was not sufficiently serious to stand in the boy's way and bar him from entering the service, and in such cases we have waived probation and dismissed him from our jurisdiction. I feel that, when handled properly, this can be beneficial both to the young man involved and the armed services.

(Hon. Nathan J. Kaufman) Simon Pilzner, assistant chief probation officer, Wayne County Juvenile Court, Detroit, Mich.:

> Yes, many times. Waiver of probation in favor of enlistment only when indicated as first offender, or type of delinquency where court uses its discretion. We also favor predating of termination of probation because formal closing of case sometimes takes approximately 3 months. (Many services demanded "off probation 6 months prior to enlistment" before acceptable to them.)

Hon. August C. Taveria, judge, Third District Court of Bristol, New Bedford, Mass.:

> There have been many instances in this regard and I have no opposition to this policy.

Hon. Edwin L. Swope, district judge, courthouse, Albuquerque, N. Mex.:

> Yes. I favor such a policy because military service solves the problem for many boys 17 years of age who are not required to attend school and cannot find employment.

Hon. James H. Montgomery, Jr., judge, juvenile and domestic relations court, Richmond, Va.:

> We have terminated our probation in order that the individual can be accepted into the armed services. We do not think that the fact that a boy is on probation should be considered when he tries to enlist. When we dismiss our action, we then lose control of the boy, and if he is rejected for service, there is no way the court can resume jurisdiction.

The returned questionnaires are now in the process of being tabulated. A report will be issued by the subcommittee on the basis of our study, in which we will make recommendations to the National Association of Juvenile Court Judges, which members of the subcommittee hope will help settle the issue.

VI. Study of Institutions for Juvenile Delinquents

A study was initiated in 1957 of the State correctional schools for boys and girls in the United States. This study, while still continuing, has developed to the point that certain positive findings can be presented, as well as a number of constructive recommendations.

The superintendents and senior staff members of many of these institutions were conferred with. Twenty-two of these institutions were visited, and close to 100 boys and girls who had been at these institutions were interviewed. In addition, reports relating to the State correctional schools and all other related literature on this subject were studied. In the case of brutality and immoral conduct between the staff and the juveniles, corroborative material and judgments of conviction have been obtained.

Over 33,000 juveniles reside each year in all State and local training schools in the United States. These youngsters very often represent the so-called hard core delinquents. They are the group that require the most intensive utilization of all the techniques and skills the community has available.

They are youngsters who are in the formative years of their lives and are more amenable and responsive to an intelligent and well-rounded treatment program than adult offenders who are inmates of State and Federal penal institutions. Ironically, in many States the adult correction program has developed in a progressive manner much more rapidly than the juvenile correction program, possibly because until the past 7 years the community's interest has been more intensively focused on adult, rather than juvenile, institutions.

In the past 10 years there has been a sharp change in the philosophy of those responsible for the administration of these institutions. Formerly, many administrators believed that their function was purely to hold juveniles in secure custody and to rehabilitate and correct their charges by the use of punitive and repressive measures. Corporal punishment, frequently extending into brutality, was commonplace. Regimentation, rigid discipline, and a never-ending series of rules and regulations, which the normal person might find difficult to conform to, were the backbone of the traditional training school program. All of the superintendents who conferred with the staff of the subcommittee expressed a concern in developing a helpful treatment program for the juveniles in their institutions. They were all equally anxious to eliminate as much as possible the arbitrary use of repressive measures and corporal punishment. This healthy change in attitude has, of course, been reflected by a great improvement in the programs of many of the State correctional schools. Unfortunately, despite the desires of the superintendents who were interviewed, many of the State correctional schools, in practice, still continue to be institutions dominated by the use of force where young people can only continue to develop an already hostile and bitter attitude toward society.

This condition is attributable principally to the inability of State correctional schools to obtain trained, skilled, and understanding staff on the supervisory and custodial level. The intentions of the administrative staff often are enlightened and constructive, and an excellent program can be formulated in theory and on paper, but this sound structure and beginning has little value if the staff is unable or unwilling to carry it out.

Frequently strict regulations against the use of corporal punishment are ignored by staff members who are unskilled in dealing with juveniles, and despite instructions to the contrary from the superintendent, force and threats are resorted to to solve many of the typical problems that arise when dealing with a group of delinquents and sometimes emotionally disturbed juveniles.

Legislation has been drafted for introduction to establish in the Division of Juvenile Delinquency Service of the Children's Bureau, Department of Health, Education, and Welfare, a training center to develop skilled, professional staff for employment in institutions and agencies for delinquents. The establishment of this institution, it is hoped, will make possible a sound training program not only for administrators, but for those on the supervisory and custodial level in the State correctional schools. Not only will the training of staff improve the programs in the institutions, but employees of a higher caliber will be attracted to work in these institutions if they have an opportunity for developing professional skills that will permit them to advance in the institutional field.

The significance of the proposed legislation is best illustrated by an analysis of some of the subcommittee's preliminary findings regarding State training schools.

It is commonly agreed by all professional people working in the institutional field that individualized treatment and a homelike surrounding is the most effective setting for helping delinquent youngsters who must be separated from their homes. The United States Children's Bureau publication, Institutions Serving Delinquent Children, recommends:

> Living groups in training schools should not exceed a maximum of 20 students, even when they are fairly homogeneous (p. 43).

Furthermore, it is the consensus of opinion that the schools should be limited in size and that the staff should be sufficient in number not to be overwhelmed by the sheer mechanics of daily living. In many of the urban States, the correctional schools have as many as 500–800 boys in their custody; rarely does the number fall under 250 in the public institutions. In one midwestern State training school, they often have over 200 boys over and above the number for which the school was designed. Confronted with this overcrowding and lack of staff members, the following gains in the juvenile correctional field are a tribute to an uphill fight by many devoted superintendents and staff members who are dedicating their careers to work in these institutions.

One critical area that has received special attention in many of the State training schools is the improvement and development of their academic program. This was illustrated in a visit to the State Training School for Boys, Milledgeville, Ga. Recognizing that there are many boys at the school who cannot benefit from a standard school program, the school superintendent, Mr. Ireland, has established a program for slow learners and boys of limited capacity. In this program the emphasis is not only on learning the rudiments of writing and reading, but on training in the elementary, routine mechanics of daily living. Reading defects have been found to be a characteristic of many delinquent youngsters. This specialized program, which is executed without pressure and in an informal way, enables many of these youngsters to equip themselves with the basic tools necessary to navigate in society. This, in turn, relieves them of much of their hostility. At the Federal reformatory, Ashland, Ky., a specialized course for boys who have reading defects is being developed, with the prospect of great success. Many of the other institutions visited were in the process of developing special classes for boys or girls who had reading problems.

Brutal and immoral conditions were found to exist in certain of the training schools. Often a situation was found where a good school with a good staff had several employees of sadistic or perverted leanings, whose practices were not always brought to the attention of the responsible persons in the administration.

Questionnaires were sent to social work schools to determine the extent to which they were training staff for employment in State correctional schools. The responses indicated an awareness of the need for expansion of curriculum in this direction. Several of the schools have developed courses along this line. The New York School

89001°—58 S. Rept., 85-2, vol. 1——91

of Social Work is rapidly expanding its program in this field. Almost uniformly, the schools stated that few of their students were interested in employment in correctional schools due to the low pay, poor professional status of many of the schools, rapid change of staff—sometimes for political reasons—and generally the lack of opportunity to do really constructive work in a surrounding that focused its attention on custody rather than treatment.

Recommendations

1. Each State, through its universities and social work schools, and the Federal Government, through the Department of Health, Education, and Welfare, should establish training centers for the development of trained and understanding staff to work in State correctional institutions. Special focus should be given to training cottage supervisors, who are at present usually the least trained—and yet the most vital—persons dealing with boys and girls in State correctional institutions. Employment in these schools should be put on a career basis, with good pay and chance for advancement in the department operating the school. This would attract a higher caliber personnel for employment in these institutions.

2. A program of halfway houses—residential centers for boys and girls who have been released from State correctional institutions—should be developed. Often boys and girls are released from institutions to return to a home where conditions are so critical and undesirable that it is impossible for them to adjust properly to the community. Every large city and community should have available a residence where these young people could live upon release. They would be free to participate in all community affairs, have the benefit of a limited treatment program in the residence, and could visit their home on occasion. Several already exist—one being the Stuyvesant House in New York City—and they have been very successful.

3. Men and women being employed for work in correctional institutions should be more closely screened to make certain that their background is one of emotional stability and good character. By being more careful in employment of these people, there will be less chance of sadistic or perverted individuals obtaining entry into an atmosphere peculiarly suited to their desires.

4. Further emphasis should be made in developing special classes and instruction for slow learners and especially for retarded readers.

Thus far the investigation into training schools has been on a limited basis and conclusions and recommendations made herein will necessarily be supplemented upon completion of the subcommittee's investigation.

The subcommittee hopes to investigate conditions in many more of the State and Federal training schools this year, with a view toward developing a program whereby the State and Federal Governments can work together to raise the standards of institutions housing these unfortunate children.

VII. The Handling of Delinquent and Incorrigible Children in the Public School Systems

Increasingly serious problems in the Nation's public school systems with delinquent and incorrigible youth have resulted in much publicity with reference to the expulsion of these unmanageable children and

the handling of mentally disturbed children. The subcommittee began studying this problem when it became apparent that right here in the Nation's Capital child guidance and mental health facilities available to the school system were almost totally lacking, and, as a result, school officials were faced with the unfortunate situation of expelling unmanageable children, turning them out into the streets, as it were, and releasing them from any sort of formal control or formal treatment program. The subcommittee staff made a study of this situation and found that Washington, D. C., is one of the major cities woefully lacking in ancillary facilities for handling school problems. Mentally disturbed children in the District must wait 12 to 18 months before they can be given any help. During this time, of course, their condition can, and usually does, become much worse. They can and do increasingly become a threat to society, while less and less amenable to treatment. In a nearby Maryland county the brutal murder of a junior high school girl by a classmate who had been a long-time mental case brought forth statements from school and mental health officials that the major reason for this occurrence was the lack of adequate facilities in the area for handling mentally disturbed children in the schools. School officials knew the boy was emotionally disturbed long before his illness erupted so violently, but they were at a loss over what to do with him because of this lack of facilities.

The increasingly serious problems in both the District and neighboring county school systems, including three other murders committed by pupils, resulted in much publicity with reference to the handling of these children and the expulsion of unmanageable children. On looking into the District situation, it was found that incorrigible children were in danger of being turned loose from schools to roam the streets until they were picked up by the police.

The subcommittee offered the superintendent of schools of the District its help in developing an emergency plan to handle the juveniles who became so dangerous that they had to be removed from school. We also offered our help in initiating a long-range preventive plan to keep the more serious cases from developing. Suggestions and recommendations were made to the school system by the subcommittee by correspondence and interviews, and the latest communication to the subcommittee from the District school superintendent indicates that these incorrigible children will not be excluded from any formal handling. Instead, a team composed of 1 psychologist, 1 psychiatrist, and 2 social workers from the health department will review the cases of children who may have to be excluded. This team will study and evaluate each case prior to exclusion and make recommendations for placement or care after the pupil is excused from school. (The services of these professional people were obtained by the Commissioners' Youth Council from the District Health Department, and they were assigned to the Department of Pupil Appraisal, Study, and Attendance.)

A good example of the overpowering odds against which the District school officials must work is the situation in which the subcommittee found the District schools' Pupil Appraisal, Study, and Attendance Department. At the time of our inquiry, this department was composed of 10 people who administered individual psychological examinations. The unit has three functions: (1) To conduct group tests of achievement and intelligence; (2) to make psychologi-

cal studies of behavior problems and to make recommendations based on these studies; and (3) to handle attendance problems.

In 1956, 5,928 children were referred to the department for psychological testing. They were able to complete the examination of 1,212 referrals. The remaining 4,716 were sent back to school the following fall with a request to the principal to send back only the serious cases. Of the thousands of referrals, only those cases held to be emergencies are given attention, while the incipient delinquents remain in the files indefinitely, or until such time as they become emergency cases. The staffing of this special services department has not been kept in line with pupil expansion. The obvious weaknesses in the program are: (1) The majority of the children cannot be handled; and (2) many recommendations made to parents by this department are not acted upon. There are no followup facilities to determine if their recommendations have been carried out. When recommendations for other school services are made, such as referral to a speech correction class, the child is put on a waiting list and given a temporary excuse from school. This may result in the child staying out of school several days, several weeks, or sometimes indefinitely. The school system has no facilities whatever for certain types of physical and mental cases.

This division had available for 2 hours a week the services of a psychiatrist, which consisted mainly of advice to the rest of the staff. Emergency cases were referred to public health clinics; however, these too are overcrowded.

There is also, within the District school system, a series of special classes to which are referred children who are relatively normal emotionally, but have some sort of school or home problem for which temporary treatment is determined to be necessary. They are referred from regular classrooms by the principals of the various schools. Children referred to these special classes are placed in (1) citywide adjustment classes, of which there are 3 in the District; and (2) separate community school type adjustment classes, of which there are 13 in the District.

Ideally, in each school there should be 1 class of this type for the older boys and 1 for the younger boys in order to keep them separated. In the District, teachers who handle these classes need no special qualifications other than those required for the average schoolteacher. All 3 of the citywide classes which handle these problem children have untrained instructors, as it is virtually impossible to get persons who have been especially equipped to handle them because of the extremely low salary which the Board of Education is able to pay. As indicated above, the special classes which exist in the city school system, such as remedial reading and speech classes, are not equipped to handle all of the referrals.

During the year two young inexperienced teachers were put in charge of special classes for problem children with the understanding that if the job was too difficult for them they should notify the principal, whereupon they would be released. They both did find the job too difficult. The assistant superintendent in charge of junior high schools in the District told the subcommittee, "When you have reached the bottom of the barrel, there is nothing else you can do." He was not criticizing the ability of these two teachers, but the situation wherein young teachers, as yet unskilled in handling disciplinary problems, were asked to cope with a group of the worst behavior

problems in the District school system. The subcommittee is in full agreement with the superintendent and in sympathy with the District School Board. In its 1958 budget request, the reading specialists for senior high schools, the remedial reading classes for senior and junior high schools, and classes for the mentally retarded were eliminated along with the request for pupil counselors for junior high schools.

The members of the subcommittee are aware of the importance of this type of personnel in handling incipient behavior problems. The fact that delinquents invariably are characterized by an inability to read is an indication of their lack of ability to perceive and understand the world they live in—a great factor, psychologists tell us, in their delinquent behavior. The fact that the junior high school age is one of great stress and strain, during which many vexing problems arise, should be evidence enough of the need for special counselors for these young people. However, when it is realized that it is these problem situations that often result in delinquent behavior, the need for this type of personnel is magnified many times.

In view of the present situation in the District of Columbia school system, where it was necessary to exclude students because of misconduct, where children with problems must wait for special classes or services that may never come, where teachers with no special training to do so are asked to handle problem classes—in view of this, the members of the subcommittee entreat the Congress of the United States to appropriate the necessary money to make the school system of the Nation's Capital one that can be emulated, rather than one that is inadequate in terms of personnel and available facilities.

The subcommittee is aware of the fact that this is a problem faced by every large community in the United States. For example, New York schools have been beset by this problem of incorrigible and delinquent youth who disrupt and deteriorate classroom procedures. In looking for solutions to this situation, the subcommittee staff made a study of the so-called "600" school system in the city of New York, which is a series of 15 schools to which unmanageable and incorrigible children can be referred by their teachers. The members of the subcommittee feel that this group of schools is part of the answer to the problem of unmanageable children.

We will go into a much more detailed analysis of the effectiveness of the "600" schools in the forthcoming report on the New York hearings.

In reference to the District of Columbia situation, the subcommittee cannot emphasize enough the responsibility that the District Commissioners have in seeing to it that the schools of the Nation's Capital are more adequately staffed with better trained and better paid personnel. We would like to commend the Commissioners' Youth Council on its "maximum benefits" project, which is bringing to bear all of the available community services on the emotionally disturbed pupils of a Washington school in a high delinquency area. This is a beginning, but it is only one school. If more dynamic steps are not taken, such as those outlined in the District of Columbia Health Department proposals for strengthening and establishing additional mental health services for the schools and the school board's proposals for increased personnel to handle problem children, the District may at some future date find itself in a situation similar to that which now plagues other large cities.

VIII. Other Activities of the Subcommittee

Throughout the year just past the subcommittee staff distributed upwards of 10,000 copies of reports and printed transcripts of hearings to a wide variety of professional and nonprofessional organizations and agencies and individuals throughout the country. Six thousand of the subcommittee's Report No. 130, the so-called omnibus report, were distributed. While numerous requests for this report are still received, there are only a limited number left which are distributed to congressional offices and to professional organizations and agencies. This report covered a wide variety of factors associated with the delinquency problem. Discussed in great detail were such subjects as rehabilitation of juvenile drug addicts, venereal diseases among juveniles, recreation, housing projects, therapeutic services, urban youth commissions, and family services dealing with the prevention of delinquency. Other areas covered in the report were juvenile vandalism, the effect of economic need and slum areas on delinquency, juvenile drinking, youth gangs, and the effect of punishment and discipline in rehabilitating juvenile delinquents. Other topics discussed were police services for juveniles, juvenile courts, detention of children in the United States, training schools, and forestry camps. This report was hailed by the press and professional people as bringing progressive concepts into the public spotlight in regard to this Nation's juvenile delinquency problem.

The subcommittee still receives hundreds of requests by letter and phone for subcommittee publications which are now out of print. Many of these reports have been quoted widely in the professional journals. Many have also been quoted widely and incorporated into the permanent literature of the juvenile delinquency field, as evidenced by publications such as college textbooks which appeared during the past year.

The subcommittee also issued a report during the year on juvenile delinquency in St. Louis. While this report was in effect a critical evaluation of the juvenile delinquency fighting facilities in the city of St. Louis, it was regarded by that city as a highly objective one and was in part responsible for that city's streamlining its delinquency-handling machinery.

During the past year some of the Nation's largest and most well-known dealers in pornographic literature were indicted or received maximum prison sentences under the law. These pornographers were originally pointed out by the subcommittee through investigation by the subcommittee staff and their activities brought to light through public hearings.

Because the subcommittee has been the only agency in this country's history to publish complete works on the relationship between the mass media and juvenile delinquency, which included our reports on the motion picture, television, and comic book industries, we are still considered by the public to be a focal point for registering complaints regarding these media. Because of this, we receive much correspondence in relation to our work in the area of removing objectionable and harmful contents from them. We are also in a position to pass on to these industries the complaints we receive and to keep them alert as to public opinion about their products.

IX. Delinquency Among Indian Children

The subcommittee, in October 1954, under the acting chairmanship of subcommittee member Senator William Langer of North Dakota, began a series of hearings covering Indian reservations in the States of North Dakota, South Dakota, New Mexico, Arizona, Utah, Colorado, Nevada, California, Wyoming, Montana, and Idaho, to determine the increase in the incidence of juvenile delinquency on reservations. Numerous Indian leaders and public officials, who have jurisdiction over Indian affairs, had written to the subcommittee urging that these hearings be held.

The subcommittee, on September 1, 1955, issued an interim report (No. 1483) entitled "Juvenile Delinquency Among the Indians," which was a 239-page document relating extensively to many of the problems that confront the Indian people on Indian reservations throughout the United States which may have an impact on the incidence of delinquency on the part of Indian youth. The report brought to the attention of Congress the very low average yearly income of the Indian family, the physically deteriorated area in which they live, the poor living conditions on Indian reservations, coupled with the difficulty of Indians obtaining gainful employment or loans for their small businesses, farms, or ranches. This economic factor had a direct relationship to the delinquency pattern among Indian children.

Also brought to the attention of Congress was the poor health conditions and lack of health facilities on Indian reservations, the lack of proper welfare and youth services on the reservations, and the need for greater public education facilities and improvement of the educational services rendered by the Bureau of Indian Affairs.

It was further pointed out that law and order on the Indian reservations need great improvement and that lack of funds and personnel was the most contributing factor to such laxity of enforcement of law and order as found on the different reservations.

The subcommittee made extensive conclusions and recommendations which were submitted to the Congress of the United States.[1] Several of these recommendations have been enacted into law and others have been acted upon by the executive branch of the Government, primarily through the Bureau of Indian Affairs and the United States Health Service.

During this past year, primarily through the energetic services of Senator William Langer, the subcommittee's activities as regards the American Indian have been geared toward improvement of the financial status of the American Indian family, as well as improvement in health, education, welfare, and recreational services. The subcommittee has participated in numerous conferences dealing with problems affecting the American Indian people and their reservations. One of these conferences was a 10-day conference of Indian chiefs representing 40 tribes from the States of Oklahoma, Kansas, and Mississippi, held at Dallas, Tex. This regional conference was called by Indian Affairs Commissioner Glen L. Emmons, where he and his staff members and Bureau of Indian Affairs area personnel met with the Indian chiefs to discuss the many facets of Indian affairs on Indian reserva-

---

[1] See Subcommittee Rept. No. 1483, 84th Cong., 2d sess., an interim report on juvenile delinquency among the Indians, pp. 44–48.

tions. The subcommittee was represented at this conference in lieu of conducting open hearings which had been previously scheduled. One of the principal subjects was the providing of sources of jobs for the Indian people. The Indian chiefs believe that although the relocation program aided in obtaining employment for Indians in major cities, gainful employment had to be provided for the Indian family in or near his reservation. Another topic of great interest and concern to the Indian chiefs attending this conference was the increase in juvenile delinquency among the Indian youths. Much of this 10-day conference revolved around this important social problem and resolutions were passed by the group urging effective measures be taken to combat juvenile delinquency on Indian reservations. To effectuate the concern of the Indian chiefs throughout the country of the need for job opportunities in or near Indian reservations, Senator Langer, joined by 19 Senators, introduced Senate bill 809 to provide loans or grants to Indian reservations for the purpose of encouraging industry in or near the reservations.[2] The Senators who cosponsored this legislation were as follows: Senators O'Mahoney, Kefauver, Thye, Case of South Dakota, Young, Magnuson, Dworshak, Morse, Chavez, Mundt, Church, Jackson, Murray, Barrett, Bible, Bricker, Kerr, Humphrey, and Mansfield.

The jewel bearing plant at Rolla, N. Dak., which has been in operation since 1952, has been hiring almost exclusively Indian labor and has become a model in the encouragement of industry at or near Indian reservations. Six other industrial plants have been put into operation at Gallup, N. Mex.; Flagstaff, Ariz.; Cherokee, N. C.; Lame Deer, Mont.; Casa Grande, Ariz.; and Zuni, N. Mex. These plants hire almost exclusively Indian labor.

The subcommittee has participated in several other conferences relating to the many problems facing the American Indian on the Indian reservation. The Governors' Interstate Indian Council met in Oklahoma City on October 24, 25, and 26, and was attended by representatives from each of the States where Indian reservations are located. At this conference, discussion was held dealing with Indian affairs. Subcommittee member William Langer, in submitting a statement to the conference, in part stated as follows:

> The Indian people through their leaders have expressed the desire that they want to provide for themselves and their children by obtaining stable and gainful employment so that they may become a self-sustaining people and not depend, any more than necessary, on the services accorded by the Federal and State Governments. Not only will they be more self-sustaining economically, but it will further establish in them the strong family and community pride that has always been a part of the Indian people.
>
> I have no doubt in my mind that with the bringing of industries to the Indian people, jobs will be created. The creation of jobs means a higher income level per Indian family. The higher level of income per Indian family means better opportunities for education, better housing, better health, and better recreation for the Indian people, resulting in less need for the heartbreaking requests for welfare aid.

---

[2] See remarks re S. 809 as reported in Congressional Record appendix on January 23, 1957

A more recent conference was sponsored by Arrow, Inc., on November 25 and 26, 1957, which was a session of Indian leaders and Indian youth and was most encouraging in meeting the problems of Indian youth on the various Indian reservations.

The subcommittee feels that since Congress has jurisdiction over the Indian people, the subcommittee should continue to examine conditions affecting the youth on Indian reservations which may lead to delinquency. The subcommittee will continue to present to the Congress of the United States the recommendations in its 1955 report, which has not yet been acted upon by the Congress. Since the hearings were begun in 1954, there has been improvement in the fields of health, education, welfare, law, and order. Much improvement is needed in the field of creating job opportunities and improving the financial plight of the American Indian family. Only until improvement in these categories is sufficiently shown can the delinquency patterns of Indian youth be reduced considerably.

INDIVIDUAL VIEWS OF SENATOR ALEXANDER WILEY

I generally concur in the committee report. I also wish to direct thought to these matters:

DANGERS

Juvenile delinquency is coming more and more to be recognized as a problem with dangerous implications. From 1955 to 1956, juveniles brought to court increased 21 percent.

From 1948 through 1956, juvenile court cases more than doubled, compared with an increase in the juvenile population of only 19 percent.

AWARENESS OF THE DANGER

The Senate Subcommittee on the Study of Juvenile Delinquency in the United States is doing a commendable job in helping to alert the country to these dangers.

The subcommittee has published specific reports on its investigations. These include studies of the influences toward juvenile delinquency resulting from crime and horror stories told in some comic books, television shows, and motion pictures. The subcommittee also issued a report on obscene and pornographic literature. And it published reports with respect to the aid in solving the problem of juvenile delinquency which is being given, and can increasingly be expected, from churches and schools.

The overall reports of the subcommittee have discussed many aspects of the problem and have coordinated the conclusions of the separate specific reports.

The number of requests for these publications indicate the welcome reception given by the public to the information which the subcommittee has gathered.

CAUSES

It is, of course, axiomatic that the center of the life of a growing child is in the home. It has long been recognized, and continues to be true, that the happy home produces no juvenile delinquents, unless there is some unfortunate and unusual outside influence.

But, under the stresses of the modern machine age, the home is finding it increasingly difficult to keep its strength and position. And children do not always receive the loving care which it may have been easier to show in a home midst quiet surroundings in a small town or village in the good old days.

Activities which help maintain and rebuild the influence of home life will, in my judgment, help reduce the problems of juveniles.

COMMUNITY AGENCIES

If and when the home fails, there are in most communities local agencies which are usually well prepared to help the youngster out of his trouble and toward a new life. However, in other places, due to

lack of available funds or lack of modern training, or lack of coordination, the agencies and institutions provided for juvenile care are not in position to achieve what they would like to do.

A LOCAL PROBLEM

However, this does not mean that the problem does not continue to be a local one. The Federal Government can supply information and suggestions which the local community may consider, debate, and adopt or reject. It is only when a problem is beyond the capacity of the locality and of the State, and also poses a problem of national magnitude, that the Congress should focus attention on the situation. However, the Federal and State Governments have a continuing function of disseminating helpful information.

WISCONSIN PROJECT

As an illustration of what can be done locally and in the States to cope with this problem, I call attention to one of the best plans which I have seen. It is, quite naturally, one evolved, or worked out, by the Wisconsin State Board of Public Welfare. In the introduction to a report on this plan, the director of the State department of public welfare, Mr. Wilbur J. Schmidt, and the director of the division for children and youth, Mr. Fred DelliQuadri, state their policy as follows:

> Every dollar and every hour of service invested in prevention can bring a much greater return in conservation of human resources and in savings of public welfare dollar expenditures. But the job of prevention is one which is accomplished primarily in the local community and only by the civic effort and concern of many citizens, parents, and young people. The State agency's role in prevention, therefore, becomes to a larger extent one of consultation, education, and assistance to local citizens and officials to help them do a better job of prevention.

Information concerning this program was introduced by me into the record of the hearing on juvenile delinquency in New York City and so was made available for possible use there.

As the Senate subcommittee report indicates:

> Our most recent effort has been the development of what the subcommittee calls a total community plan for the handling of juvenile delinquency. The subcommittee observed throughout its years of study that the main problems in the handling of juvenile delinquency are: (1) The lack of trained and skilled workers in the field of delinquency; and (2) where these workers are available to agencies, there is a lack of coordination, guidance, and accountability by a central administrative body, which in turn waters down their effectiveness.

WISCONSIN'S PROGRAM ORIENTED AROUND LOCAL COMMUNITY

As an example of what States are doing, I call attention to the Wisconsin demonstration project prospectus which gives some worth-

while guidelines which other States may find useful. For instance, it says:

> In the words of Governor Thomson, this is to be "an experimental program designed to bring together—at the community level—all the skills necessary for successful preventive work in the field of juvenile delinquency and youth guidance."
>
> Nationwide, there is an accelerated interest in and concern about the observable increase in family breakdown, community disorganization, and the mounting costs of these social ills.
>
> Wisconsin has long recognized that treatment in the community is preferable to institutional treatment, that research is needed into the causal factors of social ills, and that if social welfare programs are truly to serve the socially and economically disadvantaged, they must be preventive in nature.
>
> The greatest effort to date, both in State and local community services, has been in the treatment of the individual who is already delinquent, neglected, emotionally disturbed, or dependent. In recent years efforts have been intensified in Wisconsin toward the developing and strengthening of all services for families in the community. This preventive work, within legal and financial limits, involved a broad program of community education and community organization, including assistance to citizens and local officials through surveys and consultation seeking to improve local recreation, education, health, welfare, law enforcement, and juvenile court services. The greatest continuing gap in prevention is in services designed to reach those families and those children especially vulnerable to social ills, before the onset of social breakdown in the individual or within the family.

CONCLUSIONS

And so, there should issue a clarion call, to each community and to each religious, civic, and governmental organization in each community, to increase and intensify its efforts to locate any and all juvenile delinquency problems in its community and to bring all of the forces for good to bear upon their solution.

1. Local community social services should be brought to their best level of operation.
2. Families which are running into difficulties should be able to find expert advice and guidance locally.
3. Schools should identify problem children promptly and make corrective guidance available to them immediately.
4. Families of those problem children should be advised how to help them.
5. Local community social services should be coordinated so as to be available to the family in time to help it solve its problems before it breaks up.
6. Great effort should be made to prevent mental and emotional damage from happening to children and to make them feel loved by their families and a wanted part of their communities.

Case 4:23-cv-00547-O Document 20-2 Filed 10/06/23 Page 357 of 555 PageID 475

7. Physical disabilities, which in turn can result in disabilities in spelling and reading, should be corrected to bring the child in closer and more understanding contact with his fellows. A sickly fellow, or one with poor, uncorrected eyes or otherwise inferior, may react with dangerous hostility toward the world in which he lives. (Of course, many children can adjust to a situation of being different from and inferior to the crowd; but others need special help in doing so. There is a broad range of disability problems, any one of which may create a situation which will trigger an antisocial attitude.)

8. Such legislation as is additionally necessary should be passed by the local, State, and Federal Governments to keep harmful influences like pornographic, horror, and crime stories away from children and young people.

9. The Federal Government should encourage the establishment of training schools for institutional personnel which is going to supervise or come in contact with juvenile adjustments committed to institutions.

10. Institutional programs should be for the purpose of the curing and correcting, as well as the humane punishment, of juvenile delinquents so that, when their terms are over, they will increasingly come well-adjusted and law-abiding members of society.

11. The effect of unemployment in weakening the home and lessening the needed respect in which a son holds his father should be fully appreciated by those in position to act.

12. The impact of the immigration of labor and families from the country and small town to the city, from the South to the North, is unsettling to the family and its influences for good, and so ways must be found to reestablish the home environment.

13. In youth programs, let the activity fit the child. Especially in the period of adolescence, there is the surge of new energy, new interests, and new needs. It is essential that the youth's dynamic spirit be attracted by activities which will fully utilize his energies and enthrall his ambition. Personal attention to the needs of different youngsters, or at least different types of youngsters, is usually essential if a program is to succeed in arousing his interest. Some may respond more to the opportunity to study, some more to music and beauty, others only to the most vigorous games. The school, playground, or other program director must have the great skill of being able to inspire the youngsters whom he directs, because, in a real sense, he is trying to supply the guidance and inspiration all too lacking in the impersonal world in which many underprivileged youth must live.

Youth direction and guidance of a type which can inspire the young person to selflessly devote himself to a cause (or to improve himself for a future career)—such leadership is needed.

14. And, finally, only if the community (whether city, neighborhood, town, or village) and the State, and all of the private organizations in the community and the State, cooperate wholeheartedly toward meeting the modern crisis of increasing juvenile delinquency will our free America remain the safe, happy, and constructive land we know and love so well.

ALEXANDER WILEY.

O

EXHIBIT Q

:23-cv-00547-O Document 20-2 Filed 10/06/23 Page 359 of 555 Page

JUVENILE DELINQUENCY

(New York Programs for the Prevention and Treatment of Juvenile Delinquency)

HEARING

BEFORE THE

SUBCOMMITTEE TO INVESTIGATE JUVENILE DELINQUENCY

OF THE

COMMITTEE ON THE JUDICIARY UNITED STATES SENATE

EIGHTY-FIFTH CONGRESS

FIRST SESSION

PURSUANT TO

S. Res. 52

EIGHTY-FIFTH CONGRESS

INVESTIGATION OF JUVENILE DELINQUENCY IN THE UNITED STATES

DECEMBER 4, 1957

Printed for the use of the Committee on the Judiciary

UNITED STATES
GOVERNMENT PRINTING OFFICE
20873 WASHINGTON 1958

KnifeRights MSJ App.000354

COMMITTEE ON THE JUDICIARY

JAMES O. EASTLAND, Mississippi, *Chairman*

ESTES KEFAUVER, Tennessee
OLIN D. JOHNSTON, South Carolina
THOMAS C. HENNINGS, Jr., Missouri
JOHN L. McCLELLAN, Arkansas
JOSEPH C O'MAHONEY, Wyoming
MATTHEW M. NEELY, West Virginia
SAM J. ERVIN, Jr., North Carolina

ALEXANDER WILEY, Wisconsin
WILLIAM LANGER, North Dakota
WILLIAM E. JENNER, Indiana
ARTHUR V. WATKINS, Utah
EVERETT McKINLEY DIRKSEN, Illinois
JOHN MARSHALL BUTLER, Maryland
ROMAN L. HRUSKA, Nebraska

SUBCOMMITTEE TO INVESTIGATE JUVENILE DELINQUENCY IN THE UNITED STATES

THOMAS C. HENNINGS, Jr., Missouri, *Chairman*

MATTHEW M. NEELY, West Virginia
SAM J. ERVIN, Jr., North Carolina
ESTES KEFAUVER, Tennessee

WILLIAM LANGER, North Dakota
ALEXANDER WILEY, Wisconsin
JOHN MARSHALL BUTLER, Maryland

JAMES L. SULLIVAN, *Chief Counsel*
ERNST A. MITLER, *Special Counsel*
CARL L. PERIAN, *Research Director*

CONTENTS

Statement of—

	Page
Cohen, Frank J., director of student services, Graduate School of Public Administration and Social Service, New York University	50
Dumpson, James R., incoming first deputy commissioner of welfare, New York City Welfare Department, New York, N. Y	80
Harriman, Hon. Averell, Governor, State of New York, Albany, N. Y	10
Jansen, Dr. William, superintendent, Board of Education, city of New York	89
Johnson, Hugh, street club worker, Council of Social and Athletic Clubs, New York City Youth Board, New York, N. Y	93
Kahn, Dr. Alfred J., professor of social work at the New York School of Social Work, Columbia University, and consultant, Citizens' Committee for Children of New York City, Inc	33, 48
Lightfoot, Harrison, street club worker, Council of Social and Athletic Clubs, New York City Youth Board, New York, N. Y	93
McCloskey, Mark A., chairman, New York State Youth Commission Albany, N. Y	25
McGraw, Walter, producer of radio and television documentaries, New York, N. Y	43
Norman, Sherwood, director of detention services, National Probation and Parole Association	61
Poe, John W., executive director, Youth House, New York, N. Y	55
Rogers, Arthur J., director of community relations, Council of Social and Athletic Clubs, New York City Youth Board, New York, N. Y	93
Schmais, Aaron, street club worker, Council of Social and Athletic Clubs, New York City Youth Board, New York, N. Y	93
Whelan, Ralph, executive director, New York City Youth Board, New York, N. Y	84

Statement submitted by—

Alt, Herschel, executive director, Jewish Board of Guardians, 228 East 19th Street, New York, N. Y	145
Carey, Gerald J., assistant to the chairman, New York City Housing Authority	171
Carpenter, H. Daniel, director of Hudson Guild, 436 West 27th Street, New York, N. Y	155
Cooper, Hon. Irving Ben, chief justice, Court of Special Sessions, 100 Centre Street, New York, N. Y	176
Gallagher, Rev. Robert E., executive director, Catholic Charities Guidance Institute, New York, N. Y	140
Gamso, Dr. Rafael R., medical superintendent, Riverside Hospital, North Brother Island, foot of East 134th Street, New York, N. Y	150
Hill, Hon. John Warren, presiding justice, Domestic Relations Court, 135 East 22d Street, New York, N. Y	167
Hotchkiss, Henry G., president, Federation of Protestant Welfare Agencies, Inc., New York, N. Y	143
Kennedy, Stephen P., police commissioner, New York City Police Department, New York, N. Y	164
Linda, Joseph M., youth parole director, Boys' Training Schools Home Service Bureau, 88 Reade Street, New York, N. Y	122
Louchheim, Joseph H., deputy commissioner, State Department of Social Welfare, 112 State Street, Albany, N. Y	106
Murtagh, Hon. John M., chief city magistrate, Magistrates' Courts, 100 Centre Street, New York, N. Y	160
Papanek, Dr. Ernst, executive director, Wiltwyck School for Boys, Post Office Box 71, Esopus, N. Y	131
Phelan, Joseph F., Jr., executive director, the Children's Village, Dobbs Ferry, N. Y	125

3-cv-00547-O Document 20-2 Filed 10/06/23 Page 362 of 555 Pa

Statement submitted by—Continued

	Page
Powers, Sanger B., director, Division of Corrections, State Department of Public Welfare, 104 East Dayton Street, Madison, Wis	187
Rieber, Frederick C., deputy commissioner, New York City Department of Correction, 100 Centre Street, New York, N. Y	103
Rogers, Arthur J., director of community relations, Council of Social and Athletic Clubs (supplemental statement of street workers)	99
Scarborough, Donald D., superintendent, New York State Vocational Institution, Coxsackie, N. Y	120
Schwarz, Mrs. Sanford, 41 West 83d Street, New York, N. Y	190
Stark, Hon. Abraham, president, City Council, City Hall, New York, N. Y	168
Wiley, Hon. Alexander, United States Senator from the State of Wisconsin	6

EXHIBITS

Number and Summary of exhibit

1. Copies of Senate Resolution 52 and Senate Resolution 191, 85th Congress, 1st session	3
2. Copy of resolution authorizing subcommittee to hold hearings in New York	4
3. Prospectus for a demonstration project on prevention of juvenile delinquency and related social ills, June 1957	7
4. Community services program of the Division for Children and Youth, State Department of Public Welfare, a report, February 1956	*5
5. Public Child Welfare in Wisconsin, Child Welfare Report No. 7	*5
6. Chart: Community Functions in Dealing With Delinquents, excerpt from a forthcoming book, Planning Community Services for Children in Trouble, by Alfred J. Kahn, Citizen's Committee for Children of New York City, Inc	39
7. Chart: The tragic case of Ronald Marrone	44
8. Detention of Children in the United States, by Sherwood Norman, director of detention services, National Probation and Parole Association	62
9. Statement of the NPPA on S. 1455 and similar bills to control juvenile delinquency	65
10. Statement on juvenile detention by Sherwood Norman	65
11. Regional Detention Centers, an article submitted by Mr. Sherwood Norman from the NPPA News, January 1957, volume 36, No. 1	71
12. Chart: Organizational chart of the New York City Youth Board	84
13. Chart: Council of Social and Athletic Clubs, New York City Youth Board	93
14. Chart: Questionnaire on switchblades	96
15. Department of Correction Profile, from the Kings County Grand Juror (May 1957), official organ of the Kings County Grand Jurors' Association, Inc	105
16. Classification and Treatment, article submitted by Abraham G. Novick, superintendent, New York State Training School for Girls, from the January 1958 issue of the NPPA Journal	108
17. Achieving Integration Between the Juvenile Delinquent and His Community, article submitted by Abraham G. Novick, published in Federal Probation, June 1956	115
18. The prehospitalization personality structure of patients at Riverside Hospital generalized into five descriptive groups by Dr. Donald Gerard, associate visiting psychiatrist at Riverside Hospital	154
19. Excerpts from the 1954 and 1955 Annual Reports of the Office of the District Attorney of Kings County submitted by Edward S. Silver, district attorney of Kings County, for inclusion in the hearings of the Senate Subcommittee To Investigate Juvenile Delinquency	180

*On file with the subcommittee.

JUVENILE DELINQUENCY

(New York Programs for the Prevention and Treatment of Juvenile Delinquency)

WEDNESDAY, DECEMBER 4, 1957

UNITED STATES SENATE,
SUBCOMMITTEE TO INVESTIGATE JUVENILE DELINQUENCY
OF THE COMMITTEE ON THE JUDICIARY,
New York, N. Y.

The subcommittee met, pursuant to call, at 10 a. m., in room 905, United States Courthouse, Foley Square, New York City, N. Y., Senator Thomas C. Hennings, Jr. (chairman of the subcommittee) presiding.

Present: Senators Hennings and Kefauver.

Also present: Representatives Multer, Anfuso, Powell, Zelenko, and Dooley; James L. Sullivan, chief counsel; Ernest A. Mitler, special counsel; Carl Perian, research director; Elizabeth McGill, chief clerk; and Bernard Fensterwald, administrative assistant to Senator Hennings.

Chairman HENNINGS. The committee will come to order.

I will ask the reporter to insert in the record my opening statement.

(The statement referred to follows:)

OPENING STATEMENT BY SENATOR THOMAS C. HENNINGS, JR., CHAIRMAN, SENATE SUBCOMMITTEE TO INVESTIGATE JUVENILE DELINQUENCY, AT HEARINGS, NEW YORK CITY, DECEMBER 4, 1957.

We are delighted to be in New York City to begin the first of 3 days of hearings. At the outset, I want to make it abundantly clear that this committee does not intend to criticize any agency or any individual in this great city. We wish to be entirely constructive. New York was chosen as the place for these hearings because of the large dimensions of the problem here and the magnitude of the effort to combat it.

I am especially happy that my colleague from the Senate and the committee, Senator Estes Kefauver, is with us for these hearings, as he has served on the committee since it was created by the Senate, and he has a great interest in problems affecting young people.

Along with Senator Kefauver, I have served as a member of the Committee To Investigate Juvenile Delinquency since its inception and have been chairman since last January. This has been one of the most challenging and interesting of my many Senate assignments. Long before that, however, I had been concerned with the welfare of our young people. As assistant district attorney of the city of St. Louis in the early 1930's and district attorney in the early 1940's, I was constantly faced with the fact that human tragedy is inevitable if our young people are not given proper guidance and understanding treatment. During these years, it was my sad duty to prosecute hundreds of youngsters who had been called up before the court on criminal charges. I am now chairman of the Senate Committee on National Penitentiaries and have had opportunity to see many institutions for youths who have gotten into trouble.

3-cv-00547-O Document 20-2 Filed 10/06/23 Page 364 of 555 Pa

Believing that all children are deserving of our interest and support, I have been for many years an active member of the Big Brothers organization, as well as other organizations which attempt to steer our young people into constructive paths.

Before we begin, I should like to thank all who have made these hearings possible. We have received the fullest support and cooperation from the State of New York through the office of Governor Averell Harriman; from the city of New York through the office of Mayor Wagner; and from many public and private agencies, whose assistance has enabled us to assemble the facts and material for these hearings. On behalf of myself, the other members of the committee, and the staff, I extend to you our deepest appreciation.

This investigative group was commissioned by the Senate 4 years ago to determine the extent, scope, and character of juvenile delinquency in the United States, which had been increasing at an alarming rate. We were also instructed to make recommendations and develop legislation, where feasible and necessary, at the Federal level.

At this point I should like to say, and I feel sure that my good friend, the distinguished senior Senator from Tennessee, will agree with me, that we do not believe that the Federal Government should become caretakers of the Nation's delinquents. However, now that delinquency has become what many consider to be the country's No. 1 social problem, it is felt that the Federal Government has a definite responsibility in assisting communities in coping with a problem which in many cases cannot be effectively dealt with by local resources alone.

In this connection, I should like to point out that during the last session of the Congress Senator Kefauver, Senator Langer, and I introduced S. 431, a bill designed to give such assistance to States. A similar bill passed the Senate during the 84th Congress, but unfortunately it was too late in the session for action to be taken by the House of Representatives. By means of the grants-in-aid device, funds would be provided for the training of personnel, for the improvement and extension of services for children and youth, and for a limited amount of risk capital to be used to launch and temporarily maintain new and experimental programs. If enacted into law, we feel that this measure would be of inestimable help in combating delinquency at the local level.

Throughout the committee's investigations, we noted many studies and experimental programs being developed to bring order out of the chaos that prevailed over the delinquency problem. Many of these fell by the wayside; others proved to be fruitful. For example, we have learned that delinquent behavior can be predicted with a fairly reasonable degree of accuracy; the spotlight has been thrown on many of the problems inherent in developing an efficient delinquency program; and we are much further along in the development of new techniques for treating and rehabilitating a variety of delinquent types.

What we hope to obtain at these hearings is a very frank appraisal of the various programs instituted in this State, with an equally frank appraisal of their success. We are here to learn as much as we can about these new developments now that the uproar has subsided somewhat and some clear thinking and planning has been done. We also want to see what progress has been made in setting up the machinery to handle the various facets of the overall problem and, more important, analyze the effectiveness of that machinery.

In our previous hearings across the country, we have found that many times agencies and groups, private and public, were attempting to deal with a situation that was overwhelming. Too often, because of a lack of direction and coordination, well-intentioned efforts were being dissipated.

If I may be permitted to paraphrase that well-known saying of Mark Twain about the weather, it seemed that everyone was talking about delinquency, but no one was doing anything about it. It has also been said that delinquency seems to increase in direct ratio to the conferences held on combating it. Well, it is true that there has been a great deal of talk about delinquency, but we also feel that much has been learned—enough so that now the knowledge which has been gained can be assembled into a program that will provide communities with the tools necessary to protect and aid their children and young people.

We have selected New York City for these hearings because your problem is unique and at the same time similar to that of other communities. It is unique only in the physical sense, simply because New York is the largest city in the country; it is similar because most of your problems here can be found elsewhere. New York also has many fine programs, experimental and in operation, preventive and rehabilitative, which can be adapted to the needs of other cities and towns.

3-cv-00547-O Document 20-2 Filed 10/06/23 Page 365 of 555 Pa
While we expect to hear much discussion during the next few days, we also hope that our efforts here and elsewhere will result in a blueprint for action that can remove what has been one of the greatest stumbling blocks in the treatment of juvenile delinquency—a lack of coordination of community effort. We further hope that such a plan will provide a definite course of action for those working on this problem; that we can show communities how they can better use their existing facilities and what additional facilities should be developed.

From the many fine witnesses scheduled to be heard during the course of these hearings, we shall explore the three broad areas in the treatment of delinquency: (1) early detection and prevention; (2) diagnosis and placement; and (3) reeducation and rehabilitation.

Concerning detection and prevention, it is felt that this area holds the greatest promise for the control of delinquency. Now that we have the techniques, such as the Gleuck's delinquency prediction scale, for the early detection of delinquency-prone youngsters, we should like to know to what extent and with what success these new tools are being used. In terms of human and monetary values, it is, of course, to the best interest of the individuals concerned and society to prevent delinquency whenever and wherever possible.

One of the most important facets in the treatment process, we feel, is the proper diagnosis and placement of delinquent boys and girls, and the necessity for this type of classification is just beginning to receive the attention it deserves. The haphazard placement of children in whatever facility available, be it jail or foster home, seems to be giving away slowly, but we hope surely, to diagnosis and classification along the lines of modern scientific thinking on this subject. As this method of placement is relatively new, the testimony which we shall hear on this phase of delinquency treatment should be of great value to the many communities which have not yet set up such machinery.

The last broad area in the treatment of delinquency is the reeducation and rehabilitation of youngsters adjudicated delinquent and committed to correctional institutions. While what has been referred to as the "reform of the reform school" has ostensibly been going on for many years, our investigations reveal that in far too many instances these institutions are not doing the rehabilitative job that should be done, and the treatment of youngsters in many of these schools is, to say the least, repressive. Here, too, we want to know what progress you have made in equipping young people to become useful, constructive members of society on their release from your institutions.

Under these broad areas of treatment, we know that here in New York you have many programs, operated by both private and public agencies, and we want to find out where these programs fit in the overall plan in the fight against delinquency. Such an appraisal, we feel, can be of value to your own program as well as to those of other communities.

Our youth are our greatest asset; we owe it to ourselves and to them to provide the best environment possible for their growing up. It will require the best effort from all of us, whether we are lawyers, Senators, psychiatrists, educators, judges, social workers, or parents. Our place in the world tomorrow may well be determined by what we do for our children today.

Chairman HENNINGS. At this time I submit for the record, and ask they be made part of the record, Senate Resolution 52, authorizing the existence of the committee and also the resolution signed by the six members of the Subcommittee on Juvenile Delinquency authorizing these hearings and authorizing that we take testimony from several witnesses who may appear.

I will hand these to you, Mr. Reporter, for inclusion in the record.

(The resolutions referred to were marked "Exhibits 1 and 2," and read as follows:)

EXHIBIT NO. 1

[S. Res. 52, 85th Cong., 1st sess.]

RESOLUTON

Resolved, That the Committee on the Judiciary, or any duly authorized subcommittee thereof, is authorized under sections 134 (a) and 136 of the Legislative Reorganization Act of 1946, as amended, and in accordance with its jurisdiction specified by rule XXV of the Standing Rules of the Senate insofar as they relate to the authority of the Committee on the Judiciary to conduct a

3-cv-00547-O Document 20-2 Filed 10/06/23 Page 366 of 555 Pa
full and complete study of juvenile delinquency in the United States, including (a) the extent and character of juvenile delinquency in the United States and its causes and contributing factors; (b) the adequacy of existing provisions of law, including chapters 402 and 403 of title 18 of the United States Code, in dealing with youthful offenders of Federal laws; (c) sentences imposed on, or other correctional action taken with respect to, youthful offenders by Federal courts, and (d) the extent to which juveniles are violating Federal laws relating to the sale or use of narcotics.

SEC. 2. For the purposes of this resolution, the committee, from February 1, 1957, to January 31, 1958, inclusive, is authorized to (1) make such expenditures as it deems advisable; (2) to employ, upon a temporary basis, technical, clerical, and other assistants and consultants: *Provided*, That the minority is authorized to select one person for appointment, and the person so selected shall be appointed and his compensation shall be so fixed that his gross rate shall not be less by more than $1,200 than the highest gross rate paid to any other employee; and (3) with the consent of the heads of the departments or agencies concerned, and the Committee on Rules and Administration, to utilize the reimbursable services, information, facilities, and personnel of any of the departments or agencies of the Government.

SEC. 3. The committee shall report its findings, together with its recommendations for legislation as it deems advisable, to the Senate at the earliest practicable date, but not later than January 31, 1958.

SEC. 4. Expenses of the committee under this resolution, which shall not exceed $50,000, shall be paid from the contingent fund of the Senate upon vouchers approved by the chairman of the committee.

[S. Res. 191, 85th Cong., 1st sess.]

RESOLUTION

Resolved, That section 4 of S. Res. 52, Eighty-fifth Congress, first session, authorizing an investigation of juvenile delinquency in the United States, agreed to on January 30, 1957, is amended by striking out "$50,000" and inserting in lieu thereof "$60,000".

EXHIBIT NO. 2

RESOLUTION

Resolved by the Subcommittee of the Committee on the Judiciary to Investigate Juvenile Delinquency in the United States, That pursuant to subsection (3) of rule XXV, as amended, of the Standing Rules of the Senate (S. Res. 180, 81st Cong., 2d sess., agreed to February 1, 1950) and committee resolutions of the Committee on the Judiciary, adopted January 20, 1955, that Senator Thomas C. Hennings, Jr., and such other members as are present are authorized to hold hearings of this subcommittee in New York, N. Y., on December 4, 5, and 6, 1957, and such other days as may be required to complete these hearings, and to take sworn testimony from witnesses.

Agreed to this 27th day of November, 1957.

THOMAS C. HENNINGS, Jr., *Missouri.*
ESTES KEFAUVER, *Tennessee.*
MATTHEW M. NEELY, *West Virginia.*
SAM J. ERVIN, Jr., *North Carolina.*
WILLIAM LANGER, *North Dakota.*
ALEXANDER WILEY, *Wisconsin.*
JOHN MARSHALL BUTLER, *Maryland.*

Senator KEFAUVER. I, too, would like to submit a brief statement for the record.

Chairman HENNINGS. The statement will be included in the record.

3-cv-00547-O Document 20-2 Filed 10/06/23 Page 367 of 555 Pa

(The statement referred to follows:)

STATEMENT BY SENATOR ESTES KEFAUVER AT HEARINGS OF THE SENATE SUBCOMMITTEE TO INVESTIGATE JUVENILE DELINQUENCY IN NEW YORK CITY, DECEMBER 4, 1957

First, I want to thank my good friend, our chairman, Senator Hennings, and say that it is always a pleasure to serve with him. Since our days in the House of Representatives, we have worked together on many assignments and jointly sponsored much legislation. On most issues we have happily found ourselves fighting for the same objectives, and in no other area is this truer than in the field of child welfare. And I also feel that our work with the Subcommittee to Investigate Juvenile Delinquency has been both challenging and rewarding.

I, too, am appreciative of the assistance given to the subcommittee by New York State and city officials not only during this current investigation, but also during our past visits to this great State. We know of the efforts being made by Governor Harriman, Mayor Wagner, and others to combat delinquency, and we have a full appreciation of their problem. Their enlightened leadership and their forward-looking attitude toward this problem have been instrumental in giving young people a better outlook and in providing them with adequate educational opportunities.

As to the theme of our discussions here, I feel very strongly that such hearings as our chairman, Senator Hennings, is conducting can serve a useful purpose in the fight against delinquency. During previous years, we investigated many of the environmental factors which might contribute to the delinquency of our young people, such as crime and horror comic books, narcotics, motion pictures, and television. We also explored the ways in which the school and the church could help in combating delinquency, the manner in which communities across the country were handling their delinquency problems, and the impact of lack of job opportunities on youthful behavior.

From the wealth of testimony received by the subcommittee, we discovered that there were many and varied tools and techniques for dealing with delinquency. We also found that there were many divergent views on the use of these tools and techniques. To effectively treat unfortunate young persons who run afoul of the law, it is, of course, necessary that these points of view be reconciled so that our treatment of youngsters does not become an ideological football for the various professions concerned with juvenile delinquency. Fortunately, we found most workers in these professions willing to respect the point of view of others and to keep the welfare of children as their primary objective.

There has been a period of testing, of trial and error, in attempting to find methods for coping with the blight of delinquency, which has spread so rapidly across our land. During these years, we were much like doctors trying to treat an ailment without knowing fully its nature or cause. And while much remains to be learned about causation, we do feel that at this time our knowledge is great enough so that the disease can be contained and alleviated to a more substantial degree. There is no magic cure nor any pat answer to this problem; however, it is now imperative that we utilize in the most effective and economical way possible all the knowledge and tools at our disposal.

If we here today, by examining and evaluating your many fine programs for aiding young people, can assimilate information which will help others to better deal with this perplexing problem, I feel that this subcommittee will have made a significant contribution to the fight against delinquency.

Chairman HENNINGS. I would like to enter into the record at this time a statement and three exhibits submitted by my colleague and fellow member of this committee, Senator Alexander Wiley. Senator Wiley had hoped to be here today but couldn't because of urgent Senate business. Instead, he requested me to enter his statement into the record along with these 3 exhibits, which will be marked exhibits 3, 4, and 5.

(The documents referred to as exhibits Nos. 4 and 5 are on file with the subcommittee.)

(The statement referred to and exhibit 3 read as follows:)

STATEMENT OF SENATOR WILEY TO BE PRESENTED TO THE SENATE SUBCOMMITTEE ON JUVENILE DELINQUENCY AT NEW YORK CITY, DECEMBER 4 TO 6, 1957

For some time now I have been waiting for the opportunity to present to this subcommittee a story of the progress being made in one State in the prevention of juvenile delinquency. It is a story which should bring a ray of light and of hope in a picture that has in recent years been most dark and disheartening. I refer, of course, to the rapid rise in the incidence of juvenile delinquency all across the Nation as reported year after year since World War II by both the FBI and the United States Children's Bureau.

I have been following closely the progress being made by Wisconsin's unique and pioneering community services program in their State welfare department's division for children and youth. This is a statewide delinquency prevention program set up in 1948, just a little less than 10 years ago. It is a broad-scale program, with many facets, which reaches out into all corners of the State and down into the grassroots through an intensive program of citizen participation in self-appraisal and study of local community life, involving young people as well as adults.

While the story of Wisconsin's program has received some national notice in articles written about it in Reader's Digest, Christian Science Monitor, and Parade magazine, it has not received the national attention it deserves as a practical model for what could be done in every one of our 48 States. I have recently been glad to note that the United States Children's Bureau has issued a monograph for national distribution entitled "Public Child Welfare in Wisconsin" (October 1957) which does a fine job of telling about the pioneering work that is being done in my State.

I am placing at the disposal of this subcommittee three documents relating to Wisconsin's delinquency prevention program, which I believe will be useful to the Congress in drafting the kind of Federal program of aid to the States which will enable a strong and concerted nationwide drive against juvenile delinquency.

(1) Community Services, a report to the Wisconsin State Board of Public Welfare, February 1956.

(2) Public Child Welfare in Wisconsin, Child Welfare Report, No. 7, United States Children's Bureau, October 1957; and

(3) Prospectus for a Demonstration Project on Prevention of Juvenile Delinquency and Related Social Ills, June 1957.

I want to devote the rest of this statement to this third document, a Prospectus for a Demonstration Project, because it represents a distillation of the experience of the Wisconsin program of the last 10 years and points the direction in which Wisconsin now wants to move in delinquency prevention, if it can receive the aid and assistance needed from the Federal Government.

WISCONSIN'S PROPOSED DEMONSTRATION PROJECT

By way of introduction, I would like to give credit to Gov. Vernon Thomson, Wisconsin's chief executive, for personally having initiated and promoted the idea for this demonstration. With the support of the Wisconsin Legislature, enabling legislation was enacted into law in September 1957 which sets up a small appropriation for the purpose of proceeding with the detailed design of this project and authorizing negotiations looking toward financial support for this project from Federal agencies and private foundations. The quotations are excerpts from the project prospectus. (See exhibit No. 3.)

CONCLUSION

In conclusion, I again want to commend the descriptive and explanatory material about Wisconsin's program to your most serious study and consideration. It offers a plan, tested by 10 years of experience, which might well be a model for other States across the Nation. Aside from its many specific accomplishments which are detailed in the material I am making available to the subcommittee, the fact which is perhaps the most important of all is that this is a program which is grounded in the most fundamental tenets of our democracy, involving as it does the broadest and most active kind of grassroots citizen participation in local community life.

3-cv-00547-O Document 20-2 Filed 10/06/23 Page 369 of 555 Pa

EXHIBIT No. 3

PROSPECTUS FOR A DEMONSTRATION PROJECT ON PREVENTION OF JUVENILE DELINQUENCY AND RELATED SOCIAL ILLS, JUNE 1957

THE PROJECT

In the words of Governor Thomson, this is to be "an experimental program designed to bring together—at the community level—all the skills necessary for successful preventive work in the field of juvenile delinquency and youth guidance."

The purpose of this project is well stated by a quotation from Governor Thomson's message to the State legislature, January 10, 1957, in which he asked for legislative approval for "the development of a demonstration program, in 1 or 2 communities, to provide intensified welfare services, applying all the modern and best known approaches to the problem of juvenile delinquency and related social ills. These approaches should be combined with sound research techniques and in such combination can develop and prove the best methods of prevention of delinquency and mental illness in the community. Such an intensified demonstration program should prove the wisdom of cash outlays for an earlier detection and earlier management of family problems. Expenditures in this area can represent true economy, through the savings of institutional costs as well as in saving wasted lives of human beings."

BACKGROUND

Nationwide, there is an accelerated interest in, and concern about, the observable increase in family breakdown, community disorganization, and the mounting costs of these social ills. In planning welfare services, Wisconsin has recognized the disturbing features of these socioeconomic developments—the high incidence of mental illness and mental deficiency, expanding needs for adequate medical care facilities and the tremendous expenditures needed for such care, the alarming number of youth who have difficulties in adjusting to their environment, the increasing number of broken families—and the attendant costs both in cash outlays as well as in the wasted lives of human beings.

Wisconsin has long recognized that treatment in the community is preferable to institutional treatment, that research is needed into the causal factors of social ills, and that if social welfare programs are truly to serve the socially and economically disadvantaged, they must be preventive in nature. Further, there is agreement that there must be an integrated approach in social welfare—in treating the individual in his family and community setting—in evaluating existing resources available—and in cooperatively making maximum use of the scarce supply of skilled staff.

The goal of prevention in public welfare is the reduction and elimination, so far as possible, of delinquency, crime, dependency, child neglect, mental illness, alcoholism, family breakdown, and such other social ills as are the concern of public welfare institutions and services. State and community services that are preventive in nature comprehend:

1. Strengthening of all services or programs which contribute to the healthy growth and development of families and of all children and youth, but without reference to any particular child.
2. Services designed to reach those families and those children especially vulnerable to social ills, before the onset of social breakdown in the individual or within the family.
3. Services focused upon giving the earliest possible treatment to the child and his family where delinquency, neglect, emotional disturbance, or dependency already exist. The goal should be rehabilitation and prevention of recurrence or progression into more serious delinquency, crime, mental illness, or dependency.

The greatest effort to date, both in State and local community services, has been in the treatment of the individual who is already delinquent, neglected, emotionally disturbed, or dependent. In recent years efforts have been intensified in Wisconsin toward the developing and strengthening of all services for families in the community. This preventive work, within legal and financial limits, involved a broad program of community education and community organization, including assistance to citizens and local officials through surveys and consultation, seeking to improve local recreation, education, health, welfare, law enforcement, and juvenile court services. The greatest continuing gap in prevention

3-cv-00547-O Document 20-2 Filed 10/06/23 Page 370 of 555 Pa

is in services designed to reach those families and those children especially vulnerable to social ills, before the onset of social breakdown in the individual or within the family. Evidence of this has been found in the studies of such authorities as the Gluecks of Harvard and Community Research Associates in St. Paul, Minn., San Mateo, Calif., and Winona, Minn., in which data are presented to indicate that most of our social-service agencies are not geared to prevention through treatment of early referrals, but that they expend almost all their skills and resources upon treatment, rehabilitation, and handling of acute and advanced cases of social breakdown. The experience of other States such as California and New York also indicates that there is a need to develop ways and means of "reaching the unreached" for effective prevention.

In view of these ideas and developments, it has been deemed desirable to undertake a project to demonstrate the methods and practicality of doing preventive work in a community. It has been decided to concentrate on juvenile delinquency as a major example of social breakdown in the community and to proceed on the assumption that forces which prevent delinquency are also effective in preventing other community social problems.

PURPOSE

The organization of community services for effective prevention of social ills is, in large measure, a problem of having the needed services available in the needed amount, in the place needed, at the needed time. The purpose of this project will be to demonstrate that, by bolstering all existing services for children and families up to an optimum standard, and by creating a systematic program to coordinate case finding, referral and treatment, a community can more effectively reduce the incidence and severity of social ills.

The project will include demonstration of what is meant by preventive services designed to reach children and families most in need of such service and experimentation with and research into the possibilities of early identification and referral for treatment of the child who is most vulnerable to delinquency. Some of the methods that will be demonstrated and experimented with are:

1. Early identification in the school of the child who may be most vulnerable to delinquency or emotional disturbance.
2. Early treatment in a community clinic.
3. Family diagnosis and treatment.
4. Coordination of agency programs to work with families.

Experimentation and demonstration of preventive methods should enable establishment of a preventive pattern and a goal for future community programs that is proven and is realistic. Hopefully, this project will enable discovery and demonstration of effective means of reducing institutional commitments and the number of wasted lives brought about by reason of delinquency.

PLAN OF OPERATION

A basic premise of the State department of public welfare's community services program is that the most effective program to prevent juvenile delinquency is one which strengthens services for all children and youth while focused at the same time upon early identification and treatment of the child with adjustment problems which may lead to delinquency, criminality, and mental illness. Essentially, the project will be set up to put this premise into operation.

ADMINISTRATION AND ORGANIZATION

This project would be administered under the auspices of the State department of public welfare pursuant to statutory authorization and supporting appropriations. The director of the department shall appoint the staff necessary for the conduct of the project, all of whom shall be subject to civil-service regulations. It is anticipated that the life of this project must be for a minimum of 6 years, assuming that the first year will be spent in recruiting staff, designing the project, and working out agreements with the cooperating community.

It is assumed that the project cannot demonstrate the effectiveness of prevention programs unless presently functioning services are administered on as nearly an optimum level as possible. The plan of operation, therefore, calls for first bringing existing services of the selected community up to an acceptable

3-cv-00547-O Document 20-2 Filed 10/06/23 Page 371 of 555 Pa

standard of operation particularly in the following areas (based on such factors as workers-case load ratio, professional qualifications, etc.):

1. Family and children's services (including juvenile court services).
2. Public-assistance programs.
3. Guidance clinics or psychiatric services.
4. Juvenile law enforcement.
5. Recreation and group work services.
6. Public health nursing services.
7. Public-school services.
8. Youth employment.
9. Adult probation and parole services.

Of particular importance is the need for a clinic facility to provide the treatment services necessary. Reports on other community projects all emphasize the futility of discovering cases who need help unless treatment can be provided them.

A central project staff or agency will need to be created to be responsible for coordination of case finding, referral and treatment followup and research. It is assumed that this agency will at the outset set up some method of registration and reporting in which all cooperating agencies will participate. This will provide part of the data for research-and-evaluation purposes. This agency will also provide services concentrated on coordinated case finding, problem evaluation, and referral.

ADVISORY COMMITTEE

It is important to emphasize that this project will involve both a demonstration of certain community services in operation as well as evaluative research as inseparable parts of a single process. This structure makes it desirable that there be an advisory committee to make suggestions as to the scope of the demonstrations, the selection of the project county, and the filling of the key position of project director. Here the multiprofessional approach can have its impact through representation of technical experts from public and voluntary agencies and professions.

LOCAL PROJECT COMMITTEES

Local committees will also be needed to represent all local interests of the sponsor community. These committees should likewise be as representative as possible of all of the local professional groups and public and voluntary agencies that would be involved in the project.

The selection of the technical advisory committee and the local project committees would be by the State board of public welfare as authorized by existing law; the latter appointments being made with the advice and recommendation of appropriate local government bodies and community groups.

BUDGET AND FINANCES

The term of this demonstration project should be not less than 5 years following the first year during which the preliminary project design and community agreements will need to be worked out. It is felt that a minimum of 5 full years of operation will be needed to produce sufficient data from which any reliable conclusions can be drawn. In order to estimate the cost requirements for this project, an appraisal was made of the needs to carry on a demonstration in one county. That county was selected because its resources are well known, it is on the county system of relief, and it has recently conducted a community self-appraisal.

The technique used to estimate the cost was to evaluate what was needed to bring existing services up to a desirable standard of operation. For example, it was estimated that if the selected county were to participate in a demonstration, additional caseworkers would be needed in the public assistance program in order to provide more casework services to assistance recipients. It was also felt that guidance clinic services would need to be established to provide adequate treatment resources in the community. Child-welfare services would need to be increased in order to permit more intensive casework. Caseworkers would have to be available in the schools in order to permit experimentation with and development of early treatment methods. Case finding and referral services would need to be created in order to develop case-finding

techniques and to coordinate evaluation and referral of cases so as to make the best use of community resources. In addition, a staff of researchers and clerks would be needed to set up methods of collecting and analyzing data and reporting on the progress and results of the project.

Chairman HENNINGS. Governor Harriman, I would like to say we are indeed honored to have you here this morning. We are indeed honored to have the head of the Empire State of the Union come all the way from Albany on such a day as this to give us the benefit of your views and some idea of the work being done in the State and under your auspices and under your administration.

We appreciate the efforts you have made to come here today. We know it has been a matter of some inconvenience to you, and we welcome you.

On behalf of the Senate Judiciary Committee and on behalf of the Subcommittee on Juvenile Delinquency, we are delighted to have you, and you may proceed in any fashion you wish. You may read your statement or extemporize, or intersperse, or any way that you would like to do it, Governor.

STATEMENT OF HON. AVERELL HARRIMAN, GOVERNOR OF THE STATE OF NEW YORK

Governor HARRIMAN. Thank you, Senator Hennings.

I want to express my appreciation, for myself and the people of New York, that you and Senator Kefauver of the Senate Subcommittee to Investigate Juvenile Delinquency have come to New York State, and I am particularly grateful, too, for the Members of the Congress who have come and are with us this morning. I am glad to see they are members of both parties, because in New York State we have both parties working together on this important problem, and as far as I know, there has been no interjection of any political consideration in this attack on juvenile delinquency that we are making here. It is a common problem in which all the people are working together.

The hearings which your committee has been holding have done much to attract public attention to the seriousness of the problem of juvenile delinquency and to bring forth, I believe, sound and workable proposals for dealing with it.

Congressional hearings of this type are of great value as a source of information to the public as well as a source of information to the Congress, and it does help to arouse public opinion, which, after all, is essential in dealing with any problem, social problem, of this kind.

In your letter inviting me to testify, you stated that the purpose of these hearings will be, and I quote, to "focus attention on the positive and constructive programs operating in New York for the prevention of delinquency and the rehabilitation of delinquent youths," which you suggest could provide a "blueprint for other communities across the country in dealing with the serious social problem of delinquency."

I am grateful for this high praise, and I hope and trust we deserve it.

Any consideration of the institutions which deal with juvenile delinquency must begin with the most important of all: the family. It is weakness in some families which makes necessary the creation of outside agencies to supplement these deficiencies. The efforts of all

3-cv-00547-O Document 20-2 Filed 10/06/23 Page 373 of 555 Pa
such agencies must primarily be directed toward strengthening the family. No outside agency can ever wholly make up for family weaknesses.

It is clear that any serious concern for the youth of our Nation will direct itself first of all to those things which make for a rich and rewarding family life. The love and affection of family ties, the spiritual life of our people, the kind of houses they live in, their jobs, the condition of their health, the quality of their education, schools and schoolteachers, these are the truly important things and must command our best efforts.

Yet beyond these fundamentals there are other things which can be done for our youth to keep them out of trouble and to help those who get into it. This is the special area of concern, as I understand it, of your committee, and I will address myself to it, if I may.

In New York State, this work is carried on by a great variety of agencies, public and private, religious and secular, of which the State is only one and by no means the most important. We believe that the State has a responsibility, in fact an obligation, to do everything it can to diminish the personal tragedy and the high cost of delinquency.

But the problem contains moral aspects in which the State is not competent to act, and other aspects in which it cannot act efficiently as private agencies or community activities.

The basic work of prevention and control of juvenile delinquency must take place at the community level, in the first instance. It must begin in the home and must be carried on by our local government, religious and welfare organizations, and civic activities of all types.

The object of the State is not to supplant these agencies, but to support them. We provide funds which help them carry on their work. We provide information as to how they might do a better job. And we keep a continuous watch on the whole picture to spot any gaps in the total program.

This job is done through our State youth commission, made a permanent agency of the State government last year, consisting of a chairman, who is here today, Mr. Mark McCloskey, and eight members, each of whom is actively associated with private, municipal, or religious youth programs in the various parts of the State.

And, incidentally, its members have been selected by the government in direct cooperation with the leaders of the State legislature, so that it has the support of both political parties as well as the administration.

Within the State government, the chairman is assisted by a committee of the heads of the nine State departments most directly concerned with youth welfare, and this committee also includes the Lieutenant Governor, who has taken an active interest in this problem.

The youth commission provides on the State level a point at which the many private and public agencies working in this field can come together to compare notes, exchange ideas, coordinate their programs, and make certain nothing important is being overlooked.

The commission has made a practice of traveling about the State, meeting with its youth board counterparts at the county and municipal and city government level, discussing local problems at public meetings, with citizens who know about them firsthand.

3-cv-00547-O Document 20-2 Filed 10/06/23 Page 374 of 555 Pa

There are now 11 such youth boards of local municipalities, cities or counties, serving areas which have over 2,600,000 youths under 21 years of age. We expect soon to have several more.

The State pays one-half the annual costs of these boards, up to a maximum of $15,000 each—$75,000 being provided for the 5 counties of New York City. These youth boards perform the same function at their level of government as does the youth commission on the State level.

Through the youth commission, New York, I believe, is the only State in the Nation which provides direct financial assistance for youth programs in local communities. We find that is of value. It gives initiative, it gives guidance, and in addition to which, it gives an opportunity to exchange ideas between the local youth boards.

In addition to the youth board contributions, this assistance takes two other forms: Aid to recreation projects and aid to youth service projects.

Last year the State provided $1,365,000 for recreation projects in over 900 communities throughout the State, and I am glad to say the local communities did more than match those funds. They expended several times that sum on this work, recreational work.

We provided over three-quarters of a million dollars for youth service projects, which are defined as "any experimental plan or organized activity, other than a youth bureau or recreation project, which has for its purpose the detection, prevention, or treatment of youth delinquency and which is operated by or under the direction of a municipality."

An example would be the street-gang project here in New York City which has enabled trained social workers to go out into the streets and work with the fighting gangs which have caused so much trouble. The project has been effective.

I am glad to understand that you will call one of these young men who has done such gallant work in this field, and I think you will be thrilled by the accounts of what can be accomplished in redirecting the normal effervescence and energies of youth from bad purpose to good.

I should say to better, in the first instance, and eventually to good, we hope.

This summer, when there was a new outbreak of gang fighting in the city—I suppose many of you have seen accounts of this in the newspapers—the State of New York offered an additional $100,000, matched by the city, to enable the New York City Youth Board to assign additional workers to the remaining gangs that were not being covered. I think of the 200 gangs, about 60 had been covered, and this would make it possible to cover another 50, and the record seems to show that those that have not been covered by these workers were the ones that were creating the greatest trouble.

This, I think, is a good example of the State using its resources to encourage an effective local program where it is subject to special strain.

Other youth service projects include aid for visiting teachers who go into homes to help parents understand the special problems and needs of their children, police juvenile bureaus which are staffed by officers specially trained to work with youths, and employment services to help young people find and keep after-school jobs.

3-cv-00547-O Document 20-2 Filed 10/06/23 Page 375 of 555 Pa

All of these efforts are designed to keep kids out of trouble, and to give them healthy outlets for their energies, instead of leaving them to make convicts out of themselves.

I am not, of course, covering—which I am sure will be covered by other witnesses—the splendid work that is being done by the various religious and charitable organizations and boys clubs and YMCA's and Jewish Youth, and others. They are the ones, of course, that have made an imprint on the life of our city.

For those under 16 who do get into trouble, rather than punishment they are sent to State schools, where every effort is made to rehabilitate them. There are at present five such schools operated by the State department of social welfare.

Last year, 2,440 boys and girls were committed to them, an increase of 110 percent over 1949. The number has been increasing, not only because more are being committed, but also because there are fewer private institutions to which they can be sent.

This has made it necessary to increase State facilities. Under present expansion plans, our facilities will have increased 40 percent over 1954, and we may have to expand still further.

I am particularly pleased that your committee will have an opportunity to hear directly from some of the fine men who are directors of these institutions. I have visited them many times during the period since I have been Governor, and I have always come away with admiration for the dedicated and valuable work which is being done by the staff to help young people placed under their care, and encouraged by the number of those that are rehabilitated and do not get into further trouble.

Of course, there are many that return to their life, and a good deal of that is due to the family environment that they go back to.

Now, for the first time in the State's history, we are developing forest camp facilities for juvenile offenders aged 16 to 21. I understand other States, particularly California, have successfully operated forest camps.

A little over a year ago we opened our first such camp at Pharsalia in the upstate county of Chenango. Here 50 boys are occupied year-round doing needed conservation work. They are in a forest which was owned by the State, and where there have been plantations of trees. They work under the supervision of specially trained employees of the youth division of our department of correction, and also conservation foresters from the conservation department.

The boys at Pharsalia, which is the name of the camp, lead a rugged life, but a healthy life, and they are not in prison. It is entirely open. Their attitude reflects it, as I can testify from my visit there.

It has proved such a success that we are expediting completion of a similar camp in a neighboring county of Schuyler, which will open next spring. I hope we can extend them still further.

Here in New York City there has recently been a considerable amount of public concern over the disruptive influence in some of our schools created by wholly undisciplined and wholly uncontrollable youngsters. There is no doubt that even a very small minority in a school can greatly interfere with the school program generally.

20873—58——2

3-cv-00547-O Document 20-2 Filed 10/06/23 Page 376 of 555 Pa

Thus these troubled youngsters are not only hurting their own prospects for the future, but are interfering with the education of their fellow students.

We must, it seems to me, give serious consideration to giving the school authorities in such cases the leverage of excluding such disruptive and uncontrollable elements from the schools and to have them either transferred to special schools, some of which now exist, or, at least for the older boys, give them the opportunity of acquiring the discipline and training that comes from employment.

I understand that many people are giving these ideas some thought, and we would welcome any ideas the committee would have on this subject.

It is also, of course, important to have trained personnel in the schools able to identify potential delinquents at an early age.

May I say that the State is also—this is an interjection and off the subject—attempting identification of the talented youths and giving them an opportunity to attain their highest capability, which I think all of us agree is so necessary in this day of scientific revolution and other very important needs for skilled specialists in many fields.

Chairman HENNINGS. I am sure the Governor, when he was our distinguished Ambassador to Russia, saw that in Russia the fit and capable are given the opportunity to go ahead, the especially gifted children, irrespective of the family means or income to send them to school.

I visited Russia 3 years ago and learned that the ability of the family to send a boy or girl to school has no bearing upon how far he may go. It is up to the child or young man or young woman himself or herself as to what they do, and they are making enormous progress in that direction in scientific fields.

Governor HARRIMAN. Senator, what you say is very pertinent. We, of course, take pride in what we are doing for the handicapped and the less well equipped youngster to bring him up, and I do not suggest in any way that we diminish that work, but I think we have coming home to us the need for giving even greater attention than is being given.

There are, of course, in New York City, special high schools which give special education to the more talented in science, but we do believe that greater work can be done in identifying at an early age those students who have special talents in whatever field it may be.

And I think that is a new area in which we can accomplish even more than is being accomplished at the present time, for the reasons that you give.

Of course, in Russia, as you well know, it is mechanical. The youngster's talents are identified, and then he is given the opportunity that the government feels is best for the state.

That, of course, does develop certain very skilled people, but it is not the kind of system that I think we want to follow. We want to give opportunity, not compulsion.

Chairman HENNINGS. I have not suggested that. But there the children go to school earlier in the morning and stay later in the evening, and their vacation period is much shorter than ours here in the United States.

3-cv-00547-O Document 20-2 Filed 10/06/23 Page 377 of 555 Pa

Governor HARRIMAN. Well, they work harder, and the teachers——

Chairman HENNINGS. They work much harder.

Governor HARRIMAN (continuing). The teachers work much harder, and of course so do the people in the factory.

On several occasions in the past, I have noted the importance of having psychologists available to the schools for the purpose that I speak of, identifying potential delinquents. And may I say there are startling cases where the youngsters have shown some sign of getting confused, and then developing into criminal activity, which have nothing to do with gangs or associations with others, but simply resulted from their psychological condition.

And I am glad to say we have some psychologists, but I think that is an area in which we can strengthen our school faculties.

I am sure that in these cases—there was one youngster who committed a murder where I commuted the sentence to life imprisonment because it seemed clear it was not entirely his fault. He had been a brilliant student, and then became confused and became more and more difficult, and then committed a crime for which I felt he was not responsible. Society was responsible in that his mental condition had not been identified 4 or 5 years sooner.

In many cases, it is possible through such activity to see that youngsters who appear to be headed for trouble receive special attention and care; and certainly the numbers who are in our mental institutions, we believe in this State that if we get those who are confused early, whether it be boys or elderly people, boys or girls or elderly people, we can save them from greater difficulty.

In this outline of our activities in New York, I am sure you will recognize many features contained in the Delinquent Children's Act introduced by members of your committee in last year's session of the Congress.

I think it is fair to say that this legislation, if enacted, would assist this State and the other States of the Union to do what New York State is already doing in the field of juvenile delinquency, and would contribute to what we are already doing in New York State. I think it is good legislation, and I would hope it would become early law.

In the meantime, there are two specific, immediate things which the Federal Government can do, I feel, to assist the States in this field.

The first concerns narcotics. This past week a senior official of the Department of Justice, testifying before a New York joint legislative committee, declared that New York was the illicit narcotics capital of the Nation and would remain so until remedial legislation was enacted by the State.

I have no wish to enter a dispute on the merits of this particular statement, but I do wish to point out that New York State has not in any sense been oblivious of this problem. Two years ago, in a special message to the legislature, I outlined a broad program for narcotic control which was substantially adopted by the legislature. Penalties for drug peddling were increased and convictions made easier. Funds were provided for experimental work in the cure of drug addiction and a special program for paroled addicts was begun.

We recognize that drug addiction is in a sense a human weakness or disease that leads to crime, and unfortunately some of our youth are involved in this drug addiction.

Case 4:23-cv-00547-O Document 20-2 Filed 10/06/23 Page 378 of 555 PageID

Whatever the extent of our efforts, so long as drugs continue to be smuggled into the State, there will continue to be drug addiction.

I want to point out that New York, generally speaking, is the passenger entry port from many nations, and a very large percentage of the passengers come in here, and it is open to smuggling rather more than most of the communities in the Nation.

And the job of combating smuggling is a Federal responsibility, not a State responsibility. The fact is that the Federal Government is not providing enough men to do the job.

As I pointed out in my message to the legislature 2 years ago, in the port of New York the number of port patrol officers, whose job it is to prevent smuggling, has actually been cut by one-third since 1953.

This is not the fault of the Congress. The administration made the cuts and has never asked that they be restored. If the Federal Government truly cares about these "living dead," as they are described, let it first of all fulfill its responsibility at least to keep the instruments of death out of our city and State and country.

Secondly, I would like to bring to your attention the proposal made to the Secretary of Defense by myself and Governor Leader of Pennsylvania, for the use of vacant military establishments as summer camps for teen-age boys, school-age boys.

It is universally recognized that one of the soundest kinds of character building and delinquency prevention programs is summer camping, under proper supervision and leadership. During the summer, our great cities are filled with thousands of young boys stewing in idleness, too old to play at home, too young to work, with few wholesome outlets for their energies and no chance whatever for the rich and rewarding experience that summer camp can provide.

Of course, there are some hundred thousand youngsters who do have an opportunity to go to camp from New York City, as an example. This is perhaps 10 percent. But there is no greater amount, there are no more that are leaving, that are having this opportunity, than a decade ago, even though the school population has gone up some 17 or 18 percent.

Most of these activities, of course, are privately financed.

We find, at the same time, in many parts of the country there are military bases, some of them located in excellent camping country, which are not being used, but are being maintained for emergency use.

We proposed to the Secretary of Defense that the Federal Government join with the State and local governments in a summer camp program to develop the physical fitness and good citizenship of young boys, many of whom, of course, would go into the military service, although there was no suggestion that those camps be used for any military training, but for other types of education and athletic opportunity, health-building activity. These youngsters would otherwise have no such opportunity.

We asked that the Federal Government supply the needed mess and other equipment which have been available at these camps, as well as mess and maintenance personnel. The last was not essential, but would be desirable.

We proposed an experimental program at Sampson Air Base on Lake Seneca that would take about 10,000 boys a year from our two

3-cv-00547-O Document 20-2 Filed 10/06/23 Page 379 of 555 Pa

States for the first few years, as a pilot project. The same, of course, might be done by other States that wished to join in the program. After some experience, it could be expanded on a nationwide basis.

I would like you, if I may, to have a copy of the memorandum outlining this program which Governor Leader and I submitted to the Secretary on October 30.

Chairman HENNINGS. We will be very happy to have it, Governor, and make it a part of the record of these proceedings.

Governor HARRIMAN. All right. I would be very grateful if the committee would take an interest in this.

(The memorandum referred to follows:)

MEMORANDUM

OCTOBER 30, 1957.

To: The Secretary of Defense
From: Governor Harriman of New York and Governor Leader of Pennsylvania

BACKGROUND

1. There is widespread and justifiable concern throughout the country, and particularly in our large cities, over teen-age crime and juvenile delinquency.
2. It is universally recognized that one of the soundest kinds of delinquency prevention programs is summer camping, under proper supervision and leadership.
3. In many of our largest cities thousands of boys spend their summers in idleness on the streets, with little opportunity for wholesome outlet of their natural energies, and have no chance to benefit by a healthy and valued summer camp experience. The private agencies do a great deal but cannot meet the need.
4. In various parts of the country, there are vacant military establishments which could be used for summer programs, or even year-round programs of this kind.
5. Through the establishment of his Committee on Physical Fitness, President Eisenhower has indicated his great interest in promoting the physical fitness of American youth.
6. The Defense Department would appear to have a large stake in improving the physical fitness and also the mental and spiritual fitness, of future service personnel.

PROPOSAL—IN GENERAL

That the Federal Government, through the Department of Defense, cooperate with State and local governments in a camp program for youngsters who need such a program, both for the development of physical fitness and good citizenship. The Federal Government's contribution would be to make vacated military facilities available, to supply needed mess and other equipment, and to supply maintenance and mess personnel. The State governments, in cooperation with interested communities, and with private agencies wherever practicable, would undertake responsibility for the selection of youngsters and for the operation of the camping programs. The program would be experimental, but should be undertaken for at least 2 or 3 years to determine its value.

SPECIFIC PROPOSAL

1. Sampson Air Base on Seneca Lake in central New York is currently vacant and seems well adapted for a program along the lines described. It has three units along the lake which could easily accommodate 5,000 campers, and which have large fields, mess halls, and enclosed recreational facilities, in addition to the lake front itself. The country around Sampson is suitable for hikes, cookouts, overnight camping, etc.
2. The Governors of New York and Pennsylvania jointly request the Secretary of Defense to direct that part of Sampson Air Base be set aside for a cooperative camping program for the development of physical fitness and citizenship in young people, and that necessary equipment and maintenance and mess personnel be provided.
3. So far as New York's part of the program is concerned, the target for the summer of 1958 is a camp program for 2,000 boys at a time, with three 3-week

3-cv-00547-O Document 20-2 Filed 10/06/23 Page 380 of 555 Pa

sessions. For Pennsylvania a comparable program is envisioned for 1,500 boys at a time. In each case, the details of the program would be worked out in consultation with the communities involved and experienced private agencies. It is expected that the communities would undertake primary responsibility for selecting the boys, working with local school systems and private agencies. The State and local communities will share the cost of staff, food, transportation, and other expenses.

Chairman HENNINGS. The committee will, I assure you, give it study and thought and consideration.

Governor HARRIMAN. There is a great need to give youngsters some tie. And I think all of us who have worked in that field will say the same thing: That we found of all the experiences the underprivileged youngsters have, and sometimes privileged youngsters have, that the experience of going to camp, and what they have learned and what they have gained from such an experience, and a feeling of greater usefulness in society, is greater than they have achieved from any other experience.

In our meeting with Secretary McElroy, he showed considerable interest in the program, but he indicated the Defense Department was preparing to abandon Sampson Air Base entirely, and did not intend to keep it available as a standby defense facility.

However, there are other alternatives here in New York State. There is Camp Hero on Montauk Point, Long Island, which is partially vacant, and we have asked the Defense Department whether it would cooperate with us this summer in a program there. It is small, it would be a smaller undertaking.

We would appreciate anything this committee can do to stimulate the interest and support of this type of program on the part of the Defense Department as well as the Department of Health, Education, and Welfare.

Incidentally, Secretary Marion Folsom was kind enough to attend the conference, and indicated some interest in it.

Again, I should like to express my appreciation to this committee for giving me the opportunity to appear here today. I feel, if I may say so, the committee is performing a valuable public service in calling attention to the problem of juvenile delinquency. I am sure that from these hearings will come sound and new ideas, at least ideas that are not generally understood or known, both for preventing delinquency and for dealing with it when it occurs.

I shall look forward with keen interest and patience to receiving the committee's recommendation and report, and I assure you that I and my associates in the State government will give it every consideration and will be ready to continue to cooperate with you in any way we can do so.

Chairman HENNINGS. Governor Harriman, we are most grateful to you for your thoughtful and illuminating statement. You have been especially successful in obtaining funds in the State of New York for this work, and you faced up to the problem and recognized that it is a problem which exists.

I would like to call on Senator Kefauver, who has served on this committee for 4½ years, since it was originally organized, to either ask you a question, Governor, or make a statement.

Would you like to do that, Senator?

Senator KEFAUVER. Well, thank you, Senator Hennings.

3-cv-00547-O Document 20-2 Filed 10/06/23 Page 381 of 555 Pa

I am very happy to have this opportunity of being in New York with my colleague, Senator Hennings. We have worked together in the House of Representatives a long time, and in the Senate, and usually work together for the same cause, and that certainly is particularly true of this problem of juvenile delinquency.

It is good to have this opportunity of being here with so many of our fellow Members of the House of Representatives.

I want to join Senator Hennings in saying to you, Governor Harriman, that you certainly are to be commended as the Governor of this great State, upon the leadership you have shown in first trying to give the youth of this State a better educational and health opportunity, a better chance for a useful and good life.

I feel that you have also pioneered and have shown imagination and leadership in the various methods that have been devised and techniques for rehabilitation of youngsters who may have gone wrong, to get them back on the right road.

New York State and New York City both have many new programs which you have tried successfully, and I know that you realize the problem fully, and you and the city government are to be commended upon the substantial efforts to do something about it.

Your suggestions here in this statement I think are very, very useful.

I have been interested, Governor Harriman, as has Senator Hennings and our other colleagues here, as you have in doing something about this summer camp or forestry camp program for boys. We have had bills pending in the Congress which we have not been able to get passed.

But I think on a beginning basis, you have shown a way in which the Federal Government can put to use some of its facilities which are not being used for military purposes, and they are located all over the country, on a cooperative basis with the States and cities to furnish summer camps to boys and girls who need something to do in the summer, and that this is certainly something that we ought to do our part in at the Federal level.

I want to join in expressing appreciation for your work with this committee and your cooperation with us, Governor Harriman.

Governor HARRIMAN. May I comment, Senator, on that?

Chairman HENNINGS. Yes, Governor, please.

Governor HARRIMAN. This program that led to the interest of using some of the military facilities that should be maintained as standby, for summer camps for boys, we have had some experience in New York in this field. We have had State parks.

Governor Smith was very active some 35 years ago, and some of our citizens, public-minded citizens, were active in establishing State parks, and one of them that I was a commissioner of for many years had offered camping facilities in the park.

They built the facilities in the park, and then turned them over to private organizations to operate. I think that if you will consider this seriously, I would suggest for your consideration that procedures be established by which, through cooperation among Federal and State and municipal governments—I think in cooperation with the schools in the selection of youngsters that should be given the opportunity, but the actual operation of units within the camp should be done by private agencies who already have skills in this field rather

3-cv-00547-O Document 20-2 Filed 10/06/23 Page 382 of 555 Pa

than have it operated by a government—such a program could be initiated, it would be of tremendous value.

It is the personal contact that is so important, and we are all familiar with the success that has been had by private organizations that are involved.

One of the great problems will be to obtain the services of counselors, and that is why, one of the reasons, the organizations have limited their activity and the number of ideas we have in attempting to encourage youngsters.

We might even give credit to those students who are at our teachers colleges who go and take a couple of months in the summer, because they certainly learn from that experience. There may be other ways of stimulating the availability of counselors.

I think the park system in New York State, as a result of the work that has been done many years ago, is a contributing factor, and our great Adirondacks and Catskill forest reserves have given us an opportunity for camping facilities, camping areas, but we lack facilities.

And that is where perhaps the Federal Government's military establishments can help us materially, and it could be done on an experimental basis without too much cost; whereas if we attempted to build up new facilities, of course it would cost vast sums of money.

I may say that I—if I may be personal, Senator Kefauver—I welcome you here in this activity. We all recall your presence some years ago in activities relating to citizens who were not behaving properly, and your work at that time was of very considerable value to our community, and we are still gaining from the work that your committee did at that time in connection with crime and rackets.

Senator KEFAUVER. Well, I thank you for your reference to the work of our crime committee back in those days, Governor Harriman. That was one of the reasons Senator Hennings and I were interested in this committee, because my feeling certainly was that many of these unfortunate individuals were such a burden to our society, if they had had a better chance in the beginning, they might have been useful citizens rather than racketeers and gangsters.

So that is the reason, that is one reason I am so happy to see your good program here.

Governor HARRIMAN. Yes.

Chairman HENNINGS. Governor, as a felony trial prosecutor for 6 years in my early youth and later as a district attorney of St. Louis, I had the unfortunate duty and obligation to see these cases by the hundreds in a criminal courtroom.

Also, as chairman of the Committee on Federal Penitentiaries and Reformatories, I visit those places not only in this country but in England, France, Germany, and other countries abroad, to do something about penology and rehabilitation, and to see what we can do to save some of these men and women who have never had a real chance in life.

After having been in the Big Brother movement for 30 years as a working Big Brother, having been president of that organization in St. Louis, having served as a national director, I had the high honor of being named Big Brother of the Year in 1955.

I make that reference only to indicate that some of us have lived with this problem pretty closely. You spend 8 years in a criminal

court building, and you are handling felony cases, boys of 17 and over, and you see the human wreckage and the waste of human material that occurs because of nobody doing anything about it.

Part of the function of this committee is to disabuse some of the commonly held notions about this problem.

When in London about 3 years ago, I said to an inspector at Scotland Yard: "You know, Inspector, many people think that the juvenile delinquency problem in America would be cured if we got rid of television."

He said, "Why it is quite the contrary. Television keeps them off the streets. That is one reason we don't have the problem here any more. Our rate is diminishing constantly."

I would like to at this time acknowledge the presence of the distinguished Members of the House of Representatives, Congressman Multer, Congressman Anfuso, Congressman Zelenko, Congressman Dooley, and Congressman Adam Clayton Powell, and to welcome you gentlemen.

We appreciate the interest of you gentlemen in coming here today, and we hope to have the pleasure of hearing from you later on during these proceedings.

You are all busy, and especially the Governor, coming down here from Albany, has given us great encouragement and great inspiration.

One problem, Governor, do you not believe, is the disabusing of people of the generally held misconception that somebody else ought to do this job, and that some agency is going to do it rather than its being a local community problem essentially, as you said?

There are so many people who think that, "Well, you don't have to take your coat off and work with the boy; somebody else is going to take care of it, some trained social worker."

And, as fine as they are, they cannot do it all, and many of the boys will not come to the agencies. We find that true in many of the cities where we visited. They will not come to the YMCA. They will not go to the Big Brothers. They will not go to the playgrounds or the boys clubs.

They want to go somewhere else.

So the problem is to bring the boy in, somehow or other; and, as you suggested, gangs are not necessarily bad things. Boys have gangs or clubs, and they are going to have them from now on, and always have had them. But the question is the direction these gangs take.

One reason we came here is that about 4 years ago we heard some New York witnesses in this connection in Washington, and we were so impressed by the work that was being done in this State and in this city that we came here, not on a witch hunt, not to expose anybody or to embarrass anybody, but to set up in a report a sort of pilot and model project so that other cities and places might be enlightened by it.

Senator Kefauver and I have introduced a bill, Senate bill 980, to authorize the establishing by the Surgeon General of an aftercare, posthospital treatment program for drug addiction and other purposes, and that bill is now pending before the Senate.

Senator Kefauver and Senator Langer and I introduced another bill to provide assistance and cooperation to States in strengthening and improving State and local programs for the diminution, control, and treatment of juvenile delinquency.

Case 4:23-cv-00547-O Document 20-2 Filed 10/06/23 Page 384 of 555 PageID

We are not only holding hearings, but we are also pushing legislation in this field, and we are trying to make this a realistic and practical committee and not a sensational one, and for that reason we have come here to be enlightened and to learn and to have the benefit of the views and ideas of you, as Governor of this great State, and other officials who are working with you in the city and in the State administration.

I thank you again, Governor, for your statement.

I think the Congressmen will appear later.

Mr. SULLIVAN. Senator, we have witnesses waiting here, and unless we proceed——

Chairman HENNINGS. Counsel has arranged an order of witnesses, gentlemen, and if you distinguished Members of the House would be good enough to bear with us, I think Mr. McCloskey is the next witness.

Governor HARRIMAN. Senator, before I leave, may I express to you my personal gratitude, as well as the State, for the work you are doing, not only in this field, but in the whole field of penology, probation, and parole. Certainly that is an area that needs a great deal of more thought, and we need to exchange views.

It is a subject which we are giving a good deal of attention to in New York State, and there is much to be done.

Chairman HENNINGS. What has become of Elmira, Governor? I went to school at Cornell University, which is near Elmira, and the Elmira Reformatory.

Is that still a reformatory?

Governor HARRIMAN. Yes; it is.

Chairman HENNINGS. It is still used?

Governor HARRIMAN. Yes, it is used, and I hope the methods have somewhat improved during the intervening years, but we have much to learn.

And I am glad you are also giving attention to the narcotics problem, because that is so closely tied to the whole problem of crime in our State.

Chairman HENNINGS. I introduced the marihuana bill when I was in the House, the marihuana stamp tax bill, and it was passed in 1936, and that is another phase of the problem, although marihuana is not strictly classified as a narcotic, as you know. It does not come under the Harrison Act.

Governor HARRIMAN. But there is a field where there must be cooperation between the Federal, State, and local governments, and we have not found the solution, and we welcome assistance.

Chairman HENNINGS. Thank you very much, Governor Harriman.

Governor Harriman, would you be good enough to come and sit up here with us?

Governor HARRIMAN. I would be happy to.

Chairman HENNINGS. And perhaps interrogate some of the witnesses.

At this time, I would like to give the distinguished Members of the House of Representatives an opportunity to say anything that they care to say; and later on if they care to testify more fully, we would be very glad to hear from any or all of you gentlemen.

Representative MULTER. Chairman Hennings.

Chairman HENNINGS. Congressman Multer.

-cv-00547-O Document 20-2 Filed 10/06/23 Page 385 of 555 Pa

Representative MULTER. Senator Kefauver, Governor Harriman, may I, and I believe I express the sentiments of my colleagues in the House of Representatives as well as my own, extend to you our gratitude for having set this hearing up for these 3 days, giving us your very valuable time in the city of New York to this very important problem.

We are grateful to you for coming here, and the Members of the House from the metropolitan area are very happy that you invited us to participate in these hearings.

We are certain that they will bring forth much valuable material. It is an indication that you and our great Governor, Governor Harriman, are not only alert to this important problem, but that you are doing something and will do something about it.

I am sure that we in the House look forward to the opportunity for bills such as S. 431, which you and Senator Kefauver introduced, coming to us so that we can join you in positive action in attacking this important problem and solving it, if it can be solved.

Thank you, sir.

Chairman HENNINGS. Thank you very much, Congressman Multer, and we welcome your cooperation and, indeed, we solicit your cooperation, and we know we will have it.

Your presence here indicates your interest and your concern and your sincerity in doing something about this problem. As I said to the Governor a moment ago, it is a matter of taking your coat off sometime and getting to work, not just making speeches and talking about it. And that is what we are trying to do.

I want to make it abundantly clear that we did not come here for the purpose of showing how bad conditions are in New York. We have found that they are bad everywhere in this country, and we have had hearings in virtually every large city in the country.

Mr. Kefauver was chairman of the committee last year, and we went to Boston, Philadelphia, Miami, Nashville. Even in Senator Kefauver's own State, there seems to be some trouble down there occasionally.

We find it runs very much to type. We had hearings in St. Louis for 2 or 3 days, my own city.

And what you are doing here in New York is unique, Governor Harriman. It is unique in terms of the imagination that is being applied to this program and to this problem. And for that reason, we have come, as I say, to be enlightened and to learn.

If Mr. McCloskey will be good enough to come forward, we would be very glad to hear from you, sir.

Representative ANFUSO. Senator, before Mr. McCloskey——

Chairman HENNINGS. Excuse me.

Representative ANFUSO. I would like to make a very short statement.

Chairman HENNINGS. Excuse me, Congressman. I thought Congressman Multer was making a statement for all Congressmen.

Indeed, we would be very glad to hear from any of you and all of you.

Representative ANFUSO. I certainly join in the sentiments expressed by Congressman Multer, and I am sure he spoke for all of the Members of the House here present.

I should like to have you consider adding to your S. 431, if you can, a provision to include a Crime Prevention Bureau under the Department of Justice.

3-cv-00547-O Document 20-2 Filed 10/06/23 Page 386 of 555 Pa

I have introduced such a bill, and I should be glad to send it to your committee.

The reason for such an inclusion, I think——

Chairman HENNINGS. We know, indeed, do we not, Congressman Anfuso, that prevention is a great deal better than rehabilitation and imprisonment?

Representative ANFUSO. Yes.

Chairman HENNINGS. For the Big Brother organization gets these boys before they get into trouble, boys from broken homes, boys who are likely to get into trouble, and assign an older man to them, and that man works with them and treats them as a little brother, as the name would indicate.

Representative ANFUSO. That is right.

Chairman HENNINGS. I did not mean to interrupt you.

Representative ANFUSO. My second suggestion is whether or not any thought has been given to the use of Ellis Island for the use of some kind of a youth program. We have that island, which has been vacated by the Immigration Service.

Chairman HENNINGS. I went over there to inspect it as a member of the Prison and Reformatory Committee not so long ago. That was before it was vacated.

Representative ANFUSO. I think that island could be utilized for some kind of useful activities, not only for a summer camp, but all-year-around program.

Chairman HENNINGS. It is indeed accessible.

Representative ANFUSO. Yes.

Those are the two ideas I have.

Chairman HENNINGS. That is splendid.

Congressman Powell, have you anything to say at this time?

Representative POWELL. I would like to testify when there is an opportunity to, not to interfere with witnesses who have been called.

Chairman HENNINGS. Congressman Dooley.

Representative DOOLEY. I, too, am delighted to be permitted to testify. I was interested in what the Governor said about camp life.

Chairman HENNINGS. I guess you went to camp.

I was counselor of a camp, and went to boys camp as a counselor for a number of years, and started camping as a Boy Scout. You learn a lot of things which you do not forget.

You learn how to cook, you learn how to lug a canoe over a portage. You learn how to paddle the right way, and not the city-park way. You learn all sorts of things that the boys do not learn in cities ordinarily.

And you, as a great athlete, I have known you and known of you for many years. You were one of the great football players of all time.

I happen to have been a track coach when I was in law school. We know what athletics means, too. And Governor Harriman was a crew coach at Yale, and we know that youthful effervescence and excess energy can be worked out by athletic activity and good, clean, healthy competition, about as well as any other way available to us.

Even though a boy cannot be a varsity athlete, he can engage in some sport or have some outlet rather than just hanging around the corner and poolroom and the saloon in the evening.

Does Mr. Zelenko wish to say anything?

Mr. SULLIVAN. He left. He will be back.

Chairman HENNINGS. Now then, if we may hear from Mr. McCloskey. We are running just a little bit behind time. I do not want to rush you, Mr. McCloskey. You have a very distinguished record, and we are so grateful to you for being here.

We would like to have you proceed in any way that you please. You are a distinguished holder of the Presidential Medal of Merit, and you have been director of the bureau of community education for New York City's Board of Education for 17 years, and we feel you are one authority from whom we especially want to hear.

So would you proceed?

STATEMENT OF MARK A. McCLOSKEY, CHAIRMAN, NEW YORK STATE YOUTH COMMISSION

Mr. McCLOSKEY. Thank you very much, Senator Hennings.

Governor Harriman has made a broad and comprehensive statement upon the work of the State and his ambition for the camps and other activities that lead not only to the prevention of delinquency, but improving the whole quality and life of our young people in the State.

And so, we have this approach that I am sure will bring interesting questions, but I will start off by saying 1 or 2 things that may be worthwhile in terms of our program here in the State.

We begin on the supposition, Senator, that this job is to be done where people are face to face, older people and young people, in the communities out over the State, and therefore our slogan really is that we are supporting the communities of New York State, not supplanting their responsibiliy. That they cannot avoid, any more than the State can avoid its responsibility for being involved in this program.

And so, we have this approach that I am sure will be interesting to you, because you have revealed the athletic records of everybody here, reaching all the way over from one side to the other.

In our town, here in New York, and in many big cities and, as a matter of fact, in many rural areas, there is not an opportunity, because our recreational activities and programs have never had a chance to quite catch up with the growth of our population and the density of the population in the city, so kids who may never become——

Chairman HENNINGS. We found that to be true virtually everywhere, Mr. McCloskey.

Mr. McCLOSKEY. So the State has, in virtually all but a few communities throughout the State, put some seed money, some gambler's money, if you will, used in its right sense, into the small towns, from the smallest hamlet to this big city of ours at this end of the State.

And that money has brought out about four times the amount that the State has been putting in, because what they needed was a start on their recreation programs.

Not only did it bring out the money, but it brought out the concern, that thing that you were talking about, the involvement of a whole

3-cv-00547-O Document 20-2 Filed 10/06/23 Page 388 of 555 Pa

host of people in this program rather than a limited number of professionals.

I would think a lot of people would like to fob it off on a limited group, but it cannot be done.

Chairman HENNINGS. Right.

Mr. McCLOSKEY. So in all our communities throughout the State, you brought out a whole host of local resources that have been interested in this building.

I do not have the time, but it would be interesting if we did this morning, to talk about towns where the various trades came out and helped to build a town recreation hall, the wisdom and ingenuity with which the towns have dealt with this problem.

So, on the positive side, this is a very interesting thing. All the way from here, all the way to the ends of the State, every community has had benefit of the State's seed money, and has added immeasurably to it.

The second thing is this business of finding gaps in the services. We run into them even in our distribution of the kinds of aid that children need when they get into difficulty or to keep them from getting into difficulty.

And so, at the Governor's direction, the formula of the State of New York has been changed so that beyond the recreation, we have money that we can say to any town all the way from Dunkirk down here to Brooklyn, through the New York City Youth Board, "If you have a gap in the fence of services, we are willing to step in and help you."

One of the best things about that bill and the use of that money is that it is flexible. We are not tied and corseted in some narrow way in dealing with this. We say to the town, "Really take a look at yourself, take stock."

And we commence, Senator, at that point with 3 or 4 people, a lean staff, that will say to the town, "We know what they are doing here, there, and elsewhere, and we will help, add to what you have got, see where the holes are and see how we can help you fill them."

The other thing I would like to talk about is, we have been working in this State on the basis of nonisolation of agencies. We have been having these town meetings that the Governor has spoken about, all the way from Plattsburg up in the sparsely settled Clinton County, and the other day in Dunkirk. And we have been in the big cities and the small cities.

And these are working parties. These are people who run the Boy Scouts, the Big Brothers. They are the school people, they are the probation officers, all the people who are actively engaged in a whole host of voluntary activities like the parent-teachers' association.

They sit down and sweat it out together, adding up on the town's facilities.

But the youth commission does not do that alone. The youth commission brings in people from the State probation department, from the mental hygiene department, from the State education department.

We have a very difficult thing, this business of cooperation, but it is being worked out.

The Governor mentioned in his statement that we had an interdepartmental committee. That is the way it works. It goes right down

KnifeRights MSJ App.000383

to the town and works from each one of these departments with the people in the community.

I am not going to say any more about the town meetings, except I cannot get over the editorial in the Watertown Times, which said it is just as far from Watertown to Albany, just as far as it is from Washington to New York, and so forth, but it has been a good thing for us to go through the State in a slow, pedestrian, but hard-working fashion to deal with that job.

I think I have said enough now to suggest some questions, probably, to either Senator Kefauver or your friends here from the House of Representatives, but I would like now a last word, to say one word more about the camps without being redundant about it.

It is true that I have been working on this job a long time. I have been here over on the West Side waterfront for 20 years. My wife and I ran a camp for children, and we believed so intensely and so earnestly in this business of taking kids out of what very often in the summertime is a hot, something comparable to a letter file, that is what you put them in, and out of it.

And I think a good many parts of our town and other big cities through the State have that problem.

And it is the Governor's ambition, as we have gone through the State looking at some of these places, to find some place where kids can get off our sidewalks in the summer and where they will work their bodies and where they will do the kind of things you were interested in at college, and move in the water and see something of the open country.

This I know from my firsthand experience, and this is one of the most exciting and unique things that has been attempted, and I hope that the State gets its chance to do that particular job.

Chairman HENNINGS. May I ask you, Mr. McCloskey, what programs have been developed by the State youth commission with respect to large housing projects, where large numbers of low-income families are thrown together?

Mr. McCLOSKEY. Well, the law we operate under, and a very sensible law it is, too, Senator, is that we work through the municipality and through the New York City Youth Board, and when they report, as they do, under a very comprehensive program we have—understand, you remember, we're partners to the tune of $1,270,000—we work very closely with other youth boards through the State, and we know in the housing authorities, the projects through the city, that there have been some recreational facilities that have been built which have been unmanned because there is a very uneven distribution of services through this and every other city.

It is hard to catch up with the rebuilding of the city, and some money goes from the youth board in New York to the housing project.

The same thing is true in Rochester in the housing projects, and the housing project in Buffalo.

Then we have been trying, because when a housing establishment is built, you have to rearrange your services in the community and very often we have to do there what the Governor spoke about before, to wit, the street gang, to try to get kids that kind of shy off from the conventional agency, what we call here in New York the hard-to-reach kids.

Case 4:23-cv-00547-O Document 20-2 Filed 10/06/23 Page 390 of 555 Pa

Chairman HENNINGS. They do shy off, do they not?

Mr. McCLOSKEY. They certainly do.

Chairman HENNINGS. We discovered that.

Mr. McCLOSKEY. I think that is all right. There is no reason why they should all be Boy Scouts or something of that sort. They need and want a variety of opportunities, and some organizations have a program suited to one more than the other.

But we have been working through the municipalities and the housing projects through the State.

Chairman HENNINGS. Thank you; Mr. McCloskey.

Do any of the distinguished Members of the House of Representatives wish to ask Mr. McCloskey any questions or make any observations?

Representative DOOLEY. Senator, may I make one observation, if I may?

Chairman HENNINGS. Mr. Dooley.

Representative DOOLEY. I made a cursory survey of the situation in Westchester County when I found I was going to join this committee in these hearings, and in those areas where facilities are provided for amusement, pleasure, swimming, fishing, and boating, and the like, there was not 1 case of juvenile delinquency in a population of 28,000 people in the town of Mamaroneck, village of Larchmont, and village of Mamaroneck.

On the other hand, where the pressure of social situations existed, there were a number of cases in the same period.

So from that, I draw the conclusion that it may be inductive reasoning that environment is a very important matter in this whole matter.

Mr. McCLOSKEY. I am pleased to hear you say that, Congressman Dooley, because we have been involved with Westchester County, some of the State money goes into the county, and last year in several of the communities in Westchester, our people who are wise in recreational programs came down and surveyed some of the types, one by one, through Westchester, in order to—they have got a good recreation program in Westchester, but it is never good enough, and I think their recommendations have helped in the improvement of it.

I am glad to hear you say it is valuable.

Representative DOOLEY. The State has given us wonderful help, Mr. McCloskey.

Thank you, Senator.

Mr. McCLOSKEY. Thank you very much.

Chairman HENNINGS. Thank you.

Are there any other questions?

Representative ANFUSO. All I want to say is, coming from a good Republican, giving credit to a Democratic administration, it is a good compliment. It is well deserving. I think you are entitled to that compliment, Governor Harriman.

Chairman HENNINGS. We think there are some good Republicans.

Mr. McCLOSKEY. Well, to tell you, Representative Anfuso, we are a bipartisan group.

Representative DOOLEY. This is a nonpartisan committee.

3-cv-00547-O Document 20-2 Filed 10/06/23 Page 391 of 555 Pa

Chairman HENNINGS. As a matter of fact, I went to a meeting at the White House yesterday, the bipartisan meeting of the President, and this subject came up in a rather indirect way in terms of training our youth in terms of national defense, building our Nation through building up our young people.

I have never believed that the term "juvenile delinquency" quite applied. I have always preferred to use the phrase "young people in trouble." I do not know just what a delinquent is.

It seems to me that it is unfortunate that it has come into general usage and common understanding, because it gives a boy or girl a tag. Once a youth is tagged as a delinquent, I sometimes feel, he begins to think: "Maybe I am a delinquent, maybe I am always going to be a delinquent."

These kids are in trouble, by and large, and it is society's fault, and the fault of all of us, and it is the duty of all of us to try to do something about it.

I feel very strongly about that.

Mr. McCLOSKEY. Senator, we roughly would like to think in this State that we will give no kid a past, because if you have a past, it is very difficult to have any kind of a future, and that is the philosophy that we are working on.

Chairman HENNINGS. That is right, exactly.

I wonder if Mr. Sullivan, the counsel of our committee, has any questions to ask Mr. McCloskey.

Mr. SULLIVAN. Just one, Mr. McCloskey.

Our investigation here has indicated that there is a difference between the real hard core delinquent or the real hard core problem family, and the child of the family that might be helped by additional recreational facilities.

Do you find these real hard-core families or these real hard-core children in upstate New York, as well as the more densely populated cities?

Mr. McCLOSKEY. I have been accustomed for a long time to hear the American family given the rough end of people's tongues. As a matter of fact, in the west end slum areas, you can find that you have some of the finest children, and then you run over on the other side with some pretty poor stuff.

They are the ones to work on. They are back in the pockets of rural areas. You will find them, for instance, where the State is making a study now on poverty, poverty in many ways, because this State is a forerunner of this approach at getting at these hard pockets of poverty of all kinds, poverty of spirit, economic poverty, and poverty in many ways.

Well, you will find a great many of those families there, but I just want to make it clear that I am not going to subscribe to the idea that all people who live in poor or underprivileged neighborhoods are poor familymakers. The poor familymakers are there. There are poor familymakers in the rural areas, as well, in New York.

Chairman HENNINGS. We have found that to be true in these hearings.

Mr. McCLOSKEY. I am glad to hear that, because we believe that firmly. But we are determined that those hard-core families should be dealt with—those are poor words, "dealth with"—that they will be helped to get strength enough to do their own job.

20873—58——3

3-cv-00547-O Document 20-2 Filed 10/06/23 Page 392 of 555 Pa

As a matter of fact, their ambition to do with the community and their ambition to do with the families. We would like to make the families strong enough to do the job.

If they are that poor, I say don't give up the kids because they are from hard core families, and I think you will hear people testify here later of the various ways we are trying to get at that, and I think we were delighted the other day at a meeting on our poverty area in New York State study—I do not like that word, but you know what I mean—that we had been able to get some people who were now going to work directly with those families they were so much worried about.

It is true, both city and statewide.

Mr. SULLIVAN. I think we have no further questions. I think we had better move on. Thank you very much.

Chairman HENNINGS. I believe Congressman Powell had a question.

Representative POWELL. Thank you.

Chairman HENNINGS. We will be glad to hear from you, Congressman.

Representative POWELL. Mr. McCloskey, out of your vast experience in social work, and not as an official, do you favor a crash program from the United States Congress to help States set up youth commissions similar to the one we have in New York State, which is——

Mr. McCLOSKEY. I do, Congressman Powell. But I would not want to have anybody under the impression that this State or any other State should wait until that happens, because the Governor testified on the bill before the Senate here 6 or 7 months ago, and we have had, I don't know whether the bill got out of committee or not—did it, Senator?

But at any rate, Governor Harriman went on to say we have taken hold of this job in the State of New York, and if we did, if there was help, that we would like it on the basis of establishing a formula that would take into consideration the fact that we had really gone to work.

That is one of the things we are concerned with. We would like a good deal of the research to be done, and the figures, the statistical work, in Washington. I think in some States it would be welcomed, some of the technical aid and experienced people from Washington.

I do not want to feel we are isolationists here, but we really have a whole host of able people in the State to draw on. But I see the need and desirability of it, but I wanted to make that one thing clear: that if they begin to establish a formula for helping youth boards, that they would take into consideration the fact that the State of New York has gotten on its job.

Thank you.

Chairman HENNINGS. That is very encouraging to hear, Mr. McCloskey.

Senator Kefauver, have you any questions or observations?

Senator KEFAUVER. Thank you, Mr. Chairman.

I know we have all been very much interested in the good work of the New York Youth Commission, and I would like to ask just 2 or 3 questions about the work.

In the first place, how many members of the commission are there, Mr. McCloskey?

Mr. McCLOSKEY. There are 9 members, a chairman and 8.

Senator KEFAUVER. Then part of the very important work is to encourage and sponsor the setting up of State and municipal or local youth commissions. Just how do you go about that?

Mr. McCLOSKEY. Well, we have an example here in the city of New York. We do not ask other cities to take the example of the city of New York. We ask the other communities to look at their own problem and then see how they can benefit by sewing together the various groups that are concerned with children in their own municipality, and the theory often is that they shall not operate an agency, but that they shall be conveners and be aware of where the problems are in their communities, and they will see to it this gap finding that I spoke of before, that that is done; that they will carry on, for instance, as in the city of Buffalo, we have been—all of us are concerned, aren't we, about the question of automobiles being stolen by young ones? It is one of the problems of our time, a 15- or 14-year old who knows how to drive or he can't drive.

So we have been campaigning in there. So in that city, the youth board carries on, because it could involve all the religious groups, because it had members from the religious groups, from the educational group, from the welfare groups, from industry, labor, the newspaper and radio, all worked on this business of trying to make Buffalo aware of the need for protecting their cars, things in their cars, locking them, the lectures by the PTA to their own kids in the schools.

It was a full approach to the job. That is how it comes. It comes out of the need of and the community's ability to see the desirability of coordinating their efforts.

We are an individualistic people, and our agencies are, too.

Senator KEFAUVER. In other words, as I understand, Mr. McCloskey, under the overall direction of the State Youth Commission, the local youth boards are created, and part of their responsibility is to try to coordinate and bring together on a cooperative basis all of the local groups, religious and educational, boys' clubs, and various organizations that may be working in the youth field, so that they try to prevent overlapping and duplication and have cooperation between them. Is that correct?

Mr. McCLOSKEY. That is correct.

Senator KEFAUVER. I think that is a very important function, because we find in some places a whole lot being done in this area on this side of the track, and very little being done on the other side of the track.

Mr. McCLOSKEY. Well, I want to point out, Senator, they are appointed by the municipality. We encourage them, but they are set up by the municipalities themselves.

Senator KEFAUVER. I understand also that—by the way, when was the State Youth Commission law passed?

Mr. McCLOSKEY. I think it was about 9 or 10 years ago, but it was in temporary status, and anything that is temporary has a rough and hard time going.

Three years ago it was established, after hearings were held throughout the State in 11 of our large cities, bringing people in, and the recommendations to the Governor, and the Governor's recommendation back to the legislature.

Senator KEFAUVER. In other words, the Governor had a special message to the legislature about it 3 or 4 years ago?

Mr. McCLOSKEY. That is right.

Senator KEFAUVER. Then tell us something of what you have done to increase and enlarge the activities of the training schools in the State.

Mr. McCLOSKEY. The training schools do not come under my direct supervision. Children under 16 years of age, Senator, go under the auspices of the Department of Welfare; and over that age, the Department of Correction.

And I believe we have men coming on here, I just want to say——

Chairman HENNINGS. I want to say to Senator Kefauver, there will be testimony from those.

Mr. McCLOSKEY. But I want you to know that we are concerned, too, the whole State is concerned, and before these men come, I would like to say that our Commission has come and visited the institutions, and we are very proud of this most difficult kind of job.

All the young ones who are sieved out of our society finally come into those institutions, and I am boundless in my admiration of the people who struggle with it 24 hours a day, day after day. They are dedicated people. You could not do it otherwise.

Chairman HENNINGS. They are dedicated people. They are not working for money, but for satisfaction.

Mr. McCLOSKEY. That is right.

Senator KEFAUVER. I take it, Mr. McCloskey, by getting the local groups to participate, that in that way the amount of money that would be spent and the amount of active, personal interest that would be taken, is tremendously enlarged; is that your experience?

Mr. McCLOSKEY. That is right.

Senator KEFAUVER. Well, thank you very much. I congratulate you upon your good work.

Mr. McCLOSKEY. Thank you very much, Senator.

Chairman HENNINGS. Thank you very much, Mr. McCloskey, for coming here to enlighten the committee, and giving it the benefit of your broad and comprehensive experience.

Our next witness is Dr. Alfred J. Kahn.

Dr. Kahn, will you please come forward, sir? We welcome you here today.

I might say that Dr. Kahn was born in New York City, and lives now in Scarsdale, N. Y., and is the author of a number of major studies dealing with delinquency and community planning for children in trouble, the most recent of which, For Children in Trouble, was published in June 1957.

He is also author of A Court for Children, 1953; Police and Children, and Children Absent from School.

He has written numerous articles in this field, and has participated actively in Federal, State, and city programs.

I believe, too, Doctor, that you were the first recipient of the Social Welfare doctorate awarded in the State of New York.

STATEMENT OF DR. ALFRED J. KAHN, PROFESSOR OF SOCIAL WORK AT THE NEW YORK SCHOOL OF SOCIAL WORK, COLUMBIA UNIVERSITY, AND CONSULTANT, CITIZENS' COMMITTEE ON CHILDREN OF NEW YORK CITY, INC.

Dr. KAHN. Yes, sir.

Chairman HENNINGS. And you are a member of the National Association of Social Workers, and technical consultant to the New York City Community Mental Health Board, the National Probation and Parole Association, and that you led the workshops and work groups at the 1950 White House Conference on Children.

We welcome you here today, and we will be very glad to hear from you. You may proceed in any way that you please, by reading your statement or interspersing or making an oral statement and putting the prepared statement in the record. We will be very glad to have you do any of those things.

Dr. KAHN. Thank you.

I would like to do several of those in conjunction with one another, if I may, Mr. Chairman.

Chairman HENNINGS. Yes.

Dr. KAHN. Senator Hennings and Senator Kefauver, Governor Harriman, gentlemen:

I first want to thank you for the opportunity of following our distinguished Governor and chairman of the State Youth Commission who, in the minds of all of us in this city and State, are making a major contribution in providing leadership in this field.

I want to thank you for the opportunity of appearing before you to present some of the conclusions of 9 years of research and study of services for children in trouble. You see, I, too, like that phrase better than the other one.

These studies have been carried on under the auspices of the Citizens' Committee for Children of New York City, Inc., to which I serve as consultant.

We have, in this period, completed studies of truancy, police work with children, and Children's Court. Most recently we have published a study of the ways in which community services have failed some of those most in need of help.

As a result, our major attention is currently directed at the problem of planning an integrated system of community services to deal with children in trouble. We are now studying possible structures for citywide planning, coordination, integration of services, as well as ways of assuring responsible, continuous, persistent work with those in trouble on a neighborhood or regional basis—what we are calling "case accountability," which I would like to explain after a while.

We are also trying to define the appropriate role of each major agency, police, courts, schools, church, and so forth, into an overall integrated community plan in an urban area.

All of this work is still in progress. Although several monographs and one book, which you were kind enough to list, have already appeared, the major volume in the project, major approach, is For Children in Trouble.

3-cv-00547-O Document 20-2 Filed 10/06/23 Page 396 of 555 Pa

I would like to emphasize one area: Although we have considerable data about shortages of resources and facilities, lack of qualified personnel, need for training facilities, and so on, and I am ready to answer questions on those, I know that these subjects have been and will be discussed by others.

I should like, rather, to emphasize the importance of thinking about a system of services, an integrated system of services, not of individual agencies and programs.

In fact, from everything we have seen and discovered, it is clear that programs are doomed to a continued high rate of failure, and they are high, as we have seen from the statistics around the country, unless we cease to see the problem of dealing with delinquents from the vantage point only of the police, the courts, the schools, the clinics, or any other single service.

A community must clarify the functions essential to an overall approach to children in trouble and assure the adequate development and provision of such functions. The roles of agencies may vary from place to place, or from time to time.

Individual agencies must be willing to adapt themselves to changing knowledge and needs. The crucial objective in planning is to guarantee all essential functions; otherwise:

Children may be unnoticed until problems are aggravated and severe or, as we will show later, tragic;

Decisions are not based on sound criteria;

Decisions do not derive from adequate case study;

Children and families are lost in the gaps between agencies and programs;

Case finding does not assure adequate and effective service; opportunities are lost;

The extent and nature of resource gaps are not understood and publicized;

There is inadequate cooperation between agencies;

Children or their parents are seen from limited perspectives, and the basic problems are not dealt with.

These are the consequences, we feel, if one talks of individual agencies rather than a community system, and if one does not concern oneself with guaranteeing all the essential functions in a community rather than being sure that a few agencies are themselves very good.

In talking about structure and mechanisms and functions, as I mean to, a somewhat abstract discussion and perhaps not as dramatic as it might be if I do not talk about cases, I do not mean to imply that programs cannot operate without dedicated people or that proper definitions which I am going to be talking about substitute for sound impulses and goals.

I take it for granted that we need personnel who care about results and, most important, care about children and parents.

I am convinced, too, that community plans are empty except in an atmosphere of what I have been calling responsibility and accountability. An agency is not an entity unto itself. It is a community instrument with a job to do, ever responsible to do it better, to report honestly its problems and failures, and to find its place as an agency in a total community effort.

In relation to the individual served, the agency is accountable to the remainder of the community for what it does and does not do. We are not involved in ceremony and process. We are involved in doing a job that has to have successful results.

Where the agency itself fails or gives up, others should know and be asked to take over, rather than feel that the agency has to cover up because it has not been successful.

The chart now before you lists the functions we have identified—and I will come to it in a few moments; we do not have to move it at the moment—the functions we have identified as a basic to a community system of services, and I shall define them briefly and indicate, from our research findings, the results of failure to guarantee their effective implementation.

I have not written out the remarks to follow, and shall make my comments informal when I get up to the chart.

Before doing so, however, I wish to stress again that the problems which arise are not the fault of any agency, of any one service. Each agency may work conscientiously and do its job, and yet the total program may not be effective enough without adequate planning, coordination, and evaluation.

If the individual agency is willing to see itself as part of a community system of services, and to accept responsibility within that system, much is accomplished.

The agency cannot act of itself, however, and have adequate perspective about the total system. A communitywide planning and coordinating structure—for instance, the sort of structure described by Mr. McCloskey for some of our municipalities—as well as a local mechanism for integration of agency services, is still necessary if agencies are to work well together, and if the individual case is to show the benefits of a systematic, substantial rehabilitative effort.

It need hardly be added, after this kind of introduction, that delinquency is too complex a phenomenon to be affected in any basic way by magical, single-formula solutions. Some of the proposed remedies may have real merit in the context of a balanced community program. Thus, a community may need more youth police for patrol, such as recently provided in New York City, patrol, apprehension, or detection; or may need specialized schools for a small minority too disruptive for the school system, but able to respond to a special program.

And I might add, these schools should know what they are trying to do, whom they are serving, and how they are going to help them.

Or a parent education program may be helpful and needed.

Each of these proposals may have merit, and they belong in a total effort. I would raise major questions about anybody who offered any one of them as a solution.

Chairman HENNINGS. They are certainly no panaceas. We have discovered that everywhere.

Dr. KAHN. Your last report made that very clear.

Chairman HENNINGS. I think Senator Kefauver will agree, as you suggest, in our last report we undertook to say that there are many, many devices and means to be availed of and which must be used to alleviate or to mitigate this problem in general.

Case 4:23-cv-00547-O Document 20-2 Filed 10/06/23 Page 398 of 555 Pa

Dr. KAHN. That is right.

Chairman HENNINGS. There are so many people who think if you do away with horror comic books or do away with crime on television, which teaches boys and girls what they call in police circles the M. O., the modus operandi, how to break in a house and how to unlock a door with a skeleton key, and so on, it would take care of the situation.

We heard so much of that, and there have been a great many witnesses in the past 4½ years that Senator Kefauver and I have served on this committee, who have come in and said, "If you have a curfew law, for example, that will cure everything. That will take care of everything." Or "If you have a lot of playgrounds, that will take care of it."

And, as we all know, and I think you have done us the honor to have read our report, we tried to make that abundantly clear.

Dr. KAHN. Yes.

Although many of these items, I am sure you would agree, belong in a total program, none is a panacea.

Chairman HENNINGS. Yes.

Dr. KAHN. I make this point largely to emphasize that some of these proposals are in themselves unsound, some of these single-formula proposals.

For instance, a good number of them ignore all that is known about the deprivation and disrupted family lives of the delinquents, and of the inadequacy of their parents to cope with their own responsibilities, let alone the responsibilities of their children.

And I would so classify so-called solutions which emphasize punishing parents alone, in one way or another, for their inadequacy, or urging the woodshed for young offenders who have known very little except the woodshed for most of their lives.

Chairman HENNINGS. Yes. We had a judge from Chicago 2 or 3 years ago who used that very phrase. He said the woodshed was the solution; take them out and take a barrel stave to them or a birch, and that will cure the whole thing.

Dr. KAHN. That is right.

Chairman HENNINGS. Or lock them up. "Lock them up; it will teach them a lesson. Give them the treatment."

Dr. KAHN. Somebody should give them some statistics about what people do after they have been locked up.

Chairman HENNINGS. And the judge really believed that, and he came to Washington to testify and to tell us that.

I do not reflect upon his character, but I do question the degree of thoughtfulness that he has devoted to this problem.

Excuse me for interrupting.

Dr. KAHN. Thank you.

A final word before turning to the chart.

I am not addressing myself at this moment to what we might call basic prevention; that is, the ways in which to decrease the deviant,

annoying antisocial behavior that we have been addressing ourselves to. I am not talking about what we can do to end that kind of behavior in the world. I have been asked by counsel to do other things.

If I were, I should have to discuss the things in the world about us that affect the kind of community and family life that develops in various parts of our country. I would have to discuss the general level of morality and conduct. I would have to talk about the amount of social mobility in this country.

I would have to talk about the behavior of well-publicized adults after whom some youths choose to model themselves. I would have to talk about the inadequacies of incentives offered to young people to defer the pleasures of the moment in favor of long-range goals.

I want only to point out that in a real sense, our delinquency rates represent a major social failure in which all of us have a part, and because of this failure, the social and antisocial conduct to which we are addressing ourselves is frequent and often violent.

And, in a sense, we are accountable, all of us, for these failures, and therefore it is quite proper that the United States Senate and House of Representatives address themselves to the problem of what we can, as a community and a society, do about these problems.

Communities require adequate forces for protection, for apprehension of violators, and to deter those who would break the law, and again I am not talking about what we can do to protect our communities. I understand the police will make a presentation about this program.

This program must be carried out with respect for individual rights, or we lose what we seek to protect. Sometimes protection requires continued custody in secure institutions. Sometimes, because this is the only interim possibility while we study a case; sometimes because we honestly do not know how to help some categories of people.

Chairman HENNINGS. Doctor, do we not always declare, whether an act be committed by a young person or an old person, that it is a crime to commit murders?

Dr. KAHN. That is right.

Chairman HENNINGS. And that is not delinquency.

Dr. KAHN. No.

I guess all States exempt that crime from the statute dealing with delinquency.

Chairman HENNINGS. Yes, they do.

Dr. KAHN. As are certain other offenses which result in life imprisonment.

Chairman HENNINGS. That is right.

Dr. KAHN. The chart I am going to turn to now addresses itself to much more limited issues than to prevention or protection of a community, but issues which I think are quite important.

Mr. SULLIVAN. May I comment before you start on another topic?

Dr. KAHN. Yes; please do.

Mr. SULLIVAN. I would like to thank our special counsel, Mr. Ernest A. Mitler, and Mr. Mel Harris for the construction of this chart, which we are very impressed with, and I am sure the Senators will agree, and the Congressmen, it is a very comprehensive expression of, I think, what you will present to the committee.

Do you want to move that forward?

Dr. KAHN. While they are moving the chart in place, I might say that it addresses itself to one single problem, which is complicated. That is, the problem is: Given antisocial or asocial behavior, how are we going to try to organize community efforts for early location of the difficulty before the problems are too severe, and for effective action to prevent intensification of the problem and continued maladjustment?

The premise is that there is no choice but to find the problem early and to do something effective about it, and to make sure what we do is effective enough to decrease future difficulties.

If it will not upset the recording system, I will move up to the chart now. Is that all right, Mr. Counsel?

I am not going to address myself to this half of the chart, which is going to be discussed by a witness cooperating with me who I am going to introduce in a few moments. At the moment, let me turn to the chart on this side.

The heading is "Community Functions in Dealing With Delinquents," and it is an attempt to dramatize the fact that there are 4 or 5 jobs which have to be done, and every community has to decide how to do them.

Chairman HENNINGS. Let this chart be marked "Exhibit No. 6" and be made a part of the record.

(The chart referred to was marked "Exhibit No. 6" and follows:)

This Chart Is an Excerpt from Forthcoming Book "Planning Community Services for Children in Trouble" by Alfred J. Kahn, Citizen's Comm. for Children of N. Y. C. Inc

Case 4:23-cv-00547-O Document 20-2 Filed 10/06/23 Page 402 of 555 PageID

Some communities need many agencies, some need a few, some need a few personnel, some need a whole gamut of services. But if one thinks in terms of functions, one can identify the gaps and one can clarify what it takes to keep the whole structure in operation.

There is, first, a stage which is represented by the people here, rather than by word, which we might call case finding. That is the discovering of the kids who in some way are deviant, are in difficulty, and are not getting along.

This is before they are actually themselves in any serious difficulty with a law or a protective society. I am referring to the fact that a child may not be getting along in school, in not a mild way, transitional way, but the sort of thing a teacher is worried about; or a child in a settlement house who is acting up in one way or another; the child in a family receiving help from a public welfare department, aid to dependent children, and the visitor recognized there was something wrong in the relationships.

A child in a housing project who is participating with his friends in defacing the elevator and the walls and making it impossible for the family to abide by the rules.

A child who on a visit to a health station with his mother is recognized by the public health nurse as in some way in difficulty.

This is the earliest stage at which the community can recognize that something is going wrong. The teacher, the settlement worker, the cop on the beat, the nurse in the health station, the pediatrician, are suddenly in a position to see that there is something not quite right.

I am not talking about the transitional thing, the unserious thing that they dismiss with a laugh or with a bit of advice, but the sort of thing that begins to worry them.

And what I am suggesting here is that if at this moment, this very first moment of case finding, there can be recognition that the system of community services must come into action, we may be in a position to really head off the more serious trouble that develops later.

Now, this case finding gets to a second phase: The child who already is doing something which technically is delinquent. He may have gone into the 5 and 10 and stolen something. He may have broken some windows and been apprehended. He may have done something much more serious which is also encompassable within the definition, and he is picked up by the policeman on the beat, or reported to a local detective after a theft.

There, too, we have case finding, but we are beginning to be in channels there.

The first thing that becomes very clear is that unless these people have some basis for separating out the unserious from the serious, the trivial from the worrisome, we are going to miss major opportunities.

In a recent study in New York City which we conducted, we studied 200 children in the late stages of difficulties, in the training schools, on parole, and so forth, and we asked ourselves, "How many of them could have been discovered at this phase more than 2 years before the difficulty which got them into the court and the training school, and so forth?"

The answer was, 147 out of 200 were discoverable at least more than 2 years before; 80 of the 200 were discoverable 5 and more years before, as representing serious enough problems for something to have been done of a more basic character.

We found it was not that they were not known to any of these agencies, and it was not even that some of these agencies did not try to do something, but what they tried to do was trivial, segmented, not systematic, did not lead to the effective action we need.

And this, therefore, represents, from our point of view, a phenomenon that we call the loss of major opportunities for community protection and prevention.

There are many technical problems here which I will not go into, as to how one trains teachers and pediatricians, and so forth, to do this, but the important thing is, if professionals in contact with children can come to recognize themselves as having opportunities and know what the chances are, and have some simple direction as to what the procedures are for getting help when help is needed, we will have begun a case finding that represents major opportunity. And this is not textbook theory.

Many public health nurses around the country, many teachers around the country, many settlement workers around the country, are doing this, but it is segmented effort. It is not systematic effort, and it does not have the full organization and training opportunity that it requires.

The next step is what we call case study.

Now, at the level of brief screening, really major decisions are made, and this is why we say, in the orientation and training of this staff a very large number of the situations so uncovered get dropped by informal handling.

The teacher makes a classroom adjustment. The health nurse makes a suggestion to the parent. The minister talks to the family and offers some informal help of one kind or another. The situation can be dropped.

But these personnel must be able to recognize which cases require more careful or more complete expert help, and there we have a phenomenon which we call case study. Somebody has to look at the situation in a thorough way to help us make a long-range decision.

If it has been an arrest by the policeman because there is delinquency, there has to be a probation officer who knows how to do the kind of evaluation which can guide the judge as to what will be effective with this child.

If it is a matter of a case known to the welfare department, there have to be skilled public welfare personnel who can do an adequate study, rather than people who do a clerical job just figuring out budgets, and so forth.

If it is a settlement house, they have to have a staff.

If it is a teacher, and if it is a problem which is too complicated for her, she needs guidance work staff and social work staff in her school who can help her decide what the situation requires. We call that case study.

In our own research going back to those 200 cases, we found that well over half the cases did not have, even after they reached this next serious level of not being dropped, did not have a professionally adequate case study, that is, a case study which would meet the standard of people who are trained in this field and who know what you have to understand about a child to make a wise decision, about training school, about probation, about informal work in the church, about recreation program, about anything else that would help the child.

3-cv-00547-O Document 20-2 Filed 10/06/23 Page 404 of 555 Pa

I see Mr. Sherwood Norman of National Probation and Parole Association here, and he will tell us that this case study sometimes takes place in the detention facility, the situation is so serious we do not dare leave the child at home or in the community while making the decision.

And the problem is that in many spots around the country, there are not adequate detention facilities with trained staff able to do this kind of study.

Sometimes it is done in the court while the child lives at home. Sometimes it is done in the school's social service department. Sometimes it is done in a clinic, and so forth.

Mr. SULLIVAN. May I interrupt?

Dr. KAHN. Yes.

Mr. SULLIVAN. If you can, would you highlight it a little more? We have 3 or 4 people who came from upstate and will have to be going back this afternoon, and I would hate to have to ask them to wait over. If you could.

Dr. KAHN. I certainly shall. I was timing myself according to my original instructions, but I will watch my schedule.

Mr. SULLIVAN. That is all right.

Dr. KAHN. The next phase of this is a phase which we call resource location, service planning and referral.

Having made the case study, there are people who have to find the spots in the training schools, and many of our State training schools are overcrowded; find the treatment spots in the clinic; find the recreation programs, and so forth, and get the child there.

In our own research, we find this is one of the major problems. There is sort of a referral made in a letter or a phone call, no follow-up, no adequate explanation to the family; no follow-through, time after time, to make sure that the child has gotten here.

Many children are lost between case study and referral, and this is why we talked before about a community system of services which will assure case accountability.

The people who have carried a kid this far and know enough about him to understand what it is going to take to help him before he is a major community problem, have to have a system of operation which will get him to the service and will keep him there until the service takes; and if it does not take, will make sure that he gets somewhere else.

We call this case accountability.

Mr. SULLIVAN. According to your concept of case accountability, you believe there must be some central accounting procedure to keep track of the hard-core families.

Dr. KAHN. I would say all of the kids who get into the system in such a way as to need some kind of attention of this sort. There are various devices tried around the country. The welfare department here is experimenting with what they call a task force where they have a meeting of all the major agencies, deciding who is going to carry on and who will follow the family to make sure it does not get lost.

In Montclair, N. J., the Council of Social Agencies runs a conference committee. Philadelphia is experimenting with something else. But every community, depending on its size, needs some kind of device.

This, I think, is one of the things that needs most emphasis around the country. We cannot just study kids and pass them along. We

3-cv-00547-O Document 20-2 Filed 10/06/23 Page 405 of 555 Pa

found that very large numbers—I am not going to take your time on statistics now—we found that very large numbers get lost in these gaps between the stages and gaps between the agencies, or in the failure of people to follow through, and this is not—this is a pervasive lack. It transcends the practices of individual agencies and institutions.

Following the publication of this report to which I am referring, we have had correspondence from many States in the Union indicating that we might just as well have used their data; the finding would have been identical.

I have run several workshops of people in several States, and have gone to several State welfare conferences and picked up data all around the country.

To indicate this is a national problem, one has to give emphasis to what we call responsibility and accountability, the idea being that an agency which has rendered incomplete or unsuccessful service has some obligation to assure continuity of community concern when its own contacts end.

If I may at this point, Mr. Chairman, I would like to interrupt my testimony. I want to come back in a few moments.

Chairman HENNINGS. Yes, indeed.

Dr. KAHN. I want to introduce a gentleman who will present a dramatic case illustration, after which I would like to make some comments.

Chairman HENNINGS. We will be pleased to have you do that, Dr. Kahn.

Dr. KAHN. I met this gentleman during the summer when he was investigating a dramatic case in New Jersey for NBC television, the so-called Night Line program, the case of Ronald Marrone; and I was rather impressed with the fact, and I think you will be, too, that here was a journalist, not a social worker or a social scientist or anybody working in this field, investigating an individual case, who emerged with the same conclusions that I had, and I think to hear his tapes and to hear his story, Mr. Walter McGraw will present to you some of the facts we are trying to deal with, and then I would like to talk for a few more minutes.

Chairman HENNINGS. We welcome you, Mr. McGraw, and we will be glad to hear from you—in accordance with the suggestion made.

You are a producer of radio and television documentaries, I believe, Mr. McGraw.

STATEMENT OF WALTER McGRAW, PRODUCER OF RADIO AND TELEVISION DOCUMENTARIES

Mr. McGRAW. That is right, sir.

Chairman HENNINGS. And you specialize in subjects relating to criminology, and your tapes have been heard on NBC radio on the program Night Line, and you deal with actual cases involving real people.

We are very glad to hear from you, sir.

Mr. McGRAW. Thank you, sir.

Dr. KAHN. This chart illustrates, by the way, what Mr. McGraw is going to say.

Chairman HENNINGS. Let this chart be marked "Exhibit No. 7" and made a part of the record.

3-cv-00547-O Document 20-2 Filed 10/06/23 Page 406 of 555 Pa

(The chart referred to was marked "Exhibit No. 7" and follows:)

THE TRAGIC CASE OF
RONALD MARRONE

[illegible]	STEP TAKEN	FINAL ACTION
1943 SET 2 FIRES IN HIS HOME, CUT UP CURTAINS AND DESTROYED FURNITURE	NONE	NONE
1946 [illegible] CLOTHES OFF AND TRIED TO GAG HER WITH TISSUES	TAKEN BY PARENTS TO PRIVATE PSYCHIATRIST FOR ONE VISIT	INADEQUATE MEANS COULD NOT CONTINUE TREATMENT
1950-52 [illegible] AND [illegible] ACTS	NO FORMAL COMPLAINT	NONE
SLASHED MOTHER'S UNDERCLOTHES	NONE	NONE
SEXUAL ASSAULT ON 2 SMALL GIRLS	NO FORMAL COMPLAINT	NONE
RIPPED CLOTHES OFF GIRL-TRIED TO GAG HER WITH TISSUES	BROUGHT BEFORE AUTHORITIES	VOLUNTARILY WENT TO STATE PSYCHIATRIC CENTER AT MENLO PARK - THEY RECOMMENDED TREATMENT AND HE STAYED FOR 30 DAYS AS VOLUNTARY PATIENT - WAS PERMITTED TO LEAVE AND WAS NOT REQUIRED TO RETURN FOR TREATMENT

PREVENTABLE TRAGIC ACT

CRIMINALLY ASSAULTED AND MURDERED A 15 YEAR OLD GIRL

CONCLUSION

COMMITTED TO NEW JERSEY PRISON — FOR LIFE

Chairman HENNINGS. Proceed in your own fashion, please, Mr. McGraw.

Mr. McGRAW. Thank you.

This series of reports was presented on NBC's Night Line program, just to illustrate this same point that Dr. Kahn has been bringing out, this matter of lost opportunities.

Here was a case where you had a boy who had gotten into trouble, where a lot of things had been done for him, but although everybody was working with the best of intentions, he was allowed to run loose as a sick boy until such time as a girl was murdered.

We went over to the actual people who were involved, talked to his schoolteachers, his parents, tried to find out where this opportunity was lost.

To find out about the case, the first one we talked to was the girl's mother. Her name was Ruth Starr Zeitler. She was a very quiet girl. They came from a good neighborhood, a good family. But then, so did the boy.

Here is what the mother had to say.

(Playing of tape.)

Mr. McGRAW. The tape that was heard was Mrs. Zeitler, the girl's mother, detailing that the girl disappeared. For 1 week they did not hear anything from this girl, and then 1 week from the day she disappeared, her body was found.

Three days later, after questioning hundreds——

Chairman HENNINGS. That is illustrated, I take it, by this lower picture.

Mr. McGRAW. The very end; yes.

Chairman HENNINGS. Yes.

Mr. McGRAW. Three days later, Ronnie Marrone confessed to the killing.

We went in to find out what kind of a boy this was. We went to the neighbors involved, and this was fairly typical of the reaction we got. It was from one John Latanzio.

Mr. MITLER. I suggest you go ahead and present the case.

Mr. McGRAW. John Latanzio said roughly that the boy had always been in trouble. He mentioned many of the things that you can see there on the chart. He pointed out that women's panties had been stolen from clotheslines, and that houses had been broken into.

He also mentioned that 2 girls, one 5 and one 8, had both, one time or another, been molested by this boy.

Chairman HENNINGS. And there had been no formal complaint, according to your chart there.

Mr. McGRAW. We asked about that. He didn't come to trial on one case. He went to trial, and the charges were dropped on the other.

Chairman HENNINGS. Why were they dropped, Mr. McGraw? Insufficient evidence, or what?

Mr. McGRAW. Legally, insufficient evidence. According to the neighbors, because the police were not active enough. According to the police——

Chairman HENNINGS. In other words, a case was not properly made or not properly prepared.

Mr. McGRAW. And the police say it was not properly prepared because they didn't have the cooperation from the parents, the parents being unwilling to subject their daughters to such publicity and such a procedure.

Chairman HENNINGS. Yes.

Mr. McGRAW. All right.

This is John Latanzio.

Mr. MITLER. Would you describe who is talking?

Mr. McGRAW. I just did. John Latanzio was a newspaperman and a neighbor that we talked to about this particular case, and the boy's background in the neighborhood.

Mr. MITLER. All right, this is his voice.

20873—58——4

3-cv-00547-O Document 20-2 Filed 10/06/23 Page 408 of 555 Pa

(Playing of tape.)

Mr. McGRAW. The next person we went to was the mother of one of those girls who was molested. Why had nothing been done? Had she been willing to pursue the case?

This is the story she told us.

(Playing of tape.)

Mr. McGRAW. That was the general opinion around that neighborhood. We wondered why, since everybody spoke so highly of the parent and spoke of it as being such a firm family unit, the family had done nothing.

Well, we found the family had tried to do things. At the age of 9, they took the boy to a psychiatrist. The only thing they got out of that particular meeting was that he had an inferiority complex.

At another time the boy was described, as you will hear, as, I believe you pronounce it "schenzophrenic," or something like that.

Chairman HENNINGS. Schizophrenic.

Mr. McGRAW. Yes. I was trying to imitate his mispronunciation. And his only understanding of that word was, "Well, that is sort of a split personality. But then, doesn't everybody have that? Aren't you happy sometimes and sad at other times?" This is about all they got out of the psychological help they had.

We asked Mrs. Marrone——

Chairman HENNINGS. How much help was there, Mr. McGraw?

Mr. McGRAW. There was one visit to a psychiatrist at the age of 9, and then later they went to the Menlo Park Diagnostic Center.

Chairman HENNINGS. Yes, I see that on the chart.

Mr. McGRAW. The mother's opinion of her boy was as follows:

(Playing of tape.)

Mr. McGRAW. The mother couldn't really see anything wrong with this boy, who was much too good.

I asked the father if he thought there was anything he could have done to keep the boy out of the present situation, and this is his answer:

(Playing of tape.)

Mr. McGRAW. It was at that time, then, that he went to Menlo Park. And at Menlo Park there are two stories. Menlo Park said that they made specific recommendations that they wanted him back, and they also made another specific recommendation, but that was not followed through.

The father and mother did not understand it. Why, I don't know. Here is their answer to that situation:

(Playing of tape.)

Dr. KAHN. Could we just say Menlo Park is the Jersey diagnostic center, and it has a procedure where people can go voluntarily, as well as court commitment, and in this instance the child went voluntarily.

(Playing of tape.)

Mr. McGRAW. I asked Commissioner Tramberg of the New Jersey Department of Institutions and Agencies if this was a usual recommendation, and he said yes, it was quite usual that parents be recommended for help as well as the children who got into trouble.

As for the boy, he was there on a voluntary basis. He was not committed by any court. The Menlo Park Diagnostic Center could not hold him.

The boy himself, according to his parents, said he had not confessed to killing this girl. He had made a statement telling how he had done it, but he had not confessed. He expected to go to trial. He expected to be found guilty. And then he expected to come home again. And he had asked his mother if she would have some strawberries in the freezer for him.

And this is the boy that was let run loose for so long.

Chairman HENNINGS. May I ask you this question, Mr. McGraw: Was insanity interposed as a defense in this case at his trial?

Mr. McGRAW. There was no defense.

Chairman HENNINGS. He entered a plea of guilty?

Mr. McGRAW. Of no defense.

Chairman HENNINGS. Of nolo contendere?

Mr. McGRAW. Yes. And he was sentenced to life imprisonment.

Chairman HENNINGS. Did he have counsel?

Mr. McGRAW. He did.

Chairman HENNINGS. Dr. Kahn?

Representative ANFUSO. Senator, before Mr. McGraw leaves, I wonder whether I may ask a question.

Chairman HENNINGS. Indeed; yes, sir.

Representative ANFUSO. I asked my colleagues on this floor, around this table, before I asked this question, whether it is a fair question, because I may be a little bit prejudiced. I am sure it was not intentional, and I do not think it was done with an ulterior motive, but why was the name, the actual name, of Ronald Marrone used? Why could not "John Doe" have been used to make the illustration?

I want you to know that I am very sincere about this, because I do not like any wrong impressions to be created. The newpapers will carry that name throughout the country. I would resent it just as much as if a Negro name——

Chairman HENNINGS. I would like to say, Mr. Anfuso, that I knew nothing about the chart, and Senator Kefauver did not, but I would like to have some explanation of it, as to the use of the name. I assume it was given wide publicity at the time.

Mr. MITLER. Senator Hennings, if I may explain, this case was a rather recent case, and was carried on the front pages of the newspapers in a good part of America. The pictures here are pictures that were used in newspapers, and the case, as I said, was publicized on the first pages of all the New York papers, all the New Jersey papers, and most of the papers of the east coast, and the trial and every stage of the case was covered completely.

Chairman HENNINGS. It has been the policy of this committee, I might say, Congressman Anfuso, never to use any of the children themselves as witnesses or to use any names of so-called delinquents or children in trouble.

Representative ANFUSO. I would say this——

Chairman HENNINGS. But apparently this is a notorious case, and I would like to have your observations on it.

Representative ANFUSO. Senator, I thank you for your explanation, but I insist on my point. That case is over. There will be other cases and many more involving boys of all nationalities. I say

3-cv-00547-O Document 20-2 Filed 10/06/23 Page 410 of 555 Pa

that in making illustrations in conducting the lectures, and in colleges, or in presenting illustrations before any committee of Congress or in making illustrations, I think that fictitious names should be used.

I would make the same statement if a Negro boy had been used as an illustration, or a Jewish boy, or an Irish boy. As I said before I asked that question, I wanted to know from my own colleagues whether I was making a prejudicial statement which might indicate that I had prejudicial interest in the matter.

Chairman HENNINGS. Well, as I say, Senator Kefauver and I saw this for the first time today, and I would like to have counsel answer the Congressman, if he cares to do so.

Mr. SULLIVAN. Congressman, may I comment to this extent: The subcommittee has never, since I have been chief counsel and since Senator Hennings has been chairman, and Senator Kefauver as well, used the names of individuals in any manner in which they may be affected adversely in the public eye.

However, in this particular case, I think the——

Chairman HENNINGS. Unless it is a matter of court record.

Mr. SULLIVAN. I think the presentation was by Mr. McGraw, and Mr. McGraw is as entitled as anyone else to present whatever he chooses before this subcommittee, and I think his choice of the particular case is most impressive, and I feel that there is no serious adverse effect upon the Marrone family or Mr. Marrone, inasmuch as it was widely publicized at the time.

Mr. MITLER. I wanted to add that these tapes were played over a national hookup over NBC on Night Line for the month of August, am I correct, Mr. McGraw, and they were nationally played with the name mentioned?

Mr. MCGRAW. Yes, as part of the newspaper coverage of a case and trial which was then in progress, and which has since been concluded. This is a closed case.

Mr. SULLIVAN. I think also it is entirely evident from the presentation on the chart that it is done in a constructive manner, and not a destructive manner.

I mean there is no intent to destroy anybody's character or affect adversely anyone's character. I think the chart will bring that out, as will Dr. Kahn when he testifies with respect to the particular incidents or when he testifies with respect to his views on what was done in this particular case.

Chairman HENNINGS. Well, the Congressman has made his point. He certainly is entitled to his point of view, and it is a respectable point of view, I am sure.

But I do want to assure him that the committee has no intention to degrade nor humiliate nor to further emphasize the tragic circumstances such as this.

Now may we proceed, Dr. Kahn?

STATEMENT OF DR. ALFRED J. KAHN—Resumed

Dr. KAHN. In just about 2 or 3 minutes, I would like to wind up my comments, if I may.

First, as somebody who works in this field, I want to say that I appreciate the Congressman's emphasis on anonymity of delinquents,

an emphasis which has been the emphasis of this committee and all professionals working in this field.

Chairman HENNINGS. We never use the name of a child, except a court record.

Dr. KAHN. That is right. And the press has traditionally not used the name of delinquents, either, except in instances of capital offenses where the case usually goes to another court.

I wanted to say that it seems to me that this, of course, is an extreme case, the incidents are extreme, but the training schools, the probation caseloads, the adult prisons, the reformatories, are full of cases of young people who represent community lost opportunities; young people who are not picked up at the screening phase, or are not studied adequately at the study phase, or are not referred to services because there are not enough services, or are not followed through at the point of referral.

And this, it seems to me, is the point which must be emphasized in today's testimony: The opportunities are there. We can find the kids. The problem is one of doing something sound.

By way of winding up, I just want to indicate, as well, that we obviously need a very elaborate gamut of diversified treatment services and resources to deal with the wide range of causative factors.

There are kids who need training schools. There are others who need guidance clinics. There are some who need vocational agencies, some who need church services, some who need group programs, any number of other things, of which these are only a few illustrations.

And I know that from your other reports and from the work your staff has done, that your committee will give particular attention to two or three needs which have had emphasis around the country recently, particularly the need for residences, residential treatment centers for adolescents, homes for young people who have to leave institutions but do not have families to go back to, as well as the kind of need described by the Governor and Mr. McCloskey, ways of providing satisfactory opportunity not only for recreation but for learning trades and jobs for young people who are at loose ends, and who are wandering about our cities, who do not have adequate incentives really to prepare themselves for adequate adulthood.

Chairman HENNINGS. Well, is not part of it, Dr. Kahn, that every kid wants to feel wanted and useful, wants to feel that he amounts to something; that somebody, too, cares for him.

Dr. KAHN. He wants to feel he has a chance some way to attain success in our society, and this is the sort of thing we have to help.

In winding up, I just want to say that although this structure looks at one case, obviously this structure will not exist unless we have agencies for coordination, for planning, for research, for evaluation throughout the country, in various cities, agencies appropriate to the kind of community.

The youth board is one approach. Other approaches can be used elsewhere. But somebody has to look at the whole system, or there are gaps and there is not case accountability.

And, finally, somebody has to see from time to time what works and what doesn't work, and we have to honestly say where we are failing and where new things had better be tried, because this is not a matter of ceremony; it is a matter of the lives and deaths of kids.

And unless we really make sure that it is not only a neat system with a pretty chart, but a system that works, we are not doing our job.

Thank you, gentlemen.

Chairman HENNINGS. We thank Mr. McGraw on behalf of the committee, and we thank you, Dr. Kahn, for your illuminating and most helpful testimony here today.

You have gone to a great deal of trouble to be here, and to prepare your statement and your evidence, and we feel sure that it will be of great help to us.

Dr. KAHN. Thank you.

Mr. SULLIVAN. May I add, Dr. Kahn, if you have any additional statement you would like to submit for the record, we would be glad to receive it.

Dr. KAHN. I shall.

Chairman HENNINGS. At this time, the hour of noon being well past, and we are running behind, the committee will rise, and reconvene at 2 o'clock.

(Whereupon, at 12:40 p. m., the subcommittee recessed, to reconvene at 2 p. m., of the same day.)

AFTERNOON SESSION

Chairman HENNINGS. The committee will please come to order.

Our next witness, Mr. Counsel?

Mr. SULLIVAN. The next witness we have, Senator, is Professor Frank J. Cohen, if he would be good enough to come forward.

Chairman HENNINGS. Professor Cohen.

Mr. SULLIVAN. I think in his presentation, Sherwood Norman will join him at the table, and John W. Poe.

Chairman HENNINGS. Gentlemen, we welcome you here. On behalf of the committee, on behalf of the Senate, I express our appreciation at this time for your taking the time and trouble to come here and enlighten us and guide us and give us the benefit of your views.

You may proceed in any manner that you please.

Mr. SULLIVAN. I would like, before you start, gentlemen, to also ask Mr. Arthur W. Popper to come forward and join the group. Mr. Popper.

Chairman HENNINGS. We are glad to see you here today, sir.

Mr. POPPER. Thank you.

Chairman HENNINGS. I am sorry we were a little late in starting the hearing this afternoon. We had lunch with Governor Harriman, and the snow storm delayed us, and we just got back a few minutes ago.

STATEMENT OF FRANK J. COHEN, DIRECTOR OF STUDENT SERVICES, GRADUATE SCHOOL OF PUBLIC ADMINISTRATION AND SOCIAL SERVICE, NEW YORK UNIVERSITY

Chairman HENNINGS. You may proceed in any fashion that you please.

Mr. COHEN. I am going to confine my remarks to the growth of Youth House in New York City.

Chairman HENNINGS. I think if each of you gentlemen would state for the record your respective positions, it would be helpful to us in the hearings when they are printed.

Mr. COHEN. Thank you.

Speaking of the Youth House and serving as a consultant to the Youth House, having formerly been its executive director and currently associated with New York University, teaching the principles of institutional administration, I thought it might be of interest to the committee in terms of how our detention program was developed in New York City since 1944.

We feel that the changes have improved the situation with respect to the detention of youngsters primarily because we have made the detention experience a step in the rehabilitative process in contrast to merely using it as a custodial period while the child is awaiting final disposition of his case.

Secondly, we introduced the use of a trained staff to treat with the problems of children rather than the traditional methods of punishment for nonconformity.

Thirdly, we brought into the picture a full educational program through the local board of education, so that we continue the educational activities of the child while in detention. In fact, a good deal of remedial work is going on in that detention period.

Chairman HENNINGS. That, Professor Cohen, is most unusual, because in many of the places we visited and many of the detention homes in which I happened to have been, they do nothing but custodial work.

Mr. COHEN. That is right.

Chairman HENNINGS. Yes. It is very interesting.

Mr. COHEN. That is the reason I am pointing it out, and indicating what a difference it made in the actual operation of the detention setting.

In addition, we have provided an organized leisure-time program for the profitable occupation of the free time of the child, so this is again one further step of removing the child from idleness.

Through this experience and through this approach, we have been able to reach the children in detention. The response has been phenomenal.

I might indicate that in its introduction, it was a very devastating experience. These youngsters brought all of their hostilities and all of their destructiveness into the detention home.

However, it soon became known to them, and it has followed throughout the years, that our interest was directed toward assisting and helping them, so that controls were established through understanding rather than through punishing methods of control.

I was rather interested in two points you made this morning.

One about the labeling of youngsters. We take it for granted that these youngsters who commit delinquent acts are serious monsters or they are so calloused that they are indifferent to the social attitudes with respect to them.

In many meetings I have had with these youngsters, this question of having a record, this question of having been labeled, is one that plays a very important part in the lives of these youngsters, as they expressed the feeling that "As long as I have this record, it doesn't really make much difference what I do; this record will always be in front of me."

It is a thought I had that this committee might want to come to grips with—the use of the term of "children in trouble," rather than

3-cv-00547-O Document 20-2 Filed 10/06/23 Page 414 of 555 Pa

the labeling of "delinquents," and it would make probably a very deep impression.

Chairman HENNINGS. I might say, Profesor Cohen, at the outset of this committee's work 5 years ago I initiated the use of the words "children in trouble" instead of "delinquents," because I have always felt that is a misnomer, and semantically is not accurate.

So we have tried to proceed on that basis.

Mr. COHEN. I think it is a very helpful step.

I think the other point which I think is worth making is that the severity of their behavior is no criterion to their personality structure.

You may have children brought into detention on charges of chronic truancy whose personalities may be seriously warped and who may be a threat to themselves as well as to the community at large.

You may bring in youngsters who are guilty of offenses which are serious in their impact, yet they would have a structure that gives good evidence of the possibilities of reclamation and rehabilitation.

And so we need to direct our efforts more toward the potential possibilities of treatment and rehabilitation, rather than by emphasizing the nature of the offense.

Chairman HENNINGS. Or the punitive approach.

Mr. COHEN. That is correct. I wanted to make one other point that was made this morning with respect to what we call the hard core.

Prior to 1944 we maintained up to 50 youngsters in our city prison, or the Tombs, because they were considered too dangerous to maintain in shelters. I might add that 1 year after the opening of Youth House, and in which we participated and encouraged, there was the establishment of the Young law, which prohibits the placement of any juvenile in a setting that approximates a jail.

Chairman HENNINGS. You mean they put them in the old Tombs?

Mr. COHEN. They used to put them in the old Tombs. They had a section in the old Tombs where as many as 50 of them were held.

Since 1945 Youth House has taken every child and every youngster that has been remanded by the children's courts and has been able to contain them. This only gives evidence, and I think some encouragement, that when we think of the hard core we should not think in terms of youngsters who are really beyond the pale. We may have failed with them in other areas.

But it seems to me that we must intensify our work with them, as evidenced by the experience of Youth House, that it really does not matter today whether they are the type of youngster where previously they were placed in the city prison, because they are very well contained within the Youth House setting.

In addition to these various forces, I feel that a great step has been taken in terms of making the detention experience also a period of observation and study.

All too often we think of detention as merely a custodial setting. The two are really not mutually exclusive. In fact, I feel they are complementary, so that the court has the benefit of the observation and experience of the individual child in detention, and it helps and facilitates the court's direction of the child and planning for that child.

So often, despite the record which seemed so dark regarding a child, the period he spends in detention may throw great light on the

possibilities of rehabilitation and treatment. This the court is using to a great extent.

I want to make one other point in my brief remarks, and that is, Youth House is governed by a group of civic-minded citizens, representing the three religious faiths, appointed by the mayor, and although the funds for the operation are provided for by the city, the detention setting as such is operated as a private agency.

And this is a good example of how, through private citizen work and government work, we can carry through a function at a very high level such as now is being carried out at Youth House, and rather effectively.

Chairman HENNINGS. I like the expression "Youth House," too. We get into this business of the tyranny of words sometimes, and talk about a house of detention, and I have seen some pretty bad places. And once a boy or girl has been in a house of detention, that is another brand, is it not?

Mr. COHEN. This is another, and we are very proud of that, and we are proud that our sister city of Newark, N. J., has now changed its name from the Essex County Parental School to the Essex County Youth House, and we are rather flattered by the experience, because we feel that each and every one of these steps are positive steps and constructive steps in terms of handling the child.

I would like to conclude very emphatically, and that is that Youth House has been able to maintain its operation without the usual brand of punishment or intimidation or threat, and it is great evidence that by coming to grips with the problem of the child in detention, that at that particular critical period much can be gained by giving the individual child the feeling that society is not necessarily critical or punishing, and that it is interested in trying to help him overcome his situation and, as such, I think Mr. Poe, who is going to give you a synopsis of the actual operation, will help to carry through this point.

One other observation I would like to get into the record, and that is a feeling we had when we started our detention setting, and it is true today. We feel that once a child has been committed to an institution, transfer should be effected immediately. As you probably know, not only in New York City but throughout the country, children remain in temporary detention care for prolonged periods awaiting the transfer to the training schools to receive them.

I wish the Governor was here, because I feel in his administration much has happened to expand the State facilities so that there is greater movement.

But we have had sometimes half of the detention homes filled with youngsters who are awaiting, for months, awaiting transfer. Usually the temporary detention——

Chairman HENNINGS. You have dormitories, professor?

Mr. COHEN. We have, for the most part, individual rooms.

Chairman HENNINGS. Good.

Mr. COHEN. And Mr. Poe will explain our new setting, which is going to be entirely of individual rooms.

I want to emphasize that it is a very critical period in the youngster's life when he is committed, and he should be able to come to grips with the institution to which he has been committed as quickly as possible. We do this with adult prisoners in 24 hours, and it seems

3-cv-00547-O Document 20-2 Filed 10/06/23 Page 416 of 555 Pa

to me that with children it is even more essential, because they feel they are coming to grips with it, and also they feel that there is nothing for them to gain by remaining in their setting.

Temporary care cannot provide the long-term care, and I think this should be stressed in terms of time.

This leads me again to the final point, and that is, prior to the opening of Youth House, we had children who remained in temporary care for very many months awaiting adjudication. We feel that this, too, is a very negative and destructive experience for the child, awaiting adjudication.

Following the opening of Youth House, we arranged with the courts that no child should remain in detention for more than 5 weeks pending disposition, and that is now being lived up to to a degree of about 95 percent, and that 5 percent variable is one to be expected because of special situations.

But it also evidences that when there is a focus in that direction, it can be achieved.

Thank you.

Chairman HENNINGS. A very fine statement, Professor Cohen.

I think you are doing more here than any place we have been with respect to the so-called former houses of detention. We used to see signs over buildings called Homes for the Friendless, Homes for the Incurable, and so on, and you can imagine the feeling of anybody going into a place such as that with that over the door, Home for the Friendless, Home for the Incurables, and I think it applies equally well, with equal force, to the so-called houses of detention.

Mr. COHEN. I want to state Mr. Arthur Popper has been the president of the board of directors of the Youth House, and I want to indicate he was the great encouraging force for me to write the original thesis of the Youth House education, and it was through his efforts and those of Mrs. Ethel H. Wise that I wrote this thesis, and it was through their encouragement that we put it into operation.

Mr. SULLIVAN. May I ask—you mentioned that it was financed publicly but operated by private individuals, private citizens.

Mr. COHEN. That is correct.

Mr. SULLIVAN. May I ask, was it at the beginning that type of an institution? In other words, was it inaugurated by the city, or by the citizens first and then financed by the city?

Mr. COHEN. Prior to the opening of Youth House in 1944, detention was carried out by the Society for the Prevention of Cruelty to Children. They operated as a private agency without responsibility to the local authorities.

It was through a discussion with the then Mayor LaGuardia, suggesting this type of setting, and I might indicate that this was only set up for 1 or 2 years as an experimental and demonstration project. It is now completing its 14th year.

Mr. SULLIVAN. Thank you.

Chairman HENNINGS. Thank you very much, Professor Cohen, for your splendid statement and the information you have given us.

Which other of the gentlemen is next?

STATEMENT OF JOHN W. POE, EXECUTIVE DIRECTOR, YOUTH HOUSE, NEW YORK CITY, N. Y.

Mr. POE. My name is John W. Poe. I am the present executive director, and I have the honor to have followed Mr. Cohen as executive director.

Chairman HENNINGS. We are glad to have you here, Mr. Poe.

Mr. POE. I would like to read a statement.

During the current year, ending December 31, 1957, more than 5,000 boys and girls, between the ages of 7 and 16 years, will have spent from 1 day to 5 weeks at Youth House, where they have been sent on charges of juvenile delinquency pending children's court adjudication.

Had space been available, many more children would have been detained.

These 5,000 boys and girls have represented every race, color, and creed. Their offenses have run the gamut from simple truancy to grand larceny, arson and homicide.

Much has been said about the Youth House philosophy of detention care in an institution setting. While we are basically constituted to provide temporary detention care, we have in no manner minimized this objective by the institution of nonpunitive methods of control.

We recognize that many of the boys and girls who come to us approach us with hardened attitudes—but, this is a facade—and is due primarily to their life experiences.

Now, there are two approaches we can use in handling the youngsters who are hardened and defiant:

1. We can meet them at the gang level and fight it out along these lines—with all the explosions that follow; or
2. We can receive them with the basic objective of changing their concepts of adults and authority in which they look upon the adults' attitude as indifferent or punishing. When we have achieved this objective, we have given purpose to making the experience a step in the rehabilitative process.

In our control of boys and groups, it is our feeling that just because a boy comes in with a chip on his shoulder, there is no justification in using violence to bring about conformity. We do try to exercise proper influence to demonstrate that violence does not settle anything.

We have instances in which hostile boys, upon admittance, refuse to be searched. We don't force this issue at the point, but will stand the boy aside. Later, however, through patience, the boy is ultimately brought around to being searched. When this has been achieved, a great step forward has been made toward having the youngster accept, without force, other areas of authority.

It is our feeling that all of these youngsters want to be trusted; want to be liked; want to be useful; and are constantly searching out areas of adequacy. Our program in detention is geared to meet these needs.

Case 4:23-cv-00547-O Document 20-2 Filed 10/06/23 Page 418 of 555 PageID

We know that an individual whose whole life has been disorganized, cannot immediately become an organized person. We recognize that many steps have to be taken to achieve a modicum of conformity when a whole life's pattern has been disorganized.

When we speak of trust, it is difficult to trust when we know there have been serious phases of behavior. And yet, each summer, in spite of some serious deviant behavior problems, from 25 to 40 youngsters have been allowed to go to an outside city playground area each day, accompanied by 5 to 6 recreation workers, and over a period of 5 years, there hasn't been a single boy who has run away.

These boys have gone out of the building since the present facility does not have playground space.

The fact that none of the boys ran away is no accident. It does demonstrate that, in spite of serious behavior problems, we can get them to control their desire to run away, through our being able to get over to them the fact that we do trust them.

Structurally, Youth House is set up departmentally, having administrative, social service, medical, household, custodial, food service, and maintenance divisions. No single division stands by itself, but by the integration of all of our services, which include social service, recreation, and the living situation which are brought together into a central focus around the child, we have thus made our detention facility a child-centered institution. It is within this realm that we have established our rehabilitative process.

The board of education operates a special school within the Youth House setting, known as one of the "600" schools. Although operating as a separate unit, the same basic philosophy of the nonpunitive approach applies. The school and institution over the years have achieved a uniform method of approach in the handling of children in detention. The agency is extremely fortunate in this respect. Members of the school faculty attend and participate in the weekly diagnostic seminar—part of the in-service-training program at Youth House.

Pivotal in the function of the institution is the role played by the professionally trained social worker. It is the social worker who meets the bus from the courts and provides new admissions with an orientation of Youth House in terms of its philosophy, procedures, and program.

Here the new arrival learns what to expect in terms of his own adjustment to a new life experience. But of equal importance to the social worker is the opportunity given to study the reactions of the youngsters that, in some instances, involve diagnostic determination at the point of entry. In some instances, hospitalization is indicated after the boy has been seen by the psychiatrist.

Through these initial meetings with the groups, we may place an older boy with a younger group if he is immature for his chronological age group, or, we may place an overly aggressive youngster with an older group where the situation warrants.

We do not place a youngster on the basis of the offense committed, as this is no criterion of personality structure.

What we try to achieve is a compatible group.

The social worker alerts the entire staff to any significant fact pertaining to a boy upon admission, when such information is obtained.

3-cv-00547-O Document 20-2 Filed 10/06/23 Page 419 of 555 Pa

To aid the social worker in providing the courts with studies of the child under care, those staff members having direct contact with the child send in periodic behavior and adjustment reports, and this information is made available to the court, to assist it in making disposition.

We feel that an adequate in-service-training program is basic to the effective and efficient operation of the institution. On that fact, we have utilized the director of our clinical services to conduct the in-service-training sessions. These in-service-training meetings as well as the weekly diagnostic seminars and meetings held at the department level, keep staff abreast of current techniques. The value of these in-service-training meetings cannot be overemphasized.

We hold that an institution without a well conceived program designed to make constructive use of leisure time, will fail utterly in meeting the basic needs of the child.

The leisure time program of Youth House is designed——

Chairman HENNINGS. Where is Youth House located, may I ask, Mr. Poe?

Mr. POE. It is located at the present time at 331 East 12th Street.

Chairman HENNINGS. East 12th?

Mr. POE. East 12th Street. We do have an annex, housing 50 boys, on Welfare Island.

In speaking of Youth House, I might state that also includes the girls. We have a division in the Bronx in which 102 girls are at the present time detained.

Chairman HENNINGS. Thank you.

Mr. POE. The leisure-time program of Youth House is designed to make the fullest possible use of the child's time, within the limited facilities that we have at our command. Recognizing the inadequacy of our present structure from the point of its physical setup, we have made the widest possible use of our swimming pool, gymnasium, arts and crafts program, and music area to help the child to achieve some satisfactory life experience in terms of his own personal capabilities.

Because we recognize that detention represents a traumatic experience in the life of most children and that their interest span is often short, we have designed the kind of program that will enable every child to participate in a many and varied program each day.

When the new Youth House opens at the beginning of the year, it will provide increased residence capacity, all with individual rooms. In addition, our recreation program will be greatly enlarged, because at that time we will have increased recreational facilities including three large playground areas within the facility.

We have given due consideration to the importance of religious education. Representatives of the three major religious faiths minister to the spiritual needs of each child, according to his own religious beliefs. This program is being enlarged and improved by providing appropriate chapels for each of the three major faiths.

I would like to emphasize that we have a Boys' Council, made up of democratically elected members. This is, by no means, to infer that self-government has been established, but we do have a participating group who meets with me weekly as executive director to discuss their problems. This serves as a safety valve, because we are providing an acceptable process to present a grievance, and not resorting to a previous community pattern of destruction.

The members of this council are elected by their peers and are not to be confused with so-called staff-elected monitors. It is true that in all instances the boys do not make good selections, but often their ability to determine inherent leadership among themselves is remarkable.

Through weekly discussions with the council members, we are able to learn of our weaknesses and our strengths in working with the children. For the child this represents a new experience, but a worthwhile one, for we are giving substance to our expressed interest in the welfare of the children in detention.

It is our feeling that the Youth House philosophy of care, in which the child in trouble is helped to come to grips with his own problems, and from that point to modify his behavior into socially acceptable patterns, is more nearly geared to the child's needs and community's needs rather than in using the institution as a purely custodial or negatively restraining force.

Thank you.

Chairman HENNINGS. Mr. Poe, thank you very much for that statement. It is very enlightening to know that you are doing what you are doing.

I know that in my own city, until rather recently the so-called house of detention was almost adjacent to the city jail, and the children could see the prisoners being held, the adult prisoners being held for trial within a distance of 50 yards, and it was a scandalous thing, and there were no private rooms. There were more or less large dormitories.

And certainly there were no efforts to rehabilitate or to study or to do anything for them except to bring them into juvenile court and make a disposition of the case.

Mr. POE. We try to operate Youth House, Senator, as much as possible as a social agency and not a jail. As a matter of fact, there is no place for uniformed officers of any kind at Youth House.

Chairman HENNINGS. That is wonderful. And, of course, no corporal punishment.

Mr. POE. There is absolutely no corporal punishment, no punishment of any kind, and no deprivation.

Chairman HENNINGS. You have no so-called cells?

Mr. POE. No, sir.

Chairman HENNINGS. Where they are put in solitary, and so on, as they are in some of our penitentiaries?

Mr. POE. As a technique of operation, Senator, when a boy gets into difficulty, he is not handled by the person with whom he has the difficulty; rather, he is referred to a social worker who tries to help him mobilize enough strength within himself to correspond with agency requirements.

So, therefore, there is no threat, because the social worker who has already appeared in the role of giving orientation to this boy has presented herself as his friend; and therefore, when she tries to work out his problems with him, there is a much better chance of bringing conformity than by a punitive approach.

Chairman HENNINGS. Well, by your background, too, Mr. Poe, I see that you have done a great deal of work in this field, and before your coming to Youth House, you were with the Department of Public Assistance in Philadelphia, Riverdale Children's Association,

Riverdale-on-the-Hudson, and in 1953 you came in as the director of Youth House.

I think they are very fortunate, indeed, in having you as director.

Mr. POE. Thank you.

Chairman HENNINGS. Our next witness, I believe, Mr. Sullivan, is Mr. Sherwood Norman.

Mr. Norman is the director of the detention services of the National Probation and Parole Association.

Mr. Norman is a graduate of Antioch College. I have two people in my office who are graduates from Antioch College, so I know a little about Antioch.

You study and then work a year and go out and get a job.

Mr. NORMAN. Yes, sir.

Chairman HENNINGS. Get some practical experience.

Mr. POE. Senator, before Mr. Norman starts, I would like to point out that we have the architect's rendering of the new Youth House for Boys that has just been completed, and it is about to be opened, on January 1, and I was thinking probably the Senators might want to take a look at it.

Chairman HENNINGS. Yes, indeed, we would.

I was just going to ask Senator Kefauver if he had any questions, and ask Mr. Sullivan if he had any further questions before we pass on to Mr. Norman.

Senator KEFAUVER. Before Mr. Norman testifies, I think for the record it would be of interest to know how much the new Youth House is going to cost, Mr. Poe.

Mr. POE. The cost of the building itself?

Senator KEFAUVER. Yes.

Mr. POE. That building cost roughly around $5.5 million, with an additional appropriation of $3 million for furniture and equipment.

Senator KEFAUVER. Is it being financed exclusively by the city of New York?

Mr. POE. By the city of New York; yes, sir.

Senator KEFAUVER. It is certainly a great deal of vision that the city has shown.

How many will this new building house?

Mr. POE. I think Mr. Cohen here, who participated in the original architectural drawings, is in a much better position to discuss the intimate details than I, because I came in on it later.

Mr. COHEN. It is set up to provide for 250 boys in the initial base of residence. In addition to the 250 beds, and these will all be in individual rooms, these are two settings for reception of 30 boys who will be maintained in groups of 15, rather than the larger groups of 25, which represents each separate dormitory setting.

In addition to that, there are three special settings for the more disturbed child. They will be maintained in smaller groups. There will be 2 settings for 5 boys each, and 1 for 10 boys.

So that when you know initially that a boy is going to present a more serious problem, you will be able to make this initial placement in a unit of a smaller group where supervision can be carried out on a more intensive level.

I might indicate in addition to that, it is going to have a full medical setup, providing for infirmary with 15 beds.

This gives you a total of 315 beds in the institution.

3-cv-00547-O Document 20-2 Filed 10/06/23 Page 422 of 555 Pa

Senator KEFAUVER. This is only for boys, as I understand it.

Mr. COHEN. That is correct, and it is going to be adjacent to what is presently the girls' institution.

Senator KEFAUVER. How large a facility is the girls' institution?

Mr. COHEN. The girls have a facility for a total capacity of 102. At the present time, plans are in the making for the extension of that facility to bring it up to approximately 150.

Senator KEFAUVER. What is the annual budget for Youth House, all of their activities?

Mr. COHEN. I am sorry?

Senator KEFAUVER. The annual budget for the operation of Youth House.

Mr. POE. The present budget is around $1,200,000 for the boys; around $535,000 for the girls.

I would just like to point out for the Senator——

Senator KEFAUVER. That is all appropriated by the city of New York?

Mr. COHEN. Yes.

Mr. POE. Yes.

I would like to point out, these are the dormitory areas. This is area A for 100 boys, 25 on each floor, 75 here.

This is a special services wing of the operation in which is housed the three religious chapels, and all of the activity areas of the boys, such as arts and crafts and metalwork and sciences.

This is a gymnasium and swimming pool in this wing. There is space for 75 boys in this wing, a school, a dining room, and the top floor will house the specially disturbed boys, the boys that cannot be detained in your normal areas.

Chairman HENNINGS. Yes.

Mr. POE. And this is the administrative building here. These are the three outside playground areas.

Chairman HENNINGS. How large is the swimming pool?

Mr. POE. It is a regulation swimming pool, 60 by 120 feet.

Senator KEFAUVER. I might say the reason Senator Hennings asked that is that he is quite a swimmer in our Senate Office Building.

Mr. POE. We would like to invite him down.

Chairman HENNINGS. We have a pool in the Senate Office Building 24 feet long.

Mr. COHEN. I think the record should also show that although the municipality is providing the money for the budget, the present arrangement is for the State to share equally for the costs of the temporary detention; and in place of the local contribution, the city now contributes an equal share for the maintenance of New York City children who are held in the training schools.

Senator KEFAUVER. Is this facility large enough, that is, this new facility, to take care of your needs in New York City?

Mr. POE. Present needs; yes, sir.

Senator KEFAUVER. Present needs?

Mr. POE. Yes, sir. We do not know what tomorrow will hold.

Senator KEFAUVER. Thank you, Mr. Chairman.

Chairman HENNINGS. Thank you very much.

Mr. Sullivan, have you any questions?

Mr. SULLIVAN. I have no questions.

Chairman HENNINGS. I would like to say a word about Mr. Sherwood Norman.

Some of us who know something about the National Probation and Parole Association know what magnificent work you gentlemen are doing, Mr. Norman.

Mr. Norman has been with the association since 1945, and as consultant he has helped communities to develop specially designed detention homes of their own.

He has also written widely on the subject, his publications including, Detention for the Juvenile Court, and The Design and Construction of Detention Homes for the Juvenile Court, and New Goals for Juvenile Detention, which are the recognized standards in that field.

He is now completing Standards for the Detention of Children and Youth, which is to be published, I understand, in 1958. Mr. Norman, is that correct?

Mr. NORMAN. Yes, sir.

Chairman HENNINGS. We are very glad to have you here, sir, and we would like to have you proceed in your own manner to testify before this committee.

STATEMENT OF SHERWOOD NORMAN, DETENTION CONSULTANT, NATIONAL PROBATION AND PAROLE ASSOCIATION

Mr. NORMAN. Thank you. I am very happy to do so, Senator Hennings.

I have a statement which was prepared for the Juvenile Delinquency Conference in Washington 2 years ago, but which has not been published, and I think perhaps is pertinent enough for the committee to make use of.

I am not speaking, then, from a prepared paper. I am just talking informally about——

Chairman HENNINGS. Would you like to put your prepared paper in the record, Mr. Norman?

Mr. NORMAN. Indeed I would. I would be very happy to do so.

Chairman HENNINGS. We will be very glad to have it included in the record and made a part of these proceedings.

Mr. NORMAN. I would also like to include a statement by the National Probation and Parole Association approved by its board of trustees, on Senate bill 1455, and similar bills, to control juvenile delinquency. I do not know whether you have that or not, but if you do not, that certainly should be included in the record. I would also like to submit a statement on juvenile detention I have written for the NPPA and an article entitled "Regional Detention Centers" from the NPPA News.

Chairman HENNINGS. Mr. Norman, without objection these will be marked "Exhibits 8, 9, 10, and 11," and will be made a part of the record of these proceedings.

20873—58——5

Case 4:23-cv-00547-O Document 20-2 Filed 10/06/23 Page 424 of 555 PageID

(The documents referred to were marked "Exhibits Nos. 8, 9, 10, and 11" and read as follows:)

EXHIBIT NO. 8

DETENTION OF CHILDREN IN THE UNITED STATES

Paper presented at Juvenile Delinquency Conference, Washington, D. C., June 28, 1954, by Sherwood Norman, Director of Detention Services, National Probation and Parole Association

Jail and substandard detention care for children is a national disgrace. One hundred thousand children from 7 to 17 are held in county jails and police lockups, most of which are substandard for adults. This situation exists in over 2,500 counties in the United States which are too small to justify the construction of a special detention home and in many which have detention homes lacking proper staff and program. Thousands of other children are held in basement cells or behind bars in detention homes which offer nothing more than the cold storage of physical care and custody. The pity of it is that many of these children picked up for minor delinquencies do not require detention at all. As a result, they are thrown in contact with more sophisticated youngsters and pick up their first lessons in crime. If the juvenile courts had adequate probation service, most children would remain in the community under the supervision of a probation officer while awaiting court disposition. Only children who are a danger to themselves or the community or who are almost certain to run away need secure custody.

Still more thousands (over 2,000 in 1 State alone) are removed from unfit homes through no fault of their own and placed in secure custody detention. These dependent and neglected children are often held in detention homes for the convenience of officials or lack of shelter facilities such as emergency foster homes.

SPECIAL BUILDING REQUIRED

Detention is a specialized type of care. Improperly given in a jail or poor detention home it can arouse hostilities in youngsters which will backfire against society. To prevent this, a secure but nonjail-like building is called for. It must be fireproof and specially designed but with varied indoor and outdoor activity within a confined setting. The program must allow for visual control since constant supervision is necessary. A detention home building is a waste of taxpayers' money if improperly designed or built too large or too small. Most of them are improperly designed and built too large or too small.

TOO MANY ARE DETAINED

The fact is that recent NPPA surveys show many communities are detaining far too many children. Police and probation officers are using detention as a convenient substitute for supervising the child in the community. Often the size of a detention home is determined not by careful study of existing practices, but by current trends in the number of detentions. Thus detention homes gradually grow into larger and larger dumping grounds for the unsolved problems of children and youth.

INSUFFICIENT PROBATION SERVICE

National Probation and Parole Association surveys have shown that existing practices and working relationships betwen agencies often need to be revised if the right size detention home is to be constructed. The addition of one probation officer to supervise children in the community costs far less than a 24-hour staff required for these same children in a detention institution. Probation supervision serves the same purpose as bail in the adult court. It stresses responsibility for the child's behavior being assumed by parent and by the child himself, whereas placing the youngster in detention relieves them both of responsibility.

DETENTION—A SPECIALIZED TYPE OF CARE

If the situation is so serious as to require the child's detention, no time should be lost, no expense spared, to begin the process of rehabilitation. The detention home does not need to be large, but it must provide more than physical care

and secure custody. We should be willing to pay for specialized care of socially sick kids, as we are willing to pay for hospital care of physically sick youngsters.

To the child, detention care should provide protection from himself, activities of meaning to him, people who believe in him, and skilled help in defining and understanding his problems. To the court, detention care should provide custody. study, and observation of the more disturbed child. To the community, a good detention home should give protection from further anti-social behavior and constitute an important first step in changing the direction of this behavior. Good detention care should interpret authority to the child through positive rather than negative associations. In order to do this, the nature of the building, the personnel, and the program must show the child that while his antisocial behavior is not approved by society, he himself is wanted and respected, not rejected.

The detention period is a crucial experience for a child. His relationship to adults—to authority—is twisted. The type and training of detention personnel and the type of detention program may reinforce his hostile attitude toward society—or may lead him to the conviction that authority works on behalf of his best interests. If the detention experience does not help the child to reinterpret authority he may strike back at society—gun in hand.

DISTRICT DETENTION HOMES A NATIONAL NEED

How can such detention be given when over 2,500 counties in the United States have from one to a few dozen children a year to detain? Larger counties can afford to have detention homes, the vast majority must depend on the local jail. There are some counties which use the detention facilities of other counties, but such intercounty cooperation is the exception rather than the rule.

County autonomy is a strong factor in American Government. However, when specalized serviices are unavailable or impractical at the county level, the State should assume responsibility for providing them. Detention is clearly one of these services. Counties of under 100,000 population or having less than 50 children a year to detain should be eligible for child detention services according to National Probation and Parole Association standards.

A small, specially designed district detention home, strategically located with regard to highways and population centers, could serve a group of counties. Each county could pay a per diem varying with the county tax rate. Such a plan might well be tried in the form of a pilot project and, if successful, extended to all the smaller counties throughout the State.

OBJECTIONS TO DISTRICT DETENTION UNFOUNDED

Objections to district detention homes have been raised on the grounds that transporting children long distances for temporary care is impractical. However, this is a relative matter, inasmuch as there are police officers who object to taking children a mile or two from their headquarters, while others consider it routine to transport children who need detention care from 50 to 200 miles in geographically large counties. A system of district detention homes in the average State should not require transporting children such distances. Moreover, since most counties are under 50,000 in population, there would be relatively few occasions in which such transportation would be required for detention.

Another objection which has been raised is that the use of a district facility by a number of different county juvenile courts would present jurisdictional problems. If this objection is valid, these jurisdictional problems would have become evident where district detention already exists. Such is not the case. Small counties without detention homes of their own are making use of already established detention facilities in other counties, in such States as New York, Michigan, Virginia, Ohio, and Oregon. A central detention facility is used in New Hampshire, Rhode Island, and Delaware. In States where the statutes positively prohibit placing children under juvenile court age in jail, the use of district detention by the various jurisdictions has not been found impractical.

FEDERAL AND STATE ACTION REQUIRED

The Federal Government and all but half a dozen States have failed to accept any responsibility for jail and substandard detention care for children, which smaller counties can do nothing about. A State agency ought to be given legal responsibility to accomplish the following:

3-cv-00547-O Document 20-2 Filed 10/06/23 Page 426 of 555 Pa

1. Set standards for detention care, provide detention consulting services, State inspection of detention homes with published reports.
2. Provide State subsidies to county detention homes meeting basic recommended standards.
3. Encourage the development of a joint detention home owned by one county, but serving other counties on a per diem basis, by providing a State subsidy for construction.
4. Construct and operate district detention homes for the use of geographically related counties, each too small to justify constructing and maintaining its own building.

We can only expect counties of 100,000 or over to develop approved detention homes and avoid the use of jails until such time as the State establishes approved district detention homes or the Federal Government recognizes that children in our jails is a national disgrace and provides funds to the States to correct it. With a detention home at hand the police soon find it a convenient place to dump children picked up for delinquency. The answer to the problem lies in more active control of detention admissions by the juvenile court and coordinated police and probation practices. Responsibility for detention clearly lies with the juvenile court whose jurisdiction should attach at the time a child is taken into custody, as provided in the National Probation and Parole Association's Standard Juvenile Court Act.

PLANNING FOR DETENTION

Counties planning to build new detention facilities should seek the professional guidance of the National Probation and Parole Association. As a guide to the steps which should be taken in planning detention homes:

1. Enlist the participation of the community social planning council or a citizen committee, the nucleus of which may later serve as an advisory committee. Planning should involve not only agencies immediately concerned, but related agencies. The detention of children is a community problem and should be met with well-advised community action.
2. Clearly distinguish between detention and shelter care. Provide temporary shelter care (for children who do not require secure custody) in subsidized foster family homes, receiving homes, or in larger communities, small temporary care institutions with supporting casework staff.
3. Secure basic statistical data including existing annual capacity, usual occupancy, and length of stay.
4. Evaluate the policies and practices of the police and the juvenile court as they relate to the use of detention in the light of approved National Probation and Parole Association standards and goals.
5. Examine the adequacy of probation services to see if sufficient staff is available to interview children before they are detained, rather than determining the need for detention after they have already been detained by the police.
6. Examine the adequacy of other community services for children to see where lacks in services have failed to check family and child maladjustments which lead to delinquency and the necessity of detention.
7. Examine county population trends and consider these in the light of reduced use of detention resulting from improved practices and added services where needed.

Extreme variation in the use of detention in comparable communities clearly shows that some police departments and juvenile courts use detention either as a convenience, as a panic reaction to the child's offense, or as a punishing device. In other jurisdictions, if a delinquent child needs to be removed from his home but does not require secure custody, emergency foster homes are used. It is not coincidental that where detention is used sparingly, it is usually found that other social services to children are well developed.

NEW CONCEPTS

A 2-year survey of detention and shelter care in California soon to be published points out the importance of providing protective services to children while they are in the community before delinquency and parental neglect require court action. Detention homes are necessary. If properly used, properly designed, and properly staffed, they need not be necessary evils. However, we must stop thinking of delinquency in terms of coddling on the one hand or of retaliation on the other. We must see delinquency as a social sickness calling for direct treatment by strengthening family casework and counseling services

in the community and strengthening probation and detention services available to the courts. To achieve this goal, a long-term job of public education lies ahead.

EXHIBIT No. 9

STATEMENT OF THE NATIONAL PROBATION AND PAROLE ASSOCIATION, NEW YORK, N. Y., ON S. 1455 AND SIMILAR BILLS TO CONTROL JUVENILE DELINQUENCY

The National Probation and Parole Association is a nonprofit, voluntary, national agency which for approximately 35 years has provided consultation to and made studies of community services and programs related to juvenile delinquency. Through the committee on law of its board of trustees, it has reviewed S. 1455 and several other bills to similar effect and offers the following observations on them.

1. The experience of our association is that these bills would, if enacted, serve a useful and important puropse in the nationwide effort to deal with the problem of juvenile delinquency.

2. There are aproximately 3,500 probation officers serving in juvenile courts, most of them without the essential professional training in a school of social work. The need is for no less than 20,000 officers, properly trained. The committees should consider that our criminal courts also have jurisdiction over youthful offenders. The number and training of probation officers in these courts is as far from the need as is the situation with respect to juvenile court officers. It is clear that since these courts deal with the most disturbed young offenders in our communities, the training of probation officers should receive top priority consideration.

3. With respect to research, it is our belief that what is needed is a basic research plan formulated by the Federal Government, and maintained by it. Under this plan and as a part of it, grants should be made available within the States and to the States. Such a comprehensive approach is not authorized in the present bills. Grants made available as under the present bills would have greater value and meaning as part of an overall plan.

Such a program would have a scope which no single State would be likely to undertake either through its own resources or with Federal assistance. In support and as part of an overall comprehensive research plan, the support to the State research programs would have increased significance.

4. We endorse the grants to the States for assistance in planning and for direct services and special projects, in view of the present backwardness and lack of adequate facilities in many communities.

We stress, however, the need for greatest concentration of Federal funds first for training of personnel, and second for research.

5. In the light of the existing need, it is our view that the proposed appropriations should be increased substantially.

6. We endorse the proposal to establish a Federal advisory council on juvenile delinquency. The advice and interest of a sizable, responsible citizen committee can bring to the Department, at little cost, the points of view of many agencies and individuals carrying a considerable part of the work done to stem delinquency. At the same time, comprising individuals and representing agencies of important prestige, the council would be able to assist materially in public interpretation of problems and remedies.

(Supplemental statement submitted by Mr. Sherwood Norman for inclusion in the record.)

EXHIBIT No. 10

STATEMENT ON JUVENILE DETENTION BY SHERWOOD NORMAN, DIRECTOR OF DETENTION SERVICES, NATIONAL PROBATION AND PAROLE ASSOCIATION

WHAT DETENTION IS

Juvenile detention is the temporary care of children and youth in restricting facilities pending disposition by the juvenile court or their return to another jurisdiction or agency.

Detention is for the protection of the child and the community.

It is not for the shelter of dependent and neglected children.

3-cv-00547-O Document 20-2 Filed 10/06/23 Page 428 of 555 Pa

It is not for punishment or retaliation.

It is not for the purpose of rehabilitation, although it should begin the process.

It is not for psychotic children or for those who require longer term clinical study.

It is not for material witnesses who could be held in shelter (unrestricting) facilities.

It is not for the convenience of police or probation officers.

It is not a substitute for probation or other child welfare services.

Juvenile detention is the focal point of delinquency. To it come children with whom parents, teachers, and community agencies have failed. At this point the child's belief in himself is usually shattered or distorted. The detention experience should begin the process of rehabilitation. It can demonstrate to the child a new and constructive concept of authority, or it can contribute to his delinquency by giving him delinquency status and pushing him further from the treatment he needs. It usually does the latter.

DETENTION IN THE UNITED STATES TODAY

I believe the subcommittee knows that the detention of children throughout the United States today is a national disgrace; that over 100,000 children from 7 to 17 are held in police lockups and in county jails, most of which are unfit for Federal prisoners. It makes little difference whether or not they are separated from adult prisoners. Youngsters get an education in crime behind bars.

Children in jail live in a state of enforced idleness. Often they are placed in solitary confinement. When held with other juveniles they are usually without supervision of any kind so that older, sophisticated youngsters physically and sexually abuse younger children and there is no one to hear their cries. Murders and suicides have occurred as a result of this situation, which is the usual situation for the detention of children throughout the country.

The principal reason for this state of affairs is that in our efforts to localize the treatment of delinquents we have given responsibility for juveniles to courts of lower jurisdiction, the county and probate courts instead of courts of general jurisdiction which would permit State or circuit court coverage. Most county courts cannot get the professional probation and detention services needed to cope with seriously disturbed delinquents.

At least 2,500 counties in the United States have too few children who need detention to justify the construction and staffing of the specially designed, fireproof, secure but non-jail-like detention facilities required. As long as small counties must be responsible for providing their own probation and detention services, we are unlikely to see much change in this situation.

A number of counties have attempted to solve the problem by providing makeshift facilities in private homes, hospitals, county institutions, and courthouses. Nearly all these makeshift detention facilities are either firetraps, children's jails or unrealistic "homes" where the mom and pop in charge are able to hold only the "nice" delinquents, while more disturbed and disturbing youngsters, who most need skilled help, are sent to the jail. The fact is that 95 percent of our juvenile jurisdictions still use county jails or operate childrens' jails known as detention homes.

These facilities fail to offer the detention services necessary to counteract the damaging effects of confining delinquents together at a crucial time in their lives.

Until there is a change in juvenile court jurisdiction, or unless the State participates in developing a system of regional or district detention homes, which will be described later, little can be done to correct the situation in counties of under 100,000 population.

For larger counties there is growing evidence of a more constructive approach to the detention of children. Although these counties represent only 5 percent of the juvenile court jurisdictions, they include —— (sic) percent of the population.

WHAT NPPA HAS BEEN DOING ABOUT IT

The National Probation and Parole Association has been actively engaged in improving detention conditions since 1945, when it made a nationwide survey of the best detention homes to be found in order to develop some standards in this field. The publications, Detention for the Juvenile Court and Design and Construction of Detention Homes for the Juvenile Court, have been used widely throughout the country, together with direct field consultation services which

3-cv-00547-O Document 20-2 Filed 10/06/23 Page 429 of 555 Pa

are offered by the association without charge. The detention standards stress the importance of special control over admissions, a specially designed building, and professionally directed staff.

During the past 12 years, NPPA detention services have involved State and local detention surveys, field visits, analysis of detention home plans and other forms of detention consultation. Five significant developments have emerged:

A clearer definition of juvenile detention.
A new type of architecture.
A new concept of program and staff requirements.
Special procedures for controlling admissions.
State responsibility toward regional detention.

A CLEARER DEFINITION OF DETENTION

A clearer definition of detention as distinct from shelter care has become generally accepted. The "all-purpose institution" for dependent and neglected as well as delinquent children, under the misnomer of "detention home," is no longer regarded as sound. To our knowledge, less than half a dozen out of the 100 detention homes constructed during the past 10 years have included facilities for dependent and neglected children. The definition which introduces this statement is standard.

A NEW TYPE OF ARCHITECTURE

A new type of architecture has been tested during the past 10 years in nearly 100 buildings, especially designed and constructed for the detention of children. Each new building has replaced a county jail or makeshift detention facility and has, in some respects, embodied the concepts set forth in the Design and Construction of Detention Homes for the Juvenile Court.

Between 1950 and 1957 California alone has spent over $17 million on detention home construction. The Riverside, Calif., facility won an architectural award. Lane County, Eugene, Oreg., has just erected one of the finest small juvenile court and detention homes in the country. Portland, Seattle, and Denver each have new detention homes, while the Midwest has been notable in erecting a number of small 20-bed facilities for boys and girls which have proved successful in meeting sound standards of detention care. The cost of detention facilities runs up to $25 per square foot, since it is comparable to mental hospital construction. Twenty-bed facilities, such as found in St. Paul and Minneapolis, Des Moines, Kansas City, Kans.; Canton, and Lorain, Ohio; South Bend, and Monroe, La., cost between $200,000 and $350,000 to build.

Family type detention homes for less than 15 children are recommended for an individual county only as a stopgap measure until regional detention homes serving groups of counties can be constructed.

Characteristic of nearly all the new detention homes is their division into group units of less than 16 individual sleeping rooms adjacent to a unit living area, with at least 100 square feet for each child for quiet, project, and active programs. These units are designed with maximum visual control, nonjail-like security features and interview rooms for casework and clinical services. Nearly all of the recently built detention homes have medical and school facilities and a rumpus room or gymnasium separate from the living quarters.

The new detention home in Boston, like New York City Youth House, includes a swimming pool. Philadelphia was the first large city to construct a detention home for small segregated units of less than 16 children within the same building, but with quick access to centralized dining, school, and activity areas and offices for medical, psychiatric, and casework staff easily accessible to the units. Toledo has 4 separate group units with a maximum of 11 children in each.

Detroit has a $4½ million building in the planning stage with small sized units and larger activity areas within the units, in addition to centralized activity areas.

Indianapolis is now constructing a unique $2 million, all air-conditioned, juvenile court and detention home, using the same principles of design but in a unique, compact, single-story structure.

A number of the California juvenile halls have also used sound principles of design except that the population of their group units is large, and a spreadout arrangement of buildings or group units makes staff supervision and professional services to children within the units extremely difficult.

3-cv-00547-O Document 20-2 Filed 10/06/23 Page 430 of 555 Pa

The specially designed, attractive, non-jail-like but secure detention home building is here to stay. Its activity and living areas need to be enlarged and its outdoor play areas need to be better designed and better equipped. However, it has already more than proved its value in providing for better supervision, better program, less tension among the children, and safer working conditions for the staff.

A new concept of program and staff requirements has gone beyond the care and custody function. It is increasingly recognized that children cannot merely be stored for the court. They require more than alert round-the-clock supervision; they require a program with clearly defined objectives. These objectives as promulgated by NPPA are:

1. Physical care and secure custody which fosters growth and minimizes the damaging effects of confinement.
2. Study and observation of the detained child to provide a professional report to the probation department and the court regarding the child's strong points, weaknesses, and needs as observed by the detention staff and interpreted by the detention social worker and the clinical staff serving the detention facility and the court.
3. Satisfying and constructive individual and group activities indoors and out, without which society has little right to take over the function of parents who failed, and without which study of the child in detention is not valid. A varied, well-balanced program of school, quiet and active, and routine and creative activities, without which detention care is likely to be destructive; group discussion adapted to the special needs and capabilities of disturbed children in confinement and preferably under the direction of a social group worker.
4. Individual guidance through social casework which helps the child use the detention experience to better understand himself and come to grips with his problems.

Application of the above standards in terms of staff and program can be best seen in the youth houses of New York City and Newark, N. J. However, other detention homes have made remarkable progress in achieving them.

Public school systems in an increasing number of communities have been accepting their responsibility under the law to provide school programs for detained children, regardless of their stay. Instead of retired or substitute teachers, training in special education is now required in more and more detention home schools. The 12-month program is a reality, and a number of detention home schools have become a special resource for the public school system to develop techniques of handling difficult youngsters.

Good detention schools are reported in New York City, Philadelphia, Detroit, Chicago, Cincinnati, Denver, Los Angeles, and Oakland, Calif. Most of the California juvenile halls have public school programs within them. Special conferences between detention administrators and school principals are held, and there is close cooperation between the detention committee of the State probation and parole association, the State consultant on detention and the State department of education. In general, detention home schools in the caliber of their programs and in their handling of behavior are generally far in advance of the planned activities during the nonschool hours of detained children.

Staff for detention homes is moving away from residential personnel toward the 40-hour workweek. This has added tremendously to the size of detention staffs. (It takes 5 persons to fill 1 position around the clock for 168 hours per week, including vacations, sick leave, national holidays, etc.) It has also added to operational costs. While increase in staff is in line with present-day personnel standards, lack of sufficient increase in salary has tended to lower the quality of personnel and make for considerable turnover. Trained personnel for group counselors directly in charge of children is out of the question for some time, but untrained personnel should be under the close direction of persons with training in social casework and social group work. Except in the very smallest homes this cannot be done by probation officers, nor even by the detention home superintendent responsible.

Most of the better detention homes today employ one or more recreation directors or specialists in such activities as sports, dramatics, music, and arts. Some are secured by volunteers supervised by staff persons. The Essex County Youth House employs two professionally trained social group workers in addition to recreation personnel.

The most significant gain in detention has been the development of treatment services within the detention home and observation and study of the child by trained personnel. This does not mean that the detention home is being used

3-cv-00547-O Document 20-2 Filed 10/06/23 Page 431 of 595 Pa

as a treatment resource or as a study home. It does mean that children under juvenile court age, who are sick enough to require secure custody, are sick enough to receive individual and group treatment by the best trained personnel available. It does mean that day-to-day observation of the detained child is evaluated by a qualified person and made available to the probation officer and the court. A child entering the detention homes of Buffalo, Indianapolis, Toledo, and Detroit, as well as the New York and Newark Youth Houses, is assured of the ear of a trained worker within the institution who is not responsible for the supervision of a group or the administration of the detention home. Before behavior problems become acute they are often avoided by careful planning of program, and the judicious use of casework. When behavior crises occur, the caseworker is present within the institution to work through the problem with the child and help him understand himself with relation to it. As gatherer and interpreter of information from the school, group counselor, chaplain, recreation staff, and even the cook, the social caseworker is in a unique position to evaluate the child's strengths, problems, and potentialities. This information is invaluable to the probation officer with whom the detention caseworker frequently confers. The detention caseworker is concerned with the child's adjustment within the detention home, and as part of the detention staff, works closely with the group supervisor. The caseworker's training also makes it possible to identify a child's need for clinical study on the basis of observation within the detention home. With the social caseworker and the social group worker teamed up with a consulting psychiatrist, the treatment or social-service unit in the detention facility is the best guaranty against delinquency contagion. It is also the best guaranty against indiscriminate and damaging isolation—the modern substitute for corporal punishment. More important of all, social service units in detention homes make possible a degree of inservice training not otherwise achieved.

A growing number of detention homes of all sizes have successfully employed one or more trained social workers on their staff, and either employ their own psychiatrist or use court or community clinical services.

It must be made clear that the casework and clinical services in detention do not justify detaining children for study who do not require secure custody. The detention home cannot be a substitute for the longer term diagnostic and treatment center.

SPECIAL PROCEDURES FOR CONTROLLING ADMISSIONS

Special procedures for controlling admissions are developing—but too slowly. New buildings tend to stimulate the overuse of detention so that many children are detained who might better have been left in the custody of their parents.

Advances in the detention care of children bid fair to be wiped out if juvenile courts fail to take the initiative in controlling detention admissions. Police detentions of 2 to 5 days or longer, in which children are held by law-enforcement officers without authorization by the juvenile court, result in many children being detained unnecessarily. Not only is unnecessary detention damaging to the child in giving him delinquency status and further reason to fight the world, but it fills the detention home with a constant turnover of many as yet unsophisticated boys and girls. When this occurs, the program cannot be geared to the more disturbed youngsters who require secure custody pending court disposition.

Studies of detention practices show that in some parts of the country the number of children detained, including those being held only overnight, is less than 5 percent of the total referred to the court for delinquency; in other sections, with comparable police-to-court referral practice, more children are detained and released than are referred to the court for delinquency. Local custom rather than thoughtful policy appears to be the reason for the difference.

NPPA field studies have shown that where the rate of detaining is high, special probation staff, special procedures, and cooperative efforts on the part of court and law-enforcement agencies can bring the rate down. Fears that some children will not be detained who ought to be have usually proved unfounded, especially when effective casework with the undetained youngster is applied. The experience of communities that have low rates of detention shows that nondetained children, like adult offenders out on bail, rarely run away or commit other offenses pending court disposition.

The development of well-staffed intake units within the probation departments of juvenile courts is a recent trend which holds promise for more effective control over detention admissions. Some of these units have personnel on duty or on call after court hours to interview child and parents and determine whether

Case 4:23-cv-00547-O Document 20-2 Filed 10/06/23 Page 432 of 555 PageID

the child should be held in detention or released in the custody of his parents pending court hearing. Where court intake units have worked closely with law-enforcement agencies, a better mutual understanding of police problems and juvenile court practice has resulted.

DEVELOPMENTS ON THE STATE LEVEL

The large number of counties unable to provide detention services because of the small size of their jurisdictions clearly places a responsibility upon the State. So far only one State, Connecticut, has accepted this responsibiilty with respect to its juvenile court, probation, and detention services. Through its State juvenile court, well-controlled intake to regional detention facilities is provided regardless of the size of the community in which a child is apprehended. Thus, for 15 years the Connecticut State Juvenile Court has never found it necessary to place a child in jail. There is much to be done in this area, for America's lockup complex is tending to make delinquent youngsters indifferent to police arrest and routine detention.

STATE RESPONSIBILITY AND REGIONAL DETENTION

State responsibility for developing better standards and bringing about regional detention is gaining ground. California has had a State consultant on detention since 1945; Virginia since 1950; and New York has acquired one just this year. Three States, New York, Michigan, and Virginia, reimburse counties for detention care but provide no clearly defined standards of detention for them to meet. Only Ohio has developed satisfactory State standards for detention. California is now in the process of developing them.

Regional detention has always existed whenever one county makes its detention home available to others on a courtesy or per diem basis. However, this is no satisfactory method of providing detention service to small counties. Judges change, detention facilities become filled, and the small county has no appeal if the quality of detention care is poor.

In over 50 years of juvenile courts, 2 or more counties have never yet combined to construct their own detention home, even though permissive legislation in several States has encouraged it. This method of obtaining regional detention appears to be unsatisfactory.

Connecticut, Massachusetts, and Delaware have State-operated detention homes, while Maryland is in the process of constructing one. The Connecticut State Juvenile Court operates its own regional detention homes and is the only State which can boast that it has never had a child in jail during the past 15 years. The Massachusetts Youth Service Board, a State agency, has been given responsibility by the legislature to construct and operate regional detention homes for the use of local juvenile courts. Gradually, jail detention is disappearing in Massachusetts and clinical services are being provided for children detained in regional detention homes so that study may take place before, rather than after, court disposition.

Regional detention raises some questions. Will it hamper police investigation or the scheduling of court hearings? Will the transportation of the few children who need to be detained be too expensive? These problems have been worked out satisfactorily through arrangements with local and State police cooperating with the juvenile court and the State agency. The State's money is better spent on a few gallons of gasoline and sufficient manpower to diagnose and treat youth in trouble than on jail-like detention which cages them as though they were adult criminals.

NEW STANDARDS

The National Probation and Parole Association's 12 years of experience in detention consultation and study throughout the Nation has been brought to bear in Standards for the Detention of Children and Youth, to be published in 1958. These standards cover admission control, detention care, planning and building detention facilities, and regional detention. They are intended to serve not as a rigid blueprint, but as a guide to communities to help them avoid pitfalls and to plan with the experience of other communities behind them.

The National Probation and Parole Association has worked closely with the United States Children's Bureau and other national agencies in developing the detention standards. They have been subjected to critical review by leading detention home administrators throughout the country, juvenile court judges, and outstanding professional people in closely related fields.

3-cv-00547-O Document 20-2 Filed 10/06/23 Page 433 of 555 Pa

DETENTION AND COMMUNITY PLANNING

Nowhere does a community's detention picture come into focus as sharply as when children are detained for the court. Behind the type of care, behind the rate of detaining, and behind the length of stay, lie the adequacy, inadequacy, or complete lack of related community services for troubled children. To plan for a detention home without examining the police, casework, clinical, and child-care resources of the community and the State, is shortsighted planning indeed, for there is usually a direct relationship between them and the detention of children.

If citizens have a stake in their delinquency problem, they have a stake in planning services required to meet it. Experience of the past 50 years has shown how unlikely it is to expect any substantial progress without citizen action. We cannot rely on judges or other public officials to do the job alone. Well-informed citizen groups with professional staff for guidance and working closely with the agencies concerned can go far beyond seeing that a good detention home is available. They can make sure that overemphasis on detention is avoided; that the court's probation staff is well-enough staffed to control intake through cooperation with law-enforcement agencies and after-court-hours service where needed. They can make sure that the detention program has specific objectives in its care of children and that a sufficient staff of well-qualified personnel is employed. Above all, a citizens group can rally support for greater State responsibility in setting standards, providing consultation to local communities, and building and operating regional detention homes where satisfactory facilities are lacking. There is nothing which teamwork between well-informed citizens and professionals cannot accomplish but we need to set our sights high. This is the hope of the future.

FEDERAL AND STATE HELP NEEDED

Experience with 50 years of juvenile courts has shown that we are unlikely to expect substantial progress without informed citizen action. We cannot rely on judges or other public officials to do the job alone. However, citizens are going to need help from the States and from the Federal Government if the blight of jail and cold-storage detention for our troubled and troubling children is to be wiped out. Therefore, any action by the Government of the United States to provide matching funds to States or any other constructive assistance on this problem is respectfully suggested.

(The following article was submitted by Mr. Sherwood Norman for inclusion in the record.)

EXHIBIT No. 11

[From the NPPA News, January 1957, vol. 36, No. 1]

REGIONAL DETENTION CENTERS

(By Sherwood Norman)

(This is the third article of a series on detention prepared by Sherwood Norman, NPPA Director of Detention Services. The next article, Who Should Be Detained?, will appear in the March issue.—Ed.)

The incarceration of children and youth awaiting court hearings in the United States is a national disgrace.

Nobody knows exactly how many youngsters are confined in jail-like places of detention, but the 1950 census counted 6,681 boys and girls of 18 and under in jail on a single day. Well over 100,000 children awaiting juvenile court hearings are annually incarcerated in jails and police lockups for lack of proper detention facilities.

NO MORE MAKESHIFTS

The answer to the problem does not lie in creating more makeshift children's jails—like those often found in private homes, courthouses, homes for the aged, mental hospitals, and even in homes for dependent and neglected children, many of them firetraps—and calling them detention homes. We already have too many detention rooms, secured with a steel door (which has an opening through which to shove food) and bars or heavy screens over the windows.

3-cv-00547-O Document 20-2 Filed 10/06/23 Page 434 of 555 Pa

Such jail-like detention makes the hostile youngster more hostile and the withdrawn more withdrawn, and pushes the treatable child further from the reach of treatment. Yet it is no solution to build modern detention homes unless these homes have staff for program, for guidance, and for short-term clinical study.

STUDY AND TREATMENT PROGRAM

Delinquent children need secure custody. They require not leniency, which causes them to thumb their noses at society; not destructive punishment, which gives them cause for even greater resentment and hostility when they return to the community; not custodial care, which merely holds them in purgatory. They need an immediate treatment program.

This calls for a special building, secure but not jail-like, with sufficient space to invite activity, not to encourage idleness. It calls for professional staff to provide schooling, recreation, clinical services, and guidance. Groups should be kept small, with the children separated by age and problem as far as possible. A report to the court, throwing light on the offender's strengths and potentialities as well as his problems, is important. Few juvenile courts have such detention service.

THE SMALL COUNTY'S PROBLEM

It is not hard to see why. Our country is made up of over 2,500 small county jurisdictions which detain too few children to justify constructing a specially designed fireproof building, let alone employing the staff required for good detention care and clinical study. Many sizable communities have no trained caseworkers, psychologists, or psychiatrists; smaller communities have even more difficulty providing such professional services.

Various "solutions" to this problem of the small county which cannot afford its own detention service have been proposed.

1. Use of the detention homes of larger counties by the smaller counties, on a per diem basis. This type of cooperative regional detention works satisfactorily where a good detention home is conveniently located, willing to share its facilities, and not forced to cut off such courtesy use by overcrowding or a whim of the county administration.
2. Construction and operation of a joint facility by two or more counties. This has never yet been achieved, because intercounty cooperation is so difficult to get. It cannot be relied on to solve most counties' difficulties.
3. State construction and State operation of strategically located regional detention homes—the only practical solution.

STATE OPERATED REGIONAL DETENTION

This plan, in operation in Connecticut for 15 years, has eliminated the use of jails for children. But Connecticut has a State juvenile court, which can bring equally good judicial and probation services to every community, however small. Is regional detention practical for county juvenile courts?

Vermont, New Hampshire, Rhode Island, and Maryland have allowed their training schools (for delinquents) to be used for children awaiting court hearings. This is most unsatisfactory, but it has proved that a central detention center can serve separate county courts.

Massachusetts is the first State to construct and operate a regional detention home for children awaiting disposition in local courts. Delaware has almost completed a State-constructed detention home; Maryland has one in the planning stage. The objective in each case is uniformly good detention and diagnostic service throughout the State.

Regional detention raises some questions: Will it hamper police investigations or the scheduling of court hearings? How expensive will be the transportation of the few children who need to be detained? These problems have been worked out satisfactorily. The State's money is better spent on a few gallons of gasoline and sufficient manpower to diagnose and treat youth in trouble than on jail-like detention which cages them as though they were confirmed criminals.

Throughout the country busy county judges with juvenile court jurisdiction are forced to sanction the use of jails and jail-like detention for lack of proper regional facilities. Public support from organized groups is needed to assist these judges to spotlight the damaging effects of improper detention.

The State, too, must be jolted into taking responsibility. Special consultants on detention should be employed; statewide standards need to be set up, and no subsidies should be granted to counties unless those standards are met. (At

present some States subsidize county detention but do not enforce any standards.)

Only State-operated regional study-detention homes can practically replace improper detention in counties too small to build and operate their own facility. Only informed citizen action is likely to bring this about.

Mr. NORMAN. Any bill in which the Federal Government can help the States to tackle this problem of delinquency is one that we certainly would support.

Now, I was delighted to hear Mr. Cohen's presentation and Mr. Poe's, because I feel in some way Mr. Cohen, through his courage, and I would also say the courage of Mr. Popper and the Board of Youth House, we have been able throughout the country to tell people that some of the theories which we very strongly believe in are actually being practiced, and this is a tremendous help in our work.

Chairman HENNINGS. Not only are they being practiced, but that they work.

Mr. NORMAN. That they work, yes indeed, and more and more communities are developing both buildings and staff and program which are in line with some of the things that are being done at Youth House.

But the problem is tremendous throughout the country, as I know you gentlemen know only too well. The picture is one of 100,000, at least 100,000, boys and girls under the age of the usual juvenile court. New York State has its jurisdiction only up to 16. The other States, about three-fourths of them have their jurisdiction up to 18, and possibly Senator Kefauver's question as to whether this would be large enough was thinking of the States where the jurisdiction goes higher.

Chairman HENNINGS. Yes. In my own State it is 17.

Mr. NORMAN. Yes. It varies a little bit, and sometimes——

Chairman HENNINGS. What is it in Tennessee?

Senator KEFAUVER. Eighteen, I believe.

Mr. NORMAN. Yes. And sometimes it is boys up to 17 and girls to 18, protecting the girls a little longer, and so on.

However, this situation is not just a matter of building more detention homes. It is not as simple as that. Frankly, I do not believe it can be helped very much until the States begin to take some real responsibility for what I think is a national disgrace, to have this many children behind the bars of jails such as pictured here.

Chairman HENNINGS. These are pictures of cells, obviously.

(The photos referred to are on file with the subcommittee.)

Mr. NORMAN. Well, this, if you can imagine youngsters behind the bars of jail cells like this, and some that you really cannot imagine, this is the typical situation in, I would say, 2,500 jurisdictions throughout the country.

Now, I put this high, at what seems to be high. Actually, it is a very conservative figure, because most counties, may I say, are really too small to build their own specially designed facilities.

Senator KEFAUVER. You said 2,500. I think there are only 3,300 counties all over the United States.

Mr. NORMAN. That is correct. But I think you will find that there are 2,500 below the population of about 100,000, and except in exceptional counties, counties below 100,000 population have too few children to justify putting up a specially designed fireproof building, which is required for this purpose.

3-cv-00547-O Document 20-2 Filed 10/06/23 Page 436 of 555 Pa

Therefore, we have a situation throughout the country as a whole which has developed because, I frankly believe, no one has pointed it out.

The judges, reluctant in some cases to put children behind bars of a jail, are in effect forced to do so when there is no other facility. And, as you may know, several States have State laws that actually forbid—Virginia, for example, which happens to come to mind—placing any child under the age of 14 in jail.

And yet when a youngster of 13 or 12 is a menace to himself and to society, a judge is sometimes forced to place a child behind bars, breaking the State law, which the child has himself broken.

Senator KEFAUVER. On that point, Mr. Chairman, may I ask a question?

Mr. NORMAN. Yes.

Senator KEFAUVER. We found an alarming situation some time back that in most of the jurisdictions, they still either place children, youth, in jails with regular criminals, or, if they do have separate places, they are no different from what you see here, that is, the same kind of facility that you put hardened criminals in.

Has that situation improved substantially within the last few years? Can you tell us what percentage of youthful offenders are put in prisons with hardened criminals?

Mr. NORMAN. No, because there are several questions involved here, one a matter of statistics. We do not even know—we talk so much about delinquency, but we haven't yet, as I know you know, developed the statewide statistics which will tell us exactly what the picture is.

Very few States have developed those.

Chairman HENNINGS. Do you not think, Mr. Norman—we went into that some years ago—statistics on the subject would be so unreliable because of the variable in age?

Mr. NORMAN. Yes.

Chairman HENNINGS. And because of cases being handled outside of court?

Mr. NORMAN. Yes.

Chairman HENNINGS. Or because of adjustments being made at a police station by the family, or political intervention?

Mr. NORMAN. That is right.

Chairman HENNINGS. I am always wary when looking at any statistics on this subject, really.

Mr. NORMAN. Well, except that we can get statistics of any child under a certain age, with perhaps a few exceptions because the child lied about his age, perhaps, we can get statistics to show at least how many entered the jail and were registered in the jail.

Chairman HENNINGS. Yes, you can show that, certainly.

Mr. NORMAN. There are many we cannot show that were held in police station lockups. That is one of the most difficult things. Therefore, our figure of 100,000 is an estimate, and we feel it is a conservative estimate from what our fieldmen have discovered.

Chairman HENNINGS. Yes.

Mr. NORMAN. Going back to this problem you raised, Senator, not only youngsters who are hardened offenders, but children who have not even committed any offense whatsoever—dependent and neglected

3-cv-00547-O Document 20-2 Filed 10/06/23 Page 437 of 555 Pa
children—are held in jails, and some of them with the hardened adult offenders.

Now, this situation is simply because child welfare services, boarding homes, and so forth, have not been developed, and the jail is the only place of shelter.

Of course, the youngster is not locked up, but being in the corridor of a jail, he is still behind bars.

This is a child welfare problem, we feel. Detention is for youngsters who need secure custody, and I would like to address myself to that. The other is rather a side issue.

Again, I would like to answer one other phase of your question, Senator. Frankly, from what we have seen, we think it is a relatively unimportant matter as to whether a youngster is held with adult offenders or separately. Now, before you raise an exclamation mark, let me explain why.

When youngsters are held separate from adults, they are usually put in the women's division of the jail. As soon as some women come into these small jails, the youngsters are moved out into the adult sections, so that they are almost always at some time going to be held with adults.

The problem of holding youngsters in a separate part of the jail is pretty serious sometimes, because holding them in an entirely separate part of the jail usually means far away from any supervision, even that afforded by other adult prisoners, and you have older, aggressive youngsters of 16 and 17 who have been apprehended for assault, abusing and assaulting younger children, and there is no one to hear their cries.

This is pretty typical. It is not unusual.

I think that what we need to do is to get the children out of jails completely, and I think this is a national concern as well as a State concern, and there are very few States, so far, that have made any move toward solving the problem.

The problem, however, is not as simple as just getting the children out of the jails. If it stopped there, it would be relatively easy. We can always find a house and fix it up, remodel it, and this is what many communities have done, with the result we have jumped from the frying pan into the fire, and we have had youngsters in a firetrap very often, handled by a mom and pop supervisor who lives in the place, who does not have the time, with all the housekeeping duties, to supervise them all the time, and you have this lack of supervision; plus the fact that the more disturbed youngsters who really need the kind of help that is being given at Youth House, and which I am delighted to hear is still carrying on with the program of retaining these youngsters in the program, these youngsters are relegated to the jail.

And we say, "Why not? Why not send off the more hardened offenders to the jail, the hoodlums and the young criminals," they have been called.

Quite frankly, we think, and I am sure Mr. Cohen's observations and others would bear us out, that if there is personnel to work with those youngsters, this is the time to do it, and not after they have become older and really hardened offenders.

We think that to write them off is really a defeatist attitude, and we think that detention homes can be constructed and staffed not only

3-cv-00547-O Document 20-2 Filed 10/06/23 Page 438 of 555 Pa

to retain them but to begin the process of rehabilitation with these youngsters.

May I say that the case against jail detention is stronger today than it ever was before because of our knowledge of dealing with these disturbed children. To put them into the jail merely gives them the delinquency status which they themselves crave at the time.

I think that we have to give these youngsters a different type of status, and we cannot do this in a jail cell.

Now, as far as where we go from the jail and how do we develop something other than these makeshift facilities, I do not know whether I can take the time to tell you personally about 1 or 2 of them. Would you care to hear them?

Chairman HENNINGS. I would like very much to hear them.

Mr. NORMAN. For example, one I recall quite vividly, it was in a Midwestern State, was below the ground level, had small windows not more than 10 inches wide, I would say, long, to just above the ground level, barred. The outside of the building was stone around the basement area, but it was a frame building above that.

It was holding dependent and neglected children. They called it a detention home because the children were held for the court.

Actually, it was a combination of child-welfare shelter and a detention facility.

The delinquents were held below ground, behind a door, a steel door, with an opening through which food was shoved. The matron in charge didn't dare to enter the room when there were older delinquents in it. Children of all ages were held in it.

I would say it was not larger than 12 by 18 feet at the most. It had eight Army cots without springs, but with boards which were fitted where the springs would normally go, and very lumpy mattresses, believe me.

They placed in this dungeon children awaiting juvenile court hearing who were supposed to be protected by the juvenile court; and if any of the dependent children upstairs should misbehave a little or get out of line, they were threatened with being put in the dungeon below, and sometimes as young as 7- or 8-year-old children.

Chairman HENNINGS. As it is called in the penitentiary, the hole.

Mr. NORMAN. Right. You will find, by contrast, very nice homes. There are some not too far from this State where mom and pop have everything just like home, just as you would want to see it, and the windows are secured by detention screens, not jail-like, very pleasant

You sort of wonder, though, how the more seriously disturbed delinquents can manage to keep everything in such apple-pie order. Of course, the answer is, they don't. They are down in the jail. The detention home is reserved for the nice delinquents.

We feel that this has got to be changed. It can only be changed by constructing and staffing the kind of detention homes which measure up to sound national standards which we have been trying to develop.

And I am glad to report there are an increasing number of communities that have developed just such homes. They are not houses of detention.

I was out at St. Paul just last week, where they dedicated a new detention home which I just wish you could see. It is a beauty. It

3-cv-00547-O Document 20-2 Filed 10/06/23 Page 439 of 555 Pa

is comparable to this model over here, which is not of any particular community, but it is an ideal, a model-type detention home.

This St. Paul facility——

Chairman HENNINGS. Is this one being constructed, or simply a projection?

Mr. NORMAN. This is designed simply to show the principles of designing a small detention home.

Chairman HENNINGS. Yes.

Mr. NORMAN. But there are many that have been constructed similar to it; and the one at St. Paul, I would say, would be at least similar to it, equal to it.

The problem, of course, is in staffing them with the kind of personnel capable of responding to leadership with training in the field of social work. And this is an uphill battle; but here, too, we are beginning to develop detention homes throughout the country which are approaching the kind of standards that Frank Cohen and Youth House have developed here.

I think maybe we might even be exceeding it in some respects, for this reason: That we have been very strong on keeping the groups that live in the dormitory—which, by the way, individual rooms is our standard, too—to a maximum of 15 children. There is one being built now in Akron, Ohio, where five girls, as you may remember, murdered a matron several years ago.

We made a survey there, and the bond issue for $1,500,000 was passed, and the building is now being designed. The maximum capacity will be 12.

Chairman HENNINGS. What is the source of your funds, Mr. Norman?

Mr. NORMAN. Our funds are primarily from private sources, individuals who are members of the association and contribute small amounts. We have about 30,000 small contributors.

Chairman HENNINGS. I contribute to a group known as the Missouri Association for Social Welfare which has the same objectives. Do you know anything about that group?

Mr. NORMAN. No; not except as it is a local organization, whereas ours is national.

Chairman HENNINGS. Yes. This is a State organization.

Mr. NORMAN. And social welfare, of course, would cover a great range of activity.

Chairman HENNINGS. They are specially interested in this problem of jails and detention homes.

Mr. NORMAN. I am very glad of it, because in Missouri there is 1 community, I cannot name it right off, but I know I would recognize it if you would name it, which has planned its new facility for 9 other counties to use on a regional basis, and I wanted, before I closed, to bring out this possibility as a solution.

Many people have suggested that several counties could combine and build a facility. This has never come about in 50 years of juvenile court. There are a few counties in northern Virginia that have the money set aside and are trying to find a site to do it.

To my knowledge, this is the only place in the country that has ever done it. California has had a law enabling counties to do it;

KnifeRights MSJ App.000434

Case 4:23-cv-00547-O Document 20-2 Filed 10/06/23 Page 440 of 555 PageID
it has never taken advantage of it. So they have a detention home on one side of the river, and another one on the other, and each county has its own.

The next possible step is this idea of being generous and opening a detention home to the use of surrounding counties. Lynchburg, Va., now is having a survey to determine if this is possible.

However, there is—it has been done in many cases. However, it is not satisfactory, because judges change, the detention home gets filled up, and the situation is something over which the participating counties have no control.

So, we do not think this is any real solution to the problem.

We think the only solution can come through some State participation:

First, by establishing a consultant and standard-setting services on the State level.

At present there are none. California is trying to develop them. They have had a consultant for some time, and I am happy to report that New York State now has a consultant on detention. Unfortunately, the salaries paid are not as high as they should be, but still these people are doing a fine job, and it is a step.

However, setting standards and providing subsidies, as is done in New York and Michigan and Virginia, does not solve the problem. It seems to me we must look to the State to actually construct and operate the regional detention facilities at strategic points throughout the State for the use of those counties too small to build and operate their own.

This is practical in the sense that it is now being done in the State of Massachusetts; Maryland now has a detention home under construction or just about to be under construction; Delaware, I believe you know, has one.

Chairman HENNINGS. Yes, I know.

Mr. NORMAN. And Connecticut has for 15 years kept children out of jails through the use of its regional detention homes.

The State of Utah has a detention home which is not State-operated, but it shows that even 150 miles away, counties are willing to send their youngsters to a satisfactory detention home instead of keeping them in their local jails, and it has worked.

So we think that anything the Federal Government can do to stimulate the development of State initiative in this area in which counties are too small to develop their own detention homes will be a very real contribution.

You may have other questions. I could talk a great deal about some of the standards.

Chairman HENNINGS. I am sure you could, Mr. Norman.

Mr. NORMAN. I know the time is short.

Chairman HENNINGS. We would like to hear from you for several days if those days were available.

The Chair is compelled to make this announcement with relation to the witnesses to follow: that we are running quite far behind, and we appreciate so much that all of you have come here to give us enlightenment and help and guidance. If I may make this suggestion: if the statements are in writing, prepared texts, they can be made a part of the record, and if we could limit—I do not like to set an

3-cv-00547-O Document 20-2 Filed 10/06/23 Page 441 of 555 Pa

arbitrary time limit on witnesses, but we have eight more witnesses scheduled for today, so I would just beseech other witnesses to bear in mind that fact, that we are going to be here 3 days, and we are trying to get as much as we can into the record, and we appreciate all the enlightenment, as I say, that you have given us.

We could talk about this for days and even weeks, indeed, and learn much from all of you. Unfortunately, time does go along.

How far behind are we, Mr. Sullivan?

Mr. SULLIVAN. We are somewhat behind.

Chairman HENNINGS. Gentlemen, thank you very much. I want to say on behalf of the committee—Senator Kefauver, do you have any questions to ask these gentlemen, any further questions?

Senator KEFAUVER. I do not think so. Mr. Popper is here, and might like to say a word.

Mr. POPPER. I just want to express my thanks to you for permitting Mr. Cohen and Mr. Poe to present our philosophy of detention care to you for your consideration.

Chairman HENNINGS. I had understood, Mr. Popper—I did not mean to be rude—I had understood that you were at the table in your capacity——

Mr. POPPER. It is quite all right.

Chairman HENNINGS (continuing). As chairman——

Mr. POPPER. I was not needed.

Chairman HENNINGS (continuing). But you were not to make a statement.

Mr. POPPER. Mr. Cohen and Mr. Poe are well qualified.

Senator KEFAUVER. You are chairman of the board of directors, just backing up your men; is that the idea, Mr. Popper?

Mr. POPPER. Yes, that is right.

Chairman HENNINGS. You are doing a splendid work, gentlemen, and we are most grateful to you for coming and giving us this inspiration and information.

Our next witness, Mr. Counsel?

Mr. SULLIVAN. Would Mr. James R. Dumpson please step forward? Mr. Dumpson was here this morning, and in view of the fact time ran out, we were not able to hear him.

Chairman HENNINGS. I am sorry, Mr. Dumpson.

As you see, these things go along, and people ask questions, and we all become very much interested in what all the witnesses have to say.

Mr. DUMPSON. I understand perfectly.

Chairman HENNINGS. And I am sorry you had to return this afternoon, having been here this morning.

You might tell us something about yourself, Mr. Dumpson, and then make such statement as you can give us.

I know that you have written articles, I know that you have been assigned by the United Nations as adviser and chief of training in social welfare to the Government of Pakistan.

Mr. DUMPSON. That is correct.

Chairman HENNINGS. And that you are now director of the bureau of child welfare, and have been since March 1955.

Mr. DUMPSON. That is right.

Case 4:23-cv-00547-O Document 20-2 Filed 10/06/23 Page 442 of 555 Pa

STATEMENT OF JAMES R. DUMPSON, INCOMING FIRST DEPUTY COMMISSIONER OF WELFARE, NEW YORK CITY

Chairman HENNINGS. We are very glad to hear from you, Mr. Dumpson.

Mr. DUMPSON. Thank you, Mr. Chairman.

I think, Mr. Chairman, the quickest way for me to submit my statement is to read it, which will not take more than 10 minutes.

If I try to do it otherwise——

Chairman HENNINGS. You proceed in your own manner, Mr. Dumpson.

I do not want to set any arbitrary limit on any of the ladies and gentlemen who have been good enough to come here and help us in these hearings.

I just wanted to call your attention to the fact that we do run short of time because we have only 3 days, and many, many witnesses.

Mr. DUMPSON. Thank you.

Chairman HENNINGS. That does not apply to you, sir. I am not singling you out. Counsel just reminded me we were running way behind time. Please proceed, sir.

Mr. DUMPSON. In submitting to this committee this statement on one of the major contributions of the New York City's Department of Welfare in the area of prevention, I believe it is important to summarize our conviction about the propriety of our role in delinquency prevention.

We are committed to the proposition that sound family life and living is one of the most effective resources for preventing juvenile delinquency. It is the family that initially transmits to children the bases for behavior reactions, social attitudes, and ethical values. It is also the family, in the first instance, that is the incubator of the social and emotional stress that eventually lead to behavior which we call delinquent.

In New York City, our youth board has established that 75 percent of our delinquent children come from only 1 percent of all the families in this city. This fact alone dramatizes the importance of turning to the family unit if we are to hope to succeed in preventive efforts.

The New York City Department of Welfare has a considerable degree of responsibility for 137,164 families with over 150,000 children. For 127,000 of these children—almost all of them are under 16 years of age—we provide the financial assistance that assures to them basic creature comforts.

When one thinks of the problems that daily confront these families in double trouble or double jeopardy, one realizes that to the families themselves their difficulties must at times appear to be triple travail or quadruple quandaries even into the third and fourth generations.

We believe that the city's public welfare department has an opportunity, indeed an obligation, to administer services designed to rehabilitate and strengthen socially healthy family living, to prevent family breakdown, and to assure for these 150,000 children protection against social and emotional damage—the kind of damage that most generally precedes antisocial behavior.

This conviction leads us to urge that all levels of government participate in assuring that the public welfare program in New York

City has the variety of resources—adequate counseling staff, adequate assistance grants, and the complementary housing, health, and employment services to translate into effective services our conviction about our broad responsibility to the families we are called upon to serve.

This conviction about the preeminent importance of the family in prevention of social illness, of which juvenile delinquency is but one manifestation, led us to take steps to make more effective the efforts of all public agencies in dealing with the multiproblem families in New York City.

The creation by the mayor of his interdepartmental committee on multiproblem families on recommendation of the commissioner of welfare was the result of several specific attempts by city departments to reverse total breakdown among a group of families in private housing developments and in public housing projects. In one, the initial action was taken by the city department of buildings when complaints were received of tenant destruction, misuse, and failure to use properly the property.

Study of the situation clearly revealed that the tenants, many of whom were receiving public assistance, had problems that not only resulted in misuse of the property, but that threatened the health and welfare of the entire community.

The close working together of the departments of buildings, welfare, health, sanitation, police, education, and the landlord and the local voluntary agencies, was clearly indicated. Leadership responsibility for coordinating rehabilitation activity with this group of troubled and troublesome families was accepted and continues to be carried by a neighborhood settlement house in the area.

In the public housing project, impetus for coordinated activities with the problem families came from a detailed study done by the Citizens' Housing and Planning Council of New York. After an assessment of the special needs of the problem families in this project, all of whom were threatened with eviction as undesirable tenants, major responsibility for coordinating the joint efforts of a number of public and voluntary agencies with the housing manager was assumed by our department. In each instance, important conclusions became apparent for work with the seriously neglectful, deteriorating, disintegrating families, and it is these conclusions which we think have significance for other public welfare departments throughout the country.

1. That in no instance was housing, health, moral standards, or neglected children a single problem. Rather, we found that these families had a multiplicity of serious, interrelated problems, the overt expression of which might be, for example, vandalism, or juvenile delinquency, or alcoholism, or marital problems. In other words, these were people and families in double trouble. The need for the concerted action of many agencies with a variety of services became quite apparent.

2. That these were families who had been known to a number of voluntary and public social agencies, each of whom had focused on a part of the family's difficulties, but all of whom had repeatedly failed. The single agency approach did not reach the multiplicity of needs of these families. Information regarding families varied from agency to agency to the extent that the same family was often not

Case 4:23-cv-00547-O Document 20-2 Filed 10/06/23 Page 444 of 555 PageID

recognizable when presented to a committee of the agencies. We also discovered a deflection of the services of the agencies because there was a deplorable lack of primary responsibility on the part of any one agency for coordinating help to the family.

3. That, in the public interest, and to make truly effective the preventive and rehabilitative service of the community, primary initiative, in most instances, had to be taken by one agency.

As a result of the department of welfare's experience with the two mentioned projects, Welfare Commissioner Henry L. McCarthy recommended to Mayor Robert Wagner the establishment of the interdepartmental committee. The mayor's committee, established in February 1957, under the chairmanship of the commissioner of welfare, included the appointed heads of 12 city departments: health, education, housing, police, courts, hospitals, buildings, parole, youth board, mental-health board, and the president of the city council.

By the mayor's directive, the committee was to do three things:

1. Determine the method whereby the city agencies could sharpen and make more effective their coordinated efforts for the multiproblem families.

2. Marshall all community resources—voluntary and public—in a coordinated effort to obtain the most immediate and essential services for the multiproblem families.

3. Assure a minimum of duplication and to focus the effort and energies of all concerned toward those areas where the problems are greatest and the need for the service most acute.

The committee has been in operation, as I have said, since February, and they are working in the following manner:

1. Develop principles for designating the agency which would assume primary responsibility for coordination in each situation.

2. Reemphasize through inservice training programs the absolute necessity of coordination on the level of the workers of agencies who have direct contact with the families; i. e., the public health nurse, the hospital medical-social worker, the social investigator in the department of welfare, the school representative or child guidance worker, the manager of a housing project, the worker from the youth board, the worker from the police department's juvenile-aid bureau or PAL, the probation or parole officer, as well as the various workers from the voluntary agencies and the churches.

We believe that identification of and help to these families, to be effective, must be organized on the local neighborhood level of the families.

3. The mayor's committee, therefore, set up a coordinating and review committee in each of four boroughs which—

(*a*) Identify the families most acutely in need of multiservices;

(*b*) Identify the specific problems of these families;

(*c*) Determine the plan of action in each situation;

(*d*) Evaluate the effectiveness of the plan; and

(*e*) Report to the mayor's committee their findings and results.

The overall mayor's committee receives and evaluates reports from the borough committees and takes the appropriate action which falls within their jurisdiction and makes appropriate recommendations to the mayor and his committee.

Case 4:23-cv-00547-O Document 20-2 Filed 10/06/23 Page 445 of 555 PageID

It was understood at the outset that cases referred to the committee would receive priority treatment by the participating agencies. There was recognition that mistakes and failures of the past would probably emerge with great clarity in the light of current review. But assessing blame or creating guilt feelings about past activity on the part of the agencies is not a function of the committee.

The borough committees meet biweekly in each borough for 3½ to 4 hours. Each committee includes a representative from each of the public departments on the mayor's committee, under the chairmanship of a staff member of the department of welfare. The representatives are empowered to act for and to commit their departments in whatever plan of action is agreed upon in dealing with a family. Voluntary and other community representatives are invited to meetings, as indicated, when cases known to them are under discussion.

All agencies may present for review, discussion, and action families that in the judgment of the individual agency represent a threat to themselves, their children, and therefore to the community. Prior to presentation of a case, each committee member receives a written statement from the secretary, who is a member of our staff, giving the identifying information on the family, and prepares a review of his agency's information and experience with the family.

After full discussion of all available information on the family, plans are evolved for followup action. Clear-cut responsibility is assigned to each agency, and one agency is designated for the primary role in the coordination of the activity. A definite date is set for all of the agencies to report back to the committee.

This structure assures that top priority is given to these so-called hard core families in the utilization of the agencies' service; that the agency representatives can responsibly commit the agency and its services in a plan of action; and that there will be continuity of committee personnel regularly attending the meetings.

The number of cases considered to date is relatively small and the time the committee has been in operation is short.

However, it is abundantly clear that agencies serving these hard core, delinquency producing families, can be effective if their services are coordinated within a total treatment plan.

To be sure, the effort has many problems to resolve: How to give treatment priority to a group of families and not neglect other families which, without help, may become multiproblemed; how to secure and retain the quantity and quality of staff in public departments required to deal effectively with families presenting the most serious and crucial of human difficulties; how to assist families who must continue to live in inadequate housing; how to rehabilitate families who are required to live on a basic budgetary allowance which does not include the items frequently necessary for reversing family tension and disintegration.

Notwithstanding these problems, we are convinced that the Interdepartmental Committee on Multiproblem Families is a most effective and proper way to make the maximum use of public health and welfare services in getting help to families whose continued failure in healthy social living will continue to place greater and greater drains on the communities' resources in terms of delinquency, crime, destruction of property, increased illness rates, alcoholism, narcotic addiction, as well as the loss of human productivity.

These are the families who produce the major percentage of delinquency incidence in New York City; these are the families which have top priority in our efforts to prevent juvenile delinquency.

The treatment of juvenile delinquency is important, but equally if not more important is its prevention.

We have never given the kind of recognition to strengthening and supporting healthy family living that it deserves in our country. Herein lies one of our most effective measures for delinquency prevention. Crash programs may be needed to stem a crisis.

But, in the long run, in terms of economy of human and material resources, in terms of demonstrated effectiveness, prevention of delinquency must rest on a broad community program of health and welfare services for families and children.

Government must assume the leadership in assuring that every community has immediately available to its citizens adequate coverage of the services required to stem the tide of delinquency and other antisocial behavior which threatens to overtake the entire family.

To the extent that we are able to reduce the number of neglectful, inadequate families with their multiplicity of social, economic, and emotional problems we shall reduce the number of children and youth whose behavior we classify as delinquent.

Chairman HENNINGS. Thank you very much for your appearance here today, and I would like to ask Senator Kefauver if he has any questions to ask Mr. Dumpson.

Senator KEFAUVER. No. I have enjoyed Mr. Dumpson's statement very much. It will be very useful to the committee.

Chairman HENNINGS. It is very enlightening, and you have been of great help to us.

Mr. DUMPSON. Thank you.

Chairman HENNINGS. Thank you for coming, Mr. Dumpson.

The next witness, Mr. Counsel.

Mr. SULLIVAN. Will Mr. Ralph Whelan come forward, please?

STATEMENT OF RALPH WHELAN, EXECUTIVE DIRECTOR, NEW YORK CITY YOUTH BOARD

Mr. SULLIVAN. Mr. Chairman, Mr. Whelan is going to make a short statement, because he has another engagement this afternoon and has to leave.

Chairman HENNINGS. We appreciate your coming today, Mr. Whelan.

Mr. WHELAN. It is good to be with you.

Chairman HENNINGS. I ask that this organizational chart of the New York City Youth Board be marked "Exhibit No. 12" and be made part of the record.

(The chart referred to was marked "Exhibit No. 12" and faces this page.)

Mr. SULLIVAN. Mr. Whelan is the executive director of the New York City Youth Board, and in that capacity is very close to the overall delinquency picture.

Mr. WHELAN. There are other members of my staff here who are going to be witnesses, also, Senator, so they can fill in details.

Chairman HENNINGS. I understand so.

New York City Youth Board Organizational Chart

OFFICE OF THE MAYOR

NEW YORK CITY YOUTH BOARD

EXECUTIVE DIRECTOR

Administrative Assistant

DIRECTOR Community Relations, Council Soc. & Ath. Clubs

DIRECTOR Area 4

CHIEF OF STREET CLUBS

Ass't Director

Ass't Director

Ass't Director, Community Relations

East Harlem

New Haven

Harrisons

Bedford Stuyv.

South Bklyn

Public Relations Asst

Public Relations Ass't

Editorial Ass't

DEPUTY EXECUTIVE DIRECTOR Program

ASSISTANT TO EXECUTIVE DIRECTOR

DEPUTY EXECUTIVE DIRECTOR Community Organization

DIRECTOR Child Welfare

Advisory Committee

Ass't Director

Field Project Supervisor

Director S.K.C.

Bx

Bklyn

Man

Rich.

14 REFERRAL UNITS – 5 BOROS

DIRECTOR Group Work & Recreation

Advisory Committee

Ass't Director

Program

Program

Program

Program

DIRECTOR Audit and Control

Supervisor Office Services

Supervisor Audit & Control

Steno Pool

Accountants

PERSONNEL

DIRECTOR In-Service Training

Advisory Committee

Ass't

Ass't

Volunteer Project

DIRECTOR Research

Advisory Committee

Ass't Director

Research Assistants

Supervisor

Staff

Del. Index

Consultant

DIRECTOR Borough Planning

Bronx

Brooklyn

Manhattan

Richmond

Queens

Consultant

JANUARY, 1957

3-cv-00547-O Document 20-2 Filed 10/06/23 Page 448 of 555 Pa

Mr. WHELAN. We appeared at your hearing in 1955, and at that time I outlined the Youth Board's many-faceted approach to the problem of delinquency.

Chairman HENNINGS. I remember that you testified at that time, Mr. Whelan. You may proceed.

Mr. WHELAN. As you know, basic to our work is the early detection of children and young people in trouble and the provision of a battery of services to meet their revealed needs. At the heart of our philosophy, since our inception, has been our determination to "reach-the-unreached," to treat the hard core of juvenile delinquency.

We are now operating in New York City's 14 areas of highest delinquency with a program which is across the board, serving the individual, the family, the group and the community. Our experience in meeting fundamental human needs has shown that the fountainhead of juvenile delinquency can be found in a small minority of delinquent families. Our studies, which have been substantiated by research in many parts of the country, indicate that this group must be reached and helped if lasting progress is to be made against juvenile delinquency.

In New York City, our research reveals, fewer than 1 percent of the families make up the hard core responsible for some 75 percent of the juvenile delinquency. These families are characterized by such problems as alcoholism, mental illness, desertion, promiscuity, gross physical ailments, severe marital discord, gross neglect, and behavior patterns of delinquency and crime in one or both parents and the older children.

Resistance to help have prevented the community's many agencies from giving them adequate or effective service.

These families are known to a variety of agencies, the major of which are courts, police and welfare department; some have been in contact with as many as 15 agencies. Often, however, they have fallen between the various services which are striving to help them, or become lost in a jungle of social services because of the lack of centralization of responsibility for meeting their multiple needs.

To make possible the fixing of responsibility for serving each of the families in the hard core, the Youth Board is setting up a register of multiproblem families. Moving promptly to meet the urgent needs of these families, we have entered into contract with the city's leading family service agencies to help us concentrate on this group.

The Youth Board's own demonstration project, service to families and children, established to determine how best hard core families could be helped, has recently been transferred, just this past week, to the Department of Welfare and will serve multiproblem families in high delinquency neighborhoods.

The concept of hard core is not limited to our work with families. Our experience with teen-age gangs has shown us that out of an average membership of 30 in a fighting gang, the hard core can range from 1 or 2 to 5, or so. Like the hard core of multiproblem families, these individuals, identified by our gang workers as the leadership, must be reached before the destructive activities of the gang can be redirected into positive action. This involves location, identification, cultivation, stimulation, guidance, and direction.

3-cv-00547-O Document 20-2 Filed 10/06/23 Page 449 of 555 Pa

The end result is reconciliation of the gang to the community and the salvaging of its members for constructive, contributing lives as normal, adjusted citizens.

Later, staff members of the Council of Social and Athletic Clubs, the Street Club project, will present in detail the operations—the "how" of this project which is serving on the frontiers of social work.

At this time I should like only to indicate its overall scope and direction by telling you that we are currently working directly with 60 fighting gangs and are in contact with 15 to 20 others. Further, that in the last 2 years there have been no gang wars between the groups with which we are working.

We look forward to the day when we can also reach out to the many unaffiliated groups who hang around the streets and possess by their very idleness and lack of direction the potentiality of becoming fighting gangs.

As you gentlemen know, another important facet of our program is contracting with group-work and recreation agencies in the community settlement houses, community centers, boys' clubs, and others, to take on additional young people for service. As in the other segments of our program, our interest is in reaching the individuals and groups who have not been served in the past.

In this area of service it means involving in the program of the agency the loose-end, hang-around, aimless youngsters who, up until the present, have not been attracted to or interested in the types of programs offered to them.

It is a pleasure to be able to report that a recent survey has indicated that the agencies in contact with the youth board are succeeding in this aim and that the young people in youth board-supported programs are the kind which our agency was set up to serve.

While our programs of intensive professional service to children, young people, and families in need of help have been evolving, developing, and gaining in scope and effectiveness, it has become increasingly clear to us that the fight against delinquency must ultimately be won by the united and wholehearted effort of the entire community.

We have, therefore, expanded the work of our department of borough planning and community coordination which stimulates and encourages citizen groups in the local communities to identify individual neighborhood needs and to formulate programs to meet them.

Also involved in this project is the participation, on a neighborhood level, of young people themselves in helping to plan and work for the prevention of delinquency and the elimination of situations which lead to youth crime.

In the area of coordination and planning, the youth board also had its citywide planning and coordinating unit. Through committees of outstanding professionals and laymen, this unit brings great skill and experience to bear in pinpointing the problems of the total community conducive to delinquency and assesses its resources to cope with them. The areas with which the citywide unit is currently dealing are: the multiproblem family; group work and recreation in high-hazard areas; jobs and rehabilitation for hard-to-reach and hard-to-place youth; problems of changing neighborhoods and shifting population; the role of the volunteer in delinquency prevention; the role

of religious groups in delinquency prevention and control; and problems in the area of protective and correctional services.

Three recent and representative projects to come out of the deliberations of the committees are:

The establishment of a pilot vocational-guidance and job-placement unit for young people in one of the city's high-delinquency areas which goes out to the difficult-to-place individuals and groups which most need its services. This unit is specially designed to overcome negative and rejecting attitudes toward employment and to help young people make adjustments not only to work but to community life in general.

Further, there has been the organization of citizen groups in three typical changing neighborhoods in different parts of the city to aid newcomers and oldtimers in learning to live together and plan together for the continuing welfare of their community.

Also, there is our project studying ways in which community volunteers can be utilized to supplement the work of trained personnel in leisure-time agencies serving young people. It is anticipated that this study will produce a blueprint setting forth the best methods for recruiting, training, and making use of the services of interested citizens.

Last week, at its November meeting, the youth board approved a proposal of one of its committees that a pilot camp be established which would offer a sound rehabilitative setting to serve youths between the ages of 16 and 18 years.

The program of this camp would provide guidance and counseling with appropriate recreational and educational programs to complement and supplement the work program. In the rehabilitative treatment of these youths the moral and spiritual values would be stressed. This program would be geared to meet the needs of 50 boys between the ages of 16 and 18 years who are on the threshold of delinquency. The camp would be staffed by highly qualified personnel in the fields of education, medicine, psychology, psychiatry, recreation, and social work.

The youth board considers this proposal as part of a sound coordinated program for the care of children and youth between the ages of 16 and 18 years particularly—those for whom few services and facilities exist and who require help and ofttimes placement away from their deplorable home conditions.

As the youth board looks to the future, it is guided both by the experience gained in a decade at the forefront of the city's delinquency prevention effort and by a comprehensive program of action research. Through research we keep a constant check on the needs of the community and the efficacy of our various programs. We sharpen our tools and refine our methods; we open new paths of service.

Currently, our research department is maintaining its index of youngsters in trouble which helps us to determine where our efforts should be concentrated. It is studying the operations of our street club project to learn more about why young people join gangs and how their negative activities can be controlled and rechannelled. The multiproblem family is under its careful scrutiny and, having completed a study of the characteristics of this hard-core group, it is examining new ways to reach and to help it.

3-cv-00547-O Document 20-2 Filed 10/06/23 Page 451 of 555 Pa

A progress report has just been published on one of its most far-reaching projects. During the past 4 years the youth board has been giving the first widespread application, as a predictive device, the scale developed by Professors Sheldon and Eleanor Glueck, of Harvard University.

This scale is based on family relationships in the home. It can, according to our half-way report, serve as a social Geiger counter to ascertain in advance those children and families most in need of preventive services before serious trouble develops.

I have presented the youth board's program in brief outline. The problem of juvenile delinquency continues to be complex and deeply rooted. No single approach can hope to have, in isolation, a significant effect. But a total, many-faceted, coordinated program, such as the one which the city of New York, through its youth board, is conducting, will, we are confident, more than justify the cost, the countless hours, and the limitless devotion, dedication, and hard work which are being invested in its young people.

We feel we are moving more in the direction of pinpointing and isolating the hard-core group of families, youth, and even hard-core communities, that are responsible for the major proportion of our delinquency problem, and it is in this area that we are moving at this time.

Chairman HENNINGS. Thank you very much.

Mr. SULLIVAN. May I ask a question with respect to the operations of the youth board?

Have they approached somewhat the ideas that Mr. Kahn expressed, that Professor Kahn expressed this morning?

Mr. WHELAN. I am sorry, I was not here.

Mr. SULLIVAN. As far as an index——

Mr. WHELAN. We are developing an index at this point.

Mr. SULLIVAN. Of multiproblem families?

Mr. WHELAN. Of registered multiproblem families in the youth board, for the purpose of fixing responsibility for the service to these families; yes.

Chairman HENNINGS. We are very grateful to you for coming, Mr. Whelan.

Mr. WHELAN. Thank you, Senator.

Chairman HENNINGS. I want to compliment you on behalf of the committee for the fine work you are doing, and for the work you have done, and you are a dedicated man in this field.

Mr. WHELAN. Thank you very much.

Chairman HENNINGS. Senator Kefauver, would you like to make a statement?

Senator KEFAUVER. I just want to say it is good to see Mr. Whelan again. He is keeping up his enthusiastic interest and doing a lot of good.

I remember your testimony some 3 years ago when you moved on from that point.

Mr. WHELAN. Thank you very much, Senator.

Chairman HENNINGS. Thank you very much, Mr. Whelan.

Case 4:23-cv-00547-O Document 20-2 Filed 10/06/23 Page 452 of 555 Pa

Mr. SULLIVAN. The next witness will be Dr. William Jansen, superintendent of the board of education.

Chairman HENNINGS. Dr. Jansen, we welcome you here on behalf of the committee, and we would be very glad to hear from you on any phase of this subject you care to discourse upon.

STATEMENT OF DR. WILLIAM JANSEN, SUPERINTENDENT, BOARD OF EDUCATION, CITY OF NEW YORK

Dr. JANSEN. Thank you, Senator Hennings.

I shall try to be brief, and for that reason I am not going into an introductory statement, but right to the things we are concerned with in our schools.

I think we all know that delinquent children and potentially delinquent children are somewhat frustrated children. They have the same intentions as do other children. They want affection, they want somebody to trust them, they want a feeling of success.

And so in our schools we try to adapt a curriculum to these children so that there is a chance of their achieving some success in their classroom work.

Our attendance officers are not truant officers in the old sense of the term, but they are rather more like social workers. They seek in a sympathetic way to find the cause of absence from school.

We have a bureau of child guidance with social workers and psychiatrists and psychologists. We wish it were larger, but to the extent that we have it, we do try increasingly to get at the children at a younger and younger age.

Mr. Whelan mentioned the Glueck study which is carried on in several of our schools where we hope to get some criterion that will predict the kind of child who is likely to become delinquent.

We have an interesting program with somewhat older children. There are many of these disturbed children who may become delinquent who feel that if they could only go out and work, they would be all right.

So during the past year, we have set up a program where we have some of these boys working on a cooperative program. A cooperative program is a program where the boy goes to school 1 week and goes to work the other week, and the 2 boys work as a pair. One is always in school, and one is always at work.

In all these cases, we have first gone to the employer and have informed him that these boys that we are sending him are boys who are not up to average in every respect, that they are troubled youths, and we ask him to put them under the wing of some very understanding member of their staff. And it has worked very well.

Some of these boys, after being on this part-time cooperative plan, have decided that school is not so bad, and they have gone back to full-time schooling. Some have gone to full-time jobs in the places where they were tried on this experimental basis.

I think one of the activities that you want to hear about, in fact, it was mentioned in one of the letters to me, was the school of the P. S.

3-cv-00547-O Document 20-2 Filed 10/06/23 Page 453 of 555 Pa

600 group. These are schools for youngsters for whom we do not have all the facilities in the regular day schools, but for whom we can supply facilities if we bring them together in one school.

We have 2 kinds of 600 schools. We have those where the young people—the boy comes in the morning and goes home in the afternoon, just as he would in a regular day school. In these schools we have very small classes. We have shop experiences for these youngsters, we have counselors, to a limited extent we have social workers and psychologists, not to the extent we would like to have them.

And we hope somehow, somebody will catch on with this youngster and the youngster will feel that there is somebody who is interested in him.

In addition, in these schools we try to get groups of people who take an interest in these boys outside of school, because that is where their trouble is, and in 1 school here in Manhattan, the New York Rotary Club has taken a tremendous interest, and 1 boy of national fame is a graduate of 1 of these 600 schools, thanks to the school and thanks to the work that the Rotarians did with him outside of school.

In another borough, in the Bronx and in upper Manhattan, we have groups of interested citizens who have joined together and call themselves Friends of the 600 School, and these people try to do something to keep these boys out of trouble in their home environment outside of school.

Of course, we do not have success with every boy. Some of them do not respond to this kind of school system, this kind of school, because the forces that they are struggling against in the community are too much for them.

So we have another kind of 600 school, which we operate in an institution. You heard this afternoon some mention of Youth House. We operate the school in Youth House, and we try there to get under the skin of some of these boys, try to make them realize that there is somebody who is interested in them.

We try hard to find out some hidden talent, and sometimes we are successful. Sometimes, of course, it does not work. It would be ridiculous for me to claim that we have any 100-percent cure.

But we do have considerable success with these 600 schools of these two types: one where they go home each day; the other one where they are in an institution, and we have them during the normal school hours.

Now, Mr. Whelan, when he spoke, mentioned some of the difficulties we have. We have the difficulties of those families who, although offered psychiatric service, will not accept it, the resister family.

This kind of family frequently has to be taken to court and effective measures used to get the kind of service that the family needs.

We also have other children who just cannot be rehabilitated in their home environment, and they have to be committed to an institution.

One of the difficulties at the present time is that there is not enough space in institutions for these children who need to be taken away from their home environment for a half-year or a year or two years, to really be rehabilitated, and we have all too many cases which have gone to the courts and have been paroled back to us because there is no place to which to send them.

If we could get more of the kind of institution, the right kind of institution, that was mentioned by some of the earlier speakers, I think it would be of tremendous help to the schools.

Chairman HENNINGS. Do you not think, Dr. Jansen, that many people expect too much of the schools? By that I mean many families, many people in the community, expect teachers to do it all.

Dr. JANSEN. I am afraid that is all too true. We are just one agency.

Chairman HENNINGS. We have heard that in other cities.

Dr. JANSEN. Yes. We are only one agency in society.

Chairman HENNINGS. Yes, of course.

Dr. JANSEN. And the home should have more responsibility than the school. But in some of these cases, I am afraid that is not true.

That, in brief, is my statement. If you want it written out in any detail, I will be glad to write it out and send it, or if there are any questions that you would like me to answer, I would be glad to do that.

Chairman HENNINGS. Dr. Jansen, it is a splendid statement that you made.

If you would like to write it out, we would be most grateful to you, and make it part of the record and part of the hearings when they are printed.

We would like to let you exercise your own option as to that.

Dr. JANSEN. Thank you.

Chairman HENNINGS. And we thank you very much for coming here today——

Dr. JANSEN. All right, sir.

Chairman HENNINGS (continuing). Taking your time out of a busy schedule, on this day of the great blizzard, to come down here——

Dr. JANSEN. I am glad to be here.

Chairman HENNINGS (continuing). And enlighten us and give us the benefit of your views.

Senator Kefauver, have you any questions to ask Dr. Jansen?

Senator KEFAUVER. Dr. Jansen, I am interested in all your statement, but particularly I had heard Mr. Charles Silver, the president of the school board, talk about the 600 schools and the program of getting organizations who are interested in child welfare, but who, unfortunately, are too interested usually in talking about it to actively participate and give time and thought and real work, in dealing with children.

You seem to be accomplishing that kind of liaison cooperation in the 600 schools. Mr. Silver——

Chairman HENNINGS. We have not found that in any other city, have we, Senator Kefauver, anything quite comparable to this?

Senator KEFAUVER. Probaly not on this scale.

Chiarman HENNINGS. Not on this scale.

Senator KEFAUVER. I think it is a very great program, and I know Mr. Silver's interest, along with yours, in it.

Dr. JANSEN. We could use even more than we have, but there are a lot of wonderful people, people interested in the Scout movement and all these other movements.

One thing that worries me, that as people have increasing leisure, you would think that it would be easier to get volunteers to help with troubled children, but it isn't so, and I think we have got to change the thinking of the people of the Nation to make them realize that a little

3-cv-00547-O Document 20-2 Filed 10/06/23 Page 455 of 555 Pa

part of their extra leisure time ought to go to the benefit of the community.

Chairman HENNINGS. It is a very hard job, because, having been president of the Big Brothers organization, and being national director of it now, we have considerable trouble in recruiting the sort of men we want to look after these boys before they get into trouble.

Dr. JANSEN. Theoretically, it ought to be easier, because people have more leisure.

Chairman HENNINGS. It should be.

Dr. JANSEN. Yes.

Chairman HENNINGS. It is a strange paradox.

Senator KEFAUVER. Too many people think that they have discharged their obligation when they contribute some money and just express an interest; but what the children really need, the kids really need, is somebody who will take the time out and play games with them and give of themselves. And you seem to be making headway in that direction here.

Dr. JANSEN. Well, we have had some measure of success. We are only willing to admit that it isn't all we would like to do.

Chairman HENNINGS. I was particularly interested in your confirmation of a view I have held for a long time, Dr. Jansen, that a child, boy or girl, wants to feel wanted and wants to feel important.

Dr. JANSEN. That is right.

Chairman HENNINGS. That they amount to something.

Dr. JANSEN. That is right.

Chairman HENNINGS. And that they count for something, and that pattern has run throughout the course of these hearings. We have heard that in a great many places.

Dr. JANSEN. Yes. If the only place they can feel important is the gang, then they go to the gang.

Chairman HENNINGS. That is right, exactly.

Mr. Sullivan?

Mr. SULLIVAN. The Governor this morning when he was here mentioned something about the 600 schools or the difficulty the city might have been having with respect to placing these children in the schools. Is there overcrowding in your 600 school units?

Dr. JANSEN. Well, we had wanted more of these 600 schools, but some well-meaning individuals questioned their value, and only last week a committee that had been appointed came out with its report recommending that as soon as possible we double the number of these schools. They found them very helpful.

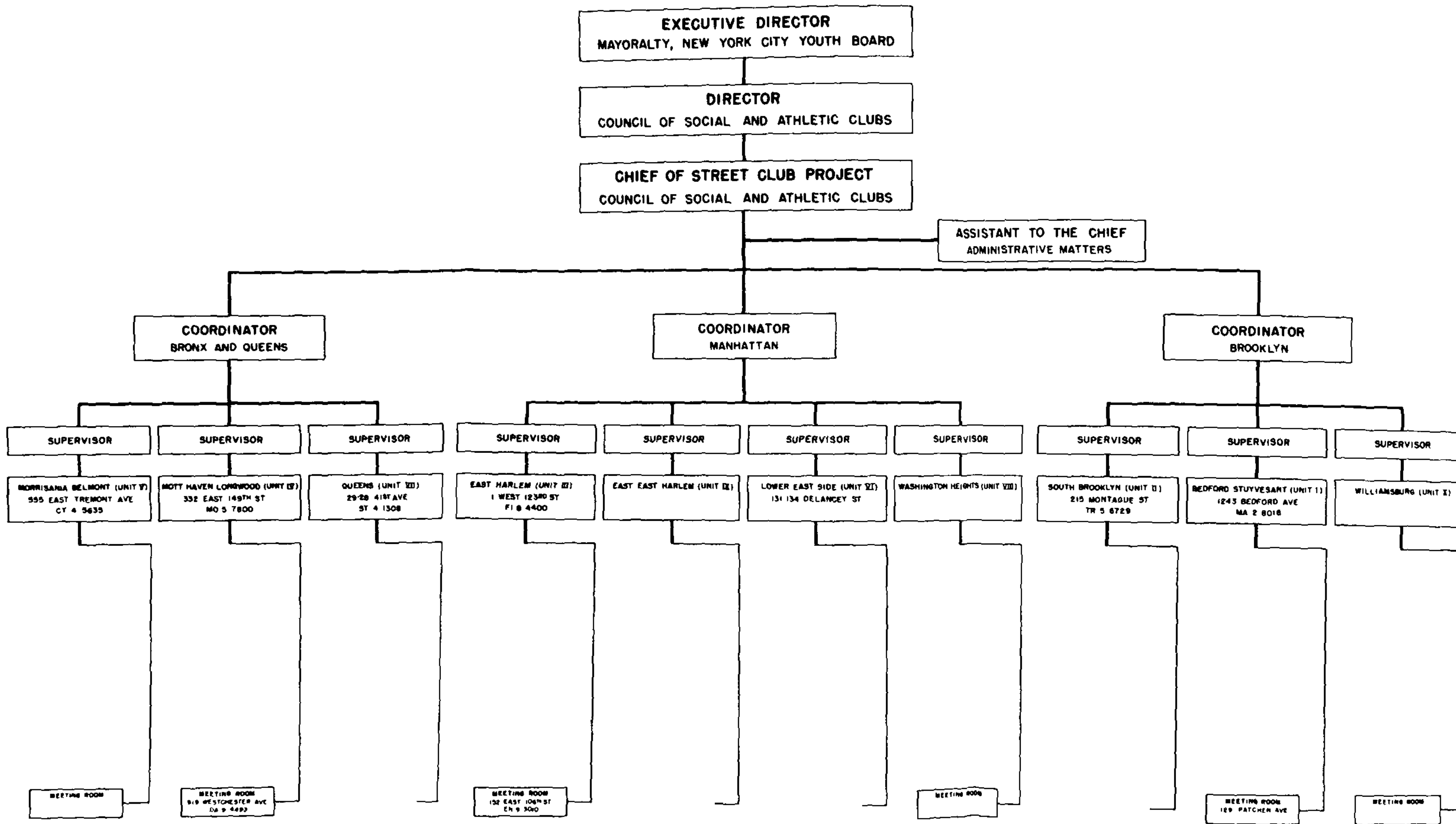
Mr. SULLIVAN. Yes.

Chairman HENNINGS. What committee was that, Dr. Jansen?

Dr. JANSEN. Well, it was a committee of which Presiding Justice Hill of the children's court was the chairman, and the committee had a number of social workers from the local universities, some schoolmen, some interested civic groups on it, and they made, I think, a very thorough study of the program of the 600 schools, and recommended one for girls, also, which was——

Mr. SULLIVAN. Their conclusion was, it effectively takes care of the problem as far as dropoffs; is that it?

COUNCIL OF SOCIAL AND ATHLETIC CLUBS



3-cv-00547-O Document 20-2 Filed 10/06/23 Page 457 of 555 Pa

Dr. JANSEN. No. It takes care effectively of those children who can be rehabilitated without being taken out of their home environment. That is, a reasonable number of them.

Chairman HENNINGS. Yes.

Dr. JANSEN. And if we can rehabilitate them in their home environment, that is about one-fifth the cost of putting them in an institution.

Chairman HENNINGS. And much better.

Dr. JANSEN. We think so.

Chairman HENNINGS. Thank you very much, Dr. Jansen; thank you very much, indeed, for coming here today.

Our next witness, Mr. Counsel?

Mr. SULLIVAN. I would like to call on Mr. Arthur Rogers and the three workers he has with him today.

Chairman HENNINGS. We are very glad to have Mr. Rogers and you gentlemen.

Mr. SULLIVAN. They are Mr. Hugh Johnson, Mr. Aaron Schmais, and Mr. Harrison Lightfoot, who will join him at the table there.

Chairman HENNINGS. I have had the pleasure of knowing Mr. Rogers; and the others, I think, Mr. Rogers, if you would be good enough to tell us something about yourself for the record, and about Mr. Johnson and Mr. Lightfoot and Mr. Schmais—is that the correct pronunciation?

Mr. SCHMAIS. Yes, sir.

Chairman HENNINGS. If you will proceed, please.

STATEMENT OF ARTHUR J. ROGERS, DIRECTOR OF COMMUNITY RELATIONS, COUNCIL OF SOCIAL AND ATHLETIC CLUBS, NEW YORK CITY YOUTH BOARD; ACCOMPANIED BY HUGH JOHNSON, AARON SCHMAIS, AND HARRISON LIGHTFOOT, STREET CLUB WORKERS

Mr. ROGERS. I am the director of the council of social and athletic clubs, which is commonly called the street club project.

On my left here is Mr. Hugh Johnson, who is the chief of the street club project; and Mr. Lightfoot is coordinator for Manhattan and the Bronx; and Mr. Schmais is a supervisor in the Bronx.

And I do not want you to get the impression this is all brass from the street club project, because everybody goes into the field. It is a total fieldwork project.

Chairman HENNINGS. It is a working crew.

Mr. ROGERS. That is right. And these gentlemen on both sides of me have, well, I could say 15 to 20 years in this type of work.

My part—I submitted an outline of our project to you. It is an organizational outline——

Chairman HENNINGS. Yes; I have a copy of that. Let it be marked "Exhibit No. 13" and be made a part of the record.

(The chart referred to was marked "Exhibit No. 13" and faces this page.)

3-cv-00547-O Document 20-2 Filed 10/06/23 Page 458 of 555 Pa

Mr. ROGERS (continuing). Which quickly shows just what our organizational setup is. And my function is primarily introductory, and I would like to first of all state that our policy is this: Working with fighting gangs as distinguished from defensive groups or unaffiliated groups in the community.

Chairman HENNINGS. You mean gangs like the Egyptian Kings?

Mr. ROGERS. That is right.

Chairman HENNINGS. And such others?

Mr. ROGERS. That is right, Senator. It is part of their nature, fighting. It is indigenous to their existence, fighting.

Chairman HENNINGS. Yes.

Mr. ROGERS. And the defensive group, why, they might have been brought through a fighting stage, or they might not have been a fighting group, and then again they might be a group that would give a fight a hug if it came along.

And then there is the unaffiliated group which, well, hangs around corners, there may be a ball team or a basketball team. It is without direction, and they possess within them, by their very idleness and lack of guidance, the potential of becoming a fighting group.

So our classification at this point that we are working with are the fighting gangs, and of course we look forward as a goal, as a normal and natural ultimate, to work with the younger boys before they ever become fighting groups.

We are at this time in 10 areas of the city, and at this time we are operating 3 lounges, and these lounges are a meeting place which several gangs use together, they use the facilities, and in friendship and in cooperation.

We have in the budget at this time two more lounges which we are in the process of trying to locate places for, and that has to be a strategic location and it has to serve the purposes of the project.

Now, our basic purpose is to redirect the destructive activity into constructive channels. In the course of our work we work with the individual members of the gang, the gang as a group. We utilize all community resources, and we consult with our technical advisory committees, and at this time we have 2 of them, 1 in Brooklyn, the chairman of which is District Attorney Silver, and 1 in Queens, which is District Attorney Frank O'Connor, and these committees are made up of experts in the field; I mean they represent the police department, the board of education, the settlement houses, and agencies that work with people in the community.

I think that I would like to point out also that our policy with the police, with whom we work very closely, is based on the fact that when we are accepted by a gang and we are accepted as a worker with the gang, that they understand that if the worker knows there is going to be a rumble or a bopping session or a fight, that the police are immediately notified; that we are not there to implement the violation of the law.

Senator HENNINGS. No.

Mr. ROGERS. Second, that if we know of anybody who is pushing dope, the police are immediately notified; or if anyone is carrying a gun or a "beast," the police are notified immediately, also.

3-cv-00547-O Document 20-2 Filed 10/06/23 Page 459 of 555 Pa
Chairman HENNINGS. How abonut a switchblade knife?

Mr. ROGERS. Notified. Any lethal weapon.

Chairman HENNINGS. Yes.

Mr. ROGERS. It is a matter of clearance——

Chairman HENNINGS. What is the New York law with relation to the length of the blade of a knife to constitute a weapon, do you happen to know that?

Mr. ROGERS. I do not know the exact law. Nine inches. It is the blade.

Chairman HENNINGS. In most States, you know, carrying a concealed weapon is an offense, and a knife with a blade over a certain length is considered a weapon.

Mr. ROGERS. Right.

Chairman HENNINGS. Not a pocketknife such as I have on the end of my watch chain.

Proceed.

Senator KEFAUVER. While we are on switchblades, this is a very interesting chart that Mr. Mitler got up. There are over a million switchblades, yearly, sold by mail order.

Chairman HENNINGS. Senator Kefauver introduced a bill relating to switchblade knives.

(The chart referred to is on file with the subcommittee.)

Senator KEFAUVER. To try to stop the interstate shipment of these big ones like that. Is that really a menace? Do you find many boys with them?

Mr. ROGERS. That is a real menace.

Chairman HENNINGS. And it advertises Startling Speed and Black Beauty. I remember in my district attorney days, those knives were commonly used——

Mr. ROGERS. That is right.

Chairman HENNINGS. And we had quite a problem, because a fight would start and everybody would have a switchblade knife, and sometimes it resulted in the death of some participants in the fight.

Mr. ROGERS. That is right.

Mr. SULLIVAN. I think from these investigations and Mr. Mitler's own work in that regard, it has been indicated that a good portion of these knives are imported from overseas.

Chairman HENNINGS. That is right.

Mr. SULLIVAN. And bills have been introduced to try to stop that traffic, as well.

Chairman HENNINGS. Do they not come from Germany?

Mr. SULLIVAN. A lot of them come from Italy, I understand.

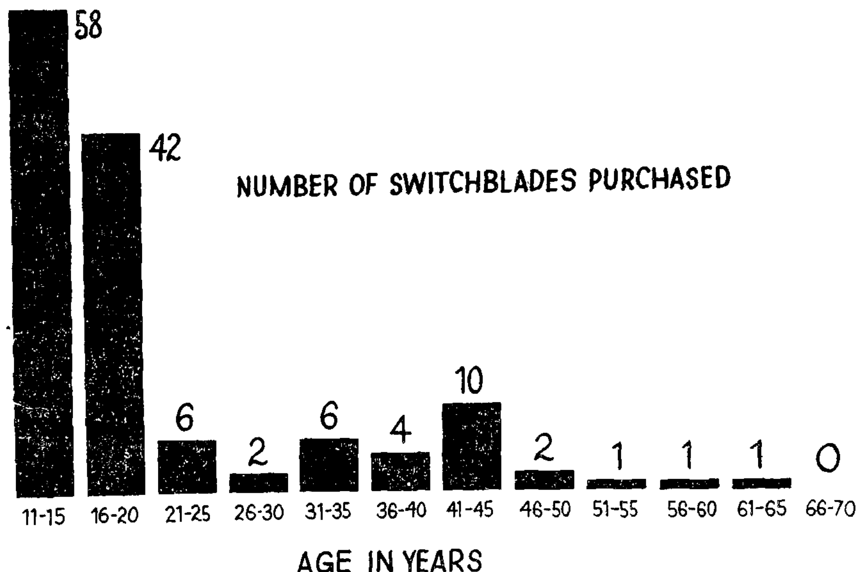
Chairman HENNINGS. Spain.

Senator KEFAUVER. May I ask, that questionnaire on the 58 percent purchased by boys from 11 to 15, and 42 percent from 16 to 20, is that a survey which has been made?

Chairman HENNINGS. I believed that this is a valuable chart and should be made part of the record. Let it be marked "Exhibit No. 14."

3-cv-00547-O Document 20-2 Filed 10/06/23 Page 460 of 555 Pa

(The chart referred to was marked "Exhibit No. 14," and follows:)



Mr. MITLER. Yes, Senator. We got the records from two concerns that are importing the knives, the stiletto knives, and we got the names and addresses of the people who they were shipping the knives to.

Chairman HENNINGS. In what magazine did those advertisements appear, Mr. Mitler?

Mr. MITLER. I think Argosy is one, some in the mechanical magazines, and some in the sporting and hunting magazines.

Chairman HENNINGS. I have seen them in magazines. I have seen them advertised.

Mr. MITLER. In response to several hundred questionnaires that we sent out, these concerns are sending out about 3,000 or 4,000 of these knives each month, but they have gotten them from overseas, and we found out that the average age, 58 percent of the purchasers were between 11 and 15, a great many were 11 and 12 years old, and we brought many of the people into the office, we questioned some of the people, some of the young boys, and although many of them were getting the knives as souvenirs, we found that many of the boys had been in trouble in the District of Columbia area and Maryland that had purchased these knives.

I think another interesting feature, just one other point, is that in one of the States, Ohio, which has an internal law prohibiting the sale of these knives, that in Ohio, instead of getting them internally, what they were doing was they were sending all over the country for the knives.

Chairman HENNINGS. Yes.

3-cv-00547-O Document 20-2 Filed 10/06/23 Page 461 of 555 Pa
Thank you, Mr. Mitler.

Excuse that interruption, please.

Mr. ROGERS. Now we were noting the age range there of the fighting gangs, the 11 or 12, 13, right on up to 20; and it ties in, the statistics that Mr. Mitler has, with our own practical experience in the field.

I would like to say something about our personnel at this time. We have seventy-some-odd, 72 workers in the field, and as Mr. Whelan said, we are working with 60 fighting gangs, and in contact with 15 or 20 others.

Chairman HENNINGS. How many fighting gangs do you think there are, Mr. Rogers?

Mr. ROGERS. Well, there has been estimated——

Chairman HENNINGS. In the five boroughs.

Mr. ROGERS (continuing). Estimated around 110, 80 to 110.

The problem with that, Senator, is if you take a group, a group might break off into 2 or 3 groups, and our workers—when we say we are working with 60 gangs, 1 worker may be handling 3 segments of 1 gang in the area which will come together in a time of crisis or conflict.

Chairman HENNINGS. Yes.

Mr. ROGERS. So when we say around a hundred——

Chairman HENNINGS. Sort of an alliance, so to speak?

Mr. ROGERS. Exactly. In an organizational basis, I do not want to go into what these gentlemen are going to say.

Chairman HENNINGS. Proceed, Mr. Rogers.

Mr. ROGERS. As far as the backgrounds of the men are concerned who are in this project, it averages from a college education to master's, and with a master's, for example, in your senior street club worker, he has to have a master's degree, and your supervisor has to have a master's degree plus 3 years of experience—plus 1 of experience, to qualify.

Chairman HENNINGS. That is a very high criterion.

Mr. ROGERS. That is right. And a coordinator has to have his master's degree in social work, and 7 years of experience, 3 of which were in supervision.

But the remarkable thing is that the young men that have come into this work are dedicated people, and in the senior street club worker, in the supervisor, we utilize the master's from an allied field, psychology, education, and so forth.

Chairman HENNINGS. We had 1 of the boys 3 or 4 years ago, I do not remember his name now——

Mr. ROGERS. Kenny Marshall.

Chairman HENNINGS. And his techninque was most interesting to me, because I had never heard of its being done in any other city in the country. He does not infiltrate in the sense Senator Kefauver suggests he infiltrates. He does not come in under any false pretenses.

Mr. ROGERS. No.

Chairman HENNINGS. I do not know whether that connotation inclined to infiltrate—he affiliates, in a sense.

Mr. ROGERS. That is right. That is better, Senator.

Let me close by saying that in order to—this service, it is not too old, it goes back to maybe 1950, 1949. In some of the experimental

3-cv-00547-O Document 20-2 Filed 10/06/23 Page 462 of 555 Pa

years, we have at the youth board instituted an inservice-training program, which allows for orientation of new workers, and the training of men on the job.

In summary, this project has worked with approximately 115 gangs since it has been in operation. None of the gangs which it worked with originally are any longer bothering. We are in contact right now with 3,000 to 4,000 young people in this community.

Chairman HENNINGS. How many men have you, Mr. Rogers?

Mr. ROGERS. Seventy-two in the field.

Chairman HENNINGS. Seventy-two.

Mr. ROGERS. And we have 20 in process to come in.

Chairman HENNINGS. Yes.

Mr. ROGERS. And as Mr. Whelan pointed out, it is the hard core. You have got to work with the leadership and redirect, and so forth.

Actually, to present this to you gentlemen this afternoon, we have broken it up in broad social work concept of intake, supervision, and discharge; and actually it is contact with us, work with the gang, and termination.

Mr. Schmais will discuss how we make contact, and in the broad outline of social work we call it "intake."

Chairman HENNINGS. You gentlemen proceed in such order as you please.

Mr. SCHMAIS. Before entering a discussion on actually how we initiate work with the gang, I would like to make some comments.

While we break it up here into three stages, that is, beginning, middle, and end, these are somewhat arbitrary. There is tremendous overlapping, there is regression, speeding up, sometimes you have to move on different levels with different boys.

In the individual groups there are differences. So your movement with them would vary.

However, through all our work, the same basic areas, generic areas, that we will discuss will pertain. Some of these are subcategories that may be met at different times with different groups or workers, but again this will always happen with each worker and each group.

Actually, before starting work with a gang, we proceed upon scientific lines in the sense that we do not go out in the streets until we know what we are looking for and where we are looking at, and we conduct a survey.

And essentially, the survey is designed to determine the existence of conflict groups, the extent, the degree, the nature of their conflict, their pathology, their involvement, antisocially.

We try to find out what the type of neighborhood is that they come from, what their differences have been with other groups, how do they see themselves, how does the neighborhood see them, and possibly how they view the neighborhood.

Around the gang itself, you try to acquire very specific information. We try to learn the name or names of the group. We try to get a roster of its membership. We try to find out grossly where the gang——

Chairman HENNINGS. Do they keep rosters, generally, of the membership?

Mr. SCHMAIS. No, sir. Around this area we will probably contact police, probation, bureau of attendance, who might know the names of these boys.

Chairman HENNINGS. Yes, sir.

Mr. SCHMAIS. We would try to find out exactly where their hangouts are in the gross location of the group. We try to learn as much about their history as possible, both of the group and its members.

We try to determine what its average age is, its ethnic background, its racial, its class background.

Generally, we try to find out why they have been involved antisocially. Many times it is a situational thing with a shifting neighborhood, or an occasional use of a settlement-house swimming pool, or what have you.

Around these areas of inquiry, there are very pertinent things we have to know, and these are the history of the group, the history of its membership, the kind of individuals in these groups, the kind of needs that they themselves see as wanting.

We have to understand what the group sees as the reason for their conflict, and how other groups in the neighborhood perceive them.

In the survey, however, our immediate type of survey is done along liaison lines. We would contact all the existing public agencies. This would include the police, hospitals, board of education, and so forth.

We would also include, in contacting the agencies in the area, settlement houses, private and public.

(Discussion off the record.)

(Whereupon, at 4:30 p. m., the subcommittee recessed, subject to call.)

(The following was submitted for the record:)

I. INTRODUCTION

Street club work is founded on the premise that the need to belong to a primary group of one's contemporaries is generic to all people. This is particularly important in adolescence. The gang is basically a friendship group. Inherent in the gang are potentialities for the positive growth of its members. Gang life serves as a transition between family life and community living. Here, for example, recognition, group loyalty, leadership qualities, and community responsibility, so important in adult life, can be nurtured and given beneficial direction. The street club worker is the catalytic agent to this end.

In working with street clubs, the project's approach has involved the application of sound, generic social work principles. Depending upon the situation, it has used group and casework methods or combines them. However, in contrast to the group worker or caseworker, who functions within the formal agency setting and to whom clients usually come with some degree of awareness of the services of the agency, the street club worker is a stranger who enters the lives of the boys without their request for help.

A. Basic principles and assumptions

As a basis for work with street clubs, the following principles were formulated by the Youth Board staff:

1. Participation in a street club, like participation in any natural group, is a part of the growing up process of adolescence. Such primary group associations possess potentialities for positive growth and development. Through such a group, the individual can gain security and develop positive ways of living with other individuals. Within the structure of his group the individual can develop such characteristics as loyalty, leadership, and community responsibility.

2. While the protection of the community at times necessitates the use of repressive measures in dealing with the antisocial street clubs, these methods do not bring about basic changes in attitudes or behavior.

3. Street club members can be reached and will respond to sympathy, acceptance, affection, and understanding when approached by adults who possess these characteristics and reach out to them on their own level.

4. The positive relationship that is developed between a worker and a street club can serve as a catalytic agent for modifying antisocial attitudes and be-

3-cv-00547-O Document 20-2 Filed 10/06/23 Page 464 of 555 Pa

havior. This relationship can also be used to enable the individual member to meet his needs in more positive ways.

5. To be effective, work with street clubs must be coordinated, unified, and applied on a saturation basis.

6. Because of the close relationship that workers necessarily must develop with club members, and because of such factors as group loyalty, distrust, and fear of other clubs, it is imperative that a worker be assigned to only one club.

On the basis of these assumptions, the following goals were formulated:

1. Reduction of antisocial behavior, particularly street fighting.
2. Friendly relationships with other street clubs.
3. Increased democratic participation within the club.
4. Broadened social horizons.
5. Responsibility for self-direction.
6. Improved personal and social adjustment of the individual.
7. Improved community relations.

In terms of implementing these principles the sine qua non was the establishment of positive meaningful relationships with the clubs and their members. Three phases are involved in building such relationships. They include (1) locating the club, (2) establishing contact, (3) gaining acceptance, and (4) terminating relations.

Historically, the council doesn't work in an area unless a priority need is demonstrated by that area. Frequently community leaders and lay people contact the agency indicating that a gang problem exists. If it is evident that the area in question can use our services, again on a priority basis, a survey team will be assigned to do a thorough study of the area. The survey team will be concerned with most of the following: the ethnic composition of the population, the nature of population shifts, the history of the neighborhood, the quantity and quality of existing social services, and income level of population. They will seek information on gangs previously and currently active in the vicinity around such areas as their size, structure, ethnic composition, hangouts, social and antisocial activities, contact with community agencies, viz., PAL, CYO, Board of Education, JAB, etc.

This preliminary part of the survey is done systematically. Lists of community resources are compiled and workers are assigned specific contacts. The job then entails an intepretation of the survey and the function of the Council of Social and Athletic Clubs. Very little contact is made with the youngsters at this point although the workers will be noting their impressions. After this information is pulled together, the locations of groups are charted on a map and areas of focus are then indicated. An attempt is made at this point to determine big name groups. Workers are then asked to pinpoint the groups and give a current evaluation of their status. The worker frequently arranges an introduction to groups through community center personnel. When this is possible he explains to the group members his survey plan and the function of the agency. He tells the group that he'll be around the neighborhood for a few weeks, and sometimes gets introduced to the club's officers, i. e., the president, vice president, war councilor, etc.

Where direct introduction is not possible, the worker will utilize the "hanging around" method. By observing pool rooms, candy stores, hallways, and street corners, introducing himself to small-business men in contact with teen-agers, and speaking with youngsters themselves, his knowledge of the community broadens and he becomes known to the neighborhood. Regarded as a curiosity, the worker continually explains his job. He is careful not to commit himself as being assigned to any particular group or neighborhood. Throughout this survey the worker records his contacts for he will eventually have to organize this material in a specific form.

At this point the survey team has produced a large body of knowledge. Many groups have been contacted by workers. Those high priority groups we have met have been described thoroughly enough for the agency to assign workers to specific groups. The club has been located; we now concern ourselves with establishing contact. The worker approaches the clubs from a new aspect: he is no longer on a survey; he is assigned to them. The members are upset. It is one thing to have someone ask them questions and leave, but it is quite another thing to have an adult "hanging around." The reaction again is one of suspicion: "You're a cop." The worker responds to this by structuring his role. He explains that his job is to help the members to do the things they want to do such as trips, organize teams, hold club meetings, etc. Although they're interested in this aspect of the job, they're still concerned about the worker's relationship to the police. The worker then informs the groups that he

is not a policeman but as a citizen member of the community and street-club worker, he cannot condone behavior which represents a danger to the community or the gang member himself. This applies specifically in three areas: (1) Potential or actual gang fights, (2) individual possession of firearms, (3) sale of narcotics. In these instances the worker will notify his supervisor who in turn will notify the police. It is essential that all club members understand this thoroughly, as the acceptance of this interpretation is a key factor in the developing process of relationships.

We have now contacted the group and structured our role around programing and relationship to authority. The next process is that of gaining acceptance. The group begins to test the worker: Why does he like them? How far can they go? Will he still accept them if they're "bad"? The worker undergoes a series of tests as the group tries to learn about him. They're concerned about his salary, future, marital status, past achievements, etc. They get hostile and rebel against his relationship with authority. Then they calm down and tell him they don't need him around. The worker, during these stages of contact, structuring, and gaining acceptance tends to concentrate on the leadership group. He learns a great deal about internal group dynamics and assesses individual and group needs.

The worker provides small group program experiences, movies, trips downtown; he arranges to use a gymnasium or a clubroom. Even though the group responds to these activities, in many instances the antisocial orientation is so strong that members continue to be involved with police and courts. The worker makes prison and court visits and brings word to the group of the members who are in difficulty. The results of police action give the worker a chance to stress the society at large's reaction to serious antisocial behavior.

The worker has been servicing the group for some months now, and his concern becomes that of deepening and intensifying his relationship. The youngsters understand his job, they trust him, and are having a satisfying experience with an adult. The worker understands and anticipates their needs. He provides a stable source of service to them; he listens and is warm and considerate.

The worker and group have now shared a number of experiences; these serve as an anchor in discussions and much time is spent reliving some of these. By this time the group should be either involved in a community center or have a satisfactory ongoing social program as provided by the worker. The problems earlier encountered around program are now relatively few; so that the worker has more time to concentrate upon individual personal problems, group clique or splintering problems, or problems of radical group change which require supportive use of relationship by the worker. This tends to ease the change of status as the group becomes socialized and leadership functions and group tone alters. The worker at varying stages has made referral for jobs or family counseling services. He makes home visits at individual members' requests or on his own judgment, aided by his supervisor.

When the group is no longer fighting, is integrated into community servicing agencies, and the internal strength of group members gained during the worker-street club relationship are adequate, the worker begins to consider termination. He evaluates with his supervisor the group's position and a plan for termination is formulated. Frequently, the worker informs the group that he is leaving them 1 month before. He usually diminishes service in terms of the number of field contacts per week. There is an accent on program, farewell parties, and possibly a closing bus trip and picnic. The worker evaluates for the group their progress and plans for the future. There is always an understanding that the worker and the agency remain available to the member after the formal termination of relationship.

In dealing with the "fighting street club" or gang, we have had to evolve special techniques. Primary among these is the process called mediation.

Mediation

Mediation meetings are an absolutely essential process utilized by the Council of Social and Athletic Clubs. Once conflict develops between individuals, groups, nations, etc., the civilized approach that mankind has learned is to sit down, discuss the grievances, compromise differences, and work toward common agreements.

Once a conflict has developed between two street clubs, the workers of both groups involved should begin at once to attempt to determine the cause of the conflict. In addition to talking with the youngsters, the workers should be in contact with any who can shed light on the problem.

3-cv-00547-O Document 20-2 Filed 10/06/23 Page 466 of 555 Pa

Once the difficulties are known, each worker should concentrate on talking out the problems with the leader and members of their respective groups. Close coordination between both workers through the unit supervisor is imperative.

When a worker senses a point of readiness on the part of his group for a mediation, he should communicate this information to his supervisor, worker, or workers involved. A series of preparatory sessions should be held with the members of each group separately. It is vitally important that the real leader of each faction of both conflict groups be involved in this process.

Grievances should be outlined and discussed as well as suggestions and agreements for resolving the conflict. Once the proposed grievances and potential agreements are clarified, the worker from each group should attend meetings of the opposite group along with the group's own worker so that both groups will have advance knowledge of each other's grievances and objectives.

In terms of timing the process described up to this point should be paced to the readiness of the groups. The groups should not be pressured.

Once mediation is agreed upon, prompt action should be taken to locate a mutually acceptable neutral place. At times, because of neighborhood tensions it might be necessary to keep the location of the site confidential until the time of the meeting. Next an appropriate person, one of dignity, respect, and understanding, should be selected as arbitrator. The use of the impartial arbitrator contributes the following:

1. Lends a sense of dignity and control to the meeting.
2. It insures the presence of an impartial objective non-Youth Board salaried person's presence as an observer who can verify, if necessary, as to the conduct and nature of the meeting.
3. Gives the agency an opportunity to involve lay people in better understanding its work.

In terms of the representatives of the groups who are to attend the meeting, they should assemble and be met by their worker and his supervisor, and any additional workers that may be indicated, in their own neighborhoods. Even though it has been previously agreed that no weapons can be carried, each youngster involved should be carefully searched. If girls are involved in the meeting arrangements will, of course, have to be made for the services of a female social worker. Close communication is essential as it is important that one group gets settled and acclimated to the meeting room before the second group arrives. A period of 10 to 20 minutes is suggested. Upon arrival before entering the meeting room each group should be searched again.

The meeting should be attended by the arbitrator, a person from the administrative staff of the council, the two supervisors involved, the worker for each group and, depending on the seriousness of the tension, additional workers if necessary. Again it is a question of not having too few workers so as to be able to handle the situation, yet on the other there should not be so many that the youngsters involved are smothered.

In regard to the arbitrator, a briefing session should have been held with him prior to the meeting at which he learns something of the background of each group, the conflict between them, and grievances and objectives, as well as the names of the representatives of each group.

The meeting should be turned over to the arbitrator who combines understanding, a sense of confidence, and at the same time a crispness of approach.

Usually primary spokesmen for each group have been decided upon. The arbitrator then elicits the grievances of both groups on a give-and-take basis. This litany may take anywhere from 1 hour to 1½ hours and at times feelings will run high. During points of the meeting when hostility is running high, the arbitrator and staff can be most helpful if they remain calm and keep the meeting moving.

If the mediator gets blocked in the handling of the meeting, the staff—usually the top administrative person and not the workers involved—should be prepared to actively assist the mediator. This is not a taking over of the meeting from the mediator.

Also the arbitrator and/or the administrative person should be prepared, if situations get too excited or tense or deadlocked, to call brief recess periods for private discussion between each group and their workers and supervisors. This should be done sparingly, only when necessary.

Finally, agreement proposals should be elicited from both sides and thoroughly discussed. Once there is a meeting of the minds they should be carefully phrased and ratified verbally by both groups.

Most times, because of the suspicion and distrust on the part of both groups, the agreements and subsequent truce should be set for a definite short-range period to give both groups a chance to try it out and not involve them in something that seems too large or overwhelming for them. If this is the case, a date, preferably within a month, should be set for a second meeting. In the interim a machinery for handling violations of the agreement should be set up. This usually involves the workers of both groups and designated representatives of each group.

The fair one

At times during the first mediation meeting, while grievances are being aired, both groups may feel that they cannot settle their differences by words alone and a fair fight is proposed. This process should never be promoted or introduced by staff and when it can be avoided every effort should be made to do so, but when there is no alternative except continued conflict, careful arrangements should be made for a "fair one" in a gymnasium with proper athletic equipment including boxing gloves, a competent referee, and sufficient personnel to keep the situation under control. The attendance at such meetings should be limited solely to the participants, staff, referee, etc. Again the place of such an event should be confidential and the outcome impartial, and, if the groups so desire, also confidential. In other words, it is invariably the desire of both groups that no decision be reached in such contests.

Again the local police should be aware of the fact that the "fair one" is going to be held, where and when, etc. Again also no publicity should be given to the event.

Statement Regarding the Treatment of the Adolescent Offender in the New York City Department of Correction

(By Frederick C. Rieber, Deputy Commissioner)

The new Brooklyn House of Detention for Men, located at 275 Atlantic Avenue, Brooklyn 1, N. Y., was built at a cost of approximately $11 million to replace the antiquated, century-old bastille-like fortress known as the Raymond Street Jail.

While the new Brooklyn House of Detention for Men was originally built to replace the old Raymond Street jail, the Department of Correction faced serious problems of overcrowding and proper segregation of its adolescent charges in its various borough detention facilities, and the omnipresent adolescent-delinquency problem was causing grave concern in the community at large. In our city, all male adolescents over 16 years of age, if they could not afford bail or if they had been declared unbailable by the court, had been held by the Department of Correction in one of its four male detention institutions. They were detained for periods ranging from 1 day to a year or more, and yet at no time during this administration had these adolescents been permitted to be doubled up in one cell, or come in contact with the adult detainees.

The average daily population of these adolescents (16–20) throughout the department runs about 500 to 700 daily, approximately 12,000 yearly, and is spread out in the 4 detention institutions. There formerly was no program of counseling, social service, educational or recreational services available. Recognizing that our detention institutions were vital stations on the road of criminal procedure on which the inmate traveled to the official disposition of his case, the commissioner in the early part of 1957 designated the new Brooklyn institution as the department's adolescent remand shelter, because such a facility, though in the planning stages, was not available. She then transferred all detained adolescents to the new Brooklyn House of Detention for Men, from the various detention sites. At that time she stated, "The pioneering program in counseling and rehabilitation which was started on July 28, 1955, as an experimental pilot project at the Manhattan House of Detention for Men, for the adolescents being held for court disposition, has proved to us that it is in our detention institutions that the most damaging first impression is made on our youth, and that every human effort must be bent toward making it a constructive experience. We must, and intend to, use all the resources and techniques of our social, medical, psychiatric and psychological, vocational and guidance counseling services, and all other available tools for reeducation in our detention institutions, particularly as they involve our youth. Our correctional rehabilitation programs must

3-cv-00547-O Document 20-2 Filed 10/06/23 Page 468 of 555 Pa

start in detention before the delinquent pattern is further set. It is false economy to defer full implementation of a good overall rehabilitation program, and will cost far more, economically and socially, to wait until inmates are committed to a sentence institution. By that time it may be too late."

The new institution is of fireproof construction, has a cell capacity for 817 inmates. There are 28 dayrooms, 2 gymnasiums, a library, study hall, 2 recreation roofs, and an auditorium with chapel accouterments. The facilities permit extensive classification and segregation programs, modern medical treatment, provision for recreation and religious needs, closed circuit TV, a physical interior as light, airy, and clean as modern design will permit, and an organization of functional units to conform with modern prison management methods.

Immediately upon admission to the institution each adolescent must go through a comprehensive series of interviews and examinations in order to determine his physical, social, educational, and psychological needs. The process begins with a shower and a complete medical and physical examination by the institutional doctor. He is then given institutional clothing and his street clothes are cleaned before being returned to him. The youth is then temporarily assigned to a cell on the fifth floor, which is the reception section. The following day he is given a complete battery of psychological tests in order to evaluate his personality and emotional maturity. His permanent housing assignment is made according to his age, past record, type of offense, type of group he will best get along with and whether or not he will be a behavior problem during his stay. For proper supervision, prevention of contamination of first offenders and recidivists, a program has been developed to keep them beneficially occupied, provide for a release of tensions, and modification of hostile attitudes. A scientific classification and housing program is in effect throughout the entire institution during the adolescent's stay there. To the best of our knowledge this is the first such program in penology for detention cases.

Our surveys have indicated that close to 80 percent of the adolescents detained will be released back to the community rather than being sentenced to a correctional institution. The rehabilitation program thus is not only geared for adjustment to institutional life but to an attempt to change attitudes toward society and to return him as a law-abiding citizen to the community. A social investigator provides the necessary social services toward this end. He contacts families, refers parents to the institutional staff member working with the youth, counsels individuals, makes community contacts for the family and the detainee, and provides employment referrals where required.

The religious needs of the adolescents are provided by five chaplains who conduct services for the various religious denominations weekly and on special religious holidays. About 60 percent of the boys attend these services on a voluntary basis. The chaplains provide individual spiritual guidance as well for those youths who request it. This phase of the rehabilitation program is one of the department's most important services to the youths and their families.

Another aspect of the rehabilitation services is the institutional recreation program. The adolescents are kept constructively occupied from morning to night. Each morning and afternoon groups of approximately 120 are taken to the gymnasium and the open roofs for basketball, softball, volleyball, and other physical activities. Quiet games, such as checkers, chess, and scrabble are provided for them in the dayrooms on their housing floors. Television is also available. These activities are supervised by the assistant supervisor of recreation, 6 recreation officers and 4 part-time recreation leaders. The librarian provides a selection of approved books to the inmate population.

Although a majority of the inmates had discontinued their education on their own volition prior to being arrested, one-third (approximately 100) of the 15-, 16-, and 17-year-olds had their schooling interrupted during their stay in the Brooklyn House of Detention for Men. The commissioner of correction has urged that a "600"-type school program, conducted by the Board of Education of the city of New York, be instituted. It is intended that qualified teachers from the New York City "600" schools be provided by the board of education so that by continuing the schooling of these boys, they will be motivated to complete their education when returned to society. Plans are being formulated to renovate a two-story wing of the building to provide classroom facilities.

The department of correction definitely needs an institution built specifically for the housing and programing necessary to take care of the city's adolescents being held for trial or court disposition. Currently it is planned to erect one adolescent remand shelter (male) on a city-owned site in the Borough of the

3-cv-00547-O Document 20-2 Filed 10/06/23 Page 469 of 555 Pa

Bronx. As was stated previously, this institution is still in the planning phase. Funds for preliminary architectural plans have been allocated.

Some youngsters upon conviction and sentence are transferred to the adolescent section of the Rikers Island Penitentiary. This institution is in close liaison with the new Brooklyn House of Detention and reports concerning social data, personality patterns, and institutional adjustment are forwarded with the youngster. More intensive classification and treatment programs are in operation at Rikers Island than the Brooklyn detention facility could implement due to the rapid turnover there. At Rikers Island, youths are again segregated from adults and, on the basis of previous and institutional testing, are housed in 1 of 4 dormitories with youths of their own personality patterns. Thus, the aggressive youngster is kept from the passive adolescent. After intensive classification by the classification team consisting of psychiatrists, psychologists, rehabilitation counselors, social workers, vocational guidance staff, and representatives of the educational program, the youth enters upon a program of vocational training, academic instruction, if needed, recreation, and therapy. The approximately 350 adolescents at Rikers Island may select 1 of 16 vocational training areas such as printing, automotive maintenance, body and fender work, tailoring, carpentry, metal operations, and others. Academic education is provided as well, ranging from literacy work through high-school-level instructions.

Because these youths have been the failures of mass education, class sizes have been limited to about 15 where individual instruction is assured. Upon request, or if his actions deem it necessary, the adolescent is taken into individual or group therapy by the youth diagnostic team. Supervised recreation is stressed, so that all free time can be converted into beneficial activities. This may take the form of arts and craftwork, viewing TV, or participating in intramural athletic events and talent shows. Vocational guidance is handled by two rehabilitation counselors who are in contact with public and private agencies and employers who are apprized of the adolescent's work potential, interests, and institutional training. An adolescent inmate council has been formed so that direct liaison might be effected between the youths and the institutional administration and a feeling of self-determination encouraged.

There are many serious gaps in the department's programing for adolescents. Aftercare work is practically nonexistent though the department hopes to initiate some work in this area through private funds on an experimental basis. Research is sadly deficient because adequate and trained personnel is not at our disposal. Recruitment is slow and staff turnover rapid due to the salary levels at which the department is authorized to hire. However, present achievements have been dramatic and gratifying when compared with past results. As Commissioner Kross has so aptly stated, "We have pulled ourselves out of the depths and are now on a plateau from which we can finally see the vast mountains we must climb ahead." Thank you for your interest in our work.

[From the Kings County Grand Juror, May 1957, official organ of the Kings County Grand Jurors' Association, Inc.]

DEPARTMENT OF CORRECTION PROFILE

"One of the prerogatives of our grand juries is free access to the public prisons. Our proper interest in these penal institutions demands knowledge about the agency in charge of them * * *."

At present the department has 1,569 uniformed (custodial) and 706 civilian employees, a total full time staff of 2,275 to carry on its big job. The pay of its employees, particularly the civilian staff, is sadly inadequate. This is in the face of the fact that workers in prison institutions have to be a higher type of personnel. They deal with human beings in detention and must, perforce, be capable of responsibility above that demanded or expected of personnel in other city departments or private firms. And then there is the ever-present hazard involved in their work environment * * *. Surely men and women must be dedicated to service above the ordinary to work for such dismal wages in penal institutions. One wonders that they make themselves available at all * * *.

Heading the department of correction since the beginning of 1954 is Commissioner Anna M. Kross, the capable and energetic lady of distinguished record as a lawyer, judge, and social worker. Concerning her efforts as commissioner of correction, we quote very briefly from a New York Times' editorial of December

29, 1954, captioned "Correction versus Custody": "Commissioner of Correction Kross is applying to the problem of overcrowded city prisons a philosophy born of wide experience and far-reaching vision. Since she took office on January 1, 1954, this philosophy has taken concrete shape in a program that deserves public recognition and support."

Currently carrying the big load of the department's work with Commissioner Kross is her able lieutenant, Deputy Commissioner Frederick C. Rieber. A quiet man, as tireless on the job as he is highly capable, he should be better known to us * * *. A lawyer by profession * * * during World War II he served in the United States Army Intelligence * * * and * * * following his war service he worked 8 years with the New York City Department of Investigation. He became thoroughly familiar with the functions and operations of the correction and police departments and other agencies. This tied in appropriately with his comprehensive knowledge of all courts, their procedures and practices * * *. He is in full charge of the department's reorganized legal division * * *.

There are other key men who deserve notice for the good work they are doing in the administration of this understaffed, overworked department of correction. Space limitations at this time prevent us from giving them due recognition here.

The New York City Department of Correction is not a self-seeking agency with cushy jobs set up for political favorites. It does not have a highly paid public relations staff to sell the public on its program and needs. Its rehabilitation work is apt ot be misunderstood and ridiculed out of public ignorance and community indifference. Many citizens, grand jurors among them, properly perturbed about increasing crime, particularly among youths, would have the department of correction operate as the department of punishment. No mollycoddling attempts at rehabilitation for them. Commissioner Kross doesn't think it's mollycoddling to try to reeducate and rehabilitate first offenders, juveniles, and adolescents.

It will take a lot of money to set up a good rehabilitation system. "I am convinced," says Mrs. Kross, "that a dollar spent to keep a youth from becoming a hardened criminal will save the taxpayers 20 times as much in prison upkeep." We think it's worth a good try, at the least.

The aims and program of the department of correction should be better known to the community. It needs and deserves the support of the public. And grand jurors may fittingly be in the forefront of that support.

STATEMENT OF JOSEPH H. LOUCHHEIM, DEPUTY COMMISSIONER, NEW YORK STATE DEPARTMENT OF SOCIAL WELFARE, SUBMITTED TO THE SUBCOMMITTEE TO INVESTIGATE JUVENILE DELINQUENCY

Mr. Chairman, members of the Senate Subcommittee To Investigate Juvenile Delinquency, I am happy to report that New York State has made substantial progress in extending its training-school facilities in the last 3 years. For the first time since 1947—when the State set up an annex facility for 60 boys at New Hampton—the State has established additional major training-school facilities. These include the Otisville State Training School for Boys, with a capacity of 276, set up in 1955; and the Highland State Training School for Boys, with a capacity of 140, set up last month.

Other facilities were added, increasing the bed capacity from 1,292 at the beginning of 1955 to a capacity of 1,769 today, an increase of 37 percent.

In addition, we have extended our institutional services substantially by increasing our training school staffs from 900 to 1,125 in the last 3 years. Most of these 225 new positions were professional posts.

I should like briefly to give the background of these important developments. I want to make it crystal clear at the very outset that the division of State institutions and agencies in the State department of social welfare, which is the unit of government responsible for the State training schools, is involved in the treatment and not the prevention of delinquency. Nothing that we do, except in an extremely indirect way, can serve to prevent delinquency. In a State as large and complex as New York, there is of necessity a division of responsibility among the units of State government for various aspects of the delinquency problem.

In order to understand how the State training schools function in the treatment of delinquency, it is important to understand certain basic elements which underlie the treatment of delinquents in New York State. The first of these elements is the concept of State and local responsibility. The local children's court, through its associated probation services and such other resources as mental hygiene clinics, determines in the first instance whether the child is delinquent and

3-cv-00547-O Document 20-2 Filed 10/06/23 Page 471 of 555 Pa
what shall be done with him. It decides at what point a child shall be committed to an institution for treatment and care and within some broad limitations it decides whether this shall be at a State training school or a private institution. As with the whole broad field of child welfare, which is supervised by the State department of social welfare, we believe that local responsibility for delinquent children is extremely important, because it means that the individual child is handled within the context of the community in which he lives and that the full resources of the community are used in treating him by those who are closest to those resources.

The second basic element in the institution treatment of delinquency in New York State is the relationship between public and private institutions caring for delinquent children. Private institutions for the care of delinquents exist to a unique degree in New York State and for many years took care of the majority of children committed to institutions. Even today they care for 40 percent of the committed delinquents. Since January 1, 1956, the State on a 50–50 basis has shared with the localities the cost of caring for children in the private institutions and the localities have shared equally with the State the cost of care in State institutions.

The responsibilities and programs of the State training schools cannot be clearly understood without an understanding of the private schools. The private schools historically have played a very important part in the institution treatment of delinquents. They have pioneered in many areas of institution treatment such as psychiatric and casework services. They have been in a position to experiment. They have had a distinct advantage in their ability to control their intake. Because of this and some other factors they have to a considerable degree absorbed the more treatable delinquents, the milder problems, and indeed have been in a position to return untreatable cases to the courts for recommitment to the State training schools.

The result of this is that the State training schools have served and still do serve by and large as the agency for the care and treatment of that group of delinquents that is least amenable to treatment. Their charges have been screened through all the local resources of court and probation services. They have, in part, been rejected by the private institutions, or have failed in private institutions. The responsibility of the State training schools therefore is considerably complicated by this screening process which has eliminated the more hopeful cases before the point of commitment.

Through the years until 1950, the need for institutions for delinquents has decreased rather than increased. Since the establishment of children's courts in New York State in 1922 and until 1949 (except for World War II), admissions to State and private institutions decreased from 3,000 a year to less than 1,500 a year. This decrease cannot be explained except on the basis of the expansion of community services—child welfare, mental hygiene, and probation—which by their nature limit the use of institutions to the more serious delinquents. As a result, private institutions gradually closed through the years, and the capacities of the State training schools decreased.

There was little room in institutions therefore to meet the increase which began in 1950, and pressure of intake was serious by 1952 when commitments reached the prewar rate of 1,800. By 1955, the rate had gone up an additional 600, to 2,400. The impact of this increase, however, was almost entirely on the State training schools. The intake in private institutions increased only 25 percent from 1949 to 1956, while the admissions to State training schools increased 103 percent.

To meet this sharp increase in the demand for institution care, the citizen group that heads up the department, the State board of social welfare, acted to expand the bed capacity in existing institutions, to establish two new facilities, to increase training school staff, to extend institutional programs, and to strengthen our central office consultation service.

As a result today New York State is providing a considerably expanded and differentiated program of State training school care.

At Hudson, there is a training school for girls which serves the entire State and operates its own parole program.

At Industry, we have a training school for boys, which serves the western and northern counties, covering most of the State and operates its own aftercare program.

At Warwick, Otisville, and Highland we have institutions serving boys from the greater New York area and, with a full operation of Highland, will include counties up as far as Albany. This plan resulted from the determination that,

3-cv-00547-O Document 20-2 Filed 10/06/23 Page 472 of 555 Pa

with the opening of Otisville, geography was no longer the single suitable basis for classifying the State training schools. Very careful exploration of the best way to group children for care led to the differentiation of Otisville and Warwick to serve two different age groups within the same geographical area. We did this because we found that age is the best rough guide to the differing needs of children in institutional care. When the school at Highland was opened this year, the same principle was applied, so that Highland is geared to the children 13 years of age and younger, Warwick admits the 14-year-olds, and Otisville, the 15- and 16-year-olds. There is considerable flexibility in the use of the three schools since, while age is the first classification step, ease of transfer makes it possible to move children back and forth between Warwick and Highland or between Warwick and Otisville as the needs of the children require.

This three-institution plan also involved establishing the Home Service Bureau in New York City as the service agency for Highland, Warwick, and Otisville, to carry on the field work and parole supervision formerly carried by the individual training school. The disadvantages of a separate field agency have been counteracted largely by maintaining effective liaison between the Home Service Bureau and the institutions which it serves.

At New Hampton, we have the annex, a specialized security-treatment unit serving Industry, Warwick, and Otisville. Established 11 years ago as an experimental unit for the most seriously disturbed delinquent boys, it has demonstrated its value as an integral part of a diversified treatment program and serves as a model in its field.

While all these moves have been dictated by our pressing problem for space, we have intensified our efforts to improve the effectiveness of the job we have to do.

We have established certain basic standards which we are trying to adhere to although all of them are not possible under present high-intake conditions. We believe that 400 is the maximum institution size which can be operated effectively. While this is in contrast to some of the thinking around the country, we have found that the larger populations within some limits can make possible a varied internal program to meet the needs of different children and can provide a number of special programs which would be hard to provide for a smaller group. I have in mind not only psychiatric and casework services but also remedial education programs, recreational activities and vocational training. We believe that within a given institution the size of the cottage unit should not exceed 20. We have established our school programs on the basis of 15 children to a class in grades 5 and up and 10 children in grades 4 and below. We have established caseload standards which are not ideal but which are substantial advances over what has been provided in the past. We now provide for maximum caseloads of 80 for fieldworkers, including resident and parole cases, and 40 for special caseloads such as boarding care, parole residence homes and annex parolees. We are aiming toward a standard of 40 to 50 children per resident caseworker.

Within this broad departmental framework, we believe that the best development of each institution is achieved by allowing maximum flexibility so that each institution is free to explore the programs and services that will be most effective for it. The extent to which our institutions have developed imaginative and effective programs, which enjoy wide recognition, reflects the degree to which we have succeeded in realizing this flexibility.

(Articles submitted by Abraham G. Novick, superintendent, New York State Training School for Girls, for inclusion in the record.)

Classification and Treatment

By Abraham G. Novick, Superintendent, New York State Training School for Girls, Hudson, N. Y.; President, National Association of Training Schools and Juvenile Agencies. Paper Prepared for Publication in the January Issue of the National Probation and Parole Association Journal

Juvenile institutions in the United States vary in function, organization, and services to such a degree that it is impossible to discuss the subject of classification and treatment without some frame of reference. The small treatment center catering to 25 youngsters, for example, is quite different from the larger private training school with a controlled intake. The latter, in turn, differs

3-cv-00547-O Document 20-2 Filed 10/06/23 Page 473 of 555 Pa
markedly from the public training school, which has an unselected intake. and in most States has little control over its size. In many States the antisocial act itself, as determined by the court, becomes primary in the decision to send a youngster to a public training school. Where community treatment facilities are meager, the institution will receive even mental defectives and psychotics who have been adjudicated as delinquents. Fortunately, there are beginning to be some organized misgivings about utilizing the State training school as a dumping ground. Throughout the country, efforts are being made to examine the role of the State training school in the total child welfare field, although the process is still in its infancy.[1]

Because classification and treatment programs in large and undifferentiated institutions are much more difficult to organize and put into operation than in settings which select its clientele, this article will confine itself to programs within State training schools. Even in States where there are central diagnostic facilities, with commitments made to parent bodies rather than to individual institutions, or in States where institutions do have some limited power to reject adolescents who are obviously incapable of mentally or physically benefiting from the school's program, personality variations in the youngsters received are so prevalent as to place a premium on a varied institutional program. The training school, therefore, must have within its program some means of differentiating individuals according to their needs and requirements.

Two trends are noticeable in the training school field today. One is the establishment of a centralized diagnostic center for statewide institutional placement. and the other is an increase and sharpening of diagnostic facilities within the individual institution itself where centralized facilities are nonexistent. The idea of a centralized facility seems to be gaining considerable support. It is an interesting phenomenon that in many areas of the country, recognition and authorization are given to the establishment of diagnostic centers before institutional facilities are available to carry out recommendations. The word "diagnosis" carries with it a magical connotation in this day and age. Legislators are apt to support the establishment of a diagnostic center where institutional treatment units may be meager and unproductive. For a central diagnostic service to be effective, it is necessary to have considerable differentiation in treatment facilities. The same criticism can, of course, be leveled at diagnostic units that are developed at the institutional level where insufficient treatment services exist.

Regardless of what facilities are available, however, the purpose of diagnostic services are the same whether centrally or locally situated. It is necessary to know as much as possible about a youngster before he can be properly placed.

CLASSIFICATION PROCEDURES

Placement begins with choice of institution in areas fortunate enough to have such an opportunity. It then involves placement in a cottage unit or living group that would best meet the requirements of the youngster involved. It includes an individualized assignment to a school or vocational program. It also involves placing the boy or girl with adult leaders who are most qualified to meet the needs of the youngster. If the problems of the child are best met through close supervision, he would not be helped if he is assigned to a cottage unit with considerable freedom in controls. Placement also means consideration of the personality make-up of the group to which the boy or girl is assigned. If he is withdrawn, fearful and anxious, for example, assignment to a group of aggressive boys will only increase his insecurity and prevent adjustment.

Considerable knowledge of the juvenile must be secured in order to be able to make such decisions. This is usually obtained through community social histories. psychological testing, personal interviews, and observation. The reception process, however, is not only diagnostic in character but is also the beginning of treatment. It is during this period that the youngster has his

[1] A workshop on State training schools was held at the 1957 American Orthopsychiatric Association Annual Conference, and another is scheduled for the 1958 conference. The Eastern Regional Conference of the Child Welfare League has scheduled an institute on this subject in 1958. The Children's Bureau and National Association of Training Schools and Juvenile Agencies have jointly issued a publication on Guides and Goals for Institutions Serving Delinquent Children. The same two organizations, together with Rutgers University, and with funds from the child welfare division of the American Legion. sponsored a staff training institute for institutional executives in the public training school field in April 1957.

20873—58——8

KnifeRights MSJ App.000468

initial experience with the institution and its staff members. He receives an introduction to institutional policy and the methods by which it operates. Initial experiences may very often color the manner in which the youngster will adjust to his future placement, although they may not be conclusive. Experiences during reception can carry over for some period after the youngster has been assigned to a cottage and program.

Where a central diagnostic facility is not available, the desired information can be secured by placing the youngster in a special living unit designed for reception or orientation purposes. Here his behavior can be observed by his cottage parents or group leaders. A social worker interviews him and evaluates his feelings and problems. He is seen by the educational director to ascertain his attitudes toward education and his problems regarding learning. He will evaluate the boy's past school achievement and learn about his vocational interests for academic and vocational placement. He is interviewed by the chaplain to determine the extent to which religion may have played a role in his past life and what it might be able to do for the youngster while he is at the school and for his future adjustment. He is given a thorough physical examination, and health problems are noted. He is seen and tested by the psychologist who will evaluate the boy's personality. The psychiatrist interviews the boy and gives his diagnosis and prognosis as well as enumerating the youngster's strengths, weaknesses and needs. The psychiatrist will analyze the dynamics of the boy's development and make recommendations for care and treatment.

Institutions equipped with staff and facilities to organize such an orientation program (this is becoming much more common than otherwise, and is increasingly being recognized as a necessity in institutional administration) will usually plan for an assignment or classification committee meeting where findings and recommendations are presented. In order for committee deliberations to have greater meaning, there should be considerable sharing of ideas throughout the orientation period and not be confined to a single meeting. To bring this about, it is advisable to place in charge of the orientation process the clinical director or the person given the responsibility of directing care, training, and treatment in the institution.

With a reception period organized in this fashion, it is possible to secure a clear picture of a youngster's problems and needs. Recommendations would be made for cottage placement which would take into consideration its group structure and composition, as well as the nature of its leadership. The institution would be familiar with the youngster's interests and intelligence, his status requirements and past school achievement for appropriate school assignment and vocational placement.

GROUP AND INSTITUTIONAL SIZE

To have available a diagnostic picture of a youngster, would be useless if the institution does not possess the necessary facilities for treatment. There should be a sufficient number of group living units which would allow for variation in placement. If the training school is to individualize treatment, an intimate understanding of a youngster's drives, interests, and behavior patterns is required with opportunity for close relationships with adults. This can only be accomplished if groups are held small. No living or cottage group should be larger than 20. Fifteen would even be better but this might be too difficult to attain in the present scheme of things. Other groupings within the institution should also remain small in order to further individualization efforts. The size of these particular groups would be determined by their particular function. Academic class groups should not be larger than 15. Remedial class groups should have a maximum size of 5 to 8. Size of vocational groups should be related to the amount of facilities available to enable the youngster to be gainfully occupied throughout the period of class instruction. Club and special interest groups should also be small to permit considerable give and take among group members and their leader.

The larger the group, the greater the possibility of failure to recognize individual needs. The larger the group, the greater the possibility of group disturbances and the formation of subgroups with destructive characteristics. Informal groups are part and parcel of group living in general, whether in an institution or in the community, and other factors will produce them. However, the large group decreases the possibility of its members to respond to the leader's control and influence. It leads to peer control of the group and the retention of delinquent values.

3-cv-00547-O Document 20-2 Filed 10/06/23 Page 475 of 555 Pa

A large institution, in itself, can also inhibit desired treatment procedures. It has been recommended in many circles that the training school's capacity should be limited to 150 children.[2] No effective research has ever been instituted to determine optimum size of an institution. There is no question, however, that the larger the institution, the more difficult will it be to communicate treament concepts. More supervisory levels are required in organization and more people are involved in giving direct service. There is a greater danger of staff misunderstanding and even refusal to accept, either openly or surreptitiously, the administrative program. In the large insitution, the superintendent and his top assistants can easily be psychologically and physically removed from their clientele and from staff who have immediate contact with children.

There are a few positive factors in having large institutions. Possibilities for more staff and varied facilities are prevalent. More funds are apt to be authorized by legislatures and budget divisions, who are sensitive to numbers and size. Although the trend in this country is away from huge undifferentiated institutions to smaller facilities with specific functions, it is possible to decentralize treatment programs in larger institutions and overcome some of the negative features of large organizations.

An institution may be divided into a number of self-sufficient divisions, according to size and physical layout, each with its own staff and director functioning under a supervising superintendent. Classification of the divisions might be based on age, maturity, vocational and academic interests, supervisory controls, emotional problems, and similar factors, considered individually or in combination. Under such an organizational system, each division becomes almost an institution in itself, as far as care and treatment are concerned, with the added advantage of having centralized services based on the number of youngsters in the total institution rather than in the individual divisions. It requires additional personnel in the way of teachers, group leaders and social workers, as well as more facilities to serve a decentralized organization, but it individualizes program and service in large institutions.

INSTITUTIONAL ORGANIZATION FOR TREATMENT

Organization of treatment facilities and program is another important area of institutional administration. Present-day clinical services were primarily developed in community voluntary agencies, especially in child guidance and mental hygiene clinics. Unique eligibility requirements for aid evolved from these settings. The client or patient must want help and must be capable of entering into a meaningful relationship with the clinician. To seek such help implies possession of sufficient anxiety and recognition of need. In the case of children, one or both parents must usually become similarly involved. These concepts are in keeping with traditional American democratic principles and are a result of our heritage and cultural background. In fact, our traditions regarding individual initiative have made "authority" a nasty word in our vocabulary.

The training school, however, is an authoritative setting. The children it receives are committed via the children's courts against their will. It is not a voluntary process no matter how permissive the general climate of the institution may be. Yet authoritative institutions in their efforts to individualize their programs, largely at the encouragement and insistence of the clinical disciplines, have adopted the typical organization and methods of operation of the voluntary community agency in the treatment area. Institutions which have a plentiful supply of clinical personnel, assign their children to case workers on an individual basis, and efforts are made to help them with their problems of adjustment. Facilities with a small clinical staff usually limit their casework service to a few children who have unusual difficulties in making an adjustment. Psychiatrist, psychologist, and social worker become members of a clinical team and constitute a separate department in the organizational plan. The clinical team's relationship to other departments is usually defined in idealistic rather than in typical organizational and administrative terms. They are expected to work closely with the personnel having direct care responsibilities for the children but on a voluntary teaching basis, where possibly only those staff members who are interested and eager to receive understanding and

---

[2] Children's Bureau, National Association of Training Schools and Juvenile Agencies, Child Welfare League of America, American Psychiatric Association.

Case 4:23-cv-00547-O Document 20-2 Filed 10/06/23 Page 476 of 555 Pa

clarification of problems secure the benefit of clinical contact. On the other hand, those staff members who reject interpretations which require change on their part usually remain untouched by clinical influences.

There are two major, but very often conflicting, elements in training school administration in the country today. One is control and discipline, and the other is treatment. Cottage staff especially are conflicted by what appears to be two opposing forces. They are expected to keep control in their cottage units; in fact they are even rated on their ability to run a smooth organization. On the other hand, they are directed to individualize their approach and treat each child differently. This can be a divisive policy when discipline and control are at stake.

The conflict is not resolved through the traditional institutional organization of clinical and cottage services in separate departments. Clinical personnel do not have the responsibility for cottage operation. Their relationship is primarily advisory and heavily concentrated on individual adjustment rather than the concerns of the group. Cottage staff supervisors are usually too few in number and concerned primarily with group controls and cottage routines. Even assuming that there was a sufficient supply of cottage staff supervisors and that they were trained and experienced, the existence of two lines of opposing interests as defined administratively by function and duties would only continue the basic conflict of cottage staff. The cottage parent's dilemma is expressed in his complaint that if the social worker was required to care for 20 children she would not call for special treatment for the youngster in her caseload who has violated cottage regulations. The social worker, on the other hand, protests that the cottage parent lacks understanding of the child's behavior and the professional training which would make it possible for him to do a decent job. Very often, unconsciously perhaps, the conflict is furthered by the administration. Under pressure from the community, which is deeply concerned about runaways and aggressive behavior, the superintendent may be quite contented to have a cottage parent who is able to have control in his cottage unit even though clinical considerations may not be fully appreciated. When nothing is done in such a situation, status quo, of course, continues. In addition, delinquents have a brilliant knack in recognizing staff differences and playing one against the other to suit their own needs.

Another problem that must be taken into consideration in the administrative organization of treatment facilities is that of informal group formation by the children in the training school. The conflicts and problems of growing up and the struggles with the adult world can be tolerated and even rejected by the youngsters within the confines of their own groups. The delinquent adolescent can join his neighborhood gang which accepts and preserves the values that cannot be tolerated by the rest of the community. Peer relationships and groupings are just as important within the institution and serve a similar purpose. They counteract adult efforts to change their behavior and act as a bulwark in maintaining their personality structures and personal values. At the same time they offer protection and security to those involved. These informal groups do not necessarily have to be destructive in character, although their size, strength, and antisocial characteristics can be directly correlated to the extent to which the institution can direct their energies and focus their interests toward constructive goals.

The traditional form of institutional structure with clinical and cottage life personnel in separate departments makes very little dent in informal group activities. The effect of weekly clinical contacts, for example, is minimal in comparison to the influences of the children's own informal group leaders. Most of the youngsters seem to play one role in the clinical office and a completely different one in the cottage setting or in any other institutional group.

It has been the writer's experience that in those States where mental hygiene and school guidance clinics, family and child guidance agencies, probation services and other facilities of similar character and scope are available in sufficient number, the juveniles who are committed to the training school show very little anxiety about their behavior. A majority of those children who recognize and show sufficient concern about their problems are helped in their communities and are not committed. As a result, the clinician finds comparatively few children in the training school who have enough overt anxiety about their behavior to respond to a face-to-face contact, the typical tool of traditional clinical operations.

3-cv-00547-O Document 20-2 Filed 10/06/23 Page 477 of 555 Pa
NEW TREATMENT STRUCTURE

All of these factors, therefore, make it necessary to consider a different treatment structure than has been in existence heretofore. Modifications of traditional forms of treatment have been made in a few training schools in this country in recognition of the problems involved. One institutional treatment organization will be described in detail because of its sharp departure from the usual structural form.[3] This is especially true in the way the role of the social worker has been redefined.

In this new treatment structure, clinic and cottage life are eliminated as separate departments. Social workers are assigned to supervise the activities of the children and cottage staff in 1 or 2 cottage units. They have direct authority over the cottage staff and are required to offer supervision and guidance to the cottage parents in handling the youngsters under their direction. Cottage parents are looked upon as technicians with the professional supervision supplied by trained social workers. Social workers and cottage staff are thus responsible for a common treatment process. The latter share their total problems with their social worker supervisors, who are ready to help them resolve the complicated conflicts and decisions posed by the necessity to carry on disciplinary and treatment activities at the same time. The social workers, as supervisors, are expected to evaluate the cottage parents' strengths and weaknesses and help them develop on the job.

The social worker becomes involved in cottage disciplinary matters. "Discipline" and "authority" are sometimes anxiety-producing words in clinical circles. In actual practice, however, there are almost no settings in which clinical services are offered without authoritative connotations. Children, for example, do not come to child-guidance clinics under their own volition. When one considers the pain that is involved in revealing one's own inner thoughts and conflicts, as well as the resistance that is involved in change, the authoritative connotations in clinical services can be well understood. In addition, the setting of eligibility requirements and agency limitations of service also involve authority and discipline to the clients and patients concerned. Discipline or authority cannot be avoided; only the manner in which either is utilized is important to the treatment process. Experience of a year with the new treatment program has demonstrated that the traditional client-worker relationship is not affected by the stronger authoritative role played by the social worker. In fact, the feeling has been that the relationship is strengthened because the youngster must come to grips with his problems quickly, without being able to play one staff member against the other.

In addition to supervisory responsibilities, social workers direct their attention to the cottage group itself. The cottage group is the key area for treatment during the youngster's stay in the training school. What happens to him within the cottage group determines whether he is going to respond positively or continue his own way and means of avoiding change. The nature of the group climate therefore becomes a very important part of treatment; the failure to understand the way a youngster feels at a certain moment; the influence that such a child might have upon others within the group; the effects of rules, regulations, and procedures which may be obvious and necessary, but completely unacceptable to the group or its subgroups.

Social workers, in this phase of their duties, sit down with the group and cottage staff members to discuss everyday problems. The discussion might revolve around the meaning of a regulation, or the introduction of a rule to allow for total participation in a cottage activity. Should the cottage adopt special procedures for listening to certain television programs? Would the group prefer to stay up late one evening to watch a certain program and thereby be too tired to participate in another activity the next morning? What should be the proper clothing to wear to school? Problems of adjustment might be the topic, if appropriate for general group discussion. Why did a certain youngster get into difficulty and what were the group's feelings as to the manner in which the problem was handled. Suitable films and other visual aids might be utilized to stimulate discussion.

---

[3] New York State Training School for Girls, Hudson, N. Y. Another modified form of treatment organization is utilized at Hawthorne-Cedar Knolls School, Hawthorne, N. Y., where cottage parents and caseworkers have common supervisors.

3-cv-00547-O Document 20-2 Filed 10/06/23 Page 478 of 555 Pa

The purpose of this phase of the social worker's role is to permit children to participate in areas which are of immense concern to them. Decisions arrived at by adults alone are matters to fight and disregard. Individual violation of group deliberations, however, incurs the displeasure of peers. It might also result in unpleasant retaliations, but the reasons behind deviation also become a topic of discussion to deter group rejection. Conforming to group decisions is also furthered through group rewards for esprit de corps, such as attendance at special dances. Social workers are expected to participate in the group's activities, and as much as is possible and appropriate, become part of the group.

Another important role of the social worker in this treatment-organization plan is to work with those informal groups that are stable and not constantly changing in membership. Content may be in the form of activity, discussion, or in a combination of the two. Focus is on helping the subgroups make an adjustment to the total structured unit, participate in its activity and to assume meaningful and positive roles within the group. Discussion within these groups very often is similar to that of the larger structured grouping. The small, more homogeneous group, however, permits more personal involvement, encourages greater interaction among its members and can better satisfy individual needs. The group members share their difficulties and express themselves in a manner which is not noticeable in individual contacts.

Informal groups are encouraged to take on special tasks within the cottage unit in keeping with whatever skills they possess. Such groups within the institution have assumed responsibilities like making curtains for the cottage, preparing and caring for area flower gardens, making and selling various articles for the purpose of creating a cottage recreation fund, etc. Group incentives, through special rewards, plus the relationship that is developed with the social worker, permit energy and drives to be diverted from destructive pursuits to highly responsible transactions. Status and satisfaction achieved, supports further adaptation.

The social worker is also called upon to work with other types of small groups. Selection of membership is based on common interests or problems, personality factors or on other criteria that would create some homogeneity and promote group interaction.

Change of behavior does not usually take place without the development of some anxiety and guilt. Some of this can be handled within the group. The sharing of experience, the discussion of various problems, the support which staff and peers give to individual youngsters are anxiety- and guilt-allaying features. With some children this is not sufficient. They require individual attention which social workers are expected to offer. Contact does not necessarily have to be on a long-term basis. Very often 1 or 2 individual interviews in conjunction with group participation can allay the child's anxiety sufficiently for him to benefit from continued group contact.

Social workers in their everyday contact with the cottage group and other groupings, and being familiar with the needs of each youngster under their care, are in a position to determine who would require the individual interview, as well as how much of it would be needed.

The psychiatrist and psychologist in this organization plan act primarily as consultants to the social worker, in addition to having classification and diagnostic duties. Problems related to personality functioning and intelligence might be referred to the psychologist by the social worker for selected testing of the youngsters concerned. The psychiatrist is called in for consultations to analyze the dynamics of certain behavior patterns and to give advice as to approaches to these difficulties. Depending upon the amount of psychiatric time that is available, he sees a few youngsters in therapy, either individually or in groups. He is also utilized in case conferences as an aid to staff training and development, either as requested by the social worker concerned, in formal planned meetings by the director of the program, or in other areas of the institutional organization, such as the academic and vocational schools.

TREATMENT RESULTS

Experience with this new treatment structure has led to a number of conclusions on the part of the institution's administrative and treatment staff.

1. It eliminates the traditional conflict between cottage staff and clinical personnel, by making them both responsible for the same process with similar concerns.

2. It dynamically changes the focus and program content of peer groups so that new behavior patterns are constantly strengthened.

3-cv-00547-O Document 20-2 Filed 10/06/23 Page 479 of 555 Pa

3. It makes it possible for children to become conscious of a different way of securing satisfaction and status with a constant diminishing need to fight it.

4. It lessens the gap between authority, as represented by the institutional staff, and the youngsters themselves.

5. It deals directly with the key repository of delinquent values, through recognition of and work with informal groups.

6. It affords the necessary training and supervision of cottage staff who hold key responsibilities in institutional life.

7. The tendency of the delinquent to fool staff and play one member against the other is radically narrowed, requiring him to face up to his behavior.

8. It produces a climate that allows for children participation in rule setting and behavior control, with a corresponding lessening of superimposed methods of operation.

9. Cottage staff are happier, more accepting of suggestions, less rigid in their relationships with children, anxious to adopt treatment approaches, constantly seek out social work supervisors for advice around treatment needs of their youngsters, and concerned about gaining a reputation of running a good cottage. This is due to the fact that the new treatment structure transfers the conflict between treatment and control from cottage staff to social workers as supervisors, who are in a better position to resolve it. Cottage staff are no longer expected to be superhumans, competent in all areas of human endeavor.

CONCLUSIONS

Training schools in the United States today are in a period of transition from a custodial form of organization with simple goals to a treatment-oriented structure focused on individualization of program, change in personal values of their clients, and developing self-understanding and control, which have been superimposed on older custodial considerations. As a result, throughout the country, training schools are in different stages of development possessing features of the old as well as of the new. It is interesting, however, and very sound to see these institutions developing here and there, their own forms of treatment, designed to meet training-school problems, needs, and considerations. On its road toward developing into truly treatment-oriented institutions, they face considerably grave problems, such as unselected intake, undifferentiated and large populations, lack of appropriate staff, poor salaries in certain categories, and weak legislative and budgetary support. They are problems that are recognized, but are only slowly being overcome, with progress noticeable in many areas throughout the country. The problems are not insurmountable, and training schools can acquire the tools for treatment service.

The classification and treatment program described in this article stems from training-school experience. As further attempts are made to evaluate its program, and study its treatment needs and requirements, new forms of institutional organization will no doubt develop. This is something that should be encouraged through increased public support as well as legislative and budgetary interest. Treatment approaches and forms are not necessarily endemic to small treatment centers. It is possible to offer the necessary services in the training school if authorization can be forthcoming from the appropriate decision-making bodies. The combination of public support and understanding and skilled administrators can very well do the trick.

[Published in Federal Probation, June 1956]

Achieving Integration Between the Juvenile Delinquent and His Community [1]

By Abraham G. Novick, Superintendent, New York State Training School for Girls, Hudson

The rise in juvenile delinquency, as demonstrated by all available statistics, has made it a topic of everyday conversation. The publicity given to some of the more gruesome acts of violence, and newspaper stress on the sensational, has led to an almost unhealthy concern with the problem, at times bordering on hysteria. Unfortunately, periods of hysteria do not produce well-thought-out

[1] Paper presented at the National Conference of Social Work, San Francisco, June 1, 1955.

3-cv-00547-O Document 20-2 Filed 10/06/23 Page 480 of 555 Pa

plans for solving problems but tend to create fear, anxiety, and a convenient medium to express hostility.

In the public eye today, juvenile delinquency is alternately the direct result of progressive education, horror comics, TV programs, permissiveness of parents, and other "pet peeves" of our present society. The situation is investigated and reinvestigated. Conferences are called to study the problem. Forums led by expert panels are held. All come to the conclusion that juvenile delinquency is a problem.

This is not a new phenomenon. Each generation of adults has been concerned about the behavior of its children and has looked for a scapegoat on which to place the blame for its delinquency. At the same time, adults have always sought a panacea which in one swoop would cure the problem. It is sufficient to note that delinquency has always risen during periods of stress and strain, and the era in which we are living is no exception.

This period of hysteria has led to an increase in commitments, more police action, more community restrictions, and, in general, the tendency to rely upon punishment as a solution to the problem. It is interesting that adults, having learned to control their aggressiveness and antisocial feelings, tend to resent the fact that others are not exercising such control. Their equilibrium seems to be threatened when others express themselves without restriction. In a sense, their desire to punish the wayward strengthens their own controls. They may also be expressing their guilt in feeling responsible for the conditions that have produced delinquency in their children.

The tendency to react with hostility and punishment in dealing with the delinquent does not lead to changes in behavior but only serves to further segregate the delinquent from the world about him. An analysis of the developmental process leading to the "acting out" of personal problems reveals why punishment, as contrasted to discipline, acts as a deterrent to treatment and the subsequent integration between the delinquent and his community.

CHARACTER DEVELOPMENT

The newborn child operates on the basis of the pleasure principle. Instinctual drives must be immediately gratified, otherwise the child becomes tense and unhappy. It isn't too long, however, before he learns to tolerate mild frustrations related to meeting his bodily needs. Since he knows that he will be fed, he can accept delays and regulation, bolstered by his mother's love, affection, and warmth which he receives in the process. Expression of other primitive and antisocial feelings, particularly those involving aggression, are similarly modified under the expert tutelage of the parents. It can now be said that he is operating on the basis of the reality principle.

The modification of instinctual, antisocial drives, which takes place primarily during the first 3 years of life, depends entirely upon the kind of relationship that the child has had with his parents, especially with his mother. If there has been a firm and warm relationship, and frustration of antisocial expression has been within the child's endurance, he will be able to accept substitute gratifications, pleasing to his parents and to society. However, if the relationship between the mother and child is defective, through either neglect on the part of the parent, undue repression of the child's desires, inconsistent handling, or separation of the mother from the child for any length of time, then the development of controls will be affected. The child will continue to express his instinctual antisocial drives in one degree or another. If frustrated, he will be unable to tolerate the resulting tension, thereby producing temper tantrums, biting, kicking, breaking of objects, and other signs of aggression. If the child has strong instinctual drives, and if the environment is not very favorable, his behavior will be that much more severe.

The child goes into the next stage of character development with difficulties in establishing relationships with people. If the adults and children coming in contact with him are able to satisfy his desires they will be liked. They will be hated if they frustrate his needs. Guilt feelings concerning his antisocial behavior are lacking because of defective development of inner controls, and because his relationships with people are established only on a self-gratifying level. In order to feel guilty about unacceptable behavior a person must first learn to modify such behavior, and develop some concern for other individuals. If he has not had this experience, guilt will not be present.

The severity of the delinquent pattern manifested is directly related to the degree of the character disturbance just described. When delinquent behavior, such as lying, stealing, or being unmanageable at home appears very early in

3-cv-00547-O Document 20-2 Filed 10/06/23 Page 481 of 555 Pa
life, the character defect is pronounced, and there are usually indications of severe disorganization in family-child relationships. If the delinquency has a definite pattern, showing itself only in certain areas, such as stealing from only a particular individual, stealing only certain objects, running away from home, or arson, then the character defect is not as great. These are neurotic, although antisocial symptoms, and indicate that controls over some instinctual drives have been developed but are lacking for others. Delinquent behavior that does not appear until adolescence will reveal very little pathology in early development and is primarily a result of environmental conflict. The behavior shown is usually antisocial without any neurotic characteristics. The behavior has been triggered by the adolescent problems of growing up, or by some traumatic experience in the family constellation. The symptoms are usually a repetition of antisocial behavior of an early period in life, when controls were first developed.

With this concept of the development of delinquency, it is fairly easy to see that punishment and severe restrictions, in themselves, will not produce any effective change in the personalities of the children concerned. They may for a time prevent the expression of antisocial behavior but sooner or later it will come to the fore. Restrictive measures of a punishing variety, the base of which is usually hostility and resentment on the part of the punisher, only emphasize the rejecting factors of the early period of development which produced the antisocial behavior in the first place. They only tend to further segregate the delinquent from his community.

TREATMENT OF DELINQUENCY

Effective treatment of delinquency depends upon the establishment of a strong emotional relationship with an adult who will reeducate the delinquent. The child with a strong character defect will find it very difficult to establish such a relationship because of his inability to maintain a contact which will endure frustration. His needs are on a narcissistic and infantile level, requiring the total time, interest, and concern of the adult. The degree to which this relationship can be established will determine the success of his reeducation.

It is now easy to see why some of the plans presented and methods utilized to treat delinquency have not been too successful. Increased recreation facilities, improved housing conditions, bigger and better schools might alleviate some of the more gross manifestations of delinquency but they don't touch upon the basic elements which produce the condition in the first place. Better facilities and living conditions are important because they affect the dignity of the individual. They help to eliminate the economic deterioration and deprivation which are characteristic of so many of our delinquent homes and which so very often contribute to family disorganization. Neither do restrictive measures such as curfew, censorship of reading matter, television, movie, and radio programs prevent delinquency. They merely have an effect upon the manner in which the delinquency will be expressed.

Let us examine some of the attempts at integrating the delinquent and his community, from the point of view of the treatment need to establish a close relationship with the child. Recreation programs for the delinquent cannot be on a mass basis. It must be in small groups with warm and understanding leadership. It is very difficult to attract delinquents to participation in established recreation programs. The gang offers many more opportunities for pleasurable expression. Those who do manage to gravitate toward the community playground or settlement house bring their behavior patterns with them. Teamwork, sportsmanship, sharing facilities and equipment, consideration of others, and other cardinal principles of recreation center structure are foreign terms to the delinquent. If he is to be reached it must occur in small groups with understanding and trained leadership.

The transfer of families living in slums to public housing facilities has not lowered the incidence of delinquency. It is unfortunate, but the delinquent must take his personality along with him. Public housing projects could become more meaningful to the delinquent family if they were equipped with special management centers. Such facilities would not only have housing managers but specialized staff to conduct parent-education programs, and recreation activities for both adults and children, and serve as counselors to the residents when necessary.

Education laws throughout the country compel children to attend school until a specified age. Since school is where the child spends so much of his day, it plays an important role in his development.

3-cv-00547-O Document 20-2 Filed 10/06/23 Page 482 of 555 Pa

Truancy is almost a universal characteristic of the American delinquent pattern. It is so, because the delinquent child is usually unable to sublimate his instinctual drives through school study and activity. Since gratification of his feelings are of primary concern, he does not have the inclination nor energy to concentrate on schoolwork. Since our classes are almost universally overcrowded, and schoolwork is based on a set curriculum, it is fairly difficult for the average teacher to divert her attention from the total group and concentrate her efforts on the difficult youngster. The delinquent child requires specialized teaching methods where knowledge is acquired through projects on the subject to be learned. Learning must take place through doing. Needless to say, the teacher's personality is of vital importance. Warmth, interest, concern, patience, and ingenuity are the required attributes. With the country's schools 12,000 teachers short of their requirements, it is probably too much to expect that a dent can be made in the incidence of delinquency in the classroom. It is possible to expect, however, that the child with problems be recognized and that he be referred to available community or school facilities for treatment. Many schools do not want to bother with the delinquent. He is too tough to handle and too disturbing to normal school operations. Many other schools do not have any clinical facilities to which they can refer problems. To counteract this condition it should be possible to assign, according to need, teachers with the proper personality and understanding to work with those children who require special attention.

Child guidance clinics, casework agencies, psychiatric clinics, and other agencies offering direct treatment services, within their limits, are doing an excellent job in treating disorders that have delinquent characteristics. By and large, however, their intake is limited to milder forms of disturbances and to families who are willing and interested in receiving the services offered. The large delinquent areas of our cities would hardly be touched by these services. Attempts in recent years have been made to go out to the delinquent areas and reach children and parents who would ordinarily not ask for help. Aggressive casework, and working with gang groups in their natural habitat, are efforts of this nature. This type of work is in keeping with the importance of establishing a close relationship with the delinquent and gaining his confidence. If we are going to be successful in the early treatment of delinquency and to integrate the delinquent into the stream of community life, considerable effort must be expended with sufficient financial support to discover new methods of overcoming the resistance, suspicion, and hostility of families who require assistance, yet do not give any sign of seeking it.

One of the big problems in helping the delinquent is the manner in which he expresses his difficulties. The fact that he "acts out" his problems could lead to legal complications. Even with children under treatment, the probability that delinquent behavior will continue for some time until reeducation takes effect, could bring him to the attention of the police. The child will be referred to court, and the legal phase of the delinquent's career will begin. Some of the milder delinquents will be helped by the probationary process. Those children possessing a more serious character defect will not respond. The need to gratify instinctual drives will override any consideration of future consequences. These are the children who will be committed to the training school.

Placement in an institution is obviously a process of segregation. We must remember, however, that the delinquent has already segregated himself from his community through his actions, distrust, and life history. The value of the institution to the delinquent is that it offers a setting which combines controls, protection, and a totality of treatment which he has not experienced in his community. If the institution has the proper atmosphere for treatment, sufficient facilities and staff to offer the necessary services, then the primary factors are present for helping the delinquent who cannot be tolerated in his community.

Integration of the delinquent child to his community cannot take place until some modification is made in his behavior and outlook on life. In the training school, treatment of the delinquent must center around the relationship that is established between the child and other children in the institution and with adults on its staff. An atmosphere must be created which will enable the child to want to give up his negative behavior and acquire socially accepted methods of adjustment. This cannot be accomplished by pure custodial care or through repressive measures under close supervision. This child may not be a problem under such an approach during his stay in the institution; but, once this close supervision is removed, he reverts back to his former behavior. The goal is to help the child acquire controls within himself. This can be accomplished if the

3-cv-00547-O Document 20-2 Filed 10/06/23 Page 483 of 555 Pa
delinquent has an opportunity to express his negative and aggressive feelings; having them accepted by the staff as logical behavior in view of the child's background and experiences; giving him the chance to receive the attention, affection, and consistent handling he needs; and making it possible for him to acquire status and self-esteem in socially accepted channels.

Since the training school is a group setting, the importance of group living and the assignment of children to groups on a scientific basis cannot be overemphasized. If the delinquent is able to make an adequate adjustment to his cottage group, he takes the initial step toward making an eventual adjustment in his community. It is in the group that the delinquent experiences controls in operation and it is there that he is helped to absorb group thinking in relation to his own unique ideas and goals. No matter how he acts in the group, he finds that he must respond to the group's goals, interests, and pattern. At the same time he receives considerable security in becoming a member of a group of children with similar problems. He becomes aware that his difficulties are not entirely unique but that his feelings and complaints are shared by others.

Probably the greatest satisfaction that the child can receive in the training program is learning to trust adults. In cottage life the development of a relationship with the group leader, as a helping person, is an important goal. The group leaders must know their children; they must be aware of their likes and differences so that they can prepare their program and carry out their group activities in light of the membership of their group.

The group program requires a casework emphasis to meet the child's needs. It is with the caseworker that the child can talk of his experiences, problems, and anxieties. His difficulties in adjustment, his relationships with cottage staff, teachers, and youngsters are shared with the worker. Fantasy and exaggeration, hostility, and totality of outlook are skillfully broken down to help him face reality. New-found strengths and reactions can be tested out by the child in the casework interview. The caseworker can interpret the child to cottage staff, teachers, and other personnel, so that a common approach can be adopted.

The academic and vocational programs offer opportunities for the discovery and development of skills. For the delinquent it is important that this not be made an end in itself, but a means to help the child gain confidence in himself and acquire a sense of importance.

Too often the institution isolates itself from the community. This is a common practice with institutions having delinquents as their clientele. Isolation only breeds community fear and lack of understanding of the institution's purpose. Such a policy fails to evaluate the dividends that are accrued for both staff and child from community contracts. For the staff, integration brings status and recognition in direct proportion to the standing of the institution. To the delinquent it further emphasizes their importance as individuals, and serves as another example of adult interest in their welfare and adjustment.

In its concentration on services, and in the improvement of treatment techniques, an institution, at times, tends to forget that it is an intermediate stepping stone toward the eventual return of the child to his community. The delinquent child may make an excellent adjustment in the institution but will usually have considerable misgivings, fear, and conflict when it is time for him to leave and return to his community. Newly found controls over behavior do not necessarily breed confidence.

To lessen the impact of institutionalization, the child should not only receive visits from relatives, which is common practice, but be permitted to go home for vacations. This reduces his feelings of segregation, and allows for a preliminary evaluation of what he might face at home. Home visits tend to break up fantasies about parents which disturbed children build for themselves while away from home. Upon return to the institution they are more apt to come to grips with their problems and face reality, even though they may be initially upset.

Problems of desegregation and integration are not solved through lectures on the methods of looking for a job or on the difficulties of returning to school. The training school should be working with the family while the child is in the institution. This can be accomplished with a field staff of caseworkers who will work directly with the parents while the child is in the institution. Parents of delinquents, like their children, have little trust in the willingness of other adults to help them. They are usually deprived and harassed people who can use help if they can be induced to accept it. With the child removed from the family picture, the vicious circle of cause and effect in the development of the

3-cv-00547-O Document 20-2 Filed 10/06/23 Page 484 of 555 Pa

behavior is broken. As a result, such parents are enabled very often to consider the circumstances which produced the behavior difficulties in their child. While the child is in the institution, plans are already being made toward his eventual return. Upon the child's return to the community, the aftercare caseworker works with him as well as the family around the problems of adjustment, which may be related to home, school, job, recreation, or to the difficulties of living in the community on a different basis than heretofore. We must not forget that, after all, a child is part of a family; that concentration on the child to the exclusion of the parents is not total treatment.

It is necessary to stress, once again, the importance of the institution as a treatment tool for delinquency. Overt, hostile behavior, often leading to violence, is not going to be tolerated by society. A controlled and structured setting is desirable and required for the antisocial child not responding to community treatment efforts. There are a number of factors, however, that have tended to operate against the full use of such a facility.

1. There is still too great a tendency to look upon the institution as the last resort, to be tried only after other efforts have failed, rather than a service which might be offered early in the treatment timetable as suitable to children with certain kinds of problems.

2. The training school has been the subject of considerable criticism. Good and bad facilities have been lumped together, as if evil was endemic to the training-school setting. If public apathy and indifference permit poor services, we will not have good institutions. There is nothing to prevent the training school from carrying out its assigned functions if it has good personnel and salaries, appropriate intake policies, varied facilities to work with different categories of delinquents, and removal from the political field of operation.

3. It is sometimes difficult to secure trained personnel for the institution. The above two factors play a role in this, but there are others as well. Institutions are usually removed from cultural and training centers, making recruitment difficult. There is also still some doubt that effective treatment can be given in an authoritative setting. We forget at times that authority is present in one form or another in any setting. It is not authority itself, but the manner in which it is used that determines effective treatment.

These factors need to be overcome in order to take full advantage of a service that is vital in the treatment of delinquency.

CONCLUSIONS

There is room for considerable research and experimentation in the field of delinquency, to determine how we can better reach children and families before they become serious problems and completely segregated from the communities. There is considerable necessity for overall coordination of programs to meet the needs of delinquents and their families, to counteract the hysterical reactions and pressures for pet programs and quick solutions during periods of stress. The trained, initiated, and interested citizenry must supply the social action required to persuade local, State, and Federal legislatures and administrations to grant the necessary funds for effective programs. We know a lot more about the characteristics and origin of delinquency than we are led to believe. What we need is more and better coordination of effort, and more successful methods of communicating what we know to the general public and to our decisionmaking bodies.

STATEMENT SUBMITTED BY DONALD D. SCARBOROUGH, SUPERINTENDENT, NEW YORK STATE VOCATIONAL INSTITUTION, WEST COXSACKIE, N. Y.

MEMORANDUM TO UNITED STATES SENATE COMMITTEE ON JUVENILE DELINQUENCY, CONCERNING THE NATURE AND PROGRAM OF THE NEW YORK STATE VOCATIONAL INSTITUTION, WEST COXSACKIE, N. Y.

This is a reformatory-type institution in the New York State Department of Correction, established for the care and treatment of young offenders between the ages of 16 and 21, from any part of the State. The institution was opened in 1935, and replaced the House of Refuge, Randall's Island, New York City, which had been in continuous operation from December 1824 to 1935, under the auspices of the Society for the Prevention of Juvenile Delinquency in the City of New York. That institution was originally operated as a private venture, later subsidized by the State, and eventually was taken over by the New York State

Case 4:23-cv-00547-O Document 20-2 Filed 10/06/23 Page 485 of 555
Department of Correction a few years prior to the opening of the New York State Vocational Institution.

The intake of the New York State Vocational Institution, originally by direct commitment from any court, is currently through the transfer of youths committed by the various courts to the New York State Reception Center at Elmira. Release on parole is authorized by the New York State Executive Department Division of Parole, and supervision and aftercare are under the direction of that agency.

All types of commitments—juvenile delinquents, wayward minors, youthful offenders, misdemeanants, and felons—may be received at the New York State Vocational Institution, but currently the only juvenile delinquents are a few transferred from State training schools and an occasional youth adjudicated a juvenile delinquent before the age of 16 and subsequently committed after the age of 16. On the average, from 500 to 600 new inmates are received annually, and of these slightly more than half have been adjudicated as wayward minors or youthful offenders. The average stay in the institution, counting the 2 months originally spent at the reception center, is approximately 15 months, and the remainder of the sentence, whether it be a maximum of 3 years for wayward minors, youthful offenders, or misdemeanants, or a maximum of 5 years on a felony conviction, is spent under parole supervision.

Thus it is obvious from the above that whereas the institution does not deal directly with juvenile delinquents, it does receive youths a majority of whom have been juvenile offenders, and many have previously been adjudicated juvenile delinquents, and have been in training schools. Of 521 new admissions for the year ending March 31, 1957, only 93 had never been arrested before and, for the remaining 428, 1,102 previous arrests were recorded. Twenty-eight had been arrested 6 times or more. Of the 1,102 arrests of 521 individuals, 290 of those arrested ended in commitments to institutions. (These 290 commitments involved only 163 individuals for an average of almost 2 commitments per person committed.)

It is therefore obvious that this institution is engaged with the problems of youths who have so recently been juvenile delinquents that for practical purposes they may in many respects be included in the problems of juvenile delinquency.

The New York State Vocational Institution operates under the New York State correction law and is subject to many of the rules and procedures covering other institutions in the New York State Department of Correction, providing a setting more authoritative than is found in the average training school. However, many procedures are quite similar to some of the procedures in the more progressive types of training school. Those who come are failures; and in addition to the requirements of housing, medical attention, and safe custody, major emphasis is placed upon educational and related activities, including vocational training, related technical subjects, health, recreation, and physical education, counseling, and religious life, which are carried on in a fashion similar to training-school procedures and the procedures of many schools for exceptional children. All inmates in the New York State Vocational Institution come by transfer from the New York State Reception Center where all inmates 16 to 21 years of age committed to the department of correction are studied, diagnosed, and classified for transfer to appropriate institutions for treatment. To this institution come the younger, more hopeful cases, at the rate of approximately 550 a year.

Upon arrival at the institution, after a brief period of local orientation, they are assigned to programs of activities in accordance with the circumstances described above. Each such inmate is also assigned to an individual counselor who, from time to time, holds interviews, checks progress, and in many other ways assists the inmate in adjustment to environment, the utilization of opportunities, and preparation for release and eventual activities in free society.

In many of the vocational trades (the total list includes electrical work, sheetmetal trades, machine shop practice, auto mechanics, masonry, plumbing, welding, printing, upholstering, woodworking, painting, shoe repair, tailoring, laundry practice, barbering, and bakery as organized trade instruction, and dairy farming, general farming, vegetable growing, and a number of other activities on an unorganized basis) courses of instruction are standardized and approved by the University of the State of New York, and certificates are issued to those who participate. A considerable number of inmates get additional on-the-job training in the various maintenance activities of the institution.

From time to time, the progress made by members of these different groups is appraised, and the program committee, at weekly meetings, evaluates such progress and determines whether the youth is considered ready for parole.

Although emphasis is placed upon the acquiring of trade skills in these trade-instruction classes, the major objectives are teaching good work habits, acceptance of individual responsibility, and the ability to live successfully in free society. Thus, the program of treatment at this institution is quite similar to the program of training school so far as philosophy of treatment is concerned, but the activities are conducted in a manner and on a level suited to the age of the group involved.

In anticipation of parole, further preparole counseling is given and if the inmate is actually released, he is under the care of a parole officer according to the usual procedures governing such matters.

From the foregoing brief description of the activities of this institution, it is obvious that we are dealing with the problems of juvenile delinquency as they become somewhat more acute and more aggravated with older youths. The major difference between this institution and a training school is, perhaps, that we operate in a somewhat more authoritative setting.

While we have no reliable figures as to success on parole, we do know that a considerable number of those released are absorbed in their communities, and are not further known to be involved in illegal activities. The New York State Executive Department Division of Parole, who supervises parolees of this institution, do have figures and other data concerning success on parole and, inasmuch as their work will no doubt be covered in other reports, nothing is included here.

STATEMENT SUBMITTED TO THE SENATE SUBCOMMITTEE TO INVESTIGATE JUVENILE DELINQUENCY BY JOSEPH M. LINDA, DIRECTOR, BOYS' TRAINING SCHOOLS HOME SERVICE BUREAU, NEW YORK STATE DEPARTMENT OF SOCIAL WELFARE

PHILOSOPHY, FUNCTION AND SERVICES

Impetus for the reorganization of what, prior to January 1956, had been the aftercare service of Warwick State Training School was provided by the development of Otisville State Training School in May 1955. An analysis of trends in the incidence of delinquency in New York City and the metropolitan area made it clear that the development of additional State training schools could be anticipated in order to serve the increasing number of delinquent boys in need of care.

The immediately twofold problem which the New York State Department of Social Welfare considered around reorganization was—

1. Through what structure could aftercare services best be provided; i. e., a centralized service versus individual institutional programs.

2. What structure would facilitate the provision of casework and counseling services to the families of boys while they were at the training schools.

The State department of social welfare's decision was implemented with reorganization, which in effect created the Boys' Training Schools Home Service Bureau in January 1956. A clarification of the bureau's function and services were defined at that time as follows: (A) Casework and counseling services to the families of boys in care. This, of course, means working with families with a view toward securing their maximum participation in the total treatment program for the boys; involving them in visits to the boy at the institution, encouraging them to write, send packages, to plan for special visits, and to participate responsibly in the plan for a boy's return. (B) Responsibility for the total aftercare plan for boys returned to the community and for necessary services to these boys, including assistance in the areas of school placement, employment; providing supportive help to both boys and families where there is evidence of severely strained family relationships; providing direct care services, i. e., placement of boys in a residential or boarding home where family crises necessitated such a plan. (C) The coordination and integration of home service bureau services with the services provided by the State training schools to the boys in care.

In summary, therefore, the Boys' Training Schools Home Service Bureau was charged specifically with three major functions; (1) Service to families of boys committed to the training schools. (2) Responsibility for the total aftercare supervision of boys released from the training schools. (3) Coordination and integration of our services with the services provided by the training schools.

3-cv-00547-O Document 20-2 Filed 10/06/23 Page 487 of 555 Pa

We believe the reorganization has assured the attainment of several major objectives. These include: (1) Training schools are now able to more clearly focus on their primary responsibility for the day to day internal programing and service for boys in care. (2) Duplication of effort in the provision of aftercare services provided by individual training schools has been avoided. (3) Centralization has assured best possible use of professional staff time, energies, and skills. (4) Reorganization has enabled home service bureau to more effectively cooperate with all social agencies in the community which share, in many instances, responsibility for special areas of service, either to the boy or to the family.

From the point of view of function, while boys are in the institutions, we see our role as copartners with the training school staff in providing a total service to the boy and the family which is directed toward strengthening family functioning in the community. This means, in effect, that while we carry major responsibility for service to families and the training schools carry major responsibility for boys in care, each service must be seen as functionally inseparable and as an integrated process. Considered as an integrated service, the total efforts and professional resources and services of both the training schools and Home Service Bureau must be directed toward increasing each family's capacity to function more harmoniously within society and within their immediate communities. Treatment, therefore, as provided by this integrated service, can only be effective as it strives to achieve some change, either in the boy or in the family, or in both, thereby enabling them, despite their limitations, problems, stresses, and strains to meet reality demands established by the community and its social order.

The direction of our development over the past 2-year period is basically rooted in our conviction that only a professionally trained social work staff can, through its special knowledge, training, insights, and skills, provide the kind of sensitive, understanding guidance and counseling which many of our families and boys need. It is true that we have, through training and good supervision, been able to help staff of other disciplines such as psychology, sociology, vocational guidance, etc., function as youth parole workers. For the greater part, they not only are doing the job well, but also are bringing to our social work staff a keener more meaningful understanding of their own knowledge and insights. The basic orientation and care of our service, nevertheless, is social casework.

Since 1956, we have made real progress toward the development of a professional service. In January 1956, we had but three youth parole workers of a staff of 12 who met present requirements of 2 years of graduate study in a school of social work or 1 year of study in a school of social work, plus 2 years of experience in a social agency. Through the department's training program, our own recruitment efforts and the participation of staff itself in the recruiting process, we now have a total of 14 youth parole workers of a staff of 24 who meet the required social work training qualification. We have, in addition, one staff member who will return in July 1958 after completion of training and another whose appointment will be effective in March 1958. Several others of our temporary staff are competing for apprenticeship grants in the near future.

Pofessional training for our supervisory staff is, perhaps, even a more pressing need. We believe professional training, through educational leaves, will be made available to them in the very near future.

As of November 1957, we had a total of 2,175 boys in care. Of this number, 845 were in care at the training schools (Warwick, Otisville, Highland, and the annex). There were 1,330 boys in aftercare supervision. Of this latter group, approximately 25 percent, or 333 boys, were of school age (under 16). Approximately 1,000 boys were over 16. Of the 1,330 boys, all but 55 were in their own homes or with relatives. The 55 boys were in direct care, i. e., either in a residential unit (16 boys) or in boarding homes (39 boys). We find within this group our most seriously disturbed boys. They are weak, extremely dependent, socially and emotionally immature, impulsive, hostile, often unpredictable, and explosive. We are able to help a good many of these boys through specially assigned staff, who carry small caseloads (ranging from 25 to 40 boys).

We now have a total of 23 districts. While the average caseload should be 80 per worker, staff shortages, turnover, etc., during the year meant that workers at times were carrying as many as 130 boys. As of the end of the year, we had 3 vacancies in our total of 27 youth parole worker positions. Our four supervisory positions are now filled.

Although we have accepted, conceptually and as a matter of policy, responsibility for services to families, we have not actually been able to implement this to any great extent in practice. We see two major reasons for this: (1) Our

3-cv-00547-O Document 20-2 Filed 10/06/23 Page 488 of 555 Pa

present caseloads, which average 80, are much too high, thereby limiting the amount of staff time which can be devoted to serving families. (2) We have not as yet been able to evaluate, even broadly, the kinds of services which our families need. We are at present in the process of attempting to develop, jointly with the staff of Otisville Training School, a study which, in effect, would give us a base for identifying at the point of commitment the major family problems which contributed to the boy's delinquent behavior. While we have not completed the basic material from which we hope to get some insights as to the character of our families' needs, we have been able to determine that there is a sizable segment of boys who have come from physically intact homes, where family disorganization, nevertheless, has been in process for many years. We have, in addition, elicited the fact that a great many families have never, prior to the boy's commitment to the training school, been served by any family agency in the community. It is further interesting to note that approximately 65 percent of our families live within the high delinquency geographic areas served by the 14 youth board referral units. This group has, in effect, been identified as part of the 1 percent hard core group of difficult to reach families which present, for our community, a major challenge in terms of developing protective, preventive, and treatment services.

SPECIAL SERVICES

Our basic casework and counseling services to boys, as we indicated earlier, is dependent primarily upon a highly qualified, professionally trained, social work staff. It is our hope that caseloads in the not-too-distant future can be reduced to approximately 60 families per worker. While future research might confirm that even this figure is too high, we do know that it would certainly permit our staff to reach and to serve a greater number of families than they are now able to reach.

Within the short span of our agency's existence we have been able to strengthen services to a considerable extent. Much of this has been accomplished through the assignment of highly skilled workers to specialized areas of service. Such areas of service include the Seamen's House program in which there are a total of 16 boys in residence; boarding home program in which there are approximately 44 boys in care; the aftercare service for the annex in which there are approximately 60 in care (of the 60, 30 are in care at the institution and 30 are in aftercare). It is our hope that within the coming year, we shall be able to assign a special undistricted worker to serve approximately 20 to 25 families in aftercare which present serious problems of family disorganization.

In May 1957, we were able to engage on a part-time basis, the services of a skilled group therapist. The therapist has assumed responsibility for helping our social work staff develop group therapy skills. This will enable staff to reach out to groups of boys many of whom do not appear to be able to respond to the helping efforts of the caseworker in a 1-to-1 relationship.

In September, we were fortunate in securing the services of a consultant psychiatrist especially interested in serving disturbed adolescents. While we do not believe 8 hours of consultant service for our staff is sufficient, it is a modest beginning. Whatever added service is necessary must await further evaluation both of client needs and staff development. At present, the psychiatrist's time is used for diagnosis and direct treatment; for consultation of individual staff; for seminars to groups of staff. We are beginning to feel that his major contribution in the future will be in the area of staff training.

In 1957, one of our youth parole workers, with special skills in remedial reading, organized a small group of boys who were severely retarded in reading (a few were nonreaders). The group met weekly and, for a period of time, twice weekly. Each boy, over a period of 6 months, made progress. One of the more significant observations made of the group is that very little enocouragement and motivational support was given to the boys by their families.

Because we are serving a sizable segment of Puerto Rican boys, we have provided opportunity for staff to attend Spanish classes. These are held regularly for 1-hour periods each Friday. Lessons are give by a youth parole worker with 7 years of teaching experience in Puerto Rico.

We see several major challenges for the immediate future.

Our recruiting and retaining of competent, professionally trained staff is perhaps our major problem. In the New York City area, the problem is especially acute. There is a critical shortage of trained personnel. Competing agencies, especially county courts and the board of education provide more attractive salaries with increment scales reaching maximums ($7,200 to $8,100) which

3-cv-00547-O Document 20-2 Filed 10/06/23 Page 489 of 555 Pa
encourage staff retention in a career service. Our youth parole worker maximum is $5,580, after 5 years of service. Our supervisor maximum after 5 years of service is $6,150.

Our second major problem is how, under our present structure, we can really implement in practice the partnership function inherent in the total service which we and the training schools must provide while boys are in care. We believe State training schools need to continually examine whether their programs are effectively serving boys who, for the greater part, appear poorly equipped to manage their day-to-day problems rooted in family conflict, disruption, and disorganization. We, on the other hand, need to examine how we can help the disorganized family, often immobile, often overwhelmed by the added pressures of impoverished depressed neighborhoods, community prejudicies, and the cultural demands of complex urban living.

Third. We believe that major responsibility for such continued evaluation should be centered in budgeted research which can assure through adequate funds and the necessary skilled personnel an ongoing base for dynamic change in program and services. This, of course, can and should be implemented by operating field staff when feasible.

Fourth. We need to examine how our own and strengthened community services can more effectively help the large group of boys who become involved in further antisocial behavior which brings them to adult courts for trial and disposition. We are finding that this group approximates 40 percent of our total of boys discharged from parole supervision.

For our Department, Boys' Training Schools Home Service Bureau is not just another State program. We have been imbued by the Department's interest and support. Its consultant services, its provision for staff professional training, its strong support for upgrading youth parole worker positions, its participation in staff meetings—all have contributed immeasurably toward the development of a meaningful, skilled professional service.

For such leadership, understanding, and support, we are grateful.

STATEMENT BY JOSEPH F. PHELAN, JR., EXECUTIVE DIRECTOR, THE CHILDREN'S VILLAGE, DOBBS FERRY, N. Y., SUBMITTED TO THE SUBCOMMITTEE TO INVESTIGATE JUVENILE DELINQUENCY OF THE COMMITTEE ON THE JUDICIARY, UNITED STATES SENATE

The Children's Village was one of the first private institutions in the United States to build an open, unfenced cottage community which sought to provide a homelike environment for troubled children. It was one of the first institutions in the country to establish a mental-hygiene clinic and a formal course for training institutional personnel. In over a century of service, the Children's Village has cared for more than 55,000 children. Located in Dobbs Ferry, N. Y., it is today devoted to the treatment of disturbed and delinquent boys of all races and creeds, from 10 to 15 years of age. The majority of its children come from New York City and New York State, although our present population includes boys from nine other States. Referrals are made by children's courts, welfare departments, and private social agencies.

Boys live in family-style cottages and attend school on grounds. Shelter, food, clothing, medical and dental care, therapy, education, recreation, religious training—all are provided on a 220-acre campus where a staff of 254 people care for 300 boys. Residence is year round and the average length of stay is approximately 18 months.

Despite the institution's role during a century of service to children, the board of directors realized in 1953 that the village was falling short of its potential ability to help the increasingly disturbed and delinquent youngsters who were making up a growing proportion of the boys referred to it. Therefore, the board engaged the Child Welfare League of America to study the program and make recommendations. The resulting survey added up to a concept of intensive individual care within decentralized groups, using the village resources differently for each child's particular needs.

An increasing proportion of boys sent to the Children's Village for treatment and training within the last 12 years has belonged to the hard core who are classified as delinquent or predelinquent because of antisocial behavior or repeated community offenses. Usually their behavior is the result of emotional disturbance, in most cases because of home and environmental failure. These

20873—58——9

KnifeRights MSJ App.000484

youngsters bring with them emotional crises of the first magnitude and behavioral patterns that are dangerous to themselves and to others. Some are aggressive, extremely hostile children with gang experience. Ninety percent have a record of persistent truancy, 70 percent are markedly retarded in school even though intelligence usually exceeds achievement levels. A good many were apprehended for shoplifting, auto thefts, vandalism, and other nuisances before admission to the village. Probation had usually been unsuccessful. Some of the boys are not aggressive, but withdrawn—almost out of contact with others—yet quite as liable to blow up in uncontrollable outbursts. Our concern is to help such boys overcome the emotional damage inflicted by early experiences and to enable them to profit from the total personality approach given by members of the staff, which will fit them for a constructive role in society. We have found that ours is a demanding task, requiring highly individualized treatment for every child. Consequently, during the period of care, the personality of every child is under continuous study. His activities are prescribed in response to his individual physical, emotional, and spiritual needs. This concept is based upon the results of studies by various criminologists which indicate that little change in behavior is shown among boys who have been discharged from placement in reformatories and prisons, where the delinquent mainly is quarantined from society so that he cannot kill or abuse other people, or steal or deface property.

In approaching this transition in 1954, the Children's Village introduced a new program to meet obvious needs, a program which has required substantially increased expenditures. This was a courageous step indeed for a responsible board of directors already faced with operating deficits and no endowment. The decision was based on the principle that the institution existed to serve the community, and, if the type child being referred by the community exhibited peculiar needs, an individual approach was the only answer. Effecting the transition was a technical and sensitive process.

The purpose of this presentation is to outline some of the significant changes that have occurred during the past 3½ years in transforming the Children's Village from a rehabilitative and custodial institution to an individual treatment school.

APPROACH TO TRANSITION

Most important in its development was the recruitment and selection of qualified staff to carry out the objectives. It was found necessary to attract and keep presonnel who were well trained, having sound past experience with children, and who enjoyed working with boys. Staff gradually was enlarged to twice that of the previous program. Since many youngsters have not had attention and understanding from their parents, one of the major needs was to furnish substitute parental influences for the transitional period of their adjustment. Many of the boys come from homes without a father, so that the cottage father and male teacher fill an especially important function as an example, and as a man genuinely concerned about the boy's welfare. Thus, the quality of character and personality of staff selected became the principal resource of the new program—from cottage parents, teachers, counselors, chaplains, and administrators, to watchmen, painters, carpenters, and plumbers—likeable men and women with whom boys could identify.

Another development was consideration of the total atmosphere and physical plant within which to conduct such a program, since institutional appearance generally emphasizes to children their isolation from the community. In the cottages, which are the boys' temporary homes for periods averaging 18 months, and in the classrooms and the workshops, where demands are gaged to each boy's personal needs, staff members must first strengthen their pupils' individual feeling of security, and show that they care about how well their youngsters get along with the projects they take on, and about the progress they make in responding to treatment as well as in learning. Attractive buildings in good repair enhance a child's sense of security and of being loved and well cared for, so that reconditioning of the physical plant was a top priority and has required a total expenditure of $1½ million to date.

The curriculum of the school and the approach to educational processes had to be given full consideration. It was recognized that the school was an important part of the total treatment experience of the boy. Group sessions in reading, for example, first ascertain what reasons each boy had to induce him to overcome reading disability. Once motivation was established, every available aid to learning was applied in small classes (7 to 12 pupils), supplemented by individual sessions conducted by trained volunteer "reading mothers" from nearby Westchester towns.

3-cv-00547-O Document 20-2 Filed 10/06/23 Page 491 of 555 Pa

Another development during the transition period which enabled individualization to take place among such a large number of delinquent boys was the development of the unit system. This system provides for closer relationships between boys and staff and, in essence, establishes 4 small institutions within the overall agency, each of which functions by means of participation of approximately 26 professional staff members with approximately 72 boys, on a 24-hour-a-day, seven-days-a-week, treatment basis. This organizational structure within the total institutional setting has created a much-improved impact on all boys in residence. In addition, it has provided the more intensive attention needed by all of these boys.

The transition and reorganization of the Children's Village program might aptly be described as a metamorphosis, in which a school with a general education program for all boys has changed to a school with different treatment programs for each boy. Briefly, the integration-decentralization process has involved (1) crystallization of the institution as 4 units within the total operation; (2) consequent spread of responsibility for program planning, with the major share carried by professional teams at the unit level, including both supervisors and practitioners; (3) resulting opportunity to gear activities more closely to boys' interests and needs to develop pilot projects, for example, furthering pioneering in educational techniques for disturbed boys, beginning of group therapy, beginning of casework for parents; (4) increased medical and dental services to all boys; (5) expanded organization of volunteer services, resulting in more productive relationships between volunteers, boys, and staff; (6) strengthening staff, operations, and relationships; and improving interdepartmental communication, including improvement in record keeping and clerical services.

A program of this nature demands flexibility of administration and constant intercommunication on all levels of operation, in order to be prepared for any eventuality. In service to disturbed boys, such readiness requires dissemination of information about each boy to staff members working with him. They need to know how he is likely to act in given situations, what reactions he needs from others. In addition to communication and flexibility in administration, integration must take place, so that staff will be not only sufficiently informed, but sufficiently trained and responsible to make the best use of information for each boy.

For both boy and staff, this process is more effective when a boy is well known to a few staff members than when he is superficially known to many. In order to effect the kind of integration and communication desired, several methods were adopted by the administration—such as frequent meetings of department heads with the executive director, practitioner staff, supervisory staff, department meetings, as well as informal meetings among all staff.

HIGHLIGHTS OF PROGRAM

A plan for each boy is the basis of the service rendered at the Children's Village. In essence, this results in 300 different programs for 300 different boys. Individual counseling is at the heart of the program, with the treatment plan for each boy initiated on the basis of psychiatric, medical, and psychological diagnosis. The plan is continually modified according to how the boy responds to his cottage parents, other boys, men and women teachers, religious guidance, and volunteers helping to enrich the social life, as well as every other contact which the boy has in the course of 24-hours-a-day, 7-days-a-week, year-round treatment.

This is accomplished through utilization of the staff team approach. The adjustment process in the school requires decisions made from day to day, on classwork, tasks, and satisfactions in the cottage, recreation, therapy given by psychiatric social workers, and periodic sessions with the boy's educational adviser. It demands maximum flexibility within a structure in which responsibilities of each treatment team member are clearly assigned and frequent communication, both formal and informal, is afforded, so that the knowledge of each boy's progress and problems is fully shared by the entire staff team. In this way, program changes required by a boy's physical, spiritual, and emotional growth can be accomplished within his own unit, rather than moving him to another one, so that a boy placed in a given unit now remains there for his entire length of stay.

Each boy's treatment plan and experiences while at Children's Village are geared to his return to society and include contact with the specific home, school, job, neighborhood, or military service to which the boy will go when he leaves.

Work with parents while the boy is in the institution and after he is discharged from it is an integral part of the job. Placement in collaboration with school guidance officers and, where applicable, local social agencies is an important function which is presently being expanded at Children's Village.

In general, highlights of program and organizational development within the last 3½ years cover many changes, including (*a*) new emphasis on thorough and continuous study of each boy's emotional drives and difficulties, aimed at helping him to modify those which resulted in trouble for him and his community; (*b*) developing channels of communication between all departments to permit exchange of information about each boy's case among all staff members who work with him; (*c*) recruiting a highly trained, professional staff and organizing all volunteer services under staff supervision; (*d*) rehabilitation of the physical plant to accommodate new methods and principles; (*e*) improving financial control and administration in order not to compromise standards of care; (*f*) development of special methods which have changed some boys from gang leaders to gang busters, and given many who had retreated into a world of their own the confidence and ability to live in the real world with others.

For all staff, new and old, inservice courses have been inaugurated, and opportunity and incentives for individual study provided.

Departmental organization had to be established in order to provide the maximum kind of integration and vertical administrative responsibility for each boy in residence.

Another vital aspect of residential treatment is integration of boy population into total program. This has been greatly enhanced by the organization of a community youth council, designed to provide boys with a therapeutic learning activity by engaging them in planned group experiences with one another and with staff, consistent with clinically determined treatment needs, in which discussion is focused on specific topics related to the general welfare of the school which are within the competence, understanding, and emotional readiness of the participants. Representatives on the council are selected by both boys and staff, and the council works on projects of interest to boys—for example, a welcoming committee for new boys, taking polls of boys' opinions, developing procedures for the operation of the PX, approving applications from boys who want to set up their own businesses on campus (shoeshines, car washes, greeting cards, et cetera). This aspect of program has helped immeasurably to sensitize the members of the staff to the needs of youngsters living in a therapeutic community.

In a program of this nature, with varying degrees of delinquent behavior, it is necessary to constantly evaluate the population in order to provide the services required to meet its needs and to build program resources which have real therapeutic value. Examples from the educational area illustrate that experiments in classroom activity with boys whose emotional problems represented opposite sides of the same coin helped us to establish a class composed of hostile, aggressive boys with gang experience and to gradually transform this group into a constructive team of adolescents through vigorous, challenging activities led by an ex-boxing-camp teacher whose boys could accept him as a leader and with whom they could identify. Boys made and sold such items as picnic tables and benches, and used the money to buy insignia for their jackets. With their emotional needs on the way to satisfaction, they began to recognize their need for academic skills in order to complete work in which they were interested and so move successfully on to academic studies. Today, the village maintains four such classes for this type of boy. A totally different type of class was an art group, through which withdrawn boys whose aggressions are deeply repressed found an opportunity for low-pressure learning. Other experiments in education included the use of food as therapy in some classes, night rather than day classes for boys who accept schoolwork as adult when held in the evenings, use of simplified textbooks on rugged American heroes with whom boys could identify, among the titles Andy Jackson and Tom Edison. As boys move into their academic studies after overcoming their emotional blocs, they sometimes make up as much as 2 years' academic work in 6 months' time. Twice as many boys stay in these classes twice as many hours as was possible under our prior program. Although 90 percent of the boys referred to the Children's Village have records of truancy, only 3 percent attempt to cut classes at the village, and, although 70 percent are retarded readers, the entire population is enrolled in school classes and is using books.

When a runaway has committed a community offense, he will, if treatment plans permit, be required to assist in repairing the damage. Corporal punishment is, of course, not permitted. Punishment at the village is creative. It is

3-cv-00547-O Document 20-2 Filed 10/06/23 Page 493 of 555 Pa
designed to teach, to help the youngster learn from his misdoing. For example, a youngster who was stealing from the boys' PX was given the task of making an inventory of all items. He received staff help in organizing the work, but he took up many an afternoon when he would have preferred to play. By the time he had finished the inventory, he had also finished stealing.

Religious education is another program area in which individualized attention has been strengthened at the village. Resident Protestant and Catholic chaplains are trained and participate in all conferences on boys, contributing their understandings of the boys' spiritual needs; and there is also a visiting rabbi who participates in the spiritual life program. Physical space has been set aside for worship, and plans for chapels are under way. In addition to campus services and classes, boys sometimes participate in worship in local communities, attending as cottage family groups accompanied by their cottage parents. Through separate services, all boys worship according to their own religious denomination. All three faiths, however, participate in religious assemblies in order to preserve fellowship while allowing for a diversity of belief.

Community affiliation with the village and acceptance of the share of responsibility for helping to solve its problems developed gradually from initial liaison set up by the village between the professional survey team of the Child Welfare League and the local citizens' committee. In 1954, the village policy of openly admitting deficiencies and asking community help in remedying them produced a sound base for the next step, which now has been taken. Communities have been invited into the village, not merely for public relations purposes, but to serve as another means of therapy for boys. During the past 3½ years, good community relations have been transformed into active community service. The great importance of this service in the treatment of boys who have been rejected by their families and other adults is that it helps overcome the human fear of being an outcast. Off-campus experiences are necessarily limited to supervised excursions which must be carefully organized. Bringing the community onto the campus provides a daily bridge between the institution and the world and shows the boys that outsiders are truly concerned for their welfare. It further increases a sense of community responsibility for all children.

Stemming from a substantial nucleus of individual and group volunteers, there exists today a Volunteer Advisory Council made up of representatives of participating groups from the community. This council acts and advises the administration of the school on all volunteer matters and is currently responsible for the integration of the volunteer program into the total institutional program. In addition, this group serves as a citizens' advisory council in matters of interpretation of public relations, fund raising, and resources for volunteers.

We have also been fortunate in gaining the cooperation of local police, who meet with boys on various occasions and give them sympathetic advice which is well received. This contact with the law is considered a part of therapy.

Of no less importance is our indebtedness to the press for their consistent week-by-week interpretation to the local communities of changes being made in the Village and of problems involved in the making. In the past 3 years, there has not been a single week when local papers have not printed at least one significant story about progress at Children's Village. This, too, is service, both to the Village and to the community.

RESULTS OF PROGRAM

Most larger residential institutions for children were originally custodial in nature—they cared for orphans or children from destitute homes. With the development of Federal aid to dependent children programs and community foster home programs, these institutions have changed fundamentally during the last two decades. More referrals of delinquent or disturbed children to such institutions has become the trend.

Results thus far indicate that there are effective methods of treating delinquent and seriously disturbed children. But these methods can be used only when there are enough skilled people to help the individual child understand himself, so that he will change his behavior because he wants to do so for his own good.

New policies during the past 3 years at Children's Village point a way toward more widespread application of individualized treatment methods. A large institution, originally conceived for the care of dependent boys, has learned to treat delinquent and disturbed boys effectively. Last year, more than 100 representatives of public and private child welfare groups in the United States, Europe, the Middle and Far East, were sent to Children's Village to study its methods.

Comprehensive appraisal of the results of the current program must await long-term aftercare and followup. It has already been possible to shorten the period of residence to an average of 18 months, a 25-percent reduction in the previous average treatment time. A preliminary study conducted in 1956 indicated that 73 percent of the boys discharged from the institution after treatment, had made an adequate to good adjustment in their home communities during the following year. An analysis of the reasons why 27 percent did poorly has indicated the following major needs, listed in the order of priority:

(1) More intensive follow-up in the community by the social workers, particularly during the first 9 months after the boy's return.

(2) Increased educational and vocational guidance services in order to place the boy in the community school that will most adequately meet his needs, together with better liaison between the institution and the community school.

(3) More specialized help in job finding.

(4) Placement of some boys in group residences, foster homes, or hostels, when the family is not equipped to care for them.

(5) Adequate facilities in some communities for occupation of leisure time.

For an institution like Children's Village to provide services to meet these needs, as well as to maintain results already accomplished during the boys' stay at the Village, an additional expenditure of $100,000 a year would be required.

Boys' responses to the therapy briefly described earlier is one of the factors which has now reduced Village runaway statistics to less than the national average for open institutions of comparable size caring for disturbed children. Also contributing to the reduction are new security measures which help boys to realize that the Village cares enough about them to keep close tabs on their whereabouts. Boys move from place to place with passes, and telephone communication between staff members at points of boys' departure and arrival sets a time limit on their movements. When a boy runs away, the last staff member working with him is required to make a report, partly for clinical use in interpreting any incident which may have caused the run, and partly to increase staff sense of responsibility for accounting for boys. This staff-to-staff following of the boys' movements supplements periodic rollcalls for groups of boys in cottages and elsewhere during the day. At night, eight watchmen cover the fully lighted grounds. In charge of the entire security system is a custodial staff trained in both treatment methods and police techniques.

Changes in the basic program have resulted in corresponding changes in the area of management and services essential for daily operations. Improved business management and personnel, machines, purchasing practices, and the incorporation of modern cost accounting principles have kept pace with the new program developments. Despite these procedures to maintain an efficient and economical program adequate to meet children's needs, the present cost of care amounts to $4,900 per year. Public and private agencies referring boys to the Village pay an average of $3,500, leaving a balance of $1,400 for each child, which, despite certain other income, results in the necessity for the agency to raise, through private contributions, a minimum of $300,000 annually. Thus a tremendous burden is placed on the private institution, which must meet the gap in operational costs as well as the cost of capital expenditures and depreciation of the physical plant. Moreover, equally vital to a well-balanced, enlightened, and progressive program of treatment are the areas of research and the development of experimental and pilot projects, the financing of which presents a distinct problem and challenge.

CONCLUSIONS AND RECOMMENDATIONS

The problem of juvenile crime will, in all probability, increase, as will public concern about it. Ultimate answers can come only when the public is willing to pay for services to all delinquent and disturbed children which observe standards and use methods now available to relatively few such children. Joseph H. Reid, executive director of the Child Welfare League of America, has recommended that training schools for juvenile delinquents should consider admitting frankly to the public that the tools provided them are insufficient. Vocational education, athletic programs, military training and discipline, have not accomplished maximum results, he says, because "the problems of delinquent children require definitive therapeutic treatment. Without it, we are wasting the lives of our children and also our budgets."

Although delinquents represent only 3 percent of our young people, 3 percent is more than present institutions can service without financial resources in order to achieve good results.

-cv-00547-O Document 20-2 Filed 10/06/23 Page 495 of 555 Pa

The challenge of growing need makes us seek systematic answers which offer the promise of enduring results, and enduring results for the root problems of disturbed young people can come only through a concentration of treatment skills on the individuals concerned.

It is preferable for a child who has been in trouble to stay at home with his own family. However, in some cases the home environment is and will continue to be a cause of the delinquency. A foster home is the next best choice, but it is unsuitable for the seriously disturbed child. Thus, when homes and foster homes are unsuitable, or not available, placement in institutions becomes necessary.

We shall not reverse the swelling current of juvenile crimes until communities allocate enough money privately and publicly for preventive and treatment facilities. Nor should this money be provided without first establishing a sound plan and blueprint for the coordination and expansion of existing services, including the institution as part of such community services. There is inescapable need for both and, unfortunately, there are severe shortages of experienced personnel equipped to supply the needed services.

The most vital need of the Children's Village, and other private institutions, is the assurance that present high standards can be maintained in a period of rising costs, and that the agency will be financially equal to the particular program emergencies as they become evident. In dealing with a large population of disturbed children, there must be, at every meaningful moment, flexibility sufficient to permit exercise of individual judgment. When aftercare and followup procedures merit special staff attention, for example, a greater concentration of trained personnel must supply this attention, but without diluting the daily work of caseworkers with boys still at the Village.

Basic recognition should be given by the Federal Government to the need for the establishment of grants to private agencies pioneering in the field of delinquency, to assist such agencies to continue the already promising work being accomplished. In addition, such moneys should be distributed to community agencies for the purposes of early detection, diagnosis, and treatment of children.

Programs for each boy differ in accordance with indicated requirements, but the aims are identical for all—to help boys understand themselves, conquer their problems, develop the confidence, and gain the incentives that are the foundation for responsible, participating citizenship.

We believe the ultimate benefits in enabling society to deal positively with challenges of seriously disturbed juvenile behavior are worth this relatively small investment.

The experience of the Children's Village indicates that a custodial institution can develop into a treatment resource for the community by applying the methods of the small experimental treatment centers. In the process, it should be possible to train the personnel required to make public training schools and reformatories better able to return their wards to society as good citizens.

STATEMENT OF ERNST PAPANEK, EXECUTIVE DIRECTOR OF WILTWYCK SCHOOL, NEW YORK, SUBMITTED TO THE SENATE SUBCOMMITTEE TO INVESTIGATE JUVENILE DELIQUENCY

It is with great satisfaction and great interest that those in the field of juvenile delinquency are following the work of your subcommittee because it expresses to us the concern of the United States Senate and therefore the concern of the community with the problem. We are very grateful for the intensive and outstanding job being done by your committee and its staff. We are eager to cooperate and we are looking forward to its findings and, where possible, hope for legal decisions to support and promote the fight against juvenile delinquency. We are glad and grateful for the opportunity to testify and to report on our modest contribution to this tremendous task.

This committee has had a chance to listen to so many outstanding experts that I would like to concentrate here on the approach and program of Wiltwyck School for Boys and, with your permission, will begin and end with only a few general remarks on the overall problem.

Wiltwyck School for Boys is a residential treatment center which tries to reeducate and treat in its institution at Esopus 100 severely disturbed youngsters and in its continued care group home and foster homes in New York City, about 25 boys who were at the institution and had in some ways improved and it takes care of about 50 boys in aftercare, who have already joined their fami-

lies again. After more than 3 years' experimenting, we set up in 1953 this new program, hoping soon to add a residence home for continued care in the city and to extend our aftercare. We do not believe that the method we use is the only possible one—we do not even know whether we will succeed with the cases we take—but we hope and believe that a critical evaluation of our approach will contribute not only to the discovery of new and promising methods of treatment, but also to the development of new preventional techniques.

Your subcommittee has published that in 1954 over 1,333,000 children in the United States came to the attention of the police. Other statistics inform us that 50 percent of all adult criminals begin their life of crime before reaching 21 and that crime costs the United States $15 billion a year. I shall not attempt to check on this last figure and discover perhaps an error of a billion or two in either direction. In any case, this tremendous sum is infinitely less important than the insecurity, loss of morale, and violence to dignity and humanity that individuals as well as society suffer through crime. There can be no doubt that the problem of juvenile delinquency is a serious one for our entire society.

It does not belittle its importance for our time and our failure to cope with it to say that youth of today is not worse or better than youth was before, and that juvenile delinquency is as old as mankind. When Cain slew Abel and when Jacob's sons sold their brother Joseph to the Egyptians, the percentage of juvenile delinquency in relation to the total population may well have been higher than the horrifying figures we read today.

Is it the parents who are primarily responsible for juvenile delinquency? Since the parents are closest to the children, more responsibility can, of course, be traced to them; but the whole community is actually responsible—the schools, the churches, the recreational facilities and the lack thereof, the highly important reaction of the community to crime and criminals; the comics, the films television, the radio.

When addiction to narcotics, alcohol, and gambling increases among grownups, addiction to narcotics, alcohol, and gambling increases among children and juveniles. When insecurity, hostility, and distrust are rampant, when racketeers and black marketeers flourish in a society, children and youth form their picture of life, human relationships, and work in the community on these patterns. They learn that crime does pay. If children have been impressed by adults they trust and like, if these adults have given them other and more constructive, acceptable values, and have exemplified these values, the youngsters will not so easily succumb to the "fashion" of crime, as one of our former Wiltwyck boys once called it.

Considering what sort of world we offer our children—a world of wars and upheavals, of ever bigger and better bombs, of economic and social insecurity, of bad housing and bad schooling, of insufficient playgrounds and recreation centers, of child labor, broken families, frustration, hostility, anxieties, confusion—children and youth aren't doing so badly after all. If they react with rock and roll and some even with vandalism to community property—a community in which they have no status and no function—and just a few with juvenile delinquency, we should not complain about our children and youth but do something ourselves to remedy the frightful situation. If we offer our children The Blackboard Jungle as a mirror of their lives, setting them a standard to which they then believe they are expected to aspire, we can hardly expect better than what we are getting from our youngsters. Youth in danger becomes a danger. But we should recognize that even under these distressing conditions, for which they are not responsible, from 94 to 99 percent of all children—depending on just what you call juvenile delinquency—never become delinquents.

There is not one single cause of juvenile delinquency—there are so many causes indeed that the list would fill a volume. Consequently, there is not one single treatment. Most so-called juvenile delinquents are not only psychiatric deviates; they are social deviates as well. When we discuss their reeducation and treatment, we must consider the contributing emotional, medical, and social factors.

Society has suffered most seriously from the social deviations of its juvenile delinquents, and it has reacted accordingly. The astonishing fact is that, while for hundreds and thousands of years, law and public opinion the world over have agreed that a child is unfit to assume control of property or to contract personal obligations, only a few decades ago did a new judicial philosophy place children and juveniles under the legal disability and immunity of their age.

In search for incentives to motivate human beings to adopt socially acceptable, constructive behavior, men for centuries have imagined that reward and punish-

3-cv-00547-O Document 20-2 Filed 10/06/23 Page 497 of 555 Pa
ment are the best tools for the job. As such, reward or punishment, both always proved unreliable and unsatisfactory.

With our present knowledge of psychology, however, in our present democratic society, reward and punishment are pretty well outdated; they should certainly play a far less important role than heretofore and, if possible, they should be dropped entirely. If some emotional relief flows from the satisfactory feeling that no wrong can go unpunished, such relief is usually less helpful to the wrongdoer than to the punisher or observer. And the punisher's sense of self-righteousness and superiority has no constructive educational value for him either.

Deterrence—sometimes emotional, perhaps, but not ethical—effected by punishment is of no more educational value than is retributive punishment. It appeals only to selfish fear, not to insight or morality. It may sometimes succeed with cowards—actually it fosters cowardice. We know that in England when picking pockets was still punishable with public hanging, uncaptured pickpockets regularly did a thriving business picking the pockets of fascinated spectators at the hangings. In his natural struggle to overcome external difficulties through his own personal endowments, the child or grownup threatened with deterrent punishment will be inclined to overcompensate for his inferiority feeling toward the punisher, try to outwit him, to be smarter than the victim he has just seen punished and to do everything not to get caught.

Human behavior is not determined solely by conditioned reflexes; even the desire to avoid punishment will not serve as a sufficient deterrent. It will work only where patterns of social responses have been well established by emotional and intellectual factors.

Some people believe that Pavlov's dog experiments with conditioned reflexes and other similar animal experiments prove that at least temporary success can be achieved with deterrent punishment, and that repeated periodic application can bring lasting results. We maintain that to reward a dog with food for secreting saliva at the sound of a bell, or to punish him for not obeying his master is quite all right—for a dog. Obedience is all we expect of him; from a human being we expect more, and we cannot get it by taming him through fear. Education and, where necessary, therapy must enable human beings to respond with more than reflexes, reactions, and repressions of instincts and drives. Education or reeducation must help the unsocialized child or adult to become an understanding, cooperative, yet spontaneous, independent, and happy member of human society, for if he is not part of that society, he is not a human being.

Punishment may sometimes be helpful in preventing further wrongdoing when other more ethical, more constructive, and more beneficial emotional and intellectual reactions to wrongdoing and other more ethical and fruitful motivations for right doing cannot be immediately attained. But such negative motivations always lead to unhealthy responses, and we often have a hard job undoing and mitigating the mischief they have done—before we can start with proper treatment.

Jean Jacques Rousseau and later Herbert Spencer favored what they called natural or logical punishment—we prefer to call it logical or natural consequences. These are inflicted not by the whim of any individual but they follow naturally and logically as physical or social results of bad behavior.

But even the most natural and logical consequence is useless if not understood and interpreted as such by the one who suffers it. Without insight into the misbehavior and its logical consequences, there will not only be no incentive to improvement, but there will be built up in the culprit natural and logical defenses, which will overcompensate his inferiority feelings, and instill in him the hope that by denying guilt and rejecting retaliation he cannot only keep his self-respect but gain the respect of his fellowmen, at least some of them. Above all that already mentioned, we will soon find that punishing teaches the child how to punish; scolding teaches him how to scold. By showing him that we understand, we teach him understanding; by helping him, we teach him how to help; by cooperating, we teach him how to cooperate.

Here we should also like to stress that society and its representatives, in enforcing consequences, must always avoid humiliating the so-called culprit, and must always help him accept and bear these consequences. In this way we can make clear the educational purpose of our actions, show the young offender that society is not hostile, and that cooperating is to the advantage of the individual as well as of the community. This will correlate the well-being and progress of the child or the immature grownup with those of the community, and will make him willing and able to join and support the community.

If punishment is an expression of pessimism and lack of confidence on the part of the punisher in his own educational and therapeutic abilities, rewards—in form of tokens of distinction, concessions, premiums, gifts and favors—are hardly less so. This sort of compensation for creditable performance deprives the performer of his natural joy in accomplishment. This appeal to other, unrelated, not highly moral instincts, through bribing does not offer any constructive stimulation or improve motivation.

Encouragement by approval and assent to the efforts made, acclaim and praise are not only highly appreciated, but they are often necessary to help disheartened and tired children. It gives them confidence in themselves, stimulates them to make greater demands on themselves and to rise to a higher level of self-judgment. Of course, praise must be earned or it loses its value. If it conflicts with the child's self-evaluation, it only belittles his work or makes him accessible to bribes not related to his efforts and achievements.

There is a lot of satisfaction for every human being in the feeling of accomplishment in overcoming difficulties, in successfully finishing a job. If we teach children how to overcome difficulties, these difficulties can even exercise a stimulating and strengthening effect.

A child, confronted with situations which he has not learned to expect and to master, feels lost, insecure, upset, aggressive. To meet these situations, to escape difficulties, he may create many symptoms. He may become delinquent, he may become neurotic. Frustration imposes and increases the pattern of delinquency and neurosis.

Children who have not known understanding, social acceptance, significance, friendship or love, or who have misinterpreted or misused them when offered in an overprotective and unchallenging way, will easily suffer, as they grow up, from frustration, insecurity, anxiety and tension, often exploding into aggressive, antisocial behavior. Unguided guilt feelings, following such behavior, promote still more insecurity, still more anxiety and tension which, in turn, explode into vengefulness and more aggressiveness—the reaction to their own hopelessness and frustration. Therapy must attempt to interrupt this vicious "vicious circle."

In this process of education and treatment, understanding and "permissiveness" are the first steps, the preliminary stage; we understand under this unfortunate term only that knowingly, but not approvingly, we are ready to disregard their deviate behavior and still accept them, still like them and still be willing to help them to get rid of it—in spite of so many failures. Reorientation and reeducation will often demand that the child experiences the consequences of his actions—beneficial only if constructive help is offered to the child simultaneously. This help will, in the course of time, enable him to face the consequences. The danger that such an offer of help will be abused or misinterpreted is negligible, whereas almost always deliverance from anxiety and tension may be expected in the "offender," a feeling of relief at being given a way out, at finding a helping hand. These are the best bases for treatment and constructive education.

Consequences are closely connected with the concept of responsibility. We rightly have found that legal responsibility for delinquent acts of a sick juvenile mind should be abolished. But we are wrong if we believe that the abolishment of legal responsibility also means abolishment of social and psychological responsibility. The latter is necessary for all interpersonal human relationships. Abolishment of punishment does not mean complete abolishment of all educational, social, and psychological consequences. No treatment nor reeducation, as a matter of fact, no education or growth can be achieved without them.

We cannot help the delinquent (or any other) child by making education too easy for him, nor can we help him if we make it too hard for him. We must enable him to relearn what his role in society is and what his responsibilities are in it. The sense of belonging and the social feelings for other human beings are without meaning if they are not interrelated with, not derived from, or do not lead to social and psychological responsibility. It is no overstatement to say that many children, and groups as well, become delinquent because they were considered only children or inadequate in comparison with others, and were prevented from taking a responsible place in their family or community. They then overcompensate their feeling of social and emotional inferiority and act it out in neurotic or delinquent fashion.

3-cv-00547-O Document 20-2 Filed 10/06/23 Page 499 of 555 Pa

INSTITUTIONAL CARE AND MILIEU THERAPY AS TREATMENT APPROACH FOR JUVENILE DELINQUENTS

The 1-to-1 therapeutic relationship between patient and therapist is in most of these cases not enough. Group therapy and so-called milieu therapy can give him a better chance to—

(*a*) see himself mirrored by more than just the therapist who is also permissive. He will see the reactions of the more critical members of the group, in whose understanding and acceptance he is deeply interested, while the therapist continues to protect him against too heavy demands by the group and its individual members;

(*b*) he can test the interpretations and orientations received from the therapist by the reactions of his peers and check on his own reactions to them;

(*c*) he can test and learn to control the consequences of his behavior in a sheltered environment, and he can try out his interpretations of his own and others' behavior among equals who are "in the same boat" with him.

Milieu therapy, constructively structured, in a very active community of children or young people, guided and counseled by well-trained and experienced adults, gives the juvenile delinquent an opportunity to learn by experiencing, by living and doing, in an understanding, nonthreatening, moderately challenging and moderately competitive, accepting, friendly and cooperative environment that his concept of a hostile world, which he thought he had to fight, was wrong. Here he can gain new perceptions that are less biased; he can find new incentives and motivations to tolerate more frustrations, to make positive choices, to take on responsibility and, at the same time, to practice, to experiment, and to learn by trial and error how to make responsible use of what he has learned for his daily living.

This is why we believe that in most cases of juvenile delinquency, in which thorough treatment and reeducation are indicated, these should be given in an institutional setting, which provides an environment with all the facilities and limitations, permitting the juvenile delinquent no other way out but recovery.

Institutional care should be considered only for those children who can profit by its educational program of individualized treatment in the regulated and well-planned environment of a children's community. Disturbed children who do not need institutional care should be referred to foster-care agencies. The latter, of course, must be equipped to train and supervise the foster parents, specially selected for this purpose. Children in trouble need a variety of reeducation and treatment, and every institution concerned should be geared to this special task. Every institution to which a child is sent by a juvenile court should be founded on, and geared to, the principles of reeducation and treatment, and on these principles alone.

In some cases, the therapeutically and educationally oriented approach started with a change in title of the institutions, without change in content. Children's prisons and reformatories became training schools, children's villages, boys' towns or junior republics. But even the change in name alone has often led to important changes in the care of the children and has inspired the children themselves with the idea that they no longer belonged to a class apart, that they no longer belonged to an abnormal community—an attitude which had produced in many of them such sense of inferiority as to affect their entire future life.

All these institutions serve the children separated from their natural environment, from their families. This separation not only creates additional emotional disorders but also disorganizes the child's normal physical and psychological routine. His feelings of security and belonging and his loyalties are thus uprooted. To separate the so-called juvenile delinquent from other members of society, and then to provide only custodial care, is neither constructive to the individual treated this way, nor to the community which has to carry a moral and financial burden. We cannot do this to young people who, in most cases, through no fault of their own, but because society has failed them, become a burden to themselves and a liability to the community. They must be reeducated and cured, in their own interest as well as in the interest of the society.

Wiltwyck does not compete with the child's family; it does not seek to serve as a substitute for the family; it simply endeavors to supply other, very much

needed factors in the social adjustment process: a sheltered environment for temporary treatment, specialized education, an intensive guided and constructive social and work experience necessary for the particular child. The group staff of the institution is made up of counselors or educators, male and female, not parents—cottage parents—or the like; the caseworkers are social workers, the teachers are teachers. The director is the director of the institution, not a father or grandfather substitute. All workers are, of course, friendly, pleasant, understanding and loving professionals; but they must in no way pretend to be members of the boy's family.

The counsellors (2 in each of 8 groups of 12 or 13 boys and 4 relief and 2 activity counsellors—all of them college graduates) are directly responsible for the day-to-day living of the boys in their care. Aside from setting the tone of the group in terms of necessary routines, i. e., school attendance, health habits, table manners, etc., it is their function to guide their boys, through educative processes. The counselor uses his own good relationship, as well as the good relationship of the boys to one another, to interest the boys in a good functining as a group. He does on-the-spot treatment which is in his hand as long as he can handle it. The counsellor informs and consults with senior counsellors, head counsellors, caseworkers, and therapists in scheduled and unscheduled meetings and through exchange of written reports.

The function of our institution is treatment and education. Its emphasis is on healing, and this may sometimes prevail even over certain demands of a healthy normality. We know it is not healthy in a normal situation to keep a child in bed for long periods, but the curing process sometimes requires such an arrangement for weeks or even months, in the sickroom or the hospital. So the institution, too, must sometimes employ healing methods which would under different circumstances be considered unwholesome. Certainly the institution is not a hospital either and it should never imitate a hospital. Although we do believe that the children in our charge are sick and emotionally disturbed, we do not believe that they need or could profit by the setup and treatment facilities of a mental hospital.

The organized daily life of Wiltwyck, the setup of its institutions and school, its activities and its recreational program, its atmosphere and spirit, are all part of an education and treatment process which must also provide the proper therapeutic environment for psychotherapy, psychiatric casework and group therapy, psychodrama, remedial and accessory therapy such as art therapy, music therapy, etc. All education, the treatment and reeducation of our emotionally and socially disturbed youngsters is child-centered and focused on human relations. We try to help them to adjust or readjust to a normal life in society, so that they will be able to lead in their community a personally satisfying and a socially constructive life.

In a large percentage of children who get into trouble we find that feeling guilty and ashamed for having failed in school has not only made them truants but also defensive and hostile toward a society which demanded of them the knowledge of the three R's but did not help them to acquire it. Relief from this emotional pressure must be provided and remedial help by an expert teacher is often the most important, sometimes the only, treatment and cure.

Harmonious life requires a successful relationship to society, work, friendship, and love, all closely interwoven. All work has economic, social, and psychological implications. Human beings enjoy working and achieving mastery over materials and tools, unless misuse, misinterpretation, and misguidance corrupt their attitude toward work. They like to promote their own well-being and that of their community by their work. To pay them with special rewards (we do not mean the logical compensation for production of goods or for rendering services in the economic process) is to negate the ethical, psychological, and social character of work, achievement, and duty.

We, therefore, offer our children every opportunity to work and accomplish, to contribute to community needs by working without payment, and the opportunity to earn money by additional work. We consider it very important that work and worker should never be dishonored by being forced to work under penalty.

Every child receives a weekly allowance to use as he pleases. He will need advice and help on how to spend it; he also needs advice, help, and opportunity for hobbies and leisure time.

It seems to us that the most important role of any treatment center is to make clear to its children what their role is in society and what the role of others is, so that they can understand the division and variety of functions and

3-cv-00547-O Document 20-2 Filed 10/06/23 Page 501 of 555 Pa
accept them. "Socializing" the antisocial or asocial child consists mainly of showing him, interpreting for him, making him understand, accept, and respect the role and function of others and himself in society. Every pretense, introduction of wrong facts or incorrect interpretations, or the like are especially dangerous here.

FUNCTIONAL DEMOCRACY BUT NO SELF-GOVERNMENT DECEPTION

It is important to develop in our children a genuine desire for order, companion, and spontaneous social cooperation, as well as love for fair play. This can be achieved only by untiring explanation and guidance, and by practical demonstration arranged in cooperation with the children themselves.

Whenever possible, they elect representatives to committees with a clearly defined function—a usually most important food committee, a job committee, a canteen committee, a sports committee, etc., as well as a student council—authorized to discuss, with representatives of staff and administration, current community problems. They suggest improvements and, where possible, help execute and carry out their own decisions. Such participation in administration—not the pretense of self-government—must be meaningful and functional in the daily life of the children if it is to be educational and constructive.

An example from the Wiltwyck setup: Among others we had a committee to handle the allowance of the dogs. This committee was formed when one day a boy suggested that Butch (our first dog) should also get his allowance in the same way as the boys had it. Butch, he said, was an intelligent dog. He went to school with the boys and, therefore, was entitled to it. The whole assembly, boys and staff, decided against my opinion that a dog was not entitled to an allowance. Defeated by this decision, I asked maliciously what would Butch now do with the allowance; he did not know how to handle it. One boy suggested having a committee appointed consisting of 3 boys and 1 counsellor to handle the allowance for the dog and so it was decided.

Regular house meetings, held by the counsellors, are the backbone of the community education.

Very successful also are the general assemblies of all the boys and the staff, held once a week by the executive director. These meetings and assemblies serve two main purposes.

1. Group therapy through working out of group tensions, airing of general hostilities and dissatisfactions, constructive shaping of group expression and group opinion, the settling of group complaints, socialization and cooperation in and with the community.
2. Gradual education in democratic community procedures, free speech, respect for the opinion of others, courageous but disciplined opposition to them, organized elections of representatives and committees, understanding of, and purposeful cooperation with the administration.

When talking of "milieu" or "environmental treatment," we should add that the "larger environment" plays a very important role in our treatment, namely, the parents (their visits to the boys and frequent home visits of the boys), the churches of Esopus, the YMCA and settlement houses in Kingston and Poughkeepsie, the participation in the "Little League" games of the American Legion (the boys participate individually on various local teams), the free shopping trips to neighborhood communities, invitations of neighbors—adults and children—to our parties, performances, movies, ball games, etc., and the invitations of our boys to parties, performances, and individual homes of our neighbors, the sports contests with neighborhood schools, and other agencies.

One of the teachers who is ordained as a minister takes care of the interdenominational Protestant chapel services and Protestant religious education. Arrangements for Sunday services at the local church and religious education on released time for the Catholic boys are made with the priest of the local church.

Home visits are a part of the treatment. They are very frequently given, only on a casework basis, and cannot be earned or be used for reward or punishment. Where boys have no home to go to, we try to get temporary foster parents for home visits and for visits to the boys. When this is impossible, the caseworker from time to time takes the boy to New York City for a full day.

The very numerous activities are flexible and children are allowed to choose on a daily basis what they would enjoy most, but they have to stay with the activity chosen.

We use activities as well as dancing, dramatics, art therapy or other remedial therapy not only to widen the cultural horizon of our children, important as that

3-cv-03547-O Document 20-2 Filed 10/06/23 Page 502 of 555 Pa

is. The main purpose is to show to a discouraged child that he is not "too stupid," as they themselves often say, to learn reading or some other subject, but to prove to him that he does not need to rely on delinquent acts to get status. But how can you prove this to him than by making him able to read and write and therefore achievement in the subject is important.

Horseback riding and care of the animals serve many therapeutic purposes: (1) to overcome the feeling of helplessness and inferiority, since even a small boy can be shown that he is able to handle a big horse if he knows how; (2) to prove that the horse responds positively if you treat him well and throws you if you mistreat him. Conclusions concerning interpersonal relations can readily be drawn from this, such as, e. g., it pays to cooperate. Again and again we have had the experience that an autistic boy, unwilling to talk to anybody and unable to establish friendly relations with anyone, will first start talking to horses, pigs, goats or cows—and only then can he begin establishing relationships with human beings so that he can receive psychotherapy.

No doors are locked, or better, no doors where children can get out. There are doors locked where we don't want them to get in as, for instance, where records are kept or the ice cream for Sunday, etc.

So-called clinical services (psychiatric and psychological services, casework, group, art, and remedial therapy) are not separated from other services but are a part of the whole treatment process. There is no clinic (besides the infirmary). Thus we try, as stated above, to surround and encircle the child with all necessary services available, and to integrate them so that there is no other escape for him than to get well again.

It is usually the same caseworker who sees the boy, the parents, and community collaterals, mainly with the purpose of mobilizing and using their help in the treatment process; and also, wherever possible, to improve the family relationship in preparation for the return of the boy to the community. In special cases, some psychotherapy is also done by caseworkers with 1 or 2 members of the boy's family. In such cases, the worker sees the family member on a once-a-week basis in addition to his regular casework sessions.

Much emphasis is laid on group therapy, with either "living groups" or ad hoc "therapy groups." Group sessions are also held with parents in the city.

Wiltwyck is accepting boys between the ages of 8 and 12 years (in exceptional cases, under 8) and, unfortunately, some of our boys are 13, 14, and 15 before we can place them somewhere else.

Children are admitted only from the children's courts of the five New York City boroughs or from the New York City department of welfare as referring agencies. They have to be diagnosed by a city psychiatrist as severely emotionally disturbed, with behavior or character disorders, psychopathic, or sociopathic personalities, neurotics, schizophrenics, or suffering from organic brain disorders.

Wiltwyck accepts for admission fire setters who are not displaying too severe a compulsive pathology, epileptics whose attacks are controllable by medication and physically handicapped children who can still follow a minimal institutional routine.

We do not accept, at present, children with an I. Q. lower than 75 where emotional problems are not involved in these findings, nor mentally deficient children, because we believe that this type of children would not benefit from our verbal approach with no other restrictions than personal presence and influence of staff.

It takes from 1 to 4 years to obtain results which enable us to return the boys to their community, but we are troubled at having to send many of them back to environments which had contributed to their becoming delinquent.

All the boys discharged from the institution stay, at least for 6 months, under our after-care casework supervision. Only a small percentage of the boys can return to their homes without risking disaster again. Unfortunately, we are not able to find enough adequate homes for boys who could or should leave the school, but who have no family to which to return. There are also not enough facilities for boys who have made progress at Wiltwyck but still need treatment or help in another institution after having outgrown our program. The success of our treatment at the institution is gravely threatened by these facts; efforts and endeavors are frustrated, money spent is wasted, and valuable space for new boys might have to be taken up by boys who are ready to leave but have no place where they hopefully can go.

3-cv-00547-O Document 20-2 Filed 10/06/23 Page 503 of 555 Pa

RESULTS, SUCCESS AND FAILURES

Do we have success with our method? We will not really know this exactly for 30 or 40 years; but we can already see trends and results which are encouraging. In two studies which William and Joan McCord of Harvard University describe in their book, Psychopathy and Delinquency,[1] and in an article, "Two Approaches to the Cure of Delinquency,"[2] they compare test results of boys in Wiltwyck with those of boys in a New England State Training School not run on the principles of milieu therapy just discussed. Here are some of their findings:

"A comparison of the 0–8 month category and the 9–23 month category showed that the tendency of behavior disorders and psychopaths to view authority figures as punitive and threatening decreased significantly (P–.05) [at Wilwyck]. The proportion of answers (to the authority stories) which pictured authority figures as punishing significantly decreased from 45 to 26 percent.

"Because counselors protect as well as restrict, Wiltwyck seems to teach the child to apreciate the beneficial role of some authority figures. By emphasizing 'consequences,' rather than arbitrary punishment, the school apparently inculcates a respect for legitimate authority.

"A comparion of the 0–8 month category and the 9–23 month category showed that the tendency of neurotic and psychotic children to withdraw from a threatening or frustrating situation decreased significantly (P–.05). For psychopaths and behavior disorders the proportion of withdrawn alternatives chosen on the Rover test did not change.

"A comparison of the 0–8 month category and the 9–23 month category showed that the proportion of neurotics and psychotics rated as 'realistic' in their self-perception significantly increased (P–.05).

"During the first 8 months at Wiltwyck, the behavior disorders and psychopaths had more aggressive fantasies on the Rover, more hostile views toward authority, and less guilt than did the normal children. Yet, after the boys had been at Wiltwyck for at least 9 months, they had less aggressive fantasies, a less punitive view of authority, and almost as much guilt.

"Thus, in milieu therapy, society seems to have an effective instrument for the treatment of psychopathy. Our study indicates that the psychopathic child, if treated in a permissive environment, can be changed."[3]

"When asked, 'What do most of the boys in the school like to do best?' however, the delinquents partially lowered their inhibitive guards. The answers seemed revelatory both of the actual conditions within the school and of the respondents' projected desires:

	Wiltwyck percent answered	New England percent answered
Constructive Activities: (e. g., sports, schoolwork, read, work with horses)	74	29
Destructive activities: (e. g., smoke, fight, steal)	11	48
Neutral activities: (e. g., see movies, play marbles, fool around)	15	23

To the question, 'If you could be anyone in the world, whom would you be?'

	Wiltwyck percent answered	New England percent answered
Myself	50	22
Power figure (e. g., Samson, God, President)	16	37
Positive ideal (e. g., Franklin, Carver, a counselor)	16	11
Worst enemy (e. g., "The guy who beats me")	10	5
Don't know	8	[1] 25

[1] McCord, Two Approaches to the Cure of Delinquency, pp. 460–462.

[1] William and Joan McCord: Psychopathy and Delinquency. Grune and Stratton, New York, 1956.
[2] William and Joan McCord: Two Approaches to the Cure of Delinquency, Journal of Criminal Law, Criminology and Police Science, vol. 44, No. 4, Novemer–Decemer 1953.
[3] McCord, Psychopathy and Delinquency, pp. 147–164.

3-cv-00547-O Document 20-2 Filed 10/06/23 Page 504 of 555 Pa

In conclusion, I should like to repeat that we do not believe that all cases of juvenile delinquency or emotional disturbance in children can be treated by the methods described. Many new approaches will have to be considered. Not all disturbances are alike; nor can they all be treated alike; but certainly a society that fights its poverty and suffers from little or no unemployment will achieve far greater success in its fight on so-called juvenile delinquency. A society that teaches its children to understand and respect the opposite sex, and other races; that believes in the values of human life and instills this belief in its children, will be taking a long step toward the elimination of juvenile delinquency. A society that teaches its children how to make good use of their leisure time, how to avoid idleness, a society based on common and understandable ideals, a society that gives its children humaneness and an ethical or religious sense—that society will come close to its goal of delinquency prevention.

When Lombroso put forward physical anomalies as the basic causes of criminal behavior, he was not simply giving a biological interpretation to medieval beliefs about being possessed by evil spirits to be driven out of the criminal by physical means or, if necessary, by the destruction of the body possessed. Today we know that in criminals biological anomalies do exist, conditions which may be treated by tranquilizers, electroshock, or lobotomy.

Long before the world had learned that whippings in the woodshed, or in public, prison, expulsion, cutting off of a limb, or hanging, as crime deterrents did not work, poets, philosophers, and scientists spoke about treatment through understanding, affection, and love.

More than 150 years ago the great Swiss educator, Johann Heinrich Pestalozzi, wrote in How Gertrude Teaches Her Children: "Man is good and wants to be good; but in so doing he also wants to be happy; if he is bad, you may be sure that someone has blocked the road on which he wished to achieve this goal." [4]

In a democracy the whole community can only advance when it can profit from the cooperation and contribution of as many members of its society, and each individual in a democratic society will advance further and better if many or all members of the community will contribute to their best ability. Children who by their violent reaction to frustration, unhappiness, lack of love and friendship, by independent thinking and action have proved that they want understanding, friendship, love, and accomplishment and that they want to contribute their creative abilities to an accepting society—they are not expendable.

Statement of Rev. Robert E. Gallagher, Executive Director, Catholic Charities Guidance Institute, New York, N. Y., Submitted to the Subcommittee To Investigate Juvenile Delinquency of the Senate Committee on the Judiciary

A delinquent is a child or youth who habitually fails to exercise moral responsibility toward himself, his community, and his God. Through the many programs of the archdiocese of New York the church focuses on the development or restoration of the personal moral responsibility of the child.

EDUCATION

The Catholic school system of the archdiocese of New York provides Catholic children and youth a sound and comprehensive education which includes moral training as well as factual knowledge. The stress on intellectual development is matched by a strong emphasis on respect for God's law and the laws of society. These schools inculcate in the minds of students of all ages the individual's obligation to his Creator and man's concomitant obligation to respect the rights of his fellowmen as God-given. This stress on man's obligations to God and to his fellowmen is bolstered and supported by a thorough appreciation of the rights of the individual in 20th-century society.

These attitudes are developed in our Catholic schools through a curriculum that has as its core a body of fundamental and absolute principles. Man has been created by God and man will one day return to God. Every human action is to be interpreted in light of this basic fact. The full and complete structure of religious principles emanating from this fundamental belief strengthens and gives unity to all the courses in science, language, the arts, etc., offered in Catholic schools.

---

[4] Johann Heinrich Pestalozzi: Leonard und Gertrude, 1781: Collected Works. L. W. Seyfarth, Liegnitz, 1899–1902.

3-cv-00547-O Document 20-2 Filed 10/06/23 Page 505 of 555 Pa

The educational program of the archdiocese presently services 201,765 children and youth in more than 400 elementary and secondary schools in addition to 20,000 at colleges and universities.

RELIGIOUS INSTRUCTION

The child in the public school has available the opportunity for religious and moral training at a religious training center of his own faith under the released-time program. The archdiocese is providing weekly religious instruction to 89,668 Catholic children attending elementary, junior high, and high schools at 371 centers.

This opportunity for moral training is admittedly minimum. At least the released-time program gives recognition to the necessity for a child to learn right from wrong and the Ten Commandments, the primary guideposts for moral living. It is inconsistent indeed for a community to be alarmed by youthful lawlessness and at the same time to decry any attempt to teach fundamental morality to the child in the public school.

FAMILY-LIFE EDUCATION

The preliminary report of this subcommittee soundly states "Better children can come only from better parents." The proper training of children within the family is the first order of business for the married couple.

With this general objective in view, the Family Life Bureau of the Archdiocese of New York pursues four objectives, all rooted in the basic purpose of marriage itself.

First, to train young people prior to marriage and indeed prior to engagement in such basic ideals as the choosing of the right partner, the nature and purpose of marriage itself, and the religious and moral aspects of the married state.

The conferences on dating and courtship and the conferences for engaged couples have within the past year been attended by 10,000 young Catholics.

Secondly, to indoctrinate married couples in the ideals of their vocation and to inspire them to live a happier life together, in order that their children might be educated in the home atmosphere most conducive to wholesome growth.

Thirdly, to teach parents the solid principles of child rearing and sound methods of discipline.

The conferences for the married couples of the archdiocese, which deal exclusively with the husband-wife relationship and the parent-child relationship, along with other conferences on the parent-educator role, have been attended by 12,000 Catholics during the past year.

Finally, to organize married couples into leadership groups for the purpose of promoting good family life in the community.

The Christian family movement embraces 500 couples well organized in 40 parishes of the New York archdiocese.

The family-life program in which over 22,500 engaged and married couples annually participate is a growing activity in New York. While no one can estimate its impact on parents or children at this time, its full flowering is watched with some expectancy that it is a long-range step in the right direction of delinquency prevention.

LEISURE-TIME ACTIVITIES

The leisure-time activities of the archdiocese are provided as a means of involving youth in moral and religious training and of preserving contact with religious influence.

The Catholic Youth Organization of the Archdiocese of New York operates and supervises a program for over 250,000 youth between 8 and 21. A fourfold program of spiritual, social, cultural, and athletic activities is provided.

With each parish as the center for the youth of each neighborhood, this program of activities utilizes the priests and adult leaders of each parish. The central Catholic Youth Organization office, through its county offices, services the parish program.

In providing this positive program of activities, the Catholic Youth Organization wishes to exercise a constructive influence over the leisure time of its youth through wholesome activities that are character building, supplementing the hours that each youth spends in school or in the home. Such an organized program, while being secondarily preventive, is available also as a part of a corrective program for some delinquent youth.

20873—58——10

3-cv-00547-O Document 20-2 Filed 10/06/23 Page 506 of 555 Pa

COMMUNITY ACTION

The potentially delinquent child is especially vulnerable to the confusing, materialistic, amoral climate around him. The various Catholic organizations in New York have relentlessly opposed the decline of moral standards witnessed in the growing lack of decency, the false values frequently created by advertising, the lurid reporting by some newspapers, immorality in certain magazines and comics, and prurient entertainment. At the same time the church has made every effort to improve the moral standards of the community.

CHILD GUIDANCE

The delinquent or disturbed child is a principal and direct concern of the Catholic charities of the Archdiocese of New York which operates a variety of remedial programs.

The Catholic Charities Guidance Institute, a licensed psychiatric clinic for children and youth from 8 to 18, is the largest Catholic facility of its kind in the country with 35 years of continuous service and is staffed by 61 highly trained psychiatrists, psychologists, psychiatric social workers, and educational specialists. The guidance institute annually treats almost 1,600 disturbed children.

The individual disturbed delinquent child is a source of bewilderment to himself and to his family, to his school, and to his community. The attempt to unravel the mysteries of his personality frequently confounds even the professional. A thorough painstaking diagnosis of the whys and wherefores is the first imperative. Seldom is a single cause uncovered and the complexity of causes is limitless.

A diagnosis which points toward an organic defect is found in a minority of cases. More frequently amoral family situations and an immediate community devoid of standards are the setting in which is found the child who lives by impulse and without respect for authority. In most of the situations of the delinquent or predelinquent child examined at the clinic, the core problem is an emotional disturbance in the child, the genesis of which is found in a damaged child-parent relationship. This problem in turn relates to the earlier life experiences of the parents themselves and their relationships toward each other and their own families.

Clinical experience, therefore, points to caution about panaceas and exaggerated claims of success.

The clinical emphasis of the guidance institute is on treatment. This involves weekly sessions with one or both parents and child for a period of 6 months to 2 years. Again, there are no shortcuts, no rules of thumb. Based on the diagnostic findings an attempt is made to remedy the psychological damage. Ataraxic drugs have been employed in selective cases under careful clinical supervision with some limited success. An evening clinic in the Bronx and Westchester have made possible involvement of fathers. Here favorable improvement in many situations has been achieved.

The ultimate therapeutic goal of the guidance institute is to help the child to exercise proper moral responsibility in his own actions.

The guidance institute, together with other child-guidance clinics, is unable to meet fully the demands for service. More careful screening of delinquents referred for clinical treatment is needed. Not every delinquent needs psychiatric care and everyone who needs it cannot profit therefrom. Additional clinical research is needed. The training of additional clinical personnel is paramount.

VOLUNTEER PROGRAMS

The Catholic Big Brothers of the Archdiocese of New York supplies friendly counseling and guidance to delinquent and predelinquent boys on an individual basis. Four hundred and forty-seven boys were served this year by volunteer Big Brothers under professional supervision. The Big Brothers are professional and business men who give of themselves and their own time. They are an example of citizen participation and personal charity in action. In view of the fact that a third of delinquent boys have no father in the home, these volunteer Big Brothers are performing a needed service. At the same time they are rendering an effective service. Thus far this year 17 percent of all referrals made by the Juvenile Aid Bureau to private agencies were handled by Big Brother organizations. A recent study of the Juvenile Aid Bureau reports that more than half of the youth referred to private agencies during the month of

Case 1:23-cv-00547-Q Document 20-2 Filed 10/06/23 Page 507 of 555 Pa

October 1951 were never reported to the police again during the subsequent 5 years.

Groups of Catholic Big Sisters in the metropolitan area provide similar services for girls. They also follow up on religious problems of children appearing in court with the child's local parish.

INSTITUTIONAL CARE

The training of the committed Catholic delinquent is provided by a variety of Catholic institutions within the archdiocese of New York. The unique pattern of sectarian child care in New York City has proved advantageous to the children and the community for almost a century.

The Sisters of Good Shepherd, a worldwide group dedicated exclusively to the care of the delinquent girls, maintain five facilities. They annually care for 787 court-committed girls. During the past year these Sisters established an apartment-type facility for unmarried mothers known to the courts.

Lincoln Hall, a modern cottage-type institution, last year served 493 delinquent boys. This program is operated by the Christian Brothers who have served the delinquent boy since 1863.

The Astor Home conducted by the Coronet Charity Sisters is 1 of 3 residential treatment and research centers established by the State in 1952. This pilot project is geared toward research and training and renders intensive therapeutic care for 45 children. Significant directions in the treatment of severely disturbed children are being developed at the Astor Home.

These institutional programs are maintained by religious orders with a century or more of tradition and experience in the field. They have kept pace with every scientific and educational advance for more effective programs of rehabilitation. Psychiatric, psychological, and casework services have been incorporated to provide an integrated treatment program.

The primary aim of these institutional programs is to return the delinquent to his family and to the community better equipped for moral living and for personal and community achievement.

PARTNERSHIP WITH GOVERNMENT

The partnership of concern and of action between local governmental and voluntary agencies is the New York City pattern. This partnership exists in all phases of coordination, program, and service. It is and has been the sound practice of local government to purchase service from voluntary agencies.

The result of this partnership is a network of services unparalled in the Nation. It has prevented surrender to government and has maintained the interest and support of voluntary groups. Recognition is given to the prior obligation of the people on the scene and of ongoing agencies to deal with their own problems. Citizens and voluntary groups in turn are challenged to respond to the need for action.

In conclusion, we compliment the overwhelming majority of the children and youth of New York City and their parents. They are good. The boys and girls of our town are seriously preparing for successful parenthood and effective citizenship. Despite the materialism around them, they daily succeed in living moral and happy lives.

STATEMENT OF HENRY G. HOTCHKISS, PRESIDENT, FEDERATION OF PROTESTANT WELFARE AGENCIES, INC., NEW YORK CITY

I am Henry G. Hotchkiss, president of the Federation of Protestant Welfare Agencies, Inc. Our agency serves as the coordinating, central service, and standard-setting body for social welfare programs operated by Protestant and nonsectarian groups in the New York City area. We welcome this opportunity to present briefly the work of the Federation of Protestant Welfare Agencies and its agencies in treatment and prevention of juvenile delinquency to this important committee of the United States Senate. We believe that the whole job of treatment and prevention of juvenile delinquency can be done by neither the public agencies nor the private agencies working alone. This requires teamwork of both public bodies and the voluntary agencies—and teamwork in planning and financing. Obvious and serious concerns to us for the long-range consideration of juvenile delinquency are (1) the need for more neighborhood center programs in underserved parts of the city, (2) inadequate long-term financing of many youth services, (3) lack of camping space, (4) need for

3-cv-00547-O Document 20-2 Filed 10/06/23 Page 508 of 555 Pa

bilingual workers in centers for Puerto Rican young people, (5) a serious personnel shortage, (6) the need for expanded foster boarding and adoption services—particularly for babies, (7) lack of treatment facilities for treating the emotionally disturbed, and (8) inadequate public reimbursement, particularly for institutions which are striving to provide more specialized care.

We have 219 affiliated and associated agencies. In general, the agencies fall into four categories: health, aging, family, and child care, group work and youth services.

We are concerned with combating and controlling juvenile delinquency in several ways. In our division on group work and youth services, we have 28 agencies engaged in group work and recreation activities. Last year these agencies served more than 210,000 individuals through neighborhood houses, settlements, YMCA, and YWCA programs; 25 have programs located in the areas of highest delinquency in our city. Our agencies are open to children and youth regardless of race, creed, or national origin. The federation staff offers consultation to boards and executives of agencies in encouraging the inclusion of the socalled hard-to-serve youth in their programs.

Special grants were made by the federation last year to place Spanish-speaking workers in certain agencies that were located in areas rapidly becoming a haven for our United States citizens in Puerto Rico that are coming to the city. Believing that home visits by an individual of the same language and cultural background could be effective in drawing the newcomers into the oncoming life of the community, the federation has encouraged it through consultation and funds. These workers have made a bridge between the community and the newcomers. In March of this year, the bilingual case work and referral service was opened in East Harlem under qualified social-work direction to help with the variety of personal and family problems besetting the newcomers to the city. This program is operated by three of our affiliated agencies and is open to any person in need.

We all recognize that delinquency has no single cause nor cure. Circumstances which lead to one individual's break with society may have a completely opposite effect upon another individual subject to the same circumstances. We know that all efforts need to be harnessed toward offering our children and teenagers a home with parents who care and opportunity to develop a place for themselves in our society. Through the varied programs of the neighborhood centers and Y branches there are activities which may well challenge the interest and ability of a large number. Through contact with adults who are trained in directing the energies of youth toward socially acceptable goals, and through the opportunity to gain status for good, an individual may begin to realize his potential.

We have had stories of individuals who broke with their former gang associates when the program in an agency challenged them. One of our agencies has a basketball league—some of the teams are known gangs. Through their weekly practice and frequent matches with others, these boys are beginning to find the satisfaction of teamwork for something, rather than in opposition against something or some gang. Gradually, the leaders in the program are finding avenues of interest for these boys in other aspects of the year-round program of the agency. I cite this example as indicative of the kind of preventive program Protestant agencies in New York City are offering. These are sponsored by various denominational groups and independent boards of Protestant citizens. It is not unusual to find the participants in a program of almost every other faith than that of the sponsors. Our agencies have chosen time and again to remain in a neighborhood where the population changed leaving pitifully few of their own persuasion in residence. They chose to stay to meet the needs of the community. Our federation staff helps agencies in evaluation of services with constant emphasis on inclusiveness of all who need and can make use of the agency's program.

As a federation, we are concerned not only with the group work programs but with family and child welfare programs which support and supplement the child and his family in times of stress. I understand that you are having speakers from Wiltwyck School for Boys and Children's Village. Both of these are affiliated members of the federation and I need not elaborate on that type of Protestant effort as they are representative of the group.

I should tell you, Mr. Chairman and members of the committee, of the part the federation agencies play in cooperation with the public programs. Through the New York City Youth Board, on which I am honored to sit on the advisory board, agencies related to the federation are encouraged to be partners with a public agency in services to the youth of the city. Ten of our agencies have

3-cv-00547-O Document 20-2 Filed 10/06/23 Page 509 of 555 Pa

a total of 25 contracts with the youth board for group work service. This means that about 2,200 additional young people are being served through this joint effort. Our casework agencies have contracts for intensive casework service to approximately 300 individuals and families.

We have, in the federation, a special committee on juvenile delinquency that was appointed 2 years ago. It is made up largely of prominent community people supplemented by 3 or 4 agency executives. Its job is to keep informed on the trends in juvenile delinquency in the city and to become well acquainted with our agencies located in the high delinquency areas. This committee, from time to time, makes recommendations on programs which the federation may endorse in the interest of controlling delinquency. The committee, likewise, encourages member agencies of the federation in their partnership role to the public agencies in delinquency prevention efforts. You might call this our "watchdog" committee.

There are not enough trained workers, not enough caseworkers in the child caring agencies and institutions, there are not enough skilled group workers for the intensive work in the youth serving agencies and not enough caseworkers in the agencies seeking to meet family problems. I would like to tell you some of the things the federation is doing to help meet this shortage. Four years ago our board voted to give yearly $2,500 as a scholarship to the New York School of Social Work for a Protestant who would want to work in New York City after receiving this training. Two years ago, two candidates were found who could continue their studies with half the grant and the amount was split. This year, we again have two people on scholarship by dividing our amount. One is a second-year student at the New York school and the other a young Puerto Rican with a brilliant record of undergraduate work at Hunter College. We likewise have broadened our base and include in our scholarship program New York University School of Public Administration and Social Service and the Louis M. Rabinowitz School of Social Work at Hunter College. Actually, this could be called a pilot project which we hope other Protestant agencies will take inspiration from and do likewise.

The spring of 1957 the federation inaugurated a work study program with the schools of social work and member casework agencies. The 2-year graduate study necessary for a professional degree has been lengthened to 3 years and in so doing developed a work plan for the student in a cooperating agency. The agency makes an agreement with the student for salary and tuition during the study. I might add that our agencies may receive public reimbursement for as much as a third of the cost through the department of public welfare. Our agencies began this fall selecting candidates for this program.

Right now there are seven students enrolled in the schools of social work and giving part-time service to their sponsoring agencies under the work study plan. These are workers who cannot afford to undertake full-time graduate study except under a work study plan. Our agencies are now also looking for means of utilizing untrained personnel outside of the work study arrangement. A unit of 4 such workers in training has been established in 1 agency, with a special in-service training program and special supervisory procedures to prepare them to carry professional responsibilities. Other agencies are preparing to follow a comparable procedure.

The incidence of juvenile delinquency has risen in various sections of our country. We need to share our experiences and pool our efforts in plans for intensified service. Because of time limitations it has not been our intention to discuss police matters and correctional procedures that are called for when delinquency prevention has failed. Individual and family problems must be carefully weighed against community responsibility and resources. I appreciate the opportunity you have given me to tell of the Federation of Protestant Welfare Agencies and its concern in this matter.

STATEMENT BY HERSCHEL ALT, JEWISH BOARD OF GUARDIANS, SUBMITTED TO THE SUBCOMMITTEE TO INVESTIGATE JUVENILE DELINQUENCY OF UNITED STATES SENATE COMMITTEE ON THE JUDICIARY

As your subcommittee undoubtedly has observed, delinquency is a many-sided problem and calls for action on many fronts. Unfortunately, its breadth and complexity inspire many unsound proposals and make it difficult to choose the most fruitful point of attack.

I assume that you would wish to have me begin by telling you about the Jewish Board of Guardians, particularly its work with delinquent children.

3-cv-00547-O Document 20-2 Filed 10/06/23 Page 510 of 555 Pa

We believe that this should have special interest for your investigation because it highlights some of the measures that should be taken to prevent and control delinquent behavior as well as to rehabilitate the individual delinquent child.

For more than half a century the JBG, as we are now known, has pioneered in the prevention and treatment of delinquency and remains today the major resource of the Jewish community of metropolitan New York in dealing with this problem. But our responsibility goes beyond the child classified as delinquent. Guided by the logic implicit in its work with the delinquent child, the agency has become a comprehensive mental-health facility providing a network of services for the emotionally disturbed child from the age of 2 on, whether he is or is not delinquent.

We often speak of the basic changes which have taken place in our work as a progression from correction to treatment to prevention. Moreover, the development of the agency has been characterized by a spirit of pioneering and a determination to stretch the limits of treatability, ever more extending service to children usually considered untreatable.

HISTORY

The forerunner of the present agency was the Jewish Protectory—now the Hawthorne Cedar Knolls School—which was established in 1906 to serve delinquent and neglected boys between the ages of 7 and 16. In 1917 a girls' division, known as the Cedar Knolls School, was established on the same grounds.

Very soon, however, the community leaders who sponsored these institutions recognized that it was not enough to reeducate children who had already committed offenses; it was even more important to help families and children before they got into trouble.

This conviction led to the establishment, within 10 years after the founding of the protectory, of a volunteer service in the children's courts. A corps of Big Sisters and Big Brothers stood ready to help every child who appeared in the court.

Before long the volunteers recognized that professional workers might be able to help in ways volunteers could not, and by 1921 they were instrumental in establishing a professional treatment service which brought to the delinquent child the skills of the psychiatrist and the social worker.

The professional unit quickly took the form of a child-guidance service for children referred by courts, schools, hospitals, and social agencies. The Hawthorne Cedar Knolls School could not help but be influenced by what was taking place in the city. The conventional training school regimen which the school followed, with its emphasis on routine, strict discipline and hard work, could not but be affected by this new program. Gradually its focus changed from training to treatment, the fences were removed, the detention cells abolished and the original rigid and repressive features were replaced by more flexible and therapeutic methods. The way in which the Hawthorne program was transformed could, in our opinion, serve as a valuable object lesson to all State schools for delinquents interested in adopting progressive methods.

The concern of the agency that treatment be brought to children as early as possible led to the establishment 10 years ago of the Child Development Center to specialize in the study and treatment of the preschool child. This is a laboratory project and is expected to add to the basic knowledge about child growth which is an essential requirement to any successful treatment of psychological problems.

The two most recently established residential treatment centers, the Henry Ittleson Center for Child Research and the Linden Hill School are, like the Child Development Center, intended to serve as laboratory and research projects for the study and treatment of the young, as well as the adolescent, psychotic child. The Henry Ittleson Center has already laid the foundation for a broad investigation of the beginnings of mental illness in children. The Linden Hill School is about to launch a similar program for the treatment and study of the adolescent psychotic.

As a result of the development I have described, the agency's facilities now include a court treatment service and a number of mental health clinics in the different parts of the city which provide outpatient treatment to the emotionally disturbed and delinquent child while he remains in his own home.

For those children whose difficulties cannot be successfully dealt with while they continue to live in their own home and neighborhood, the agency maintains 4 residential treatment centers: Hawthorne Cedar Knolls School, with 200

3-cv-00547-O Document 20-2 Filed 10/06/23 Page 511 of 555 Pa
beds; Linden Hill School, with 27 beds; Stuyvesant Residence Club, with 25 beds; Henry Ittleson Center for Child Research, 21 beds—or a total of 273 inpatient beds. It also cooperates in the maintenance of specialized academic curricula for the education of the children in residence at Hawthorne, Linden Hill, and Ittleson, as well as a therapeutic nursery school at the Child Development Center. A summer camp for boys and girls with problems similar to those treated at the various clinics is another of its important facilities.

Children are referred to the agency by public and voluntary agencies, including schools and courts, as well as members of the medical profession and, more and more, parents themselves are applying for help.

On any 1 day the agency is responsible for the treatment and guidance of approximately 1,500 children, and their families, from the age of 2 to 21, and throughout the year is involved in a treatment relationship with approximately 5,000 families and children.

Its staff includes 450 workers, of whom about 250 are in the professional categories. This includes about 35 child psychiatrists—25 as members of the staff and 10 fellows and residents being trained to qualify for this specialty; 80 psychiatric case workers; 40 teachers. In addition, the staff includes a number of psychologists, group workers, psychiatric nurses, social scientists, and research technicians. Besides its paid staff, about 250 volunteer workers are actively engaged in the work of the agency. This includes Big Brothers and Big Sisters who serve as friends to individual children as well as volunteers who help in a variety of activities such as teaching, extracurricular projects—art, dancing, etc.

The total budget for the fiscal year 1956–57 of the parent agency and its affiliated organizations was something over $2,500,000.

Beyond its inpatient and outpatient treatment services to the disturbed and delinquent child, it maintains accredited and informal professional training programs in child psychiatry, psychiatric social work, psychology, and teaching. In recent years it has established a broadly planned research program with the purpose of achieving a fuller understanding of the problems of the children the agency works with, what it does to help them, and what results are achieved.

The way the agency's network of services developed points to a number of important factors which need to be taken into account in any community program for the delinquent child. By bringing together under single direction a number of different services which any one child may need in the course of treatment, we have in the structure of the JBG in microcosm many of the elements which should be found in any sound community program.

Through our court services and our outpatient clinics, we try to get to children as early as possible after the appearance of their problems is noted. We proceed by evaluation and diagnosis of what needs to be done and then assign the child to the treatment facility which can best serve him. This may be one providing psychotherapy alone; or a combination of psychotherapy and a carefully adapted educational plan; or it may be a period of treatment away from home in one of the residential centers. The fact that these services are provided under the same direction means ease of transfer, conservation of all that is known about the child as he moves from one treatment division to another and the avoidance of fresh and misdirected starts in treatment. It means that basic responsibility rests with a single agency and is only delegated as necessary to a particular treatment division. It means both continuity in treatment and accountability in responsibility.

The record of the growth of the agency clearly establishes another basic principle, namely, the importance of doing everything possible to deal with the situation while the child is still in the community and in his own home because, ultimately, he must return to the community. It may be surprising to you to be told that after a record of 50 years in implementing this principle, which took the form of movement from the institution back to the community, we have only recently found that after strengthening our court service we could further reduce the number of children whom the courts committed to our Hawthorne School.

I do not believe that any community has as yet exhausted fully the possibilities of prevention and treatment for the child in his own home through probation, social services, mental-health clinics and special schools, and many children are still committed to training schools who could much more advantageously, from the standpoint of the child as well as the community, be successfully treated while he remains in the community.

PREVENTION

In dealing with both medical and social disorders, prevention is a magic word. But unfortunately we have not been able to isolate the carriers of the delinquency germ as we have those of typhoid fever. Although in an absolute sense we do not know enough as yet to prevent social disorders such as delinquency, we know many things we can do to limit the exent of the problem.

It is important to be sure that what we do in prevention as well as treatment is based on the fullest understanding we have of delinquency as a form of behavior—what is behind it and how it can be dealt with.

We see the disturbed child—and this includes most delinquents—as one who has been deprived in the most elementary affectional needs. An important ingredient which treatment must provide, therefore, is restitution for this deprivation. This includes both psychotherapy and satisfying life experience, relationship of confidence and trust between the child and adults, opportunities for creative experience and all activities which engender self-respect and respect from their associates, as well as useful occupation. These are some of the things all disturbed children need.

When we consider delinquency more specifically, we must recognize that since the roots of human character have not changed, the kind of delinquency we have at any time must be a product of the social conditions which exist at that time. Apart from whether delinquency has or has not increased, we know that there appears to be a wider sanction for violent behavior, an increase in social disrespect and a widening gap between social and individual values. Since violence breeds violence, we may wonder how far two world wars, the ever-present fear of total destruction through nuclear weapons and the unprecedented rate of technological change have contributed to the constant flux and instability in social values. Since the delinquent is an isolate, lacking in roots and a sense of belonging, the present social instability must be an important force in his maladjustment.

We know that all measures that safeguard family life and contribute to the security of parents assure the healthy growth of children, so that protection of economic standards through social insurance, adequate housing, wholesome neighborhoods, are all elements in prevention.

Our own agency has been able to test the validity of these assumptions about the forces that contribute to delinquency. During the war years and since, we have carried on a number of activities with the aim of preventing delinquency. In general, these have had a twofold purpose. First, they seek to bring to all those who play an important part in the lives of children as full an understanding as possible of their emotional needs as a basis for dealing intelligently with them.

Their other purpose was to mobilize the natural interest of adults in a better environment for children. An example of this was our work in the Brownsville-East New York area. This, it will be recalled, was the neighborhood in which Murder, Inc., was born and which in general produced a highly disproportionate number of delinquent children. During the war we undertook a two-pronged effort in this area: improvement of the attitudes toward children on the part of the residents as well as the agencies in the neighborhood, and help on an individual basis to parents and children who were already in difficulty. As an indication of the effectiveness of this kind of community effort the number of children from this area arraigned in the children's court on delinquency charges dropped by two-thirds.

During the war years, too, the agency engaged in a number of cooperative activities with several community centers, nurseries, and Hebrew schools. The chief emphasis in this effort was to help the community center or school to do a better job for all the children in its care. The focus was not only on the child who presented a problem which called for general or specialized treatment, but equally on the program of the center or school to see how effectively its operations served the needs of growing children.

This brings me to an important issue in prevention. We know that in our present-day complex society the family alone cannot carry the total burden of child rearing. It must turn to community agencies for help. There is much agreement about the vital part which the school plays in the life of children, but even though this is so, we have not yet been able to establish or consistently safeguard some of the most important requirements for the fulfillment of its role. The teacher must stand close to the parents. She must know her children, therefore her group must be small enough to permit her to achieve this. Education must give as much attention to the child as to subject-

-cv-00547-O Document 20-2 Filed 10/06/23 Page 513 of 555 Pa
matter, and this means that the leadership of the educational system must be in the hands of men who are oriented to the growth of children in contrast to curriculum and administration.

I know that some of you may be surprised to learn that I differ from any of my colleagues when I say that a disproportionate emphasis is being placed on bringing the psychiatrist, social worker, and all the remedial skills into the schools. Unquestionably the mental-health professions have an important contribution to make to the building and operation of an educational system. The educational function, however, must remain intact—the responsibility of its own profession, with its own autonomy and authority. Too often, members of other professions are called in as repair crews to patch up what is breaking down, rather than to help build a sound basic structure in the first place. The pity of it is that at the moment we are doing neither—neither building a sound structure nor providing the repairs for the inadequate one in existence.

Our work with the delinquent child throws light on another phase of prevention. We know something of the process by which he substitutes social for antisocial goals; we know the process through which you can build his confidence in adult leaders who become to him models of social behavior.

We need to utilize this knowledge. Every adult dealing with children must accept the responsibility which goes with the recognition that he serves as an example to every child. Adults must settle for themselves what they are for, so that they represent to children positive direction rather than the uncertainty which adds to bewilderment and insecurity. We must be sure that adult behavior will develop the confidence of children in the representatives of the organized community, in the fairness and consideration of the policeman, of the youth leader, and of the teacher.

So long as the public press continuously reports how criminals escape consequences for their misdeeds as well as incidents of dishonesty on the part of leaders in business or public life, we cannot hope to have youngsters acquire the essential confidence in the social order which is a requisite to decent citizenship. I think it is important that leaders of our Government, up to the presidential office, should be sensitively aware of the impact of the behavior of those in public office and leadership positions upon the values and attitudes of our young people.

While we are on the subject of prevention it is important to stress that in the field of delinquency, prevention and treatment are but two sides of the same coin, two phases of a single effort, and one can hardly be considered apart from the other. Each delinquent child unsuccessfully treated becomes a focus of infection—a force—for more delinquent behavior, while each delinquent successfully treated becomes an agent of social health.

Moreover, treatment must remain the foundation of prevention. It is from treatment that we learn about the roots of maladjustment; it is from treatment. too, that we gain insight into the mainsprings of human behavior and the potentialities for healthful living with which every human being is endowed.

We now logically come to what perhaps may be the core question: How can treatment facilities be made more adequate? The starting point is our knowledge of what works and what does not work. We have at our disposal a body of tested methods. Our difficulty lies in our limited use of them. It is usually a case of too little and too late. The major obstacles are: lack of sufficient funds; lack of an adequate supply of qualified personnel; poor logistics in agency alinements; the absence of clear lines of responsibility and accountability; and, very often, public attitudes unrelated to the considerations of public protection, safety, and the rehabilitation of the child.

It seems unnecessary to reaffirm for your subcommittee the importance of the treatment of delinquency as a phase of our common life. We must bring to it a sense of responsibility and a respect for the scientific as well as tested commonsense elements involved in dealing with it. We must also be ready to provide the wherewithal. We have proof that sound methods soundly carried out bring the results we seek and wrong methods or partial, haphazard, and irresponsible work bring failure. Thus, for example, there is a tremendous variation in the results achieved by various agencies and institutions. To my knowledge, this is true of the rate of recidivism of the youngsters discharged from such institutions. A great many leaders of our worst gangs are drawn from this recidivist group.

It does not need any argument to show how the number of delinquent children would be materially reduced if the institutional treatment now provided were improved. Although our own agency will never be satisfied with the results of its work until we have sufficient knowledge and use it with sufficient skill so

3-cv-00547-O Document 20-2 Filed 10/06/23 Page 514 of 555 Pa

that every child whom we undertake to treat gets better, nonetheless I am presently going to cite some of the facts, first, because little information of this character is available and, second, because I believe they do support many of the pleas I have made.

In 1950 the agency made a followup study of the progress of 100 boys discharged from our Hawthorne Cedar Knolls School. It was found that over 70 percent had made good adjustments 5 years after their release. When contrasted with the rates of recidivism experienced in other correctional institutions, the rate of success proved to be extremely high.

A study of the factors which account for the general decline in delinquent behavior among the special population group whom our agency serves no doubt would throw light on the forces back of delinquency as well as the kind of social action and remedial measures that can be effective in reducing it. Between the years 1930 and 1940 the number of Jewish children appearing in the children's courts of New York City declined from 1,400 to 256. A variety of social factors must have played a part in this reduction. At the same time, we are warranted in assuming that the services to children and families provided by this and other agencies must have had a good deal to do with it.

It is of further interest to point out that there was an increase in delinquency among Jewish children during the war years. However, the total number remained small and the ratio of increase was somewhat less than that for the population as a whole. We find that since 1940 it has not exceeded 5 percent, often falling below 4 percent of the total, as compared with the ratio of Jewish population to the total of 27 to 25 percent.

These results have been achieved even though our resources, too, are not as adequate as we would like to see them. We do not have sufficient resources to employ the professional staff we need in our outpatient services and thus are able to treat only 1 out of 4 children who apply to us. The capacity of the Hawthorne Cedar Knolls School is not equal to meet the total need for residential treatment for the children referred by the courts and from time to time our waiting list presents a serious problem.

Moreover, there are many things that we know would contribute to more successful treatment if we could afford them. We do not have all the clinical staff we need; our average population per cottage is larger than it should be to get the best results; our aftercare service to the children discharged from the school is, in our opinion, far from adequate, so that much of our investment is lost; our research funds are not sufficient to help us fully analyze what we do, so as to improve our methods.

These deficiencies are a source of great anxiety to us because we have seen so many delinquent boys and girls who have come to us after every other treatment effort has been exhausted and to whom our Hawthorne School represents the last resource. Over and over we have been able to watch the progress of such children over a decade or longer and have seen hopelessness yield to hope and repeated failure followed by unbelievable success—dividends in human values which more than warrant the investment.

Lest we assume that the results I have cited are as good as they are because we help children who are easy to treat and that scientific methods are only effective with the mildly disturbed or mildly delinquent, I can only tell you that the reverse is the truth. We have always accepted the aggressive and defiant child, even those who have committed homicidal acts.

Delinquency remains a challenge to our way of life and the establishment of a program for its elimination calls for courage, creativity, and the highest level of social planning and statesmanship. The partial and piecemeal efforts we have thus far relied upon are not meeting the situation and must be replaced by a broad and inclusive approach which takes into account what we know about the problem and which is backed by sufficient resources to break through to the basic health and goodness of our young people.

STATEMENT OF RAFAEL R. GAMSO, M. D., MEDICAL SUPERINTENDENT, RIVERSIDE HOSPITAL, NORTH BROTHER ISLAND, NEW YORK, N. Y.

Riverside Hospital was established for the examination, treatment, and rehabilitation of young drug addicts in July of 1952. The hospital is located on North Brother Island, a 13-acre island north of the Triborough Bridge and east of the lower Bronx. It is reached by a ferry leaving from the foot of East 134th Street in the Bronx. The hospital consists of a main building, in which are

3-cv-00547-O Document 20-2 Filed 10/06/23 Page 515 of 555 Pa
housed the male patients and most of the professional and administrative offices; a school building; a building housing the female patients, living quarters for nurses, as well as the offices of the vocational training program; a recreation building; and several service buildings; as well as two empty buildings which might be available for expansion if extensive renovation were done and staff provided. The hospital is under the jurisdiction of the Department of Hospitals of the City of New York. The cost of operation is shared by the city and State, with the city paying the major share. The hospital may treat drug addicts from any part of the State who are under 21 years of age at the time of first admission.

It receives patients either without commitment or by commitment in accordance with the public health law (art. 33, title VII, secs. 3360–3366). In practice almost all patients are processed and placed under hospital control in accordance with the law. The program involves a complete study of the individual, a period of inpatient care which may vary from 1 month up to a year or more, continuous supervision as an outpatient after the patient leaves the hospital, and repeated periods of inpatient treatment if necessary.

There are several unique aspects of the hospital program. All patients are drug users or drug addicts. It is possible to interview and work with the family; to have patients in the hospital participate in activities away from North Brother Island which should be of value in guiding them in the use of their leisure time or directing them to activities which they could explore for employment purposes after they leave the hospital. The patients' homes are in the vicinity so that they can be seen in the aftercare clinic. The proximity of other psychiatric hospitals and other city hospitals makes it possible for Riverside Hospital to take advantage of other professional staff in the organization and operation of the hospital program.

The participation of the school and the diversified professional staffs assigned to the hospital expands the program beyond that of a limited medical facility to one in which a total rehabilitation program can be organized. There is great effort to create a therapeutic community, utilizing all the aspects of the facility, its plant and personnel. We attempt to create a program which will provide an opportunity for the patient to develop understanding, to grow and mature and learn to accept responsibility, and develop standards of behavior which would be acceptable in the community.

It should be noted that when the hospital was established there were no trained or experienced personnel available. Drug addiction had received so little attention that it was not possible to recruit personnel who had had experience in this field. Similarly, there was a relative shortage of persons who had worked in treatment institutions for delinquents or for disturbed adolescents, staff had to obtain experience and training while in service at the hospital. All personnel affect patients. The professional staff must be well trained, experienced, mature, and have good judgment as well as the ability to maintain good relationship with the patients. The nonprofessional personnel must have understanding of the work which is being done by the hospital, the emotional attitudes of patients, and all the varying factors which go toward developing acceptable and cooperative programs for the rehabilitiation of the patient.

Patients are assigned to work with employees in the service divisions, such as engineering, housekeeping, dietary, stores, and others, so that the patient may obtain training and experience with employees working in productive activities. It was necessary to conduct intensive in-service training. These efforts must be continuous since it is not easy for employees who are not trained in professional fields to work with patients. It is often easier for them to do the work themselves than to train, supervise, direct, and redirect patients whose interests often are elsewhere.

Among the difficulties which we encounter is the insufficiency of staff which precludes the possibility of sending workers on home visits or to do fieldwork with the friends and relatives of patients. Likewise, there is not sufficient staff to conduct treatment for families of patients. It is our hope that this deficiency may be overcome in the future. Among the problems which beset many of our patients are lack of cohesive understanding and cooperative families; exposure to a high incidence of antisocial behavior among their peers; residence in congested areas and in substandard housing; relatively low family income; drug use by a relatively large minority of the population in the areas in which they live; and membership in minority racial groups.

In addition to withdrawing individuals from drugs our program must include education and reorientation of the drug user to socially acceptable behavior,

Case 2:23-cv-00547-O Document 20-2 Filed 10/06/23 Page 516 of 555 Pa

strengthening of their family ties, and the relationship of the patient to the community, improvement of the community attitude toward these deviant individuals, obtaining cooperation of community agencies, and long-term supervision by experienced, well-trained staff after the patient leaves the hospital, as well as repeated periods of inpatient treatment if necessary.

There is need for an increased number of inpatient facilities, properly staffed with diversified programs to provide the services needed by patients who vary remarkably in the types of services which they need and their ability to use them. There must be prolonged followup and posthospitalization services, adequately staffed with well trained, experienced staff. There should be simplified procedures for transfer of patients from inpatient to outpatient status and vice versa for all drug users of all ages and for the transfer of patients among various types of institutions as the need varies for stricter or less supervised institutional care. There should be participation of community agencies and opportunities for job placement, availability of recreational facilities, adequate housing, family counseling, and family guidance, and other necessary services. A very important thing would be provision of a convalescent residence or halfway house which patients could go to if the homes from which they come are not suitable for their return at that time. For some patients there would be need for long-term rehabilitation and training camps such as the forestry camps which have been established for other groups.

Drug addiction among preadults is but one manifestation of juvenile delinquency. However, this behavior has serious consequences since the person who uses drugs tends to become involved in criminal acts in order to earn the money to pay for the drugs; because he loses interest in normal activities and does not make any contribution to society, does not usually work, and tends to be careless in other aspects of behavior such as respect for other people's rights and property, and of his own personal hygiene and habits. There is a tendency for drug addiction to spread as association with drug addicts causes a youth to do what his peers are doing.

Experience through the years has shown that very few drugs addicts are helped by a period of imprisonment alone. Many factors enter into the involvement of patients in drug usage. Among the basic features are emotional difficulties with which users are unable to cope. Narcotic drugs relieve anxiety, thereby decreasing the discomfort created by the underlying emotional factors. This plus the need for medical supervision of the withdrawal syndrome makes it desirable for treatment to be conducted in a hospital. Riverside Hospital is psychiatric in nature and the emphasis is upon the personality and the emotional needs of the patient. The patients are young and are in need of education and the type of group participation and group activities which are conducted in a residence facility, or in a school. Under the supervision of the bureau of child welfare, Public School 619, Bronx, was established by the board of education and opened in coordination with the hospital on North Brother Island.

The hospital is staffed with the professional disciplines which are believed to have value in the study of personality factors, the treatment of mental and emotional disabilities, and the development of inherent resources. The staff includes psychiatrists, internists, dentists, psychiatric social workers, psychologists, nurses, recreation leaders, occupational therapists, vocational rehabilitation counselors, and chaplains. There is close coordination of all disciplines. The treatment program for each patient is individually prescribed to meet his or her needs as determined by psychiatric and psychological examination, review of his previous life's history, and observation of the patient's response to test situations in school and vocational assignments at the hospital.

The drug user, when he first comes into the hospital, wishes to go off the drugs so as to meet the pressures which caused entry into the hospital. In most cases, after withdrawal from drugs is completed and the patients regain physical strength, they lose interest in further therapy. They almost always state that they are able to take care of themselves and stay off drugs without further help from the hospital. Experience has shown that very few patients are benefited for any length of time by withdrawal from drugs alone. It requires a prolonged period of hospital and clinic treatment before the patients realize that the use of drugs is harmful and that they can manage their lives without the use of drugs, and before they acquire sufficient interest in normal aspects of life, such as school, work, recreation, social activities, and normal relationships with other persons so that they are willing and able to resist the temptations to return to drugs.

The nature of obtaining drugs and the handling of drugs and related activities is such that drugs users become fearful of authority, distrustful of people

3-cv-00547-O Document 20-2 Filed 10/06/23 Page 517 of 555 Pa
and agencies who might help them, and suspicious of treating personnel. Most drug users come from disorganized families, where they have not had a person in whom they could have faith, so that this pattern of distrust and disbelief is easily developed. This attitude has its onset early in life, often long before drug usage begins. One of the major problems involved in treatment is to acquire the confidence and the cooperation of the patients. The treatment situation is so structured that after adequate study of the patient, a program is developed, including psychotherapy, classroom work and vocational training, using hospital facilities, with constant attention to this problem of confidence of the patient in the treating staff. At the same time effort is made to develop within the patient a sense of responsibility, and an understanding of his part in developing what is to him a new attitude toward living.

Experience has shown that for many patients an initial period of hospitalization is merely an introduction to the idea of living without drugs and that the difficulties of making adjustment in living without drugs does not become apparent to them until after they leave the hospital. It has been observed that with many of them, even though they may revert to the use of drugs, they have now found that this is something which upsets them. They then are returned to the hospital and on this readmission they make a more serious attempt to understand themselves and why they went back to drugs. They may participate better in hospital programs after readmission. It is recognized that most patients will need the advice and guidance of the hospital staff over a prolonged period of time; that therapy must be continuous during the period of hospitalization, continue through attendance at the clinic, and for a period of readmissions if necessary. It has been found that as this contact is maintained and reinforced by repeated discussion and evaluation of the patients' problems with the staff member, there is increasing evidence to indicate that the patient is making better adjustment in the community. The adjustments are in several areas. The basic one is a decrease in the use of drugs or actual abstinence from the use of drugs. Other aspects are better relationships with family and friends, better ability to work and support themselves, and decreased delinquent or criminal activities.

When a patient is separated from inpatient care and leaves North Brother Island, he is carried as a transfer to the therapeutic leave census and continues to be seen in therapy at the After Care Clinic by the personnel who conducted therapy in the hospital. If the patient requires further inpatient care, because of return to the use of drugs, or other reasons, that patient is then returned to inpatient care as a transfer from therapeutic leave without a break in the therapeutic relationship. This realistic approach recognizes that continuous long-term therapy both in and out of the hospital is necessary to change the patient's attitudes toward life and the dependency on the narcotic drugs,

This observation with regard to the need of preadult drug users for long-term continuous supervision and guidance by professional personnel would seem to apply to other juvenile delinquents. It has been observed that many patients come from a hard core of families who have had many contacts with social agencies over long periods of time. These families apparently did not make effective use of the agencies, usually made 1 or 2 contacts, did not maintain follow through and failed to see the benefits which would have resulted from proper use of the social agencies. It seems, therefore, that some authoritative supervision must be maintained so that there may be continuous long-term contact between the delinquent, the delinquent's family, and the treating agency.

The Riverside Hospital program has attempted to utilize in a coordinated fashion the community resources that are available. Referrals are made to the division of vocational rehabilitation of the State of New York. Other community agencies or casework agencies are contacted with regard to family problems. Patients have been taken on trips to beaches, parks, museums, and other public places of interest and entertainment. Private individuals and agencies have cooperated and there have been trips to ball parks, theaters, and other places of entertainment. These trips are under the supervision of the recreation department. They have served as recreation but are primarily a positive aspect of the treatment program whereby the patient is not isolated from the community but is encouraged to maintain interests in normal community and social activities.

The background of the adolescent drug users, their experiences and family relationships are very similar to those found in the usual juvenile delinquent. Many of the findings and techniques that are in use at Riverside Hospital have broad application in dealing with juvenile delinquents. It has been the experience of the community agencies that lack of motivation and ability to follow through makes this group of young people and their families a difficult and

3-cv-00547-O Document 20-2 Filed 10/06/23 Page 518 of 555 Pa

unrewarding group to attempt to serve. Then, too, there has been an element of reluctance and uncertainty in dealing with the juvenile delinquent, and, in particular the drug user, because of the unpredictability of their behavior. With a coordination of approach and a sharing of experiences among the agencies in this field, more positive results could be achieved. This would entail a granting of priority to the young people and their families, as they are not able to withstand the frustration of a waiting list, and a more aggressive reaching out to the young person and their families than is the present mode of practice of most agencies.

Riverside Hospital has now been in existence for 5½ years. During that period it has amassed a wealth of experience in dealing with delinquent adolescents. It has developed an experienced staff in all the clinical departments. The staff of the hospital is active in addressing professional groups and parent groups interested in drug addiction and juvenile delinquency.

There are numerous public, private, and voluntary agencies active in different fields of the delinquency problem. Each of them was established to meet a specific need in a particular area or for a particular group. Through time and growth each has developed its own procedures and methods. There is need for a great deal of cross-fertilization of ideas, exchange of information, and elimination of duplication. Experience at some of the agencies has given them a wealth of information and knowledge which should be shared with others.

Riverside Hospital is an ideal place for the study of juvenile delinquency and is a fertile training facility for persons who would work with delinquents, as well as for all persons who are interested in adolescents and persons with emotional difficulties. There is a shortage of trained personnel, and it would be wise to make such training available to as many interested persons as possible.

The Prehospitalization Personality Structure, Generalized Into Five Syndromes

The prehospitalization personality structure of patients at Riverside Hospital generalized into five descriptive groups by Dr. Donald Gerard, associate visiting psychiatrist at Riverside Hospital and a member of the research staff of the New York University Research Center for Human Relations

INDEPENDENT VARIABLE SET III

1. The conforming, passive-inadequate youth

In his prehospitalization and predrug-use life, he was an unassertive, generally obedient, quiet youth who had few friends, stayed away from trouble and gangs, expected little of himself in school or work, accepted his familial situation in which he had definite, often excessive chores, responsibilities, and controls, without evident protest. His self-concept was that of a weak, inadequate male from whom aggressiveness or self-assertiveness had been removed (castrated?) or in whom it had never existed. Although subtle evidences of manipulativeness, or unconscious denial of this self-concept, or resentment toward attempts to master the fantasied castrator may be evinced in dreams, fantasies, or projective psychological material, the facade, the persona is that of an inadequate passive, incompetent child.

2. The "true delinquent" or the "cat"

In his prehospitalization and predrug-use life, he was a shrewd youth who was in or out of trouble, not risking trouble through flagrant misbehavior of a provocative face to face nature, but avoiding identification with benevolent adults; demandingness, complaint, projection are evident as a counterpoint with manipulativeness, keeping cool—He sees delinquent goals and values as better values than those of the squares; however, he will not throw the glove in the face of authority. He gets out of school those limited skills which are delinquency syntonic, e. g., automechanics is valued as a background for car theft. Commonly he is a handsome and graceful youth, well mannered, and well dressed. He is proud of his ability as a thief or a troublemaker, and seeks to charm, often successfully, the well-intentioned therapist or educator, into doing things for him. He probably has avoided institutional treatment or control for delinquency by the sincerity of his promise to reform and the tears of regret he weeps for his sad family who will be disgraced by his downfall. Parenthetically, he may exhibit subtle anxiousness or project in dreams, associations, or in formal psychologic test material evidence of serious developmental arrest or defects.

3-cv-00547-O Document 20-2 Filed 10/06/23 Page 519 of 555 Pa
However these characteristics are not available for public inspection. The persona looks strong, intact, and adequate.

3. The adjustment problem, behavior problem youth, the malcontent acting out type

In his prehospitalization and predrug-use life he was evidently in troubles of a minor but cumulatively impressive nature; he had attendance and disciplinary problems with school. If he worked he either was fired or quit, moving from one job to the next. With his family, he felt distant and tried to get even further away from it. He is stubborn, superficially self-reliant, distrustful, unable to accept help, or support from adults. Unlike the passive, conforming youth, he seeks to compensate for his weak masculine identification and dependent wishes by a facade of strength, vigor, activity—he may hold a minor police record, with such charges as street fighting, destructive activity, or theft. In psychiatric evaluation one observes that he experiences a great deal of internal conflict and the evidence is right on the surface.

4. The youth with debilitating anxiety

In his prehospitalization and predrug use life, he had struggled against an active disorganizing and disruptive process in which he experienced extreme anxiety, feelings of inadequacy and lowered self-esteem. Though moralistic, striving toward conventional goals in work, education and marriage, he finds himself unable to carry out the required roles and relationships for these goals. His hold on reality is tenuous. In situations which are perceived by him as stressful, he becomes unrealistic and confused. In general he attempts to maintain intellectual controls and defenses, and to avoid situations which require emotional participation. In formal psychiatric interviews, paranoid trends and thinking disturbances are noted, which strongly suggest, as does his defective ego functioning noted in projective psychologic test material, that he is a borderline or incipient schizophrenic.

5. Overtly psychotic

In his predrug use and prehospitalization life, he has displayed a variety of maladjusted behaviors, at home, school, community, ranging from the merely silly to the homicidal * * * at least in intent. At the time we observed him, he showed affective blunting or inappropriateness, bizarre behavior, loss of judgment, special symptoms, e. g. hallucination or delusions, all sufficient to make the diagnosis of schizophrenia. He rarely progresses in the hospital to deterioration or progressive loss of contact or control requiring mental hospitalization, but rather usually improves in the protective hospital situation to an often dramatic extent. * * *

STATEMENT OF H. DANIEL CARPENTER, DIRECTOR OF HUDSON GUILD, NEW YORK, N. Y., SUBMITTED TO THE SUBCOMMITTEE TO INVESTIGATE JUVENILE DELINQUENCY OF THE UNITED STATES SENATE COMMITTEE ON THE JUDICIARY

My name is Daniel Carpenter. I am the director of the Hudson Guild Neighborhood House, located in an area of Manhattan known as Chelsea. In the time I have I would like to present a kind of case study of a neighborhood at work—a story of local people, agencies and institutions at work in a changing neighborhood in New York City to try to keep it from complete deterioration, to prevent crime and juvenile delinquency and to upgrade it in every way possible. First, however, I want to give you a brief description of the Chelsea area, and secondly, something about Hudson Guild, so that you will know and understand the frame of reference from which I am making this presentation.

The Chelsea area is a 1-square-mile area of Manhattan, bounded by 34th Street on the north, 14th Street on the south, the Avenue of the Americas to the east, and the Hudson River on the west. It is a mixed use area, with business, industry, and residence intermingled, and it is surrounded by probably the greatest concentration of industry in the world. The residential buildings built before 1900 are made up of brownstones, tenements, rooming houses, and some few modern and high-rent apartments which have been built since 1920. By and large, it is a low-income neighborhood with low rentals prevailing, except for the exorbitant rents charged in the rooming houses. According to the 1950 census, the area had about 61,000 people. There are something over 30 different nationalities living in the Chelsea area, with a predominance of Irish, Italian, Puerto Rican, and Greek, with a small but growing Negro group. It is estimated today that the Puerto Rican people make up about a third of the population.

The religion is predominantly Catholic, with a growing number of people of the Jewish faith, and with the number of people of the Protestant faith remaining static. Over the last 10 years the area has experienced extremely rapid change. Major change consists of the old-time residential population withdrawing, with Negroes and Spanish-speaking families coming in in the largest number. There are many assets in the area, in addition to people, such as good churches, good schools, good institutions, active business groups, and well-organized labor groups, as well as veterans' and other civic organizations. But there are also many liabilities and problems. Deterioration in buildings is probably the most devastating due to the conversions and the overcrowding in the rooming houses. Intergroup relations are not the best, with conflict between Puerto Ricans and non-Puerto Ricans here and there throughout the area. There is lack of pride in the area, and bewilderment on the part of many people in knowing what to do or how to do it.

Now let me brief you on Hudson Guild. It has been a place in Chelsea where all peoples, regardless of race, creed, or national origin, are able to come for help and to feel at home, since it was founded in 1895. Hudson Guild is interested in the whole family, and its program reflects concern for all ages and all members of the family, ranging from the nursery and child-care center up through to the day center for the aged, at the other end of life. I won't spend any time on the scope of the program, but only refer you to the pamphlets which you have before you, which describe the Guild more fully than I have time to here. The Hudson Guild, in addition to providing programs and services for the whole family, is interested in the conditions under which these people live. It is concerned, too, with working with people to help them improve their conditions and build a better kind of neighborhood life. It is its aim, also, to create a sense of partnership between the people in the area and the agencies, so that it isn't a question of doing things for people but of people working together for their common good. In other words, we are, as the whole settlement movement is, here in New York and throughout the United States, dedicated to helping people to build better neighborhoods.

Furthermore, it is with the conviction that if we are going to get at some of the root causes of "juvenile delinquency" we must look into the community and study its impact upon the family; and if we are going to prevent delinquency, it means upgrading and strengthening our community and neighborhood life, by preventing or eliminating blighted conditions and by bringing order out of disorganization.

The case study I want to present starts in 1947, and covers the period from 1947 to 1957. It will include only the hightlights of some of the projects and experiments that we have carried on, which I think would be of interest to you in your search for means to prevent juvenile delinquency. In 1947, the Elliott Houses, the first postwar public-housing project in New York City, was tenanted. At this time the first Negro families in large numbers came to live in Chelsea. Along with the tenanting of the public-housing project, we had the first big influx of Puerto Rican families into the area, taking up places in the rooming houses. The impact of this rapid immigration and the resultant overcrowding led to actual outbreaks of street fighting in 1949. This outbreak of street fighting took place even though a great deal of work had been done to try to bridge the gap between the old and the new. Nevertheless, it got out of hand in the summer of 1949.

Immediately following the outbreak, we brought together young people whom we knew were involved in the organization of the fight, principally the non-Puerto Rican young adults and the older teen-agers in the community, some of the Puerto Rican adults we knew, along with parents, interested citizens, and local police officials. This group sat down for three nights running, to see if it could be discovered how and why the fighting started and what could be done about it. You probably will be interested to know how this open street fighting actually started. As we dug into the situation, we found that three teen-age girls in the area, who were a little bored at the time, would go into the park or up to a street corner and stand near a group of Puerto Rican young adults. The girls would stand there for a moment and then they would start to laugh. The Puerto Rican young people, naturally, would turn to them and say something in Spanish, and at that point the girls would run away screaming, giving the impression that they had been insulted or assaulted. As a result, their brothers and boy friends would come forth and an argument between them and the Puerto Ricans would ensue. This gradually built up into actual fighting. The last straw was a little incident where a Puerto Rican was alleged to have bitten an Irish kid, and on that evening the street fighting broke out. As we talked

3-cv-00547-O Document 20-2 Filed 10/06/23 Page 521 of 555 Pa
through and got into the factors leading up to the fighting, we found that it was a Greek kid who bit the Irish boy, but that made no difference at all; everyone was out to get the Puerto Ricans by that time.

Now, the point of this story is that by moving in quickly, by involving the parents, by bringing everyone in and having them sit down together, the young adults that were involved were served notice, very directly, that this kind of conduct would not be tolerated, and if it happened again, drastic action would be taken. This was gotten over to them by their peers, not someone from the outside. It was the community talking to them, and I think it really made the difference. And from that time to date, we haven't had anything of that nature in the area, even though factors were present which made us feel we were sitting on a powder keg.

Because we knew trouble would continue unless some positive measures were initiated, we started an expanded English-teaching program, using an English-through-pictures method that was developed at Harvard, to help with the very basic problem of communication. This brought literally thousands of Puerto Ricans into the English classes in the area.

In 1952, we found that we needed—not only at Hudson Guild but at all the agencies—to know more about the people who were now living in the area, what they thought of the area, and what they thought of each other. For that reason, we asked the Center for Human Relations Studies at New York University to help us make a study of people's attitudes. I have the study here and you have copies before you. Out of this survey, one of the important things we found was that people were concerned with what happened. They were not as apathetic as we had believed; they did want to do something, but they didn't know how. There were no channels through which they could work. They wanted help with their children, not blind censure of their inadequacies. Here was a challenge for us—to find ways to involve the people themselves in doing something about their own problems, their own families, their own kids, and so forth.

In 1953, we started what we called the new-neighbors project. This is 1 of the 3 programs that I want to emphasize to you as an experimental approach to some of the problems of a changing area of New York City. We had been unable to get very close to the Puerto Rican families in the area. We thought we knew what they wanted, and what they needed, but most of the time we were way off the mark. Foundation funds were secured to permit us to hire a couple of very good Spanish-speaking people, who went into the neighborhood and knocked on every door, not with a program, but just to talk with the new neighbors about their concerns, to find out what they thought their problems were, and in the meantime, to get some idea of which people in the Puerto Rican community could take responsibility and had capacity for leadership. At the end of about 4 months of this kind of work, 4 main needs were crystallized: (1) That the Puerto Rican people wanted a Spanish-speaking organization that they could belong to; (2) they wanted English classes around the clock; because their work was so irregular, they could not get to classes that were held at just 1 time each night; (3) they needed help in getting shelter, because there is no group more discriminated against when it comes to housing as the Puerto Ricans; (4) they wanted a better relationship with the police. On the basis of these four needs, a program was developed with the Puerto Rican people themselves, with as much emphasis as possible on involving non-Puerto Ricans. One of the problems we have not been able to overcome is the mobility of the Puerto Rican people. This is understandable because they are living under conditions that are, on the whole, terrible. They are constantly on the move, and those who have the greatest capacity for leadership are the ones who move most frequently, in an attempt to improve and better their conditions; so we are always, so to speak, running fast to stay in one place. Another complication is the fact that every time you knock on a door, and it is opened to you, you become a party to many fantastic problems—family problems and welfare problems—and these complicate our whole approach to the Puerto Rican community because so many of the problems are just unsolvable. Nevertheless, we cannot turn our backs on them, and, consequently, we are heavily burdened with an endless number of what we might call family service problems.

A Spanish-speaking club has been organized, and has served a real need. Other organizations in the area have also been urged to organize such groups. English classes have been expanded, and are now being taught over a closed-circuit television project, which I will also describe later on.

KnifeRights MSJ App.000516

The housing problem is one which continues to baffle us because there seems to be no end to it. There are hundreds of families, actually thousands, living in one room for which they pay exorbitant rents, and there seems to be very little hope that even within a generation they can expect anything better. Through a weekly housing clinic, we have helped them to get rent adjustments; we have helped them to know how to work with their landlord and to get the best deal they can without exploitation. However, most of the time, if the law codes are enforced, a family may be evicted because it is living in violation of one of the codes.

The fourth aspect of the program had to do with the police, and here it was a matter of developing understanding. For a while we promoted classes in Spanish for the policemen, and we have served as an intermediary between the Puerto Rican people and the police on many problems.

As we pursued our work in the new-neighbors project, we came to a building called the New California Hotel. Upon visiting it, we found that there were more than 600 people living in 98 rooms. It was about the most filthy, degrading, indecent situation one could imagine. Through the leadership of the deputy commissioner of building and the commissioner of welfare, we were able to work out a project with the owner and the tenants, the health department, the local public schools, and Hudson Guild, whereby we could attack the New California Hotel problem as a team. This has been one of the most productive demonstrations of teamwork that we have experienced in the last several years. Through this team approach we have been able to upgrade from unbelievable conditions what would be considered a solid mass of hard-core or multiproblem families to a degree of decency. As a result of the work with the tenants of the New California, the amount of destruction has been cut down. Cleanliness has been maintained; the people are beginning to take some pride in the building, as well as in keeping their own apartments in somewhat better condition, and they have begun to participate in things outside the New California Hotel, at the school, and Hudson Guild. The parents have registered their children for play school and camp during vacation periods, and have joined the English classes themselves. The women were organized into a homemakers club, and at the end of the first year prepared a luncheon consisting of Puerto Rican delicacies for the commissioners of the city departments involved in the project. This activity gave the group of about 15 women a great uplift and a sense of dignity and importance. To have had the privilege of preparing lunch for high-level city officials was, as one woman said, "out of this world." The principal point I want to make here, though, is that juvenile delinquency and crime were rampant prior to the start of the New California Hotel project, yet today it is negligible. The project is explained in more detail in some of the literature I have given you.

The success of this project prompted a recommendation to the mayor that the same approach be tested in a larger area. After an examination of several blocks, it was decided to select the 300 block on West 27th Street. More city departments were invited to participate, and while we had 1 owner at the New California, we had 49 in the 300 block, many different kinds of housing and many more people. First to be organized were the owners, then followed the tenants, and finally they were all brought together into one organization. Through this work we are satisfied that the approach is a valid one, and that it will upgrade a block and help to develop the kind of life there which will be a strong deterrent to juvenile delinquency.

While the New California Hotel project was being worked out, the New York City Youth Board was able to come into the Chelsea area with a full program of aid for the youth-service agencies, whereby 12 workers were provided to supplement the various private agencies in the area to enable them to increase their work with youth. The impact of this new leadership, along with the other programs carried on in the area and the involvement of people and organizations, has had a telling and very successful effect. The delinquency rate in Chelsea today is on the downgrade as reported by city officials. This indicates the validity of the various things we have been trying to do. In the period from 1947 until today we have had no teen-age gang warfare, as other areas of the city have, and we feel pretty sure that we can keep it from appearing here in the future. On the other hand, we are confident that if it does, we can very quickly stamp it out.

In addition to the programs I have mentioned, it became clear to us that we still had not reached down to the roots of the community in terms of organization, so that the potential power of the people and their own organizations could be mobilized. For that reason, we applied to a foundation for help in getting

3-cv-00547-O Document 20-2 Filed 10/06/23 Page 523 of 555 Pa

funds to see if we couldn't demonstrate that an organization could be built in an area such as Chelsea that would be self-sustaining and could work effectively on many local problems that the people themselves were concerned with. We were successful in getting funds to sponsor a project on a 3-year basis, known as the Chelsea citizens project, which is now about 1½ years old. On November 17 of this year we held a permanent organizing convention, where we brought together 76 organizations, representing labor, business, churches, social agencies, social clubs, veterans' groups, political parties, nationality groups; in fact, every legitimate organized group in the Chelsea area. They adopted their own bylaws and elected their own officers and charted out a program which covers everything from delinquency to improved housing, recreation, health, and many other things that affect the area.

Now, this organization was started with the conviction that the greatest hope for sound communities lies in the mobilization of the people themselves. In general, our approach in New York City, where we have had dramatic increases in crime and juvenile delinquency, has been to saturate the area with police, strengthen the local agencies with Youth Board personnel, and then hope that things would get better as a result of these measures. If this does not work, and things get worse, we relocate the people, bring on the bulldozers, and build a new neighborhood. In this approach, the people have been ignored. It is our feeling that the really sound approach to problems of the community, including juvenile delinquency, is through the people. Unless we can mobilize the strength which is there, all our efforts will be something like bailing water out of a leaky boat. Every time we stop, the boat will sink.

We believe, too, that the community and the kind of community life that exists has a tremendous impact on the families. In every community there are strong parents and weak parents. The weak get along fairly well in a healthy community, where there is communication and a sense of pride, standards of conduct, and certain social pressures. This kind of community can give the home support. The churches, the agencies, the schools, the PTA's and other groups are on the job and can immediately move into a situation which begins to get bad. In a community that is deteriorating, that is disorganized, where the agencies are withdrawing and the people with leadership capacities are withdrawing, there is no support for weak families. They just get mired down in a deteriorating community, and we all know too well the result.

We believe there is strong interplay between the community and the family. When the family is out of step with the community, and the community out of step with the family, we are in trouble. Let me give you an example. One of the families I know quite well had a little tow-headed kid who was too young to go to school. He spent his time out on the street, climbing on cars and dancing on the hoods and roofs of the cars. One day one of the workers at the guild grabbed him and pulled him off the roof of a car. He twisted and turned and shouted and kicked, but the worker took him home. There she met a hostile and belligerent father who demanded to know why the worker was bringing his child home. When she told him why, he said, "Well, I don't care. I don't care what he did. I am going to get out of this neighborhood as fast as I can, and the sooner the better," etc. The worker stood her ground, and showed the father that when he escaped to his dream cottage in his dream community, he was going to take along a little tow-headed kid, who was growing up with complete disregard of property, of people, or anything else, and this child would enter this paradise with all the bad habits he was picking up here because of his father's attitude toward the community. Fortunately, the father happened to be an intelligent fellow, and the next day he came to Hudson Guild and asked if he couldn't talk some more about his youngster. As a result he became a very active parent volunteer for several months before he finally did leave the area. Still, the sort of attitude that this man showed at the beginning is typical of what happens when an area begins to go downhill. Only an alert community can counteract it.

The last project I want to speak of is the Chelsea closed-circuit television program which was opened last week. This project was initiated to test what this new medium (television) could contribute to the enrichment of education, to the speeding up of learning of English by non-English-speaking people; as a housing management aid; to the development of a sense of pride in the community, and to greater communication between families in a public-housing project. It is financed by a grant from the fund for the advancement of education of the Ford Foundation. The sponsors of this pioneering project are the New York City Board of Education and Language Research, Inc. It will tie 600 homes in the Elliott housing project to the local public school, to the neighborhood

3-cv-00547-O Document 20-2 Filed 10/06/23 Page 524 of 555 Pa

house, and to the city health center. We are now working with a group of teen-agers to help them develop a regular weekly teen-hour on the closed circuit, as well as involving the families in the Elliott houses in program planning and participation before the cameras. Teaching of English and Spanish, the development of health programs, and many other courses of adult education and family life will become the regular program. The leaflets you have before you describe the project in detail. This is our latest experiment in exploring ways of improving the life of a big city neighborhood.

In closing, let me say that I realize that I have not touched on many important aspects of the problem of juvenile delinquency, but there is no one answer or panacea for this perplexing situation. Nevertheless, I can't help but feel that we will see an ever-increasing rise in juvenile delinquency and crime, just so long as we allow the deterioration of neighborhood life, whether it be in the slums or in the improved areas of the cities or the suburbs.

STATEMENT OF HON. JOHN M. MURTAGH, CHIEF CITY MAGISTRATE OF THE CITY OF NEW YORK, SUBMITTED TO THE SENATE SUBCOMMITTEE TO INVESTIGATE JUVENILE DELINQUENCY

A juvenile or children's court is a 20th century development. Such courts are based on a recognition that children differ from adults in responsibility, and that an attitude of understanding and helpfulness rather than one of segregation and punishment should characterize society's dealing with the youthful offender. Under children's court statutes, the delinquent child is to be treated like the neglected or dependent child. Official recognition is given to the fact that, whatever the immediate act may be that brings a child into the court, the issues presented are in essence problems involving understanding, guidance, and protection, rather than criminal responsibility, guilt, or punishment.

The dividing line between a child and a youth or adolescent is not easy to draw. Most States have not shared New York's feeling that the differentiation can be made at the 16-year level. In a majority of States, the age limit for original jurisdiction over delinquency cases is 18 years or higher, while a number of other States set the age limit at 17; 18 is the age adopted for the Federal courts' delinquency proceedings.

Because the line between childhood and adulthood cannot be clearly drawn at the age of 16, New York has developed special ways of dealing with adolescents who have not yet attained the hypothetical maturity of voting age. The Wayward Minor Act and the youthful offender law provide special procedures for dealing with adolescents over 16. The Girls Term Act, applicable only to the city of New York, provides additional special procedures for dealing with certain female adolescents. Quite aside from these provisions, the public health law establishes special procedures for dealing with the drug addict who is under the age of 21.

Our Wayward Minor Act provides that one over 16 but under 21 years of age, who so conducts himself as to endanger his own health and morals or those of his family or the community (though not charged with the commission of a crime) may, upon the complaint of a parent, police officer, or other interested person, be adjudged a "wayward minor." Such adolescents, after adjudication as wayward minors, may be placed on probation for a period not to exceed 2 years or may be committed to a reformatory for an "indeterminate" period not to exceed 3 years. The wayward minor determination is not a conviction of a crime but amounts simply to an adjudication of status.

In New York City, we have special magistrates' courts known as the adolescent courts. These courts exist for the arraignment, examination, hearing, trial, or determination of crimes and offenses committed by adolescents. They serve to protect the adolescent from coming into conflict with older and more experienced offenders. The adolescent courts may entertain a wayward minor proceeding with respect to adolescents between 16 and 21 years of age upon the complaint of a parent, police officer, or other interested person.

In 3 of the 5 counties, namely, Kings, Queens, and Richmond, they also have the power to substitute a wayward minor charge for a criminal charge upon consent of the district attorney, in the case of adolescents between the ages of 16 through 18 years of age, thereby retaining the treatment of the adolescent at the point of first contact, with the magistrates' courts, and avoiding the necessity of processing him through the grand jury or the court of special sessions. Under this procedure, before the adolescent is arraigned on

3-cv-00547-O Document 20-2 Filed 10/06/23 Page 525 of 555 Pa

a criminal charge, he is interviewed by a probation officer who obtains historical data to be furnished to the presiding magistrate. This data does not concern itself with guilt or innocence but is designed to enlighten the magistrate as to the adolescent's background and provide him with a basis for considering the youth for treatment as a wayward minor. The attorney for the adolescent and the assistant district attorney assigned to the court confer prior to the hearing regarding the adolescent's background and to determine whether the adolescent disputes the allegations made against him in the criminal complaint. If the defendant denies the charge, the hearing or trial will proceed in the same manner as against an adult. If the crime charged be vicious in nature, for example, robbery, felony, rape, etc., or the defendant has a previous record of serious crime or mental institutional care, he will not be considered for treatment as a wayward minor. In such a case, if a prima facie case is established, he will be held for further proceedings by the grand jury or in the court of special sessions.

Where the defendant does not deny the truth of the complaint and appears to be an accidental offender with reasonably good prospects for rehabilitation, the court proceeds with the hearing. If no case is made out, the defendant is discharged. If a prima facie case is established, the wayward minor procedure is then explained to the adolescent, his parent, and attorney. The magistrate then directs that a wayward minor complaint be drawn, and it is signed by the parent. The basis of the complaint is that the adolescent has committed the crime charged and is therefore in danger of becoming morally depraved. The adolescent is then arraigned on this new charge, advised of his rights, and given a trial to determine if he is a wayward minor.

The magistrate makes no determination at this point, but, after an advisory talk and suitable admonition to the adolescent and his parents, reserves decision on the original charge and on the wayward minor complaint, pending a probation investigation which is consented to by the adolescent. The adolescent is then paroled or continued in bail to return on a definite date for the court's decision.

After the probation investigation and prior to the adolescent's return, the assistant district attorney and the magistrate who heard the case read the probation report. If, after reading the probation report, the assistant district attorney is prepared to consent to the dismissal of the original charge and the substitution of the charge of wayward minor, he states his consent for the record. If the magistrate concurs, he will, on the appearance of the youth and his parents before him, dismiss the criminal charge and adjudge the adolescent a wayward minor and impose sentence.

If, after reading the probation report, the assistant district attorney refuses to consent to the substitution of a wayward minor charge, the wayward minor complaint is dismissed and the adolescent is held for the grand jury or for the court of special sessions. This does not, of course, preclude the possibility of treating the adolescent as a youthful offender in the court of special sessions or the county court.

Under the youthful offender law, a youth of 16, 17, or 18 years of age, charged with the commission of a crime, who has not previously been convicted of a felony and whose alleged crime is not one punishable by death or life imprisonment may, upon his own consent, be investigated to determine whether he should be given the specialized treatment and status known as youthful offender or whether he be dealt with as an adult criminal. The decision as to this question is made by the judge of the trial court to which the youth is brought on the basis of the judge's belief as to the possibilities of the youth's rehabilitation. Such youthful offender procedure may be initiated by the grand jury, the district attorney, or on the judge's own motion, but it does not occur until after the youth reaches the trial court. If found eligible for youthful offender treatment, the charge of "youthful offender" is substituted for the criminal charge against him. Upon a plea of guilty, or upon being guilty after a nonjury trial to determine whether he committed the criminal acts originally charged, the youth is adjudicated a youthful offender and thus avoids the stigma of a criminal record and the numerous disadvantages which would result if he were convicted of a crime. As a youthful offender, he may be committed to a reformatory for an "indefinite" term up to 3 years, or he may receive a suspended sentence involving a 3- to 5-year period of probation.

Through a private agency known as the youth counsel bureau, the adolescent court also seeks to establish contact at the very outset with every arrested youth and his family. The youth counsel bureau does some preliminary screening,

KnifeRights MSJ App.000520

3-cv-00347-O Document 20-2 Filed 10/06/23 Page 526 of 555 Pa

chiefly to determine whether there should be a recommendation for parole. Quite beyond that function, if the youth should be discharged by the magistrate because there is no case against him, the youth counsel bureau often volunteers to assist him in his readjustment to the community with a view to avoiding further incidents such as the one that brought him before the court in the first place.

In New York County, there is a special magistrates' court, with citywide jurisdiction, known as girls term. Originally, it was a court created in similar manner to the adolescent court to enable magistrates in appropriate cases to substitute the wayward minor procedure in cases of female adolescents charged with vagrancy under section 887 of the Code of Criminal Procedure. Because of the excellent services available to the court, the community in increasing degree began to present girls to the court who were delinquent or behavioral problems before they were charged with the commission of a crime. This type of case eventually became almost the exclusive work of the court. By a statute civil in nature and modeled on that of the Children's Court Act, the court was in 1951 given statutory recognition.

Under the Girls Term Act, the court has jurisdiction of girls between the ages of 16 and 21 who are charged with wayward behavior and girls between 16 and 18 who are neglected. The court functions much like children's court with informal hearings, probation investigations, and an attempt at individualized planning instead of routinized sentencing. Some of the cases are disposed of prior to arraignment by methods resembling those of the bureau of adjustment in children's court. The court is fundamentally a civil court, the basic philosophy of which is that it is more important to adjust than to adjudicate.

Attached to the court is a psychiatric clinic which was opened in May 1949 under the sponsorship of the New York City Youth Board and the city magistrates' courts and which at the time was the eighth psychiatric court clinic to be established in the United States. Approximately $46,000 a year has been allotted for salaries. This budget provides for the employment of a full-time clinic administrator, a consultant psychiatrist, 2 part-time psychiatrists, 1 full-time counseling psychologist, 2 full-time psychiatric social workers, and 3 clerical staff. The clinic provides psychiatric evaluation and treatment. Adolescents suffering from emotional disturbances are referred by the court and probation staff. After psychiatric evaluation of the problem and a determination as to whether a psychological illness exists, a decision is made in regard to accepting the adolescent for treatment. Experience in this clinic has convinced us that it is a necessary adjunct to any court dealing with adolescents, not only for diagnosis but for therapeutic purposes.

Girls term and the psychiatric clinic exemplify the kind of progress which we are seeking to attain through the magistrates' courts in dealing with adolescents. They provide valuable guideposts for future planning.

Sections 3360 to 3366 of the Public Health Law of the State of New York, enacted in 1951, provide special procedures for dealing with youths under 21 years of age who are addicted to the use of drugs. These laws provide that a person under 21 years of age may be adjudged a drug user by a magistrate and thereupon be required to undergo custodial or postcustodial examinations, care, treatment, and guidance, with a view toward rehabilitation.

The custodial care is made available at the hospital maintained on North Brother Island in New York City or may be provided at any other institution designated by the State commissioner of health. The adolescent drug user is compelled to continue a full course of treatment, rehabilitation, and aftercare, even though such a course might require a period as long as 3 years. The actual extent and duration of the custodial and postcustodial care in such case is determined with the advice, guidance, and recommendations of those in charge of the treatment facilities. The procedures are not criminal in nature and the adjudication is not a conviction for any purpose. Proceedings are instituted by petition, which may be signed by a duly licensed physician, peace officer, parent, guardian, relative, or friend. The parties are known as petitioner and respondent, not as complainant and defendant.

As soon as sections 3360 to 3366 of the public health law became effective, a special magistrates' court was created known as narcotics term to process appropriate cases. The narcotics term court, although located in New York County, has citywide jurisdiction. It deals with all persons under the age of 21 years.

When we consider how complex and baffling is the problem of juvenile delinquency, it is not surprising that New York City's judicial system for dealing with the problem is so intricate. Steps should, however, be taken to improve and simplify the system.

3-cv-00547-O Document 20-2 Filed 10/06/23 Page 527 of 555 Pa

The New York State Legislature has enacted legislation known as the Youth Court Act designed to promote efficiency and simplicity by vesting almost complete jurisdiction over these problems in a single court. The act was originally to have become effective February 1, 1957, but at a subsequent session of the legislature the effective date was postponed to April 1, 1958.

The Youth Court Act contemplates the creation of a youth court in the court of general sessions in New York County and in the county courts of the four other counties of the city. The new court is to have jurisdiction over all youths from the age of 16 to 21 immediately after arrest until ultimate disposition. Sessions of the youth court are to be separate from other sessions of the county courts. Judges are to be assigned to the court from the county court for a term of 1 year. Provisions for youthful offender treatment are to be extended to include youths from 16 to 21, thus extending the age to include youths in the 19 and 20 age category. The primary purpose of the legislation is to consolidate virtually all proceedings involving youths from 16 to 21 within the framework of a single court.

The act obviously contemplates a drastic change in the judicial handling of youth problems in New York State. It has been the subject of considerable criticism. Much of the criticism has been directed at provisions of the law that provide for privacy of court proceedings. There is considerable merit to this criticism.

There are other respects in which the desirability of the act is questionable. In dealing with the problem of juvenile delinquency for many years the magistrates' courts have developed an experience and a tradition that is of value. Being a large court with 54 judges, each of whom has authority to preside in any of the 5 boroughs, the court has a large body of experienced judicial personnel from which to draw judges for service in youth courts. In any group of judges, only a percentage have the interest and special ability to deal effectively with youth problems. Such judges can be recruited only from a court with a substantial number of judges. Under the proposed Youth Court Act, judges would be drawn for service in the youth court for a period of a year, and this selection would be made in each county from a group of judges of from 4 to 9 in number. It is obviously contemplated that the assignment would be rotated. It is manifest therefore that frequently the judge presiding, even though a lawyer and judge of general ability, would neither have the interest nor the ability to deal with this specific problem. I believe therefore that it would have been wiser to have created the youth court within the magistrates' courts system. There is much agitation for the repeal of the act before its effective date. I believe it should be repealed.

The contribution that any court can make to the solution of the problem of juvenile delinquency is at best but a limited contribution. No judicial system can be expected to prevent or to "cure" the antisocial conduct of youth. It is an unfortunate truth that by the time either the juvenile court or the youth court is called upon to cope with the delinquent the roots of emotional and behavioral maladjustment are deeply embedded in personality and character. The weakness of family life is the key to the tragic phenomenon of juvenile delinquency. To quote two of the foremost authorities on juvenile deliquency, Sheldon and Eleanor Glueck:

"Little progress can be expected in the prevention of delinquency until family life is strengthened by a large-scale, continuous, pervasive program designed to bring to bear all the resources of mental hygiene, social work, education, and religious and ethical instruction upon the central issue. We must break the vicious circle of character-damaging influence on children exerted by parents who are themselves the distorted personality products of adverse parental influences, through intensive instruction of each generation of prospective parents in the elements of mental hygiene and the requisites of happy and healthy family life. A tremendous multiplication of psychiatric, social, and other resources for improving the basic equipment of present and prospective parents for a wholesome parental role has become indispensable. Without this, we shall continue the attempt to sweep back the mounting tides of delinquency with an outworn broom" (Unraveling Juvenile Delinquency, Sheldon and Eleanor Glueck, Harvard University Press, 1950, at p. 287).

The basic answer to juvenile delinquency lies in a happy family life. Just so long as society is so far from being perfect, just so long as so many families are inadequate materially, emotionally, spiritually, and otherwise, just so long are we likely to have the phenomenon of juvenile delinquency. The fundamental answer is not to be found in more vigorous police enforcement or sterner justice. The fundamental answer is to be found primarily in an im-

3-cv-00547-O Document 20-2 Filed 10/06/23 Page 528 of 555 Pa

proved society, a society that will give greater recognition to its dependence on God and will more adequately provide for the humblest of His children.

It is difficult to think of the problem of juvenile delinquency without reference to drug addiction. It has been estimated that every year since 1949 approximately 500 new cases of addicts between 16 to 20, inclusive, have become known to the authorities in the city of New York. The great majority of these are users of heroin. The average young addict must spend from $40 to $80 a week for drugs. He seldom has a legitimate source of income to support the habit. He must either become a pusher or resort to other criminal activities to support his habit.

The judicial approach to this phase of the problem of juvenile delinquency of necessity must be based on existing law and police procedures. Since the enactment of the Harrison Act of 1914, the approach to the problem of narcotic addition in the United States has been a penal approach almost to the exclusion of a public health approach. Early decisions of the Supreme Court of the United States, *Webb* v. *U. S.* (249 U. S. 96 (1919)), *Jin Fuey Moy* v. *U. S.* (254 U. S. 189 (1920)), and *U. S.* v. *Behrman* (258 U. S. 280 (1922)), gave support for the interpretation of the Harrison Act which would forbid the medical profession from treating the addict. The Supreme Court of the United States departed from this interpretation in *Linder* v. *U. S.* (268 U. S. 5 (1925)), when in a unanimous opinion written by Mr. Justice McReynolds it said at page 18:

"The enactment under consideration levies a tax, upheld by this Court, upon every person who imports, manufactures, produces, compounds, sells, deals in, dispenses or gives away opium or coca leaves or derivatives therefrom, and may regulate medical practice in the States only so far as reasonably appropriate for or merely incidental to its enforcement. It says nothing of 'addicts' and does not undertake to prescribe methods for their medical treatment. They are diseased and proper subjects for such treatment, and we cannot possibly conclude that a physician acted improperly or unwisely or for other than medical purpose solely because he has dispensed to one of them, in the ordinary course and in good faith, four small tablets of morphine or cocaine for relief of conditions incident to addiction."

But by 1925 the medical profession had largely withdrawn from the treatment of drug addiction, and the Federal Government has since proceeded as if the Webb, Jin Fuey Moy, and Behrman cases were the law. This is a serious error and is in large measure responsible for the spread of drug addiction to the youth. We have successfully driven the medical profession away from a problem that is fundamentally medical in nature. The addict is a sick person with an almost irresistible compulsion. We are denying him the solace and comfort of the medical practitioner. We have driven him into the hands of the underworld. By our error we have created a nucleus of thousands of addicts who furnish a basic demand for illegal narcotics. We have also furnished the racketeers with thousands of addict pushers who risk possible arrest while the real culprit goes unpunished. Our legislation dealing with narcotics is as unwise as the 18th amendment and the Volstead Act. The 18th amendment bred and financed organized crime in the 1920's. Since that time, our erroneous approach to the narcotic problem has been the principal means of financing the underworld.

It is submitted that the United States Senate could do nothing more effective in the field of juvenile delinquency than to clarify the Harrison Act so as to remove all doubt as to the right of the medical profession to treat the narcotic addict.

Testimony Submitted to the Senate Subcommittee on Juvenile Delinquency by Police Commissioner Stephen P. Kennedy

I. THE ROLE OF THE POLICE IN JUVENILE DELINQUENCY

Seven out of eight young offenders in conflict with the law come first to the attention of the police. Police agencies operate 7 days a week and 24 hours a day.

It is therefore important that the police effectively exercise a dual responsibility: First, that the potential delinquent act is discovered. Second, the police must handle each offense so that a recurrence can be prevented if it is possible. This dual responsibility demands that a police department provide both intelligent law-enforcement facilities to prevent crimes and a corps of skilled investigators trained to arrive at the best disposition of each case involving a youth.

KnifeRights MSJ App.000523

Having thoroughly investigated the case, the police should follow through. In an appropriate case, this is accomplished by referral to the public or private agency best equipped to handle the problem from that point on. Police agencies can and should initiate the rehabilitative process, but they are not equipped, and should not be expected to engage in rehabilitation of children.

II. THE YOUTH DIVISION OF THE NEW YORK CITY POLICE DEPARTMENT

The basic principles set forth above are carried through in the New York City Police Department by all members of the force and, in particular, the officers attached to the youth division. The division was created to coordinate as well as supplement the work of the department in the youth field. It is important to remember that the police officer on patrol is also charged with the primary responsibility in youth work. In all of the department's training, and in its daily task, every officer must master the basic principles of handling disturbed juveniles.

To supplement their efforts in the field, the Police Department of the City of New York has developed 3 specialized groups within the department, and 2 outside the department, which present a balanced police program for the prevention and control of juvenile delinquency.

A. The youth squads

This unit is comprised of 155 selected men and is primarily responsible for the intelligently aggressive law enforcement phase of our program.

Constantly aware of the rights of individuals and the special approach often necessary in handling disturbed youths, the youth squads nevertheless must be alert and ready to intervene in the overt criminal acts which do exist among a small percentage of the young people of this city. The youth squads are mobile, assigned in teams to cars on a citywide basis. A 24-hour patrol is maintained which concentrates primarily on the known breeding places of youth crime. Where violence is expected, these squads can be immediately summoned by radio to take necessary police action. They maintain a gang file, an incident location file, and other records specially pertaining to the youth crime problem in the city. These squads are the strong right arm of our youth program.

B. The Juvenile Aid Bureau

Three hundred and fifty-five men and women are assigned in 13 units throughout the city to perform the second major function in our broadly conceived youth program. The Juvenile Aid Bureau, formed in 1930, is the departmental agency to which other police officers and members of the public refer juveniles who, by their acts, give indication that they are getting into trouble. The trained JAB unit worker makes an investigation into each case referred to him. He visits the child's home and makes an analysis of the problems and environment out of which the delinquent is developing his antisocial behavior. On the basis of the investigation, the officer will either make an arrest, release the child with a warning, or, if the case gives promise, will refer the child to the appropriate social agency, public or private.

In November of this year, the mayor and the board of estimate, by an additional appropriation to the police department, made it possible for 100 additional workers to be assigned to this important function. This enabled the JAB—for the first time—to install a two-platoon system which permits us to strategically assign the personnel on overlapping patrol tours during peak periods of juvenile delinquency and in high hazard areas. It also enables the bureau to extend its investigative powers into the area of the more serious crimes which result in arrests, and into the age groups of 16 to 21. Prior to this autumn, the bureau's caseload permitted concentration only upon the less serious types of criminal behavior and children under the age of 16.

JAB personnel are chosen for their educational background and for demonstrated ability in youth work. They are given an inservice training course which provides the skill and knowledge required to make effective referrals to the multitude of social agencies established in this city. As a link between the police officer on patrol and the rehabilitative social agencies, the JAB plays a vital role in crime prevention.

C. The precinct youth patrolman

In 1945 a program was devised to assign a patrolman in every precinct to the job of becoming the expert in local conditions affecting youth. Formerly, each precinct youth patrolman was responsible to his immediate superior, the precinct captain. Since March of this year, however, the youth patrolmen, while

3-cv-00547-O Document 20-2 Filed 10/06/23 Page 530 of 555 Pa

still assigned to the precincts, became a part of the Juvenile Aid Bureau, responsible to the local JAB unit supervisor.

Their responsibility and duties remain the same. They are experts on the local level. This is where the youth program must be at its best to be most effective. The precinct youth patrolman's function is to know and understand the social-educational and religious resources available, both public and private, to fight delinquency in his precinct. He is required to know who are the disturbed youths in the area, what and where the available facilities and possibilities for recreation are, and to seek out and become familiar with the public-spirited citizens in the neighborhood who can help a child who needs it.

D. The precinct youth council

In nearly all precincts there are many public-spirited citizens whose assistance and cooperation are actively sought. Under the supervision of the precinct youth patrolman, these civic-minded adults are organized into youth councils which are called upon to discover neighborhood hazards for youths, to help neighborhood agencies obtain volunteers, to assist in obtaining part-time work for juveniles, to cooperate with schools, day-care centers, and recreation centers in promoting their programs, and in general to carry out the functions which are beyond the scope of the police role in dealing with the youth situation.

E. The Police Athletic League

The police department recognizes that a recreation program, no matter how well constructed, is not the answer to juvenile delinquency. We feel, however, that a recreation program designed for areas which have no recreational facilities and staffed by trained workers who actively try to reach those of our youth who may benefit from such a program, has a very important place in crime prevention.

Since the early 1930's this department has sponsored one of the largest youth recreation programs in the country. The Police Athletic League, known as PAL, operates 12 full-time recreation centers, 40 part-time centers, 12 playgrounds, 33 play streets, a summer camp, a vocational placement bureau, and an extremely varied recreation program which includes everything from boxing to participation in a fife, drum, and bugle corps. Registration in the PAL last year numbered over 82,000 children. For the most part, these children are served in areas of the city which are not provided with other recreational facilities. Moreover, there is an active program, both by the staff of the recreation centers (who are all civilians, both professional and volunteer) and by the precinct youth patrolmen, to encourage participation by children who will most benefit from a recreation program.

The latest development in this area involves the assignment, in several of our centers, of group workers, in cooperation with the New York City Youth Board, who make it their business to encourage the integration of problem children into the program of PAL. This experiment is in its infancy, but already it has shown much promise.

F. The deputy commissioner in charge of the youth program

The youth squads, the juvenile aid bureau, the precinct youth patrolmen, the precinct youth councils, and the PAL are all under the supervision and administration of the deputy commissioner in charge of the youth program. In the case of the Police Athletic League, this administrative control exists by reason of the fact that the deputy commissioner is, ex officio, the president of the PAL, which is a private corporation.

In addition to his other duties, the deputy commissioner serves as the police commissioner's representative on the parole commission of the City of New York, and at meetings of the New York City Youth Board. Thus, communication with city agencies in related fields is maintained from the highest level, and this communication is encouraged right down the line to the precinct youth patrolman.

The integration of the department's youth program under one administrative head took place in March of this year, and was given a new impetus by the assignment of the 100 additional men in November. By supplementing the work of the patrol and detective forces with these groups of specialists, the police department presents a well-rounded program for delinquency detection, prevention, and control.

The delinquency problem cannot be solved by police alone, or indeed by any single form of rehabilitation or control. There must be as many varieties of corrective measures as there are forms of delinquency. The efforts of the entire

3-cv-00547-O Document 20-2 Filed 10/06/23 Page 531 of 555 Pa

community—the home, the church, the private agency, the public agency and all those in authority, must be coordinated and inspired. The public must be informed of its own resources, or lack of them, and then those resources must be applied and supplied with intelligence and devotion before we can begin to meet this most pressing problem.

STATEMENT OF JOHN WARREN HILL, PRESIDING JUSTICE, DOMESTIC RELATIONS COURT, CITY OF NEW YORK

Hon. THOMAS C. HENNINGS, Jr.,
Chairman, Subcommittee To Investigate Juvenile Delinquency,
Washington, D. C.

DEAR SENATOR HENNINGS: I certainly have not been unmindful of your request that I give you a short statement of some of my thinking on this subject of delinquency in 1958. It has been very difficult to find time to do this.

There is no purely domestic problem which is giving us more concern than this fact of the steady and continued increase in the upward trend of delinquency over the last 10 years. Nineteen hundred and fifty-seven saw no reversal in this trend. In our court in New York City there was a 13.1 percent increase in the intake of alleged delinquents in 1957 over 1956. Our intake of 10,181 such children in 1956 constituted a 121 percent increase over 1947.

There can be no doubt that this great increase in delinquency can be attributed in large part to the extraordinary tensions under which we now live as individuals and families. Wars have always meant disruption and letdown in family life and family unity. The clouds that have been overhead during the last 10 years have been as dark and ominous as any war clouds. The ominous news brought into the home by the morning paper keeps the average family under continuous nervous strain. Ten years of it have had a cumulative effect with demoralizing results. The dreads that grip the parents are all exceedingly disturbing to the child. If the parents cannot feel secure in the home, certainly that home does not offer security to the child.

I sometimes feel that our forebears who faced perils and dangers and inconveniences equally if not more disturbing got more out of their religion than we do today; that for them religion was a very vital experience and a working factor in their lives in which they found security and a peace which is not too generally experienced today.

Certainly, families crack up or let down far more rapidly today than ever before. We all know that the larger proportion of our delinquents come from the broken or nonfunctioning home.

We are suffering today in this Nation from a serious lack of respect for law and authority. We have always, from our infancy, been a disciplined people. Today, we are getting away from a belief in the efficacy of discipline. This cynicism, and it is just that, pervades the thinking of the adults in too many homes and is creating too many young rebels who in turn have no respect for those in authority, which includes the teacher and the police officer.

I'm afraid that there is more concern today about the so-called evil of repression than there is about the value of a well-ordered, disciplined life. Unlimited self-expression for youngsters is, in certain quarters, highly overvalued, I believe. That restraint is an evil is for the most part the belief of those who disbelieve in rules, regulations, and discipline. Justice Cardozo once said in effect that good government is grounded in self-restraint. In my opinion, it is destructive of what we call character for a child to be brought up in an unorganized and undisciplined culture. It is certainly time that parents stop reading all the confusing and conflicting advice that is currently handed out today on the subject of child guidance and get back to the basic rules in bringing up their children. Application of commonsense principles, which includes mantaining respect for parental and duly constituted authority, is essential to stop this headlong flight on the part of too many of our children from lives of discipline to those of unhindred self-expression.

Successful parents are those who through patience and understanding are able to love their children in every situation and to show and demonstrate this love in convincing manner. Such parents wisely refrain from all the "overs": overindulgence, overrestraint and overpermissiveness, each one of which should be avoided. They remember and apply the rule that a firm hand and a firm "No" are called for on proper occasion; but they ever have in mind the fact that too many little "No's" and "Don'ts" cheapen authority and make the big "No" more difficult to enforce. These parents know too that love of God and country are

3-cv-00547-O Document 20-2 Filed 10/06/23 Page 532 of 555 Pa

fundamental virtues that must be taught, and taught not only by precept but by parental example.

These simple truths should be told and repeated and repeated to parents. The New York State Department of Mental Hygiene is already conducting a sound program of education of parents. This work should be encouraged. And, as suggested, lay groups, including the clergy, should be organized to teach and to preach.

There are many things that could be said. Children's courts should not be swerved from their statutory duty of reclaiming and rehabilitating the child. They should not be disturbed by the hue and cry to punish and bear down hard. The communities in this country have yet to properly equip children's courts so as to enable them to apply real, rehabilitative treatment. It is a rare court that has clinical facilities, adequate probation staff and proper and adequately staffed temporary shelter and long-term care facilities. As a matter of fact, the remand and commitment in themselves, while not used for that purpose, constitute a substantial form of punishment for the child. And the communities which cry most loudly for punishment are generally those which have failed to furnish their children's court with these treatment facilities. It is a crying shame but a well-known fact that the rate of recidivism among children turned out by these overcrowded and inadequately staffed State institutions for delinquent children is shockingly high.

The cost of staffing courts adequately with clinics and probation officers and of furnishing completely staffed as well as sufficient placement facilities is trifling in comparison with the cost to society of unreclaimed delinquents. And before we discard the thinking and planning of the last 50 years for the socialized treatment of the delinquent child on the ground that that kind of treatment fails, we should finance well thought out and guided programs of community cooperation for prevention of delinquency and should equip our courts and our child-caring institutions so that they can actually reclaim to usefulness a large and creditable number of our delinquent children and substantially reduce the rate of recidivism among those children who cannot be treated at home but must be sent away for long-term care to a State institution.

Remarks by Council President Abe Stark Submitted to the Special Subcommittee of Juvenile Delinquency of the United States Senate

Mr. Chairman and members of the committee, may I thank you for your kind invitation to testify before this subcommittee of the United States Senate. All of us recognize that the problem of juvenile delinquency is not limited to the city of New York. During the past decade, we have witnessed an alarming increase in antisocial behavior on the part of young people throughout the country. Since the problem is nationwide in scope, it requires nationwide action. It calls for bold leadership from the White House and active financial support from both Houses of Congress.

Let me congratulate you upon your resolute determination to hold these hearings, but hearings alone are not enough. With all due respect for what you are trying to do, gentlemen, may I suggest that the time has come for us to stop thinking in terms of holding hearings and start thinking in terms of voting money.

The United States Senate has held hearings on juvenile delinquency for 4 consecutive years—hearings that have cost the taxpayers a half million dollars. Yet Congress has not authorized a single penny in direct Federal aid for delinquency prevention.

At the last session of Congress, a bill was introduced which provided for an annual appropriation of $11 million. This bill was never passed. May I respectfully call your attention to the fact that New York City spends three times as much money on delinquency prevention each year. With a population of 8 million people, New York's program is $33 million. With a population 20 times as large, for 170 million Americans, the Federal Government proposes to spend one-third as much money as the city of New York.

During the past several days we have witnessed the shocking spectacle of two highly placed Federal officials casting doubt on the possibility of spending even this pitifully inadequate amount.

The Secretary of Health, Education, and Welfare—Marion Folsom—has pleaded with Congress not to curtail the existing social-welfare program and has seemingly ruled out any new programs. Furthermore, the Secretary of State, John Foster Dulles, has advised the American people that we may have to give up certain fringe benefits in order to answer the challenge of sputnik. Gentle-

-cv-00547-O Document 20-2 Filed 10/06/23 Page 533 of 555 Pa
men, if we are not concerned with the future of our children, if they are to be classified as fringe benefits, then what are we trying to preserve in our struggle for survival? The Nation's legacy is its children and nothing else. With all this talk about guided missiles, let's not be misguided ourselves because of a missile. We must not sacrifice those essential human services that represent the heart and conscience of the United States.

With many years of legislative experience, gentlemen, you are certainly aware of the fact that no one today seriously questions the validity or advisability of direct Federal aid to the farmer. But apparently the Federal Government has lulled itself into acting as though the cities do not exist and has refused to provide any Federal money for today's most serious problem confronting urban communities—the problem of juvenile delinquency. Certainly there is sufficient precedent. Congress, as early as 1935, established a formula of Federal aid to dependent children. But children in all family-income levels—low, middle, and high—in town and country alike can be contaminated by the behavioral disease known as juvenile delinquency.

Recognizing the importance of metropolitan life in American society, we must reorient our thinking. The Federal Government must provide funds so that the State and local authorities can expand their youth service programs. If necessary, we should establish a new Bureau of Delinquency Prevention within the Department of Health, Education, and Welfare, instead of treating it as a small subdivision of the Children's Bureau in Washington.

With a sizable quota of Federal funds, municipalities such as the city of New York could enlarge their programs of fieldwork, guidance, casework, referrals, and mass recreation. We could offer increased financial assistance to private youth agencies. As a result, many public and private youth agencies which are now forced to close their doors during holidays, weekends, summer months, and evening hours could remain open 365 days of the year.

Gentlemen, the studies conducted by the Children's Bureau disclose the fact that delinquency rates among youngsters enrolled in supervised activities are two-thirds lower than among those who do not participate in this type of program. Furthermore, in the city of New York, there has not been a single uprising among any of the 40 youthful gangs with whom the Youth Board has been working for the past 18 months.

Certain steps have been undertaken by the city of New York which may be of value to other communities. We are in the midst of coordinating the delinquency prevention program of all 11 public and 150 private youth agencies. We are encouraging local community councils to enlist the support of parents and volunteers. We have established Youth Board headquarters in 17 areas of highest delinquency. We have aided young people in job placement services and provided rehabilitation centers for youngsters who have gotten into trouble with the law, staffed with probation and psychiatric personnel. We are embarking upon a pilot project of isolating the 1 percent of the family population that is responsible for 75 percent of all known cases of delinquency. We have expanded after-school activities, of the board of education, the park department, housing authority, and the PAL, bringing the total number of after-school centers to 400 and the total number of playgrounds to 700. A separate youth division has been established within the police department. The social services of the welfare department, particularly with regards to the children of working mothers, have been enlarged. We have called upon the professional skills of outstanding educators and sociologists so that we can better understand the reasons for delinquency and then follow those methods which offer the greatest hope for success. We must provide the most modern building facilities and programs aimed at the prevention of delinquency rather than the apprehension of hardened criminals. Prevention is always cheaper and more successful than punishment.

But even in a city as large as New York, we must always think in terms of neighborhood needs. In particular I should like to cite the example of a neighborhood with which I am especially familiar—the Brownsville community. At one time, Brownsville was known as a congested, underprivileged tenement district. Brownsville was not a bad community, but it did suffer from a bad reputation. It was scorned and slandered as a breeding ground for Murder, Inc. Men and women shied away from coming to the area. Young men and women would hesitate before making a date with someone living in Brownsville. A large part of the responsibility for that ill-deserved reputation stemmed from sensational stories and libelous books which injured the reputation of the good people of the community. The novel entitled "Amboy Dukes," which

3-cv-00547-O Document 20-2 Filed 10/06/23 Page 534 of 555 Pa

was later made into a picture called City Across the River, depicted Brownsville as a community of rebellious youngsters and negligent parents. In the attempt to sell more books, in an effort to overdramatize, the author viewed this neighborhood as a hunting ground for thugs, dope addicts, criminals, and delinquents.

But Brownsville did have a real problem—a problem of a restless group of young people with no place to go and nothing to do except to get into trouble. There were no well-organized, directed, and creative outlets for their energies and emotions. They stood on street corners; they hung around candy stores; they sometimes disturbed their neighbors. These young people were not criminals. They were boys and girls, who merely needed a chance to succeed, to prove themselves, and to do something worthwhile with their lives.

In the early 1940's the situation came to a head. The board of education issued an order limiting the use of school playgrounds to children under 15 years of age.

This sudden order dramatized the total lack of recreational facilities for teen-agers. A few determined youngsters, and I, as chairman, took the situation in our own hands and formed the Brownsville Boys' Club. The first meeting was held in a local library. A membership drive was started among the local gangs. As a result of petition campaigns, the board of education finally reopened some of its playgrounds to older children. However, Brownsville Boys' Club was in business to stay. With a membership fee of a penny a month, every youth was welcomed into the ranks.

We rented a small reconverted store for $35 a month. We planned a program, engaged a director, and embarked upon a drive to expand the work of the boys' club. We called upon interested citizens from the Brownsville community and other sections of the city in order to raise money for a new clubhouse to be built on a site called Nanny Goat Park.

From an original goal of $40,000, the plans for the Brownsville Boys' Club were gradually expanded to provide for a building valued at $1,500,000. Between 1945 and 1953, when the new building was opened, we conducted an unparalled fund-raising campaign. The board of directors, the alumni, the women's division and the men's group held countless events to raise money for the new building. Men and women from all walks of life gave generously of their time and energies to make the boys' club dream a living reality.

Throughout these years, the club continued to operate from its small inadequate store. Yet in spite of physical limitations, great good was achieved. More than 75 gangs of teenage youngsters were induced to join the club—gangs bearing such colorful names as the Bruins, Sackonions, Square Deals, and Atoms. A paid staff of professional workers was hired to supervise their activities. With the opening of the new building in September 1953, the tempo increased tremendously. New and unusual activities became a regular part of the club's program. Included in the operation were a child-guidance clinic, day-care center, a cerebral-palsy pavilion, summer camping on the roof, arts and crafts, carpentry and metal shops, swimming, basketball, games, club meetings, medical and dental clinics, photographic instruction and playground activities. Within a short time, the club was being used by 10,000 young people from Brownsville, east New York, east Flatbush, and Canarsie. At all times the guiding philosophy was summarized by the slogan: "It's better to build boys than to mend men."

Under private and voluntary operation, the Brownsville Boys' Club was open only 40 hours a week. Over the weekends and during holidays, the building was not available. As a result, the board of directors conceived of a plan to enable the club to remain open twice as many hours, 365 days of the year. Through negotiations with the board of estimate and the department of parks, the $1,500,000 building was turned over to the city of New York, fully paid for, together with a cash gift of $100,000 to sustain the operational cost. The formal transfer of the Brownsville Boys' Club to the city of New York in January 1955 also permitted the department of parks to save $2 million which would have gone into the erection of a new center at Betsy Head Park in the same area. Under park-department operation, the Brownsville Recreation Center as it is now called, has increased its schedule of activities and is available to more children, more often than ever before. It is operated on a completely nonsectarian basis. Brownsville today is a peaceful community—a community in which children and adults can live in comfort and contentment.

Having dealt with this problem of delinquency during most of my adult life, there are certain observations and experience that I have gained. It is comparatively simple for public officials to develop an air of self-righteous com-

3-cv-00547-O Document 20-2 Filed 10/06/23 Page 535 of 555 Pa
placency in dealing with the social problems of our times. This morning we could very easily pat each other on the back and say that all is right with the world. I could compliment the Federal Government and you could congratulate the city of New York, but that is not our purpose in being here. If everything were fine, there would be no need for these hearings.

I believe that no institution is above criticism. Even our schools must be ready to stand up to the inquiring searchlight of inspection. I firmly believe that one of the growing symptoms of delinquency is the incidence of truancy among schoolchildren. Flagrant absenteeism is often the first step toward delinquency, for idleness without supervision breeds unrest among children. Once the student feels that he will not be punished for violating school regulations, he is more likely to violate the laws of society. The truant pupil creates havoc with the school system. He interferes with the curriculum. He undermines the morale of other students who attend classes regularly. And he wastes a valuable seat by preventing proper use of our existing classroom facilities. At the first signs of truancy, the full weight of the parents' responsibility and the school's authority should be invoked in order to prevent these youngsters from getting into real trouble with the law.

Some people have suggested that we station a policeman in every school of our city. This would cost at least $5 million a year during school hours alone. I would rather see a joint Federal-State-city program of subsidies to existing boys' clubs, settlement houses, community centers, and after-school programs, with half of the money made available by the Federal Government and the other half provided on a matching basis by the city and State. Such a program needs a coordinator—under the direction of a single administrator charged with this responsibility.

What I am about to say may not be diplomatic, but it needs to be said. There is entirely too much petty jealousy and too little acceptance of responsibility in dealing with the needs of children. Each agency—public or private—is jealous of its own prerogatives. To all intents and purposes, the average youth agency tries to work alone and forgets that other institutions exist. As a result, they overlap and duplicate each other's functions; they fail to derive maximum benefit from their combined resources.

At times the professional social workers are reluctant to accept volunteers. They take the attitude that no one without a couple of professional degrees can understand a child. And the lay people who serve on boards of directors so often adopt a penny-pinching attitude in refusing to recognize the professional status of trained youth workers. Too many parents in our modern day and age are so anxious to play mahjong, scrabble, or a game of poker, that they are willing to throw their children on anyone who will assume the responsibility. How many parents tonight know what their teen-age children are doing?

It is not the function of any public or private institution to serve as glorified babysitters for selfish parents who take no interest in their own sons and daughters. Community living should be a family experience. What our city needs, and perhaps other communities as well, is an army of men and women who will volunteer their time, 1 or 2 evenings a week, in order to work with children at supervised youth centers. These parents and volunteers would serve under the direction of trained staff members. If necessary, they would go into the streets and try to persuade more youngsters to enter supervised programs. It is one thing to build a magnificent youth center; it is quite another matter to have it used to its fullest extent.

In conclusion, it is my profound conviction that youngsters need a place to go and a program to follow to avoid the pitfalls of juvenile delinquency. Children combine into gangs because they desire the company of other youngsters their own age. But instead of becoming gang members, they just as easily become club members, working toward a wholesome future and a creative life.

STATEMENT TO THE SENATE SUBCOMMITTEE TO INVESTIGATE JUVENILE DELINQUENCY, PRESENTED BY GERALD J. CAREY, ASSISTANT TO THE CHAIRMAN, NEW YORK CITY HOUSING AUTHORITY

The New York City Housing Authority runs not only the country's largest housing operation, but probably also the most complex. Private landlords can run their businesses by collecting rent and paying maintenance bills. A public housing authority must do much more.

3-cv-00547-O Document 20-2 Filed 10/06/23 Page 536 of 555 Pa

We select sites, we supervise design, we finance, we demolish slums, we build new housing, we select tenants. And when we have rented our buildings, we have only done part of our job.

The housing authority does not simply own and rent single buildings. We are creators and redevelopers of entire neighborhoods. We are an important factor in city planning. We must therefore do much more than provide decent living quarters for our own tenants. In a deeper sense we are responsible for contributing to improved living conditions in the entire neighborhood that we so drastically affect when we construct a housing project of from several hundred to several thousand apartments.

Because juvenile delinquency is a serious problem in many of the neighborhoods in which we build, it is a serious problem for us as well. Even though studies have shown that most of the juvenile vandalism and gang fights that may be found within the area of public housing projects are brought in from the general neighborhood outside, we are nevertheless affected by it.

A public-housing project, even though its outlines are clearly defined, is not an island sufficient unto itself. What happens to the surrounding neighborhood will sooner or later happen to us. And we can protect ourselves best by contributing to the improvement of the entire neighborhood.

The housing authority has more than enough to do just in running its housing operation. We cannot let ourselves be drawn into conducting a massive social welfare agency at the same time. But, by cooperating with, and actively assisting the various public and private social agencies, we can help them work more effectively. In turn, they are then able to help us to do our job more efficiently.

Let me therefore outline to you how the housing authority works with public and private agencies to promote the development of community services in the neighborhoods of which public housing becomes a part. The largest and most difficult part of this job is arranging for a suitable recreation program.

At the time we choose a site for a public housing project we get a summary of the community services and facilities located within a 10-block radius of the proposed project. This summary, prepared by the Community Council of New York, a coordinating agency for the city's voluntary as well as public social and health agencies, lists the neighborhood's schools, playgrounds, auditoriums, gymnasiums, child day-care facilities, public-health stations, church recreation programs and facilities, etc.

We therefore know long before we start construction what facilities are already available. We then call together the people who are running all of these programs, as well as interested community leaders, and tell them the kind of project we plan to build. We ask for their ideas of what they feel is necessary to supplement the already available facilities in order to best meet the needs of the new population and of the entire neighborhood.

I would like to make several important points in regard to the planning of the facilities that are to go into a public housing project:

1. We try to plan in terms of the neighborhood's broad needs, rather than build a self-contained community center. The principle we work under is that the entire neighborhood is the unit of planning.
2. We therefore try to supplement, not duplicate, the facilities the neighborhood already offers.
3. The best way to promote the development of a stable neighborhood is to make the housing project part of it. All of our facilities are therefore open to the entire surrounding neighborhood.

Let me give you an example of how this operates in real life. In the near future we will begin the construction of a low-income project of 635 apartments that will be located on the lower East Side. We have already done a substantial amount of construction on the lower East Side, and these projects contain various community facilities. In addition, there are comparatively extensive private agency facilities in this part of the city.

Since the community facilities we were allowed to build are strictly limited by regulations that I will shortly outline, we asked the leaders in the area what kind of facilities they felt were most necessary. They asked for two kinds of facilities: for teen-agers and for the aged. The preschool, the preteen, the young adult, were groups they felt they could more or less accommodate with their present facilities. We are therefore now trying to get a go-ahead from the lending agency that will permit us to build suitable teenage recreation facilities at this project. However, trying to accommodate teenage needs is a difficult problem for reasons that I will later explain.

3-cv-00547-O Document 20-2 Filed 10/06/23 Page 537 of 555 Pa

While we are discussing with the neighborhood agencies what facilities they need, we are also determining if one of them will undertake to run the community recreation center we expect to build. If one steps forward, we make them a partner in the planning operation and give them a role in suggesting and determining the design of the future facilities.

If no agency in the neighborhood feels capable of financing and administering the new program, we go outside the neighborhood and get in touch with the major coordinating organizations for the city's social agencies. These would include such groups as: the Community Council, United Neighborhood Houses, the Day Care Council, the New York City Youth Board, and the major sectarian coordinating agencies.

I should stress that no matter what the sectarian origin of the agencies that sponsor our recreation programs, the programs themselves are nonsectarian.

In our search for a sponsoring agency, we sometimes get in touch with an agency that is being displaced from its own neighborhood by various changes and is looking for a new location. Under today's high-cost conditions, agencies are much more amenable than they used to be to moving into our facilities. They are spared the cost of constructing a new building and can therefore devote a larger part of their funds to the actual program.

When the administrative board of an agency is ready to commit itself to come into and run one of our community centers, they make a formal application to us which gives full details about their finances, program, and other necessary information.

The extensiveness of the public housing program in New York City, which now has 86 projects either fully or partly tenanted, and under present plans will comprise 124 projects within approximately 5 years, has created a growing problem in regard to sponsors for our community centers.

In areas of the city that have not been extensively developed before the advent of public housing, no agencies are available to run recreation programs. In other cases, when neighborhoods are built up, we find increasingly that we are running out of agencies who can undertake to handle these programs.

In these instances we design the community-recreation space on our own initiative under a directive from Mayor Wagner to build facilities even when an agency is not immediately available. The mayor's feeling, and ours, is that we are building in terms of the long-term future and cannot allow neighborhood facilities to be constricted by present exigencies.

If no sponsor is available when the recreation space is completed, we may temporarily rent the space to selected special service organizations such as clinics, nursing services, family case work services, or in certain cases to the board of education for use as elementary schools. When a suitable sponsor for the recreation program becomes available, the center is turned over to them.

I would like to point out that not only are we using up most of the suitable agencies because of the extensiveness of our building program, but the increasing diversity and complexity of the programs that social agencies are now conducting makes these programs more difficult to finance. Also, the social agencies report that it is increasingly difficult to raise funds from private sources.

Let me give you an example of how one of the better run programs in our projects has expanded and grown more expensive.

When Hamilton House ran a recreation program in its own building, which had to be demolished for the construction of Governor Smith Houses, its 1947 budget for this program was $17,000 and it served 200 people. As Hamilton-Madison House, the agency moved into Gov. Alfred E. Smith Houses on the lower East Side. Today, the agency works with 1,200 children and adults. The enlarged program and the increased services that have become part of it have brought the agency's budget to $81,000, exclusive of contributions from public agencies.

I must point out that the social agencies' concept of what a suitable recreation program must offer to meet today's needs is vastly different from simply providing bats and balls and a play supervisor to blow a whistle.

The agencies insist that if they are to keep some of these youngsters from using the bats on each other they must work with the youngsters on a level much deeper than simple play supervision. For example, Hamilton-Madison House employs nine full-time group workers to work with young children and teen-agers. They not only play with them, but explore their family and school problems where necessary, and try to improve their personal adjustment where such problems are evident. Programs of this type are expensive.

3-cv-00547-O Document 20-2 Filed 10/06/23 Page 538 of 555 Pa

The growing shortage of sponsoring agencies, and the increasing cost of running full-scale recreation programs even where private agencies agree to sponsor them, has made it necessary to make increasing use of public funds.

These public funds are being used in two ways: One way is to provide supplementary aid to private agencies. These contributions come from the board of education, the youth board, the department of welfare, and the mental health board. For example, the mental health board is giving funds to the Henry Street Settlement House to run a mental health center in LaGuardia Houses. Funds have been given to other sponsoring agencies in public housing projects for similar programs.

The second way public funds are being used in public housing community centers is by the board of education itself running recreation centers that have no private agency sponsors. In this program, the board of education runs the public housing community center as an annex of, and supplement to, nearby public school recreation centers.

To give you an idea of the extensiveness of public aid in the overall public housing community center recreation programs, let me point out that we at present have 66 community centers in our projects, most of them in low-income projects and the rest in our earlier middle-income projects. Of these 66, 34 are sponsored by the board of education and 32 by private agencies.

So far as the source of funds is concerned, not counting the housing authority's contributions in staff and facilities, about 60 percent, $651,750, is provided by private agencies and the rest, $493,500, comes from public funds, most of it from the board of education and the youth board. In addition, the youth board provides many agencies with salaried workers. And some of the private funds actually come from such sources as the Greater New York Fund and foundations. The total money from all sources, exclusive of the housing authority's contributions, that is spent on recreation programs is $1,145,250.

So far this presentation has been concerned with the establishment and financing of recreation programs in the community centers established in public housing projects. Our projects also provide space for other community services. In different projects these include day-care centers for preschool children, public health well-baby stations, and public library branches. These programs do not present us with the same kind of sponsorship problem because they are financed almost entirely by public funds.

Day-care centers provide nursery school care for pre-school-age children whose mothers cannot give them proper supervision because they work, are ill, or for other pressing reasons. These centers are run by private agencies. However, they only provide 2 percent of the funds. The rest comes from the department of welfare and, to a small extent, from parents' fees. The minimum charge to the parent is $2 per child per week. Getting a sponsor for the day-care centers is largely the responsibility of the department of welfare. These nursery schools, like the recreation programs and all other community facilities in public housing projects, are open to the entire neighborhood.

Some of our older middle-income projects have day-care centers, some of which are run as cooperatives by a community board of directors and the parents. Such cooperatively run centers receive no contributions from the department of welfare, but the housing authority insists they must be supervised by an appropriate and responsible agency. For example, several of them are supervised by appropriate departments of such local colleges as Brooklyn College, Queens College, and Mills College, who utilize them as teacher-training aids. There are 76 centers for preschool- and school-age children located in housing projects. The total budget for this program, which receives no direct contribution from the housing authority, is $5,384,300.

Public health department well-baby clinics, which provide free pediatric care in low-income neighborhoods, are now set up in 28 public-housing projects at the request of the department of health. The department of health tells us where it would like to have facilities for such a clinic and we then build a facility providing about 2,000 square feet of space in the community center. These clinics are run by the health department, which pays us rent for the space.

When we build facilities for library branches in our projects, it is on the basis of an agreement under which the public library pays for the cost of the construction plus a monthly rental that meets all carrying charges. There are 12 library branches located in our projects. An example of the differing rules under which we operate in our different programs is the fact that we are allowed to build library branches in our State- and city-subsidized projects, but not in federally subsidized projects.

3-cv-00547-O Document 20-2 Filed 10/06/23 Page 539 of 555 Pa

As I have tried to show, the greatest difficulty in establishing community services is in setting up broad-range recreation programs. Most of the other services are more easily provided. It is these recreation programs, however, along with the supplementary casework programs that have been joined to them, that are most important in trying to cope with the problem of juvenile delinquency.

Besides the difficulties that I have already outlined, our efforts to provide neighborhoods with the necessary recreation and other services are made more difficult by the differing regulations imposed upon us by the Public Housing Administration, which oversees federally subsidized public housing, and the New York State Division of Housing, which oversees State-subsidized public housing.

Let me give you several examples of the Federal and State regulations governing Housing Authority contributions to community recreation programs.

Under State rules, the Housing Authority pays the salaries of 2 recreation workers and 1 full-time porter. We also provide $1 per year for each dwelling unit in the project to be used for recreation materials—games, paints, paper, small craft tools, athletic supplies, etc. In addition, we provide the basic equipment for the center—chairs for the meeting rooms, large play facilities such as ping-pong tables, kitchen equipment, benches, tables, etc. We provide this once and the agency must replace them.

With every agency we have a formal lease and the rental is $1 per year. The lease also provides that there is to be no discrimination in the use of facilities and that the facilities must be available to residents of the entire neighborhood. We maintain a supervisory relationship with the agency.

While Federal rules are fundamentally the same, the major difference is in the staff we provide and the kind of work it is allowed to do. Thus, in federally subsidized projects, the Housing Authority is allowed to provide only one salaried recreation worker and he is not allowed to work with youngsters in what the regulations term "face-to-face leadership." This means the worker we provide cannot work directly with groups of youngsters, but can only function as a program supervisor and coordinator. These limitations have made agencies more reluctant to sponsor programs in federally subsidized projects than in those that are State-subsidized because the latter offers them a larger and more flexible free staff.

The Federal regulations also have greater restrictions in the amount of space in the project we can devote to community facilities. Under State rules we can freely allocate 9 square feet of space just for community recreation facilities for every dwelling unit in the project. In addition, we can build in other facilities. If we want to go above the standard amount for recreation, we must consult with the State commissioner of housing.

Under Federal rules we are allowed 10 square feet per dwelling unit for all community facilities. A day-care center or a health station uses up a substantial part of the allocation—particularly in a small project. As a consequence, in comparatively small projects we must sometimes decide what facilities are to be entirely omitted. In addition, library branches are not permitted.

One of the critical problems that arises in regard to allocation of space in both State and Federal projects is the building of gymnasiums for teen-agers. While it is generally agreed that a gymnasium is critically important for the development of an adequate recreation program, a suitable gym requires so much space that it cuts seriously into the allocation available to community facilities in smaller projects.

As an example, let me cite a current problem. As I pointed out in the beginning, we were asked to concentrate on facilities for teen-agers and the aged in a proposed project on the lower East Side. In this project, which will have 635 apartments, the normal space allocation for recreation facilities would therefore be 5,715 square feet. However, we need 3,500 square feet just to build a suitable gymnasium and lockers. As presently visualized, a community center that would provide adequately for both teen-agers and the aged will require a total of 9,500 square feet, almost 4,000 square feet more than the rules usually allow. However, we will discuss the problem with the lending agency and we hope that they will make allowances as they sometimes have in other special situations in the past.

While it would be possible for me to go into much greater detail regarding our program of community services, I have attempted to restrict this presentation to material that I hoped would be most pertinent to your interests and most applicable to the country as a whole. I hope I have been of assistance in providing you with some of the information you are seeking.

Case 4:23-cv-00547-O Document 20-2 Filed 10/06/23 Page 540 of 555 PageID

STATEMENT SUBMITTED TO THE SENATE SUBCOMMITTEE TO INVESTIGATE JUVENILE DELINQUENCY BY HON. IRVING BEN COOPER, CHIEF JUSTICE, COURT OF SPECIAL SESSIONS OF THE CITY OF NEW YORK

Senator Hennings, the deep concern manifested by you and the members of your committee with the throbbing issues involved in the subject matter of your inquiry prompts the hope that I can convey, in response to your gracious invitation, the deep conviction which compels the views herein expressed.

FOREWORD

For many years I have sought, and benefited from, the notions expressed to me by dedicated jurists throughout the land who have devoted their professional lives in an attempt to meet the enormous challenges and multifarious problems which youth enmeshed in the criminal law daily present. Such consultation is indeed imperative, for as Mr. Justice Oliver Wendell Holmes so wisely observed:

"The life of the law has not been logic, it has been experience. The felt necessities of the time; the prevalent moral and political theories; intentions of public policy avowed or unconscious; even the prejudices which judges share with their fellow men, have a great deal more to do than the syllogism in determining the rules by which men should be governed."

YOUTH'S CHALLENGE

Your distinguished committee does well to be profoundly disturbed by adolescent crime. The intentions of youth toward one another forecasts the near future of society, and reflects the moral climate of the neighborhoods, districts, and boroughs in and through which their intentions were formed.

They seem to show the marks of delayed adolescence, of failure to accept responsibility, of purposelessness in the face of life and destiny. At the threshold of maturity they express what they feel to be the temper of their generation in two biting phrases, "myself alone and nobody else" and "collecting my subsistence—the main thing." The temper is generalized irresponsibility.

Delinquents are notoriously poor in institutional affiliations and associations, and so are thwarted in their outreachings toward self-fulfillment. I find Erich Fromm's observations on that point, in his Escape From Freedom strikingly factual:

"It would seem that the amount of destructiveness to be found in individuals is proportionate to the amount to which expansiveness of life is curtailed. By this we do not refer to individual frustrations of this or that instinctive desire but to the thwarting of the whole of life, the blockage of spontaneity of the growth and expression of man's sensuous, emotional, and intellectual capacities. Life has an inner dynamism of its own; it tends to grow, to be expressed, to be lived. * * * The more the drive toward life is thwarted the stronger is the desire toward destruction; the more life is realized the less is the strength of destructiveness. Destructiveness is the outcome of unlived life."

THE DETERMINED OFFENDER

The determined offender against the "peace and dignity of the people" presents a challenge not to be evaded. The right to move safe and unmolested through the city, to be secure at work and at home, to be protected against frauds and schemers, is the supreme luxury of civilization. For it the community pays a huge price, and is intolerant of failure or lag on the part of its agents and instruments. It cannot be patient with or concerned about the welfare of offenders while they threaten its security and comfort.

It is no news that society is shot through with various types of criminal and quasi-criminal groups at all levels, from the most brutal to the most privileged and intellectual, protected by every device against discovery and punishment. A therapy such as probation for these is as cologne to gangrene. We do not hesitate to commit the insane to hospitals, repeaters and hardened offenders to prison, probationers who abuse the community's mercy to jail. After these are put away, for the community's and their own good, there remains a huge backlog of persons who any average man admits are worth saving.

3-cv-00547-O Document 20-2 Filed 10/06/23 Page 541 of 555 Pa

The charter of courts is in the law. Courts, having defined the intent of laws, must execute them within the tolerances which they permit. Laws define the acts which the community considers reprehensible. The community, in registering abhorrence by a punishment based on loss of freedom, is in effect alerting its members to the wisdom of self-control.

The community must understand that the youthful crime situation is serious in the sense that to a child diphtheria, poliomyelitis, or smallpox are serious. The child needs all that can be done for him—isolation for a time, understanding treatment, a period of guarded convalescence. Some diseases require long periods of guided physical reeducation—in the community. The young offender needs similar help.

The community needs assurance that he has worth and the power to compensate for his fault; that the offender understands he has been out of step and wants to get back into line. For the community, in the shape of the parents with adolescent children, is all too conscious of the narrow line that separates their own youngsters from the youthful lawbreaker. This insight can change their attitude toward the court's functions and needs.

SUBSTANCE—NOT FORM

We pay dearly for injecting "bigness" into the house of law. It is the sensational or "outstanding" crime that seems to be the criterion of what is important to the community. We must not look to the degree of the crime alone. A few spots on the lung may indisputably indicate that T. B. has made inroads; medicine does not wait for the whole lung to be involved. Likewise, the commission of a lesser degree of crime may well signify worse things to come. The fact of the matter is that the major share of criminal offenses are of less rather than more serious degree. Fortunately, also, first offenders vastly outnumber habitual lawbreakers. Most of the individuals who appear before these courts are not in any sense, other than the offenses with which they are charged, criminals. They look and act like the people one meets in subways, schools, churches, lodges, and shops. They differ among themselves somewhat in moral sensitiveness, in understanding of what they have done, in desire to make restitution, in capacity to turn their experience to ultimate gain.

Equally true is it that most judicial tribunals in the Nation with jurisdiction over such endless legions of offenders are so inadequately equipped with professional staffs to cope with this tremendous problem that they cannot complete their mission with assurance. It is this inadequacy that often accounts for "making" criminals and the inability to stem recidivism. How right was Chief Justice Charles Evans Hughes when he noted:

"The Supreme Court of the United States and the courts of appeal will take care of themselves. Look after the courts of the poor, who stand most in need of justice. The security of the Republic will be found in the treatment of the poor and ignorant; in indifference to their misery and helplessness lies disaster."

And from Judge Learned Hand:

"If we are to keep our democracy, there must be one commandment—thou shalt not ration justice."

We do wrong to organize our system of courts as functional to handling degrees, rather than persons held accountable for the commission, of offenses. And so they come to us with deep wounds induced by the factors above described. With only bandaids to bind up most of them, what chance of healing is there? What of reinfection?

THE DILEMMA OF SENTENCING

The court's asset as an instrument for prompt hearings and trials can become a liabiilty if it lacks the essential aids needed for determining the circumstances on which crimes were based and out of which they grew, the degree of the defendants' educability, and the best and quickest means for returning them to or for removing them from the community. It would be all too easy for the court to deteriorate into a swift-moving panorama of human misery with the bare facts and the law applicable to them the only elements.

20873—58——13

3-cv-00547-O Document 20-2 Filed 10/06/23 Page 542 of 555 Pa

Fingerprinting or criminal recording is a legal tool whose cost no one begrudges. The offender ordinarily referred to as "hardened" or "habitual" is identified beyond question by his fingerprints and the number and seriousness of his previous convictions. There is little the court can do except to guard his legal rights to a fair trial, impose a sentence that will afford the community relief from his activities for the time being, and return him to the consideration of the correction department.

Surely it is not less important to have instruments to identify educable, as well as habitual, offenders.

Until the extent of character deterioration is known and the probable nature of the remediable measures needed to meet the condition determined, the court cannot complete its mission with assurance. Until it has staff assistance as competent in this field as those trained in legal procedure, it must often act uncertainly. Mr. Justice Cardozo pointed up the problem:

"Run your eyes over the life history of a man sentenced to the chair. There, spread before you in all its inevitable sequency, is a story of the rake's progress more implacable than any that was ever painted by a Hogarth. The correctional school, the reformatory, Sing Sing, or Dannemora, and then at last the chair. The heavy hand of doom was on his head from the beginning. The sin, in truth, is ours—the sin of a penal system that leaves the victim to his fate *when the course that he is going is written down so plainly.* * * *" (italic mine).

GROPING IN THE DARK

And so they come before the court, month in and month out, day after day, an apparently unending line of human misery and tragedy. How are we equipped to handle them?

These are issues that face judges as they approach the fateful act of sentencing. After interminable hours of listening to charges and countercharges, quibbling and evasions; painstaking establishment of self-evident facts; and the final officially established legal description of an act, judges often find themselves merely at the beginning of what they should know in order to act professionally.

What judges want to know, at this point is:

Why did he commit his act? Others about him somewhat similarly placed, have not so acted. What was there in his experience to turn him criminal?

What of his home, his relations with parents, siblings, and neighbors? With social institutions? With peer groups? With friends and boon companions?

Who has influenced him? After whom did he mold himself? What variety of activities did he participate in?

What has work, love, marriage, parenthood meant to him and how has he behaved in these relations?

Most important of all, what variety of opportunities was open to him? Did he participate in his culture and cherish it? Was he proud to be an American, a Jew, a Catholic, a Negro?

What interests does he now have? What skills? Whom does he love? Hate?

It is inadequate answers to these inquiries that pose the dilemmas of sentencing.

Succinctly, when a justice is beset by fear that a sentence he is about to impose cannot in the nature of things be apposite, his professional sense is outraged. What he wants to know is what kind of person with what needs he is sentencing; and into what kind of institution or community, with what resources and what hazards for moral recovery, he is committing him. It is not impossible for a sentence to be a greater injustice than the criminal act: Equivalent to putting a child with a common cold into a smallpox ward for treatment.

Not until courts are adequately staffed with adequate allied professional skills will we be able to identify the youthful offender with good moral potential, who can be safely returned to the community to line up with the orderly citizen, from the hairtrigger, perverted or psychopathic first offender who needs institutionalized care.

THE PRESENTENCE INVESTIGATION

A presentence investigation ought to be a routine aspect of treatment for every first offender brought before the court regardless of the degree of the crime. The objection that this kind of investigation is so costly that there is no hope of its being generally applied cannot be allowed. Lack of it costs millions in money and untold years of human suffering and community apprehension. It must be attempted, and attempted on a national scale, because only so, at this

3-cv-00547-O Document 20-2 Filed 10/06/23 Page 543 of 555 Pa
stage of our understanding of human behavior, can society acquire the kind of knowledge that will enable it to heal itself of lesions set up by cherished social habits of waywardness, greed, and irresponsibility.

Such an investigation prepared only by properly trained personnel might reveal undisclosed, as well as discovered, ailments. The defendant's arrest may prove to be only a symptom of greater danger. Need for institutional care or confinement may well come to light only in that way.

Very frequently such a presentence inquiry will reveal the need for the good of both community and delinquent that he be handled carefully until he stops bawling and thrashing around long enough to take cognizance of himself as a person. So long as hatred dominates his attitude toward society, he cannot rally his inner forces. Today's youth needs reassurance that the basic attitudes of adults—the power groups of society—are humanly friendly and cooperative within the established areas of responsible behavior.

Careful inquiries reveal that many youths enmeshed in the criminal law have a first and primary need—immersion in a tepid bath of human acceptance and good will. The community has not excluded him forever, and he should not be permitted to conclude that it has. Under proper guidance astonishing but true is the fact that he quickly lines up with the orderly citizen.

The number of such delinquents capable of rehabilitation is considerable. One thing is certain. The community cannot permit courts to fail in their efforts to understand and meet the needs of this group. Rehabilitation under the court's guidance is as much an arm of correction as Sing Sing and Alcatraz, and not less important. The court must be able to turn over to medical agencies and institutions youths needing physical and mental treatment. It must continue to work on behavior problems growing out of the failure of the city's cultural institutions to integrate individuals of normal average powers. In thus enlarging the scope of its activities the court takes on additional complex and taxing duties for whose standards, methods, and results it must assume full responsibility. This responsibility cannot be passed over to another group of professional persons, as is the case with the prison groups, but must be carried on under the supervision of the court which has retained technical control of the defendant. He is not discharged of his offense, but remains in the custody of the court, which can recall him and commit him if he fails to respond to its efforts.

GENERALIZED IRRESPONSIBILITY

Dr. Albert Schweitzer gives us this powerful commentary:

"Example is not the main thing in influencing others; it is the only thing."

Short of an act which disturbs the community's peace and comfort, we immerse ourselves and luxuriate in delinquency. Stung by a crime, the community turns not upon itself or the criminal, but against police, court, lawyers, judges, probation officers, prison officials, parole boards—the professional groups it has employed to protect it.

Youth offenses are the bud stage of criminality. They follow in the main patterns of adult desires. But they are less cerebral, less variegated, and more lusty. To consider youthful crime as something foisted on an innocent and law-abiding community rather than as an aspect of its own thought of itself and its own action, is to be naive beyond sanity.

The health of the community lies in the absence of disease rather than in its resources for isolating the sick and providing for their cure. Crime is beginning to be understood as an aspect of man's mental-emotional-moral nature. This nature, assailed by many forces both within and without his bodily frame, is susceptible to many infections. Some are capable of destroying their victim, and more important still, of infecting others. Public health authorities have learned to follow a typhoid or other carrier from State to State, even across the Nation, once it has become aware of his existence. We follow the determined offender through his fingerprints, but not the youth in his most infectious stage.

Juvenile crime is crime at the source. The youthful criminal may be self-infected, he has frequently been infected by another or he may have been conditioned by the mores of his gang or his neighborhood or even his family. He may be so naive and unacquainted with morality as not to be aware of his entrance into the age of responsibility.

It is in the courts that the dramas behind the figures presented in the annual reports of the Federal Bureau of Investigation, and in the local police reports on which the national profile is based, that the significance of these figures unfolds

3-cv-08547-O Document 20-2 Filed 10/06/23 Page 544 of 555 Pa

and takes on life. And it is from the court records that cities, towns, and villages might, if they wish, learn what kind of crimes are committed, who are committing them, the conditions that breed or facilitate certain crimes, and the community prophylaxis called for to prevent (by promoting community moral health and so capacity to resist) situations injurious to the commonweal.

Thank you for the encouragement which comes from the knowledge that you and your committee are conducting an extremely important inquiry in vital fashion. I stand ready if I can be of further service.

EXCERPTS FROM THE 1954 AND 1955 ANNUAL REPORTS OF THE OFFICE OF THE DISTRICT ATTORNEY OF KINGS COUNTY SUBMITTED BY EDWARD S. SILVER, DISTRICT ATTORNEY OF KINGS COUNTY, FOR INCLUSION IN THE HEARINGS OF THE SENATE SUBCOMMITTEE TO INVESTIGATE JUVENILE DELINQUENCY

THERE ARE NO "PINK PILLS" FOR JUVENILE DELINQUENCY

OVERALL COORDINATING AGENCY NEEDED

There can be no question that the problem of juvenile delinquency is most serious. Unfortunately, there are no pink pills or magic formulas for this dire social disease. Federal, State, and city government must tackle this problem with earnestness and speed and provide the wherewithal to train and procure the necessary personnel and physical plant to do the job.

Delinquents do not happen, they develop. As in many diseases, early symptoms can be spotted by trained personnel and if attacked soon enough, delinquency can in most cases be prevented from breaking out in a more virulent form. Indeed this long-range method is now being tried in two Bronx grade schools.

An agency should be created (or one in existence, the New York City Youth Board might be adopted for this purpose) to integrate various agencies which are coping with the problem piecemeal, but not on an overall war plan. I have in mind such agencies as New York City youth boards; child guidance bureau, bureau of attendance, and other bureaus of our elementary and high school system; New York City Mental Health Board; juvenile aid bureau (police department); precinct youth councils; youth counsel bureau; settlement houses; YMCA, YMHA and CYO; and many other private and public agencies that are all tackling some phase of the problem, but often with no coordination with what other agencies are doing or how other agencies can fit in with the overall job on hand.

This overall plan[1] calls for a four-pronged attack on (1) the traits and characteristics of the delinquent himself, (2) the family life (little can be done in the field of prevention until family life is strengthened through a continuous program of mental hygiene, social work, education, and religious and ethical teaching), (3) the school, and (4) leisure time.

"* * * The specialization of each agency in one group of factors does not eliminate the harmonious participation of all community agencies in a well-conceived general plan of attack."[2]

Let us count up our assets and put them to their best use. What we have is surely not enough. Money will have to be made available for personnel and facilities. There may be resistance from some to retain positions or authority—but I am confident that good will and honesty, catalyzed by the seriousness of the problem, will prevail.

The excitement created by a particularly terrifying incident understandably spurs various organizations and individuals into action and the creation of some "project" to curb delinquency. Well meaning as it might be it can only muddy the waters unless it fits into an overall integrated plan. And this can be done only by an agency that should exist to integrate the forces we have, extend services, and create new ones if needed. It is important also that such an agency shall have the courage to say "No" to a group, well meaning as they may be, if the plan proposed is not well planned and does not fit into an overall scheme.

---

[1] See Delinquents in the Making—Paths To Prevention, pp. 188–210 (Sheldon and Eleanor Glueck, Harper & Bros. (1952)).
[2] Supra, p. 208.

3-cv-00547-O Document 20-2 Filed 10/06/23 Page 545 of 555 Pa

"SCARE 'EM TO DEATH"

Facts and figures concerning juvenile delinquency, however bleak, should by all means be given to the people. That is a basic tenet of democracy. At the same time, however, they should not be exaggerated nor should a particular statistic be blown up out of proportion to create a headline or in the hope that it might be a spur and an aid to obtaining additional funds for a proposed budget.

One city agency issues a news release stating the city's delinquency rate (age 16 to 21) has jumped an "unprecedented 52.7 percent during 1954." After citing other "scare" figures, the release claims a need for more than doubling its present budget to $5 million. Because I work closely with the agency which does a fine, constructive job, I know it justly needs a much larger budget than it has. I do, however, deplore the exaggeration of a problem that, unfortunately, needs no exaggeration.

Let us look at some real figures—the official figures of the adolescent court for Brooklyn (age 16 to 19). Total arraignment figures for 1954 were 2,346 and for 1953, 2,051—an overall increase of 14 percent. A close examination shows that for felonies both years were the same (929) and for misdemeanors 1954 (915) was 6 percent over 1953 (862). The bulk of the increase came in summary offenses, in the main disorderly conduct—401 in 1954 to 188 in 1953.

Let us take the official figures of the youth counsel bureau which gets its referrals of adolescents in trouble from various courts (ages 16–21). The totals for the city show an increase of 10 percent for 1954 (5,438) over 1953 (4,940). Incidentally, Brooklyn was the only borough showing a decrease of 8 percent for 1954 (1,309) over 1953 (1,412).

If we take the official police department report we find arrests for the entire city (16 to 21 age group) up 15.8 percent from 1953 (10,771) to 1954 (12,470).

The juvenile aid bureau of the police department which deals with those between the ages of 16 to 21, but in the main under 16, involving offenses and complaints where no arrest is indicated, showed a rise of 18.7 percent for 1954 (23,205) over 1953 (19,556).

Another city agency in a news release, not satisfied with showing a citywide increase of alleged delinquents of 17 percent for 1954 (7,734) over 1953 (6,610), cites the single month of January 1955 to indicate an increase of 56 percent, and for girls an increase of 135 percent, involving a total of 162 girls for the entire city. Its release does not point out that for the entire year 1954 there were 7 percent fewer girls (389) in trouble than in all of 1953 (418). Nor does the release point out that the years 1946 and 1947 had less than the year 1945 and 1950 had less alleged delinquents than the year 1949.

Incidentally, so far as Kings County is concerned, it showed only a 10 percent increase for 1954 (2,453) over 1953 (2,218), the lowest increase of any county.

Surely the problem is sufficiently serious and alarming to warrant marshaling all of our forces. But, I submit, it is a disservice to our democratic form of government to make it appear that we are "bursting at the seams." After all, we should not forget that over 97 percent of our adolescents are decent kids who get into no trouble at all.

THE STREET GANG PROBLEM IN BROOKLYN

In the evening of May 12, 1950, a "rumble" (gang fight) took place in Prospect Park between 2 gangs and among other injuries inflicted on members of both gangs, a boy was shot and killed.

Like all such incidents it aroused the feelings of the community to a high pitch. Dr. Henry J. Carpenter, a leader in the Brooklyn Council of Social Planning, called a meeting of leading citizens and officials to see what could be done with the problem. It was proposed that some voluntary organization be formed to cope with the situation. I objected strenuously to such a plan. I maintained that this was as much a public problem as sewers, hospitals, roads, or tunnels.

Members of the Youth Board of New York City were present and I called upon them to see if they would get us the funds to set up the machinery to tackle this problem. With commendable speed and unusual understanding the funds (approximately $60,000) were made available. Even more important,

3-cv-00347-O Document 20-2 Filed 10/06/23 Page 546 of 555 Pa

the machinery and personnel and know-how of the youth board was made available. The project was first known as the detached-workers project and later became the Council of Social and Athletic Clubs. I am proud to say that your district attorney has been the chairman of its board of directors from the outset.

We gathered people whose daily tasks were working with young people—the police, probation officers, judges of juvenile and adolescent courts, school officials, heads of settlement houses, clergymen of all faiths, and so forth. A personnel committee was formed. The project was launched and funds were provided. A professional staff was carefully selected, consisting of 12 specialists who could go into troubled areas and deal on a personal basis directly with gang leaders and members, in order to break down the barriers of suspicion, gain their confidence, and learn what led them into antisocial activity.

This was in 1951. The project has been a definite success. The budget, which originally was $60,000, is now about $100,000. At periodical meetings the board reviews the reports of its men in the field. Experiences are analyzed and new approaches devised to fit particular situations. Our hopes and efforts have been justified. In the areas where we have operated, gang fights with zip guns, switchblade knives, and clubs, which were common occurrences when we began, have all but disappeared. Now these groups play baseball and basketball with each other, with accepted standards of sportsmanship. Whereas previously they regarded "cops" with contempt and hatred, they now recognize that "cops" are their friends who can help them. It is planned to organize the "alumni" of these groups to work with the younger members. That this can be accomplished has been demonstrated.

It is heartening to read in Deputy Mayor Henry Epstein's report to Mayor Wagner—Perspectives on Delinquency Prevention—at page 25:

"The youth board proposes doubling the number of street clubs served in the present project areas; extension of service to other neighborhoods in equal volume is also suggested. I strongly recommend that every cent requested for this work be appropriated without delay.

"There are precious few private agencies willing to undertake the difficult area the youth board has cut out for itself. There is no agency in a position to carry this work through on the scale of the youth-board operation. Their leaders have the spirit, the will, and the know-how; money is needed to quadruple staff on this operation. It means reaching directly a pretty obstreperous sector of youth, some of them before they get into serious trouble.

The street clubs project needs an increase of $508,000 by 1957–58. * * *"

This 5-year-old project should teach us too that the problems of delinquency are dynamic, complex, and multifaceted with no quick or magic solution. But it shows, too, that with time, patience, and know-how it can be successfully tackled. This project should encompass our entire borough; indeed, the entire city.

The youth board, and all who have participated in it can take a real pride in this job. Much of the shortcomings are due to the fact that there were not sufficient funds: First, to extend the program to other areas; secondly, to intensify the program with various social services within each area; and thirdly, to engage sufficient persons in the area of operation to collect and evaluate data for scientific evaluation of the project. Only when these are done will the full value of the operation be felt.

* * * * * * *

"Operation Veteran"

PLAN TO PREVENT JUVENILE DELINQUENCY

While the problem of juvenile delinquency concerns everybody, it is only natural that as the district attorney it should concern me and my staff even more.

In the beginning of the year it occurred to me that we are not even beginning to take advantage of either the manpower or the physical facilities available to aid in the fight against this troublesome problem. I therefore devised a plan that I felt is workable, not too expensive, and would be effective.

After consultation with representatives of the Youth Board of the City of New York and the Board of Education, and after much research, I addressed a communication on September 16, 1955, to the then deputy mayor, Henry Epstein, which I set forth in full at the end of this section.

3-cv-00547-O Document 20-2 Filed 10/06/23 Page 547 of 555 Pa

A reading of this letter gives the plan in detail. In a word, it is one which contemplates the use of volunteer workers under expert paid supervision and the utilization of facilities that are already in existence, both private and public. In the main, it provides for the use of the public schools, and their facilities.

The deputy mayor referred the matter to the youth board, who, after some study, submitted it to a subcommittee for further study and recommendation. The subcommittee finally approved the plan but felt it would be wiser to limit it at the start to those agencies in the area that are now in operation, and to augment them by the volunteer plan. It is contemplated that later the idea would spread with the use of school properties where centers are needed but do not now exist.

Among other things, it was seriously felt that there was a real necessity for the coordination of volunteer groups interested in working toward the prevention and control of juvenile delinquency. It pointed out that volunteer operations are ineffective unless there is sustained professional help and direction and it was vital to create a greater awareness on the part of professionals on the value and contributions to be made by volunteers. The committee felt that in the past well-intentioned volunteers generally lost interest because the professionals did not give them a feeling that they were really wanted in the jobs they undertook.

I am happy to report that the youth board accepted the recommendation of the subcommittee and made an initial appropriation of $15,000 to put this program into operation. It is hoped that before long the necessary personnel will be found to begin to implement the idea.

LETTER OF DISTRICT ATTORNEY

SEPTEMBER 16, 1955.

Hon. HENRY EPSTEIN,
Deputy Mayor, City of New York,
City Hall, New York, N. Y.

DEAR MR. EPSTEIN: I know you feel as keenly as I do that there is too much talk about the serious problems of juvenile delinquency and not enough "doing."

I am sure too I needn't tell you that one of the fronts on which we must attack the serious problem of juvenile delinquency is providing for the youths' leisure time. At our pleasant conference a few weeks ago, I outlined to you a plan that I thought should be tried out for the utilization of our veteran groups who would act as volunteers in this project.

In my capacity as district attorney, and before that, as chief assistant, I am fully aware of the seriousness of this problem and at the same time realize the limited number of trained professional persons to deal with the problem, as well as the very difficult problem of getting funds for such a project.

It was with this in mind that I began to think of the possibility of using volunteers to supplement the work of a small paid staff. It occurred to me that the veteran groups were a wonderful source from which to draw volunteers for such work.

Operation Veteran

May I state that on Friday, September 9, last, I met with the heads of the veteran organizations in Kings County (American Legion, Catholic War Veterans, Disabled War Veterans, Jewish War Veterans, and Veterans of Foreign Wars), and they all were enthusiastic about the plan and pledged their fullest support and expressed their confidence that the veterans would be glad to meet this challenge.

In this connection, I would like to mention that the majority of the veterans, particularly of World War II, are at the present time fathers of children and teen-agers, and they have a full realization of the problem that confronts us all. Aside from this, as patriotic men, they are anxious to do what they can to solve this very difficult problem.

I think we ought to keep in mind that the veterans give us a source from which to draw men efficient in various sports and crafts, as well as persons of all racial and religious groups.

I like the idea of calling this project operation veteran.

As I explained to you in our conference, one of the difficulties with so many of the projects is that they are not properly organized and supervised. Since my plan envisions the use of the playgrounds and other facilities of our ele-

3-cv-00547-O Document 20-2 Filed 10/06/23 Page 548 of 555 Pa

mentary high school buildings, I discussed this plan with Dr. Edward J. Bernath, associate superintendent, division of community education, who has taken the matter up with Dr. Jansen. They have both expressed their approval and aid for the plan.

It is planned that the veterans will give us sufficient manpower to get between 200 and 300 veteran volunteers. This will allow for dropouts, illness, unforeseen difficulties, etc. Roughly, it is planned that each candidate who desires to enter this work will complete a questionnaire giving his name, address, occupation, etc., time available, and his specific interests, such as baseball, basketball, boxing, music (bands and glee clubs, quartets, etc.), dramatics, arts, crafts, etc. We would ask him to indicate the number of evenings he can give to this cause and it is our thought that he should give at least 2 evenings per week so that there would be some continuity of relationship. The volunteers would then be screened and an orientation and training program would be provided to be operated by the New York City Youth Board.

It should not be too difficult to get the radio and TV stations to give us their help to publicize and lend encouragement to the participants by appearing on their medium to display their skills or in some kind of a healthful competitive show of skills.

I have discussed this matter with Judge Nathaniel Kaplan, chairman of the New York City Youth Board, Ralph W. Whelan, its executive director, and often with James E. McCarthy, deputy executive director, and I am happy to say that they are all enthusiastic about the plan. They see in it tremendous possibilities.

As part of the plan, business organizations will be approached to underwrite the program cost of the operation. Thus, one organization may provide the funds for outfitting a baseball or basketball team. Another may provide funds for activities, such as photography, etc.

Although it is expected that we must get from the city the funds to provide for program expenditures, it is safe to assume that the community will have to provide more money than the city, and it is even possible that after a year or two the community can provide all the necessary funds. But the plan cannot be launched with any degree of success unless the city provides the money to get the experiment going under the supervision and coordination of the New York City Youth Board.

In order that you might have an idea of what the city would have to supply, I set forth a budget breakdown of what I feel is necessary. These figures have been compiled after numerous consultations with Mr. James E. McCarthy, deputy executive director of the New York City Youth Board.

Budget breakdown

For the first years of operation, the following budget breakdown is proposed, in order to launch the program:

Item	Amount
Director	$9,000
Assistant director	6,100
Secretary	2,765
Fee for special services [1]	2,000
Office rental	2,000
Office supplies	500
Printed stationery and forms	400
Contact expenses in field	600
Office equipment	2,000
Recreation and sports equipment [2]	3,000
Postage	300
Telephone and other communication	400
Carfare	600
Cleaning service	700
Total	30,365

[1] For bringing in well-known and leading athletes in all fields to help and advise in particular fields and to inspire the youths in the areas.
[2] To get project under way.

The area

The area selected for initiating a pilot operation is the Williamsburg section of Brooklyn. I am attaching hereto three maps, map I, which gives the delinquency rates for the Williamsburg area; map II, which shows the same area

3-cv-00547-O Document 20-2 Filed 10/06/23 Page 549 of 555 Pa
and the police precincts it covers; and map III, to show the area in relationship to the rest of Brooklyn. The boundaries of this area are as follows:

(Then follows a description of the boundaries of the area, health districts, and precincts in it.)

Like all projects, I am sure we will find that some of the ideas we have will not work out, while others that we do not think about can be nicely incorporated in it. Again, too, of course, modifications can be made to the area proposed should it be deemed advisable.

Pilot plan

In a real sense, this is a pilot scheme. If and when we put it into operation and run it for at least a year, we will then be in a position to know whether the plan really works, and I can see no reason why it shouldn't. Later when we have had some actual experience, tested and tried the plan, we can use it in other areas in Brooklyn, and possibly throughout the city as a whole. For the present, however, the Williamsburg area will be the laboratory for the experimentation.

The street club plan was tried for a number of years in Brooklyn, before we knew it worked, and is now, as you know, working in Harlem and the Bronx. I have had the satisfaction of being chairman of this advisory board on street clubs in Brooklyn for 5 years.

Resources of the area

(Then follows a detailed outline of the private agencies in the area, what public schools have recreational facilities and the types, day or evening, and what schools have none.)

Of the foregoing 25 schools, there are 14 schools which are in no way being utilized with either after-school playgrounds or evening community centers, with or without youth board programs, and only 5 that are utilized in the evening. The daytime programs go to 5:30 p. m.

Description of the area

According to the 1950 statistics, the total population of Williamsburg was 193,895, composed of 167,089 white, 11,270 Negro, 14,952 Puerto Ricans, and 584 others.

Age groupings in population, 1940–50, Williamsburg area

Age groups	1940 population	1950 population	Percent change	1950 population (estimated)	Percent change over 1950
All ages	195, 655	193, 895	−0. 9	215, 000	−11. 8
Under 6 years	15, 982	23, 753	+48. 6	21, 000	−8. 0
6 to 15	33, 672	28, 041	−16. 7	39, 000	+39. 3
16 to 20	20, 782	13, 950	−32. 0	13, 000	−5. 4
21 and over	125, 219	128, 151	+2. 3	142, 000	+10. 9

We note that the age group 16 to 20 years decreased in the 10-year period, 1940 to 1950, by one-third. For the borough as a whole, the decrease in this age group was proportionately less than for this area. The age group 6 to 15 years also showed a decrease both in the area and in the borough. However, the younger age group, children who at the time of the census in 1950, were under 6 years of age, increased 48.6 percent in the area in the past 10 years. These children are now 6 to 10 years and of particular concern to youth planning organizations.

It is most important to note that the group, for example, listed as 6 to 15 years which shows a decrease from 1940 to 1950, is as of 1955, 39.3 percent higher. This is a most important age group.

(A description of the racial and ethnic groups in the area then follows:)

The veterans' role

About 200 to 300 selected veterans from the various veteran groups will be asked to give a minimum of 2 evenings a week to this program. After their initial screening by the two project members, they will be assigned to small groups based on their interests, abilities, etc., and will participate in a training session. The major part of the training sessions will be handled by the staff of this project. However, specialists in a variety of fields will be used to enrich the training program. It is envisioned that through these training sessions they

3-cv-00547-O Document 20-2 Filed 10/06/23 Page 550 of 555 Pa

will begin to develop growing understanding of the needs and behavior of children and teen-agers and so understanding, be better prepared to cope with them. Moreover, the training sessions may help to broaden their program abilities and thereby increase their contribution to this type program. As quickly as possible, however, the veteran will be assigned to the different recreation and group work operations in Williamsburg. At the beginning, these will be limited to ongoing programs where increased staff and diversified abilities will enrich the program. They will function as integral members of the staff of their assigned project, receiving their immediate supervision from the supervisors of these programs. Some may operate as recreation teachers, and others may be used in areas such as shopwork, music, as receptionist, and a variety of other fields limited only by the aptitude and interest of the volunteers. The staff of the project will continue its interest in the veterans, keeping records of their development and assuring their correct use where they are best fitted.

Veteran women auxiliaries

It should be mentioned that in the planning of this work it is hoped to involve the women auxiliaries of the various veteran organizations. They can be of great use in conducting and chaperoning dances and various functions, such as sewing and cooking, that might fall particularly in their line.

Business organizations

The business organizations in this area, both individually and through chambers of commerce, etc., will be approached and interested in this program. They will be reminded that a healthier community is better for business, as well as of their basic responsibility in making it a better neighborhood. They will be able to participate in the program by underwriting specific program costs. For example, $250 will equip a junior baseball team, $350 will equip a regular baseball team. Some organizations may wish to participate with others in financing a league or in contributing to cost of activities such as photography, etc.

Citizenship participation

I think it is of the utmost importance in such a project to involve as many citizens as possible, whether individuals or business concerns. We must dissipate the impression that only some political unit, city, State or Federal, can handle these problems.

The fact that the citizens will be part of the project will not only make them aware of the seriousness of the problem, but they will be made to feel that they have a personal stake in its operation and success.

Business concerns would not only be rendering a great public service but they would get more than their just share in advertising value for what they do in this project. I am sure that the press (particularly in Brooklyn sections), would be glad to publish the standings in the baseball and basketball leagues and give other reports on the work that is being done.

Much can be gained if we can also involve the parents of the children in the area in this work. Even if they come only as spectators, it is a link between home and child that is very helpful in the overall picture.

Citizens advisory committee

In connection with this project, it is contemplated that we would create a citizens advisory committee which might be known as the Citizens Advisory Committee of the Veterans Service Project.

While I have given some thought to the names, we would provide on it a place for the veterans' organizations, the youth board, the board of education, police department (J. A. B.), representatives of the various religious and racial groups, commerce and industry, labor unions, P. A. L., Precinct Youth Council, representatives from some of the organizations serving Williamsburg, as well as other persons whose daily tasks bring them close to the problem.

I believe I have given you enough of the plan I have in mind to enable you to try to get us the necessary funds from the board of estimate.

I have every confidence that the mayor and you will give it your sympathetic consideration.

Sincerely yours,

EDWARD S. SILVER,
District Attorney, Kings County.

3-cv-00547-O Document 20-2 Filed 10/06/23 Page 551 of 555 Pa

STATEMENT PREPARED FOR THE UNITED STATES SENATE SUBCOMMITTEE ON JUVENILE DELINQUENCY WITH RESPECT TO THE WISCONSIN SEX DEVIATE LAW SUBMITTED UPON REQUEST OF THE COMMITTEE BY SANGER B. POWERS, DIRECTOR, DIVISION OF CORRECTIONS, WISCONSIN STATE DEPARTMENT OF PUBLIC WELFARE

WISCONSIN'S EXPERIENCE IN THE ADMINISTRATION AND TREATMENT EFFECTIVENESS OF ITS SEX DEVIATE LAW: 1951–56

I. HISTORICAL BACKGROUND

Wisconsin's Sex Crimes Law (sec. 959.15, Wisconsin Stats.) enacted by the 1951 legislature became effective on July 27, 1951. This legislation provides for a medical approach, within a legal frame of reference, to the problem of the sex offender. The constitutionality of the law has been established in the case of *State ex rel. George E. Volden, Plaintiff in Error* v. *Franz G. Hass, Sheriff, Dane County, Defendant in Error* (264 Wisconsin 127).

The sex crimes law passed the Wisconsin Legislature without dissenting vote in either senate or assembly and without debate. The legislation had been authored by a large citizens' committee which contained representation from organized labor, church groups, private social agencies, community organizations, the bar, University of Wisconsin, Marquette University, and prominent citizens interested in public welfare problems. Separate hearings on the proposed bill were held by senate and assembly committees. The excellence of the arguments presented by the representatives of the citizens' committee referred to earlier and the fact that there was no opposition accounts for the passage of this legislation without debate.

II. BASIC PROVISIONS OF THE LAW

A. Definition and jurisdiction

The sex crimes law establishes two categories of sex crimes. The first category includes rape, sexual intercourse without consent, indecent behavior with a child, or an attempt to commit any such offenses. The second category includes any other crime except homicide or attempted homicide if the court finds that the defendant was probably directly motivated by a desire for sexual excitement in the commission of the crime.

Any court with jurisdiction to try an offender for any offense falling within either of the above categories has jurisdiction to commit under the sex crimes law.

It is mandatory upon the courts to commit to the State department of public welfare for a "presentence social, physical and mental examination" any person who has been convicted of rape in violation of section 944.01, sexual intercourse without consent in violation of section 944.02, indecent behavior with a child in violation of section 944.11, or for attempting to commit rape or have sexual intercourse without consent. For all other sex crimes the court may, after conviction, commit the offender to the department of public welfare for a presentence social, physical and mental examination if the department certifies that it has adequate facilities for making such examination and is willing to accept such commitment.

Thus, the Wisconsin Statutes provide for two broad categories of sex crimes. In the first category are found the aggressive, assaultive offenses and sexual offenses against children. Upon conviction of any such offense, the offender must be committed for a presentence physical, social, and mental examination under the sex crimes law. For all other sex crimes it is discretionary with the court whether to handle the offender under the sex crimes law or under the criminal statutes. It might be noted that in the second category of offenses are found a wide variety of offenses such as sodomy, incest, arson, the circulation of indecent, obscene, or pornographic material, and some misdemeanors such as disorderly conduct, provided that the offense meets the statutory definition of a sex crime as noted previously. The courts are authorized in determining whether or not the offense might be classified as a sex crime to take testimony after conviction if necessary.

B. Report by the department

The State department of public welfare is required by statute to submit to the committing court a report of its findings and recommendations within 60 days

3-cv-00547-O Document 20-2 Filed 10/06/23 Page 552 of 555 Pa

of commitment for the presentence study. This report includes a complete social investigation, along with a résumé of the psychological tests including projective tests plus the psychiatric appraisal.

C. Disposition of cases after return to court

If the State department of public welfare "recommends specialized treatment for the offender's physical or mental aberrations," the court then must order the offender brought before the court and then "shall either place him on probation * * * with the requirement as a condition of such probation that he receive outpatient treatment in such manner as the court shall prescribe, or commit him to the department" for treatment. The department's responsibility for treatment of the individual does not lessen its obligation to the public for the offender's safekeeping. The Wisconsin State Prison has thus been designated as the facility where those convicted of sex crimes are to be sent for either diagnosis or treatment.

In the event that the department does not find the person studied to be sexually deviated, it reports such fact to the court and the case must then be disposed of under the provisions of the Criminal Code.

D. Duration of control

All commitments of sex deviates to the State department of public welfare for treatment are for an indeterminate period. Persons so committed may be released by the department on parole if it appears to the satisfaction of the department, upon recommendation by a special review board (consisting of two psychiatrists and an attorney at law), that the offender is capable of making an acceptable adjustment to society. The department is obligated to keep every person committed to it under supervision and control so long as in its judgment such control is necessary for the protection of the public. A percentage, as yet unknown because of the relatively brief existence (6 years) of the law, are incapable of responding to treatment and pose a continuing threat to the public because they possess neither the will nor the capacity to change. The duration of control over such cases will prove lengthy since no case is discharged without psychiatric clearance and after a finding that the offender no longer represents a threat to society.

The department of public welfare by administrative order may discharge a person committed under the Sex Crimes Law upon finding that he has received maximum benefits through therapy and is no longer a threat to society providing total time under department supervision is equal to the maximum for which he might have been sentenced as a misdemeanant or 2 years if convicted of a felony.

If the department determines that a person cannot safely be discharged, the law requires the department to issue an order directing that the offender remain subject to its control beyond the normal discharge date and to make application to the committing court for a review of that order at least 90 days before the normal discharge date. If after a hearing the court finds that discharge from the control of the department of public welfare of the person to whom the order applies "would be dangerous to the public because of the person's mental or physical deficiency, disorder or abnormality, the court shall confirm the order." If confirmed, the order remains in effect for 5 calendar years unless the offender is previously discharged. If the department wishes to retain control beyond the 5-year period, the process of a new order and application to the court for a judicial review is repeated at 5-year intervals.

E. Constitutional safeguards

The law provides for (1) commitment to the department only after conviction: (2) the right to appeal such conviction; (3) judicial review of all orders continuing control, and (4) application to the court by an offender for a reexamination of his mental condition not oftener than semiannually during any period of extended control.

F. Voluntary admissions

Persons believing themselves to be afflicted by a mental or physical condition which may result in sexual action dangerous to the public may apply to the State department of public welfare for voluntary admission to an institution for diagnosis. Treatment may also be provided, if the need for such is determined in the diagnostic process.

3-cv-00547-O Document 20-2 Filed 10/06/23 Page 553 of 555 Pa

G. Sex deviate facility

The Wisconsin State Prison at Waupun has been designated by the department of public welfare as its sex deviate facility. Plans are in preparation for the establishment at some future date of a medically oriented institution for the diagnosis and treatment of the sex offender.

Presently the diagnostic function is performed in the majority of cases at the prison. Such services on occasion are provided by the Wisconsin Diagnostic Center, the Milwaukee Guidance Clinic, the Milwaukee County Hospital for Mental Diseases, and outpatient clinics in larger cities throughout the State.

The treatment of those committed as deviated is carried out at the prison, but other State-operated mental institutions are also utilized on occasion.

III. DIAGNOSES AND TREATMENT

A. The diagnostic process

When an individual is committed to the department for study and diagnosis the following procedure is instituted:

1. The field service (probation and parole staff) makes a comprehensive social investigation that covers the offense, the victim and a longitudinal history of the offender.
2. Upon receipt of the social history at the institution, the offender is interviewed by a psychiatric social worker who prepares a report of special significance to the psychologist and the examining psychiatrist.
3. The offender is then given a full battery of psychological tests including projective testing. The results of this testing along with the social history and the medical examination are then forwarded to the psychiatrist assigned to the case.
4. The psychiatrist interviews the offender, studies all available reports, evaluates the man, and forwards his psychiatric appraisal to the department.
5. The department then makes its findings and report to the court.
6. The man is returned to court for judicial disposition.

B. The treatment process

When an offender has been returned to court after a finding of sexual deviation and the court elects to commit him to the department for treatment rather than to use probation (with the added requirement of outpatient psychotherapy), he is returned to the sex-deviate facility located within the Wisconsin State Prison. At this time he is placed in the orientation program established for all new prison inmates. During this orientation period he is introduced to all facets of the institutional program including work, education, recreation, religious, and social services. Necessary dental work is performed and he is evaluated for work or school placement and custodial requirements. He is then released into the general prison population and is assigned to a psychiatrist who henceforth is responsible for his treatment program.

The source of the man's emotional conflict having been pinpointed previously through the projective testing, he is now placed in psychotherapy which will relate to his needs as indicated by the psychological examination and in keeping with his ability to profit by and respond to such treatment. The intensity and frequency of such therapeutic contact varies from individual to individual; psychiatric interviews are presently had on an average of once every 2 weeks. On the average this form of treatment extends over a 10½-month period in the case of those released to parole supervision.

IV. EXPERIENCE IN THE OPERATION OF THE LAW

From July 26, 1951, when the law became effective, through June 30, 1956, a total of 821 men and 1 woman were studied under the sex-crimes law. Of this group, 376 were returned to court with a finding of sufficient psychiatric deviation in the sexual area to warrant commitment under the law, while 22 were returned to court with a finding of psychosis or mental deficiency with recommendations for handling under the Mental Health Act. Of these 376 deviates, 311 were committed to the department for treatment at the sex-deviate facility at Waupun, while 65 were placed on probation with the stipulation that outptaient psychotherapy be obtained. Of the remaining offenders examined, 418 were found to be not deviated and were returned to court for sentencing under the Criminal Code.

3-cv-00547-O Document 20-2 Filed 10/06/23 Page 554 of 555 Pa

Of this latter number, 240 were placed on probation while 162 were sentenced to either the State prison or the State reformatory. Dispositions in the remaining 16 cases included such things as commitment to a county home, fine, or jail sentence.

A. Parole experience

Of the 311 men committed to the sex-deviate facility for treatment, 225 had been paroled up through June 30, 1956 (the first parole grant was made on July 18, 1952). Over this 5-year period only 35 parolees (15 percent of those paroled) are known to have violated the conditions of parole and were returned to the institution for further treatment. Fourteen of the violations resulting in return to the institution were violations of rules rather than commission of new sex offenses.

This low parole violation rate has been rather startling, since the sex offender for years has frequently been regarded as hopeless and a poor candidate for rehabilitative treatment. The violation rate is substantially less than the rate for the nondeviated sex offender or the normal felony offender. This argues for the basic premise of Wisconsin's sex crimes law—that the deviated sex offender requires psychiatric and medical treatment and is essentially a psychiatric rather than a custodial problem.

B. Record of discharged sex offenders

Through June 30, 1956, the department discharged a total of 142 men from all further supervision and control. The first such discharge was made on December 19, 1952. Only 6 of those discharged are known to have committed new sex offenses subsequent to discharge—3 by indecent exposure, 1 by disorderly conduct, and 2 by taking indecent liberties with a minor. It should be noted that of the 6 dischargees who committed new offenses, 3 had initially been committed because of indecent exposure or disorderly conduct and had been discharged not because it was felt that they were completely cured, but rather since the department could not make a finding that their release would constitute a danger to the public (even though they might make nuisances of themselves subsequently).

C. Extension of control

Up to June 30, 1956, a total of 35 men were returned to court for a hearing on a department order extending its control over them. These orders were confirmed in 33 of the 35 cases returned to court. In the remaining two cases the courts determined that while the men were in need of further psychiatric care, they must be regarded as nuisances rather than as a danger to the public (the statutory requirement for continuance of control).

V. CONCLUSION

The experience thus far in Wisconsin with the sex-crimes law has been most successful by any standard one wishes to use. Despite some physical plant inadequacies, a dedicated staff has not only made the operation of the sex crimes law a success, but has proved that most cases of sexual deviancy will respond to psychiatric treatment.

It is our feeling that an adequate program providing for the individual treatment of the sex offender can have a significant impact on the problem of juvenile delinquency, since many such offenders are involved in offenses with juveniles or in offenses which contribute to delinquency—ranging from the possession and distribution of pornographic literature to the introduction of juveniles into deviant sexual behavior.

Statement Submitted to the United States Senate Investigating Committee on Juvenile Delinquency by Mrs. Sanford Schwarz

The attached statement is a description of a project undertaken by lay people to create more healthful attitudes in a school community setup. In this area inmigration of non-English-speaking persons and the general overall deterioration of the neighborhood, physically and socially, is being strongly felt.

The New York City Youth Board offered us as citizens at large an opportunity in its area hearings to learn how this problem was being met by other lay persons and professionals. The amateur or volunteer who lives in the neighborhood, motivated by strong self-interest to help upgrade the community where his family and children live, needs the strongest encouragement and direction, so it

3-cv-00547-O Document 20-2 Filed 10/06/23 Page 555 of 555 Pa
seems to us, from city agencies such as the youth board. To participate in the public hearings, to have the benefit of contact and consultation between us, the lay people and the professionals, help to bring about sustained volunteer participation for the common good. This, it would appear, is the crux of securing and holding on to volunteer activity on behalf of better neighborhoods. In short, people who care and who approach the problem of juvenile delinquency from this fundamental premise, that a healthy character in a neighborhood helps to limit social disorganization and its natural result, juvenile delinquency, need the city's recognition and support.

In addition to the help given by the youth board to the citizens of the school area in which we live, a volunteer agency interested in human relations has also come forward with a substantial program that not only recognizes the efforts of the "indispensable amateurs" but goes further in setting up a youth program in which our forces will mesh.

UNITED NEIGHBORS

The United Neighbors group was set up 5 years ago in Public School 9, an elementary school in a former silk-stocking neighborhood, 82d Street and West End Avenue, New York City, by mothers who felt the need to take positive steps toward easing an increasingly difficult school situation.

What was once a homogeneous school population was struggling with almost 50 percent of its children described as linguistically handicapped and culture conflicts appeared in both school and neighboring community. Families were moving to the suburbs with speed.

The mothers who intended to remain both in the neighborhood and have their children remain in the public school were motivated by self-interest to help the whole climate of the area in which their young children moved. They were, it must be said, aware, too, of the American tradition in helping the newcomer find his way.

Taking a cue from the United Nations for our name, we called ourselves United Neighbors, and indeed stressed that there were more things that unite us than divide us. Living in the same area, we shared the same public school and were equally concerned about our children's education, health, safety, and recreation.

In an area where there are no natural boundaries, no center for communal activities, we took the school as the focal point and used its boundaries as an area of manageable dimensions. The school serves over 1,200 children from about 20 blocks. Within this wedge, we found resources, the library, the museum, the church, the synagogue, and the area's most precious asset: people who cared. The programs that followed, both in school and neighborhood, always were planned and initiated by the parents and other citizens who were looking for ways and means to channel their concern about creating a healthy atmosphere where they lived. Most important was the wholehearted cooperation of principal and teachers and their parallel activity in the classrooms to make our programs come to life for the children.

For almost 2 years the United Neighbors have had an ongoing coffee canteen in the school once a week early in the morning. When young mothers have just deposited their children in the school, they are invited to have coffee together. Here in a simple face-to-face relationship where one can sew or drink coffee if one has difficulty with the language, we have come to know our neighbors better; they in turn have come to feel a sense of neighborliness and acceptance. Their children in turn, proud to see their parents participating on a par with others, move more easily and comfortably among their peers, and thereby find their place in an American school community.

As an example of one of many projects, the mothers in this sophisticated metropolitan community put together a patchwork quilt during the United Neighbors coffee canteen sessions. This colorful quilt, characteristic of an activity in the early days of the history of our country, shows the diversity of the ethnic groups in our schools and at the same time the unity for the common good that binds us all.

×

1
2
3
4
5
6
7
8
9
10
11
12
13
14
15
16
17
18
19
20
21
22
23
24
25
26
27
28

UNITED STATES DISTRICT COURT
FOR THE NORTHERN DISTRICT OF TEXAS, FORT WORTH DIVISION

KNIFE RIGHTS, INC.; RUSSELL ARNOLD; JEFFREY FOLLODER; RGA AUCTION SOLUTION d.b.a. FIREARM SOLUTIONS; AND MOD SPECIALTIES,

Plaintiffs,

v.

MERRICK B. GARLAND, Attorney General of the United States; UNITED STATES DEPARTMENT OF JUSTICE,

Defendants.

Case No. 4:23-cv-00547-O

Hon. Judge Reed O'Connor

APPENDIX IN SUPPORT OF PLAINTIFFS' MOTION FOR SUMMARY JUDGMENT PART 2

EXHIBIT R

Calendar No. 2025

85TH CONGRESS 2d Session } SENATE { REPORT No. 1980

SWITCHBLADE KNIVES

JULY 28, 1958.—Ordered to be printed

Mr. MAGNUSON, from the Committee on Interstate and Foreign Commerce, submitted the following

REPORT

[To accompany H. R. 12850]

The Committee on Interstate and Foreign Commerce, to whom was referred the bill (H. R. 12850) to prohibit the introduction, or manufacture for introduction, into interstate commerce of switchblade knives, and for other purposes having considered the same, report favorably thereon without amendment and recommend that the bill do pass.

II. SUMMARY OF THE BILL

Section 1 defines the terms used in the bill.

Section 2 prohibits the manufacture for, or transportation or distribution in, interstate commerce, of switchblade knives or of other concealed-blade knives which open by operation of interia or gravity or both. Section 3 would also prohibit the manufacture, sale, or possession of such knives within any Territory or possession of the United States, within Indian country (as defined in sec. 1151 of title 18 of the United States Code); or within the special maritime or territorial jurisdiction of the United States (as defined in sec. 7 of title 18 of the United States Code). Persons violating these sections would be subject to a fine of not more than $2,000 or to imprisonment for not more than 5 years, or both.

Exceptions to these provisions are made in the following cases:

(1) The transportation of switchblade knives by common and contract carriers in the ordinary course of business;

(2) The manufacture, sale, transportation, distribution, or possession of such knives pursuant to contract with the Armed Forces;

39004°—58 S. Rept., 85-2, vol. 4——2

(3) The handling of switchblades by the Armed Forces or by any member or employee thereof in the performance of his duty; or

(4) The possession of a switchblade knife with a blade 3 inches or less in length by a one-armed person.

Section 5 of the bill amends section 1716 of title 18 of the United States Code to prohibit the mailing of switchblade knives except in connection with Armed Forces or other Government orders.

It should be particularly noted that the proposed legislation does not affect the possession, or manufacture for, or sales in, intrastate commerce of switchblade knives within States which freely permit their use. Nor would the bill interfere with switchblade control measures in those States where their use is subject to statewide or local regulation.

It is also important to add that the bill's exemption relating to the Armed Forces is not intended to sanction surplus sales of switchblade knives to the public.

III. NEED FOR AND BACKGROUND OF THE LEGISLATION

The problem of the use of switchblade and other quick-opening knives for criminal purposes has become acute during recent years—particularly by juvenile delinquents in large urban areas. During the present Congress a special study of juvenile delinquency was made by a subcommittee of the Committee on the Judiciary of the Senate. In its report (S. Rept. No. 1429, 85th Cong., 2d sess.) the subcommittee pointed up the switchblade menace as follows:

> The subcommittee's investigation disclosed that many of these knives were manufactured abroad and distributed by firms in this country who handle numerous items in addition to switchblade knives.
>
> It was established that these items were being widely distributed through the mail by distributors to the various States that had local laws prohibiting possession, sale, or distribution of switchblade knives. This fact, the subcommittee feels, points out the need for Federal control of the interstate shipment of these instruments, since local legislation is being systematically circumvented through the mail-order device.
>
> In the United States 2 manufacturers have a combined production of over 1 million switchblade knives a year. Both concerns are important cutlery manufacturers and the manufacture of switchblade knives represents only a small part of their business. It is estimated that the total traffic in this country in switchblade knives exceeds 1,200,000 per year.
>
> The questionnaires returned by police chiefs throughout the country indicate that many switchblade knives have been confiscated from juveniles. The police chiefs, almost without exception, indicate that these vicious weapons are on many occasions the instrument used by juveniles in the commission of robberies and assaults. Of the robberies committed in 1956, 43.2 percent were by persons under 21 years

> of age. A switchblade knife is frequently part of the perpetrator's equipment in this type of crime. In New York City alone in 1956, there was an increase of 92.1 percent of those under 16 arrested for the possession of dangerous weapons, one of the most common of which is the switchblade knife.

As a result of this study, a bill (S. 2558) to prohibit the manufacture for, or distribution in, interstate commerce of switchblade knives was introduced by Senator Kefauver and referred to your committee. The present measure, which was passed by the House of Representatives on June 27, 1958, is similar to the Senate bill but, unlike the latter, is not aimed specifically at sales to juveniles.

Hearings on the bill were held by your committee on July 23, 1958, with witnesses representing New York State groups concerned with juvenile delinquency and law enforcement problems. A representative of a New York cutlery firm also appeared in support of the bill. Testimony received indicated that 12 States, including New York, have already enacted legislation to prohibit the manufacture, sale, or possession of switchblade and similar knives. It was stressed, however, that so long as the interstate channels of distribution remain open the problem of enforcing the State laws will be extremely difficult.

In supporting enactment of this measure, however, your committee considers that the purpose to be achieved goes beyond merely aiding States in local law enforcement. The switchblade knife is, by design and use, almost exclusively the weapon of the thug and the delinquent. Such knives are not particularly adapted to the requirements of the hunter or fisherman, and sportsmen generally do not employ them. It was testified that, practically speaking, there is no legitimate use for the switchblade to which a conventional sheath or jackknife is not better suited. This being the base, your committee believes that it is in the national interest that these articles be banned from interstate commerce.

IV. REPORTS OF GOVERNMENT AGENCIES

The reports on this legislation by Government agencies to the House committee are set forth in the appendix of this report.

The Department of Justice did not recommend enactment of this legislation. The Secretary of Commerce recommended against enactment of this legislation. The Bureau of the Budget shared the views of the Department of Justice and the Department of Commerce but had no objection to the enactment of those provisions of the bill dealing with the mailability of such knives. The Secretary of the Army, speaking for the Department of Defense, had no objection to the enactment of the legislation with the included amendment to exempt from the prohibitions contained therein the manufacture, sale, possession, transportation, distribution, or introduction into interstate commerce of switchblade knives by the Armed Forces or members and employees thereof, acting on the performance of their duties. The Post Office Department recommended enactment of the legislation with respect to the mailability of switchblade knives if an appropriate amendment were made giving the Postmaster General the right to request an explanation from the sender, in writing, that the law is being complied with. Such an amendment was adopted by the House committee and is included in the present measure.

The appendix also includes copies of reports to your committee from the Interstate Commerce Commission and the Civil Aeronautics Board.

In compliance with subsection 4 of rule XXIX of the Standing Rules of the Senate, changes in existing law made by the bill are shown as follows (new matter is printed in italic; and existing law in which no change is proposed is shown in roman):

SECTION 1716 OF TITLE 18 OF THE UNITED STATES CODE

§ 1716. Injurious articles as nonmailable.

All kinds of poison, and all articles and compositions containing poison, and all poisonous animals, insects, reptiles, and all explosives, inflammable materials, infernal machines, and mechanical, chemical, or other devices or compositions which may ignite or explode, and all disease germs or scabs, and all other natural or artificial articles, compositions, or material which may kill or injure another, or injure the mails or other property, whether or not sealed as first-class matter, are nonmailable matter and shall not be conveyed in the mails or delivered from any post office or station thereof, nor by any letter carrier.

The Postmaster General may permit the transmission in the mails, under such rules and regulations as he shall prescribe as to preparation and packing, of any such articles which are not outwardly or of their own force dangerous or injurious to life, health, or property.

The Postmaster General is authorized and directed to permit the transmission in the mails, under regulations to be prescribed by him, of live scorpions which are to be used for purposes of medical research or for the manufacture of antivenin. Such regulations shall include such provisions with respect to the packaging of such live scorpions for transmission in the mails as the Postmaster General deems necessary or advisable for the protection of Post Office Department personnel and of the public generally and for ease of handling by such personnel and by any individual connected with such research or manufacture. Nothing contained in this paragraph shall be construed to authorize the transmission in the mails of live scorpions by means of aircraft engaged in the carriage of passengers for compensation or hire.

The transmission in the mails of poisonous drugs and medicines may be limited by the Postmaster General to shipments of such articles from the manufacturer thereof or dealer therein to licensed physicians, surgeons, dentists, pharmacists, druggists, cosmetologists, barbers, and veterinarians, under such rules and regulations as he shall prescribe.

The transmission in the mails of poisons for scientific use, and which are not outwardly dangerous or of their own force dangerous or injurious to life, health, or property, may be limited by the Postmaster General to shipments of such articles between the manufacturers thereof, dealers therein, bona fide research or experimental scientific laboratories, and such other persons who are employees of the Federal, a State, or local government, whose official duties are comprised, in whole or in part, of the use of such poisons, and who are designated by the head of the agency in which they are employed to receive or

send such articles, under such rules and regulations as the Postmaster General shall prescribe.

All spirituous, vinous, malted, fermented, or other intoxicating liquours of any kind are nonmailable and shall not be deposited in or carried through the mails.

All knives having a blade which opens automatically (1) by hand pressure applied to a button or other device in the handle of the knife, or (2) by operation of inertia, gravity, or both, are nonmailable and shall not be deposited in or carried by the mails or delivered by any postmaster, letter carrier, or other person in the postal service. Such knives may be conveyed in the mails, under such regulations as the Postmaster General shall prescribe—

(1) to civilian or Armed Forces supply or procurement officers and employees of the Federal Government ordering, procuring, or purchasing such knives in connection with the activities of the Federal Government;

(2) to supply or procurement officers of the National Guard, the Air National Guard, or militia of a State, Territory, or the District of Columbia ordering, procuring, or purchasing such knives in connection with the activities of such organization;

(3) to supply or procurement officers or employees of the municipal government of the District of Columbia or of the government of any State or Territory, or any county, city, or other political subdivision of a State or Territory, ordering, procuring, or purchasing such knives in connection with the activities of such government; and

(4) to manufacturers of such knives or bona fide dealers therein in connection with any shipment made pursuant to an order from any person designated in paragraphs (1), (2), and (3).

The Postmaster General may require, as a condition of conveying any such knife in the mails, that any persons proposing to mail such knife explain in writing to the satisfaction of the Postmaster General that the mailing of such knife will not be in violation of this section.

Whoever knowingly deposits for mailing or delivery, or knowingly causes to be delivered by mail, according to the direction thereon, or at any place at which it is directed to be delivered by the person to whom it is addressed, anything declared nonmailable by this section, unless in accordance with the rules and regulations authorized to be prescribed by the Postmaster General, shall be fined not more than $1,000 or imprisoned not more than one year, or both.

Whoever knowingly deposits for mailing or delivery, or knowingly causes to be delivered by mail, according to the direction thereon or at any place to which it is directed to be delivered by the person to whom it is addressed, anything declared nonmailable by this section, whether or not transmitted in accordance with the rules and regulations authorized to be prescribed by the Postmaster General, with intent to kill or injure another, or injure the mails or other property, shall be fined not more than $10,000 or imprisoned not more than twenty years, or both.

Whoever is convicted of any crime prohibited by this section, which has resulted in the death of any person, shall be subject also to the death penalty or to imprisonment for life, if the jury shall in its discretion so direct, or, in the case of a plea of gulity, or a plea of not guilty where the defendant has waived a trial by jury, if the court in its discretion, shall so order.

APPENDIX

UNITED STATES DEPARTMENT OF JUSTICE,
OFFICE OF THE DEPUTY ATTORNEY GENERAL,
Washington, D. C., May 20, 1957.

Hon. OREN HARRIS,
Chairman, Committee on Interstate and Foreign Commerce,
House of Representatives, Washington, D. C.

DEAR MR. CHAIRMAN: This is in response to your request for the views of the Department of Justice concerning the bill (H. R. 7258) to prohibit the introduction, or manufacture for introduction, into interstate commerce of switchblade knives, and for other purposes.

On April 12, 1957, the Department of Justice reported to the committee on two similar bills, H. R. 2849 and H. R. 4013. The views expressed in that report, copies of which are enclosed, are equally applicable to the bill now under consideration.

The Bureau of the Budget has advised that there is no objection to the submission of this report.

Sincerely,

WILLIAM P. ROGERS,
Deputy Attorney General.

APRIL 12, 1957.

Hon. OREN HARRIS,
Chairman, Committee on Interstate and Foreign Commerce,
House of Representatives, Washington, D. C.

DEAR MR. CHAIRMAN: This is in response to your request for the views of the Department of Justice relative to the bill (H. R. 2849 and H. R. 4013) to prohibit the introduction, or manufacture for introduction, into interstate commerce of switchblade knives, and for other purposes.

The bills would prohibit the introduction, or manufacture for introduction, into interstate commerce, or the transportation or distribution in interstate commerce, of switchblade knives. They would also prohibit the manufacture, sale, or possession of switchblade knives within Indian country as defined in section 1151 of title 18 of the United States Code, or within the special maritime and territorial jurisdiction of the United States as defined in section 7 of title 18. Violators would be subject to a maximum fine of $2,000 and/or imprisonment for not more than 5 years. Section 4 of H. R. 2849 would exempt from its application common carriers, contract carriers, and freight forwarders with respect to any switchblade knife shipped, transported, or delivered for shipment in interstate commerce in the ordinary course of business. Section 4 of H. R. 4013 would provide a similar exemption, plus two others. It would exempt the manufacture, sale, transportation, distribution, possession, or introduction of switchblade knives into interstate commerce pursuant

to contract with the Armed Forces. Also, it would exempt the possession of switchblade knives by members of the Armed Forces to whom such knives were issued by the Federal Government.

The Department of Justice is unable to recommend enactment of this legislation.

The committee may wish to consider whether the problem to which this legislation is addressed is one properly within the police powers of the various States. As you know, Federal law now prohibits the interstate transportation of certain inherently dangerous articles such as dynamite and nitroglycerin on carriers also transporting passengers. The instant measures would extend the doctrine upon which such prohibitions are based by prohibiting the transportation of a single item which is not inherently dangerous but requires the introduction of a wrongful human element to make it so.

Switchblade knives in the hands of criminals are, of course, potentially dangerous weapons. However, since they serve useful and even essential, purposes in the hands of persons such as sportsmen, shipping clerks, and others engaged in lawful pursuits, the committee may deem it preferable that they be regulated at the State rather than the Federal level.

The Bureau of the Budget has advised that there is no objection to the submission of this report.

Sincerely,

WILLIAM P. ROGERS,
Deputy Attorney General.

THE SECRETARY OF COMMERCE,
Washington, D. C., June 25, 1957.

Hon. OREN HARRIS,
Chairman, Committee on Interstate and Foreign Commerce,
House of Representatives, Washington, D. C.

DEAR MR. CHAIRMAN: This letter is in reply to your request dated May 8, 1957, for the views of this Department with respect to H. R. 7258, a bill to prohibit the introduction, or manufacture for introduction, into interstate commerce of switchblade knives, and for other purposes.

H. R. 7258 would prohibit and prescribe penalities for the manufacture, sale, or possession of switchblade knives, and their mailing or their introduction into interstate commerce. Exemptions from these prohibitions would include supply or procurement officers and employees of the Federal Government, of the municipal government of the District of Columbia, of the government of any State, Territory, county, city, or other subdivision of a State or Territory; supply and procurement officers (but not the members, it appears) of the National Guard, the militia of a State, Territory, or the District of Columbia, when any of these persons are acting in connection with the activities of such governments and organizations. The Department of Commerce does not recommend enactment of H. R. 7258.

While this proposed legislation recognizes that there are legitimate uses that have need for switchblade knives, the exemptions would appear to assume that the most significant of those uses lie in Government activities. To us, this ignores the needs of those who derive and augment their livelihood from the "outdoor" pursuits of hunting,

fishing, trapping, and of the country's sportsmen, and many others. In our opinion, there are sufficient of these that their needs must be considered.

Again, we feel that the problem of enforcement posed by the many exemptions would be huge under the proposed legislation.

For these reasons, the Department of Commerce feels it cannot support enactment of H. R. 7258.

We have been advised by the Bureau of the Budget that there would be no objection to the submission of this report to your committee.

Sincerely yours,

SINCLAIR WEEKS,
Secretary of Commerce.

EXECUTIVE OFFICE OF THE PRESIDENT,
BUREAU OF THE BUDGET,
Washington, D. C., June 13, 1957.

Hon. OREN HARRIS,
Chairman, Committee on Interstate and Foreign Commerce,
House of Representatives, House Office Building,
Washington, D. C.

MY DEAR MR. CHAIRMAN: This is in reply to your letter of May 8, 1957, requesting the views of the Bureau of the Budget on H. R. 7258, a bill to prohibit the introduction, or manufacture for introduction, into interstate commerce of switchblade knives, and for other purposes.

On April 1, 1957, in reporting to your committee on two similar bills, H. R. 2849 and H. R. 4013, the Bureau of the Budget pointed out that the Departments of Commerce and Justice had raised serious questions as to whether this problem is more properly a subject for the police powers of the States.

The Bureau of the Budget believes that these questions are equally applicable to H. R. 7258 and has no further comment to offer at this time.

Sincerely yours,

PERCY RAPPAPORT,
Assistant Director.

DEPARTMENT OF THE ARMY,
Washington, D. C., July 16, 1957.

Hon. OREN HARRIS,
Chairman, Committee on Interstate and Foreign Commerce,
House of Representatives, Washington, D. C.

DEAR MR. CHAIRMAN: Reference is made to your request for the views of the Department of Defense with respect to H. R. 7258, 85th Congress, a bill to prohibit the introduction, or manufacture for introduction, into interstate commerce of switchblade knives, and for other purposes. The Secretary of Defense has delegated to the Department of the Army the responsibility for expressing the views of the Department of Defense thereon.

The purpose of the bill is generally as stated in its title.

The Department of the Army on behalf of the Department of Defense would interpose no objection to enactment of the bill, pro-

vided it is amended to exempt from the prohibitions contained therein the manufacture, sale, possession, transportation or distribution of switchblade knives by the Armed Forces or members and employees thereof acting in the performance of their duties, thereby expanding the exemption pertaining to the ordering, procuring, or purchasing of such weapons by those persons which now appears in section 4 (2) of the bill. This amendment could be accomplished by amending section 4 (2) of the bill to read as follows: "(2) to the Armed Forces or any member or employee thereof acting in the performance of his duty."

It is noted also that section 4 (5) does not extend the exemption to manufacturers of or bona fide dealers in switchblade knives in connection with shipments to persons designated in section 4 (4).

Subject to the foregoing, the Department of the Army on behalf of the Department of Defense has no objection to enactment of H. R. 7258, 85th Congress, which is similar to H. R. 4013, 85th Congress, on which this Department submitted a similar report to your committee on April 12, 1957.

The enactment of this proposal would result in no additional cost to the Department of Defense.

This report has been coordinated within the Department of Defense in accordance with procedures prescribed by the Secretary of Defense.

The Bureau of the Budget advises that there is no objection to the submission of this report.

Sincerely yours,

WILBER M. BRUCKER,
Secretary of the Army.

POST OFFICE DEPARTMENT,
OFFICE OF THE GENERAL COUNSEL,
Washington, D. C., April 16, 1958.

Hon. OREN HARRIS,
Chairman, Committee on Interstate and Foreign Commerce,
House of Representatives, Washington, D. C.

DEAR MR. CHAIRMAN: Reference is made to your request for a report on H. R. 7258, H. R. 9820, and H. R. 10618, similar bills to prohibit the introduction, or manufacture for introduction, into interstate commerce of switch-blade knives, and for other purposes.

The attention of this Department has been directed to advertisements in newspapers and magazines with respect to knives, which, according to the advertisements may be ordered for transmission through the mails collect-on-delivery. Obviously, weapons advertised in this manner can be purchased by anyone. The so-called Army surplus stores, hardware and other stores, carry similar weapons. The question of how to prevent their reaching the wrong hands is more than a Federal problem and difficult of solution. Many States have laws prohibiting concealed carrying of knives with blades over designated lengths.

Although the mailing of firearms is controlled by statute (18 U. S. C. 1715), the mailing of hunting knives, switch-blade knives, and other similar weapons is not so controlled. Any one of the subject bills would do much to correct this situation. However, in order to eliminate controversy as to the procedure to be followed in the en-

forcement of this proposed law, it is believed that section 5 of the bill should be supplemented by the addition of the following paragraph:

"The mailability of any such knife may be determined by the Postmaster General by inspection thereof and upon the failure or refusal of the sender to explain satisfactorily to the Postmaster General, in writing, why the postal regulations prescribed in accordance with this act were not complied with."

This Department recommends enactment of the legislation contained in section 5 of the measures, amended as suggested.

In advising this Department with respect to this report the Bureau of the Budget called attention to the fact that it had cleared the reports of the Departments of Commerce and Justice which objected to those portions of the subject bills which would prohibit the introduction of switchblade knives into interstate commerce.

The Department of Justice has raised the question as to whether the amendment suggested by this Department would be broad enough to authorize the inspection of first-class mails without a search warrant. It is the opinion of this Department that the language would not authorize such inspection, nor was such procedure intended.

Sincerely yours,

HERBERT B. WARBURTON,
Acting General Counsel.

THE SECRETARY OF COMMERCE,
Washington, D. C., April 21, 1958.

Hon. OREN HARRIS,
Chairman, Committee on Interstate and Foreign Commerce, House of Representatives, Washington, D. C.

DEAR MR. CHAIRMAN: This letter is in reply to your request dated January 9, 1958, for the views of this Department with respect to H. R. 9820, and your request of February 13, 1958, with respect to H. R. 10618, identical bills to prohibit the introduction, or manufacture for introduction, into interstate commerce of switchblade knives, and for other purposes.

These bills differ only slightly from H. R. 7528, which was introduced for the same general purposes during the 1st session of the 85th Congress. In the present bills the definition includes knives which open automatically "by operation of inertia, gravity, or both." Also, the present bills prescribe penalties for the manufacture, sale, or processing of switchblade knives, whereas the earlier bill dealt with manufacture, sale, or possession.

The general intent of these legislative proposals appears to be to improve crime prevention by control of the use of the switchblade knife as a weapon of assault. This approach gives rise to certain objections. One is that, at best, it is an indirect approach which addresses itself to only one of many implements usable by an assailant. This casts doubt upon the resulting effectiveness in the reduction of crime in relation to its enforcement problems. Another objection is that it could lead to the elimination of the legitimate supply of switchblade knives in this country. This would ignore the legitimate needs and uses for these knives on the part of those who derive and augment their livelihood from "outdoor" pursuits, such as hunting, fishing, trapping, etc., as well as those of the country's sportsmen, and many others. We feel that these objections are valid.

In thus expressing our views we do not wish to be construed as taking a light view regarding the widespread use of the switchblade knife as a dangerous and lethal weapon. In view of the apparent relation between the switchblade knife and juvenile delinquency, we would strongly support the enactment and vigorous enforcement of appropriate legislation prohibiting sale of switchblade knives to, and their possession by, juveniles, to the extent such sale and possession can be found to be subject to Federal jurisdiction.

Not being convinced that H. R. 9820 and H. R. 10618 would yield desirable results outweighing their undesirable ones, this Department recommends against enactment of these bills.

We have been advised by the Bureau of the Budget that there would be no objection to the submission of this report to your committee.

Sincerely yours,

SINCLAIR WEEKS,
Secretary of Commerce.

UNITED STATES DEPARTMENT OF JUSTICE,
OFFICE OF THE DEPUTY ATTORNEY GENERAL,
Washington, D. C., March 14, 1958.

Hon. OREN HARRIS,
Chairman, Committee on Interstate and Foreign Commerce,
House of Representatives, Washington, D. C.

DEAR MR. CHAIRMAN: This is in response to your request for the views of the Department of Justice relative to the identical bills (H. R. 9820 and H. R. 10618) to prohibit the introduction, or manufacture for introduction, into interstate commerce of switchblade knives, and for other purposes.

Except as to section 5 and except for two other minor differences, these bills are identical with H. R. 2849 and H. R. 4013 on which the Department reported to the committee on April 12, 1957. The views expressed in that report, copies of which are enclosed, are equally applicable to the bills under consideration.

As for section 5 of the instant bills, it is noted that section 1716 of title 18, United States Code, which it would amend, deals with the mailability of articles intrinsically dangerous. Section 1715, on the other hand, deals with the mailability of firearms, items more analogous to switchblade knives in that both require the introduction of a wrongful element to make them dangerous. Therefore, if the committee is favorably disposed to recommend the amendment of title 18 with respect to the mailability of switchblade knives, section 1715 would seem to be the more appropriate section for such amendment.

The Bureau of the Budget has advised that there is no objection to the submission of this report.

Sincerely yours,

LAWRENCE E. WALSH,
Deputy Attorney General.

EXECUTIVE OFFICE OF THE PRESIDENT,
BUREAU OF THE BUDGET,
Washington, D. C., April 15, 1958.

Hon. OREN HARRIS,
Chairman, Committee on Interstate and Foreign Commerce, House of Representatives, House Office Building, Washington, D. C.

MY DEAR MR. CHAIRMAN: This will acknowledge your letters of January 9, 1958, and February 13, 1958, requesting the views of this Office with respect to H. R. 9820 and H. R. 10618, bills to prohibit the introduction, or manufacture for introduction, into interstate commerce of switchblade knives, and for other purposes.

The Bureau has previously reported to your committee in connection with H. R. 2849 and H. R. 4013 on April 1, 1957, and H. R. 7258 on June 13, 1957. On those occasions, we pointed out that the Departments of Commerce and Justice had raised serious questions as to whether the problem is not more properly a subject for the police powers of the various States. These questions appear to be equally applicable to those sections of the subject bills controlling the introduction of switchblade knives in interstate commerce.

With respect to section 5 of the bills which would make such knives nonmailable, the Postmaster General, in the reports which he is making to your committee, recommends enactment subject to certain procedural amendments set forth in his report.

While we have doubts as to the effectiveness of such limitation in controlling the wrongful use of switchblade knives, this Bureau would have no objection to the enactment of those provisions of the bills dealing with mailability of switchblade knives if amended as suggested by the Postmaster General.

Sincerely yours,

PHILLIP S. HUGHES,
Acting Assistant Director for Legislative Reference.

DEPARTMENT OF THE ARMY,
Washington, D. C., April 18, 1958.

Hon. OREN HARRIS,
Chairman, Committee on Interstate and Foreign Commerce, House of Representatives, Washington, D. C.

DEAR MR. CHAIRMAN: Reference is made to your request for the views of the Department of Defense with respect to H. R. 9820, 85th Congress, a bill to prohibit the introduction, or manufacture for introduction, into interstate commerce of switchblade knives, and for other purposes. The Secretary of Defense has delegated to the Department of the Army the responsibility for expressing the views of the Department of Defense thereon.

The purpose of the bill is generally as stated in its title.

The Department of the Army, on behalf of the Department of Defense, would interpose no objection to the above-mentioned bill provided it is amended to exempt Armed Forces operations from the

prohibitions contained therein. This could be accomplished by amending section 4 (b) of the bill to read as follows:

"(b) The manufacture, sale, transportation, distribution, possession or introduction into interstate commerce of switchblade knives—

"(1) by the Armed Forces or any member or employee thereof acting in the performance of his duty; or

"(2) pursuant to contract with the Armed Forces."

It is also noted that there appears to be a technical error on page 2 of the bill. In line 12 of that page, the word "processes" should be "possesses." (See, in this connection, sec. 3 of H. R. 4013 and H. R. 7258, 85th Cong., in which the word "possesses" is used.)

Subject to the foregoing comments, the Department of the Army on behalf of the Department of Defense has no objection to enactment of H. R. 9820, which is similar to H. R. 4013 and H. R. 7258, 85th Congress, and on which this Department submitted similar reports to your committee on April 12, 1957, and July 16, 1957, respectively.

The enactment of this proposal would result in no additional cost to the Department of Defense.

This report has been coordinated within the Department of Defense in accordance with procedures prescribed by the Secretary of Defense.

The Bureau of the Budget advises that there is no objection to the submission of this report.

Sincerely yours,

WILBER M. BRUCKER,
Secretary of the Army.

DEPARTMENT OF THE ARMY,
Washington, D. C., April 18, 1958.

Hon. OREN HARRIS,
Chairman, Committee on Interstate and Foreign Commerce,
House of Representatives, Washington, D. C.

DEAR MR. CHAIRMAN: Reference is made to your request for the views of the Department of Defense with respect to H. R. 10618, 85th Congress, a bill to prohibit the introduction, or manufacture for introduction, into interstate commerce of switchblade knives, and for other purposes. The Secretary of Defense has delegated to the Department of the Army the responsibility for expressing the views of the Department of Defense thereon.

The purpose of the bill is generally as stated in its title.

The Department of the Army, on behalf of the Department of Defense, would interpose no objection to the above mentioned bill provided it is amended to exempt Armed Forces operations from the prohibitions contained therein. This could be accomplished by amending section 4 (b) of the bill to read as follows:

"(b) The manufacture, sale, transportation, distribution, possession or introduction into interstate commerce of switchblade knives—

"(1) by the Armed Forces or any member or employee thereof acting in the performance of his duty; or

"(2) pursuant to contract with the Armed Forces."

It is also noted that there appears to be a technical error on page 2 of the bill. In line 12 of that page, the word "processes" should be "possesses." (See, in this connection, sec. 3 of H. R. 4013 and H. R. 7258, 85th Cong., in which the word "possesses" is used.)

Subject to the foregoing comments, the Department of the Army on behalf of the Department of Defense has no objection to enactment of H. R. 10618, which is similar to H. R. 4013 and H. R. 7258, 85th Congress, and on which this Department submitted similar reports to your committee on April 12, 1957, and July 16, 1957, respectively.

The enactment of this proposal would result in no additional cost to the Department of Defense.

This report has been coordinated within the Department of Defense in accordance with procedures prescribed by the Secretary of Defense.

The Bureau of the Budget advises that there is no objection to the submission of this report.

Sincerely yours,

WILBER M. BRUCKER,
Secretary of the Army.

INTERSTATE COMMERCE COMMISSION,
July 23, 1958.

Hon. WARREN G. MAGNUSON,
Chairman, Committee on Interstate and Foreign Commerce,
United States Senate, Washington, D. C.

DEAR CHAIRMAN MAGNUSON: Your letter of July 21, 1958, addressed to the Chairman of the Commission and requesting comments on an act, H. R. 12850, passed by the House of Representatives on June 26, 1958, to prohibit the introduction, or manufacture for introduction, into interstate commerce of switchblade knives, and for other purposes, has been referred to our Committee on Legislation. After consideration by that Committee, I am authorized to submit the following comments in its behalf:

The broad objective of this proposed legislation, which would prohibit the interstate shipment and the use of the mails for the conveyance of switchblade knives, and the manufacture, use, or sale of switchblade knives within Indian country or the special maritime and territorial jurisdiction of the United States, is not related to the jurisdiction or functions of the Interstate Commerce Commission, and for that reason we are not in a position to express an opinion with respect to its merits.

It is noted, however, that the measure properly provides that sections 2 and 3 thereof shall not apply to "any common carrier or contract carrier, with respect to any switchblade knife shipped, transported, or delivered for shipment in interstate commerce in the ordinary course of business;".

Respectfully submitted.

HOWARD FREAS,
Chairman.

HOWARD FREAS,
ANTHONY ARPAIA,
ROBERT W. MINOR,
Committee on Legislation.

CIVIL AERONAUTICS BOARD,
Washington, D. C.

Hon. WARREN G. MAGNUSON,
Chairman, Committee on Interstate and Foreign Commerce,
United States Senate, Washington, D. C.

DEAR SENATOR MAGNUSON: This is in reply to your letter of July 21, 1958, asking the Board for a report on H. R. 12850, a bill to prohibit the introduction, or manufacture for introduction, into interstate commerce of switchblade knives, and for other purposes. In your letter you point out that there is pending before the committee a similar bill, S. 2558, on which the Board has submitted its report. You request that the Board submit its report on H. R. 12850 at the earliest possible date.

As was stated in the Board's report on S. 2558, the proposed legislation does not come within the jurisdiction of the Board. Accordingly, the Board expresses no opinion on this matter and has no recommendation to make in regard to either S. 2558 or H. R. 12850.

Sincerely yours,

JAMES R. DURFEE, *Chairman.*

O

EXHIBIT S

Criminal Use of Switchblades: Will the Recent Trend Towards Legalization Lead to Bloodshed?

PAUL A. CLARK[†]

I. INTRODUCTION

In the 1950s, there was a widespread perception that switchblade knives were the tool of thugs and juvenile delinquents. In the late 1950s and early 1960s, switchblades were banned, or severely restricted, in almost every state.[1] New York, for example, banned switchblades in 1954, but allowed exceptions for those who could show they were being used for professional or sporting purposes.[2] Today, possession of a switchblade is a crime in just twenty states.[3] In a few other states, there are such severe restrictions on switchblades so as to be effectively banned. For example, Arkansas and Oklahoma have banned carrying any switchblade on or about the person, whether concealed or not.[4] In most other states, switchblades are illegal to buy, sell, or transfer and are considered deadly weapons. They are illegal to carry concealed, and illegal for felons to possess.[5] In

[†] J.D. University of Chicago, 2005; Ph.D. The Catholic University of America, 1995. The author has clerked for the Hon. Robert Eastaugh, Alaska Supreme Court, and the Hon. Consuelo Callahan, Ninth Circuit Court of Appeals. He currently practices law in New Jersey.

[1] The only states that never placed significant restrictions on switchblades are Alabama, Georgia, Kentucky, Idaho, Iowa, North Carolina, South Carolina, South Dakota, Utah and West Virginia, although, even in these states, they were usually illegal to carry concealed. States that banned switchblades in the 1950s include: California, 1957 (People v. Bass, 225 Cal. App. 2d 777, 780 (1963) (although blades less than two inches are legal in California)); New York, 1954 (*see infra*, Note 2); Pennsylvania, 1956 (Sale of Switch Blades, 15 Pa. D. & C. 2d 405 (1958)); Texas, 1957 (Curson v. State, 313 S.W.2d 538, 540 (Tex. App. 1958)); Virginia, 1955 (Charles Woltz, Criminal Law, VA. L. R. 42:7 (1956)); Wisconsin, 1959 (Wis. Stat. 941.24); Michigan, 1961 (People v. Crow, 13 Mich. App. 594 (1968)); and Illinois, 1967 (People v. Sullivan, 46 Ill.2d 399 (1970)).

[2] Act of Mar. 26, 1954, ch. 268, 1954 N.Y. Laws; New York Penal Law 265.20(6) (West 2013). This was apparently a concession to sportsmen who opposed the ban. *See infra* Sec. III.

[3] In addition to the states listed in note 1, switchblades are currently banned in Colorado (COL. REV. STAT. § 18-12-102), Connecticut (illegal over 1.5 inches (CONN. GEN. STAT. § 53-206)), Hawaii (HAW. REV. STAT. § 134-51), Kansas (KAN. STAT. ANN. § 21-4201), Louisiana (LA. REV. STAT. § 14:95), Maine (ME. REV. STAT. § 43-1055), Massachusetts (illegal over 1.5 inches (MASS. GEN. LAW Ch. 269 § 10)), Minnesota (MINN. STAT. § 609.02 (6)), Montana (MONT. CODE ANN. § 45-8-331), Nevada (NEV. STAT. § 202.355), New Jersey (N.J. REV. STAT. § 2C:39-3e), New Mexico (N.M. STAT. ANN. 30-1-12), and Washington (WASH. REV. CODE § 9.41.250). There are narrow exceptions in some of these states. For example, in New York, it is an affirmative defense that a knife was possessed while physically engaged in hunting or fishing. New York Penal Law 265.20(6) (West 2013).

[4] ARK. CODE ANN. § 5-73-120 (2005); OKLA. STAT. ANN. §21-1272 (West 2002) ("It shall be unlawful for any person to carry upon or about his or her person . . . any . . . switchblade knife . . . whether such weapon be concealed or unconcealed.").

[5] *See, e.g.*, OHIO REV. CODE ANN. §§ 2923.13, 2923.20(1), (3) (LexisNexis 2010); *see also, e.g.*, MD. CODE ANN., § 27-339 (LexisNexis 2010); *see also, e.g.*, MD. CODE ANN., CRIM. LAW § 4-101,

KnifeRights MSJ App.000568

1958, Congress enacted the federal Anti-Switchblade Act, which banned interstate sale of switchblades, and outlawed them in federal territories or on federal waters. Because few states had domestic switchblade factories at that time, the federal act made it illegal to purchase switchblades in most states.

In recent years, however, several states and the federal government have liberalized these restrictions. Oregon legalized switchblades in 1984, Florida in 2003, New Hampshire in 2010, and Missouri in 2012. In 2010, Arizona legalized the carrying of deadly weapons, including switchblades, which had been legal to own but not to carry.[6] In 2010, Georgia repealed its law against carrying concealed knives, and now any knife with a blade of five inches or less (including a switchblade) may be legally carried.[7] In 2013, five states—Alaska, Indiana, Kansas, Tennessee, and Texas—repealed laws banning switchblades.[8] Moreover, in 2009, the United States Congress amended the federal Anti-Switchblade Act to clarify that pocketknives which could be opened with one hand are not switchblades.[9]

Critics of switchblade bans have three basic criticisms. First, they argue that such laws, even assuming they made sense once, are outdated and no longer serve any useful purpose. As one wag said, "I think that the people of New Hampshire can safely lower their guard now that the youngest members of the Sharks and the Jets are in their 80s."[10] As one story on the Indiana repeal explained:

> "It was an obsolete law," said state Sen. Jim Tomes, a Republican from Posey County who supported the change. His argument: There is very little difference between the illegal spring-loaded switchblade of the past and the one-handed, spring-assisted handheld knives that are legally on

---

105 (LexisNexis 2012); DEL. CODE ANN., §11- 222 (2007). Delaware, like many states, also makes it a felony to carry a concealed switchblade. DEL. CODE ANN., § 11-1457(b)(1) (2007).

[6] Marc Lacey, *Pushing a Right to Bear Arms, The Sharp Kind*, N.Y. TIMES, Dec. 5, 2010, at 1 *available at* http://perma.cc/CP5D-Q72W.

[7] GA. CODE ANN. § 16-11-125.1 (West 2012). *See also* Ed Stone, *GA Bills: SB 308 The Common Sense Lawful Carry Act*, EXAMINER.COM, http://perma.cc/3UKG-JCPP (last visited Feb. 4, 2014).

[8] Maureen Hayden, *Indiana to Lift Decades-Old Ban on Switchblades*, NEWS AND TRIBUNE, Jun. 5, 2013. There appears to have been little opposition to these repeals even from law enforcement. One article quotes an Indiana sheriff as saying "Switchblades get sensationalized in movies a lot, but they are no more dangerous than any other knife." Elkhart, *Switchblades now Popping up as Ban in State Nears End*, ASSOCIATED PRESS, Jun. 16, 2013, 3:00AM, *available at* http://perma.cc/M9X3-Y496. *See also* Dion Lefler, *Bill Legalizing Switchblades Passes Senate*, THE WICHITA EAGLE, Apr. 3, 2013, http://perma.cc/UP8Q-84FA (noting the bill passed the Senate unanimously but was opposed by at least one house member).

[9] *See infra*, note 34.

[10] Evan F. Nappen, *Miracle in New Hampshire*, *KNIVES 2013*, 174, 174–75 *available at* http://perma.cc/Z6G-SSYD (last visited Feb. 10, 2014).

KnifeRights MSJ App.000569

the market and widely sold today.[11]

Second, opponents argue that many knife laws are so vague as to what is legal or illegal that innocent people commit crimes without knowing. For example, the Alaska statute passed in 2013 legalized switchblades and gravity knives for anyone sixteen or over.[12] Sponsors explained that the legislation was for "clarifying that hunting, fishing and utility knives which are easily opened with one hand do not qualify as a switchblade . . . [and] protect Alaskans who carry one of these knives from running afoul of local laws."[13] Third, opponents of the bans also argue that such laws are selectively enforced.[14]

Supporters of knife bans counter that knives are dangerous weapons and getting them off the street can only make society safer. As one critic states: "[T]hese knives are, I would say inherently dangerous, they have only one purpose. They are just deadly."[15] They also argue that possession of a switchblade indicates a propensity towards violence and lawlessness.[16] Another argument is that allowing citizens to carry concealed switchblades may result in criminals carrying more deadly weapons—setting off a kind of arms race between citizens and criminals.

The movement towards liberalizing knife laws appears to have been jumpstarted by the expansion of gun rights. In Georgia, for example, the concealed weapons law was "criticized for permitting the arrest of any Georgian carrying a concealed knife, even if that person has a Georgia firearms license and is carrying a firearm."[17] Knife advocates may have been encouraged by recent court cases which have held that the Second Amendment to the United States Constitution guarantees the right of private citizens to bear arms. Whether the Second Amendment protects knife ownership is an interesting question, but not one this Article will address.[18] What this Article hopes to accomplish is to analyze the historical record (with particular focus on Oregon and Florida, where

---

[11] Hayden, *supra* note 8.

[12] *See* AK HB33 *available at* http://perma.cc/HQ6T-QMWE.

[13] Will Gandergriff, *House Passes Knife Rights Act*, THE ALASKA HOUSE MAJORITY, http://perma.cc/F48W-T6G7 (last visited Mar. 5, 2014). *See generally* Statement of Rep. Mark Neuman (R) House Judiciary Committee Hearing, Feb. 27, 2013, 2:06:30–49PM *available at* http://perma.cc/UB5B-8K5V.

[14] Dan Tuohy, *Switchblade Knives Now Legal in New Hampshire*, N.H. UNION LEADER, May 20, 2010, at A1, A10, *available at* http://perma.cc/4ED2-N4KV.

[15] Hearing before the Committee on Interstate and Foreign Commerce on H.R. 12850 and S. 2558, 85th Cong. 2d session (1958), at 24.

[16] *Id.* at 22; *see also infra* Sec. IV.

[17] Stone, *supra* note 7.

[18] *See generally* David B. Kopel et al., *Knives and the Second Amendment*, 47 U. MICH. J.L. REFORM 167, 167–215 (2013). This appears to be one of the very few scholarly articles addressing knife laws. The article also argues that knife laws are often vague and lead to prosecution of innocent people.

KnifeRights MSJ App.000570

Case 4:23-cv-00547-O Document 20-3 Filed 10/06/23 Page 22 of 462 PageID 695

switchblades were legalized some time ago) to examine the potential dangers associated with ownership and prohibition of switchblades.[19]

There does not appear to have ever been any academic study of how frequently switchblades or pocketknives are used in crime. One article in the *British Medical Journal* estimated that at least half of all assaults with edged weapons in Britain involved ordinary kitchen knives.[20] While there have occasionally been articles in the popular press about switchblades, these are frequently misleading. For example, one oft-cited article in the *Wall Street Journal* in 2000 reported:

> While the U.S. crime rate is falling, the use of knives in murders is rising slightly as a percentage of overall killings. Federal Bureau of Investigation figures show that knives were used in 13.3% of the nation's 14,088 murders in 1998, the most recent year for which weapons statistics are complete, compared with 12.7% of 22,084 killings in 1994.[21]

This article was, at best, misleading. In fact, the use of knives in murders generally fell throughout the 1990s. From 1991 through 1997 the average rate of knife use in murder was 13.64%, and picking out one year when the rate was at its lowest gives a false impression that knife use in murder was on the rise.[22] Moreover, the article clearly implies that the availability of switchblades and similar knives may be responsible for this alleged rise in knife crime—but fails to provide any evidence of this.

Given the trend towards liberalizing switchblade laws in the United States, it is time for a more systematic examination of how legalization and criminalization may affect violent crime. The Uniform Crime Reports published each year by the FBI contain a fair amount of data on the use of edged weapons in crime, including a state-by-state breakdown. Hopefully, an examination of this data will help to determine whether switchblade

---

[19] Although the Internet seems full of discussion of switchblades and a number of popular publications discuss them, there has been almost no scholarly research on use of switchblades in crime, or even on the use of knives in crime generally. As the March 2006 FBI Law Enforcement Bulletin dealing with the issue in 2006 noted, "[a]lmost all the research on edged weapon assaults has come from Great Britain." *Id.* at 14.

[20] "Unfortunately, no data seem to have been collected to indicate how often kitchen knives are used in stabbings, but our own experience and that of police officers and pathologists we have spoken to indicates that they are used in at least half of all cases." Emma Hern, *Reducing Knife Crime*, 330 BRITISH MED. J. 1221, 1221 (2005). Such is the lack of hard statistics about the use of different types of knives in crime.

[21] *See* Robert Johnson, *Sales of Switchblades in U.S. Get a Boost From Internet*, W. ST. J., Mar. 7, 2000, *available at* http://perma.cc/J9T3-TVSL.

[22] *See infra* Table 1 showing the rate of knife-use in murder.

KnifeRights MSJ App.000571

Case 4:23-cv-00547-O Document 20-3 Filed 10/06/23 Page 23 of 462 PageID 696

legislation has had any effect on the use of knives in violent crime. Of course, given the large number of states to legalize switchblades in the last three years, in another few years we should have a fairly large amount of data to examine; in the meantime, we have data from a few states.

II. WHAT IS A "SWITCHBLADE"?

The problem of defining terms has plagued philosophers and legislators for millennia. There is a famous story that Plato once defined "human" as a "featherless biped," so Diogenese the Cynic plucked a chicken and carried it around mocking Plato by showing people "Plato's man."[23]

One may think that the difference between a legal pocketknife and an illegal switchblade is as obvious as the difference between a human and a chicken, but police, prosecutors, and courts have frequently had trouble differentiating. Traditionally, a "switchblade" is a knife that has a spring loaded blade that snaps open when a button is pressed; however, 15 U.S.C. § 1241(b) provides:

> The term "switchblade knife" means any knife having a blade which opens automatically—
> (1) by hand pressure applied to a button or other device in the handle of the knife, or
> (2) by operation of inertia, gravity, or both.[24]

Under the federal definition of switchblade, there is no mention of a spring. In fact, a blade which opens with a spring is not a "switchblade" as long as there is no button in the handle. In fact, there are a wide range of spring-assisted opening knives which open by pressing on the blade, not the handle.[25]

The word "automatically" suggests that the knife must have some sort of internal mechanism, but "automatically" is not defined in the statute, and subsection 2 includes knives that open automatically "by operation of inertia," which seems to be a contradiction.[26] For example, an opinion of the Pennsylvania Attorney General on the 1956 Pennsylvania statute banning knives that opened "automatically" opined that a knife whose

[23] JOSEPH CROPSEY, PLATO'S WORLD: MAN'S PLACE IN THE COSMOS 116 (1995).

[24] *See also* 19 C.F.R. § 12.95 (containing a slightly expanded definition including listing specific types of knives and as switchblades).

[25] Many web sites advertise these types of knives. *See, e.g.*, *Black Carbon Fiber Handle & Black Blade Assisted Opening Pocket Knife Milano Godfather Style*, http://perma.cc/TZ9G-VST2. This knife is virtually indistinguishable from a traditional switchblade, except it is legal under federal law (unless it can be opened by inertia).

[26] 19 C.F.R. § 12.95.

KnifeRights MSJ App.000572
KnifeRights MSJ App.000572

"blade, either by gravity or by motion given to it by the flip of the wrist, 'automatically' extends to an open position" is a switchblade.[27] In any event, the definition includes knives which can be opened "by inertia," that is, by a flick of the wrist. Most, if not all, pocketknives can be opened by inertia. An estimated 80% of pocketknives sold in the United States are designed to be opened one handed, usually by using the thumb to open the blade while the fingers of the same hand hold the handle.[28] Virtually all of these knives could be considered a switchblade.

Knives which open by inertia or gravity are also referred to as gravity knives. Many states classify switchblades and gravity knives as different types of knives. In New York, for example, the definition of gravity knife is almost the same as 15 U.S.C. § 1241(b)(2), while a switchblade is the same as section (b)(1).[29] For purposes of this paper, the term "switchblade" will be used in the federal definition to apply to both gravity knives and classic spring-loaded blades as switchblades. Different states may define switchblades differently, and some states do not provide any definition at all.[30]

To illustrate this ambiguity, consider the story of John Irizzary:

> On March 9, 2007, at approximately 11:55 a.m., New York City Police Department (NYPD) officer Brendan R. McCabe, a 16-year veteran of the force, was on foot patrol in uniform at the Broadway Junction subway station in Brooklyn, New York. He observed defendant walk past him in the station with an instrument jutting out of his right front pocket. Officer McCabe testified that he recognized the instrument to be a cutting tool in the form of a gravity knife. He stopped defendant and said, "You know you're not allowed to carry that knife." The defendant immediately informed the officer that he was employed at a U-Haul facility and that he used the

---

[27] Sale of Switch-blades, 15 Pa. D. & C. 2d 405 (1958).

[28] Chris Strohm, *Knife Fight*, CONGRESSDAILY, Jul. 17, 2009, *available at* http://perma.cc/A2AM-WUFV. A Wall Street Journal article noted that "the trend in the industry is to make exposing the blade quickly easier in manual folding knives." Johnson, *infra* note 118.

[29] The federal statute was actually modeled on the New York statute although there are some minor differences. New York, Penal Law § 265.00 (5) states: "Gravity knife means any knife which has a blade which is released from the handle or sheath thereof by the force of gravity or the application of centrifugal force which, when released, is locked in place by means of a button, spring, lever or other device." (Internal quotes omitted.)

[30] *See, e.g.*, State v. Weaver, 736 P.2d 781, 782 (Alaska 1987) (noting that "[n]either 'switchblade' nor 'gravity knife' is defined in the criminal law statutes" but judicially defining a gravity knife as "operating automatically or semi-automatically."). Some states also use Webster's Dictionary to define "switchblade." *See* McMillan v. Commonwealth, 686 S.E.2d 525, 528 (Va. App. 2009); Brock v. State, 424 S.W.2d 436 (Tex. App. 1968).

KnifeRights MSJ App.000573

Case 4:23-cv-00547-O Document 20-3 Filed 10/06/23 Page 25 of 462 PageID 698

> instrument for cutting sheet rock as directed by his employer . . . He had not altered the instrument in any way. The instrument was a Husky Sure-Grip Folding Knife ("Husky"), described on its packaging as a "Folding Lock-Back Utility Knife." The instrument is colored silver, about three and one half inches long when in its closed position, and about 6 inches in its open position, with a one inch cutting edge.[31]

It might seem obvious that a utility knife with a one-inch cutting blade designed for cutting sheet rock is not a switchblade, but that is far from obvious. In fact, as the Court went on to explain:

> Defendant's Husky is capable of being opened by an adept person with the use of sufficient centrifugal force. Officer McCabe demonstrated this after three strenuous attempts to open the Husky using one hand and centrifugal force.[32]

In other words, the knife could be snapped open with a flick of the wrist.

So Officer McCabe, the 16-year veteran of the force who arrested Mr. Irizzary, looks to have been on firm ground in his belief that the Husky, which could be opened by inertia, was an illegal weapon.[33] Irizarry's Husky clearly met the definition of an illegal knife under either New York or federal law as it was in 2007.

In 2009, however, the Department of Homeland Security proposed banning the importation of any folding knife that could be opened with one hand because they were being classified as illegal switchblades.[34] This proposal caused a public outcry, and prompted Congress to add an exception providing that penalties for possession of a switchblade under federal law will not apply to "a knife that contains a spring, detent, or other mechanism designed to create a bias toward closure of the blade and that requires exertion applied to the blade by hand, wrist, or arm to overcome the bias toward closure to assist in opening the knife."[35] Because one would not want a pocket knife flopping open in one's pocket, most pocket

[31] U.S. v. Irizarry, 509 F. Supp. 2d 198, 199–200 (2007) (internal references omitted). After Irizarry was arrested he was found to have a gun, but luckily for him he was prosecuted in federal court which held that the stop was unconstitutional.

[32] *Id.* at 204.

[33] *Id.* at 200.

[34] Shawn Zeller, *A Cutting Edge Debate Over Switchblades*, CQ ROLL CALL., Jun. 29, 2009, at 1503, *available at* http://perma.cc/T56X-QZQ6; *see also* David Alan Coia, *Is Your Utility Pocket Knife A Homeland Security Threat?*, HUMAN EVENTS, Jul. 14, 2009, 3:01AM, *available at* http://perma.cc/6MRF-7L9E.

[35] 15 U.S.C. § 1243 (1958).

KnifeRights MSJ App.000574

knives have some sort of mechanism designed to keep the knife closed. This 2009 amendment was designed to ensure that ordinary pocket knives were not illegal. While the intent of Congress seems clear, the statute is poorly drafted. When read literally, it does not apply to any knife that does not "require[] exertion applied to the blade by hand . . . to assist in opening the knife."[36] Thus, read literally, any knife that can be snapped open by inertia is still illegal.[37]

In fact, in many jurisdictions, people have been prosecuted for possession of what the owners reasonably regarded as ordinary pocketknives. In a recent California case, Gilbert R. was convicted in juvenile court of possession of a switchblade.[38] A police officer stopped and frisked Gilbert, finding a pocketknife on him.[39] The officer "discovered she could open it with a flick of her wrist."[40] Gilbert was arrested and ultimately convicted of illegal possession.[41]

The California Court of Appeal in 2012 overturned the conviction based on an exception in the statute virtually identical to the federal exception.[42] The Court explained:

> The legislative history for Senate Bill No. 274 reflects its purpose was to "narrow[]" existing statutory "language to only allow knives to fall under the exemption from the switchblade law if that one-handed opening knife contains a detent or other mechanism. Such mechanisms ensure there is a measure of resistance (no matter how slight) that prevents the knife from being easily opened with a flick of the wrist. Moreover, a detent or similar mechanism is prudent and a matter of public safety as it will ensure that a blade will not inadvertently come open. Although some one-handed opening knives can be opened with a strong flick of the wrist, so long as they contain a detent or similar mechanism that provides some resistance to

---

[36] *Id.*

[37] The California Court of Appeal interpreting a virtually identical state provision reasoned: "[F]or the amendment exemption to apply, the knife must be one that 'opens with one hand utilizing thumb pressure applied solely to the blade of the knife or a thumb stud attached to the blade' *and* has the detent or resistance mechanism. The knife in question was not of that type: It opened by merely a flick of the wrist, not with pressure on the blade or thumb stud." *In re* Angel R., 163 Cal. App. 4th 905, 912 (2008). This holding was recently called into question by *In re* Gilbert R., 211 Cal. App. 4th 514 (2012), which appears to have held that so long as the detent mechanism is functioning in the least degree the exception applies.

[38] In re *Gilbert R.*, 211 Cal. App. 4th at 516

[39] *Id.*

[40] *Id.*

[41] *Id.* at 517.

[42] *Id.* at 520.

KnifeRights MSJ App.000575

> opening the knife, then the exemption is triggered. These knives serve an important utility to many knife users, as well as firefighters, EMT personnel, hunters, fishermen, and others."[43]

The Court of Appeal's decision provided a further explanation of the purpose of this exception:

> Sam Martin of Plaza Cutlery at South Coast Plaza testified as a knife and cutlery expert called by the defense. He explained that while military or law enforcement personnel and others trained in the use of knives might be able to open the knife with relative ease by a flick of the wrist, lay users generally would not be able to do so, at least at first. But with practice, "[t]hose who have it in their hand a good number of hours a day would learn a dexterity that could indeed flip the blade like this open." Martin demonstrated that the knife did not easily open because it had a "positive detent, . . . a mechanism which holds the blade in the closed position and you have to provide enough resistance to overcome that for the blade to swing open." Martin held the knife upside down and shook it, but the blade did not descend despite the shaking. Martin explained the detent operated as "a positive retention device" to keep the blade closed. The detent feature was held in place by a "set screw," which had become "a little bit wobbly," reducing the detent pressure by approximately 15 percent according to Martin, but he explained it remained "well within" the manufacturer's parameters, "functioning in all [sic] fashion."[44]

This case reveals one of the potential problems with switchblade statutes: the statutes are frequently so convoluted that an ordinary person (not to mention the police officer, prosecuting attorney, and trial judge) could not tell the difference between a legal knife and an illegal knife. In fact, the California Court of Appeal decisions themselves are inconsistent, as prior to *Gilbert R.*, the Court has repeatedly interpreted the statute to prohibit any knife that could be opened with a flick of the wrist.[45]

---

[43] *Id. citing* ASSEMBLY COMM. ON PUBLIC SAFETY, ANALYSIS OF SENATE BILL 274, 2001 – 2002 Reg. Sess. 1–2 (Cal. 2001).

[44] *In re* Gilbert R., 211 Cal. App. 4th 514, 516−17 (2012).

[45] People v. Recinos, No. B206800, 2009 WL 2939688 (Cal. App. Sept. 15, 2009); In re *Angel R*., 163 Cal. App. 4th at 907.

KnifeRights MSJ App.000576

Most pocket knives are designed to be opened manually (usually by using the thumb of the hand holding the knife). As the knife expert in the Gilbert case explained, a spring can weaken over time, through use or corrosion, and knives that could not be flicked open when new may be able to be flicked open once they are broken in. In other words, virtually every pocketknife in existence is potentially a switchblade.[46] Thus the California Court of Appeal held that when a pocket knife is "accidentally damaged so that the resistance mechanism did not function," the knife becomes illegal.[47] Thus, a knife that was legal when purchased may at some point become an illegal switchblade.

Furthermore, some jurisdictions do not have the exception found in both federal and California law. In Ohio, for example, "gravity knives" are not defined by statute, but the Ohio Court of Appeals has held that any knife that can be opened with a flick of the wrist is a gravity knife.[48] In New York, any pocket knife that can be opened by a flick of the wrist and locks open is an illegal "gravity knife."[49] The State need only prove that the defendant knew she had a knife, and she need not be aware that it has the characteristics that make it an illegal gravity knife.[50] In New York City alone, there appear to be thousands of arrests each year for possession of a gravity knife.[51]

While New York courts have repeatedly upheld convictions for "gravity knives" that can be opened with centrifugal force, the federal

---

[46] In fact, nothing in the federal definition of switchblade states that the knife must be held by the handle. Even knives that cannot be flipped open by holding the handle can always be flipped open by holding the knife blade and using the inertia of the handle when the handle is heavier than the blade.

[47] In re *Angel R.*, 163 Cal. App. 4th at 908.

[48] State v. Cattledge, No. 10AP-105, 2010 WL 3972574, at *4, *6 (Ohio Ct. App. Oct. 12, 2010). The court also outlined several characteristics that aid in finding whether a folding knife is a deadly weapon:

> the following characteristics may, but not always, support a finding that a folding knife is a deadly weapon within the definition of R.C. 2923.11(A): (1) a blade that can easily be opened with one hand, such as a knife with a switch, a spring-loaded blade, or a gravity blade capable of instant one-handed operation; (2) a blade that locks into position and cannot close without triggering the lock; (3) a blade that is serrated; (4) a blade tip that is sharp; (5) an additional design element on the blade, such as a hole, that aids in unfolding the knife with one hand; (6) does not resemble an "ordinary" pocket knife.

Id.; *see also In re* Gochneaur, No. 2007–A–0089, 2008 WL 3126172, at *3 (Ohio Ct. App. Jul. 25, 2008) (holding that "knives opening easily with one hand may be considered (for obvious reasons), as being designed or adapted for use as weapons").

[49] *See* N.Y. PENAL LAW § 265.00 (McKinney 2013).

[50] *See, e.g.*, People v. Herbin, 86 A.D.3d 446, 447 (N.Y. 2011).

[51] In one case the arresting officer testified "he had been an officer for 4 1/2 years and had made approximately ten arrests of his own for possession of a gravity knife and participated in two dozen other arrests for the same crime." People v. Brannon, 16 N.Y.3d 596, 600 (2011). From the number of reported cases it appears that New York has more prosecutions for possession of switchblades and gravity knives than all other states combined.

KnifeRights MSJ App.000577

Case 4:23-cv-00547-O Document 20-3 Filed 10/06/23 Page 29 of 462 PageID 702

district court in New York examined the legislative history of the state and declared that "[t]he legislature's plan in making items such as gravity knives 'per se' weapons under New York law was to ban only those items that are manufactured as weapons, not to criminalize the carrying of utility cutting instruments which are widely and lawfully sold."[52] Thus the federal court held that possession of knives that can be opened with a flick of the wrist "was not a crime" in New York.[53] Senior Judge Weinstein pointed out that holding it a crime to possess an "instrument supplied by his employer for cutting and installing sheet rock" would effectively "transform thousands of honest mechanics into criminals, subject to arrest at the whim of any police officer."[54] Judge Weinstein was not exaggerating; he noted that "[i]n fiscal year 2006 Home Depot alone sold over 67,000 Huskies in the State of New York."[55]

Recorded cases across the country are full of examples of courts trying to figure out what is or is not an "ordinary" pocket knife and what is a switchblade. In California, for example, it is illegal to carry any concealed knife except for "the types of hunting and folding knives designed primarily for use in various outdoor recreational activities."[56] In a case from Alaska, the Court of Appeals stated that "the statutory definition of 'deadly weapon' is ambiguous" and therefore "[t]o resolve this ambiguity in the meaning of deadly weapon, we look to the legislative history of the statutes at issue."[57] Apparently, in Alaska, to know what is or is not a legal weapon to carry, the average citizen was expected to research legislative history. The New Jersey Supreme Court has gone so far as to hold: "In using general language, the legislature intended to allow juries and judges to define, through the use of their own community standards and through an evaluation of the relevant facts and circumstances, what constitutes manifestly inappropriate possession of an object in each individual case."[58] Both these cases would appear to run afoul of the Supreme Court's holding in *Bouie v. City of Columbia* that "a criminal statute must give fair warning of the conduct that it makes a crime."[59]

---

[52] U.S. v. Irizarry, 509 F. Supp. 2d 198, 209 (2007).

[53] *Id.*

[54] *Id.* at 199.

[55] *Id.* at 209.

[56] *In re* George W., 80 Cal. Rptr. 2d 868, 870 (Cal. Ct. App. 1998). *See also* ALASKA STAT. § 11.61.220 (West 2013); FLA. STAT. ANN. § 790.01(13) (West 2013); KAN. STAT. ANN. § 500-080 (West 2013); N.C. GEN. STAT. § 14-269(a) (West 2013).

[57] Liddicoat v. State, 268 P.3d 355, 360 (Alaska Ct. App. 2011) (holding that based on legislative history a steak knife could be regarded as a deadly weapon).

[58] State v. Kelly, 118 N.J. 370, 372 (1990) (upholding conviction for possession of carpet cutter when woman armed herself in response to threat from a man who "on many occasions he had beaten her severely.").

[59] Bouie v. City of Columbia, 378 U.S. 347, 350 (1964). The danger is that the difference between a legal object and an illegal object may be so subtle that one cannot tell what is legal or illegal.

KnifeRights MSJ App.000578
KnifeRights MSJ App.000578

In *D.J. v. State*,[60] the trial court held that the pocket knife carried by the defendant was not an ordinary pocket knife "because it was larger and heavier than a common pocketknife, snaps out in a smooth action and locks into place, and the blade has serrations, is very sharp, and very pointy."[61] The Court of Appeals overturned, noting that "[i]n this case, the three-inch knife carried by D.J. lacks any of the weapon-like characteristics we noted in *T.S.W.*, and includes features we have previously held to not distinguish a knife from a common pocketknife."[62] The idea that a knife could become illegal because it is too sharp would be laughable if people were not going to jail for these offenses.[63]

Virginia Code § 18.2-311 prohibits possession of any "switchblade knife, ballistic knife, or like weapons." Virginia Code § 18.2-308(A) further prohibits the concealed carry of various weapons, including "any dirk, bowie knife, switchblade knife, ballistic knife . . . [or] any weapon of like kind as those enumerated" in the statute.[64] The Virginia Court of Appeals has explained that "a 'weapon of like kind' includes a knife that, while not possessing the exact physical properties of the enumerated knives, has the characteristics of a fighting knife just the same."[65] One defendant was convicted of possession of an illegal weapon in part because "Ohin's knife blade also locks securely when opened, much like a switchblade or a butterfly knife, and can be retracted only when unlocked."[66] The Court also went on to say that "Ohin's knife . . . has a fixed blade, sharp point, and single-sharpened edge affording it unquestionable utility as a stabbing weapon."[67] This case suggests that any pocket knife which is sharp, pointy, and locks in place is an illegal weapon, yet in a concurring opinion in 2009, two judges of the Virginia Court of Appeals accused Virginia courts of lacking any coherent rules defining illegal knives:

---

[60] D.J. v. State, 83 So. 3d 857 (Fla. Dist. Ct. App. 2011).

[61] *Id.* at 858; In re *George W.*, 80 Cal. Rptr. 2d at 858.

[62] In re *George W.,* 80 Cal. Rptr. 2d at 858; *see also* C.R. v. State, 73 So. 3d 825, 827 (Fla. Dist. Ct. App. 2011) (reversing the trial court which held that a pocket knife was not "ordinary" because it had "a clip to attach to a belt, a knob that makes the blade easy to open, a locking mechanism, and a textured handle").

[63] State v. Manning, No. 18347, 2001 WL 127860 at *1 (Ohio Ct. App. 2001) (the court found the knife in question to be a deadly weapon; the blade was less than two inches in length but was "pointed and sharp" and could be opened "using only one hand.").

[64] VA. CODE ANN. § 18.2–308(A).

[65] Ohin v. Commonwealth, 622 S.E.2d 784, 786 (Va. Ct. App. 2005).

[66] *Id.* at 787. A feature to lock the blade in the open position prevents the blade from collapsing on the fingers of the user and has become a regular feature on most pocket knives today.

[67] *Id.* (*quoting* Delcid v. Commonwealth, 526 S.E.2d 273, 275 (Va. Ct. App. 2000) and *citing* Richards v. Commonwealth, 443 S.E.2d 177, 179 (Va. Ct. App. 1994) (noting that a "retractable blade that can be locked into place" gives a knife a weapon-like quality)) (internal quotation marks and citation omitted).

KnifeRights MSJ App.000579

Case 4:23-cv-00547-O Document 20-3 Filed 10/06/23 Page 31 of 462 PageID 704

> A review of these [illegal knife] cases demonstrates the perplexity that exists among law enforcement officers, prosecutors, trial judges, and appellate judges over the scope of this statute. In an attempt to define its terms, we have resorted to embracing the "I know it when I see it" logic of Justice Stewart, *see Jacobellis v. Ohio*, 378 U.S. 184, 197, 84 S.Ct. 1676, 1683, 12 L.Ed.2d 793 (1964) (Stewart, J. concurring), by including a picture of the offending knife in our opinion.[68]

A common criticism of laws such as the knife laws of New York, Ohio, and Virginia is that they give enormous discretion to police, leading to arbitrary enforcement. As we saw in the Irizarry case, the Court held that the statute was interpreted so broadly that it subjected citizens "to arrest at the whim of any police officer."[69] In Virginia and New York, virtually any pocket knife is potentially an illegal weapon and police can arrest the owner. In reality, police do not arrest everyone who carries a pocket knife, but the statute allows police to arrest those people they believe are really criminals.[70] So, for example, an elderly white man in a suit carrying a pocketknife will not be arrested but a young black man in a t-shirt will be arrested for the exact same knife. Murkus D. Dubber, for example, argues that as courts have struck down vagrancy and loitering statutes as vague and giving police too much discretion, police are now using possession offenses to do essentially the same thing, targeting undesirable elements of the community.[71] Police can always cite a "suspicious bulge" to initiate a stop and frequently can use possession of drugs (including alcohol or tobacco), burglary tools, or weapons to make an arrest.[72]

Moreover, there is substantial evidence that such knife laws are a

---

[68] McMillan v. Commonwealth, 686 S.E.2d 525, 531 (Va. Ct. App. 2009) (en banc) (Petty, J. concurring) (overturning conviction for felon in possession of concealed weapon).

[69] United States v. Irizarry, 509 F. Supp. 2d 198, 199 (E.D.N.Y. 2007).

[70] The author of this article resides in the New York area, asked NYPD officers about the pocketknife law, and was told by more than one officer that as long as a person is not doing something he should not be doing, he does not to worry about carrying a pocketknife.

[71] Markus Dirk Dubber, *Policing Possession: The War on Crime and the End of Criminal Law*, 91 J. OF CRIM. L. AND CRIMINOLOGY 4, 829, 856–57, 910–11 (2001). Courts have also acknowledged the need for sufficiently precise weapons definitions in preventing "arbitrary and discriminatory application of our concealed weapons statute." A.P.E. v. People, 20 P.3d 1179, 1184 (Col. 2001) (en banc) (reversing conviction for possession of knife which was determined to be a deadly weapon because it was "ugly").

[72] In New York City, for example, between 2004 and 2009 police conducted over 2.8 million stops of suspects and in 10.4% of all stops "suspicious bulge" was given as the reason for the stop; yet guns were found in only 0.15% of cases. Floyd, v. City of New York, 08 Civ. 1034, Decision and Order, (S.D.N.Y May 16, 2012).

KnifeRights MSJ App.000580

pretext for arresting suspicious characters.. The *Irizarry* case showed that Home Depot sold 67,341 Huskies in 2006.[73] Despite selling these apparently illegal gravity knives by the hundreds of thousands, the state of New York has made no attempt to actually prevent their sale by Home Depot or anyone else. The fact that the New York Police Department does not seem to take any action to prevent "gravity knives" from being sold strongly suggests that the real intent of the law is to give police a basis for arresting selected suspects.

Of course, a case could also be made that the *Irizarry* case was a perfect example of the usefulness of such laws. After all, Irizarry had a concealed gun. So when the officer saw he had a pocket knife, he immediately had probable cause to arrest him for possession of a gravity knife. Had the officer not found a gun, the cop may well have let him off with a warning or a citation. Perhaps Irizarry was planning to commit a robbery or other crime with the gun, and the alertness of the officer prevented a serious crime. We will never know.

With the above caveat that there is substantial disagreement between jurisdictions as to what qualifies as a "switchblade," this Article will follow the federal definition and use the term to refer to any folding knife that can be opened by means of a spring mechanism or by inertia. Of course, when we turn to looking at individual states that have legalized switchblades, those states may have their own definitions.

III. WHY NOT BAN SWITCHBLADES?

In 1958, Senator Estes Kefauver (D-TN), a sponsor of legislation to ban switchblades, framed the issue as thus:

> A value judgment must be exercised in determining whether a ban should be imposed on the transportation and distribution of an article. In the case of the switchblade knife, the question resolves itself into whether the antisocial, negative and criminal uses this knife is put to sufficiently outweigh the occasional constructive uses that can be made of the knife to justify the prohibition contained in the legislation.[74]

---

[73] *Irizarry*, 509 F. Supp. 2d at 209.

[74] *An Act to Prohibit the Introduction, or Manufacture for Introduction, into Interstate Commerce of Switchblade Knives, and for other Purposes and a Bill to Amend Title 18 of The United States Code in Order to Prohibit the Sale to Juveniles of Switchblade Knives which have been Transported or Distributed in Interstate Commerce, and for other Purposes*: *Hearing on H.R. 12850 and S. 2558 Before the Comm. on Interstate and Foreign Commerce*, 85th Cong. 4 (1958) [hereinafter *Hearings on H.R. 12850 and S. 2558*] at 4.

KnifeRights MSJ App.000581

Case 4:23-cv-00547-O Document 20-3 Filed 10/06/23 Page 33 of 462 PageID 706

Senator Kefauver's statement seems reasonable, and more than fifty years later, we are in a good position to try to answer this question. First, let us examine the "occasional constructive uses . . . of the knife"[75] and then turn to negative aspects; in particular, by looking at the arguments put forth by advocates of banning these knives.

There is no question that a knife which can be opened with one hand is useful in a wide variety of situations, as both courts and legislatures have acknowledged. Examples of situations in which one hand is needed to open a knife are numerous. A fisherman might get a hook through his hand and need to use the other hand to cut the fishing line. A person attacked by a dog or wild animal may have her hand or arm caught in the jaws of an animal. A person attacked by an assailant may have her hand restrained by the assailant. A medical provider may need to use one hand to push pressure on a wound and need to use the other hand to cut away clothing or restraints. Representative Jennifer Coffey, who sponsored legislation legalizing switchblades in New Hampshire, for example, is an emergency medical technician who emphasized the use of such knives by first responders.[76] As the New Hampshire Union Leader reported:

> The bill took shape after Coffey, the vice president of the Andover Rescue Squad, was looking for a new tool for her job an emergency medical technician. She was looking for an all-in-one tool with an automatic mechanism, a knife that would free up use of one hand. As she shopped around, Coffey said she discovered what she wanted she could not legally buy in the state. And though state law provided an exemption for EMTs, along with law enforcement, hunters and others, she found the exemption would not apply when she was off-duty.[77]

There have certainly been people who have carried switchblades for protection who were not juvenile delinquents or violent criminals. For example, in one story from the 1960s, entitled "Coeds in Michigan Carrying Weapons in the Wake of Series of Five Slayings," reported:

> "My boyfriend gave me this switchblade," said Roni Freidman, of Portland, Maine, a pretty 19-year-old Blonde nursing student at the University of Michigan. "And I

[75] *Id.*

[76] Lacey, *supra* note 6, at 1.

[77] Tuohy, *supra* note 14, at A1, A10. The article also noted that "[t]he bipartisan bill sailed through the New Hampshire legislature, with committees hearing support for the change from law enforcement officers, wildlife groups and outdoors people."

KnifeRights MSJ App.000582
KnifeRights MSJ App.000582

> carry it everywhere," she said. "When you are scared you do these things."[78]

The usefulness of a one-hand opening knife is not seriously in dispute, but the vast majority of pocket knives can be opened by one hand, so who needs a spring-loaded switchblade?[79] In other words, setting aside the problem that most pocketknives could be considered switchblades, is there a legitimate use for spring opening automatic knives? Under ordinary circumstances, one can open a pocket knife with one's thumb in less than a second.[80] Of course, there will be people who, through medical problems like arthritis or nerve damage, may have trouble opening a pocket knife one handed; one of the reasons given for ending the switchblade ban in Indiana is precisely this reason.[81] The primary reason given for utility of a switchblade over a normal pocketknife is that when one is in an emergency situation (for example, a wild animal is chewing on your hand, or a medic is attempting to apply pressure to a bleeding wound), one's fine motor skills will deteriorate greatly, and in a life threatening situation one cannot afford to be fidgeting around trying to get a knife open. Yet, despite admitting that there may be extreme situations in which an automatically opening knife might be useful, surely these situations are rare.

Ultimately, then, we must balance the dangers of switchblades against their utility. Of course, there are dangers associated with both legalization and prohibition of switchblades. Because there is very little difference between a switchblade and an ordinary pocket knife, innocent owners of pocket knives may find themselves under arrest and with a criminal record for possession of objects they reasonably believed were legal.[82]

Another potential problem is that when someone does commit a crime, the presence of an "illegal weapon" or "deadly weapon" can turn a minor offense into a felony, or subject the offender to enhanced penalties. The

---

[78] Karl Mantyla, *Coeds in Michigan Carrying Weapons in the Wake of Series of Five Slayings*, NASHUA TELEGRAPH, Apr. 18, 1969, at 3.

[79] There are some critics of one-hand opening knives. *See, e.g.*, Mark Fritz, *How New, Deadly Pocketknives Became a $1 Billion Business*, WALL ST. J., Jul. 25, 2006, at B1, *available at* http://perma.cc/7PFL-GFXG (noting, for example, that many pocket knives can be "flicked open with one finger faster than the widely outlawed switchblade."). Nonetheless, there is no jurisdiction which has outlawed one-handed opening knives per se. When DHS threatened to ban their import, Congress overwhelmingly rejected the idea.

[80] *See id.*

[81] *Indiana Panel Advances Bill Legalizing Switchblades*, NEWS-SENTINEL, Jan. 16, 2013, http://perma.cc/V6ZW-VY5Z.

[82] But surely there must be a way for the law to distinguish "good" pocket knives from "bad" switchblades. The only way states seem to be able to give clear guidance as to what is legal or illegal is a restriction on blade length, that is, any folding knife with a blade length of over a certain length is illegal regardless of any other features. This type of statute gives clear guidance to citizens and enforcers as to what is legal and illegal.

KnifeRights MSJ App.000583

problem is that two offenders with essentially identical crimes may receive very different sentences based on minor differences making one knife legal and another a deadly weapon.[83] This is true for almost every state in the country, because even most states that permit possession of switchblades classify them as deadly weapons.

Another danger that must be considered with every criminal statute is that some people will be falsely accused, arrested, and convicted. A witness may mistakenly believe an object is a switchblade when it is not, or it may simply be a case of arresting the wrong person. Furthermore, not every case will have the object available for examination by police.[84] For serious crimes like murder and robbery, the fact that innocent people will be wrongly convicted is not much of an argument, but for marginal crimes when the harm to society is small, the danger of false conviction is a reasonable concern.

Finally, there are always associated costs to any criminal law. With marginal offenses, enforcement costs such as time and expense of policing and prosecuting the offense may not be worth the benefit to society. Even keeping firearms out of the hands of criminals is notoriously difficult, so keeping knives out of the hands of criminals may not be possible.

There are also unintended consequences of banning some weapons. In some states, such as in the case of the Virginia statute cited above, the penalties for carrying a concealed weapon or being a felon in possession of a weapon are the same for a knife or a gun. Although a full exploration of alternatives to switchblades is beyond the scope of this paper, heightened penalties for the use or possession of knives might lead some would-be criminals to conclude that they may as well carry a gun.[85]

If the above are the practical and legal concerns with banning

---

[83] *See, e.g.*, State v. Gotcher, 759 P.2d 1216, 1220 (Wash. Ct. App. 1988) (reversing defendant's conviction for committing burglary with a deadly weapon when he possessed a switchblade).

[84] For example, there is the novelty "switchblade comb" which looks like a switchblade when closed but has a comb instead of a knife blade. *Switchblade Comb*, ARCHIE MCPHEE, http://perma.cc/ZGJ4-2UVC (last visited Feb. 26, 2014). Under federal law this is considered an illegal switchblade and may not be imported. Letter from John Durant, Dir., Commercial Rulings Division, to John Kelly, Gen'l Mgr, Allied Import Corp. (Oct. 3, 1989) *available at* http://perma.cc/7PVF-VKGX. The reasoning provided was that the comb could easily be replaced by a knife blade, and therefore, the mechanism operated as a sham to import knife parts. *Id.* at 2–3.

[85] This is common criticism of banning one type of weapon that is easily replaceable. For example, Gary Kleck has argued that banning all handguns would likely result in their substitution by more deadly shotguns and rifles. *See generally* Gary Kleck, *Handgun-Only Gun Control: A Policy Disaster in the Making*, *in* FIREARMS AND VIOLENCE: ISSUES OF PUBLIC POLICY, 167, 186–94 (Don B. Kates, Jr. ed., 1984); *see also* David B. Kopel, *Peril or Protection: The Risks and Benefits of Handgun Prohibition*, 12 ST. LOUIS U. PUB. L. REV. 285, 329 (1993) (arguing the same). As in the case of knives, the substitution for guns in many circumstances is probable, but the overall impact is more debatable. At least in the case of armed robbery use of a firearm means the victim is less likely to resist, so while a firearm is more deadly than a knife it is less likely to be actually used to injure a victim.

KnifeRights MSJ App.000584

switchblades, what are the arguments for banning them? To answer this, this Article will go back to the federal legislation enacted in the 1950s and examine how these bans began.

IV. THE HISTORY OF SWITCHBLADE LEGISLATION: WHY WERE THEY BANNED?

Some of the most famous movies of the 1950s prominently featured switchblades, including Stalag 17 (1953), From Here to Eternity (1953), Blackboard Jungle (1955), Oklahoma (1955), Rebel Without A Cause (1955), Twelve Angry Men (1957), and High School Confidential (1958).[86] Although "West Side Story" was not made a movie until 1961, it debuted on Broadway in 1957.[87] Switchblades came to be associated with crime, and especially juvenile delinquency in New York. Whether this perception was correct or not, we may never know, but there is no question that switchblades were quite popular in the 1950s. A Senate judiciary report published in 1958 estimated that more than 1.2 million switchblades were purchased in the United States each year.[88]

One of the first attempts to ban switchblades was introduced in the New York legislature in 1953, but failed to pass.[89] In 1954, Governor Dewey supported a weaker plan to ban the sale, but not the possession, of switchblades in New York.[90] A legislative report on that bill explained:

> This bill prohibits the sale of switchblade knives in this State. It also makes possession of such knives unlawful except for persons who require their use in a business, trade or profession or for sportsmen holding hunting, trapping and fishing licenses under the Conservation Law. Last year there were 4,420 felonious assaults and 99 homicides reported in New York City in which knives were used. Analysis indicates that over one-third of these crimes involved the use of switchblade knives.[91]

Within a few years, about ten states had banned the sale or possession

---

[86] For a longer list of movies from this period featuring switchblades, *see Switchblades in the Movies (1920-1969)*, ASSISTEDKNIFE.COM, http://perma.cc/YSE9-98Q9 (last visited Feb. 26, 2014).

[87] WEST SIDE STORY (Mirisch Pictures, Inc. and Seven Arts Prods. 1961); Jack Gottlieb, *West Side Story Fact Sheet*, WEST SIDE STORY, http://perma.cc/364G-CVHB (last visited Feb. 18, 2014).

[88] S. Rep. No. 1429, at 6 (1958).

[89] J.F. Wilkinson, Jr., *Plan Letter Drive on Switchblades*, BROOKLYN EAGLE, Jan. 5, 1954, at 1.

[90] *Id.*

[91] Memorandum of Governor Thomas E. Dewey, *reprinted in* 1954 Legis. Ann. 385 (New York, 1954).

KnifeRights MSJ App.000585

of switchblades.[92] In 1957, several bills were introduced in Congress to ban switchblades or to prevent them from being mailed across state lines.

The Eisenhower Administration opposed banning switchblades. When asked for the opinion of the Department of Justice, Deputy Attorney General William Rogers wrote the Commerce Committee:

> The Department of Justice is unable to recommend enactment of this legislation. . . . Switchblade knives in the hands of criminals are, of course, potentially dangerous weapons. However, since they serve useful and even essential purposes in the hands of persons such as sportsmen, shipping clerks and others engaged in lawful pursuits, the committee may deem it preferable that they be regulated at the State rather than the federal level.[93]

The Secretary of Commerce, Sinclair Weeks, expressed similar views stating that the proposed bill ignored the needs of many legitimate users of switchblades.[94] The administration did not oppose a ban on mailing switchblades, although the Administration expressed "doubts as to the effectiveness of such limitations in controlling the wrongful use of switchblades."[95] The broader ban on possession also ran into trouble as many legislators did not believe that the federal government had constitutional authority to prohibit possession of switchblades and regarded that as a state or local matter.[96]

While some witnesses acknowledged that a switchblade might have some usefulness, Pino testified:

> Actually, these knives are, I would say inherently dangerous, they have only one purpose. They are just deadly. They are lethal weapons and they are suited for crime, that is all they are suited for. So the sportsmen really have nothing substantial to complain about. But

---

[92] S. Rep. No. 1429, at 7, 27.

[93] *Hearings on H.R. 12850 and S. 2558, supra* note 74, at 11–12 (letter from of William Rogers, Deputy Att'y Gen.).

[94] *Id.* at 12 (letter from Sinclair Weeks, Sec'y of Commerce).

[95] *Id.* at 15 (letter from Phillip S. Hughes, Acting Dir. for Legis. Reference, Exec. Office of the President).

[96] For example, Senator Butler commented, "We have no business to legislate on possession, that is a state and local matter." The Chairman of the committee, Senator Warren Magnuson, expressed similar reservations, as did Senator Thurmond (S.C.), a noted advocate of states' rights. *Id.* at 22, 25. This opposition to a general ban meant that a ban would be enacted only in federal territories.

KnifeRights MSJ App.000586

they do complain.[97]

Similarly, John E. Cone, a local New York judge who headed a movement to ban switchblades in New York, testified: "You see, the possession of these knives are [sic] only for three purposes, mainly: murder, assault, robbery, possibly even rape."[98] He later added: "I think you will find this type of knife only in the hands of juveniles and in the hands of footpads around our city. . . . Footpads, highwaymen, thugs."[99]

Fortunately, the claims of Cone and Pino are empirically verifiable to some extent. According to manufacturers' numbers provided to the committee, there were at least 1.2 million switchblades sold in the United States each year.[100] We also know that for the years 1957 and 1958, there were an average of 8,145 homicides, 71,210 robberies, and 112,235 aggravated assaults.[101] Even assuming that half of all these crimes used knives, and further assuming that every knife used was a switchblade, there would have been 95,795 violent crimes involving switchblades.[102] Even using these extremely cautious presuppositions, and further assuming that 95,795 different switchblades were used for crimes, with six million switchblades in circulation, it would mean that only 1.6% of switchblades were used in murder, assault, or robbery. In fact, the use rate is almost certainly well under 1%.[103] Given that 99% of switchblades were never used for any illegal purpose, the assertion that they are only used for or suited for murder, assault, and robbery is demonstrably false.

As to how such knives cause crime, Cone told a story of how possession of switchblades led to criminal activity.[104] He explained how one young person accidentally hit another young boy with a stick, and then:

---

[97] *Hearings on H.R. 12850 and S. 2558, supra* note 74, at 24.

[98] *Id.* at 7.

[99] *Id.* at 22.

[100] S. Rep. No. 1429, at 6 (1958).

[101] FED. BUREAU OF INVESTIGATION, UNIFORM CRIME REPORTS FOR THE UNITED STATES 5 (1960).

[102] These are obviously extremely liberal estimates. The first classification of murder weapons in the UCR is from 1960, and this shows less than 20% use of knives in murder, the UCR from 1965 shows that knives were used in one-third of all aggravated assaults, and no weapon was used in 42% of robberies in 1965. To err on the side of caution, the author assumed a use rate of one-half, although one-third of robberies and assaults utilizing knives is probably a more accurate estimate. *Id*. at 59. *See infra* Table 1.

[103] In reality there were probably far more than 6 million traditional switchblades in circulation, since that was only the number sold in the previous five years, and it is highly unlikely that every knife used in a crime was a switchblade. Moreover, those criminals who used a switchblade for a crime likely used the same weapon repeatedly. Thus, a more realistic estimate is that less than 1/10 of one percent of switchblades in circulation were used in crime.

[104] *Hearings on H.R. 12850 and S. 2558, supra,* note 74, at 23.

KnifeRights MSJ App.000587

Case 4:23-cv-00547-O Document 20-3 Filed 10/06/23 Page 39 of 462 PageID 712

> He, as youngsters are prone to do, yelled some angry words to the lad who hit [him with] the stick, who in turn yelled back more angry words. They rushed together quickly, and unfortunately the boy who hit the stick had a switchblade in his pocket. I say to you, before he had time to think of the consequences of his act, or the other lad to think of it, the knife was out, in a twinkling of an instant it was buried in his chest and he was dead. Had he had a Boy Scout knife, the other kid would have had warning, the tragedy would not have occurred. But with this deadly thing there could be only one result.[105]

One thing to bear in mind is that the typical Boy Scout knife, or jackknife, in the 1950s was designed to be opened with two hands. The one-handed opening knives described above have come to dominate the market since the ban of switchblades. With that point in mind, we see two distinct arguments made by Cone. The argument typically made is that because switchblades open so quickly, an assailant can surprise a victim who does not know the other person has a switchblade, and thus it is harder to defend oneself. Similarly, the Alaska Court of Appeals explained the danger from switchblades was that they are "easily concealed and quickly brought to bear."[106]

The second argument made by Cone is that the assailant will have more time to think about what he is doing. However, while an extra two to three seconds to deploy a knife might give a victim enough time to run away, it seems unlikely that a boy angry enough to stab another will cool off in two to three seconds.

Senator Cotton expressed his opinion that "those knives are exactly the things that fascinate a perfectly good boy."[107] The Senator did not elaborate, but he seems to have been arguing that many boys would carry switchblades who would not carry other types of pocketknives, simply because they are so fascinating, and presumably they will be more inclined to use such knives.

Thus, there were five distinct arguments against switchblades used by advocates of the legislation: (1) they have no legitimate use; (2) someone found with one is likely a criminal (i.e. the proxy theory); (3) they are attractive to otherwise good boys who will misuse them; (4) their ease of use makes it more likely a person will use them in anger; and (5) their quickness and concealability makes them harder to defend against than

---

[105] *Id.*
[106] State v. Weaver, 736 P. 2d 781, 783 (Alaska 1987).
[107] *Hearings on H.R. 12850 and S. 2558, supra* note 74, at 27.

KnifeRights MSJ App.000588
KnifeRights MSJ App.000588

Case 4:23-cv-00547-O Document 20-3 Filed 10/06/23 Page 40 of 462 PageID 713

other knives commonly carried.

Pino confidently predicted that fewer switchblades would mean less crime:

> We don't expect that by passing a bill like this we will completely solve the problem. But the fewer of these weapons we have around the less is going to be the incidence of crimes.[108]

The Senate Committee had surprisingly little hard data on the use of switchblades.[109] Senator Thurmond asked Cone if more wounds were caused by switchblades or other types of pocketknives, and Cone responded: "The jackknife is no problem. We have no objection to them at all. They serve a legitimate purpose."[110] Although the Committee Report lists a number of figures on the volume of switchblades confiscated, it gave almost no numbers on how often they were used in crime. One of the very few statistics was that "[i]n Kansas City 15 switchblades were used in assaults and robberies in 1956."[111] Given that there were 269 armed robberies and 175 aggravated assaults in Kansas City, Missouri in 1956, fifteen switchblades out of 444 assaults and robberies (about 3.3%) does not appear to be a very large number.[112]

The Congressional Committee sent questionnaires to municipal and military police across the country and collected a wide assortment of anecdotes. Although these anecdotes confirm the prevalence of switchblades, they provide little solid information on how often they were used in crime. In one section, the report explains that military regulations forbade switchblades on post, and further notes:

> During 1956 at Fort Bragg, N.C., it was necessary for the military police to confiscate from military personnel 161

[108] *Id.*

[109] As the Oregon Supreme Court stated, the congressional report "offers no more than impressionistic observations on the criminal use of switch-blades." State v. Delgado, 692 P. 2d 610, 612 (Or. 1984).

[110] *Hearings on H.R. 12850 and S. 2558, supra* note 74, at 24 (1958). Indeed, one is almost surprised at the attitude of some witnesses towards other knives. Senator Thurmond went on to ask Cone about carrying a combat knife with an eight-inch blade, and Cone said as long as it was carried openly it was not a problem to carry it in public. *Id.*

[111] *Id.* at 3.

[112] FED. BUREAU OF INVESTIGATION, *supra* note 101, at 97. This number does not include assaults or robberies from Kansas City, Kansas where there were 143 armed robberies and ninety-eight aggravated assaults in 1956. These numbers were provided by W.E. Parker acting head of the Kansas City, Missouri PD. *See The Kansas City Trouble*, TIME, Jan. 27, 1958, *available at* http://perma.cc/RD6G-Z4BD (detailing efforts to keep switchblades and razor blades out of Kansas City, Missouri public schools).

KnifeRights MSJ App.000589

> switchblade knives, an average of 3 a week. At Fort Sill, Okla., in 1956, 75 of these knives were confiscated as a result of aggravated assault.[113]

Given these types of numbers from just two posts in one year, it seems likely that tens of thousands of switchblades were in the hands of military personnel.

V. PROVISIONS AND ENFORCEMENT OF THE FEDERAL ANTI-SWITCHBLADE ACT

Congress did not believe it had constitutional authority to ban the possession of switchblades in the states, but the legislation did place some significant restrictions on switchblades. 15 U.S.C. § 1242 bans the "transport[ation] or distribut[ion] in interstate commerce" of switchblades, which means that a manufacturer or distributor cannot sell across state lines.[114] Violation of the Act is a felony and the offender may be sentenced to up to five years in jail. The Act does not restrict individuals from purchasing a switchblade where they are legal and bringing it back to her home state, but presumably this statute would greatly restrict access to switchblades in many states where there was or is no domestic manufacturer. While there are numerous local manufacturers in states such as Oregon and Florida, lack of competition from foreign manufacturers undoubtedly increases the price of switchblades, making them more expensive than their non-switchblade equivalent.[115]

The other major provision of the federal Anti-Switchblade Act is that it is a felony to possess a switchblade "within any Territory or possession of the United States, within Indian country (as defined in section 1151 of title 18), or within the special maritime and territorial jurisdiction of the United States (as defined in section 7 of title 18)."[116] This provision is actually fairly broad, as the special maritime jurisdiction includes all navigable waters of the United States not within the jurisdiction of any state, as well

---

[113] *Hearings on H.R. 12850 and S. 2558, supra* note 74 at 3 (Statement by Senator Estes Kefauver). Notably this does not say that 75 switchblades were used in assaults, and it is not clear how many of these knives were used for an illegal purpose. FED. BUREAU OF INVESTIGATION, *supra* note 101, at 97.

[114] 15 U.S.C. § 1242 (2012).

[115] For example, Benchmade Knife Company has a factory in Clackamas, Oregon and appears to be a major seller of switchblades in Oregon. BENCHMADE KNIFE COMPANY, http://perma.cc/LP7G-W8FQ (last visited Feb. 26, 2014). A review of their products shows that their switchblades frequently cost well over $100. Similarly, The Knife Factory in Saint Augustine, Florida advertises "a full line of automatics." KNIFE FACTORY, http://perma.cc/8UJB-HN4H (last visited Feb. 26, 2014); as does Arizona Custom Knives, also in Saint Augustine. ARIZONA CUSTOM KNIVES, http://perma.cc/D89L-UXWL (last visited Feb. 26, 2014).

[116] 15 U.S.C. § 1245 (2012).

KnifeRights MSJ App.000590

as any U.S. flagged vessel. It is therefore illegal for a fisherman in Alaska, California, Oregon, or Florida to take a switchblade on a fishing boat outside her home state.

The main point of the law was to support states that did ban switchblades. Congressional witnesses expressed to the Committee that "in your own State you can manufacture them, if they are going to be permitted, and there would be no problem."[117] Senator Thurmond also acknowledged this and asked "Have we gained anything?"[118] It seems clear that with millions of switchblades in circulation and with them remaining legal in most states at that time, expectations were low for any immediate effect.

As to enforcement of the Act, it does not appear that the Act has ever been enforced very vigorously with respect to interstate transport. Although the federal government has actively stopped importation of knives believed to be illegal, the number of criminal prosecutions for selling or purchasing knives across state lines appears to be very small. There are only a handful of recorded prosecutions, despite reports of widespread distribution.[119] In fact, when one considers that prior to the 2009 amendment to the Anti-Switchblade Act, the vast majority of pocketknives were illegal, it is fair to say the Act was violated with impunity, at least with regard to knives that could be opened by force of inertia.

As we saw, the Eisenhower administration was opposed to a switchblade ban, and while the President did not veto the Act, the administration probably did not make enforcement a priority. There are also two important exceptions to the Act. Interstate distributors are permitted to sell to individuals with one arm and "the Armed Forces or any member or employee thereof acting in the performance of his duty."[120] Yet, in addition to these two exceptions, the U.S. Post Office has adopted regulations permitting switchblades to be mailed interstate to "[s]upply to procurement officers or employees of the municipal government of the District of Columbia, or of the government of any state or territory, or of any county, city, or other political subdivision of a state or territory."[121] This provision goes back at least to 1971.[122] While the provision was

---

[117] *Hearings on H.R. 12850 and S. 2558, supra* note 74, at 26 (Statement by Senator Estes Kefauver).

[118] *Id.*

[119] Robert Johnson, *Sales of Switchblades in U.S. Get a Boost from Internet*, WALL ST. J., Mar. 7, 2000, http://perma.cc/Z5LQ-MZBB (last visited Feb. 26, 2014).

[120] 15 U.S.C. § 1244 (2012).

[121] U.S. POSTAL SERV., PUB. NO. 52, MAILING STANDARDS OF THE UNITED STATES POSTAL SERVICE PUBLICATION 52, HAZARDOUS, RESTRICTED, AND PERISHABLE MAIL, § 442 *available at* http://perma.cc/5R3G-TP6N (last visited Feb. 26, 2014).

[122] 39 C.F.R. § 124.6 (1971).

KnifeRights MSJ App.000591

clearly intended to ensure that state and local governments would not be affected by the ban, the provision is worded quite broadly. Manufacturers and distributors have taken advantage of this provision and will ship switchblades interstate to anyone who certifies that he or she is an employee of a state or local government.[123]

One criticism of the Anti-Switchblade Act is simply that it has not been enforced effectively, and federal regulations create exceptions which allow millions of people to purchase them legally, not to mention people who falsely claim to be a state or local employee. If these criticisms are correct, naturally, the Anti-Switchblade Act will have had little or no effect on crime.

While the above criticisms of the Act are valid, anecdotal evidence suggests that the Act has significantly reduced the possession of traditional spring-loaded switchblades. This author spent six years in the Marine Corps from 1986 to 1992, and virtually every marine carried a pocket knife—it was simply basic equipment. Yet in this author's six years in the Marine Corps, he never once saw a Marine with a traditional switchblade. It follows that traditional switchblades are far less prevalent today than they were in the 1950s (with the exception of a few states like Oregon, where they are legal and common).

Thus, the criticism of lack of enforcement is not persuasive, at least as it relates to traditional, spring-loaded switchblades. The criticism is more forceful with respect to other types of pocketknives. Although any knife that could be snapped open by inertia was theoretically illegal, the sponsors of the Act made clear that they were not banning ordinary pocketknives. The Act was never enforced to include non-traditional switchblades, and when the administration suggested banning the importation of pocketknives, Congress overwhelmingly rejected the proposal. So while the Anti-Switchblade Act seems to have been successful in significantly reducing the number of spring-loaded switchblades, these knives appear to have been replaced by other types of pocketknives that are identical for almost all practical purposes. If this last criticism is valid, one would not expect to see any effect on crime as a result of the Anti-Switchblade Act.

VI. THEORIES AND METHODOLOGY

As we have just seen, advocates of banning switchblades argued that switchblades are uniquely suited for criminal purposes and predicted that the ban would reduce crime in general, and knife crime in particular. If these knives are so valuable for criminal purposes, then we would expect murders, robberies, and especially assaults to increase as more of such

[123] The author has a sample form used by a distributor on file, which requires the purchaser to affirm he or she is an employee of a state or local government.

KnifeRights MSJ App.000592

knives are introduced into a community. Because murders and robberies are far more likely to use a firearm than a knife, the presence of more switchblades might not affect these numbers very much, even if they are heavily used in crime. We would expect to see the greatest effect on aggravated assault.

First, the sheer volume of aggravated assault is much larger than murder or robbery.[124] The larger number of assaults than murder or robbery is explained by the fact that assaults are much more likely to be unplanned and spontaneous,[125] such as the incident described by Judge Cone's testimony. Second, knives are much more common in assaults than murder or robbery.[126] The presence of deadly weapons means that verbal arguments are far more likely to escalate into aggravated assault.

The alternative hypothesis is that switchblade knives are not different from other pocketknives in any significant respect, and so long as other pocketknives are widely available, the ban or introduction of switchblades will have no discernible effect on crime.

Of course, given that there were millions of switchblades in circulation when states began to ban them, it could take years before the ban had any real impact on crime. Conversely, when a state legalizes switchblades after a long period of prohibition, we would expect the supply to grow rapidly among the criminal element if these knives are uniquely useful for criminal purposes by footpads, highwaymen, and thugs. Because switchblades cannot be sold interstate, one might expect that it would take some time before they become widely available. At least in recent years, however, the market has shown a remarkable ability to provide switchblades soon after legalization. Soon after legalization in Missouri, an article in the St. Louis Post Dispatch, reported: "After the state law change, customers flocked to stores to shop for switchblades, which had been banned for years."[127] Although sale of switchblades across state lines is theoretically illegal, there have been reports of widespread internet sales.[128]

A second theory worth exploring is the proxy theory; that is, even if switchblades are no more dangerous than any other knife, people who use switchblades are likely to be violent criminals.[129] If the proxy theory is

---

[124] In 2012, there were 14,827 murders in the U.S., 354,520 robberies, and 760,739 aggravated assaults. FED. BUREAU OF INVESTIGATION, *supra* note 101, at 97 (Table 1).

[125] As one court put it: "Assaults and batteries are frequently the result of transient ebullitions of passion." Gillman v. State, 51 So. 722, 723 (Ala. 1910).

[126] *See infra* Tables 2–4.

[127] Michael D. Sorkin, *Pocket Knife Sales Soar on Renewed Popularity*, ST. LOUIS POST-DISPATCH, Dec. 30, 2012, http://perma.cc/5RSM-8DNP (last visited Feb. 26, 2014).

[128] *See generally* Johnson, *supra* note 111.

[129] One author has described the use of proxies for law enforcement as "taking an innocent characteristic, believing it to be correlated with a real or potential threat, and using that characteristic to

KnifeRights MSJ App.000593

correct, switchblade laws are an excellent tool used by police to identify and arrest potentially violent criminals. There is an obvious logic here. If switchblades are criminalized, then only criminals will have switchblades. Law-abiding citizens will carry other types of pocketknives which are legal. Thus, if switchblades are illegal, we would expect them to be an excellent proxy for other criminal behavior.

There are two potential flaws with this proxy theory. First, if the definition of switchblade is unclear, many otherwise law-abiding citizens may end up arrested for possession of knives they honestly believed were legal. Because possession offenses are typically strict liability offenses, the state need not prove that the defendant had any intent to break the law.[130] Second, the proxy theory assumes that violent criminals are more likely to break switchblade laws than other citizens, but that may not be true. Again, if the utility between a switchblade and ordinary knife is minimal, violent criminals may well have no trouble complying with the ban. In fact, as many of these statutes are obscure and complicated, professional criminals are likely to be the ones who are most familiar with these statutes. Hence, it is entirely possible that most people who violate switchblade statutes are just ordinary citizens who are ignorant that their pocket knife is illegal. If this is true, then the proxy theory is the exact opposite, and innocent citizens are more likely to possess illegal knives than professional criminals.[131]

Yet, if the proxy theory is correct, then we would expect laws against switchblades to reduce crime even if switchblades are harmless, because it will lead to more violent criminals being arrested and imprisoned. Accordingly, we should again see a reduction in crime when switchblades are outlawed and an increase in crime when they are legalized.

Of course, there will be other factors that might affect the use of switchblades, regardless of their legal status. The main factor one would expect to affect use of knives is the prevalence of firearms. There is an old saying "Don't bring a knife to a gun fight."[132] Knife wielders are unlikely

enforce the law." Lindsey B. Lawrence, *The Money-Laundering Conundrum: Mugging Privacy in the Assault on Crime? In* THE FUTURE OF FINANCIAL PRIVACY, 165 (Washington: Competitive Enter. Inst., 2000).

[130] *See, e.g.*, People v. Voltaire, 852 N.Y.S.2d 649, 652 (Crim. Ct. 2007) *quoting* People v. Visarities, 220 A.D. 657 (N.Y. 1927) ("mere possession of per se weapon, if knowing and voluntary, constitutes the offense") (sic).

[131] Because a person can be in constructive possession of an object, such as a switchblade in one's vehicle which is unknown to the driver, a person can be convicted of a possession offense effectively without *mens rea* or *actus reus*. *See* Dubber, *supra* note 71, at 916–17.

[132] This expression was made popular in the movie "The Untouchables" (1987) in which Sean Connery's character, armed with a shotgun, tells the knife wielding assassin sent to kill him: "Just like a Wop to bring a knife to a gunfight!" The particular knife in the movie, not surprisingly, was a switchblade. The expression has entered the English language as a kind of proverb. *See* USINGENGLISH.COM, http://perma.cc/9BAH-JERA (last visited Mar. 5, 2014).

KnifeRights MSJ App.000594

to attack those who they think may have guns. For example, among aggravated assaults on the general public, knives and guns are used in about equal numbers, whereas in aggravated assaults on police officers, an aggressor is twice as likely to use a gun as a knife.[133]

Secondly, if a potential criminal has access to guns as well as knives, the criminal seems likely to opt for the more powerful weapon. Some researchers have challenged the assumption that criminals will substitute knives for guns when guns are not available.[134] Nevertheless, statistics on the use of guns and knives in crime have consistently shown that when gun use in crime goes up, knife use goes down. This is consistent with the theory that knife control may be counterproductive, as the weapon substituted for a knife may be a gun. If the penalty for possession of a knife and gun are the same, then presumably criminals would opt for a gun.

In fact, if we look at the use of knives in crime, there is a steady increase in the use of knives in murder, aggravated assault, and armed robbery throughout the 1960s and 1970s. Across the country as a whole, violent crime doubled between 1958 and 1967.[135] Although we can never know what might have happened otherwise, there is no indication that the federal Anti-Switchblade Act (in conjunction with state bans) had any significant effect on violent crime across the country. Violent crime involving knives also increased dramatically in the 1960s and 1970s.[136]

Table 1 shows the U.S. homicide rate per 100,000 from 1951 through 2000, followed by (when available) the homicide rate using knives (or other cutting instruments), the U.S. robbery rate, the robbery rate using knives, the aggravated assault rate, and the assault rate using knives. Note that all of the crime data is for knives and other "cutting instruments"; for ease of reference, this entire category is referred to simply as knives. Note, also, that the first year the UCR classified robbery by weapon used was 1974; thus, these numbers have been supplemented by including the rate of armed robbery from 1964 to 1980.

---

[133] In 2010, there were 137,857 aggravated assaults using firearms and 127,509 using knives. *Uniform Crime Reports 2012, Table 19*, FBI, *available at* http://perma.cc/P36J-FZ5C (last visited Mar. 12, 2014). However, in assaults on police officers, there were 1,831 assaults with firearms and 884 with knives. *Uniform Crime Reports 2012, Table 70*, FBI, *available at* http://perma.cc/4X28-92SX (last visited Mar. 12, 2014). 884 seems like a high figure, although many of these may have been on undercover officers or attacks by mentally unstable suspects. In any event, it is clear that when attacking a person who has a gun, an assailant is more likely to use a gun than a knife.

[134] *See generally* Lisa Stolzenberg & Stewart J. D'Alessio, *Gun Availability and Violent Crime: New Evidence from the National Incident-Based Reporting System*, 78 SOC. FORCES 1461 (2000).

[135] *See infra* Table 1.

[136] *Id.*

KnifeRights MSJ App.000595

TABLE 1: U.S. VIOLENT CRIME RATE PER 100,000 INHABITANTS 1951–2000[137]

Year	Homicide Rate	w/ Knives	Robbery	% Armed Robbery	w/ Knives	Ag. Assault	w/ Knives
1951	4.4						
1952	4.6						
1953	4.5						
1954	4.2						
1955	4.1						
1956	4.1						
1957	4.0						
1958	4.8						
1959	4.9		40.3			67.3	
1960	5.1		60.1			86.1	
1961	4.8	1.16	58.3			85.7	
1962	4.6	1.11	59.7			88.6	
1963	4.6	1.05	61.8			92.4	
1964	4.9	1.18	68.2	57%		106.2	
1965	5.1	1.17	71.7	57.6%		111.3	
1966	5.6	1.25	80.8	58.3%		120.3	40.42
1967	6.2	1.24	102.8	57.8%		130.2	42.71
1968	6.9	1.29	131.8	60.3%		141.3	43.80
1969	7.3	1.49	148.4	61.5%		154.5	46.04
1970	7.9	1.70	172.1	63.3%		164.8	46.14
1971	8.6	1.71	188.0	N/A		178.8	50.06
1972	9.0	1.71	180.7	66.1%		188.8	49.65
1973	9.4	1.67	183.1	65.9%		200.5	49.32
1974	9.8	1.72	209.3	65.9%	27.42	215.8	52.22
1975	9.6	1.70	220.8	65.0%	27.38	231.1	54.31
1976	8.8	1.57	199.3	63.5%	25.91	233.2	54.80
1977	8.8	1.68	190.7	63.3%	25.17	247.0	57.30
1978	9.0	1.69	195.8	62.5%	24.87	262.1	59.23
1979	9.7	1.86	218.4	62.3%	28.83	286.0	64.35
1980	10.2	1.97	251.1	62.2%	32.40	298.5	67.16
1981	9.8	1.90	258.4		33.85	289.3	63.65
1982	9.1	1.90	238.8		32.48	289	67.05
1983	8.3	1.81	216.7		29.47	279.4	66.78
1984	7.9	1.67	205.7		27.56	290.6	67.42
1985	8	1.69	209.3		27.84	304	69.01
1986	8.6	1.77	226		30.51	347.4	76.43
1987	8.3	1.68	213.7		28.85	352.9	75.52
1988	8.5	1.62	222.1		30.21	372.2	76.30
1989	8.7	1.58	234.3		31.40	385.6	75.52
1990	9.4	1.65	256.3		30.76	422.9	82.47
1991	9.8	1.59	272.7		30.0	433.4	79.75
1992	9.3	1.35	263.7		27.95	441.9	80.43
1993	9.5	1.21	256		25.60	440.5	77.53
1994	9	1.143	237.8		22.59	427.6	76.11
1995	8.2	1.07	220.9		20.10	418.3	76.55
1996	7.4	1.00	201.9		18.17	391	70.77

[137] For ease, the author used the UCR "Data tool" for crime rate data when available (that is, crime rates going back to 1960); otherwise, the author used the printed volumes of UCR data prior to 1960 and for weapon specific data. *Id.*

KnifeRights MSJ App.000596

1997	6.8	0.87	186.2		15.83	382.1	68.40
1998	6.3	0.84	165.5		14.56	361.4	66.50
1999	5.7	0.75	150.1		12.61	334.3	59.51
2000	5.5	0.74	145		12.18	324	58.32

Thus, as we see from the above chart, the murder rate with knives almost doubled between 1960 and 1980, the rate of aggravated assaults with a knife doubled between 1965 and 1990, and the rate of knife use in armed robbery remained relatively constant (although the rate of robberies using a weapon increased significantly between 1964 and 1975). Moreover, the effect on crime overall appears to be even more dismal. After 1958, violent crime of all types skyrocketed. The reasons for this are complicated and still debated by criminologists, but it is difficult to look at the huge increases in violent crime and conclude that the switchblade laws had much success in reducing crime.

Strictly speaking, of course, the above numbers do not prove anything, especially because we have nothing with which to compare these numbers. Nevertheless, these numbers provide us with a starting point and a point of comparison for individual state crime statistics. These numbers also should be viewed in conjunction with the rate at which guns were used in crime. While the assault and murder rates with knives increased throughout the 1960s and '70s, the use of guns in crime increased even faster. This is shown in Table 2.

TABLE 2: PERCENTAGE OF GUNS AND KNIVES USED IN MURDER IN U.S. 1961–2012

Year	% Guns	% Knives	Year	% Guns	% Knives
1961	52.5	24.1	1987	59.1	20.3
1962	54.2	24.2	1988	60.7	19.1
1963	56.0	22.8	1989	62.4	18.2
1964	55	24	1990	64.1	17.5
1965	57.2	23.0	1991	65.4	16.2
1966	59.3	22.3	1992	68.1	14.5
1967	63.6	20.0	1993	69.6	12.8
1968	65.4	18.7	1994	70.0	12.7
1969	64.5	19.9	1995	68.0	13.0
1970	65.4	18.9	1996	67.8	13.5
1971	65.1	19.8	1997	67.8	12.8
1972	66.2	19.0	1998	64.9	13.3
1973	67.0	17.8	1999	65.2	13.2
1974	67.9	17.6	2000	65.6	13.5
1975	65.8	17.7	2001	63.4	13.1
1976	63.8	17.8	2002	66.7	12.6
1977	62.5	19.1	2003	66.9	12.6
1978	63.6	18.8	2004	66.0	13.2
1979	63.3	19.2	2005	68.0	12.9
1980	62.4	19.3	2006	67.9	12.2
1981	62.4	19.4	2007	68.0	12.1
1982	60.2	20.9	2008	66.9	13.4
1983	58.3	21.8	2009	67.1	13.4

1984	58.4	21.2	2010	67.5	13.1
1985	58.7	21.1	2011	67.7	13.4
1986	59.1	20.5	2012	69.3	12.4

Between 1961 and 2012, the percentage of guns used in murder increased from one year to the next thirty-one times, and in those thirty-one years, the percentage of knives used in murder decreased twenty-four times. Similarly, the percentage of guns used in murder decreased from one year to the next eighteen times, and in those eighteen years when gun usage decreased as a percent of murder, knife usage increased fifteen times. In the three years when gun use in murder was unchanged (1981, 1987 and 1997), the change in knife usage was either .2 or less. Thus, there is a strong statistical correlation between use of guns and knives in murder: when gun use goes up, knife use usually falls, and vice versa. It is not a precise 1:1 correlation. During the late 1960s and early 1970s, gun violence was increasing even faster than knife violence. Even so, the combined total percent of knives and guns used in murder has been remarkably consistent at around 80%, with the lowest combined total at 76.5% and the highest at 85.5%.

In 1961, the U.S. murder rate was 4.8 per 100,000; the rate peaked in 1980 at 10.2. So while knife use in murder decreased from 24% to 19% by weapon used, the murder rate with knives increased from 1.16 in 1961 to 1.97 in 1980 (see Table 1).

So in looking at knife violence, we need to look at knife crime in conjunction with gun crime. If we only looked at the percentage of knives used in murder, we might conclude that knife control is working because between 1961 and 2011, knife murders as a percentage fell almost in half, from 24% to 13%. However, the knife numbers only look good because there has been such a huge increase in gun violence. Moreover, insofar as knife laws may have deterred possession of dangerous knives, these laws may have encouraged criminals to turn to guns (as opposed to even less dangerous weapons, or no weapon at all).

TABLE 3: PERCENT OF GUNS AND KNIVES USED IN AGGRAVATED ASSAULT IN THE U.S. 1965–2012

Year	% Guns	% Knives	Year	% Guns	% Knives
1965	N/A	N/A	1989	21.5	19.9
1966	18.8	33.6	1990	23.1	19.5
1967	20.9	32.8	1991	23.6	18.4
1968	23.1	31.0	1992	24.7	18.2
1969	23.8	29.8	1993	25.1	17.6
1970	24.3	28.0	1994	24.0	17.8
1971	25.1	27.0	1995	22.9	18.3
1972	25.3	26.3	1996	22.0	18.1
1973	25.7	24.6	1997	20.0	17.9
1974	25.4	24.2	1998	18.8	18.4
1975	24.9	23.5	1999	18.0	17.8

KnifeRights MSJ App.000598

1976	23.6	23.5	2000	18.1	18.0
1977	23.2	23.2	2001	18.3	17.8
1978	22.4	22.6	2002	19.0	17.8
1979	23.0	22.5	2003	19.1	18.2
1980	23.9	22.0	2004	19.3	18.6
1981	23.6	22.0	2005	21.0	18.9
1982	22.4	23.2	2006	21.9	18.7
1983	21.2	23.9	2007	21.4	18.8
1984	21.1	23.2	2008	21.4	18.9
1985	21.3	22.7	2009	20.9	18.7
1986	21.3	22.0	2010	20.6	19.0
1987	21.4	21.4	2011	21.2	19.1
1988	21.1	20.5	2012	21.7	18.7

TABLE 4: PERCENT OF GUNS AND KNIVES USED IN ROBBERY IN THE U.S. 1973–2012

Year	% Guns	% Knives	Year	% Guns	% Knives
1973	N/A	N/A	1993	42.4	10.0
1974	44.7	13.1	1994	41.6	9.5
1975	44.8	12.4	1995	41.0	9.1
1976	42.7	13.0	1996	40.7	9.0
1977	41.6	13.2	1997	39.7	8.5
1978	40.8	12.7	1998	38.2	8.8
1979	39.7	13.2	1999	39.9	8.4
1980	40.3	12.9	2000	40.9	8.4
1981	40.1	13.1	2001	42.0	8.7
1982	39.9	13.6	2002	42.1	8.7
1983	36.7	13.6	2003	41.8	8.9
1984	35.8	13.4	2004	40.6	8.9
1985	35.3	13.3	2005	42.1	8.8
1986	34.3	13.5	2006	42.2	8.6
1987	33.0	13.5	2007	42.8	8.3
1988	33.4	13.6	2008	43.5	7.7
1989	33.2	13.4	2009	42.6	7.7
1990	36.6	12.0	2010	41.4	7.9
1991	39.9	11.0	2011	41.3	7.8
1992	40.3	10.6	2012	41.0	7.8

We see that the use of knives or cutting instruments in armed robbery is fairly low. Between 1974 and 1989, knives were used relatively consistently in about 13% of robberies. Of course, the robbery rate increased substantially during this time, so the actual numbers of robberies with knives increased. Nevertheless, given the relatively small percent of knives used in robbery, knife legislation is unlikely to have a serious effect on robbery.

There is a noticeable drop in the rate of knife use in robbery beginning in 1990, and during this period the rate of robbery overall also decreased substantially. There were no significant knife laws passed anywhere in the late 1980s or early 90s that would have affected knife use, so the apparent reason for the decline was the increased use of firearms. During the 1980s the percent of robberies with guns was consistently in the low to mid 30%

KnifeRights MSJ App.000599

range. This percentage of gun robberies increased substantially after 1990. This again suggests that the availability of guns is the single greatest factor affecting use of knives in crime.[138] The conclusion to be drawn from this data is that unless the government can effectively keep guns out of the hands of criminals, reducing the availability of knives is unlikely to be effective.

VII. INDIVIDUAL CASE STUDIES: OREGON, FLORIDA, AND NEW HAMPSHIRE

A. Oregon

Oregon banned the possession of switchblades in 1957, making it one of the first states to do so.[139] Switchblades remained illegal until the Oregon Supreme Court, on December 28, 1984, declared the ban to be an unconstitutional infringement on the constitutional right to bear arms as guaranteed in the Oregon Constitution.[140]

At the same time, the Oregon Court of Appeals was considering a related provision which made it illegal to carry any knife concealed, other than an "ordinary pocket knife."[141] The court held that "ordinary" was not a meaningful distinction, and therefore all pocketknives were covered by this exception.[142] The court further held that because a switchblade is a type of pocketknife, it was not illegal to carry a concealed switchblade.[143] Within a few months, however, the legislature amended the statute, making it illegal to carry a switchblade concealed, and this restriction was upheld by the courts.[144] Since 1985, it has been legal in Oregon to carry a switchblade or other knife if it is not completely concealed.[145] The knife is not considered "concealed" so long as enough is visible that it is "readily identifiable as a weapon," even if most of the knife is not visible.[146] Many

[138] The correlation between knives and guns in robbery, though still significant, is less with respect to homicide and assault, primarily because from the mid-1970s through the 1980s, the percentage of gun-use fell substantially, while knife-use remained constant. Thomas B. Marvell & Carlisle E. Moody, *Specification Problems, Police Levels, and Crime Rates*, 34 CRIMINOLOGY, NO. 4. 609 (1996).

[139] State v. Delgado, 692 P.2d at 614 n.7.

[140] *Id.* at 614.

[141] State v. Pruett*,* 586 P.2d 800, 801 (1978*)*.

[142] *Id.* (noting that it is not "reasonable to uphold a statute by determining as a matter of Law that a particular knife is as a matter of Fact "an ordinary pocket knife." . . . [because] [t]hat leaves the statute even less certain of meaning").

[143] State v. Ramer, 671 P.2d 723, 724 (Or. Ct. App. 1983).

[144] State v. Smoot, 775 P.2d 344, 345 (Or. Ct. App. 1989) (upholding statute banning concealed carry of switchblades).

[145] State v. Johnson, 772 P.2d 426 (Or. Ct. App. 1989)

[146] State v. Turner, 191 P.3d 697, 701 (Or. Ct. App. 2008). This seems to differ from the statutes of other states that consider switchblades *per se* dangerous weapons. Even states where switchblades

KnifeRights MSJ App.000600

switchblades and other pocketknives are now designed with a pocket/belt clip to allow them to be carried so that they are open to view. Thus, a switchblade could be carried with a pocket clip so that just the top of the knife is visible, so it would be impossible to tell that it was a switchblade.

Whether the open carry requirement has any effect on crime is arguable. In theory, if a knife is carried openly, then potential victims, or police, know about the threat and can protect themselves better. It might be true that some people who do not want to display a knife will choose to carry an "ordinary" pocketknife which they can legally carry concealed. While the open carry requirement might deter some people from carrying switchblades, if these knives are so valuable to criminals as opponents claim, it is hard to imagine that a ban on concealed carry will dissuade many would-be criminals.

There are a surprisingly large number of knife manufacturers in Oregon. Benchmade Knives is one of the largest domestic producers of switchblades. Benchmade started operations in California but set up a factory in Oregon in 1990, apparently to take advantage of the growing market for switchblades there.[147] Kershaw Knives, founded in Tualatin, Oregon in 1974, advertises a wide variety of switchblades.[148] Although it is unclear how quickly knife manufacturers were able to flood the Oregon market, certainly by the late 1980s switchblades were quite common in Oregon.

If we look at the overall rate of violent crime in Oregon, the state has long had an admirably low rate of violent crime. Violent crime in Oregon peaked in the mid-1980s and has declined dramatically ever since. Aggravated assault as a percent of the national average peaked in 1985, although it increased only 3% from the previous year. Murder as a percent of the national average peaked in 1986, and armed robbery in 1987. Table 5 shows the rate of aggravated assault, robbery, and homicide in Oregon from 1971 to 2000.

TABLE 5: RATE OF AGGRAVATED ASSAULT, ROBBERY, AND HOMICIDE IN OREGON 1971–2000

Year	Agr. Assault Rate	Agr. Assault % of National	Robbery Rate	Robbery % of National	Homicide Rate	Homicide % of National
1971	157.7	89.20%	110.4	58.72%	3.2	37.65%

are not banned entirely, but are considered dangerous weapons, it appears to be illegal to carry them in any way that disguises the fact that they are switchblades. For example, the West Virginia statute provides, "A deadly weapon is concealed when it is carried on or about the person in such a manner that another person in the ordinary course of events would not be placed on notice that the deadly weapon was being carried." W.VA. CODE § 61-7-2 (2010).

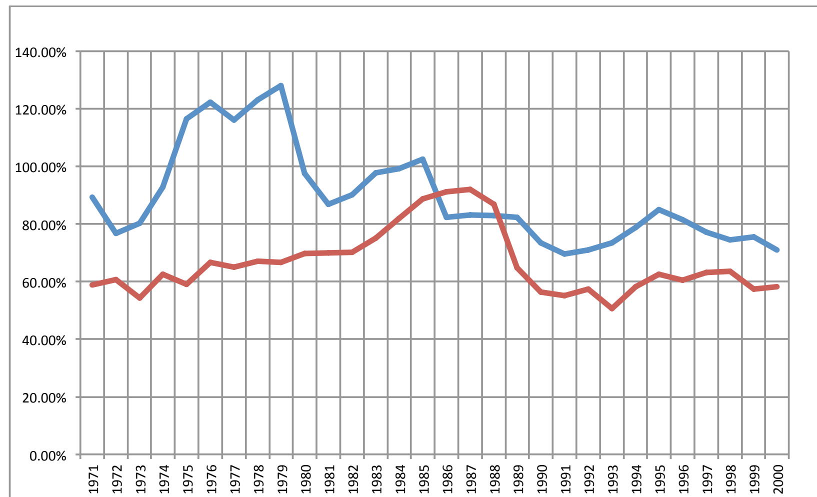
[147] *See* BENCHMADE KNIFE COMPANY, *supra* note 115.

[148] *See* KERSHAW STORE, http://perma.cc/S7RE-3FDF (last visited Feb. 26, 2014).

KnifeRights MSJ App.000601

1972	143.1	76.69%	109.5	60.60%	5.5	61.80%
1973	159	80.14%	99.4	54.29%	4.9	52.69%
1974	198.7	92.76%	130.8	62.49%	5.6	57.73%
1975	269.4	116.57%	130.3	59.02%	6.2	64.58%
1976	285	122.21%	132.7	66.58%	4.2	47.73%
1977	286.9	116.15%	124.1	65.08%	5.1	57.95%
1978	325	123.00%	131.1	66.96%	5	55.56%
1979	366.2	128.04%	130.6	66.70%	4.2	43.30%
1980	291.4	97.62%	152.4	69.78%	5.1	50.00%
1981	251.9	86.84%	180.6	69.90%	4.4	44.90%
1982	260.6	90.11%	167.3	70.06%	5.1	56.04%
1983	273	97.78%	170.3	75.12%	4.1	49.40%
1984	287.8	99.17%	168.6	81.96%	4.8	60.76%
1985	**310.1**	**102.38%**	**185.6**	**88.68%**	**4.7**	**58.75%**
1986	286.1	82.35%	205.9	91.10%	6.6	76.74%
1987	292.2	83.18%	196	91.89%	5.6	67.50%
1988	307.2	82.98%	193	86.90%	5.1	60.00%
1989	315.4	82.27%	151.8	64.79%	4.8	55.17%
1990	311.8	73.52%	144.3	56.30%	3.8	40.43%
1991	301.5	69.58%	150.1	55.04%	4.6	46.94%
1992	313.5	70.96%	151.4	57.41%	4.7	50.54%
1993	323.7	73.52%	129.6	50.63%	4.6	48.42%
1994	337.2	78.86%	138.2	58.12%	4.9	54.44%
1995	355.8	85.06%	137.9	62.43%	4.1	50.00%
1996	318.6	81.50%	122.2	60.53%	4	54.05%
1997	295.1	77.23%	117.5	63.10%	2.9	42.65%
1998	268.5	74.48%	105.2	63.56%	3.8	60.03%
1999	252.6	75.56%	86.2	57.43%	2.7	47.37%
2000	229.9	70.96%	84.4	58.21%	2	36.36%

TABLE 5A: AGGRAVATED ASSAULT AND ROBBERY IN OREGON AS A PERCENT OF NATIONAL AVERAGE RATE 1971–2000



1. Aggravated Assault

From 1975 through 1983, the rate of aggravated assault in Oregon was 289.9 per 100,000 inhabitants. From 1985 through 1990, the rate of aggravated assault rose 4.8% to 303.8 per 100,000. However, during this same period, the national rate of aggravated assault rose 35.3% (from 268.4 from 1975 through 1983, to 363.2 for 1985 through 1990). In the five years prior to the legalization of switchblades in Oregon, the assault rate was 94.3% of the national average, and in the five years following legalization, it declined to 86.6% of the national average. The ten year trends are even more striking. In the ten years following legalization, the aggravated assault rate in Oregon dropped to 79.96% of the national average, and continued to fall. In the ten years prior to legalization, the aggravated assault rate in Oregon was 107.75% of the national average. Thus, we see a significant decline in the Oregon aggravated assault rate in the decade following legalization, and this trend has continued ever since.

2. Robbery

The numbers for robbery tell a slightly different story, and are not as clear cut as the assault numbers. In the five years prior to legalization, the robbery rate in Oregon was 73.36% of the national average, and in the ten years prior to legalization, the rate was 69.12% of the national average. In the five years after legalization, the Oregon robbery rate increased to 84.67% of the national average, which is clearly a significant increase. However, in the following years, the robbery rate plummeted, and in the ten years following legalization the robbery rate was 70.09% of the national average. Thus, while there was a short term rise in robberies in the four years from 1985 through 1988, robberies fell hugely in 1989 and have remained well below the national average ever since. Moreover, looking at the robbery numbers for the 1980s, we see a clear trend. From 1979 through 1984, Oregon robberies rose each year from 67% to 82% of the national average. This trend continued through 1987 when it peaked at 92% of the national average, and then began to decline rapidly. Thus, the increase in the years immediately following legalization can be explained as part of a trend that preexisted the 1984 legalization decision. More convincing, however, is the long term trend which has seen almost thirty years of robbery rates well below the national average.

3. Homicide

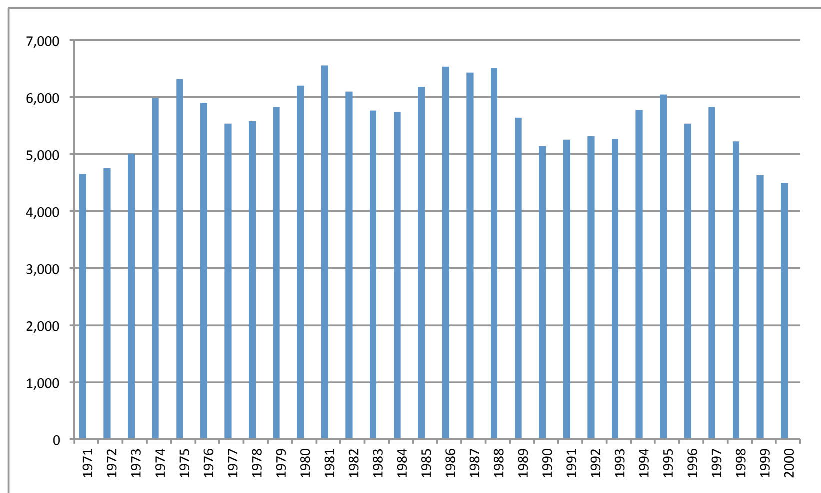
In the five years prior to legalization, the Oregon murder rate was 52.22% of the national average. In the five years following, the murder rate increased to 63.63%; however, in the next five years, the murder rate fell to 48.15% of the national average.

KnifeRights MSJ App.000603

Following within a year or two of the legalization of switchblades in Oregon, there was a substantial decrease in the rate of violent crime. Whether this decrease can be traced to legalization is questionable, but it certainly is not the result we would expect if switchblades contribute to violent crime. Because the legalization of switchblades should not affect non-violent crime, the rise or fall of non-violent crime should be independent of knife crimes. If non-violent crime were falling or remaining even during a period of time that violent crime was increasing, then this would suggest something other than just a general increase in criminal activity is responsible for the rise in violent crime. On the other hand, if non-violent crime rises and falls proportionately to violent crime, this suggests that both categories of crime are being influenced by the same factors. In other words, factors such as incarceration rates would be expected to influence both the violent and non-violent crime rates, while weapons laws should only affect the violent crime rate.

In fact, if we look at the non-violent crime rate in Oregon, we see that non-violent crime was low in the early 1980s, followed by a peak in 1988, and falling off sharply thereafter. See Table 6.

TABLE 6: RATE OF PROPERTY CRIME IN OREGON (PER 100,000) 1971–2000



Thus, the story for property crime as well as violent crime tells a consistent story. Property crime peaked in 1988, aggravated assault as a percent of the national average peaked in 1985, and the armed robbery and murder rates in Oregon in absolute terms (not as a percent of the national average) both peaked in 1986. Thus, both property and violent crime began to fall in the late 1980s, although it is significant for our study that

KnifeRights MSJ App.000604

violent crime began to decline before property crime, again a surprising result if switchblades contribute to violent crime.

Of course, to put these declines in proper perspective, we need to see if there are other factors that explain Oregon's reduction in crime in the late 1980s. Crime across the country declined dramatically beginning in the early 1990s, for reasons which are still hotly debated by criminologists.[149] The reduction in crime in Oregon appears to have presaged a reduction across the country, but it began several years earlier in Oregon. Unfortunately, there is no clear reason why this occurred. Of the various reasons suggested for reduction in crime nationally, none of them seem to apply in Oregon. Marvel and Moody, for example, have argued that having more police prevents crime.[150] But the number of police compared to the population in Oregon remained constant from 1986 to 1994, at 1.6 per 1000 residents.[151] Another factor suggested by criminologists is the incarceration rate.[152] Yet while the incarceration rate in Oregon increased rapidly in 1990 and following years, the incarceration rate was relatively constant through the 1980s, meaning this is not a plausible explanation for the sudden decrease in the mid 1980s.[153] Donohue and Levitt have argued that abortion rates have affected crime by reducing the highest criminal cohorts, pointing out that the five states that legalized abortion in 1969 or 1970 saw declines before the declines in crime began nationally.[154] But Oregon was not one of the five states to legalize abortion early, and by Donohue and Levitt's own terms, this should not have affected the crime rate in Oregon. Lott and Mustard have argued that liberalization of concealed carry laws in Oregon helped reduce crime, but the shall-issue laws in Oregon came into effect in 1990, several years after the decline began.[155]

Finally, some writers have suggested a link between crime and the

---

[149] Stephen D. Levitt, *Understanding Why Crime Fell in the 1990s: Four Factors that Explain the Decline and Six that Do Not*, 18 J. OF ECON. PERSP., NO. 1, 163–90 (Winter 2004).

[150] Thomas B. Marvell & Carlise E. Moody, *supra* note 140, at 609–46.

[151] Criminal Justice Comm'n, *Public Safety Plan* 17 (Mar. 2001), *available at* http://perma.cc/L92G-W9CN; Oregon Annual Crime Report, 1995 at 7–3, http://perma.cc/3GY3-BH8N.

[152] *See* Steven D. Levitt, *The Effect of Prison Population Size on Crime Rates: Evidence from Prison Overcrowding Litigation*, 111 THE Q. J. OF ECON. NO. 2 (1996).

[153] *Public Safety Plan*, supra note 151, at 37–38. Oregon adopted sentencing reform in November 1989 that caused incarceration rates to rise thereafter.

[154] John J. Donohue & Steven D. Levitt, *The Impact of Legalized Abortion on Crime*, 116 THE Q. J. OF ECON. NO. 2, 379, 395 (2001). The five early legalization states were Alaska, California, Hawaii, New York and Washington. Moreover, Oregon had both a lower abortion rate and a greater reduction in crime from 1985 to 1997 than either of its neighbors California and Washington. *Id.* at 398.

[155] John Lott & David Mustard, *Crime, Deterrence, and Right-to-Carry Concealed Handguns*, 26 J.LEGAL STUD. 1 (1997).

KnifeRights MSJ App.000605

economy.[156] If we look at Oregon unemployment rates, the unemployment rate peaked in Oregon in the winter of 1982 to 1983 at 21.1%. As crime continued to increase from 1982 through 1986 as the unemployment rate was falling, there appears to be no correlation between unemployment and crime in Oregon.[157] Accordingly, the reason for the decrease in crime in Oregon in the mid 1980s appears to be even more of a mystery than the nationwide decrease in crime. In fact, the Oregon Supreme Court's rulings on knives appear to be one of the few important changes in Oregon law in the mid 1980s. Obviously, this does not prove that the introduction of switchblades caused the reduction in crime, but we see no major changes in Oregon that would compensate for the introduction of switchblades, assuming such introduction was a problem.

In addition to the overall crime rates, we also have statistics on the rate at which knives were used in violent crime in Oregon. The rate of knife use in assault and robbery in Oregon follows the same pattern noted for the overall crime rate. The rate of knife assault in Oregon peaked in 1985 at 58.3, while the rate of robbery using a knife peaked in 1986 at 29.1. As a percent of the national average, knife robbery peaked a year later in 1987. In the following years, the rate of knife use in assault declined slightly, while the rate of knife use in robbery declined markedly. The rate of knife use in assault and robbery is shown in Table 7.

TABLE 7: AGGRAVATED ASSAULT AND ROBBERY USING FIREARMS AND KNIVES IN OREGON 1975–1993

Year	% Agr Assault w/ Firearm	% Agr Assault w/ Knife	Rate of Assault w/ Knife	Knife Rate as % of National	% Robbery w/ Firearm	% Robbery w/ Knife	Rate of Robbery w/ Knife	Knife Rate as % of National
1975	15.98%	14.55%	39.1	71.99%	43.00%	9.53%	12.4	45.29%
1976	16.32%	13.08%	37.0	67.52%	41.86%	11.43%	15.2	58.66%
1977	16.32%	13.08%	38.0	66.32%	39.43%	11.61%	14.3	56.81%
1978	15.61%	13.61%	43.9	74.12%	39.35%	13.32%	17.4	69.96%
1979	15.37%	13.21%	48.0	74.59%	40.22%	12.86%	16.8	58.27%
1980	19.08%	14.23%	41.0	61.05%	40.44%	12.16%	18.5	57.10%
1981	21.24%	17.61%	44.4	69.76%	36.97%	11.88%	21.5	63.52%
1982	20.09%	17.85%	46.5	69.35%	36.10%	12.02%	20.1	61.88%
1983	18.98%	16.75%	46.0	68.88%	33.62%	11.02%	18.9	64.13%
1984	18.72%	18.37%	52.9	78.46%	30.95%	11.87%	20.1	72.93%
1985	20.26%	18.70%	58.3	84.48%	30.64%	13.20%	24.6	88.36%
1986	19.20%	19.54%	55.6	72.75%	32.34%	14.16%	29.1	95.38%
1987	19.18%	17.81%	51.8	68.59%	34.42%	14.30%	28.2	97.75%
1988	22.04%	17.29%	52.9	69.33%	34.37%	14.21%	27.4	90.70%
1989	22.57%	17.81%	57.3	75.87%	31.24%	14.30%	22.1	70.38%
1990	20.52%	17.50%	54.5	66.08%	28.64%	13.45%	19.5	63.39%

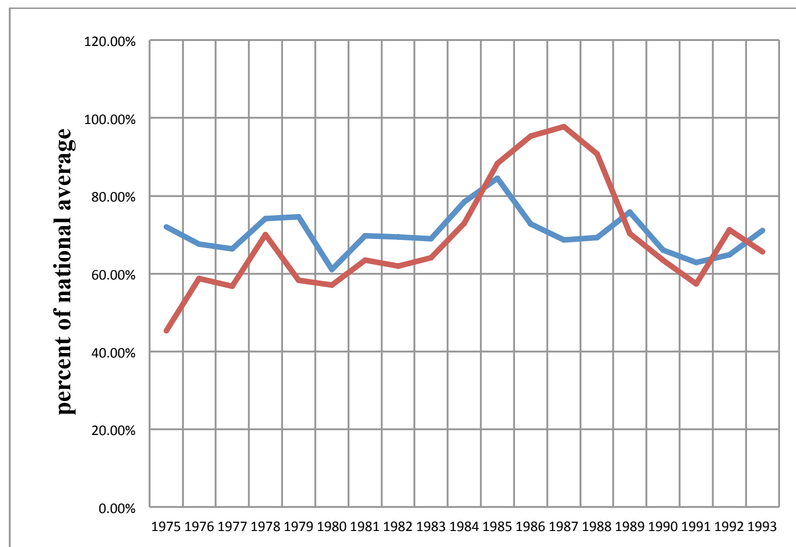
[156] *See* Levitt, *supra* note 150, at 163.

[157] *See Historical State Unemployment Rates Since 1976*, http://perma.cc/N7PR-2YDJ (last visited Feb. 26, 2014).

KnifeRights MSJ App.000606

1991	20.67%	18.31%	50.1	62.82%	28.96%	12.70%	17.2	57.33%
1992	22.32%	17.62%	52.1	64.78%	30.47%	13.30%	19.9	71.20%
1993	24.01%	16.28%	55.1	71.07%	32.49%	11.84%	16.8	65.63%

TABLE 7A: AGGRAVATED ASSAULT AND ROBBERY USING FIREARMS AND KNIVES IN OREGON 1975–1993



The rate of knife use in armed robbery is particularly striking. The use of knives in armed robbery increased quite dramatically, in the late 1970s and early 1980s, remaining high until 1988 when the knife-involved robbery rate fell sharply. So the rate of knife robbery and the percentage of robberies committed with knives was significantly higher in the four years following legalization of switchblades. In itself, this would suggest that legalization may have led to greater use of knives in robbery. However, the large declines in the rate of knife robbery in the following years suggests that legalization did not have such an effect, as it is hard to imagine why the effect of legalization would be only temporary.

Once again, we see a general correlation between use of knives and guns in armed robbery.[158] The rate of gun use in robbery declined from

[158] For nineteen years, from 1975 through 1994, in twelve of those years, the percentage of knives and guns used in armed robbery were inversely correlated (i.e. one moved down when the other moved up). In five years (1981, 1983, 1987, 1988, and 1990) both declined, while in 1986 and 1992 both went up. It is reasonable to assume that the substitution effect is stronger with respect to robbery than for assault, because robberies are more likely to be planned.

about 40% in the 1970s to about 30% in the mid 1980s and early 1990s Accordingly, part of the reason for the increase in knife use in the mid 1980s is the reduction in the use of firearms and their replacement with knives. What is most surprising is that in the late 1980s and early 1990s, the use of knives in robbery decreased, while the use of guns in robbery did not increase. So, for example, from 1975 through 1980 the rate of armed robbery using either a knife or a gun was always above 50% (averaging about 52%), while in the 1990s the rate of robbery with a knife or gun had declined to about 43%. Assuming there is a substitution factor between knives and guns, the temporary increase in the rate of knife use in robbery might be explainable if criminals in Oregon were having trouble obtaining firearms. Even if we assume the substitution effect was that fewer criminals used guns because switchblades were more readily available, that is not necessarily a bad effect, as most people consider guns to be more dangerous than knives.

If we look at the numbers for aggravated assault, in the four years preceding the legalization of switchblades, knives were used in 17.65% of aggravated assaults. In the four years following legalization, the rate of knife use in assault rose slightly to 18.34% of assaults. Not only is the increase very modest, but it is consistent with the ten year trend which showed a rise in knife use.

As a percentage of the national average, the rate of assault with knives in the ten years prior to 1985 was 70.2%, while in the following nine years the average very slightly increased to 70.64%. The assault rate with knives was 71.61% of the national average in the four years prior to 1985 and 73.79% of the national average in the four years following legalization. This is a small increase, but this is entirely attributable to one year, 1985, in which the rate peaked as a percent of the national average at 84.48%. In fact, both 1984 and 1985 saw significant increases in the rate of knife use in assault, which suggests that the increase in 1985 was part of a trend unrelated to legalization. It seems likely that the supply of switchblades in Oregon in 1985 was fairly low. With the exception of a slight two-year blip in 1984 and 1985, the rate of knife assault as a percent of the national average was consistently around 70% from 1975 through 1993.

It is also interesting to compare the rate of knife and gun use in assaults. We see less of a replacement correlation with assault than we saw with other crimes. This makes sense because many assaults will be spontaneous and unplanned using whatever weapon happens to be available. The numbers from Oregon show a steady increase in the rate of assault with both guns and knives between 1975 and 1986. From 1987 through 1993, the knife rate decreased slightly while the gun rate for assault increased slightly. One way to explain the increase in the rate of gun use in assaults is that more criminals carry guns in response to more law abiding citizens carrying switchblades. We could imagine a kind of

KnifeRights MSJ App.000608

personal arms race: if switchblades are legal, perhaps more criminals will resort to firearms. While this is a theory to be examined for other states, in Oregon, the data provides minimal support for this theory. What the trends in Oregon seem to show is that there was a general increase in the use of both guns and knives for many years prior to 1985. Moreover, 1986 and 1987 actually show a slight decrease in the rate that firearms were used in crime. Thus, we see no correlation between legalization of switchblades and the increase in gun use in assault.

The Oregon data suggests that the legalization of switchblades did not cause an increase in violent crime. The data is somewhat mixed for the first couple of years following legalization, but by the late 1980s and early 1990s, we see a clear decrease in violent crime overall, and a clear decrease in the rate of knife use in violent crime. Thus, the Oregon experiment indicates that the legalization of switchblades did not cause an increase in violent crime.

B. Florida

In 1985, the Florida legislature passed a statute providing as follows:

> It is unlawful for any person to manufacture, display, sell, own, possess, or use a ballistic self-propelled knife which is a device that propels a knifelike blade as a projectile and which physically separates the blade from the device by means of a coil spring, elastic material, or compressed gas.[159]

On its face, this does not appear to describe or apply to switchblades, but rather ballistic knives; that is, an object that shoots a knifelike blade. Indeed, according to the chief sponsor of this legislation in 1985, it was intended to cover objects that shot knife blades up to 35 feet.[160] Switchblades do not usually use a "coil spring," certainly not "elastic material," nor "compressed gas," from which the statute seems clearly to be referring to a spear-gun-like mechanism.[161]

---

[159] FLA. STAT. § 790.225 (1985).

[160] *See* House of Representatives Staff Analysis of HB 1227 at 2, *available at* http://perma.cc/5UMX-8MWN 9 (last visited Feb. 26, 2014).

[161] *See generally* State v. Darynani, 774 So. 2d 855 (Fla. Dist. Ct. App. 2000). Although the Florida Court of Appeals in *Darynani* asserted that "It is common knowledge that a switchblade operates on a coil spring or other device that springs the blade out from the handle or casing," in fact, most switchblades use a leaf spring, not a coil spring. *See Switchblade Knife LEAF SPRINGS,* http://perma.cc/AC39-57F4 (last visited Feb. 26, 2014). However, some traditional switchblades do not use a coil spring. *Switchblade Knife COIL SPRINGS*, http://perma.cc/YAF5-SRBZ (last visited Feb. 26, 2014). Ballistic knives, however, use a coil spring or sometimes compressed gas. *Ballistic*

KnifeRights MSJ App.000609

It is not entirely clear when the state began using this statute to prosecute people for possession of switchblades, but in 2000 Pariya Darynani was prosecuted for selling switchblades at a flea market.[162] Darynani argued that the statute did not cover switchblades.[163] The trial court ruled that they did not know exactly what the statute covered so any prosecution under the statute was unconstitutional because it did not give owners of switchblades fair notice that such objects are illegal.[164] The Court of Appeals in a unanimous, per curiam decision, reversed the trial court, declaring that "it seems apparent the Legislature intended to distinguish switchblade knives from folding-type knives that require manual and deliberate removal of the knife blade from the handle or casing."[165] As a result, the court interpreted the statute to ban all switchblades, including knives equipped with a leaf spring, and the court's language could even be interpreted to ban gravity knives, although there are no reported cases of prosecution for gravity knives in Florida.

In 2003, the Florida legislature amended the statute to clarify that the projectile in question must physically separate from the knife, thereby legalizing switchblades.[166] The bill was passed unanimously by both houses of the legislature and signed by the governor in June of 2003.[167] The statute now reads: "This section shall not apply to: (a) Any device from which a knifelike blade opens, where such blade remains physically integrated with the device when open."[168]

Aside from once again illustrating that courts and citizens do not know what to make of such statutes, the benefit of this story for a researcher is that we have a clear date at which switchblades were legalized. Although it is unclear how many prosecutions there were under this statute or when they began precisely, spring-operated switchblades were clearly illegal between the time the Court of Appeals ruled in 2000 and the legislature changed the law in 2003. Other than apparently not being able to carry a concealed switchblade, there are no other restrictions on adults owning or

---

Knife, WIKIPEDIA, Feb. 12, 2014 5:45PM, http://perma.cc/S6MJ-3EB6. There is no indication that the knife in the *Darynani* case had a coil spring.

[162] *Darynan,i* at 857–58 (Fla. Dist. Ct. App. 2000).

[163] *Id.*

[164] *Id.* at 857. In legal terms, he argued that the statute was unconstitutionally vague.

[165] *Id.* at 858. The Court did not look at legislative history which might have resolved this issue. A per curiam opinion (literally "by the court") means the opinion was unsigned and usually means the court did not take the argument very seriously and could dismiss it without much discussion. Had they checked the legislative history the meaning of the statute would have been clear.

[166] *House of the Rep. Staff Analysis of HB 1227*, *available at* http://perma.cc/QDU4-U5QK (last visited Feb. 26, 2014).

[167] *Id.*

[168] FL. STAT. § 790.225 (2013).

KnifeRights MSJ App.000610

carrying switchblades in Florida.[169] There are a number of Florida switchblade manufacturers, making them common in that region.[170]

Of course, one could argue that the 2003 legalization might not be expected to do very much—the statute never covered "gravity knives." Without including gravity knives, a switchblade ban might be ineffective.

In any event, Florida showed a clear decline in knife use in both armed robbery and assault following the legalization of traditional switchblades in 2003. The rates from 1995 to 2011 are shown in Table 8 below.

TABLE 8: FLORIDA CRIME RATE 1995–2011

Year	Ag Assault	Ag As as % national ave.	Robbery	Rob. as % national ave.	Homicide	Homicide as % national ave.
1995	715.1	170.95%	299.9	135.76%	7.3	89.02%
1996	702.2	179.59%	289.2	143.24%	7.5	101.35%
1997	688.7	180.24%	276.1	148.28%	6.9	101.47%
1998	639.9	177.06%	242.7	146.65%	6.5	103.17%
1999	590.5	176.64%	211.6	140.97%	5.7	100.00%
2000	563.2	173.83%	199.0	137.24%	5.6	101.82%
2001	551.7	173.16%	200.7	135.15%	5.3	94.64%
2002	530.1	171.28%	195.2	133.61%	5.5	98.21%
2003	**500.6**	**169.47%**	**185.4**	**130.11%**	**5.4**	**94.74%**
2004	495.8	171.79%	172.5	126.19%	5.4	98.18%
2005	497.2	170.98%	169.6	120.45%	5.0	89.29%
2006	485.6	168.90%	188.8	126.37%	6.2	108.77%
2007	473.2	166.74%	209.1	141.67%	6.6	117.86%
2008	449.7	162.52%	196.9	135.14%	6.3	116.67%
2009	410.6	155.12%	166.7	125.24%	5.5	110.00%
2010	369.8	146.57%	138.7	116.46%	5.2	108.33%
2011	348.0	142.92%	134.4	114.77%	5.2	107.50%

Violent crime was declining throughout this period both in Florida and nationally. However, in the years 1995 through 2003, the decline in violent crime in Florida basically kept pace with the national decline, and in the years 2004 through 2011, there was a clear decrease in both aggravated assault and robbery as a percent of the national average. Interestingly, there was an increase in the murder rate of about 8% compared to the national average, which was about the same rate of decrease for aggravated assault and robbery.

[169] Other than what the statute calls a "common pocketknife," all other knives are treated equally. FL. STAT. 790.001 (2013). Unlike many states where switchblades are *per se* "deadly weapons" they are not treated as such in Florida.

[170] Microtech Knives was established in 1994 in Vero Beach, Florida and advertises a wide variety of military style switchblades. *History*, MICROTECH, http://perma.cc/3DV2-E4PX (last visited Mar. 1, 2014).

KnifeRights MSJ App.000611

TABLE 9: VIOLENT CRIME IN FLORIDA AS A PERCENT OF NATIONAL AVERAGE

	Aggravated assault	Robbery	Homicide
1995-2002 average	175.34%	140.11%	98.71%
2004-2011 average	160.69%	125.79%	107.08%

TABLE 10: RATE OF PROPERTY CRIME IN FLORIDA (PER 100,000) 1995–2011

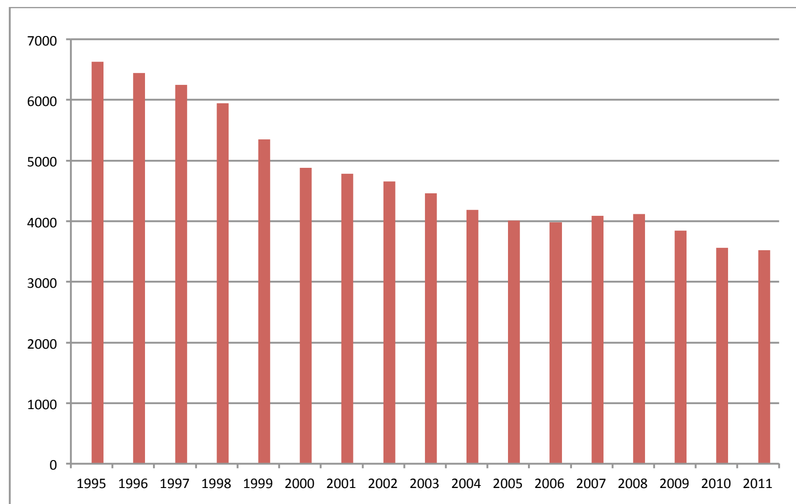
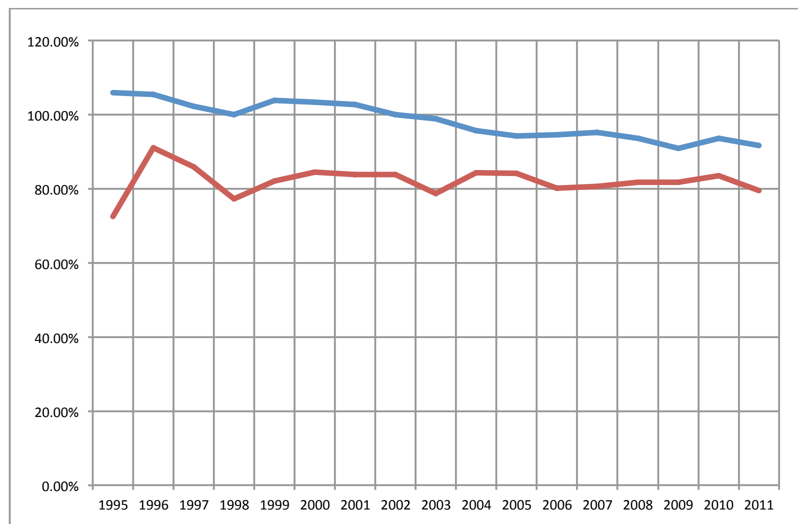


TABLE 11: FLORIDA AGGRAVATED ASSAULT USE OF FIREARMS AND KNIVES BY PERCENTAGE 1995–2011

Year	Ag Assault w/ Firearm	Ag Assault w/ Knife	Ag Assault w/ Knife as % of National	Robbery w/ Firearm	Robbery w/ Knife	Rob. w/ Knife as % of National
1995	21.9	19.4	106.01%	38.9	6.6	72.53%
1996	23.8	19.1	105.52%	40.8	8.2	91.11%
1997	20.7	18.3	102.23%	40.8	7.3	85.88%
1998	17.4	18.4	100.00%	39.5	6.8	77.27%
1999	15.3	18.5	103.93%	38.0	6.9	82.14%
2000	14.0	18.6	103.33%	37.5	7.1	84.52%
2001	14.1	18.3	102.81%	39.0	7.3	83.91%
2002	14.7	17.8	100.00%	39.0	7.3	83.91%
2003	**15.1**	**18.0**	98.90%	**39.0**	**7.0**	78.65%
2004	15.7	17.8	95.70%	38.3	7.5	84.27%
2005	17.1	17.8	94.18%	39.7	7.4	84.09%
2006	18.3	17.7	94.65%	42.0	6.9	80.23%
2007	20.2	17.9	95.21%	46.9	6.7	80.72%
2008	20.2	17.7	93.65%	46.7	6.3	81.82%
2009	19.8	17.0	90.91%	44.2	6.3	81.82%
2010	19.2	17.8	93.68%	42.6	6.6	83.54%
2011	19.8	17.5	91.62%	42.0	6.2	79.49%

KnifeRights MSJ App.000612

TABLE 11A: AGGRAVATED ASSAULT AND ROBBERY IN FLORIDA AS A PERCENT OF NATIONAL AVERAGE 1995–2011



Florida shows a clear decline in knife use for armed robbery and assault, both in the rate per 100,000 and as a percent of the national average.

With respect to aggravated assault, in the eight years prior to 2003 the average rate of knife use was 18.55%, and in the eight years after it was 17.64% (a decline of 4.9%). With respect to robbery, in the eight years prior to 2003 the rate of knife use was 7.19%, and in the eight years after it was 6.74% (a decline of 6.3%).[171] These decreases are not huge, to be sure, and they are accompanied by an increase in the use of firearms. One explanation for the decrease in knife use as a percentage of crime is that criminals had wider access to firearms and preferred firearms to knives, switchblade or not. Certainly the numbers indicate that wider availability of switchblades in Florida did not lead to wider use of knives in violent crime.

Moreover, the percentage at which knives were used in robbery and assaults in Florida is well below the national average. The national average of cutting instruments used in aggravated assaults was 18.84% between 2004 through 2011, while in Florida it was 17.64%. Between 1995 and 2002, on average knives in the United States were used in

[171] If we used 2001 through 2003 as the comparison years (because of uncertainty regarding how strenuously the law was enforced prior to 2000), the numbers would be virtually identical and show a slight decline.

18.01% of aggravated assaults. The 4.9% drop in knife usage in Florida in the eight years following legalization is all the more dramatic when noting that nationally, knife use in aggravated assaults actually increased by about 5%. To put this in further perspective, it should be noted that gun use in aggravated assaults in Florida rose from 17.74% in the eight years before legalization to 18.9% in the years following, although this rise was almost identical to the rise seen on the national level over the same period (which rose from 19.64% to 20.7%). Thus, when compared to the national average, we see the rate of gun usage in aggravated assault remaining about the same but a significant decrease in use of knives. This is surely not the result one would expect if switchblades were heavily used in violent crime.

The national average for use of cutting instruments in robbery between 2004 and 2011 was 8.21%, while in Florida the rate was only 6.74%. In contrast, the rate of gun usage in Florida is only slightly higher than in the United States as a whole, 42.8% compared to 42.06% between 2004 and 2011. Although it should be noted that the rate of knife-involved robbery in Florida has been constantly lower than the national average, which has also been declining. The national rate of knife usage in robbery between 1995 and 2003 averaged 8.72%. Thus, the national average declined 5.8% while Florida declined 6.3%, just barely beating the national average. Using the national average as a comparison, the decline in use of knives in Florida robberies suggests that the legalization of switchblades had little effect on the use of knives in robbery.

C. New Hampshire

Although New Hampshire legalized switchblades only in May of 2010,[172] it presents something of a unique case that makes it worthwhile to examine, despite limited data. For one thing, the Northeast consistently has higher rates of knife use in violent crime than other parts of the country.[173] While the reasons for this are not entirely clear, two factors are clearly relevant. Most states in the Northeast have strict gun control, and these laws may have made it more difficult for criminals to acquire guns, and therefore they turn to knives as an alternative. Conversely, the lower overall ownership of firearms in the northeast means that victims of crime are less likely to be armed with a gun, and therefore criminals may not

[172] H.B. 1665-FN, (N.H. 2010), *available at* http://perma.cc/7YZ-AL5Y.

[173] In 2012, for example, the Northeast region, as defined by the FBI Uniform Crime Reports, showed that knives were used in 15.4% of homicides; in 22.7% assaults; and in 10.1% robberies. All three categories were higher than the other three regions (South, Midwest, and West). *See Uniform Crime Reports (2012)*, FBI, *available at* http://perma.cc/6UAQ-8FDV (last visited Mar. 6, 2014). Prior year UCR report similar results. *See Uniform Crime Reports*, FBI, *available at* http://perma.cc/3F3E-G4GK (last visited Mar. 6, 2014).

KnifeRights MSJ App.000614

Case 4:23-cv-00547-O Document 20-3 Filed 10/06/23 Page 66 of 462 PageID 739

think they need more powerful weapons. The second factor is that there appears to be a long culture of knife use in northeastern cities such as New York, Boston, and Philadelphia.

New Hampshire, like other northeastern states, has knife crime rates that are much higher than the national average. Thus, in many ways, New Hampshire is the polar opposite of Oregon. Oregon never seems to have had a serious problem with knife crime, and so legalization of switchblades in Oregon may be expected to have little effect on crime. In the northeast, where knife use is more prevalent, we would expect to see a greater effect on crime rates from legalization.

The New Hampshire Act became effective May 18, 2010.[174] The new statute not only repealed the provision prohibiting possession of a switchblade, but also removed any restriction on carrying concealed knives.[175] It should also be noted that in 2011, the legislature passed a further provision which prevented any local government from restricting knives.[176] There are a number of companies in New Hampshire that are advertising switchblades for sale.[177]

In the short time since the legalization of switchblades and the end of all restrictions on knife carry, knife violence in New Hampshire has shown a marked decline, although violent crime and property crime have risen.

Table 12 shows the crime rate in New Hampshire from 2001 through 2012. Tables 14 and 15 show the rate of knife violence in assaults and robberies from 2005 through 2012.

TABLE 12: NEW HAMPSHIRE ASSAULT AND ROBBERY RATES 2001–2012

Year	Ag Assault	Ag Assault as % of National	Robbery	Robbery as % of National
2001	97.2	30.51%	35.3	23.77%
2002	93.0	30.05%	32.4	22.18%
2003	77.8	26.34%	37.2	26.11%
2004	93.8	32.50%	38.5	28.16%
2005	74.3	25.55%	27.9	19.82%
2006	93.9	32.66%	34.7	23.23%
2007	82.8	29.18%	33.4	22.63%
2008	97.5	35.24%	32.1	22.03%
2009	95.2	35.97%	34.3	25.77%
2010	100.4	39.79%	34.3	28.80%
2011	118.2	49.03%	36.0	31.66%
2012	118.7	48.15%	38.9	33.45%

[174] H.B. 1665-FN, (N.H. 2010), *available at* http://perma.cc/7YZ-AL5Y.

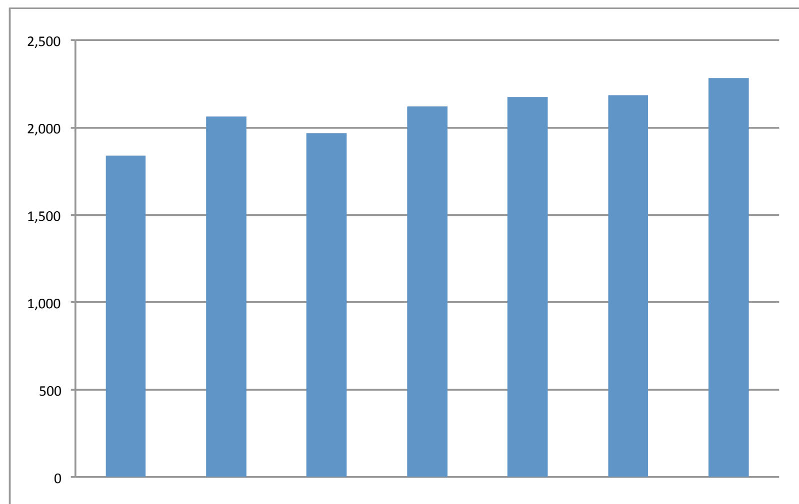
[175] Felons are still prohibited from carrying any concealed weapon, however.

[176] H.B. 544 (N.H. 2011), *available at* http://perma.cc/99AK-MH8D.

[177] White Mountain Knives, in Barrington, advertises a small selection of switchblades. WHITE MOUNTAIN KNIVES, http://perma.cc/D6TA-S9W3 (last visited Feb. 19, 2014). Highlander Arms in Spofford advertises it is a distributor of Benchmade knives. HIGHLANDER ARMS, http://perma.cc/5X3C-V3MY (last visited Feb. 19, 2014).

KnifeRights MSJ App.000615

TABLE 13: NEW HAMPSHIRE PROPERTY CRIME RATE PER 100,000 2005–2011



We see a small but steady increase in property crime in New Hampshire between 2005 and 2011. This suggests that part of the increase in violent crime is explained by the same causes of the increase in property crime. While the robbery rate increase is consistent with the increase in property crime, the rate of increase in aggravated assaults for 2011 is substantially higher than the increase in property crime.

TABLE 14: NEW HAMPSHIRE USE OF KNIVES OR CUTTING INSTRUMENTS IN AGGRAVATED ASSAULT 2005–2012

Year	Total Ag Assaults in NH	Ag Assaults w/ Gun	Ag Assaults w/ Knife	% of Ag Assaults w/ Knife	% of National
2005	825	112	286	34.7%	183.60%
2006	884	140	309	35%	187.17%
2007	713	130	233	32.7%	173.94%
2008	1,023	167	343	33.6%	177.78%
2009	1,151	191	392	34%	181.82%
2010	**1,220**	**202**	**401**	**32.9%**	**173.16%**
2011	1,435	171	409	28.6%	149.74%
2012	1,386	177	406	29.3%	156.35%

Admittedly, two full years of data is of limited value statistically, but the first year of switchblade legalization in New Hampshire (2010) saw a decline in the rate of knife use in aggravated assaults. In the two following years, there was a dramatic decline in the rate at which knives were used in assaults. Between 2005 and 2009, knives or cutting instruments were used

KnifeRights MSJ App.000616

in 34% of assaults. There was a slight decline in 2010, but in 2011 and 2012 the percentage was 28.95%, which is a drop of 15% in the rate at which knives were used in assaults over the prior five-year period. Surprisingly, there was also a significant decline in the use of firearms in assault in 2011 and 2012. The rate of knife use compared to the national average declined from 180.62% to 153.05% of the national average in the five years prior to 2011 and 2012. A decrease in the rate of both knives and guns in aggravated assaults in the two and a half years following legalization and concealed carry of all types of knives is certainly not what we would expect if switchblades were a serious criminal problem.

The New Hampshire numbers are particularly interesting because the overall assault rate in these years increased (actually doubling from 2007 to 2011), but the rate of knife assault has declined. On the one hand, it could be argued that if the overall assault rate increased, the experiment with legalizing switchblades was a failure, as the obvious goal is not just to reduce knife crime but to reduce all crime. In this instance, however, we can see that the crime rate was trending up prior to legalization, and nonviolent crime also rose, suggesting that legalization was probably not responsible for the increase of assaults. What is more interesting is that despite the fact that switchblades and other concealed knives were more prevalent on the streets of New Hampshire, this did not result in these knives being used more frequently in assault.

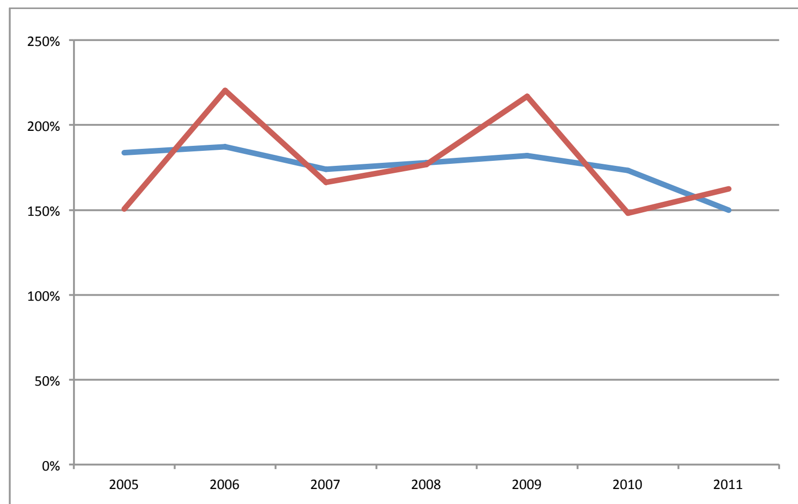
TABLE 15: NEW HAMPSHIRE USE OF KNIVES OR CUTTING INSTRUMENTS IN ROBBERY 2005–2012

Year	Total Robbery in NH	Rob. w/ Guns	Rob. w/ Knife	% of Rob. w/ Knife	% of National
2005	332	75	44	13.25%	150.57%
2006	380	75	72	18.95%	220.35%
2007	174	44	24	13.79%	166.14%
2008	353	76	48	13.60%	176.62%
2009	431	85	72	16.71%	217.01%
2010	427	94	50	11.71%	148.10%
2011	450	111	57	12.67%	162.44%
2012	454	104	65	14.32%	184.06%

With respect to armed robbery, we have a small sample size, and while the numbers are not as dramatic as for assault, there is a significant decrease in the rate of knife use in robberies. From 2005 through 2009, an average 15.26% of robberies used knives in New Hampshire. Obviously there was a huge decrease in 2010, but even 2011 and 2012 averaged 13.5%. As a percent of the national rate, New Hampshire averaged 186.14% from 2005 to 2009, and there is a clear decline in the use of knives in armed robbery following legalization.

KnifeRights MSJ App.000617

TABLE 15A: NEW HAMPSHIRE KNIFE USE IN AGGRAVATED ASSAULT AND ROBBERY AS A PERCENT OF NATIONAL AVERAGE 2005–2011



Again, with the caveat that two and half years is not a very large sample size, we see a clear decline in the rate of knife use in robbery and assault. Yet, at this same time there was a significant increase in overall crime as well as an uptick in the use of firearms used in robbery in 2010 and 2011. From 2005 through 2009, firearms were used 21.77% of robberies, and this percentage increased to 22.01% in 2010 and 24.67% in 2011. Although long-term trends remain unknown, this uptick in the use of firearms could be a result of the legalization of the possession and concealed carry of knives. If robbers are concerned that victims may be armed with knives, robbers may be arming themselves with guns in response. It is harder to explain the increase in crime as a reaction to the legalization of knives and concealed carry of knives. If the rate of knife usage declines, even if they are replaced by guns, there is no apparent reason that should increase in the total number of crimes.

Of course, it is entirely possible that the increase in crime in 2010 through 2012 is simply unrelated to the legalization of knives. This theory is supported by the fact that there was a trend of increasing assault and robbery in New Hampshire in the three years preceding the legalization, and there is a clear trend of increasing property crime during these years.

With respect to homicide, the number of murders each year in New Hampshire is so small that the statistics are not very useful. However, the reader may be interested to know that on average from 2005 through 2009 there were 12.2 homicides per year in New Hampshire and a knife was used in 31.15% of the cases. In 2010, the rate of knife use in murder in

KnifeRights MSJ App.000618

New Hampshire increased to 38.46%, and in 2011 fell to 25.0%, and 21.4% in 2012.[178]

D. Missouri

Missouri legalized switchblades in July 2012, but news accounts suggest people began purchasing switchblades in large numbers that year.[179] We obviously have extremely limited data for Missouri, and while statistically these numbers are not worth much weight, the following table shows the crime rate for knife use in the Show-Me State for 2012 compared to earlier years.

TABLE 16: MISSOURI USE OF KNIVES OR CUTTING INSTRUMENTS IN CRIME[180]

	Ag Assault w/ Knife	Robbery w/ Knife	Murder w/ Knife
2012	13.13%	5.81%	7.46%
Prior 5 years	13.40%	5.60%	9.04%

Again the reader is cautioned not to put much weight on these numbers, especially as one would not expect a partial year of legalization to have much effect. Despite this, there is very little change in the knife use in assault or robbery, and while the rate of use in homicide is significant, there were only 29 knife murders in Missouri in 2012.

E. Arizona

Before concluding this article, a brief comment on Arizona is in order. As noted earlier, Arizona legalized carrying any concealed weapon, either a firearm or anything else, without a permit.[181] Although switchblades had been legal, this law made them easier to carry. Therefore, this general concealed carry law only incidentally affected knife owners.[182] Moreover, the effect on knife use seems likely to be overshadowed by the more significant change in permitting concealed carry of firearms without a permit. Presumably, if a would-be criminal can legally carry a knife or a

---

[178] *Uniform Crime Reports 2012, Table 20*, FBI, *available at* http://perma.cc/CN9Y-U3Y5 (last visited Mar. 6, 2014). While there was a decrease in the rate of knife use in homicide, the samples are so small, the author would not wish to place any emphasis on the murder rate.

[179] Michael D. Sorkin, *Pocket knife sales soar on renewed popularity*, ST. LOUIS POST DISPATCH, Dec. 30, 2012, *available at* http://perma.cc/5RSM-8DNP.

[180] Based on data from the Uniform Crime Reports, 2007–2012. *See Uniform Crime Reports*, FBI, *available at* http://perma.cc/V769-RLRM (last visited Mar. 1, 2014).

[181] Lacey, *supra* note 6, at 1; *see also* S.B. 1153 (Ariz. 2010), *available at* http://perma.cc/76LB-A8MP.

[182] *See* Kevin Kiley, *Arizona's concealed-weapon law takes effect*, ARIZ. REPUBLIC, Jul. 29, 2010, *available at* http://perma.cc/X3P8-PX2X.

KnifeRights MSJ App.000619

Case 4:23-cv-00547-O Document 20-3 Filed 10/06/23 Page 71 of 462 PageID 744

gun, then he or she would choose the gun. We would typically expect that if guns are more prevalent, then knife crime would tend to decrease anyway, so a decrease in knife crime may have more to do with an increase in gun carrying. However, some people may be far more comfortable carrying a pocketknife—even a switchblade—than carrying a gun. Thus, the law might have more effect on a knife-user than one would initially suspect. At the end of the day, however, Arizona data is difficult to interpret given the context of the law change, which might have a very small effect on knife use.

That said, I present here limited data on Arizona crime comparing knife use in crime since 2010 with the prior five years, as shown in the table below.

TABLE 17: ARIZONA USE OF KNIVES OR CUTTING INSTRUMENTS IN CRIME[183]

	Ag Assault w/ Knife	Robbery w/ Knife	Murder w/ Knife
2010-12	17.20%	9.94%	13.86%
Prior 5 years	17.06%	10.25%	11.72%

As can be seen, the effect on knife crime of the concealed weapons law on assault and on armed robbery appears quite small, with a very slight increase in knife use in assaults, and a small decrease in use of knives in robbery. These numbers suggest the new law had little effect on knife use in crime, but this is somewhat surprising given the liberalization of firearm carrying laws. One would expect to see a far larger decrease in armed robbery using knives if robbers are concerned about encountering armed citizens. Even more surprising is the increase in knife use for murder after the new law. One might have thought that the Arizona law would lead to an "arms race" where citizens and criminals become more heavily armed, but preliminary data suggests the law has not had that effect.

VIII. CONCLUSIONS

It should be emphasized that conclusions at this point are preliminary and based on limited data. As more data becomes available for New Hampshire and other states that have recently legalized switchblades, hopefully more definitive conclusions can be reached. Proponents of banning switchblades predicted that the ban would reduce crime.[184] Based

[183] Based on data from the Uniform Crime Reports, 2005–2012. *See Uniform Crime Reports*, FBI, *available at* http://perma.cc/73FQ-TFM7 (last visited Mar. 6, 2014).

[184] *Hearings on H.R. 12850 and S. 2558, supra* note 74, at 27 (statement by Mr. Pino, New York state senator).

KnifeRights MSJ App.000620

on existing data there is no evidence that switchblade bans have had any significant effect either on crime overall, or on the use of knives in crime. After the widespread banning of switchblades in the United States in the late 1950s, violent crime skyrocketed. After switchblades were legalized in Oregon and Florida, violent crime also fell. This is particularly true with respect to aggravated assault where knives are far more common than in other types of violent crime. The New Hampshire data is even more striking, because the use of knives in crime dropped significantly after legalization in a culture where knife use in crime was common, although the overall crime rate (both violent and non-violent) rose.

With respect to the rate at which knives have been used in violent crime, following the bans in the 1950s the use of knives in crime continued to increase, but the use of guns in crime increased even faster. Accordingly the decrease in the *percentage* of crimes committed with knives appears to be due to the increase in availability and use of firearms. Given the lack of solid data on the use of knives in crime during the 1950s, it is possible that the widespread criminalization of switchblades may have encouraged criminals to switch to guns. That is, while the juvenile delinquent of the 1950s carried a switchblade, the juvenile delinquents of the 1960s and '70s were more likely to carry guns.

In all three states that legalized switchblades (Oregon, Florida, and New Hampshire), there was an overall decrease in the percentage of crimes committed with knives. There are two theories with respect to these declines. First, there may simply be no relationship between legalization and decreased rate of knife use in crime. Under this theory, switchblade laws simply have no effect on criminal behavior. An alternative theory however, is that if knives are more prevalent, would-be criminals will turn to guns in order to be more heavily armed than law-abiding citizens who now may arm themselves with knives. The data from New Hampshire is consistent with this theory, although not conclusive given the limited data. In any event, there is no data showing that legalization of switchblades has caused any significant increase in the rate of knife use in crime.

The data is consistent with the observation of critics of bans that there is no practical difference between switchblades and other pocket knives. If these knives have only cosmetic differences, it makes sense that banning them or legalizing them will have little to no effect on crime.[185] Furthermore, there is no evidence of any proxy effect or utility in crime fighting that might make cosmetic differences relevant. That is to say, even cosmetic difference (like gang colors) might be a useful law

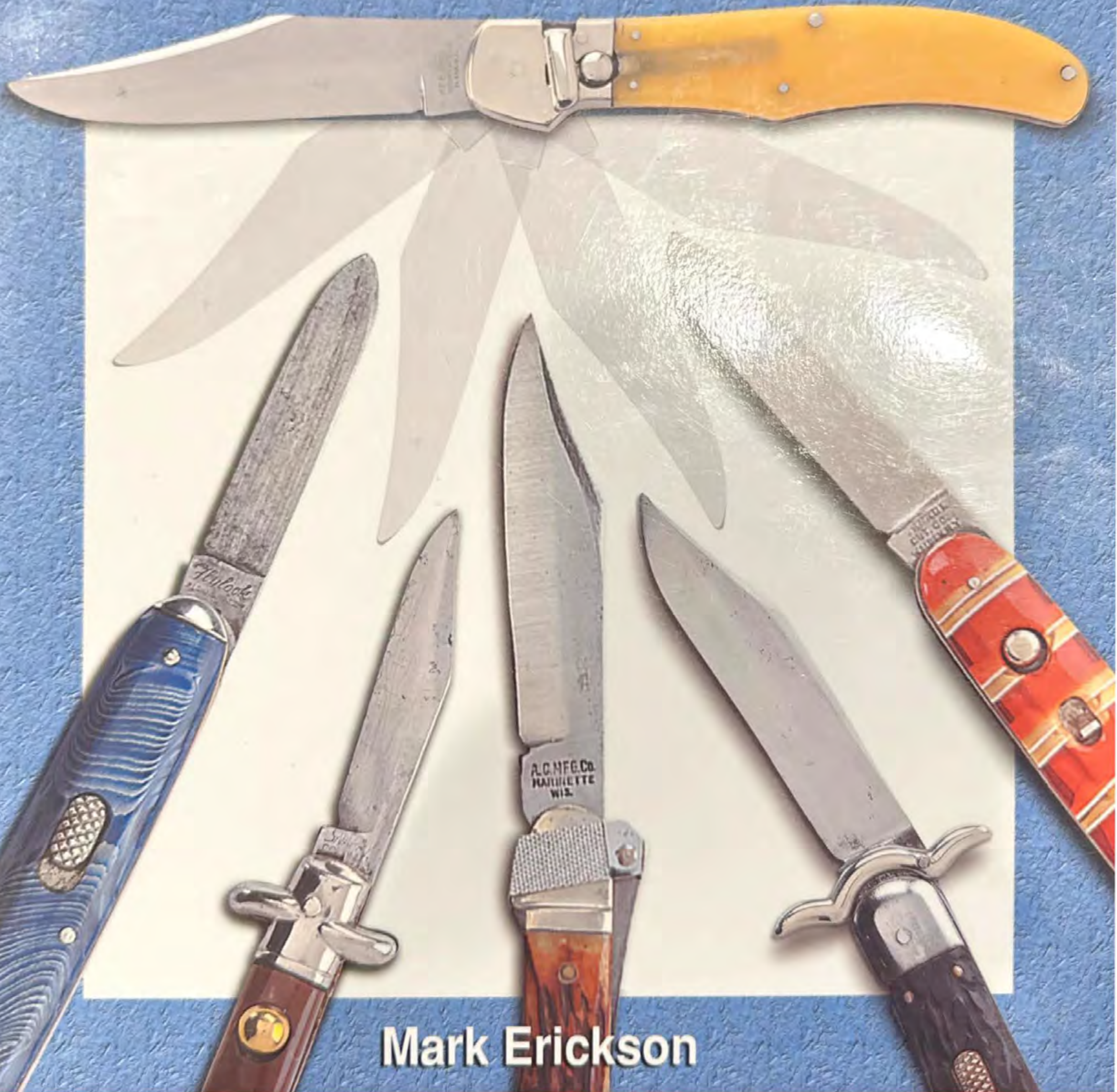
[185] Although strictly beyond the scope of this paper, this data suggest that whenever the government bans something which has readily available alternatives, or merely induces cosmetic changes to a product that there is unlikely to be any significant effect on human conduct.

KnifeRights MSJ App.000621

enforcement tool for identifying criminals and ultimately fighting crime. Such circumstances would be difficult to document statistically. There is no doubt anecdotal evidence from law enforcement that have utilized switchblade laws to arrest suspects they "just knew were up to no good." But there is no evidence from the data on the states surveyed here that such laws have any significant effect on crime.

EXHIBIT T

Antique American Switchblades



Mark Erickson

Identification & Value Guide

Contents

Introduction 6
Parts Terminology 10
Styles, Shapes & Trade Names of Blades 11
Grading Switchblade Knives 12
Blade Chart 17
Handle Chart 19
Function Chart 20
Measuring Wiggle, Droop and Wobble 21
Grading List 21
George Schrade 1860-1940 22
Manufacture Timeline 24

KNIVES

Aerial Cutlery Manufacturing Co. 25
Aerial & Olsen Knife Co. Knives 28
Automatic Knife Company 30
Bowie Knife Co. 32
Buffalo Cutlery Company 33
Camillus Cutlery Co. 34
CASE W.R. Case & Sons 36
Cattaraugus Cutlery Company 39
Challenge Cutlery Corporation 40
Colonial Knife Company 42
Crandall Cutlery Company 49
Cutino Cutlery Company 50
Edgemaster 51
E. Weck & Son 57
Flylock Knife Company 59
George Schrade Knife Co. 64
Hatch Cutlery Company 70
JCN Co. 80
KA-BAR 81
Keen Kutter 84
Keenwell Brown Mfg Co. 87
Korn's–Patent George W. Korn 89
L.L. Bean Inc. 91
Norvell–Shapleigh Hardware Co. 92
Press Button Knife 94
PRESTO 101
Queen Cutlery Company 109
R.C. Kruschke 111
Remington 113
Russell Automatic Knife Co. 115
Schrade Cutlery Company 116
Schrade Walden Cutlery Corp. 131
Schrado 137
Shapleigh Hdw Co. 138
Union Cutlery Company 141
Utica Cutlery Company 142
Wade & Butcher 143
Blade Illustration Guide 144
Celluloid 155
Patterns, Nicknames and Misc. Terminology 156
Miscellaneous Switchblade Tang Stamps 158
Trademarks, Etches & Marketing Names 159
Switchblade Manufacturers 160
Bibliography 160

Introduction

What do you think of when you hear the word switchblade? Do images of gangs from the 1950s come to mind? Maybe you think of large, intimidating Italian stilettos in the hands of dangerous criminals? Those are the images that were thrust in front of the American public by sensationalistic and narrow-minded media and politicians during the 1950s. Certain members of Congress took it upon themselves to convince everyone that these knives were to blame for much of the crime in this country. They were trying to find a way to outlaw switchblade knives in the United States. They painted images of switchblade knives as the "weapon of choice" for gang members and dangerous criminals. They wanted the public to believe that these "evil knives" were relatively new to this country and that their only possible use was as a dangerous weapon. They never mentioned the fact that switchblade knives were a useful tool appreciated by hunters, fishermen, trappers, store clerks, farmers, mechanics, firemen and many others in this country. Switchblades were very popular with women, especially in the early 1900s. Not only did having a switchblade in the purse save many broken fingernails, switchblades were also very handy tools to have in the sewing kit. They often still turn up in old sewing machine drawers. Switchblade knives were extremely handy for the fisherman and there was a time when most tackle boxes were not complete without a switchblade knife inside. They were also very popular watch fobs and many gentlemen put them on the end of their watch chains.

Somehow the Congressmen who were feverishly trying to outlaw these knives, and gain attention for themselves, overlooked all of these facts. They didn't bother to mention that the majority of the switchblades manufactured in the United States prior to 1958 measured from 2 ¼ inches to 4 inches closed and could be comfortably carried in the pocket or coin purse. It also escaped their attention that many were designed to put on a chain with your keys. Does this sound like a group of dangerous weapons, with no other purpose than to maim or kill? It saddens me to realize that we had a Congress that could be manipulated into outlawing interstate commerce of one of the most useful and beloved tools in the history of our country. Maybe they should have outlawed hammers while they were at it. They are certainly dangerous weapons in the hands of a criminal.

History

Would it surprise you to know that switchblade knives had actually been in this country for over 75 years when these public figures were busy telling Congress how switchblades were new to this country? The manufacture of switchblades in the United States began in the 1880s, shortly after the first switchblade patents were granted in this country. They were in mass production by the mid 1890s and fast becoming the most useful cutting tool one could carry and gaining in popularity and public acceptance. Over a 50-year period from the mid 1890s to the mid 1940s there had been approximately 20 different companies who had manufactured switchblade knives in this country. There were switchblades specifically designed for hunters, fishermen, soldiers, farmers, veterinarians, mechanics, office workers, seamstresses, high school girls, Boy Scouts and also for Girl Scouts. How's that for a list of dangerous criminals? They were also a very popular advertising giveaway and can be found with advertising from around the country, both on the handles and etched on the side of the blades.

The origins of the switchblade knife go back much farther than one might imagine. I know that they were being manufactured in England in the mid 1800s and France and Italy were making them well before that. I am very confident that they were brought to this country from Europe by the mid 1800s, and quite possibly before that.

As a Collectible

Fortunately knives are appreciated and sought after by collectors from around the world, so the value of knives, especially antique collectible knives, seems to be on a steady rise. Collectors the world over are constantly hunting for knives to add to their collections and the demand for antique knives is very high. Collector fever is very catchy and can make people do strange things. The hunt for a particular knife can be extremely challenging and exciting. The price that a collector is willing to pay for a knife can depend upon many things and the harder it is to find, usually the higher the price a collector is willing to pay. This behavior quite often leads to exorbitant prices being paid for very rare knives and surprisingly you don't often hear of buyer's remorse when it comes to rare antique knives. You do, on the other hand, hear a lot of "oohs" and "ahhs" whenever these knives are brought out for other collectors to appreciate.

If you ask most collectors why they collect knives you'll most likely hear something like "for the joy of collecting", or "I've loved knives since I was a boy", or possibly "I love the hunt." I have yet to have someone tell me "as an investment", and yet there is obviously

EXHIBIT U

A BRIEF HISTORY OF

LATAMA CUTLERY

THE LEGEND CONTINUES

LATAMA is a name that all switchblade enthusiasts are familiar with. No other manufacturer has never equaled the overall quality and variety of switchblade designs that LATAMA has produced.

LATAMA's history has been argued to extend as far back as before World War 2. But, LATAMA's initial switchblade collection spanned less than ten years, and those were prior to the enactment of the 1958 Federal Switchblade Act.

Almost all of LATAMA's production has imported into the U.S. extending back to out origins. Americans have always been the principal consumers of LATAMA switchblades. Prior to the Federal Switchblade Act, LATAMA dominated retailers across America, providing all major outlets with cutlery.

After World War 2, the demand for steel, brass, and nickel was high, and the resources in Europe were exhausted from the war. Seeing this, LATAMA drew from skilled artisans in Maniago, Italy. They were able to establish switchblade manufacturing as a "cottage industry" there. Individual artisans were financed and supplied from America with the raw materials for manufacturing knives. This decentralized approach towards the manufacturing of LATAMA switchblades makes up the wide variety of designs produced.

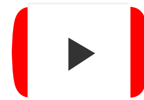
One of the rare LATAMA designs is the 'square' button models produced in very limited quantities. They were created as samples or prototypes but did not appeal to the retailers who wanted to stay with the traditional button and sliding safety models. The button is positioned where the front bolster meets the scale, almost touching the bolster. Most square button models have a very novel safety feature; a small piece of brass pivots under the button to prevent it from being depressed. The safety is released by pivoting the top, front bolster, and then a small extension on the bottom end of the bolster catches the brass safety and pivots it from under the button.

Another unique characteristic of the square-button is the way it locks up the blade in the closed position. Unlike the lock-up with the traditional button, these required a cut-out in the blade. The button tops a post with a distinct lathed or shape to it. The post bisects the inside of the knife, extending through both liners. When the blade is closing, the shape of the button post connects with the cut-out, and the button is pulled down and pops back up as it is seated in the blade.

One of the things that has always separated LATAMA from other switchblades is attention to detail. The fit and finish LATAMA switchblade is superior to its era.

Case 4:23-cv-00547-O Document 20-3 Filed 10/06/23 Page 81 of 462 PageID 754

Walt tells us the recent story about Latama and his passion for this historic Italian switch blade



A Timeline of the Switchblade

When you hear the mention of Italian switchblade stiletto, you can instantly conjure up a picture in your head. While the word is most often associated with an Italian switchblade, its origins date back to fixed blade daggers from the 1400s.

The Early Years (the 1400s to the 1800s)

Case 4:23-cv-00547-O Document 20-3 Filed 10/06/23 Page 82 of 462 PageID 755

The English and Italian word 'stiletto' is derived from the Latin word 'stilus.' This refers to a knife with a long thin blade designed primarily for thrusting. Initially used by knights to penetrate chainmail armor, the stiletto evolved to become the weapon of choice for mercenaries and assassins from the 1500s through the 1800s.

Three cities in Italy were primarily producing switchblade knives: Frosolone, Scarperia, and Maniago. The classic 'S' guard stiletto types were made in Maniago and most recognizable among Americans.

The earliest known Italian catalog shows different spring-fired examples, dating back to 1896. These first models and the switchblades made in Maniago were made entirely by hand up until World War 2.

Pre-World War 2

Before the war, production numbers were small for these knives and were made mainly by individual knife makers belonging to cooperatives. The purpose of these was to help the makers increase their buying power of materials and the selling and distributing of their knives.

Most switchblades that are found from that era are stamped with "Maniago" on the blade or "S. Coop" (for Societa Cooperativa). A maker's name may have been stamped on the blade as well, but those were few and far between.

The traditional "S" guard type was the most common Maniago stiletto style early on, and they are still seen in today's modern version. While these were the more popular style, other variations did exist, including the knives with the Maltese-style handguards. The most common blade type was the bayonet shape, but dagger and kris shapes were also used.

The earliest stiletto switchblades featured genuine stag handles, but soon horn became the material most often used. Very few early examples have been found with wood, mother-of-pearl, and ivory handles.

Another trait shared by these pre-war models was they were primarily "pick-lock" type. The back spring had a rounded tab that stuck out over the top bolsters on the side. The tab is pushed away from the bolster to unlock and manually close the blade.

World War 2 (1939-1945)

Nearly all switchblade examples from the beginning of World War 2 were fired by traditional oval or round firing buttons set in the front handle. These same models also each had small sliding safety buttons, which, when sliding forward towards the

Case 4:23-cv-00547-O Document 20-3 Filed 10/06/23 Page 83 of 462 PageID 756

firing button, would prevent the firing button from being pushed. GIs returning home from the war brought back the Italian switchblade, which would soon become a hit in America.

The 1950s

After World War 2 the popularity of the switchblades exploded. Department stores such as Macy's were selling them. Every kid and young man wanted one if they didn't already have one. Box office movies like "Rebel Without a Cause" and "West Side Story" portrayed the switchblade as both the defender of justice and a tool of fear.

Partially driven by the developments of the war, but also the demand for products, switchblades from Maniago stepped into the modern age following the war. Previously, all knives were made by hand and assembled one at a time. After the war, many makers started to stamp out or manufacture parts in groups and produced the knives into batches instead of individually. The faster mechanization of knives led to greater productivity of all things world-wide, which impacted many companies, from General Motors in the U.S. to an individual knife maker in Maniago. The demand became so great in the U.S. during the 1950s that men, women, and even children were assembling knives in Maniago and could barely keep up with production.

But the early 1950s brought forward some negativity to the switchblade. Senator Estes Kefauver of Tennessee said that a ban on switchblades would significantly decrease gangs and violence. In 1958, the federal ban was enacted in the United States, making the manufacturing, distribution, and ownership of switchblades a federal crime. The law was written with the word 'territory' and not 'state,' which meant that individual states began interpreting and enforcing their own laws. This could range from siding with the federal government to offering no laws against the production or ownership of switchblade knives.

Even though America had been Italy's largest import market, they were not their only customers. While it was a massive loss for Maniago, they continued to make switchblades on a smaller scale for other customers worldwide.

The Second Half of the 20th Century

The second half of the twentieth century saw small knife shops in Maniago continue to produce switchblades as laws started to lighten in America. Around 1980, switchblades from Maniago began finding their way back to the U.S. despite the federal import laws. Since the federal act, the Italian switchblade stiletto has had a renaissance and is nearly as popular today as it first was in the 1950s.

The 21st Century

Most states in America have overturned the ban on switchblades, and only about half a dozen states still consider switchblades illegal. But, many of these states have various requirements or restrictions on them. The federal ban on transporting switchblades across state lines is still in effect, but it is rarely enforced.

Subscribe

Case 4:23-cv-00547-O Document 20-3 Filed 10/06/23 Page 86 of 462 PageID 759

Sign up to get the latest on sales, new releases and more …

Enter your email address...

Sign Up

Quick Links

Search

Privacy Policy

Return Policy

Terms and Conditions

Additional Services

Premium Horn

Knife Restoration

Company Info

About Us

Contact Us

Get In Touch

Call Us: 631.668.5995

Email: pick@latama.net

© 2023 LATAMA.

EXHIBIT V

1
2
3
4
5
6
7
8
9
10
11
12
13
14
15
16
17
18
19
20
21
22
23
24
25
26
27
28

UNITED STATES DISTRICT COURT

FOR THE NORTHERN DISTRICT OF TEXAS, FORT WORTH DIVISION

KNIFE RIGHTS, INC.; RUSSELL ARNOLD; JEFFREY FOLLODER; RGA AUCTION SOLUTION d.b.a. FIREARM SOLUTIONS; AND MOD SPECIALTIES, Plaintiffs, v. MERRICK B. GARLAND, Attorney General of the United States; UNITED STATES DEPARTMENT OF JUSTICE, Defendants.	Case No. 4:23-cv-00547-O Hon. Judge Reed O'Connor

DECLARATION OF KEN ONION IN SUPPORT OF PLAINTIFFS' MOTION FOR SUMMARY JUDGMENT

KnifeRights MSJ App.000637

1
2
3
4
5
6
7
8
9
10
11
12
13
14
15
16
17
18
19
20
21
22
23
24
25
26
27
28

DECLARATION OF KEN ONION

I, Ken Onion, declare as follows:

1. I am over 18 years of age and not a party to this action. I submit this declaration in support of Plaintiffs' Motion for Summary Judgment.

2. I have been asked to render an opinion on the differences and similarities between various forms of folding pocket knives — specifically automatically opening knives, assisted opening knives, and manual folding knives.

3. This declaration is based on my own research, knowledge, and experience, and if I am called to testify as a witness, I could and would testify competently to the truth of the matters discussed in this declaration.

BACKGROUND AND QUALIFICATIONS

4. I am an American custom knifemaker, designer, and inventor living in Kaneohe, Hawaii. I have been designing, inventing, and making various forms of knives for 32 years.

5. I have roughly 56 patents on various items including knife locks, gadgetry, mechanisms, safeties, and designs, as well as several trademarks.

6. During my 33-year career as a knife designer and manufacturer, I have had hundreds of models of knives enter into production and distributed throughout the United States and worldwide.

7. The vast majority of the knives I have designed and entered into production were various models of folding pocket knives with different mechanisms of opening with one hand.

8. In 1997, I started employment with Kershaw Knives as their Premier Knife Designer. As the Premier Knife Designer, my duties included working closely with the company to design the most successful line of knives ever produced by the

KnifeRights MSJ App.000638

company, helping them develop the manufacturing expertise to produce these knives in their own factory, advising them on marketing and sales, and representing the company in the United States and abroad.

9. Additionally, as part of my duties as in this position, I traveled on behalf of Kershaw to perform lectures and classes where I instructed sales teams and retail cutlery stores about the differences in types of knives, their operation, and their application. I also instructed these sales teams and cutlery stores to enhance their general knowledge about knives so that they could accurately answer customers' questions and guide them in making knowledgeable decisions in a non-biased manner.

10. During my time working for Kershaw, the business grew substantially. In just the first 5 years after I started working with Kershaw, it grew from a handful of employees with knives manufactured by others to over 100 employees, including the manufacturing of several types of knives in a new U.S. Kershaw factory. As a result of my designs and efforts, Kershaw is now a major manufacture of knives in the U.S. and worldwide.

11. I have taught knifemaking, including the making of folding knives, at my home/shop to over 100 new and experienced knife makers.

12. I also teach these same classes throughout the United States and abroad. As a part of this instruction, I teach students regarding knife design, business theory, and business strategy classes.

13. I have won dozens of awards for my custom knives and knife designs at every major cutlery exhibition and show in the United States.

14. My custom knives have sold for upwards of $30,000.00 each.

15. In 2008, I became the 45th and youngest inductee ever into the Blade Magazine Hall of Fame. In the knife industry, this is the highest distinction one can

KnifeRights MSJ App.000639

receive. I am widely recognized as one of the most innovative and successful knife designers of all time, and oftentimes referred to as "legendary."

16. I am currently working with Columbia River Knife & Tool, another major manufacturer of knives in the United States and worldwide, as their Premier Knife Designer. In that capacity, my duties include working closely with the company to design knives, helping them with manufacturing to produce these knives, advising them on marketing and sales, and representing the company in the United States and abroad.

17. In addition, I have designed knives produced by Spyderco, United Cutlery, Amway, Snap-On, Sears, and Carbon. I have also designed knives and a knife sharpener for WorkSharp.

18. I have earned in excess of $40,000,000 licensing my designs for knife locks, gadgetry, mechanisms, safeties, and designs.

19. I have been retained as an expert witness by Plaintiffs in this case to render my professional expert opinion on the internal mechanisms of various folding knives including manual, assisted-opening, and automatically opening folding knives; and the categorization and commonality of folding pocket knives and automatic knives, also known as switchblades, in the United States. I am not charging for my services in this case.

SUMMARY OF OPINIONS

20. While there are fundamental and critical differences in the *internal mechanics* between the many varieties of one-hand opening knives including, specifically, assisted opening folding knives and what are commonly referred to as

KnifeRights MSJ App.000640

"switchblade knives,"[1] that distinguish each knife type under present legal definitions; fundamentally and practically, manual one-hand opening, assisted opening, and automatically opening knives (switchblades) are, in fact, merely different forms of common folding pocket knives that are essentially the same.

21. As explained in detail below, manual one-hand opening knives, assisted opening knives, and "switchblade" knives are nothing more than the evolution of a traditional folding pocket knife, like the early Jack Knife or classic Swiss Army Knife. These opening mechanisms are just examples of many variations of common folding knives, which allow the user to more easily and rapidly open their folding knife with a one hand.

22. The ability for the user to open a knife with one hand is a very desirable trait from both a practical and safety standpoint — which explains why these knives are so popular and represent the vast majority of knives sold and used today throughout the United States.

FEDERAL SWITCHBLADE ACT

21. Under the Federal Switchblade Act (Title 15, Chapter 29, §1241, Definitions), a "switchblade" is defined as the following:

> (b) The term "switchblade knife" means any knife having a blade which opens automatically –
>
> (1) by hand pressure applied to a button or other device in the handle of the knife, or
>
> (2) by operation of inertia, gravity, or both.

22. The Federal Switchblade Act uses the terminology "switchblade" to designate automatically opening knives, a term that, over the years, has come to have a pejorative meaning for many as a result of these type knives being demonized in

[1] Automatically opening knives are also referred to statutorily as "switchblades," "switchblade knives," "automatic knives," "spring blade knives," and "switch knives."

KnifeRights MSJ App.000641

the 1950s in popular culture. Attached hereto as **Exhibit A** is a true and correct copy of *THE TOY THAT KILLS* published in the Woman's Home Companion, November 1950, that initiated the campaign vilifying and demonizing these knives.

23. Within the knife industry and in marketing today, the more common terms for these same knives are "automatic knives," "automatically opening knives," or often shortened to simply, "autos." Attached hereto as **Exhibit B** are true and correct copies of magazines articles and advertisements depicting "automatic knives" in description.

DESIGN/DEVELOPMENT OF ASSISTED OPENING FOLDING KNIVES

24. In 1996, while recovering from back surgery, I decided to try to design a folder that was easy to manipulate and open, but which did not fit within the legal definition of knives defined as "switchblades" under the Federal Switchblade Act. The goal of this design was to produce a folding knife that could easily and quickly be opened with one hand, like the "switchblade" knife, but did not fall under the technical legal definition of a "switchblade" knife.

25. Soon thereafter, I created the first commercially successful assisted opening mechanism for folding knives.[2] This is one of my better-known inventions, which had a significant impact in the knife industry and was trademarked as the "SpeedSafe" assisted opening mechanism. In 1998, the Kershaw Random Task was released as the first Kershaw to use the SpeedSafe mechanism. It won Blade Magazine's American Made Knife of the Year Award that year. The Mini Random Task, a slightly smaller version, was the first SpeedSafe knife produced in quantity.

26. In 1998, I was granted a patent (US6338431B1) for the assisted opening

[2] This mechanism also sometimes referred to as "spring assisted."

KnifeRights MSJ App.000642

knife, and with its successful commercial introduction by Kershaw Knives, created a unique evolution of the common folding knife that proved wildly popular.

27. The Patent background is described as follows:

> "This invention relates to a mechanism in a folding knife that urges the blade to move to an open and alternatively to a closed position. Generally, in the present invention, the blade must be moved manually a certain distance whereupon the mechanism serves to complete the movement of the blade without the application of further outside force by the user. In the folding knife and cutlery industry, there typically is provided a folding knife having a housing or handle for supporting the blade in the open position and for receiving the blade in the closed position. It is also generally known to cause the blade of the knife to be locked when in the open position. An example of such locking mechanism is found in Neely U.S. Pat. No. 5,060,379 and Wiethoff U.S. Pat. No. 4,404,748.
>
> The mechanism of the present invention overcomes the various deficiencies of the folding knives and opening and closing mechanisms presently in the knife and cutlery industry by providing positive opening and closing assistance while enabling such opening and closing to be performed or carried out with only a single hand of the user, to the advantage of the general public but especially to persons who experience difficulty in using two hands to open a knife, whether such difficulty is caused by physical, mental or safety reasons."

28. I licensed this mechanism to Kershaw Knives in 1996. While my design was the first commercially successful assisted opening design, today many other mechanisms have been designed and patented to accomplish similar spring assisted opening of folding knives, which are widely marketed and sold in the United States and worldwide. These knife designs are so popular, there are countless numbers in circulation within the United States. There is no question that the number of these knives owned and in circulation is conservatively in the several millions.

29. As stated previously, I designed the "SpeedSafe" mechanism as a way to

KnifeRights MSJ App.000643

1
2
3
4
5
6
7
8
9
10
11
12
13
14
15
16
17
18
19
20
21
22
23
24
25
26
27
28

allow for fast, single hand (one-hand) opening folding knives that did not meet the legal definition of a "switchblade" while still providing the wide appeal of automatically opening knives.

30. Beyond the practical and quick, easy-opening aspect shared with all one-hand opening knives, consumers are attracted to, and delight in, the dramatic, flashy and eye-catching spring-powered opening of an automatically opening knife, even though it adds nothing to utility or speed of opening the knife compared to other one-hand opening mechanisms. The same Hollywood movies of the 1950s that helped demonize "switchblades," also served to create a certain cachet and desire by consumers to possess and carry them that exists to this day.

31. The assisted opener provides a similar attraction to the sensations of opening an automatically opening knife without falling within the statutory definition of a "switchblade." However, from a user-experience perspective, they are virtually interchangeable — hence, the broad popularity of the assisted opener.

32. In designing the "SpeedSafe" assisted opener, I made sure that to open the knife, no hand pressure was applied to a button or other device in the handle of the knife. As my knives applied pressure to the blade of the knife and not to anything within the handle of the knife, the assisted openers did not meet the definition of a "switchblade" under federal law.

33. While I, and the entire knife industry, understood this distinction to be straightforward, in 2009, U.S. Customs and Border Protection suddenly developed difficulty in identifying the distinguishing mechanical features between automatically opening knives and other one-hand opening knives, and in particular, assisted opening knives.

34. For years, the U.S. Customs and Border Protection considered assisted openers and "switchblade" knives to be *two distinct knives*, issuing rulings that the one was legal and the other illegal under the Federal Switchblade Act. This allowed

KnifeRights MSJ App.000644

importation of assisted opening knives, while "switchblades" remained illegal to import into the United States.

35. However, in 2009, the U.S. Customs and Border Protection attempted to reverse its prior rulings that assisted opening knives were not legally defined as switchblade knives pursuant to section 1241. Attached hereto as **Exhibit C** is a true and correct copy of 19 CFR Part 177 "Proposed Revocation of Ruling Letters and Revocation of Treatment Relating to the Admissibility of Certain Knives With Spring-Assisted Opening Mechanisms" published by the U.S. Customs and Border Protection, Department of Homeland Security.

36. Essentially, in 2009, the U.S. Customs and Border Protection was unilaterally revising its longstanding interpretation of prohibited "switchblades" to include *any* one-hand opening knife, which at the time, represented approximately 80% of the folding knives sold in the United States.[3] Attached hereto as **Exhibit D** is a true and correct copy of The American Knife and Tool Institute "Knife Industry Statistics" detailing the widespread prevalence of one-hand opening knives — which includes automatically opening knives.

37. After both the knife industry and knife owners across the country expressed extreme opposition to this attempted re-interpretation, to clarify this issue, in 2009, Congress passed a fifth exception to the Federal Switchblade Act, which states:

> Sections 1242 and 1243 of this title shall not apply to – (5) a knife that contains a spring, detent, or other mechanism designed to create a bias toward closure of the blade and that requires exertion applied to the

[3] Based on my experience in the knife industry, today this estimate, excluding kitchen knives, remains accurate and likely is now a higher percentage of sales in the United States.

KnifeRights MSJ App.000645

1 blade by hand, wrist or arm to overcome the bias toward closure to assist
2 in opening the knife.

3 38. As I explain below, "bias toward closure" is a critical mechanical aspect
4 used to legally differentiate "switchblades" from all other knives that do not
5 automatically open. However, this legal distinction is purely legalese. Functionally,
6 there is little to no difference in the various forms of one-hand opening knives.

7 39. Even with this amendment to the Federal Switchblade Act
8 distinguishing between assisted opening knives and automatically opening knives,
9 some law enforcement officers still confuse the two. For example, the infamous arrest
10 of Freddie Gray in Baltimore was due to the officers' improper identification of his
11 legal assisted-opening knife. Additionally, some courts have ruled that assisted
12 opening knives fall under the definitions of a "switchblade" due to their *functional*
13 similarities.

14 40. Even with the clear *mechanical differences* between assisted opening
15 and automatically opening knives designed expressly to avoid illegality, their
16 *functional* similarities continue to cause confusion for state and local governments
17 and law enforcement agencies when it comes to prohibitions on "switchblades."

18 41. However, categorically speaking, there is no real difference between
19 assisted opening knives and automatically opening knives — they are mere variations
20 of common folding pocket knives that open easily with one hand. That they are
21 confused so often only emphasizes the fact that, while different mechanically, they
22 are essentially just two different forms of common folding knives.

23

24

25 **INTERNAL MECHANICS OF MANUAL ONE-HAND OPENERS,**
26 **ASSISTED OPENERS AND SWITCHBLADES**

27 42. An automatically opening knife ("switchblade") has a folding or sliding
28 blade contained in the handle, which is opened "automatically," by a spring, when a

KnifeRights MSJ App.000646

1 button, switch or other device in the handle of the knife is actuated.

2 43. The blade of a switchblade blade must be locked (also technically
3 referred to as "latched") in the closed position because it is spring-loaded to open. In
4 other words, the blade has a "bias toward opening" that is counteracted with a
5 lock/latch. Without being latched in the closed position, the blade cannot stay closed
6 and will open. When the button, switch, or other device in the handle is actuated, the
7 latch is released and a compressed or tensioned spring moves the blade
8 "automatically" to the fully opened position.

9 44. In contrast, mechanically speaking, assisted opening knives are not
10 "switchblades" when considered in the context of the technical statutory definition of
11 what constitutes a "switchblade."

12 45. Assisted opening knives do not open "automatically." As opposed to a
13 switchblade, the blade is "biased toward closure" when inside the handle *via* "a spring,
14 detent, or other mechanism." The user must apply "manual force" *to the blade* to
15 overcome the bias toward closure for it to open. This is in contrast to a "switchblade,"
16 where the user applies manual force to a button, switch, or other device in the handle
17 to release the latch which releases the blade and the user does not apply force to the
18 blade of the knife.

19 46. Assisted opening knives have no button, switch, or other device in the
20 handle, which releases the blade, because there is no need for one as compared to a
21 switchblade, which requires a latch to keep the blade from opening because the blade
22 is biased toward opening.

23 47. Instead, manual one-hand opening and assisted opening knives use
24 thumb studs, thumb holes, tabs, nail notches, nail mark grooves, textured surfaces,
25 and more to allow leverage on the blade of the knife to move it from the folded or
26 closed position where it is biased toward closure to the open position using a single
27 digit of the hand. Typically, these studs, holes, tabs, grooves, etc. are part of, or fixed
28

KnifeRights MSJ App.000647

1
2
3
4
5
6
7
8
9
10
11
12
13
14
15
16
17
18
19
20
21
22
23
24
25
26
27
28

to, the blade itself, but in any case, simply move with the blade when manual force is applied to these elements.

48. In an assisted opening knife, upon applying force to the above elements to start rotating the blade out of the handle, at some point, typically after 5-20 degrees +/- of movement, a spring assists the blade to open fully. Thus, we get the terminology "assisted opener." It does not open "automatically" "by hand pressure applied to a button or other device *in the handle of the knife*." While mechanically distinguishable, in the end, manual one-hand opening, assisted opener, and automatic opening knives require the user to put minimal manual force on either the blade itself or on a button on the handle, after which, the blade opens fully. In the case of an assisted opener and a "switchblade," the spring mechanism within the knife is part and parcel of the opening, but how it is engaged distinguishes one from the other in terms of their legal definitions.

49. However, categorically speaking, manual one-hand opening knives, assisted opening knives, and automatically opening knives are merely variations of folding pocket knives, in which the blades fold into the handle of the knife and is only useful when fully opened. The reality is that neither assisted opening knife nor automatically opening knife designs or mechanisms opens faster than the other. Nor is any one design any more "dangerous" than the other in any respect.

50. Traditional pocket knives like the early Jack Knife or the classic Swiss Army Knife (known in the industry as Slip Joints – having no locking mechanism), are in fact of very similar design to assisted openers. For example, the classic Swiss Army Knife, just like the assisted opener, also has a blade, which must be manually opened by the user applying force to the blade itself to rotate the blade out of the handle, and then when the blade is partially out of the handle a spring assists to bring the blade to the fully open position.

51. Upon applying force to manually rotate the blade out of the handle, at

KnifeRights MSJ App.000648

some point, typically approximately 15-20 degrees from being fully open, the back spring assists the blade to open fully. A manual one-hand opener may have a similar slip joint construction with a spring, but by design can be opened using the single digit on one-hand, as noted previously.

52. An assisted opening knife does the same thing, only sooner in the arc of the manual opening of the knife.

53. In comparison, in an automatically opening knife, the spring within the knife opens the blade from the moment the latch is released with the push of the button. In other words, the automatically opening knife is just a further progression in when the mechanics/spring within the knife takes over in opening the blade.

54. As with every folding knife, all of these variations are comprised of a handle and a blade, two entirely distinct and separate parts of the knife. Most notably, traditional pocket knives, some manual one-hand openers, assisted openers, and automatically opening knives all have a spring mechanism within the knife that takes part in opening the blade. The only difference being at which point the spring starts this process.

55. Functionally speaking, there is virtually no difference between modern manual one-hand opening knives, assisted opening knives, and automatically opening knives. All of these knife designs can be opened with one hand; all these knife designs require a minimal amount of force from the user's finger (either on the blade of the knife or on a button on the handle of the knife) to open the knives; and all these knives open equally fast.

56. While the mechanical differences between manual one-hand opening knives, assisted opening knives, and automatically opening knives have allowed for a technical legal distinction between the knives based on statutory definitions; functionally and practically speaking, each of these knife designs are all common folding pocket knives with a variation on the manner of opening easily and rapidly

KnifeRights MSJ App.000649

with one hand.

57. Another example of the variations of folding knives are "dual action" folding knives. These folding knives incorporate two opening mechanisms that can be used alternatively to either open the blade manually using force applied to the blade *via* thumb stud, thumb hole, etc., or the same blade may be opened "automatically" *via* hand pressure applied to a button or other device in the handle. For the manual opening mechanism, there is a bias toward closure. For the automatic opening mechanism, there is bias toward opening. Attached hereto as **Exhibit E** is a true and correct copy of depictions of "dual action" folding knives. For both options to open the knife, the blade opens with the same speed.

58. Many models of common folding pocket knives are also produced and sold with options using various opening mechanisms. In other words, a knife design will be available for sale as both a manually opening folding knife and an automatically opening folding knife. This fact alone underscores the fact that all of these opening mechanisms are common variations of folding pocket knives. In these instances, the knives are virtually identical other than the opening mechanism. One version may open manually or be assisted opening, while another version of the same model opens automatically. Attached hereto as **Exhibit F** are true and correct copies of pictures of various folding knife models that are offered in two or more options of opening mechanisms. Again, even with these different opening mechanisms, the knives still open with the same speed.

59. Notably, based on my experience as a knife designer and knifemaker, even with different opening mechanisms, no folding pocket knife is any more "dangerous" than any other folding pocket knife. When considering the utility of any folding knife (or its dangerousness/lethality), it is only useful when the knife is *completely opened*. Quite simply, no one can be cut or stabbed with a folding knife when the blade is folded within the handle. This is true regardless of the manner in

KnifeRights MSJ App.000650

which the blade can be unfolded. It is only after the blade is opened fully that the knife can be used for any purpose. Thus, the different manner in which a folding knife is opened, whether it be manually, assisted, or automatically, has no bearing on the knife's utility or dangerousness/lethality.

60. Further, based on my experience as a knife designer and knifemaker, considering the fact that there is no significant difference in the speed in which the various forms of one-hand opening knives — including manual one hand opening, assisted openers and automatically opening knives — open into a locked position, none of these designs is any more or less useful or dangerous than the other, even if one assumes, incorrectly, that speed of opening equates with "dangerousness" or "lethality." And no folding knife opens more quickly than a fixed blade knife that by design is already "open" and able to be used for any purpose instantly. It is my understanding that there are no federal regulations prohibiting the manufacture, sale, or interstate commerce of fixed blade knives or other bladed weapons.

61. Based on my research and experience in the knife industry, excluding kitchen knives, folding knives are some of the most widely owned and used knives in the United States and have been for over a hundred years. The number in circulation within the United States is conservatively in the tens of millions. Any attempt to distinguish between these various forms of folding knives as "more dangerous" than the other due to the manner in which they open merely showcases inexperience or ignorance of how knives are designed and function.

62. Relatedly, there is also no distinction in "concealability" between the various forms of folding knife designs as each knife is only as large or small as the blade that must be folded into the handle of the knife. For example, an automatically opening knife with a 3" blade is no more or less "concealable" than an assisted opening knife with a 3" blade or a manual one hand opening knife with a 3" blade. In each instance, the handle must only be large enough to contain the blade and almost all

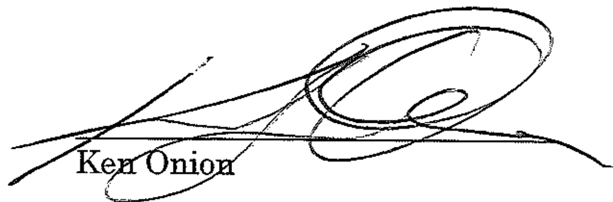
KnifeRights MSJ App.000651

folding knives are designed to have as small a handle as is functionally practical to make the most compact total package as possible.

63. The only somewhat common exception to this fact is that some automatically opening knives install a shorter blade than usual into a handle normally used for a slightly longer blade in order to be considered legal in a jurisdiction that limits blade length of automatically opening knives. However, these designs were specifically designed to comply with states with prohibitive laws. Based on my experience as a knife designer and knifemaker, in my professional opinion, these odd variations would not be on the market but for the need for "complaint variations" in these restrictive states.

64. As a long-time designer of many different knife designs, most every folding knife, regardless of the manner in which it opens, can be carried in the pocket. Again, reenforcing the fact that there is no functional difference between each form of folding knife — as they are all just slightly different variations of common pocket knives that have been used in the many millions for generations. As such, automatically folding knives are unquestionably designed and manufactured as a variation of folding pocket knife.

I declare under penalty of perjury under the laws of the United States that the foregoing is true and correct and that I executed my declaration in the United States on September 19, 2023.



Ken Onion

KEN ONION EXHIBIT A

Case 4:23-cv-00547-O Document 20-3 Filed 10/06/23 Page 105 of 462 PageID 778

THE TOY THAT

Do YOU remember the days when firecrackers used to kill, burn and maim scores of youngsters every year? Aroused parents finally put a stop to it. They banded together all over the country to force the passage of local ordinances governing the sale and use of fireworks—and now a firecracker casualty is a rarity.

Today we are confronted with a new toy that kills. It's not yet so widespread as the firecracker menace once was. The toll up to now is relatively small—a few dozen children killed, somewhat more wounded. But the point is, all these unnecessary tragedies are increasing. Fireworks threatened only a few days a year; the new toy threatens every day of the three hundred and sixty-five. Fortunately this new menace can be controlled just as effectively as fireworks have been—if parents will just step in and do it.

This new threat to our children's safety is a pocketknife called a switchblade. Never heard of it? Ask your boy, or your neighbor's boy. Thousands of thoughtless youngsters are carrying them.

Police officials, judges, teachers and social workers all over the country are disturbed about the increasing number of juvenile accidents in which switchblades figure. Now these authorities are not alarmists or bluenoses. They don't want to deny boys their pocketknives. They know that a knife to a growing boy is as important as a lipstick to a young lady.

But they also know that a switchblade, which is fast replacing the old-fashioned pocketknife, is another story. Its chief purpose—as any crook can tell you—is for committing violence.

Have you ever seen one? Few women realize what a deadly weapon it can be. It isn't for practical use as is the Boy Scout or standard army knife with their two thick blades, can opener and combination bottle opener and screw driver.

No, a switchblade knife isn't as useful—but it's a lot *faster*. To open it, you merely press a button and instantly the blade darts out like a snake's tongue and locks firmly in that position. Any child can operate it easily with *one* hand. An ordinary penknife takes two hands and doesn't have a dagger-tip point.

What does this mean? Here is how one of the nation's top law-enforcement officers sums it up: "In a person's pocket, a switchblade knife is a deadly concealed weapon—as dangerous as a dagger and at close quarters as lethal as a loaded revolver." But unlike a revolver, you don't need a permit to carry it!

This is the wicked weapon which teen-agers in many communities are taking up as a fad!

The president of the International Association of Chiefs of Police, John M. Gleason, told me, "Many otherwise well-informed parents—especially mothers—don't realize how vicious a switchblade can be."

I had no idea myself until I saw a youth stabbed with one on a Philadelphia street. Two young men were fighting with their fists. Suddenly one of them reached into his pocket. A second later his hand held an open knife. He jabbed the gleaming blade into his opponent's chest. As the blood flowed, women onlookers screamed.

While I watched the police take over, I could not help wondering if that stabbing really had to happen. How many hot-headed adolescents buy a switchblade just for show and then, in a moment of overwhelming anger, use it as a weapon?

Recently—in more innocent spirits—two teen-age boys at a high school dance in a Newark, New Jersey, suburb were playfully showing off with a three-inch switchblade. Accidentally one was shoved against the tip of the knife, which pierced his heart.

"You punctured me, Jim, please take me to a drugstore," the wounded youth moaned and collapsed.

PHOTOGRAPHS FROM PIX

THERE'S NOTHING ILLEGAL ABOUT MANUFACTURING OR SELLING THE KNIVES DISPLAYED

WASHINGTON, D. C.

A perilous prize for these young men but easy to buy in the nation's capital

NEW YORK

Easy in New York City too, although a boy may have to lie about his age

MINNEAPOLIS

The choice in Minneapolis is good. Watch for the toll in the tabloids

KnifeRights MSJ App.000654

Case 4:23-cv-00547-O Document 20-3 Filed 10/06/23 Page 106 of 462 PageID 779

KILLS

A boy's ordinary pocketknife isn't too dangerous.
But a switchblade knife—ever seen one? Do you know how many youngsters carry them and what police officials think about this wicked new plaything? BY JACK HARRISON POLLACK

His seventeen-year-old companion was aghast. But his sorrow couldn't bring his best friend back to life.

When another Newark high school boy was stabbed several days later, Public Safety Director John B. Keenan observed, "A mother who would be horrified if her son carried a pistol in his pocket thinks nothing of his having an equally dangerous knife."

"There is no excuse for *anybody* carrying a switchblade," declares Essex County Prosecutor D. E. Minard. "The sooner their manufacture and sale are banned, the better off we all will be," adds Newark Magistrate LeRoy D'Aloia. Boston Police Superintendent Edward W. Fallon warns, "No youngster should carry an automatic knife unless he's looking for trouble."

Every expert with whom I talked—including the nation's leading sportsmen—agreed that switchblade knives have no legitimate use in civilian life.

Yet I was amazed—and shocked—to find that nearly everywhere in America you, I or any youngster could walk into a store and [*continued on page 88*]

• None of us knows what the international situation will be tomorrow. Naturally, as long as American boys are fighting abroad that is of paramount concern to all of us.
• But even in wartime we must not lose sight of situations on the home front which need correction.
• As Jack Harrison Pollack's factual survey reveals, teen-agers are being killed needlessly by a gadget which should be brought under greater control. The WOMAN'S HOME COMPANION deserves thanks for publicizing such a problem.
• As spokesman for the nation's chiefs of police, I recommend this constructive article to thoughtful American women. By following its suggestions they can help immeasurably in protecting their communities from a new threat to the safety of many children.

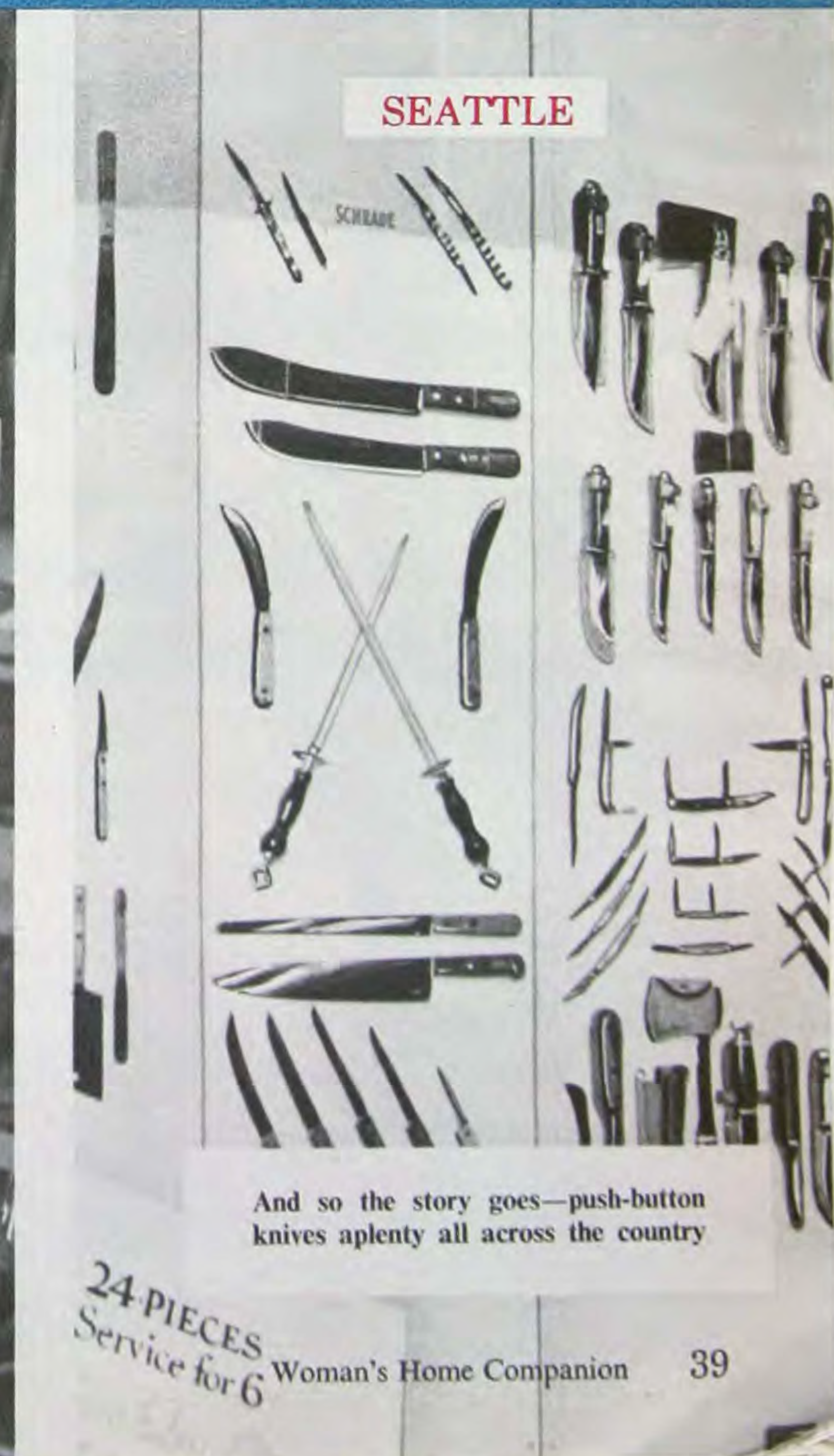
John M. Gleason
JOHN M. GLEASON
President, International Association of Chiefs of Police

HERE. BUT LOOK FOR TROUBLE WHEN A SWITCHBLADE GETS INTO A YOUNGSTER'S HAND

CHICAGO
Chicago police deplore switchblade menace; youngsters get them anyway

LOS ANGELES

Of course these aren't meant for boys but Los Angeles boys will carry them


SEATTLE

And so the story goes—push-button knives aplenty all across the country

KnifeRights MSJ App.000655

The Toy That Kills

from page 39

buy a switchblade over the counter—no questions asked. True, some places have laws against selling "dangerous knives" to minors. But let's see how these laws work.

In New York a state law forbids the sale or giving of any pushbutton knife with a blade over two and a half inches long to anyone under sixteen. But in New York City a thirteen-year-old boy recently gazed admiringly at a shiny window display of switchblade knives, daggers and stilettos. He strolled into the highly respectable cutlery store and asked to see a four-inch switchblade, its point sharp as a rapier, its blade well honed.

"That's two dollars and ninety-five cents," the salesman said.

After ringing up the sale he casually remarked, "You're sixteen, aren't you?"

The thirteen-year-older—who was average size for his age—nodded and walked out with his perilous prize.

That same day in the same city another youngster critically stabbed a playmate with a switchblade. Was he any more to blame than his indifferent elders who sanctioned the murderous knicknack?

In Washington, D. C.—only a few knife-throws from the Department of Justice building—a fifteen-year-old boy recently told a storekeeper meaningfully, "I want a switch knife—the longest you got. I don't care about the price just so it's sharp."

The merchant nodded understandingly and sold him his knife.

The price and the patter may vary but you can make the same transaction in nearly any fair-sized community in America. Sample surveys show that it is as easy for a youth to buy a switch knife as a package of cigarettes. I chaperoned youngsters who purchased them for me—while I waited outside the store—in many communities—and none had any difficulty. In some towns they're known as "springblades," "snap knives" or "swingback knives." Whatever the name, the article is the same.

"What do you use them for?" salesmen were asked.

"Sharpen pencils, cut string, anything," they replied.

"Why are they better than ordinary penknives?"

"You don't break your fingernails opening them."

IN MY home town switchblades have been advertised as "Safety Push-button Knives." Push-button, yes. But safety? Even a salesman warned me to be sure and keep the knife locked when not in use because his own switchblade had accidentally snapped open in his pocket and gashed his right hip.

Once while looking at switchblades in a Connecticut store, I feigned innocence, asking, "Do you think this is an appropriate gift for my twelve-year-old nephew?"

"It's ideal; you couldn't get a boy that age a nicer present," I was assured.

Later I watched my neighbor's tow-headed twelve-year-old son empty his pockets of the familiar boyhood miscellany: pennies, a ball, some nails, gum, a magnifying glass—and yes, a three-inch switchblade. When I expressed concern at his carrying such a weapon, he proudly showed me how to use it, jabbing at an imaginary enemy.

I couldn't help thinking of the twelve-year-old lad who was switch-knifed in the back last year outside his public school by an angry schoolmate to whom he refused to lend a dime.

Teachers in some areas take switch knives from pupils before allowing them to come to class. Nevertheless some boys I talked to told me they avoid detection by slipping their knives into their shoes.

Why are these switchblades so popular with youngsters? One reason is that many sources of their entertainment have glamorized them, charges Edward J. Kelly, former superintendent of Rhode Island State Police.

But one fourteen-year-old New Jersey boy got the idea elsewhere. Last spring when a twelve-year-old classmate accidentally bumped into him in school, he whipped out a handy switchblade and, as witnesses put it, "cut a hole in the other boy." The victim later said, "I never even saw the knife—I only felt it."

"Why did you carry a switchblade knife to school?" the youthful stabber was asked.

"For protection!" he defiantly replied. "A couple of kids jabbed *me* with a switch knife last week and took thirty-three cents from me! So the next day I took sixty-seven cents out of my sister's penny bank and bought *me* a switchblade."

Violence begets violence.

No wonder a juvenile court judge told me, "It's only a short step from carrying a switchblade to gang warfare."

Can anything be said in defense of allowing youngsters to have these weapons? I interviewed manufacturers and spokesmen for the industry. This is their argument: "If you don't let kids have push-button knives, they'll only find other weapons to commit their crimes with—ice picks, baseball bats, even hatpins. The sale of knives isn't to blame. It is the education of these unfortunate youngsters."

Authorities consider this false reasoning. Of course people will always manage to get hold of weapons to commit *premeditated* crimes. But it is the *unintentional* stabbings committed with this too handy pocketknife that could be avoided by outlawing its manufacture. "Countless crimes would *never* be committed if switchblades were banned," Assistant United States Attorney J. Warren Wilson assured me in Washington.

It may surprise you, but crime statistics everywhere reveal that knives cause far more trouble than guns. The ratio is as high as five to one in some communities. In examining police records I was stunned to find how many crimes of violence revolve around a switchblade. Most newspapers merely report a "knife stabbing," neglecting to tell you a switchblade was the culprit.

CLEVELAND recognizes the switchblade menace. Listen to Captain David Kerr of the Homicide Detail: "Last year we had one hundred and sixty-nine stabbings, one hundred and forty of them with switchblade knives. During the same period switchblades were responsible for one fourth of our homicides. Half of the killers were under twenty-three."

Chicago—especially on the South Side—has been harassed by switchblades. "Many cuttings result from trivial disputes," reveals Virgil W. Peterson, director of the Chicago Crime Commission. "If the courts would enforce laws making it illegal to carry dangerous knives, crime would be greatly reduced."

Detroit's former Police Commissioner John H. Witherspoon tried to outlaw switchblades several years ago—but the city council failed to approve the ban. Last year Boston Police Captain Louis DiSessa asked a legislative committee to make possession of switchblade knives a criminal offense, but nothing was done.

In all my investigations I could find no good reason why anybody—youngster or adult—should be legally allowed to carry a switchblade. It's hardly a "perfect Father's Day gift," as one overzealous merchant claimed.

Psychiatrists warn that a switchblade in the irresponsible hands of alcoholics and psychopathic personalities can spell murder. Recently in Hempstead, New York, a young war-hero—who had survived three battle wounds—was quietly getting off a bus with his girl friend. Suddenly, without warning or reason, another passenger—a drunken forty-five-year-old stranger—grabbed the young man and plunged a four-inch switchblade into his chest, killing him almost instantly. Who was the killer? A man with a long police record for drunkenness and assault. He couldn't carry a gun without a permit. Why was it so *easy* for him to roam the streets with a switchblade knife?

At almost the same time, in Newark, New Jersey, a thirty-five-year-old woman accused her husband of being unfaithful. Before he had a chance to explain, she angrily yanked a switchblade from her stocking and stabbed her husband in the heart. The next day he died.

"If she had only hit her husband with a dish or a rolling pin instead!" mused a police

[*continued on page 109*]

The Toy That Kills

from page 88

official. "A switchblade isn't something for anybody with a temper to have."

Newark has now declared all-out war against switchblades.

City and county law-enforcement officers are co-operating to battle the problem. Judges are handing out stiffer sentences to carriers of dangerous knives. Merchants have been ordered to remove them from their windows and threatened with stiff prison terms for selling them to minors.

The schools help too. In an unprecedented directive, Newark School Superintendent John S. Herron instructed principals and teachers to suspend—even expel—students bringing "oversized pocketknives" to school. "I have not had a single complaint since then," Dr. Herron told me.

Because the term "dangerous knife" is vague in New Jersey—as in most state laws—a down-to-earth woman legislator, Grace M. Freeman, expects soon to introduce a bill to clarify it. Under her proposal, registration of all knives over a certain length would be required. Switchblades would be outlawed flatly. And New Jersey's law on the sale and possession of other dangerous knives would be greatly tightened.

"Why put temptation in people's hands by making it so easy to buy a switchblade?" said legislator Freeman, a former schoolteacher.

BECAUSE of the growing number of knife assaults in Washington, D. C., Congress will soon be asked by the United States Attorney's office to pass a local ordinance requiring people buying switchblades to secure permits. "We want to make it as hard to buy a switchblade as a gun," Assistant United States Attorney Wilson reveals.

What the District of Columbia and Newark are doing, other places all over America should be doing.

Why aren't they?

Simply because of public apathy.

On your behalf, I have asked the authorities what women can do *now*. Here are their answers:

1. Make sure that your children don't carry switchblades or other dangerous knives.

2. If your son has a pocketknife for scouting or fishing, discourage his taking it to school, the movies or other public places. Don't let him be smart-alecky about it. Deglamorize knife-carrying to him.

3. See to it that your local storekeepers don't have flagrant window displays of dangerous knives. Help prosecute dealers who sell them to minors. Through your local woman's club or PTA you can conduct educational campaigns against switchblades and award posters to co-operating merchants which say:

> This Store Has Stopped Selling
> Switchblades and Other Dangerous
> Knives to Help Cut Down Juvenile
> Delinquency and Crime

4. Help your local law-enforcement agencies round up dangerous knives.

5. Work for passage of a state law which bans switchblades and controls other dangerous knives. To be effective, laws must be statewide because children can cross city limits to secure the forbidden weapons. Naturally, these laws must be *strictly* enforced. In one state it's against the law to carry a concealed switchblade all right, but many stores go right on selling them.

In coming days, more and more state legislatures will ponder the dangerous knife problem. They can greatly benefit from the pressure of aroused far-sighted women interested in protecting their communities.

Human nature being what it is, when a switchblade tragedy occurs too many of us deplore the incident—and then forget all about it. But as Newark Safety Director Keenan reminds us, "If we can make America safe from firecrackers, we can from knives too."

Don't be unduly alarmed.

But don't wait, either, until a youngster—it could be yours—is murdered with a "toy" pocketknife. [THE END]

KEN ONION EXHIBIT B

Automatic Spring Blade Knives
with locking device and safety catch

#10	Exact miniature replica of standard spring-blade, no safety. Has shackle, genuine horn handle, brass lined, brass riveted, mirror finish blade, polished decorative guard and bolster, blade 1-1/8" long, handle 1-5/8.
#14	Standard spring blade with push button release and lock, other features same as above. Also with simulated mother of pearl scales. Blade 1-7/8" long, handle 2-5/8.
#18	Same as above, blade 2-3/4" long, handle 3-3/4.
#20	Same as #14, Blade 3-3/4" long, handle 4-1/2.
#22	Same as #14, Blade 4" long, handle 5.
#28	Same as #14, Blade 5" long, handle 6.
N.B.	These knives are called stilletoes. They do not have sharp edges. The steel will take and hold a sharp edge if desired.

Latama Imported Cutlery catalog circa 1948

AUTOMATIC
PUSH BUTTON KNIFE
by EDGEMASTER
ONLY
PRESS BUTTON
...Blade Snaps Open!
"Has the Edge on 'em all"
GUARANTEED!
Eliminate Broken Fingernails
Practical........Useful........Handy
Ready for use in a JIFFY
Safe! ..BLADE LOCKS IN OPEN OR CLOSED POSITION
HIGH CARBON STEEL BLADE TEMPERED TO HOLD SHARP EDGE!
Made by Skilled Craftsmen for Durability and Heavy Duty

EDGEMASTER
MY·T·MITE
Has the Edge on 'em all
AUTOMATIC PUSH BUTTON KNIVES
SAFETY CATCH LOCKS BLADE IN OPEN OR CLOSE POSITION
SMALL...COMPACT...PRACTICAL.........THE PERFECT KNIFE FOR LADY OR GENTLEMAN
No BROKEN FINGERNAILS...PRESS THE BUTTON. BLADE SNAPS OPEN
BLADES MADE OF FINEST HIGH CARBON STEEL...HARDENED and TEMPERED

PRESS THE BUTTON AND.. ZIP!

IT OPENS AND LOCKS ITSELF!

JACK-O-MATIC

T.M. REG. U.S. PAT. OFF.

EACH

THIS BOX CONTAINS ONE HALF (1/2) DOZEN

JACK-O-MATIC

HAMMER BRAND

PUSH BUTTON Pocket Knives

KEEP YOUR DISPLAY CARD FULL FROM THIS RESERVE STOCK

JACK-MASTER CUTLERY

MADE UNDER SCHRADE-WALDEN PATENTS

Product of Imperial Knife Co., Inc. PROVIDENCE RHODE ISLAND

Jack-master

Utility Knife

PRESS THE BUTTON AND BLADE OPENS and LOCKS Itself AUTOMATICALLY!

PRICE EACH

A Necessity for SPORTSMEN, HOBBYISTS CARPENTERS, MECHANICS ELECTRICIANS, WHITTLERS

- Always Leaves One Hand Free!
- No More Broken Fingernails
- Handiest Knife Ever Made!

RAZOR STEEL BLADE

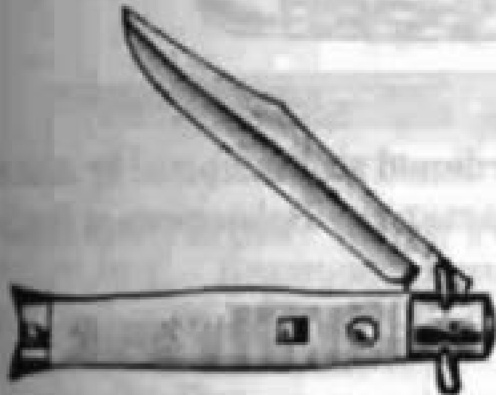
MADE UNDER SCHRADE-WALDEN PATENTS

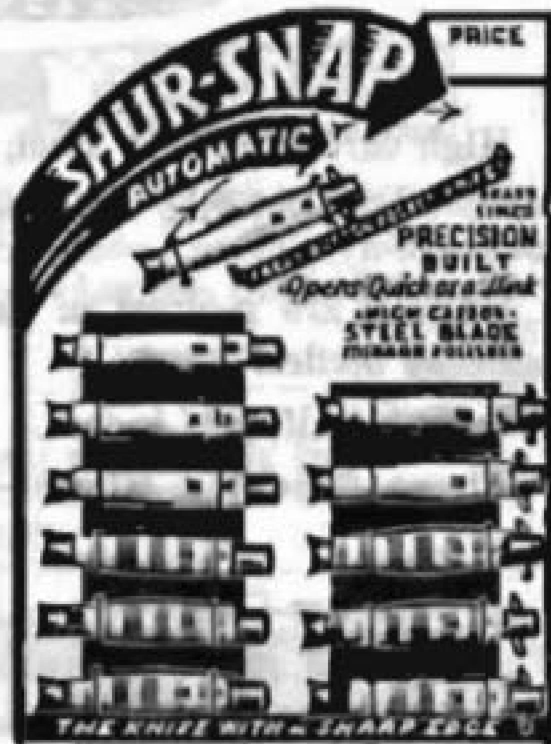
MADE IN U.S.A.

PRINTED IN U.S.A.

A PRODUCT OF THE IMPERIAL KNIFE CO. • PROVIDENCE R.

SHUR-SNAP AUTOMATIC





One blade automatic push button knife.
Blade can be locked in open or closed position.
High carbon steel, automatically hardened and tempered.
Unbreakable plastic handles.
Length closed, 4 inches.
One doz on three-color counter display card.

Per Doz
No. 03-1800C—Wt doz 2 lbs $25 20
One card in carton.

SHUR-SNAP
AUTOMATIC
PRICE
PRESS BUTTON POCKET KNIFE
BRASS LINED
PRECISION BUILT
Opens Quick as a Wink
• HIGH CARBON •
STEEL BLADE
MIRROR POLISHED
"THE KNIFE WITH A SHARP EDGE"

SHUR-SNAP
AUTOMATIC
PRICE
Press Button Pocket Knife
PRECISION BUILT
OPENS AS QUICK AS A WINK
HIGH CARBON
STEEL BLADE
Mirror Polished
"The Knife With A Sharp Edge"

Instructions for Operating PRESTO Automatic Safety Knife

—o—.

OPENING - Move safety slide away from button. Press the button opening the blade.

CLOSING - Press the button. Close blade. Move safety slide towards button. This locks blade so it will not open in the pocket. Blade locks open and locks closed.

KEEP YOUR KNIFE IN PROPER CONDITION

Do not sharpen blade on grind stone. Sharpen blade on oil stone by holding blade at a slight angle so that it will have a short bevel. Do not lay blade flat on stone when sharpening.

Oil joints of knife occasionally so that blade will open and close smoothly.

George Schrade Knife Company, Inc.

46 Seymour Street Bridgeport, Conn.

Instructions For Operating "PULL-BALL" Automatic Knife

TO OPEN: Pull Ball.

TO CLOSE: Simply press blade down until blade snaps into lock position.

Keep Your Knife In Proper Condition

Do not sharpen blade on grind stone. Sharpen blade on oil stone by holding blade at a slight angle so that it will have a short bevel. Do not lay blade flat on stone when sharpening.

Oil joints of knife occasionally so that blade will open and close smoothly.

The OSBORNE COMPANY
Clifton, N. J., U. S. A.

Schrade Patents
11-9-37 10.10.44

BARGEON

#767 "French Automatic" 9" open, this is an unusual example of an out-the-front type; features two-piece construction completely held together by screws through the frame. Strong, crisp action. Black plastic knurled grips; chrome-plated metal bolsters top and bottom. Oversize 4" blade; beautifully polished. Factory boxed: $70.00

#743 "BARGEON Mini-Pushbutton" Very unusual item. 5½" open Features black plastic checkered handles, full brass liners with milled edges. Has the superbly polished stainless steel blade characteristic of all of the "BARGEON" knives. We've never seen finer finish and polish in any manufacturers items, regardless of price. Factory boxed: $60.00

#752 "BARGEON Stiletto" Avail. in two sizes: 7½" open, and 8½" open. (8½" sz. pictured) Both sizes feature handle slabs of imit. Stag. 7½" sz. has full brass liners w/milled edges, and button-locking of the blade; 8½" sz. has full steel liners, and lock-back blade release, as shown. Extremely powerfully sprung. Both sz. exhibit the superb blade finish mentioned above. New, in interesting factory boxes: 7½" $75.00; 8½" $85.00

(8½" open)

#788 "Le Superoto" Another example of the french version of the out-the-front type, this knife features very strong action, a wrap-around type of frame, and black checkered handles. The item is screwed together through the frame. It appears to have a "safety" switch also, but we can't read the instruction sheet which is included with each piece, in order to get it to operate correctly. Parlay Vous French? Factory New: $60.00

#755 "BARGEON Guilloche Stiletto" 7½" open; This is truly a beautiful piece; features all-metal handles with tasteful "engine turned" design, full brass liners with milled edges and the same beautiful fit and finish that we keep raving about. New in factory box: $80.00

#759 "BARGEON Black Beauty" Avail. in three sizes!: 7½", 8½", or 9½". This model features black checkered grips, and is identical to the #752 described above, but the 9½" size is a real handful! All are extremely powerfully sprung. If you get the idea that we are quite taken with these new French additions to our list, you're correct! 7½": $75.00, 8½": $85.00, 9½": $95.00

BARGEON

ÉNÉE & PEYLAIRE

#444 "French Automatic FLASH" 9" open has smooth textured black plastic handles and oversize 4" blade. Strong, crisp action. Very rarely seen type, with large top chromed bolster/guard. Factory new: $65.00

#465 "PEYLAIRE Pistol Knife" We had never seen one of these before, but there was one shown in the movie: "The Man Who Wasn't There". Well, now you can add one of these to your collection. Black metal frame. blade folds into the top of the "barrel"; pull the trigger and "BANG"! Opens like a "shot", if you'll pardon the pun. Factory boxed: $75.00

Summer 1992

The

UTOMATIC

NIFE

Resource Guide and NEWSLETTER

101
PATENTED DESIGNS!
Complete Specifications
130 Years of Pocket Knife
Secrets Revealed!
Special Offer
$49.95
Dept. B • Birmingham, Michigan 48009

The author made the crude blade to how futile anti-knife laws are. Below an Italian-made automatic knife.

(Above) Examples of some modern automatic knives legally employed mainly by military and law enforcement officials are by, from top: Chuck Ochs, Benchmade/Al Mar GPA and an Italian-made folding hunter. (Dick photo)

Oregon's Switchblade Law

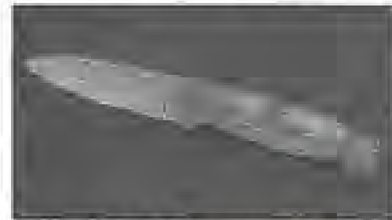
In Oregon it is legal to make, sell, buy or own switchblade knives. However, it is illegal to carry a switchblade knife, a gravity knife, a dagger, or a dirk concealed on one's person, or for a convicted felon to possess a switchblade or gravity knife. Most other states have banned switchblade knives. Under federal law it is illegal to mail, carry or ship a switchblade or gravity knife across state lines.

are over three times more likely to be used for murder than pocketknives. Short of forcing everyone to eat pre-prepared microwave meals, the law cannot deny criminals access to household cutlery. Plus, if we forced criminals to substitute kitchen knives for switchblades, we would probably increase the murder rate as the average butcher knife is far larger than the alternative.

Starting with Oregon's 1981 Annual Crime Report, an average of 22 percent of homicides and 18 percent of aggravated assaults were committed with cutting instruments each year through 1984. Contrary to national trends, knife assaults were lower than murders (it's possible Oregon defines the crime somewhat differently than other areas). From 1985 (the year switchblades were legalized) through 1992, 20 percent of murders and 17.7 percent of assaults were committed with cutting instruments (nationally, the edged-weapon murder rate averaged around 19.5 percent for the same years). While legalizing push-button folders may not prevent crime, murder and assault rates did average lower.

One of the primary reasons given for switchblades being so dangerous is that their ease of opening makes it more likely that someone will impulsively strike out in the heat of anger. From Oregon's crime rates, this does not seem to have resulted in a measurable increase in assaults. In any case, kitchen knives, screwdrivers, ice picks, hunting knives and scissors can all be used with even less effort.

Undoubtedly someone will read numbers and decide the answer banning all pocket, hunting and knives over a certain blade length prove just how futile this would be, the following test. I selected a long flat steel rod from a pile of scrap metal on our ranch by a former resident. hacksawing off a short section, I easily



Shawn Vallotton's Damascus Western. Shawn, along with father Butch and brother Rainy, makes automatic knives in Oregon, where it is legal to make them.

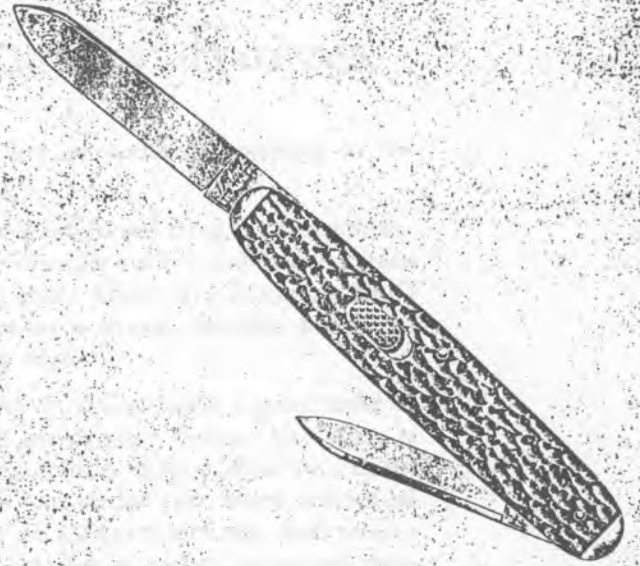
ground and filed the scrap into a highly effective, 8 1/2-inch double-edge blade. Wrapping the base with a little duct tape provided a handle. Total time from scrap pile to weapon: about an hour. Steel type and carbon content? Heck if I know! Heat treatment and Rockwell hardness? Who cares! This homemade dagger will cut and stab as well as most knives and it's both stronger and larger than the majority of switchblades I've handled. Use it and throw it away, it was practically free anyway.

One-hand opening knives have many legitimate work and sporting applications. Carpenters, electricians, ranchers, gardeners and farmers all are presented with situations when only one hand is available to open a folding knife. The old sailing motto of "one hand for the ship and one hand for yourself" still applies to modern boaters. Canoers, kayakers and rafters would be equally well served by an auto-opener for emergency use, as would rock climbers and sport parachutists. No doubt most fishermen and hunters can remember a situation where a one-hand folding knife would have been a tremendous advantage. On the other hand, banning auto-opening folders has not reduced crime to any measurable degree. Having had over 30 years to experiment with this law and finding it ineffective, isn't it time we considered correcting the mistake? —

FLYLOCK AUTOMATIC SAFETY OUTDOOR KNIFE
No. 11004
(WITH FOLDING GUARD)
The ideal knife for all outdoors and sport use. Dependable in any emergency. Insure yourself against knife accidents. One hand only required to open or close, leaving the other free to retain grip on rod, gun or any other object. Crocus polished blade forged from extra heavy gauge crucible cutlery steel, with strong, durable, keen cutting edge Brass linings.
Flylock
Automatically Locks When Opened
Automatically Locks When Closed
$2.50 Post Paid
Blade 3¾"
Handle 5"
Money refunded if not satisfied, on receipt
Press and slide the button—blade and guard flies open into position. Send for catalog.
Showing Folding Guard, Closing
FLYLOCK KNIFE CO., INC. N-106 Lafayette Street New York
—DEALERS INQUIRIES INVITED—

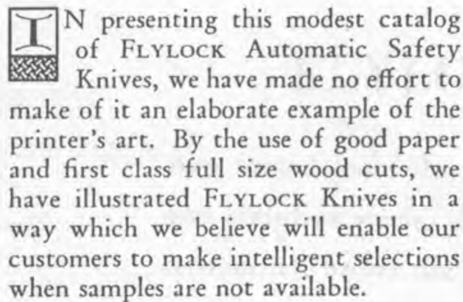
With
One Hand
Blade opens and locks automatically. Locks automatically closed. Blades forged from best obtainable
STAINLESS CUTLERY BLADE STEEL
Flylock
STAINLESS STEEL
Flylock Automatic Safety Fishermen's and Outdoor Knife
With scaling back.
Length of blade 3¾ inches.
Length of handle 5 ins.
At your dealers or sent postpaid for
$3.00
THE FLYLOCK KNIFE COMPANY, Inc.
106 Lafayette St. New York

FLYLOCK Automatic Safety Knives



The Flylock Knife Company, Inc.
106-110 Lafayette Street
New York

Flylock Automatic Safety Knives



IN presenting this modest catalog of FLYLOCK Automatic Safety Knives, we have made no effort to make of it an elaborate example of the printer's art. By the use of good paper and first class full size wood cuts, we have illustrated FLYLOCK Knives in a way which we believe will enable our customers to make intelligent selections when samples are not available.

The blades of FLYLOCK Automatic Safety Knives are automatically opened and locked—and when closed are locked automatically. They are opened with one hand, even a gloved hand. The action is easy, direct and positive. The mechanism is simple, strong and of precision accuracy—there is nothing to get out of order.

The automatic action precludes the possibility of broken finger nails or liability of accidental opening in the pocket.

Blades are forged from the best obtainable crucible cutlery and stainless steels and every blade in a FLYLOCK Knife possesses a strong, durable, keen cutting edge.

Every FLYLOCK Knife is guaranteed to give satisfactory service, but there is no guarantee against abuse or misuse. It is our desire that every individual user of a FLYLOCK Knife shall receive the extreme in quality, value and satisfaction. If for any reason a knife proves defective in either workmanship or material, we are only too glad of an opportunity to make good.

Net price lists printed in plain figures will be mailed promptly upon request.

The Flylock Knife Company, Inc.

Flylock

CATALOGUE NO. C15

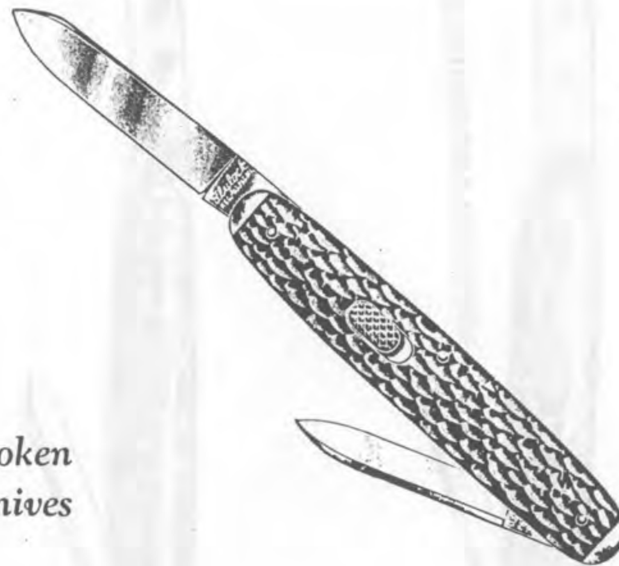
FLYLOCK Automatic Safety Knives

Automatically lock when opened

Automatically lock when closed

Just one operation with one hand

No fingernails are broken opening Flylock Knives



Safe - Always

Practical

Convenient

The Flylock Knife Company, Inc.

106-110 Lafayette Street, New York

KEN ONION EXHIBIT C

DEPARTMENT OF HOMELAND SECURITY,
OFFICE OF THE COMMISSIONER OF CUSTOMS.
Washington, DC, May 6, 2009

The following documents of U.S. Customs and Border Protection ("CBP"), Office of Regulations and Rulings, have been determined to be of sufficient interest to the public and CBP field offices to merit publication in the CUSTOMS BULLETIN.

SANDRA L. BELL,
Executive Director,
Regulations and Rulings,
Office of International Trade.

19 CFR PART 177

PROPOSED REVOCATION OF RULING LETTERS AND REVOCATION OF TREATMENT RELATING TO THE ADMISSIBILTY OF CERTAIN KNIVES WITH SPRING-ASSISTED OPENING MECHANISMS

AGENCY: U.S. Customs and Border Protection, Department of Homeland Security.

ACTION: Notice of proposed revocation of four ruling letters and revocation of treatment relating to the admissibility of certain knives with spring-assisted opening mechanisms.

SUMMARY: Pursuant to section 625(c), Tariff Act of 1930 (19 U.S.C. §1625(c)), as amended by section 623 of Title VI (Customs Modernization) of the North American Free Trade Agreement Implementation Act (Pub. L. 103–182,107 Stat. 2057), this notice advises interested parties that U.S. Customs and Border Protection (CBP) intends to revoke four ruling letters relating to the admissibility, pursuant to the Switchblade Knife Act, 15 U.S.C. §§ 1241–1245 (and the CBP Regulations promulgated pursuant thereto set forth in 19 CFR §§ 12.95–12.103) of certain knives with spring-assisted opening mechanisms. Similarly, CBP proposes to revoke any treatment previously accorded by it to substantially identical transactions. Comments are invited on the correctness of the intended actions.

DATE: Comments must be received on or before June 21, 2009.

ADDRESS: Written comments are to be addressed to U.S. Customs and Border Protection, Office of International Trade, Regulations

Case 4:23-cv-00547-O Document 20-3 Filed 10/06/23 Page 127 of 462 PageID 800

and Rulings, Attention: Intellectual Property and Restricted Merchandise Branch, Mint Annex, 799 9th Street, N.W., Washington, D.C. 20229. Submitted comments may be inspected at U.S. Customs and Border Protection, 799 9th Street, N.W., Washington, D.C., during regular business hours. Arrangements to inspect submitted comments should be made in advance by calling Joseph Clark, Trade and Commercial Regulations Branch, at (202) 325–0089.

FOR FURTHER INFORMATION CONTACT: Andrew M. Langreich, Intellectual Property and Restricted Merchandise Branch, at (202) 325–0089.

SUPPLEMENTARY INFORMATION:

BACKGROUND

On December 8, 1993, Title VI (Customs Modernization) of the North American Free Trade Agreement Implementation Act (Pub. L. 103–182, 107 Stat. 2057) (hereinafter “Title VI”) became effective. Title VI amended many sections of the Tariff Act of 1930, as amended, and related laws. Two new concepts which emerged from the law are **informed compliance** and **shared responsibility**. These concepts are premised on the idea that in order to maximize voluntary compliance with customs laws and regulations, the trade community needs to be clearly and completely informed of its legal obligations. Accordingly, the law imposes a greater obligation on CBP to provide the public with improved information concerning the trade community’s responsibilities and rights under the customs and related laws. In addition, both the trade and CBP share responsibility in carrying out import requirements. For example, under section 484 of the Tariff Act of 1930 (19 U.S.C. §1484), as amended, the importer of record is responsible for using reasonable care to enter, classify and value imported merchandise, and provide any other information necessary to enable CBP to properly assess duties, collect accurate statistics and determine whether any other applicable legal requirement is met.

Pursuant to section 625(c)(1), Tariff Act of 1930 (19 U.S.C. §1625(c)(1)), as amended by section 623 of Title VI, this notice advises interested parties that CBP intends to revoke four ruling letters concerning to the admissibility of certain knives with spring-assisted opening mechanisms. Although in this notice CBP is specifically referring to the revocation of Headquarters Ruling Letters (HQ) 116315, dated March 1, 2005 (Attachment A); HQ W116730, dated November 7, 2006 (Attachment B); HQ H016666, dated December 12, 2007 (Attachment C) and HQ H032255, dated August 12, 2008 (Attachment D), this notice covers any rulings on the admissibility of such merchandise which may exist but have not been specifically identified. CBP has undertaken reasonable efforts to search existing databases for rulings in addition to those identi-

fied. No further rulings have been found. Any party who has received an interpretive ruling or decision (*i.e.*, ruling letter, internal advice memorandum or decision or protest review decision) on the admissibility of merchandise subject to this notice should advise CBP during this notice period.

Similarly, pursuant to section 625(c)(2), Tariff Act of 1930 (19 U.S.C. § 1625 (c)(2)), as amended by section 623 of Title VI, CBP intends to revoke any treatment previously accorded by CBP to substantially identical transactions. Any person involved with substantially identical transactions should advise CBP during this notice period. An importer's failure to advise CBP of substantially identical transactions or of a specific ruling not identified in this notice, may raise issues of reasonable care on the part of the importer or its agents for importations of merchandise subsequent to the effective date of the final decision on this notice.

In HQ 116315, HQ W116730, HQ H016666, and HQ H032255, CBP determined that certain knives with spring- or release-assisted opening mechanisms were admissible pursuant to the Switchblade Knife Act, 15 U.S.C. §§ 1241–1245 and the CBP Regulations promulgated pursuant thereto and set forth in 19 CFR §§ 12.95–12.103. Based on our recent review and reconsideration of HQ 116315, HQ W116730, HQ H016666, and HQ H032255, and reexamination of several of the knives therein at issue, we have determined that the admissibility determination in the aforementioned rulings is incorrect. It is now CBP's position that knives incorporating spring- and release-assisted opening mechanisms are prohibited from entry into the United States pursuant to the Switchblade Knife Act, 15 U.S.C. §§ 1241–1245.

Pursuant to 19 U.S.C. § 1625(c)(1), CBP intends to revoke HQ 116315, HQ W116730, HQ H016666, and HQ H032255, and any other ruling not specifically identified that is contrary to the determination set forth in this notice to reflect the proper admissibility determination pursuant to the analysis set forth in proposed Headquarters Ruling Letters (HQs) H043122 (Attachment E), H043124 (Attachment F) H043126 (Attachment G) and H043127 (Attachment H) . Additionally, pursuant to 19 U.S.C. §1625(c)(2), CBP intends to revoke any treatment previously accorded by CBP to substantially identical transactions that are contrary to the determination set forth in this notice. Before taking this action, consideration will be given to any written comments timely received.

DATED: May 1, 2009

JEREMY BASKIN,
Director,
Border Security & Trade Compliance Division

Attachments

[ATTACHMENT A]

DEPARTMENT OF HOMELAND SECURITY.
U.S. CUSTOMS AND BORDER PROTECTION,
HQ 116315
March 1, 2005
RES–2–23 RR:IT:EC 116315 GOB
CATEGORY: Restricted Merchandise

THOMAS M. KEATING, ESQ.
HODES, KEATING & PILON
39 South LaSalle Street Suite 1020
Chicago, IL 60603–1731

RE: HQ 116229 Modified; Knives; Switchblade Knives; 15 U.S.C. §§ 1241–1245; 19 CFR §§ 12.95–12.97

DEAR MR. KEATING:

This letter is in reply to your letter of September 17, 2004 on behalf of Fiskars Brands, Inc. ("Fiskars"), requesting reconsideration of HQ 116229, dated July 8, 2004. You made an additional submission of December 14, 2004 and participated in a telephone conference on October 29, 2004. We have reviewed HQ 116229 and have determined that it should be modified.

Pursuant to section 625(c), Tariff Act of 1930 (19 U.S.C. 1625(c)), as amended by section 623 of Title VI (Customs Modernization) of the North American Free Trade Agreement Implementation Act, Pub. L. 103–182, 107 Stat. 2057, 2186 (1993), notice of the proposed modification of HQ 116229, as described below, was published in the Customs Bulletin on January 26, 2005. No comments were received in response to the notice. One request for reconsideration of another ruling was received. That request will be considered separately from the subject notice.

FACTS:

You request reconsideration of HQ 116229, wherein we determined that the knives at issue were switchblades and therefore prohibited entry into the United States pursuant to the Switchblade Knife Act (15 U.S.C. §§ 1241–1245).

You describe the knives as follows:

> The subject merchandise are release assisted knives designed to be primarily used as a "general carry." The knife's features, such as the belt clip and serrated edge, are characteristic of a jackknife or pocket knife, rather than a weapon. There are two versions of the knives at issue. Part number 22–0761 [07161] is a serrated blade version (previously attached as Sample A) and part number 22–07162 is a fine edged version (previously attached as Sample B) [Footnote omitted.]
>
> . . . part number 22–07161 (Exhibit A) is a folding blade knife made in Taiwan. The knife is made of metal and includes a pocket clip on the side of the handle. The knife has the visual appearance of a jackknife or pocketknife. The knife measures 4 ¼ inches long when closed. When extended, the blade of the knife measures 3 inches total. The blade has a serrated section measuring 1 ¼ inches. The overall length of the knife, when extended, is 7 ¼ inches. There is a 3/16 inch thumb stud on each

side of the unsharpened edge near the base of the blade used for pulling the blade open. The blade has a single edge and can be locked into an open position by the use of a safety device. The same safety device is used to lock the knife in the closed position. This device does not act to open or close the knife – its sole function is to keep the knife locked in the knife's then-existing position. The knife also has a lock mechanism that must be released to close the knife once the knife is open. This mechanism is not engaged in any way to open the knife. Release assisted knife, part number 22–07162 (Exhibit B), is identical in description to part number 22–07161 (Exhibit A), except that it has a fine edge, not a serrated blade.

ISSUE:

Whether the subject knives are prohibited entry into the United States pursuant to the Switchblade Knife Act, 15 U.S.C. §§ 1241–1245.

LAW AND ANALYSIS:

Statutory and Regulatory Background

Pursuant to the Act of August 12, 1958 (Pub. L. 85–623, codified at 15 U.S.C. §§ 1241–1245, otherwise known as the "Switchblade Knife Act"), whoever knowingly introduces, or manufactures for introduction, into interstate commerce, or transports or distributes in interstate commerce, any switchblade knife, shall be fined or imprisoned, or both.

The Customs and Border Protection ("CBP") Regulations promulgated pursuant to the Switchblade Knife Act are set forth in 19 CFR §§ 12.95–12.103. In this regard we note the following definitions:

§ 12.95 Definitions.

Terms as used in §§ 12.96 through 12.103 of this part are defined as follows:

(a) *Switchblade knife*. . . . any imported knife, . . . including "Balisong", "butterfly" . . . knives, which has one or more of the following characteristics or identities:

(1) A blade which opens automatically by hand pressure applied to a button or device in the handle of the knife, or any knife with a blade which opens automatically by operation of inertia, gravity, or both;

(2) Knives which, by insignificant preliminary preparation, as described in paragraph (b) of this section, can be altered or converted so as to open automatically by hand pressure applied to a button or device in the handle of the knife or by operation of inertia, gravity, or both;

(3) Unassembled knife kits or knife handles without blades which, when fully assembled with added blades, springs, or other parts, are knives which open automatically by hand pressure applied to a button or device in the handle of the knife or by operation of inertia, gravity, or both; or

(4) Knives with a detachable blade that is propelled by a spring-operated mechanism, and components thereof.

. . .

(c) *Utilitarian use.* "Utilitarian use" includes but is not necessarily limited to use:

(1) For a customary household purpose;

(2) For usual personal convenience, including grooming;

(3) In the practice of a profession, trade, or commercial or employment activity;

(4) In the performance of a craft or hobby;

(5) In the course of such outdoor pursuits as hunting and fishing; and

(6) In scouting activities.

Other pertinent regulations are as follows:

§ 12.96 Imports unrestricted under the Act.

(a) *Common and special purpose knives.* Imported knives with a blade style designed for a primary utilitarian use, as defined in § 12.95(c), shall be admitted to unrestricted entry provided that in condition as entered the imported knife is not a switchblade knife as defined in § 12.95(a)(1). . . .

§ 12.97 Importations contrary to law.

Importations of switchblade knives, except as permitted by 15 U.S.C. 1244, are importations contrary to law and are subject to forfeiture under 19 U.S.C. 1595a(c).

HQ 116229

In HQ 116229, dated July 8, 2004, this office ruled that the subject knives were switchblades within the meaning of 19 CFR 12.95(a)(4) and were therefore prohibited entry into the U.S. pursuant to the Switchblade Knife Act. HQ 116229 did not address whether the knives were switchblades within the meaning of 19 CFR 12.95(a)(1) or whether they had a utilitarian use pursuant to 19 CFR 12.95(c).

Your Claims

In your submission of December 14, 2004, you made the following claims:

(1) The subject knives are not switchblade knives within the meaning of 19 CFR 12.95(a)(1).

(2) In HQ 114990 CBP found that knives similar to the subject knives had blades designed for utilitarian uses within the meaning of 19 CFR 12.95(c).

(3) Marketing and promotional materials with respect to the subject knives are not yet available as Fiskars has not begun commercially importing the knives. You submitted various marketing materials with respect to other Fiskars' products, some of which are similar to the subject knives. Such similar knives, which are within the same class of lightweight folding knives as the subject knives, are the "E-Z-Out," "Gator" and "L.S.T." knives. Promotional materials for the Gator knives provide that they are "used by a wide assortment of people including fishing and hunting enthusiasts, electricians and repairmen and many more." Materials for the E-Z-Out knives provide: "A hard working electrician, repairman, policeman or home repair person seldom has both hands free to retrieve a knife. With the E-Z-Out

they need only one hand to reach down, grab the knife, open it, use it and put it away." Materials for the L.S.T. knives refer to them as "the perfect pocket knives." They are "light enough to be carried everywhere, strong enough for everyday activities, and tough enough to do anything."

You therefore contend that the subject knives should be admitted to unrestricted entry pursuant to 19 CFR 12.96(a).

Our Analysis and Determination

As indicated above, in HQ 116229 this office found that the subject knives are switchblades within the meaning of 19 CFR 12.95(a)(4). Upon further review, however, we have now determined that the subject knives are not switchblades within the meaning of 19 CFR 12.95(a)(1) because they do not meet the criteria therein, *i.e.*, they do not open automatically by hand pressure applied to a button or device in the handle, nor do they open automatically by operation of inertia, gravity, or both. We find additionally that the subject knives have a blade style designed for a primary utilitarian use within the meaning of 19 CFR 12.95(c).

Accordingly, we conclude that the requirements of 19 CFR 12.96(a) are satisfied, *i.e.*, the subject knives have a blade style designed for a primary utilitarian use as defined in 19 CFR 12.95(c) and they are not switchblades within the meaning of 19 CFR 12.95(a)(1). Therefore, pursuant to 19 CFR 12.96(a), the subject knives (part nos. 22–07161 and 22–07162) are permitted unrestricted entry into the United States.

HOLDING:

The subject knives (part nos. 22–07161 and 22–07162) are permitted unrestricted entry into the United States pursuant to 19 CFR 12.96(a).

EFFECT ON OTHER RULINGS:

HQ 116229 is modified. In accordance with 19 U.S.C. 1625(c), this ruling will become effective 60 days after publication in the Customs Bulletin.

CHARLES D. RESSIN
Acting Director,
International Trade Compliance Division.

[ATTACHMENT B]

DEPARTMENT OF HOMELAND SECURITY.
U.S. CUSTOMS AND BORDER PROTECTION,
HQ W116730
November 7, 2006
RES–2–23 RR:BSTC:CCI W116730 GOB
CATEGORY: Restricted Merchandise

MATTHEW K. NAKACHI, ESQ.
SANDLER, TRAVIS & ROSENBERG AND GLAD & FERGUSON, P.C.
One Sutter Street 10th Floor
San Francisco, CA 94104

RE: Knives; Switchblade Knives; 15 U.S.C. §§ 1241–1245; 19 CFR §§ 12.95–12.97

DEAR MR. NAKACHI:

This letter is in reply to your letter of May 31, 2006 on behalf of Columbia

River Knife and Tool ("CRKT"), requesting a ruling with respect to the admissibility of certain knives described below. Your ruling request was transferred to this branch for response on October 11, 2006. Our ruling is set forth below.

FACTS:

You describe the knives as follows:

> The Outburst mechanism operates via a *slight* spring action, which assists in the opening of the knife by application of the finger or thumb pressure on a thumb stud or disc which protrudes from the side of the blade, allowing the blade to be more easily pushed to an open and locked position. The interior of the blade is engineered such that the spring actually provides resistance, which prevents the knife from opening, until the blade is opened to approximately a 30-degree angle.
>
> Hence, when incorporated into knives, the Outburst mechanism only *assists* in the opening of the knife when the blade is opened to approximately 30-degrees. The user is unable to modify this restriction since at angles less than 30-degrees, the spring exerts back-pressure which holds the blade closed. . . . This back-pressure arises from the engineering of the tempered blade shape and not from the mere tightening of a blade screw.
>
> Since the Outburst mechanism holds the blade closed, it renders the tightness of the blade screw **irrelevant** for purposes of review under the Switchblade Knife Act. . . . As a secondary level of protection, *even if the main spring of the Outburst mechanism is removed*, the locking arm of the knife itself contains a ball-detent bias against the blade which prevents the knife from being flicked open by inertia or gravity. The ball-detent bias is also not readily accessible to modification by the user.
>
> The knife models subject to this ruling are as follows:
>
> 1. The *Koji Hara Ichi* consists of a drop-point, pen-knife blade, in black or silver. The body of the knife is built on an open frame with Zytel scale inserts and fasteners and a removable clip. . . .
> 2. The *My Tighe* consists of a stainless-steel, utilitarian blade with optional serrations. The knife includes black Zytel inserts, black hardware and a black Teflon-plated, removable clip. . . .
> 3. The *Kommer Full Throttle* consists of a stainless-steel, straight blade with optional serrations. The knife is built on an open frame with a flat handle profile. . . .
>
> All of the blades are readily identifiable as being designed for personal, utilitarian use. . . .
>
> . . .
>
> . . . Such single-handed opening is greatly beneficial to craftsmen, outdoorsmen and workers, who are engaged in a particular task when the need to simultaneously make a cut arises. For example, a fisherman could be holding a fish caught on a fishing line with one hand, while both drawing and opening an Outburst assisted-opening knife with the other hand.
>
> [All emphasis in original.]

You have submitted samples of the following knives, as identified on their packages: 1080 Full Throttle; 1081 Full Throttle; 1070 Ichi; 1070KSC Ichi; 1070R Red Ichi Asist.; 1090 My Tighe; 1091 My Tighe; and 1091K My Tighe Black. It is these eight knives which are the subject of this ruling. In the closed position, these knives range in length from four and one-half inches to three and one-quarter inches. The blades range in length from three and one-half inches to two and three-eighths inches.

ISSUE:

Whether the subject knives are prohibited entry into the United States pursuant to the Switchblade Knife Act, 15 U.S.C. §§ 1241–1245.

LAW AND ANALYSIS:

Pursuant to the Act of August 12, 1958 (Pub. L. 85–623, codified at 15 U.S.C. §§ 1241–1245, otherwise known as the "Switchblade Knife Act"), whoever knowingly introduces, or manufactures for introduction, into interstate commerce, or transports or distributes in interstate commerce, any switchblade knife, shall be fined or imprisoned, or both.

The Customs and Border Protection ("CBP") Regulations promulgated pursuant to the Switchblade Knife Act are set forth in 19 CFR §§ 12.95–12.103. In this regard we note the following definitions:

> **§ 12.95 Definitions.**
>
> Terms as used in §§12.96 through 12.103 of this part are defined as follows:
>
> (a) *Switchblade knife.* . . . any imported knife, . . . including "Balisong", "butterfly" . . . knives, which has one or more of the following characteristics or identities:
>
> (1) A blade which opens automatically by hand pressure applied to a button or device in the handle of the knife, or any knife with a blade which opens automatically by operation of inertia, gravity, or both;
>
> (2) Knives which, by insignificant preliminary preparation, as described in paragraph (b) of this section, can be altered or converted so as to open automatically by hand pressure applied to a button or device in the handle of the knife or by operation of inertia, gravity, or both;
>
> (3) Unassembled knife kits or knife handles without blades which, when fully assembled with added blades, springs, or other parts, are knives which open automatically by hand pressure applied to a button or device in the handle of the knife or by operation of inertia, gravity, or both; or
>
> (4) Knives with a detachable blade that is propelled by a spring-operated mechanism, and components thereof.
>
> (c) *Utilitarian use.* "Utilitarian use" includes but is not necessarily limited to use:
>
> (1) For a customary household purpose;
>
> (2) For usual personal convenience, including grooming;

Case 4:23-cv-00547-O Document 20-3 Filed 10/06/23 Page 135 of 462 PageID 808

(3) In the practice of a profession, trade, or commercial or employment activity;

(4) In the performance of a craft or hobby;

(5) In the course of such outdoor pursuits as hunting and fishing; and

(6) In scouting activities.

Other pertinent regulations are as follows:

§ 12.96 Imports unrestricted under the Act.

(a) *Common and special purpose knives.* Imported knives with a blade style designed for a primary utilitarian use, as defined in § 12.95(c), shall be admitted to unrestricted entry provided that in condition as entered the imported knife is not a switchblade knife as defined in § 12.95(a)(1). . . .

§ 12.97 Importations contrary to law.

Importations of switchblade knives, except as permitted by 15 U.S.C. 1244, are importations contrary to law and are subject to forfeiture under 19 U.S.C. 1595a(c).

In HQ 116315, dated March 1, 2005, we stated as follows:

> . . . we have now determined that the subject knives are not switchblades within the meaning of 19 CFR 12.95(a)(1) because they do not meet the criteria therein, *i.e.*, they do not open automatically by hand pressure applied to a button or device in the handle, nor do they open automatically by operation of inertia, gravity, or both. We find additionally that the subject knives have a blade style designed for a primary utilitarian use within the meaning of 19 CFR 12.95(c).
>
> Accordingly, we conclude that the requirements of 19 CFR 12.96(a) are satisfied, *i.e.*, the subject knives have a blade style designed for a primary utilitarian use as defined in 19 CFR 12.95(c) and they are not switchblades within the meaning of 19 CFR 12.95(a)(1). Therefore, pursuant to 19 CFR 12.96(a), the subject knives (part nos. 22–07161 and 22–07162) are permitted unrestricted entry into the United States.

We have carefully examined the eight knives which you have submitted. These knives are substantially similar in operation to the knives in HQ 116315. We find that the subject knives are not switchblade knives within the meaning of 19 CFR § 12.96(a)(1) in that the blades do not open automatically by hand pressure applied to a button or device in the handle of the knife (there is no opening device on the handle), nor do the knives open automatically by operation of inertia or gravity. We further find that the knives have a blade style designed for a primary utilitarian use within the meaning of 19 CFR § 12.95(c).

Based upon these findings, we conclude that the requirements of 19 CFR 12.96(a) are satisfied, *i.e.*, the subject knives have a blade style designed for a primary utilitarian use as defined in 19 CFR 12.95(c) and they are not switchblades within the meaning of 19 CFR 12.95(a)(1). Therefore, pursuant to 19 CFR 12.96(a), the subject knives (1080 Full Throttle; 1081 Full Throttle; 1070 Ichi; 1070KSC Ichi; 1070R Red Ichi Asist.; 1090 My Tighe;

1091 My Tighe; and 1091K My Tighe Black) are permitted unrestricted entry into the United States.

HOLDING:

The subject knives are permitted unrestricted entry into the United States pursuant to 19 CFR 12.96(a).

GLEN E. VEREB
Chief,
Cargo Security, Carriers, and Immigration Branch.

[ATTACHMENT C]

DEPARTMENT OF HOMELAND SECURITY.
U.S. CUSTOMS AND BORDER PROTECTION,
HQ H016666
December 12, 2007
ENF–4–02–OT:RR:BSTC:IPR H016666 AML
CATEGORY: Restricted Merchandise

MS. LARA A. AUSTRINS
MR. THOMAS J. O'DONNELL
RODRIGUEZ, O'DONNELL ROSS
8430 W. Bryn Mawr Ave., Suite 525
Chicago, Illinois 60631

RE: Request for Ruling Regarding the Admissibility of Knives

DEAR MS. AUSTRINS AND MR. O'DONNELL:

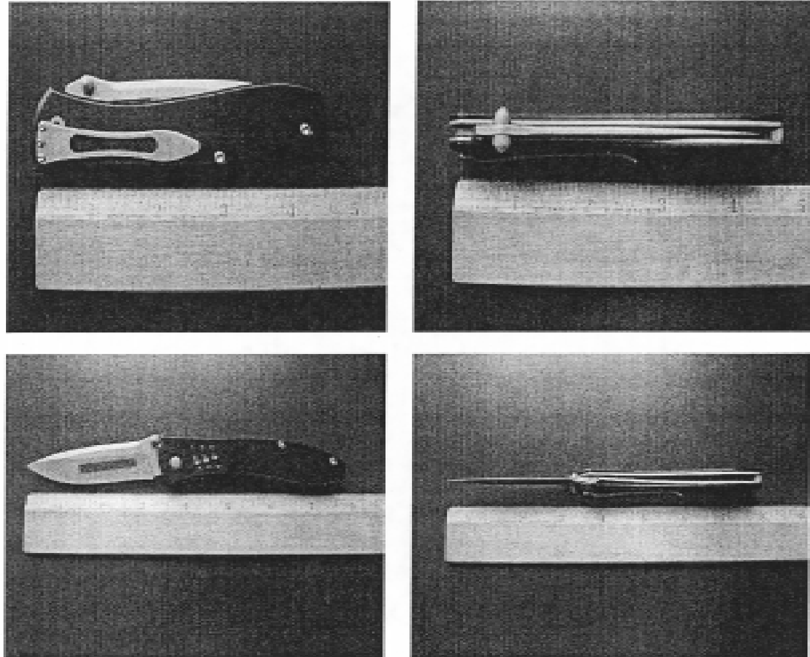
This is in reply to your letters dated July 17, and August 2, 2007, to the National Commodity Specialist Division, New York, in which you requested a ruling regarding the admissibility of certain knives described below. As you are aware, your ruling request was transferred to this branch for response. A sample was provided for our consideration.

FACTS:

You describe the knife at issue, marketed as the "Tailwind" (model number HD0071), as a single edged, release assisted, folding knife. The knife has a "false edge grind" on the topside of the 3 ½ inch blade and measures 4 ½ inches when closed. When extended, the overall length of the knife is 7¾ inches. The knife weighs 4.2 ounces.

The Tailwind name is derived from the patented opening mechanism. The opening mechanism, subject of U.S. Patent number 7,051,441, is equipped "with an assist spring, which assists in the opening of the knife only after the knife has been manually opened to approximately thirty degrees." The blade must be opened manually until the blade reaches approximately thirty degrees at which point the mechanism engages and the blade springs open to its extended and locked. The knife is refolded by depressing a manual release.

Images of the Tailwind:



ISSUE:

Whether the subject knives are prohibited from entry into the United States pursuant to the Switchblade Knife Act, 15 U.S.C. §§ 1241–1245 and the Customs and Border Protection ("CBP") Regulations promulgated pursuant to the Switchblade Knife Act set forth in 19 CFR §§ 12.95–12.103.

LAW AND ANALYSIS:

Headquarters Ruling Letters (HQ) W116730, dated November 7, 2006 and 116315, dated March 1, 2005 (copies enclosed), address CBP's position on the admissibility of knives with spring assisted mechanisms substantially similar to the ones under consideration. In HQ W116730, we determined that the "Outburst" knife "with a mechanism [that] only assists in the opening of the knife when the blade is opened to approximately 30-degrees" was admissible under the Switchblade Knife Act. Similarly, in HQ 116315, we determined that a "Release assisted knife, part number 22–07162" are permitted unrestricted entry into the United States pursuant to 19 CFR 12.96(a).

Accordingly, we incorporate the LAW AND ANALYSIS section of the aforementioned rulings in this decision, as they are dispositive of the issue you have raised.

HOLDING:

The subject knife (the "Tailwind" (model number HD0071)) has a blade style designed for a primary utilitarian use as defined in 19 CFR 12.95(c) and it is not a switchblade within the meaning of 19 CFR 12.95(a)(1). Therefore, pursuant to the Switchblade Knife Act, 15 U.S.C. §§ 1241–1245 and 19

CFR 12.96(a), the subject knives are permitted unrestricted entry into the United States.

GEORGE FREDERICK MCCRAY,
Chief,
Intellectual Property Rights Branch Enclosures

[ATTACHMENT D]

DEPARTMENT OF HOMELAND SECURITY.
U.S. CUSTOMS AND BORDER PROTECTION,
HQ H032255
August 12, 2008
ENF–4–02–OT:RR:BSTC:IPR H032255 AML
CATEGORY: Restricted Merchandise

MR. MATTHRE K. NAKACHI
SANDLER, TRAVIS & ROSENBERG, P.A.
1300 Pennsylvania Avenue Suite 400
Washington, DC 20004

RE: Request for Ruling Regarding the Admissibility of Knives

DEAR MR. NAKACHI:

This is in reply to your letter dated July 1, 2008, in which you requested a ruling regarding the admissibility of a knife, set forth in images and described below, pursuant to the Switchblade Knife Act, 15 U.S.C. § 1241, *et seq.* A sample was provided for our consideration.

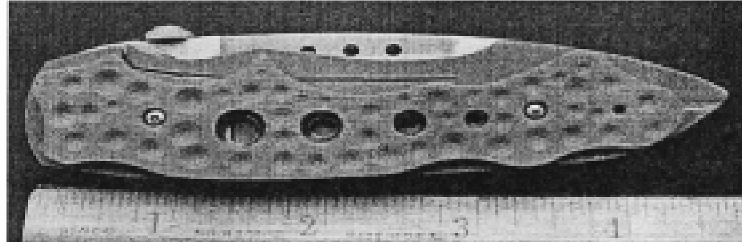
FACTS:

You describe the knife at issue, tentatively planned by your client to be called the "VanHoy Assist," as a knife "of new design." The prototype is of standard knife construction with a single-edged, utilitarian blade. You state that "the unique nature of the knife is that the assisted-opening mechanism operates by thumb or hand pressure downward on the blade/thumbscrew (rather than the traditional upward pressure)." You further indicate that "the downward pressure releases the locking mechanism and then a slight spring action assists the opening of the blade to the fully locked position." The knife has a 3 inch blade and measures approximately 4 ⅝ inches when closed. When extended, the overall length of the knife is approximately 7 ⅝ inches. The knife is refolded by depressing a manual release.

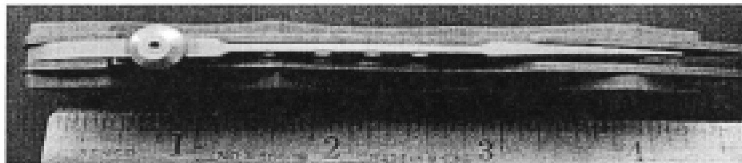
You contend that there are prior rulings which determined that knives with similar spring-assisted opening mechanisms are admissible pursuant to the Switchblade Knife Act, 15 U.S.C. §§ 1241–1245 and the implementing Customs and Border Protection ("CBP") Regulations set forth at 19 CFR §§ 12.95–12.103. You cite New York Ruling Letter ("NY") I86378, dated October 1, 2002, in which CBP determined that a knife that was opened by pressing a thumb knob on the surface of the blade was admissible under the Switchblade Knife Act. Similarly, you cite Headquarters Ruling Letter ("HQ") 116315, dated March 1, 2005, which modified HQ 116229, dated July 8, 2004, and held that release assisted knives were admissible pursuant to the Switchblade Knife Act.

You contend that the VanHoy Assist is similar to the knife in HQ 116229 in that the assisted-opening mechanism holds the blade within the knife body and does not have a button in the handle to "trigger the blade to open." Thus you contend that the knife should not be considered to be a switchblade knife under the relevant statute and regulations.

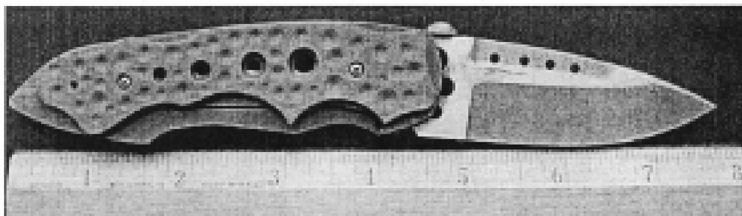
Images of the VanHoy Assist:



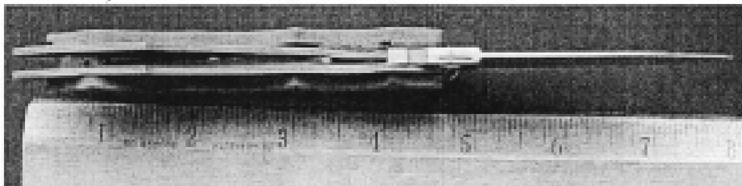
Side view



Top view



Side view, blade extended



Top view, blade extended

ISSUE:

Whether the subject knives are prohibited from entry into the United States pursuant to the Switchblade Knife Act, 15 U.S.C. §§ 1241–1245 and CBP Regulations promulgated pursuant thereto set forth in 19 CFR §§ 12.95–12.103.

LAW AND ANALYSIS:

Pursuant to the Act of August 12, 1958 (Pub. L. 85–623, codified at 15 U.S.C. §§ 1241–1245, otherwise known as the "Switchblade Knife Act"), whoever knowingly introduces, or manufactures for introduction, into interstate commerce, or transports or distributes in interstate commerce, any switchblade knife, shall be fined or imprisoned, or both.

The Customs and Border Protection ("CBP") Regulations promulgated pursuant to the Switchblade Knife Act are set forth in 19 CFR §§ 12.95–12.103. In this regard we note the following definitions:

§ 12.95 Definitions.

Terms as used in §§ 12.96 through 12.103 of this part are defined as follows:

(a) *Switchblade knife*. . . . any imported knife, . . . including "Balisong", "butterfly" . . . knives, which ha[ve] one or more of the following characteristics or identities:

(1) A blade which opens automatically by hand pressure applied to a button or device in the handle of the knife, or any knife with a blade which opens automatically by operation of inertia, gravity, or both;

(2) Knives which, by insignificant preliminary preparation, as described in paragraph (b) of this section, can be altered or converted so as to open automatically by hand pressure applied to a button or device in the handle of the knife or by operation of inertia, gravity, or both;

(3) Unassembled knife kits or knife handles without blades which, when fully assembled with added blades, springs, or other parts, are knives which open automatically by hand pressure applied to a button or device in the handle of the knife or by operation of inertia, gravity, or both; or

(4) Knives with a detachable blade that is propelled by a spring-operated mechanism, and components thereof.

(c) *Utilitarian use.* "Utilitarian use" includes but is not necessarily limited to use:

(1) For a customary household purpose;

(2) For usual personal convenience, including grooming;

(3) In the practice of a profession, trade, or commercial or employment activity;

(4) In the performance of a craft or hobby;

(5) In the course of such outdoor pursuits as hunting and fishing; and

(6) In scouting activities.

Other pertinent regulations are as follows:

§ 12.96 Imports unrestricted under the Act.

(a) *Common and special purpose knives.* Imported knives with a blade style designed for a primary utilitarian use, as defined in § 12.95(c), shall be admitted to unrestricted entry provided that in condition as entered the imported knife is not a switchblade knife as defined in § 12.95(a)(1). . . .

§ 12.97 Importations contrary to law.

Importations of switchblade knives, except as permitted by 15 U.S.C. § 1244, are importations contrary to law and are subject to forfeiture under 19 U.S.C. § 1595a(c).

Headquarters Ruling Letters (HQ) W116730, dated November 7, 2006 and HQ 116315, dated March 1, 2005, address CBP's position on the admissibility of knives with spring-assisted mechanisms substantially similar to those under consideration. In HQ W116730, we determined that the "Outburst" knife "with a mechanism [that] only assists in the opening of the knife when the blade is opened to approximately 30-degrees" was admissible under the Switchblade Knife Act. Similarly, in HQ 116315, we determined that a "Release assisted knife, part number 22–07162" is permitted unrestricted entry into the United States pursuant to 19 CFR Part 12.96(a).

We examined the sample knife considered in HQ 116315 and compared it to the VanHoy Assist. Although the VanHoy Assist has a button on the blade (rather than "thumb studs" on the knife in HQ 116315) which must be depressed in order to unlock and open the knife, the spring assist mechanisms are the same.

In turning to the VanHoy Assist, application of the regulatory criteria set forth above reveals that the subject knives are not switchblades within the meaning of 19 CFR Part 12.95(a)(1) because they do not meet the criteria enumerated therein, *i.e.*, they neither open automatically by hand pressure applied to a button or device in the handle, nor do they open automatically by operation of inertia, gravity, or both. We find additionally that the subject knives have a blade style designed for a primary utilitarian use within the meaning of 19 CFR Part 12.95(c).

Accordingly, we conclude that the requirements of 19 CFR 12.96(a) are satisfied, *i.e.*, the subject knives have a blade style designed for a primary utilitarian use as defined in 19 CFR Part 12.95(c) and the knives are not switchblades within the meaning of 19 CFR Part 12.95(a)(1). Therefore, pursuant to 19 CFR 12.96(a), the subject knives are permitted unrestricted entry into the United States.

HOLDING:

The subject knife (the "VanHoy Assist") has a blade style designed for a primary utilitarian use as defined in 19 CFR 12.95(c) and it is not a switchblade within the meaning of 19 CFR 12.95(a)(1). Therefore, pursuant to the Switchblade Knife Act, 15 U.S.C. §§ 1241–1245 and 19 CFR 12.96(a), the subject knives are permitted unrestricted entry into the United States.

GEORGE FREDERICK MCCRAY,
Chief,
Intellectual Property Rights Branch.

[ATTACHMENT E]

DEPARTMENT OF HOMELAND SECURITY.
U.S. CUSTOMS AND BORDER PROTECTION,
HQ H043122
April 30, 2009
ENF–4–02–OT:RR:BSTC:IPR H043122 AML
CATEGORY: Restricted Merchandise

THOMAS M. KEATING, ESQ.
HODES, KEATING & PILON
134 North LaSalle Street
Suite 1300
Chicago, Illinois 60602

RE: Revocation of HQ 116315; Admissibility of Knives; Switchblade Knife Act, 15 U.S.C. §§ 1241–1245; 19 CFR Parts 12.95–12.103

DEAR MR. KEATING:

This is in reference to Headquarters Ruling Letter ("HQ") 116315, dated March 5, 2005, and issued to you on behalf of Fiskars Brands, Inc., which concerned the admissibility of the "release-assisted " knives described below, pursuant to the Switchblade Knife Act, 15 U.S.C. § 1241, *et seq.* In the referenced ruling, the U.S. Customs Service (hereinafter "CBP")[1] determined that the knives at issue were admissible into the United States pursuant to the Switchblade Knife Act. We have reconsidered the rationale of, and the admissibility determination made in HQ 116315 and found both to be in error. For the reasons set forth below, we hereby revoke HQ 116315.

FACTS:

CBP paraphrased your description of the knives at issue in HQ 116315 as follows:

> The subject merchandise are release assisted knives designed to be primarily used as a "general carry." The knife's features, such as the belt clip and serrated edge, are characteristic of a jackknife or pocket knife, rather than a weapon. There are two versions of the knives at issue. Part number 22–0761 [07161] is a serrated blade version (previously attached as Sample A) and part number 22–07162 is a fine edged version (previously attached as Sample B) [Footnote omitted.]
>
> . . . part number 22–07161 (Exhibit A) is a folding blade knife made in Taiwan.
>
> The knife is made of metal and includes a pocket clip on the side of the handle.
>
> The knife has the visual appearance of a jackknife or pocketknife. The knife measures 4¼ inches long when closed. When extended, the blade of the knife measures 3 inches total. The blade has a serrated section measuring 1¼ inches. The overall length of the knife, when extended, is

[1] Effective March 1, 2003, the United States Customs Service was renamed the United States Bureau of Customs and Border Protection. See Homeland Security Act of 2002, Pub. L. No. 107–296 § 1502, 2002 U.S.C.C.A.N. (116 Stat.) 2135, 2308; Reorganization Plan Modification for the Department of Homeland Security, H.R. Doc. No. 08–32, at 4 (2003).

> 7¼ inches. There is a 3⁄16 inch thumb stud on each side of the unsharpened edge near the base of the blade used for pulling the blade open. The blade has a single edge and can be locked into an open position by the use of a safety device. The same safety device is used to lock the knife in the closed position. This device does not act to open or close the knife – its sole function is to keep the knife locked in the knife's then-existing position. The knife also has a lock mechanism that must be released to close the knife once the knife is open. This mechanism is not engaged in any way to open the knife. Release assisted knife, part number 22–07162 (Exhibit B), is identical in description to part number 22–07161 (Exhibit A), except that it has a fine edge, not a serrated blade.

The sample from HQ 116315 bears the word "Gerber" on its blade. A search of that word, in combination with the part numbers recited in the "Facts" section above, produced results (see *http://www.gerberknivesdirect.com/ product/07162*; last visited on January 13, 2009) that describe the opening mechanism as follows: "The FAST Draw relies on our proprietary new blade opening concept—Forward Action Spring Technology—that's so lightning-quick, so pleasingly easy to open with just one hand, it's already drawing a lot of attention among knife folks everywhere . . . Should you choose, you can open the FAST Draw in the traditional way, using the thumb stud. Or, if speed is the order of the day, you can simply trigger the blade's sudden release with your index finger."

ISSUE:

Whether the subject knives are prohibited from entry into the United States pursuant to the Switchblade Knife Act, 15 U.S.C. §§ 1241–1245 and the CBP Regulations promulgated pursuant thereto set forth in 19 CFR §§ 12.95–12.103.

LAW AND ANALYSIS:

Pursuant to the Act of August 12, 1958 (Pub. L. 85–623, codified at 15 U.S.C. §§ 1241–1245, otherwise known as the "Switchblade Knife Act"), whoever knowingly introduces, or manufactures for introduction, into interstate commerce, or transports or distributes in interstate commerce, any switchblade knife, shall be fined or imprisoned, or both.

> The Switchblade Knife Act defines "interstate commerce" at 15 U.S.C. § 1241(a):
>
> The term "interstate commerce" means commerce between any State, Territory, possession of the United States, or the District of Columbia, and any place outside thereof.
>
> The Switchblade Knife Act defines "switchblade knife" at 15 U.S.C. § 1241(b):
>
> The term "switchblade knife" means any knife having a blade which opens automatically—
>
> (1) by hand pressure applied to a button or other device in the handle of the knife, or
>
> (2) by operation of inertia, gravity, or both[.]

The CBP Regulations promulgated pursuant to the Switchblade Knife Act are set forth in 19 CFR §§ 12.95–12.103. We note the following definitions:

§ 12.95 Definitions.

Terms as used in §§ 12.96 through 12.103 of this part are defined as follows:

(a) Switchblade knife. "Switchblade knife" means any imported knife, or components thereof, or any class of imported knife, including "switchblade", "Balisong", "butterfly", "gravity" or "ballistic" knives, which has one or more of the following characteristics or identities:

(1) A blade which opens automatically by hand pressure applied to a button or device in the handle of the knife, or any knife with a blade which opens automatically by operation of inertia, gravity, or both;

(2) Knives which, by insignificant preliminary preparation, as described in paragraph (b) of this section, can be altered or converted so as to open automatically by hand pressure applied to a button or device in the handle of the knife or by operation of inertia, gravity, or both;

(3) Unassembled knife kits or knife handles without blades which, when fully assembled with added blades, springs, or other parts, are knives which open automatically by hand pressure applied to a button or device in the handle of the knife or by operation of inertia, gravity, or both; or

(4) Knives with a detachable blade that is propelled by a spring-operated mechanism, and components thereof[.]

(b) Insignificant preliminary preparation. "Insignificant preliminary preparation" means preparation with the use of ordinarily available tools, instruments, devices, and materials by one having no special manual training or skill for the purpose of modifying blade heels, relieving binding parts, altering spring restraints, or making similar minor alterations which can be accomplished in a relatively short period of time.

Other pertinent regulations are as follows:

§ 12.96 Imports unrestricted under the Act.

(a) Common and special purpose knives. Imported knives with a blade style designed for a primary utilitarian use, as defined in § 12.95(c), shall be admitted to unrestricted entry *provided that in condition as entered the imported knife is not a switchblade knife as defined in § 12.95(a)(1)* [italicized emphasis added] . . .

§ 12.97 Importations contrary to law.

Importations of switchblade knives, except as permitted by 15 U.S.C. § 1244, are importations contrary to law and are subject to forfeiture under 19 U.S.C. § 1595a(c).

The plain language of the Switchblade Knife Act and relevant CBP regulations prohibit, *inter alia*, the importation of knives which are for use as weapons while explicitly permitting the importation of "common and special purpose" knives (see 19 CFR 12.95(c) "Utilitarian Use" and 12.96(a) ("Unrestricted Imports")). Several courts have addressed the breadth of the prohibition set forth in the statute. See, *e.g., Precise Imports Corp. v. Kelly*, 378

F.2d 1014, 1017 (2d Cir. 1967), *cert. denied*, 389 U.S. 973, 19 L. Ed. 2d 465, 88 S. Ct. 472 (1967), in which the Court of Appeals for the Second Circuit stated that:

> The report of the Senate Committee on Interstate and Foreign Commerce which recommended passage of the Switchblade Knife Act stated that the enforcement of state laws banning switchblade knives would be extremely difficult as long as such knives could be freely obtained in interstate commerce, and added:
>
> > "In supporting enactment of this measure, however, your committee considers that the purpose to be achieved goes beyond merely aiding States in local law enforcement. The switchblade knife is, by design and use, almost exclusively the weapon of the thug and the delinquent. Such knives are not particularly adapted to the requirements of the hunter or fisherman, and sportsmen generally do not employ them. It was testified that, practically speaking, there is no legitimate use for the switchblade to which a conventional sheath or jackknife is not better suited. This being the case, your committee believes that it is in the national interest that these articles be banned from interstate commerce." S.Rep. No. 1980, 85th Cong., 2d Sess., reprinted in 2 U.S. Code Cong. & Ad. News 1958, at 3435–37.
>
> The congressional purpose of aiding the enforcement of state laws against switchblade knives and of barring them from interstate commerce could be easily frustrated if knives which can be quickly and easily made into switchblade knives, and one of whose primary uses is as weapons, could be freely shipped in interstate commerce and converted into switchblade knives upon arrival at the state of destination. We decline to construe the act as permitting such facile evasion.
>
> . . . We hold, therefore, that a knife may be found to be a switchblade knife within the meaning of the Switchblade Knife Act if it is found that it can be made to open automatically by hand pressure, inertia, or gravity after insignificant alterations, and that one of its primary purposes is for use as a weapon.

In *Taylor v. United States*, 848 F.2d 715, 717 (6th Cir. 1988) the court, in describing a Balisong knife, stated that:

> [T]he district court described a Balisong knife as "basically a folding knife with a split handle." It went on to set out its prime use: while the exotic knife has some utilitarian use, it is most often associated with the martial arts and with combat . . . [and is] potentially dangerous, lethal. . . ." Citing another district court decision involving the same issue, *Precise Imports Corp. v. Kelly*, 378 F.2d 1014 (2d Cir.), *cert. denied*, 389 U.S. 973, 19 L. Ed. 2d 465, 88 S. Ct. 472 (1967) (upholding a seizure of certain knives with no legitimate purpose), the district court described it as of "minimal value" and distinguished another "seminal case interpreting the Act", *United States v. 1,044 Balisong Knives*, No. 70–110 (D. Ore. Sept. 28, 1970) (refusing to support seizure). The district court concluded that "congress intended to prohibit knives that opened automatically, ready for instant use . . . [and] was not concerned with whether the knife's blade would merely be exposed by gravity", . . . [it] intended 'open' to mean 'ready for use.' " *Taylor v. United States*, 848 F.2d 715, 717 (6th Cir. 1988).

See also *Taylor v. McManus*, 661 F. Supp. 11, 14–15 (E.D. Tenn. 1986), in which the Court of Appeals for the Eastern District of Tennessee observed:

> In examining the congressional record, it seems obvious that congress intended to prohibit knives which opened automatically, ready for instant use. Rep. Kelly, for example, described the switchblade "as a weapon (which) springs out at the slightest touch and is ready for instant violence." *Switchblade Knives: Hearings Before a Subcommittee of the Committee on Interstate and Foreign Commerce*, House of Rep., 85th Cong., 2d Sess. 13, 29 (1958). She also noted that the prohibited gravity knife opens and "anchors in place automatically. Every bit as fast as the switchblade, it has proved to be as effective a killer." *Id.* at 29. Similarly, Rep. Delaney described the prohibited gravity knives as "knives (which) open and lock automatically at a quick flick of the wrist." 104 CONG. REC., 85th Cong., 2nd Sess. 12398 (June 26, 1958). (Emphasis supplied). Apparently, then, Congress was not concerned with whether the knife's blade would merely be exposed by gravity. Instead, they intended "open" to mean "ready for use", as exhibited in Rep. Kelley's testimony that the switchblade opened "ready for instant violence" and her and Rep. Delaney's comments that the gravity knife opened and locked automatically. While the Court does not intend to read into the Statute a requirement that the blades "lock" automatically, it does seem apparent that Congress intended "open" to mean "ready for use". Obviously a knife that has not locked into an open position is not ready for use. Since the Balisong knives cannot be used until the second handle is manually folded back and clasped, the Court finds that they do not open automatically by force of gravity or inertia.[2]

Based primarily on 15 U.S.C. § 1241(b)(1) (see also the first clause of 19 CFR Part 12.95(a)(1)) which defines a switchblade knife as being a knife having a blade which opens automatically by hand pressure applied to a button or device in the handle of the knife, as well as reliance upon the exception set forth at 19 CFR Part 12.95(c) regarding knives with a blade style designed for a primary utilitarian use, CBP decided in several rulings, including HQ 116315, that knives with spring-assisted opening mechanisms are not switchblades as contemplated by the Switchblade Knife Act and implementing regulations.

Notwithstanding, because of the intrinsic health and public safety concerns underlying the statute and regulations, it is necessary to reassess our position regarding knives with spring-assisted opening mechanisms as 1) there are no judicial decisions interpreting, other than in the context of balisong knives, 15 U.S.C. § 1241(b)(2) and the second clause of 19 CFR Part 12.95(a) (discussed below) and 2) CBP has issued inconsistent rulings,

---

[2] The conclusion regarding Balisong knives was reversed by *Taylor v. United States*, 848 F.2d 715, 1988 U.S. App. LEXIS 7761 (6th Cir. Tenn. 1988): "There is sufficient indication in the legislative history that the intent was to exclude these martial arts weapons, which even the district court admitted "can be opened very rapidly, perhaps in less than 5 seconds . . . [and] are potentially dangerous, lethal weapons." *Id.* at 720. Further, Balisongs were added to the list of prohibited knives when the regulations were amended in 1990. See the discussion of the regulatory amendments in HQ H030606, dated August 12, 2008, page 4.

of which HQ 116315 is one, regarding the issue of whether knives with spring-assisted opening mechanisms are admissible or prohibited from importation into the United States.

In *Alaska Trojan P'ship v. Gutierrez*, 425 F.3d 620, 628 (9th Cir. Alaska 2005), the Court of Appeals for the 9th Circuit stated, with regard to the interpretation of agency regulations that:

> "In ascertaining the plain meaning of [a] statute, the court must look to the particular statutory language at issue, as well as the language and design of the statute as a whole." *McCarthy v. Bronson*, 500 U.S. 136, 139, 114 L. Ed. 2d 194, 111 S. Ct. 1737 (1991) (quoting *K Mart Corp. v. Cartier, Inc.*, 486 U.S. 281, 291, 100 L. Ed. 2d 313, 108 S. Ct. 1811 (1988)) (alteration in original). When a statute or regulation defines a term, that definition controls, and the court need not look to the dictionary or common usage. *Compare F.D.I.C. v. Meyer*, 510 U.S. 471, 476, 127 L. Ed. 2d 308, 114 S. Ct. 996 (1994) ("In the absence of such a definition, we construe a statutory term in accordance with its ordinary or natural meaning."). An agency's interpretation of a regulation must "conform with the wording and purpose of the regulation." *Public Citizen Inc. v. Mineta*, 343 F.3d 1159, 1166 (9th Cir. 2003).

Because of the existence of conflicting rulings (*i.e.*, rulings which have determined that knives with spring-assisted opening mechanisms are switchblades as defined in the statute and others which have made the opposite conclusion), we have reexamined the definition of the word "switchblade knife" set forth at 15 U.S.C. § 1241(b) and 19 CFR Part 12.95(a)(1) and have determined that the definition set forth therein captures and proscribes, in addition to "traditional" switchblades, the importation of knives with spring-assisted opening mechanisms, often equipped with thumb studs or protrusions affixed to the base of the blade (rather than in the handle of the knives as set forth in the first clause of 19 CFR Part 12.95(a)(1)). The relevant regulatory language identifies and defines "switchblade knives" by exemplars (" "switchblade", "Balisong", "butterfly", "gravity" or "ballistic" knives") and by definition ("or any class of imported knife . . . which has one or more of the following characteristics or identities: (1) A blade which opens automatically by hand pressure applied to a button or device in the handle of the knife, *or any knife with a blade which opens automatically by operation of inertia, gravity or both*[.]")

In reconsidering what types of knives are contemplated by the statute, we interpret the controlling terms according to their common meanings[3]. The term "automatically" is defined at *http://www.merriam-webster.com/dictionary/automatically* as:

> 1 a: largely or wholly involuntary ; especially : reflex 5 <automatic blinking of the eyelids> b: acting or done spontaneously or unconsciously c: done or produced as if by machine : mechanical <the answers

[3] A fundamental canon of statutory construction requires that "unless otherwise defined, words will be interpreted as taking their ordinary, contemporary, common meaning." *Perrin v. United States*, 444 U.S. 37, 42, 62 L. Ed. 2d 199, 100 S. Ct. 311 (1979); see also 2A Norman J. Singer, *Sutherland Statutory Construction* § 46:01 (6th ed. 2000). *United States v. Lehman*, 225 F.3d 426, 429 (4th Cir. S.C. 2000).

were automatic> 2: having a self-acting or self-regulating mechanism <an automatic transmission> 3 of a firearm : firing repeatedly until the trigger is released.

The term "inertia" is defined at *http://www.merriam-webster.com/dictionary/inertia* as:

1 a: a property of matter by which it remains at rest or in uniform motion in the same straight line unless acted upon by some external force b: an analogous property of other physical quantities (as electricity).

See also, *http://physics.about.com/od/glossary/g/inertia.htm:* Definition: Inertia is the name for the tendency of an object in motion to remain in motion, or an object at rest to remain at rest, unless acted upon by a force. This concept was quantified in Newton's First Law of Motion; and *http://dictionary.reference.com/browse/ inertia*: 2. Physics. a. the property of matter by which it retains its state of rest or its velocity along a straight line so long as it is not acted upon by an external force.

In *Taylor v. United States*, 848 F.2d 715, 720 (6th Cir. Tenn. 1988), the United States Court of Appeals for the Sixth Circuit, in analyzing the terms of the statute and regulations at issue stated that:

"Automatically" as used in the statute does not necessarily mean simply by operation of some inanimate connected force such as the spring in a literal switchblade. For example, the type of gravity or "flick" knife which is indisputably within the statute requires some human manipulation in order to create or unleash the force of "gravity" or "inertia" which makes the opening "automatic."

Knives equipped with spring- and release-assisted opening mechanisms are knives which "require[ ] some human manipulation in order to create or unleash the force of "gravity" or "inertia" which makes the opening "automatic." " See *Taylor, supra.* The fact that they differ in design (most if not all are equipped with thumb studs affixed to the base of the blunt side of the blade) from a traditional switchblade (in which the button that activates the spring mechanism is located in the handle of the knife), the spring-assisted mechanisms cause, via inertia, the blades of such knives to open fully for instant use, potentially as a weapon. Such knives are prohibited by the Switchblade Knife Act.

Our interpretation of 15 U.S.C. § 1241(b) and 19 CFR 12.95(a)(1) is supported by case law. In *Demko v. United States*, 44 Fed. Cl. 83, 88–89 (Fed. Cl. 1999), the Court of Federal Claims, in analyzing a regulation regarding the grandfathered sale of "street sweeper" shotguns, recited the following interpretations of the word "or" as used in statutes and regulations:

"Generally the term 'or' functions grammatically as a coordinating conjunction and joins two separate parts of a sentence." *Ruben v. Secretary of DHHS*, 22 Cl. Ct. 264, 266 (1991) (noting that "or" is generally ascribed disjunctive intent unless contrary to legislative intent). As a disjunctive, the word "or" connects two parts of a sentence, "but disconnect[s] their meaning, the meaning in the second member excluding that in the first." *Id.* (quoting G. Curme, A Grammar of the English Language, Syntax 166 (1986)); see *Quindlen v. Prudential Ins. Co.*, 482 F.2d 876, 878 (5th Cir. 1973) (noting disjunctive results in alternatives, which must be treated separately). Nonetheless, courts have not ad-

hered strictly to such rules of statutory construction. See *Ruben*, 22 Cl. Ct. at 266. For instance, "it is settled that 'or' may be read to mean 'and' when the context so indicates." *Willis v. United States*, 719 F.2d 608, 612 (2d Cir. 1983); see *Ruben*, 22 Cl. Ct. at 266 (quoting same); see also *DeSylva v. Ballentine*, 351 U.S. 570, 573, 100 L. Ed. 1415, 76 S. Ct. 974 (1956) ("We start with the proposition that the word 'or' is often used as a careless substitute for the word 'and'; that is, it is often used in phrases where 'and' would express the thought with greater clarity."); *Union Ins. Co. v. United States*, 73 U.S. 759, 764, 18 L. Ed. 879 (1867) ("But when we look beyond the mere words to the obvious intent we cannot help seeing the word 'or' must be taken conjunctively. . . . This construction impairs no rights of the parties . . . and carries into effect the true intention of Congress. . . .").

In analyzing the language of 15 U.S.C. § 1241(b) and the relevant regulation, we conclude that the word "or" is used conjunctively yet distinguishes the paradigm switchblade knife (paraphrased: spring action blade released by depression of a button in the handle) from other knives which function similarly to the paradigm switchblade but do not have the "traditional" configuration or function. Given its legislative and judicial history, the Switchblade Knife Act is intended to proscribe the importation of any knife that opens automatically by hand pressure applied to a button or device in the handle of the knife *and* any knife with a blade which opens automatically by operation of inertia, gravity or both.

The knives at issue open via inertia – once pressure is applied to the thumb stud (or protrusion at the base of the blade), the blade continues in inertial motion (caused by the combined effect of manual and spring-assisted pressure) until it is stopped by the locking mechanism of the knife. Such knives open instantly for potential use as a weapon. We therefore conclude, in consideration of the authorities and sources Switchblade Knife Act and implementing regulations, that the knives with spring-and release- assisted opening mechanisms, that such knives are described and prohibited by 15 U.S.C. § 1241(b)(2) and 19 CFR Part 12.95(a)(1).

We also have reconsidered our interpretation of the term "utilitarian use", as we have in several rulings found knives with spring-assisted opening mechanisms to be admissible because they were equipped with blades for utilitarian use. The regulation defines, albeit by exemplar, the types of knives (subject to the condition precedent set forth in 19 CFR 12.96: Imported knives with a blade style designed for a primary utilitarian use, as defined in § 12.95(c), shall be admitted to unrestricted entry *provided that in condition as entered the imported knife is not a switchblade knife as defined in § 12.95(a)(1)* [italicized emphasis added] . . .) that are considered to be "utilitarian" for purposes of the statute. See 19 CFR 12.95(c):

(c) Utilitarian use. "Utilitarian use" includes but is not necessarily limited to use:

(1) For a customary household purpose;

(2) For usual personal convenience, including grooming;

(3) In the practice of a profession, trade, or commercial or employment activity;

(4) In the performance of a craft or hobby;

(5) In the course of such outdoor pursuits as hunting and fishing; and

(6) In scouting activities.

As we stated in HQ H030606, dated August 12, 2008, with regard to the regulations implementing the Switchblade Knife Act:

> The relevant CBP regulations were implemented in 1971, following notice and comment, via Treasury Decision ("T.D.") 71–243, and the Final Rule was published in the Federal Register on September 13, 1971. See Final Rule, 36 FR 18859, Sept. 23, 1971. HQ H030606 at page 3.

The notice of proposed rulemaking, published in the Federal Register on October 24, 1970, set forth "[t]he proposed regulations . . . in tentative form as follows":

> (a) Definitions. As used in this section the term "switchblade knife" means any imported knife-
>
> (1) Having a blade which opens automatically by hand pressure applied to a button or device in the handle of the knife or by operation of inertia, gravity, or both; or
>
> (2) Having a handle over 3 inches in length with a stiletto or other blade style which is designed for purposes that include a primary use as a weapon, *as contrasted with blade styles designed for a primary utilitarian use*, when, by insignificant preliminary preparation a Customs officer can alter or convert such stiletto or other weapon to open automatically as described in subparagraph (1) of this paragraph, under the principle of the decision in the case of "Precise Imports Corporation and Others v. Joseph P. Kelly, Collector of Customs, and Others" (378 F. 2d 1014). *The term "utilitarian use" means use for any customary household purpose; use for any usual personal convenience; use in the practice of a profession, trade, or commercial or employment activity; use in the performance of a craft or hobby; use, in the course of such outdoor pursuits as hunting and fishing; use related to scouting activities; and use for grooming, as demonstrated by jack-knives and similar standard pocket knives, special purpose knives, scout knives, and other knives equipped with one or more blades of such single edge nonweapon styles as clip, skinner, pruner, sheep foot, spey, coping, razor, pen, and cuticle* [italicized emphasis added]. 35 FR 16594.
>
> The introductory language to the Final Rule made the following prefatory declarations:
>
> On October 24, 1970, notice was published in the Federal Register (35 FR 16594) of a proposal to prescribe regulations to govern the importation of articles subject to the so-called Switchblade Knife Act, sections 1 – 4, 72 Stat. 562 (15 U.S.C. 1241 – 1244).
>
> Importers or other interested persons were given the opportunity to participate in the rule making through submission of relevant comments, suggestions or objections. No comments were received from importers or other persons. 36 FR 18859.

CBP announced its proposed intention to amend the regulations via Federal Register notice on August 18, 1989. See 54 FR 34186 of the same date. In the introductory "Background" in the proposed rule, CBP (then "Customs") emphasized the characteristics that would be considered in making

determinations regarding the types of blades knives bore which would be proscribed by the Switchblade Knife Act and implementing regulations, stating that:

> To implement the law, Customs adopted regulations which followed the legislative language extremely closely (19 CFR 12.95–12.103). Those regulations also specifically referred to the court decision of *Precise Imports Corp. and Others v. Joseph P. Kelly, Collector of Customs, and Others* (378 F. 2d 1014). *Because of this reference, the existing regulations appear to imply that one of the principal considerations in determining the legality of a knife is the type of blade style the weapon possesses. While style is relevant, it is not of overriding importance. Concealability, and the ease with which the knife can be transformed from a "safe" or "closed" condition to an "operational" or "open" state are much more important. The Customs position, which has been supported by court decisions, is that Congressional intent was to address the problem of the importation, subsequent sale, and use of a class of quick-opening, easily concealed knives most frequently used for criminal purposes.* The deletion of the reference to the *Precise Imports* case does not imply that customs does not consider the principles contained in that case important, or that they are in any way no longer relevant. Rather, the principles in the *Precise Imports* case could not be considered too limiting [italicized emphasis added]. 54 FR 34186

There is no reference in the statutory language of the Switchblade Knife Act to the term "utilitarian use"; the only references appear in the CBP regulations. Similarly, the term has received only passing reference judicially ("The government indicated that had the knives been "designed with a single-edge blade and were primarily used for utilitarian purposes" rather than "double-edged stiletto-style blades" they would have been admitted." *Taylor v. United States*, 848 F.2d 715, 720 (6th Cir. Tenn. 1988)) and in the Federal Register notices cited above. Therefore, against the explanatory language from the Federal Register notices set forth above, we consider the ordinary meaning of the words employed:

> The term "utilitarian" is defined at *http://dictionary.reference.com/search?q =utilitarian* as:
>
> 1. pertaining to or consisting in utility.
>
> 2. having regard to utility or usefulness rather than beauty, ornamentation, etc.
>
> And at the same site:
>
> 1. having a useful function; "utilitarian steel tables".
>
> 2. having utility often to the exclusion of values; "plain utilitarian kitchenware".
>
> The term "utility" is defined at *http://www.merriam-webster.com/dictionary/utility* as:
>
> 1: fitness for some purpose or worth to some end.
>
> 2: something useful or designed for use.

From the exemplars set forth in 19 CFR Part 12.95(c)[4] and definitions set forth above, we conclude that knives with a primary (constructively or practically vs. tactically, lethally or primarily as a weapon) utilitarian design and purpose that are not captured by the definition of switchblades are admissible pursuant to the Switchblade Knife Act. Thus, for example, pocketknives, tradesman's knives and other folding knives for a certain specific use remain generally admissible, with such determinations being made, by necessity, on a case-by-case basis. Further, the opening mechanisms of imported knives must be considered and those that open instantly subjected to strict scrutiny in order to determine admissibility. As we found in HQs W479898, dated June 29, 2007 and H017909 dated December 26, 2007, that "*all* knives can potentially be used as weapons"; likewise the blades of all knives have some utility. Therefore, consideration of the characteristics of the knives should be made, focused on those emphasized ("Concealability, and the ease with which the knife can be transformed from a "safe" or "closed" condition to an "operational" or "open" state . . .") in the Federal Register notice amending the regulations at issue. Thus, given the clear purpose enunciated during the notice and comment rulemaking process which amended the relevant regulation, we conclude that the type of opening mechanism is "much more important" than blade style in making admissibility determinations under the Switchblade Knife Act (see 54 FR 34186, *supra*).

We therefore find that knives with spring-assisted opening mechanisms that require minimal "human manipulation" in order to instantly spring the blades to the fully open and locked position cannot be considered to have a primary utilitarian purpose; such articles function as prohibited switchblade knives as defined by the relevant statute and regulations.

In reaching this conclusion, we reexamined the sample provided. We note that other than a bald assertion that the knives at issue are for a primary utilitarian purpose (you characterize the knife as "general carry"), no evidence substantiating that claim was presented. The knife at issue can be instantly opened into the fully locked and ready position with one hand, simply by pushing on either of the thumb tabs. Although the knife is marketed as a "release-assist" model, it nevertheless opens via human manipulation and inertia. See *Taylor, supra*, at footnote 1 on page 5. Further, it is possible to "lock" the safety of the knife, adjust the blade (by pushing it "against" the safety button) and to instantly deploy it by depressing the "safety" button in a manner indiscernible from a "traditional" switchblade (and in a manner which can be considered to be insignificant preliminary preparation; see 19 CFR Part 12.95(b), above). It is based upon the foregoing analysis and these factual observations that we conclude that the knife at issue is a switchblade prohibited from importation into the United States.

This decision is necessary to reconcile CBP's position regarding the admissibility of such knives and comports with the conclusions made in the following rulings:

---

[4] See also 19 CFR Part 12.96(a): Among admissible common and special purpose knives are jackknives and similar standard pocketknives, special purpose knives, scout knives, and other knives equipped with one or more blades of such single edge nonweapon styles as clip, skinner, pruner, sheep foot, spey, coping, razor, pen, and cuticle.

In New York Ruling Letter ("NY") G83213, dated October 13, 2000, CBP determined that "a folding knife with a spring-loaded blade [which could] be easily opened by light pressure on a thumb knob located at the base of the blade, or by a flick of the wrist" was an "inertia-operated knife" that "is prohibited under the Switchblade Act and subject to seizure." See 19 C.F.R. § 12.95 (a)(1).

In NY H81084, dated May 23, 2001, CBP determined that 18 models of knives "may be opened with a simple flick of the wrist, and therefore are prohibited as inertial operated knives."

In HQ 115725, dated July 22, 2002, CBP determined that a "dual-blade folding knife" in which the "non-serrated blade is spring-assisted [and] is opened fully by the action of the spring after the user has pushed the thumb-knob protruding from the base of the blade near the handle to approximately 45 degrees from the handle" "is clearly a switchblade as defined in § 12.95(a)(4) (Knives with a detachable blade that is propelled by a spring-operated mechanism and components thereof.)"

In HQ 115713, dated July 29, 2002, CBP determined that four styles of knives, three of which could "be opened by the application of finger or thumb pressure against one of the aforementioned studs that protrudes from the side of the blade which activates a spring mechanism automatically propelling the blade into a fully open and locked position[,]" and the fourth which "opened by depressing a bar-like release on the handle which, when pushed, releases the blade which is then partially opened by a spring mechanism" were switchblades pursuant to the Switchblade Knife Act and pertinent regulations, prohibited from entry into the United States.

In H040319, dated November 26, 2008, we held that knives with spring-assisted opening mechanisms are "switchblades" within the meaning of 19 CFR Part 12.95(a)(1) and are therefore prohibited entry into the United States pursuant to the Switchblade Knife Act (15 U.S.C. §§ 1241–1245).

In turning to the knives at issue in HQ 116315, examination of the sample provided and application of the regulatory criteria set forth above reveals that the subject knives are switchblades within the meaning of 19 CFR Part 12.95(a)(1) because they meet the criteria enumerated therein, *i.e.*, they open automatically by operation of inertia, gravity, or both. Accordingly, we conclude that knives with spring-assisted opening mechanisms are switchblades within the meaning of 19 CFR Part 12.95(a)(1) and are prohibited from importation into the United States.

HOLDING:

HQ 116315 is hereby revoked.

The subject knife is a switchblade within the meaning of 19 CFR 12.95(a)(1). Therefore, pursuant to the Switchblade Knife Act, 15 U.S.C. §§ 1241–1245, the subject knives are prohibited from entry into the United States.

GEORGE FREDERICK MCCRAY,
Chief,
Intellectual Property Rights and Restricted Merchandise Branch.

[ATTACHMENT F]

DEPARTMENT OF HOMELAND SECURITY.
U.S. CUSTOMS AND BORDER PROTECTION,
HQ H043124
April 30, 2009
ENF–4–02–OT:RR:BSTC:IPR H043124 AML
CATEGORY: Restricted Merchandise

MATTHEW K. NAKACHI, ESQ.
SANDLER, TRAVIS & ROSENBERG, P.A.
505 Sansome Street
Suite 1475
San Francisco, California 94111

RE: Revocation of HQ W116730; Admissibility of Knives; Switchblade Knife Act, 15 U.S.C. §§ 1241–1245; 19 CFR Parts 12.95–12.103

DEAR MR. NAKACHI:

This is in reference to Headquarters Ruling Letter ("HQ") W116730, dated November 7, 2006, issued to you on behalf of Columbia River Knife and Tool ("CRKT"), and concerned the admissibility of the "Outburst" line of "release-assisted " knives described below, pursuant to the Switchblade Knife Act, 15 U.S.C. § 1241, *et seq.* In the referenced ruling, U.S. Customs and Border Protection (hereinafter "CBP") determined that the knives at issue were admissible into the United States pursuant to the Switchblade Knife Act. We have reconsidered the rationale of, and the admissibility determination made in HQ W116730 and found both to be in error. For the reasons set forth below, we hereby revoke HQ W116730.

FACTS:

> CBP paraphrased your description of the knives at issue in HQ W116730 as follows:
>
> The Outburst mechanism operates via a slight spring action, which assists in the opening of the knife by application of the finger or thumb pressure on a thumb stud or disc which protrudes from the side of the blade, allowing the blade to be more easily pushed to an open and locked position. The interior of the blade is engineered such that the spring actually provides resistance, which prevents the knife from opening, until the blade is opened to approximately a 30-degree angle. Hence, when incorporated into knives, the Outburst mechanism only assists in the opening of the knife when the blade is opened to approximately 30-degrees. The user is unable to modify this restriction since at angles less than 30-degrees, the spring exerts back-pressure which holds the blade closed. . . . This back-pressure arises from the engineering of the tempered blade shape and not from the mere tightening of a blade screw.
>
> Since the Outburst mechanism holds the blade closed, it renders the tightness of the blade screw irrelevant for purposes of review under the Switchblade Knife Act. . . . As a secondary level of protection, even if the main spring of the Outburst mechanism is removed, the locking arm of the knife itself contains a ball-detent bias against the blade which prevents the knife from being flicked open by inertia or gravity. The ball-detent bias is also not readily accessible to modification by the user.

The knife models subject to this ruling are as follows:

1. The Koji Hara Ichi consists of a drop-point, pen-knife blade, in black or silver. The body of the knife is built on an open frame with Zytel scale inserts and fasteners and a removable clip[.]

2. The My Tighe consists of a stainless-steel, utilitarian blade with optional serrations. The knife includes black Zytel inserts, black hardware and a black Teflon-plated, removable clip[.]

3. The Kommer Full Throttle consists of a stainless-steel, straight blade with optional serrations. The knife is built on an open frame with a flat handle profile[.]

All of the blades are readily identifiable as being designed for personal, utilitarian use[.]

. . . Such single-handed opening is greatly beneficial to craftsmen, outdoorsmen and workers, who are engaged in a particular task when the need to simultaneously make a cut arises. For example, a fisherman could be holding a fish caught on a fishing line with one hand, while both drawing and opening an Outburst assisted-opening knife with the other hand.

A search of the CRKT website (last visited on January 13, 2009) reveals the following information regarding the "Outburst" mechanism and each of the models described above: the Koji Hara Ichi is equipped with "an ambidextrous thumb disk allows easy one-hand opening," and "is available in conventional non-assisted opening models, or with our patented OutBurst™ assisted opening mechanism, which instantly springs the blade fully open after you have opened the blade approximately 30 degrees." Descriptions of the "My Tighe" and "Kommer Full Throttle" models repeat the "springs the blade to fully open" statement *verbatim*.

ISSUE:

Whether the subject knives are prohibited from entry into the United States pursuant to the Switchblade Knife Act, 15 U.S.C. §§ 1241–1245 and the CBP Regulations promulgated pursuant thereto set forth in 19 CFR §§ 12.95–12.103.

LAW AND ANALYSIS:

Pursuant to the Act of August 12, 1958 (Pub. L. 85–623, codified at 15 U.S.C. §§ 1241–1245, otherwise known as the "Switchblade Knife Act"), whoever knowingly introduces, or manufactures for introduction, into interstate commerce, or transports or distributes in interstate commerce, any switchblade knife, shall be fined or imprisoned, or both.

The Switchblade Knife Act defines "interstate commerce" at 15 U.S.C. § 1241(a):

The term "interstate commerce" means commerce between any State, Territory, possession of the United States, or the District of Columbia, and any place outside thereof.

The Switchblade Knife Act defines "switchblade knife" at 15 U.S.C. § 1241(b):

The term "switchblade knife" means any knife having a blade which opens automatically--

(1) by hand pressure applied to a button or other device in the handle of the knife, or

(2) by operation of inertia, gravity, or both[.]

The CBP Regulations promulgated pursuant to the Switchblade Knife Act are set forth in 19 CFR §§ 12.95–12.103. We note the following definitions:

§ 12.95 Definitions.

Terms as used in §§ 12.96 through 12.103 of this part are defined as follows:

(a) Switchblade knife. “Switchblade knife” means any imported knife, or components thereof, or any class of imported knife, including “switchblade”, “Balisong”, “butterfly”, “gravity” or “ballistic” knives, which has one or more of the following characteristics or identities:

(1) A blade which opens automatically by hand pressure applied to a button or device in the handle of the knife, or any knife with a blade which opens automatically by operation of inertia, gravity, or both;

(2) Knives which, by insignificant preliminary preparation, as described in paragraph (b) of this section, can be altered or converted so as to open automatically by hand pressure applied to a button or device in the handle of the knife or by operation of inertia, gravity, or both;

(3) Unassembled knife kits or knife handles without blades which, when fully assembled with added blades, springs, or other parts, are knives which open automatically by hand pressure applied to a button or device in the handle of the knife or by operation of inertia, gravity, or both; or

(4) Knives with a detachable blade that is propelled by a spring-operated mechanism, and components thereof[.]

(b) Insignificant preliminary preparation. “Insignificant preliminary preparation” means preparation with the use of ordinarily available tools, instruments, devices, and materials by one having no special manual training or skill for the purpose of modifying blade heels, relieving binding parts, altering spring restraints, or making similar minor alterations which can be accomplished in a relatively short period of time.

Other pertinent regulations are as follows:

§ 12.96 Imports unrestricted under the Act.

(a) Common and special purpose knives. Imported knives with a blade style designed for a primary utilitarian use, as defined in § 12.95(c), shall be admitted to unrestricted entry *provided that in condition as entered the imported knife is not a switchblade knife as defined in § 12.95(a)(1)* [italicized emphasis added] . . .

§ 12.97 Importations contrary to law.

Importations of switchblade knives, except as permitted by 15 U.S.C. § 1244, are importations contrary to law and are subject to forfeiture under 19 U.S.C. § 1595a(c).

The plain language of the Switchblade Knife Act and relevant CBP regulations prohibit, *inter alia*, the importation of knives which are for use as weapons while explicitly permitting the importation of "common and special purpose" knives (see 19 CFR 12.95(c) "Utilitarian Use" and 12.96(a) ("Unrestricted Imports")). Several courts have addressed the breadth of the prohibition set forth in the statute. See, *e.g.*, *Precise Imports Corp. v. Kelly*, 378 F.2d 1014, 1017 (2d Cir. 1967), *cert. denied*, 389 U.S. 973, 19 L. Ed. 2d 465, 88 S. Ct. 472 (1967), in which the Court of Appeals for the Second Circuit stated that:

> The report of the Senate Committee on Interstate and Foreign Commerce which recommended passage of the Switchblade Knife Act stated that the enforcement of state laws banning switchblade knives would be extremely difficult as long as such knives could be freely obtained in interstate commerce, and added:
>
> "In supporting enactment of this measure, however, your committee considers that the purpose to be achieved goes beyond merely aiding States in local law enforcement. The switchblade knife is, by design and use, almost exclusively the weapon of the thug and the delinquent. Such knives are not particularly adapted to the requirements of the hunter or fisherman, and sportsmen generally do not employ them. It was testified that, practically speaking, there is no legitimate use for the switchblade to which a conventional sheath or jackknife is not better suited. This being the case, your committee believes that it is in the national interest that these articles be banned from interstate commerce." S.Rep. No. 1980, 85th Cong., 2d Sess., reprinted in 2 U.S. Code Cong. & Ad. News 1958, at 3435–37.
>
> The congressional purpose of aiding the enforcement of state laws against switchblade knives and of barring them from interstate commerce could be easily frustrated if knives which can be quickly and easily made into switchblade knives, and one of whose primary uses is as weapons, could be freely shipped in interstate commerce and converted into switchblade knives upon arrival at the state of destination. We decline to construe the act as permitting such facile evasion.
>
> . . . We hold, therefore, that a knife may be found to be a switchblade knife within the meaning of the Switchblade Knife Act if it is found that it can be made to open automatically by hand pressure, inertia, or gravity after insignificant alterations, and that one of its primary purposes is for use as a weapon.

In *Taylor v. United States*, 848 F.2d 715, 717 (6th Cir. 1988) the court, in describing a Balisong knife stated that:

> [T]he district court described a Balisong knife as "basically a folding knife with a split handle." It went on to set out its prime use: while the exotic knife has some utilitarian use, it is most often associated with the martial arts and with combat . . . [and is] potentially dangerous, lethal . . . ." Citing another district court decision involving the same issue, *Precise Imports Corp. v. Kelly*, 378 F.2d 1014 (2d Cir.), *cert. denied*, 389 U.S. 973, 19 L. Ed. 2d 465, 88 S. Ct. 472 (1967) (upholding a seizure of certain knives with no legitimate purpose), the district court described it as of "minimal value" and distinguished another "seminal case interpreting the Act", *United States v. 1,044 Balisong Knives*, No. 70–

110 (D. Ore. Sept. 28, 1970) (refusing to support seizure). The district court concluded that "congress intended to prohibit knives that opened automatically, ready for instant use . . . [and] was not concerned with whether the knife's blade would merely be exposed by gravity", . . . [it] intended 'open' to mean 'ready for use.' " *Taylor v. United States*, 848 F.2d 715, 717 (6th Cir. 1988).

See also *Taylor v. McManus*, 661 F. Supp. 11, 14–15 (E.D. Tenn. 1986), in which the Court of Appeals for the Eastern District of Tennessee observed:

> In examining the congressional record, it seems obvious that congress intended to prohibit knives which opened automatically, ready for instant use. Rep. Kelly, for example, described the switchblade "as a weapon (which) springs out at the slightest touch and is ready for instant violence." *Switchblade Knives: Hearings Before a Subcommittee of the Committee on Interstate and Foreign Commerce*, House of Rep., 85th Cong., 2d Sess. 13, 29 (1958). She also noted that the prohibited gravity knife opens and "anchors in place automatically. Every bit as fast as the switchblade, it has proved to be as effective a killer." *Id.* at 29. Similarly, Rep. Delaney described the prohibited gravity knives as "knives (which) open and lock automatically at a quick flick of the wrist." 104 CONG. REC., 85th Cong., 2nd Sess. 12398 (June 26, 1958). (emphasis supplied). Apparently, then, Congress was not concerned with whether the knife's blade would merely be exposed by gravity. Instead, they intended "open" to mean "ready for use", as exhibited in Rep. Kelley's testimony that the switchblade opened "ready for instant violence" and her and Rep. Delaney's comments that the gravity knife opened and locked automatically. While the Court does not intend to read into the Statute a requirement that the blades "lock" automatically, it does seem apparent that Congress intended "open" to mean "ready for use". Obviously a knife that has not locked into an open position is not ready for use. Since the Balisong knives cannot be used until the second handle is manually folded back and clasped, the Court finds that they do not open automatically by force of gravity or inertia.[5]

Based primarily on 15 U.S.C. § 1241(b)(1) (see also the first clause of 19 CFR Part 12.95(a)(1)) which defines a switchblade knife as being a knife having a blade which opens automatically by hand pressure applied to a button or device in the handle of the knife, as well as reliance upon the exception set forth at 19 CFR Part 12.95(c) regarding knives with a blade style designed for a primary utilitarian use, CBP decided in several rulings, including HQ W116730, that knives with spring-assisted opening mechanisms were not switchblades as contemplated by the Switchblade Knife Act and implementing regulations.

---

[5] The conclusion regarding Balisong knives was reversed by *Taylor v. United States*, 848 F.2d 715, 1988 U.S. App. LEXIS 7761 (6th Cir. Tenn. 1988): "There is sufficient indication in the legislative history that the intent was to exclude these martial arts weapons, which even the district court admitted "can be opened very rapidly, perhaps in less than 5 seconds . . . [and] are potentially dangerous, lethal weapons." *Id.* at 720. Further, Balisongs were added to the list of prohibited knives when the regulations were amended in 1990. See the discussion of the regulatory amendments in HQ H030606, dated August 12, 2008, page 4.

Notwithstanding, because of the intrinsic health and public safety concerns underlying the statute and regulations, it is necessary to reassess our position regarding knives with spring-assisted opening mechanisms as 1) there are no judicial decisions interpreting, other than in the context of balisong knives (discussed above), 15 U.S.C. § 1241(b)(2) and the second clause of 19 Part CFR 12.95(a) (discussed below) and 2) CBP has issued inconsistent rulings, of which HQ W116730 is one, regarding the issue of whether knives with spring-assisted opening mechanisms are admissible or prohibited from importation into the United States.

In *Alaska Trojan P'ship v. Gutierrez*, 425 F.3d 620, 628 (9th Cir. Alaska 2005), the Court of Appeals for the 9th Circuit stated, with regard to the interpretation of agency regulations that:

> "In ascertaining the plain meaning of [a] statute, the court must look to the particular statutory language at issue, as well as the language and design of the statute as a whole." *McCarthy v. Bronson*, 500 U.S. 136, 139, 114 L. Ed. 2d 194, 111 S. Ct. 1737 (1991) (quoting *K Mart Corp. v. Cartier, Inc.*, 486 U.S. 281, 291, 100 L. Ed. 2d 313, 108 S. Ct. 1811 (1988)) (alteration in original). When a statute or regulation defines a term, that definition controls, and the court need not look to the dictionary or common usage. *Compare F.D.I.C. v. Meyer*, 510 U.S. 471, 476, 127 L. Ed. 2d 308, 114 S. Ct. 996 (1994) ("In the absence of such a definition, we construe a statutory term in accordance with its ordinary or natural meaning."). An agency's interpretation of a regulation must "conform with the wording and purpose of the regulation." *Public Citizen Inc. v. Mineta*, 343 F.3d 1159, 1166 (9th Cir. 2003).

Because of the existence of conflicting rulings (*i.e.*, rulings which have determined that knives with spring-assisted opening mechanisms are switchblades as defined in the statute and others which have made the opposite conclusion), we have reexamined the definition of the word "switchblade knife" set forth at15 U.S.C. § 1241(b) and 19 CFR Part 12.95(a)(1) and have determined that the definition set forth therein captures and proscribes, in addition to "traditional" switchblades, the importation of knives with spring-assisted opening mechanisms, often equipped with thumb studs or protrusions affixed to the base of the blade (rather than in the handle of the knives as set forth in the first clause of 19 CFR Part 12.95(a)(1)). The relevant regulatory language identifies and defines "switchblade knives" by exemplars (" "switchblade", "Balisong", "butterfly", "gravity" or "ballistic" knives") and by definition ("or any class of imported knife . . . which has one or more of the following characteristics or identities: (1) A blade which opens automatically by hand pressure applied to a button or device in the handle of the knife, *or any knife with a blade which opens automatically by operation of inertia, gravity or both*[.]")

In reconsidering what types of knives are contemplated by the statute, we interpret the controlling terms according to their common meanings[6]. The

[6] A fundamental canon of statutory construction requires that "unless otherwise defined, words will be interpreted as taking their ordinary, contemporary, common meaning." *Perrin v. United States*, 444 U.S. 37, 42, 62 L. Ed. 2d 199, 100 S. Ct. 311 (1979); see also 2A Norman J. Singer, Sutherland Statutory Construction § 46:01 (6th ed. 2000). *United States v. Lehman*, 225 F.3d 426, 429 (4th Cir. S.C. 2000).

term “automatically” is defined at *http://www.merriam-webster.com/dictionary/ automatically* as:

> 1 a: largely or wholly involuntary ; especially : reflex 5 <automatic blinking of the eyelids> b: acting or done spontaneously or unconsciously c: done or produced as if by machine : mechanical <the answers were automatic> 2: having a self-acting or self-regulating mechanism <an automatic transmission> 3 of a firearm : firing repeatedly until the trigger is released.
>
> The term “inertia” is defined at *http://www.merriam-webster.com/dictionary/inertia* as:
>
> 1 a: a property of matter by which it remains at rest or in uniform motion in the same straight line unless acted upon by some external force b: an analogous property of other physical quantities (as electricity).
>
> See also, *http://physics.about.com/od/glossary/g/inertia.htm:* Definition: Inertia is the name for the tendency of an object in motion to remain in motion, or an object at rest to remain at rest, unless acted upon by a force. This concept was quantified in Newton’s First Law of Motion; and *http://dictionary.reference.com/browse/inertia:* 2. Physics. a. the property of matter by which it retains its state of rest or its velocity along a straight line so long as it is not acted upon by an external force.

In *Taylor v. United States*, 848 F.2d 715, 720 (6th Cir. Tenn. 1988), the United States Court of Appeals for the Sixth Circuit, in analyzing the terms of the statute and regulations at issue stated that:

> “Automatically” as used in the statute does not necessarily mean simply by operation of some inanimate connected force such as the spring in a literal switchblade. For example, the type of gravity or “flick” knife which is indisputably within the statute requires some human manipulation in order to create or unleash the force of “gravity” or “inertia” which makes the opening “automatic.”

Knives equipped with spring- and release-assisted opening mechanisms are knives which “require[ ] some human manipulation in order to create or unleash the force of “gravity” or “inertia” which makes the opening “automatic.” ” See *Taylor, supra.* Despite the fact that they differ in design (most if not all are equipped with thumb studs affixed to the base of the blunt side of the blade) from a traditional switchblade (in which the button that activates the spring mechanism is located in the handle of the knife), the spring-assisted mechanisms cause the knives to open fully for instant use, potentially as a weapon. Such knives are prohibited by the Switchblade Knife Act.

Our interpretation of 15 U.S.C. § 1241(b) and 19 CFR 12.95(a)(1) is supported by case law. In *Demko v. United States*, 44 Fed. Cl. 83, 88–89 (Fed. Cl. 1999), the Court of Federal Claims, in analyzing a regulation regarding the grandfathered sale of “street sweeper” shotguns, recited the following interpretations of the word “or” as used in statutes and regulations:

> “Generally the term ‘or’ functions grammatically as a coordinating conjunction and joins two separate parts of a sentence.” *Ruben v. Secretary of DHHS*, 22 Cl. Ct. 264, 266 (1991) (noting that “or” is generally ascribed disjunctive intent unless contrary to legislative intent). As a disjunctive, the word “or” connects two parts of a sentence, “but discon-

nect[s] their meaning, the meaning in the second member excluding that in the first." *Id.* (quoting G. Curme, A Grammar of the English Language, Syntax 166 (1986)); see *Quindlen v. Prudential Ins. Co.*, 482 F.2d 876, 878 (5th Cir. 1973) (noting disjunctive results in alternatives, which must be treated separately). Nonetheless, courts have not adhered strictly to such rules of statutory construction. See *Ruben*, 22 Cl. Ct. at 266. For instance, "it is settled that 'or' may be read to mean 'and' when the context so indicates." *Willis v. United States*, 719 F.2d 608, 612 (2d Cir. 1983); see *Ruben*, 22 Cl. Ct. at 266 (quoting same); see also *DeSylva v. Ballentine*, 351 U.S. 570, 573, 100 L. Ed. 1415, 76 S. Ct. 974 (1956) ("We start with the proposition that the word 'or' is often used as a careless substitute for the word 'and'; that is, it is often used in phrases where 'and' would express the thought with greater clarity."); *Union Ins. Co. v. United States*, 73 U.S. 759, 764, 18 L. Ed. 879 (1867) ("But when we look beyond the mere words to the obvious intent we cannot help seeing the word 'or' must be taken conjunctively. . . . This construction impairs no rights of the parties . . . and carries into effect the true intention of Congress. . . .").

In analyzing the language of 15 U.S.C. § 1241(b) and 19 CFR Part 12.95(a)(1), we conclude that the word "or" is used conjunctively yet distinguishes the paradigm switchblade knife (paraphrased: spring action blade with a button in the handle) from other knives which function similarly to the paradigm switchblade but do not have the "traditional" configuration or function. Given its legislative and judicial history, the Switchblade Knife Act is intended to proscribe the importation of any knife that opens automatically by hand pressure applied to a button or device in the handle of the knife and *any* knife with a blade which opens automatically by operation of inertia, gravity or both.

The knives at issue open via inertia – once pressure is applied to the thumb stud (or protrusion at the base of the blade), the blade continues in inertial motion (caused by the combined effect of manual and spring-assisted pressure) until it is stopped by the locking mechanism of the knife. Such knives open instantly for potential use as a weapon. We therefore conclude, in consideration of the authorities and sources Switchblade Knife Act and implementing regulations, that the knives with spring-and release- assisted opening mechanisms, that such knives are described and prohibited by 15 U.S.C. § 1241(b)(2) and 19 CFR Part 12.95(a)(1).

We also have reconsidered our interpretation of the terms "utilitarian use", as we have in several rulings found knives with spring-assisted opening mechanisms to be admissible because they were equipped with blades for "utilitarian use". The regulation defines, albeit by exemplar, the types of knife (subject to the condition precedent set forth in 19 CFR 12.96: Imported knives with a blade style designed for a primary utilitarian use, as defined in § 12.95(c), shall be admitted to unrestricted entry *provided that in condition as entered the imported knife is not a switchblade knife as defined in § 12.95(a)(1)* [italicized emphasis added] . . .) that are considered to be "utilitarian" for purposes of the statute. See 19 CFR 12.95(c):

(c) Utilitarian use. "Utilitarian use" includes but is not necessarily limited to use:

(1) For a customary household purpose;

(2) For usual personal convenience, including grooming;

Case 4:23-cv-00547-O Document 20-3 Filed 10/06/23 Page 162 of 462 PageID 835

(3) In the practice of a profession, trade, or commercial or employment activity;

(4) In the performance of a craft or hobby;

(5) In the course of such outdoor pursuits as hunting and fishing; and

(6) In scouting activities.

As we stated in HQ H030606, dated August 12, 2008, with regard to the regulations implementing the Switchblade Knife Act:

> The relevant CBP regulations were implemented in 1971, following notice and comment, via Treasury Decision ("T.D.") 71–243, and the Final Rule was published in the Federal Register on September 13, 1971. See Final Rule, 36 FR 18859, Sept. 23, 1971. HQ H030606 at page 3.

The notice of proposed rulemaking, published in the Federal Register on October 24, 1970, set forth "[t]he proposed regulations . . . in tentative form as follows":

> (a) Definitions. As used in this section the term "switchblade knife" means any imported knife-
>
> (1) Having a blade which opens automatically by hand pressure applied to a button or device in the handle of the knife or by operation of inertia, gravity, or both; or
>
> (2) Having a handle over 3 inches in length with a stiletto or other blade style which is designed for purposes that include a primary use as a weapon, *as contrasted with blade styles designed for a primary utilitarian use*, when, by insignificant preliminary preparation a Customs officer can alter or convert such stiletto or other weapon to open automatically as described in subparagraph (1) of this paragraph, under the principle of the decision in the case of "Precise Imports Corporation and Others v. Joseph P. Kelly, Collector of Customs, and Others" (378 F. 2d 1014). *The term "utilitarian use" means use for any customary household purpose; use for any usual personal convenience; use in the practice of a profession, trade, or commercial or employment activity; use in the performance of a craft or hobby; use, in the course of such outdoor pursuits as hunting and fishing; use related to scouting activities; and use for grooming, as demonstrated by jack-knives and similar standard pocket knives, special purpose knives, scout knives, and other knives equipped with one or more blades of such single edge nonweapon styles as clip, skinner, pruner, sheep foot, spey, coping, razor, pen, and cuticle* [italicized emphasis added]. 35 FR 16594.
>
> The introductory language to the Final Rule made the following prefatory declarations:
>
> On October 24, 1970, notice was published in the Federal Register (35 FR 16594) of a proposal to prescribe regulations to govern the importation of articles subject to the so-called Switchblade Knife Act, sections 1 – 4, 72 Stat. 562 (15 U.S.C. 1241 – 1244).
>
> Importers or other interested persons were given the opportunity to participate in the rule making through submission of relevant comments, suggestions or objections. No comments were received from importers or other persons. 36 FR 18859.

CBP announced its proposed intention to amend the regulations via Federal Register notice on August 18, 1989. See 54 FR 34186 of the same date. In the introductory "Background" in the proposed rule, CBP (then "Customs") emphasized the characteristics that would be considered in making determinations regarding the types of blades knives bore which would be proscribed by the Switchblade Knife Act and implementing regulations, stating that:

> To implement the law, Customs adopted regulations which followed the legislative language extremely closely (19 CFR 12.95–12.103). Those regulations also specifically referred to the court decision of *Precise Imports Corp. and Others v. Joseph P. Kelly, Collector of Customs, and Others* (378 F. 2d 1014). *Because of this reference, the existing regulations appear to imply that one of the principal considerations in determining the legality of a knife is the type of blade style the weapon possesses. While style is relevant, it is not of overriding importance. Concealability, and the ease with which the knife can be transformed from a "safe" or "closed" condition to an "operational" or "open" state are much more important. The Customs position, which has been supported by court decisions, is that Congressional intent was to address the problem of the importation, subsequent sale, and use of a class of quick-opening, easily concealed knives most frequently used for criminal purposes.* The deletion of the reference to the *Precise Imports* case does not imply that customs does not consider the principles contained in that case important, or that they are in any way no longer relevant. Rather, the principles in the Precise Imports case could not be considered too limiting [italicized emphasis added]. 54 FR 34186

There is no reference in the statutory language of the Switchblade Knife Act to the term "utilitarian use"; the only references appear in the CBP regulations. Similarly, the term has received only passing reference judicially ("The government indicated that had the knives been "designed with a single-edge blade and were primarily used for utilitarian purposes" rather than "double-edged stiletto-style blades" they would have been admitted." *Taylor v. United States*, 848 F.2d 715, 720 (6th Cir. Tenn. 1988)) and in the Federal Register notices cited above. Therefore, against the explanatory language from the Federal Register notices set forth above, we consider the ordinary meaning of the words employed:

> The term "utilitarian" is defined at *http://dictionary.reference.com/search?q =utilitarian* as:
>
> 1. pertaining to or consisting in utility.
>
> 2. having regard to utility or usefulness rather than beauty, ornamentation, etc.
>
> And at the same site:
>
> 1. having a useful function; "utilitarian steel tables".
>
> 2. having utility often to the exclusion of values; "plain utilitarian kitchenware".
>
> The term "utility" is defined at *http://www.merriam-webster.com/dictionary/utility* as:
>
> 1: fitness for some purpose or worth to some end.

2: something useful or designed for use.

From the exemplars set forth in 19 CFR Part 12.95(c)[7], and definitions set forth above we conclude that knives with a primary (constructively or practically vs. tactically, lethally or primarily as a weapon) utilitarian design and purpose that are not captured by the definition of switchblades are admissible pursuant to the Switchblade Knife Act. Thus, for example, pocketknives, tradesman's knives and other folding knives for a certain specific use remain generally admissible, with such determinations being made, by necessity, on a case-by-case basis. Further, the opening mechanisms of imported knives must be considered and those that open instantly subjected to strict scrutiny in order to determine admissibility. As we found in HQs W479898, dated June 29, 2007 and H017909 dated December 26, 2007, that "*all* knives can potentially be used as weapons"; likewise the blades of all knives have some utility. Therefore, consideration of the characteristics of the knives should be made, focused on those emphasized ("Concealability, and the ease with which the knife can be transformed from a "safe" or "closed" condition to an "operational" or "open" state . . . ") in the Federal Register notice amending the regulations at issue. Thus, given the clear purpose enunciated during the notice and comment rulemaking process which amended the relevant regulation, we conclude that the type of opening mechanism is "much more important" than blade style in making admissibility determinations under the Switchblade Knife Act (see 54 FR 34186, *supra*).

We therefore find that knives with spring-assisted opening mechanisms that require minimal "human manipulation" in order to instantly spring the blades to the fully open and locked position cannot be considered to have a primary utilitarian purpose; such articles function as prohibited switchblade knives as defined by the relevant statute and regulations.

In reaching this conclusion, we reexamined the sample provided. We note that other than a bald assertion that the knives at issue are for a primary utilitarian purpose (you state that "[a]ll of the blades are readily identifiable as being designed for personal, utilitarian use[.]"), no evidence substantiating that claim was presented. The knife at issue can be instantly opened into the fully locked and ready position with one hand[8], simply by pushing on either of the thumb tabs. Although the knife is marketed as a "release-assist" model, it nevertheless opens via human manipulation and inertia. See *Taylor, supra* at footnote 1 on page 6. Further, it is possible to "lock" the safety of the knife, adjust the blade (by pushing it "against" the safety button) and to instantly deploy it in a manner indiscernible from a "traditional" switchblade (and in a manner which can be considered to be insignificant preliminary preparation; see 19 CFR 12.95(b), above). It is based upon this analysis and these factual observations that we conclude that the knife at issue is a switchblade prohibited from importation into the United States.

This decision is necessary to reconcile CBP's position regarding the admis-

---

[7] See also 19 CFR Part 12.96(a): Among admissible common and special purpose knives are jackknives and similar standard pocketknives, special purpose knives, scout knives, and other knives equipped with one or more blades of such single edge nonweapon styles as clip, skinner, pruner, sheep foot, spey, coping, razor, pen, and cuticle.

[8] See the marketing statements from the CRKT website in the "FACTS" section above.

sibility of such knives and comports with the conclusions made in the following rulings:

In New York Ruling Letter ("NY") G83213, dated October 13, 2000, CBP determined that "a folding knife with a spring-loaded blade [which could] be easily opened by light pressure on a thumb knob located at the base of the blade, or by a flick of the wrist" was an "inertia-operated knife" that "is prohibited under the Switchblade Act and subject to seizure. See 19 C.F.R. §12.95 (a)(1)."

In NY H81084, dated May 23, 2001, CBP determined that 18 models of knives "may be opened with a simple flick of the wrist, and therefore are prohibited as inertial operated knives."

In HQ 115725, dated July 22, 2002, CBP determined that a "dual-blade folding knife" in which the "non-serrated blade is spring-assisted [and] is opened fully by the action of the spring after the user has pushed the thumb-knob protruding from the base of the blade near the handle to approximately 45 degrees from the handle" "is clearly a switchblade as defined in § 12.95(a)(4) (Knives with a detachable blade that is propelled by a spring-operated mechanism and components thereof.)"

In HQ 115713, dated July 29, 2002, CBP determined that four styles of knives, three of which could "be opened by the application of finger or thumb pressure against one of the aforementioned studs that protrudes from the side of the blade which activates a spring mechanism automatically propelling the blade into a fully open and locked position[,]" and the fourth which "opened by depressing a bar-like release on the handle which, when pushed, releases the blade which is then partially opened by a spring mechanism" were switchblades pursuant to the Switchblade Knife Act and pertinent regulations, prohibited from entry into the United States.

In H040319, dated November 26, 2008, we held that knives with spring-assisted opening mechanisms are "switchblades" within the meaning of 19 CFR Part 12.95(a)(1) and are therefore prohibited entry into the United States pursuant to the Switchblade Knife Act (15 U.S.C. §§ 1241–1245).

In turning to the knives at issue in HQ W116730, examination of the description of the "OutBurst" release mechanism and application of the regulatory criteria set forth above reveals that the subject knives are switchblades within the meaning of 15 U.S.C. § 1241(b)(2) and 19 CFR Part 12.95(a)(1) because they meet the criteria enumerated therein, *i.e.*, they open automatically by operation of inertia, gravity, or both.

HOLDING:

HQ W116730 is hereby revoked.

The subject knives, equipped with the "OutBurst" release-assist mechanism, are switchblade knives within the meaning of 15 U.S.C. § 1241(b) and 19 CFR Part 12.95(a)(1). Therefore, pursuant to the Switchblade Knife Act, 15 U.S.C. §§ 1241–1245, the subject knives are prohibited from entry into the United States.

GEORGE FREDERICK MCCRAY,
Chief,
Intellectual Property Rights and,
Restricted Merchandise Branch.

[ATTACHMENT G]

DEPARTMENT OF HOMELAND SECURITY.
U.S. CUSTOMS AND BORDER PROTECTION,
HQ H043126
April 30, 2009
ENF–4–02–OT:RR:BSTC:IPR H043126 AML
CATEGORY: Restricted Merchandise

MS. LARA A. AUSTRINS
MR. THOMAS J. O'DONNELL
RODRIGUEZ, O'DONNELL ROSS
8430 W. Bryn Mawr Ave., Suite 525
Chicago, Illinois 60631

RE: Revocation of HQ H016666; Admissibility of Knives; Switchblade Knife Act, 15 U.S.C. §§ 1241–1245; 19 CFR Parts 12.95–12.103

DEAR MS. AUSTRINS AND MR. O'DONNELL:

This is in reference to Headquarters Ruling Letter ("HQ") H016666, dated December 12, 2007, which concerned the admissibility of the "Tailwind", a "release-assisted " knife described below, pursuant to the Switchblade Knife Act, 15 U.S.C. § 1241, *et seq.* In the referenced ruling, U.S. Customs and Border Protection (hereinafter "CBP") determined that the knives at issue were admissible into the United States pursuant to the Switchblade Knife Act. We have reconsidered HQ H016666 and the rulings upon which it relied and found it and them to be in error. For the reasons set forth below, we hereby revoke HQ H016666.

FACTS:

CBP paraphrased your description of the knives at issue in HQ H016666 as follows:

[T]he knife at issue, marketed as the "Tailwind" (model number HD0071), as a single edged, release assisted, folding knife. The knife has a "false edge grind" on the topside of the 3 ½ inch blade and measures 4 ½ inches when closed. When extended, the overall length of the knife is 7 ¾ inches. The knife weighs 4.2 ounces.

The Tailwind name is derived from the patented opening mechanism. The opening mechanism, subject of U.S. Patent number 7,051,441, is equipped "with an assist spring, which assists in the opening of the knife only after the knife has been manually opened to approximately thirty degrees." The blade must be opened manually until the blade reaches approximately thirty degrees at which point the mechanism engages and the blade springs open to its extended and locked position. The knife is refolded by depressing a manual release.

With regard to the blade of the knife, you indicated that:

The knife's blade is such that it is designed for a primary utilitarian use and the intended customer base for the knife is wide and varied.

ISSUE:

Whether the subject knives are prohibited from entry into the United States pursuant to the Switchblade Knife Act, 15 U.S.C. §§ 1241–1245 and the CBP Regulations promulgated pursuant thereto set forth in 19 CFR §§ 12.95–12.103.

LAW AND ANALYSIS:

Pursuant to the Act of August 12, 1958 (Pub. L. 85–623, codified at 15 U.S.C. §§ 1241–1245, otherwise known as the "Switchblade Knife Act"), whoever knowingly introduces, or manufactures for introduction, into interstate commerce, or transports or distributes in interstate commerce, any switchblade knife, shall be fined or imprisoned, or both.

The Switchblade Knife Act defines "interstate commerce" at 15 U.S.C. § 1241(a):

> The term "interstate commerce" means commerce between any State, Territory, possession of the United States, or the District of Columbia, and any place outside thereof.

The Switchblade Knife Act defines "switchblade knife" at 15 U.S.C. § 1241(b):

> The term "switchblade knife" means any knife having a blade which opens automatically—
>
> (1) by hand pressure applied to a button or other device in the handle of the knife, or
>
> (2) by operation of inertia, gravity, or both[.]

The CBP Regulations promulgated pursuant to the Switchblade Knife Act are set forth in 19 CFR §§ 12.95–12.103. We note the following definitions:

> § 12.95 Definitions.
>
> Terms as used in §§12.96 through 12.103 of this part are defined as follows:
>
> (a) Switchblade knife. "Switchblade knife" means any imported knife, or components thereof, or any class of imported knife, including "switchblade", "Balisong", "butterfly", "gravity" or "ballistic" knives, which has one or more of the following characteristics or identities:
>
> > (1) A blade which opens automatically by hand pressure applied to a button or device in the handle of the knife, or any knife with a blade which opens automatically by operation of inertia, gravity, or both;
> >
> > (2) Knives which, by insignificant preliminary preparation, as described in paragraph (b) of this section, can be altered or converted so as to open automatically by hand pressure applied to a button or device in the handle of the knife or by operation of inertia, gravity, or both;
> >
> > (3) Unassembled knife kits or knife handles without blades which, when fully assembled with added blades, springs, or other parts, are knives which open automatically by hand pressure applied to a button or device in the handle of the knife or by operation of inertia, gravity, or both; or

Case 4:23-cv-00547-O Document 20-3 Filed 10/06/23 Page 168 of 462 PageID 841

(4) Knives with a detachable blade that is propelled by a spring-operated mechanism, and components thereof[.]

(b) Insignificant preliminary preparation. "Insignificant preliminary preparation" means preparation with the use of ordinarily available tools, instruments, devices, and materials by one having no special manual training or skill for the purpose of modifying blade heels, relieving binding parts, altering spring restraints, or making similar minor alterations which can be accomplished in a relatively short period of time.

Other pertinent regulations are as follows:

§ 12.96 Imports unrestricted under the Act.

(a) Common and special purpose knives. Imported knives with a blade style designed for a primary utilitarian use, as defined in § 12.95(c), shall be admitted to unrestricted entry *provided that in condition as entered the imported knife is not a switchblade knife as defined in § 12.95(a)(1)* [italicized emphasis added] . . .

§ 12.97 Importations contrary to law.

Importations of switchblade knives, except as permitted by 15 U.S.C. § 1244, are importations contrary to law and are subject to forfeiture under 19 U.S.C. § 1595a(c).

The plain language of the Switchblade Knife Act and relevant CBP regulations prohibit, *inter alia*, the importation of knives which are for use as weapons while explicitly permitting the importation of "common and special purpose" knives (see 19 CFR 12.95(c) "Utilitarian Use" and 12.96(a) ("unrestricted imports")). Several courts have addressed the breadth of the prohibition set forth in the statute. See, *e.g.*, *Precise Imports Corp. v. Kelly*, 378 F.2d 1014, 1017 (2d Cir. 1967), *cert. denied*, 389 U.S. 973, 19 L. Ed. 2d 465, 88 S. Ct. 472 (1967), in which the Court of Appeals for the Second Circuit stated that:

> The report of the Senate Committee on Interstate and Foreign Commerce which recommended passage of the Switchblade Knife Act stated that the enforcement of state laws banning switchblade knives would be extremely difficult as long as such knives could be freely obtained in interstate commerce, and added:
>
> "In supporting enactment of this measure, however, your committee considers that the purpose to be achieved goes beyond merely aiding States in local law enforcement. The switchblade knife is, by design and use, almost exclusively the weapon of the thug and the delinquent. Such knives are not particularly adapted to the requirements of the hunter or fisherman, and sportsmen generally do not employ them. It was testified that, practically speaking, there is no legitimate use for the switchblade to which a conventional sheath or jackknife is not better suited. This being the case, your committee believes that it is in the national interest that these articles be banned from interstate commerce." S.Rep. No. 1980, 85th Cong., 2d Sess., reprinted in 2 U.S. Code Cong. & Ad. News 1958, at 3435–37.
>
> The congressional purpose of aiding the enforcement of state laws against switchblade knives and of barring them from interstate com-

> merce could be easily frustrated if knives which can be quickly and easily made into switchblade knives, and one of whose primary uses is as weapons, could be freely shipped in interstate commerce and converted into switchblade knives upon arrival at the state of destination. We decline to construe the act as permitting such facile evasion.
>
> . . . We hold, therefore, that a knife may be found to be a switchblade knife within the meaning of the Switchblade Knife Act if it is found that it can be made to open automatically by hand pressure, inertia, or gravity after insignificant alterations, and that one of its primary purposes is for use as a weapon.

In *Taylor v. United States*, 848 F.2d 715, 717 (6th Cir. 1988) the court, in describing a Balisong knife stated that:

> [T]he district court described a Balisong knife as "basically a folding knife with a split handle." It went on to set out its prime use: while the exotic knife has some utilitarian use, it is most often associated with the martial arts and with combat . . . [and is] potentially dangerous, lethal. . . ." Citing another district court decision involving the same issue, *Precise Imports Corp. v. Kelly*, 378 F.2d 1014 (2d Cir.), *cert. denied*, 389 U.S. 973, 19 L. Ed. 2d 465, 88 S. Ct. 472 (1967) (upholding a seizure of certain knives with no legitimate purpose), the district court described it as of "minimal value" and distinguished another "seminal case interpreting the Act", *United States v. 1,044 Balisong Knives*, No. 70–110 (D. Ore. Sept. 28, 1970) (refusing to support seizure). The district court concluded that "congress intended to prohibit knives that opened automatically, ready for instant use . . . [and] was not concerned with whether the knife's blade would merely be exposed by gravity", . . . [it] intended 'open' to mean 'ready for use.' " *Taylor v. United States*, 848 F.2d 715, 717 (6th Cir. 1988).

See also *Taylor v. McManus*, 661 F. Supp. 11, 14–15 (E.D. Tenn. 1986), in which the Court of Appeals for the Eastern District of Tennessee observed:

> In examining the congressional record, it seems obvious that congress intended to prohibit knives which opened automatically, ready for instant use. Rep. Kelly, for example, described the switchblade "as a weapon (which) springs out at the slightest touch and is ready for instant violence." *Switchblade Knives: Hearings Before a Subcommittee of the Committee on Interstate and Foreign Commerce*, House of Rep., 85th Cong., 2d Sess. 13, 29 (1958). She also noted that the prohibited gravity knife opens and "anchors in place automatically. Every bit as fast as the switchblade, it has proved to be as effective a killer." *Id.* at 29. Similarly, Rep. Delaney described the prohibited gravity knives as "knives (which) open and lock automatically at a quick flick of the wrist." 104 CONG. REC., 85th Cong., 2nd Sess. 12398 (June 26, 1958). (emphasis supplied). Apparently, then, Congress was not concerned with whether the knife's blade would merely be exposed by gravity. Instead, they intended "open" to mean "ready for use", as exhibited in Rep. Kelley's testimony that the switchblade opened "ready for instant violence" and her and Rep. Delaney's comments that the gravity knife opened and locked automatically. While the Court does not intend to read into the Statute a requirement that the blades "lock" automatically, it does seem apparent that Congress intended "open" to mean "ready for use". Obviously a knife that has not locked into an open position is not ready for use.

> Since the Balisong knives cannot be used until the second handle is manually folded back and clasped, the Court finds that they do not open automatically by force of gravity or inertia.[9]

Based primarily on 15 U.S.C. § 1241(b)(1) (see also the first clause of 19 CFR Part 12.95(a)(1)) which defines a switchblade knife as being a knife having a blade which opens automatically by hand pressure applied to a button or device in the handle, as well as reliance upon the exception set forth at 19 CFR Part 12.95(c) regarding knives with a blade style designed for a primary utilitarian use, CBP decided in several rulings, including HQ H016666, that knives with spring- and release-assisted opening mechanisms are not switchblades as contemplated by the Switchblade Knife Act and implementing regulations.

Notwithstanding, because of the intrinsic health and public safety concerns underlying the statute and regulations, it is necessary to reassess our position regarding knives with spring-assisted opening mechanisms as 1) there are no judicial decisions interpreting, other than in the context of balisong knives (discussed above), 15 U.S.C. § 1241(b)(2) and the second clause of 19 Part CFR 12.95(a) (discussed below) and 2) CBP has issued inconsistent rulings, of which HQ H016666 is one, regarding the issue of whether knives with spring-assisted opening mechanisms are admissible or prohibited from importation into the United States.

In *Alaska Trojan P'ship v. Gutierrez*, 425 F.3d 620, 628 (9th Cir. Alaska 2005), the Court of Appeals for the 9th Circuit stated, with regard to the interpretation of agency regulations that:

> "In ascertaining the plain meaning of [a] statute, the court must look to the particular statutory language at issue, as well as the language and design of the statute as a whole." *McCarthy v. Bronson*, 500 U.S. 136, 139, 114 L. Ed. 2d 194, 111 S. Ct. 1737 (1991) (quoting *K Mart Corp. v. Cartier, Inc.*, 486 U.S. 281, 291, 100 L. Ed. 2d 313, 108 S. Ct. 1811 (1988)) (alteration in original). When a statute or regulation defines a term, that definition controls, and the court need not look to the dictionary or common usage. *Compare F.D.I.C. v. Meyer*, 510 U.S. 471, 476, 127 L. Ed. 2d 308, 114 S. Ct. 996 (1994) ("In the absence of such a definition, we construe a statutory term in accordance with its ordinary or natural meaning."). An agency's interpretation of a regulation must "conform with the wording and purpose of the regulation." *Public Citizen Inc. v. Mineta*, 343 F.3d 1159, 1166 (9th Cir. 2003).

Because of the existence of conflicting rulings (*i.e.*, rulings which have determined that knives with spring-assisted opening mechanisms are switchblades as defined in the statute and others which have made the opposite conclusion), we have reexamined the definition of the word "switchblade knife" set forth at 15 U.S.C. § 1241(b) and 19 CFR Part

---

[9] The conclusion regarding Balisong knives was reversed by *Taylor v. United States*, 848 F.2d 715, 1988 U.S. App. LEXIS 7761 (6th Cir. Tenn. 1988): "There is sufficient indication in the legislative history that the intent was to exclude these martial arts weapons, which even the district court admitted "can be opened very rapidly, perhaps in less than 5 seconds . . . [and] are potentially dangerous, lethal weapons." *Id.* at 720. Further, Balisongs were added to the list of prohibited knives when the regulations were amended in 1990. See the discussion of the regulatory amendments in HQ H030606, dated August 12, 2008, page 4.

12.95(a)(1) and have determined that the definition set forth therein captures and proscribes, in addition to "traditional" switchblades, the importation of knives with spring-assisted opening mechanisms, often equipped with thumb studs or protrusions affixed to the base of the blade (rather than in the handle of the knives as set forth in the first clause of 19 CFR Part 12.95(a)(1)). The relevant regulatory language identifies and defines "switchblade knives" by exemplars (" "switchblade", "Balisong", "butterfly", "gravity" or "ballistic" knives") and by definition ("or any class of imported knife . . . which has one or more of the following characteristics or identities: (1) A blade which opens automatically by hand pressure applied to a button or device in the handle of the knife, *or any knife with a blade which opens automatically by operation of inertia, gravity or both*[.]")

In reconsidering what types of knives are contemplated by the statute, we interpret the controlling terms according to their common meanings[10]. The term "automatically" is defined at *http://www.merriam-webster.com/dictionary/ automatically* as:

> 1 a: largely or wholly involuntary ; especially : reflex 5 <automatic blinking of the eyelids> b: acting or done spontaneously or unconsciously c: done or produced as if by machine : mechanical <the answers were automatic> 2: having a self-acting or self-regulating mechanism <an automatic transmission> 3of a firearm : firing repeatedly until the trigger is released.
>
> The term "inertia" is defined at *http://www.merriam-webster.com/dictionary/inertia* as:
>
> 1 a: a property of matter by which it remains at rest or in uniform motion in the same straight line unless acted upon by some external force b: an analogous property of other physical quantities (as electricity).
>
> See also, *http://physics.about.com/od/glossary/g/inertia.htm:* Definition: Inertia is the name for the tendency of an object in motion to remain in motion, or an object at rest to remain at rest, unless acted upon by a force. This concept was quantified in Newton's First Law of Motion; and *http://dictionary.reference.com/browse/ inertia:* 2. Physics. a. the property of matter by which it retains its state of rest or its velocity along a straight line so long as it is not acted upon by an external force.

In *Taylor v. United States*, 848 F.2d 715, 720 (6th Cir. Tenn. 1988), the United States Court of Appeals for the Sixth Circuit, in analyzing the terms of the statute and regulations at issue stated that:

> "Automatically" as used in the statute does not necessarily mean simply by operation of some inanimate connected force such as the spring in a literal switchblade. For example, the type of gravity or "flick" knife which is indisputably within the statute requires some human manipulation in order to create or unleash the force of "gravity" or "inertia" which makes the opening "automatic."

---

[10] A fundamental canon of statutory construction requires that "unless otherwise defined, words will be interpreted as taking their ordinary, contemporary, common meaning." *Perrin v. United States*, 444 U.S. 37, 42, 62 L. Ed. 2d 199, 100 S. Ct. 311 (1979); see also 2A Norman J. Singer, *Sutherland Statutory Construction* § 46:01 (6th ed. 2000). *United States v. Lehman*, 225 F.3d 426, 429 (4th Cir. S.C. 2000).

Knives equipped with spring- and release-assisted opening mechanisms are knives which "require[ ] some human manipulation in order to create or unleash the force of "gravity" or "inertia" which makes the opening "automatic." " See *Taylor, supra.* Despite the fact that they differ in design (most if not all are equipped with thumb studs affixed to the base of the blunt side of the blade) from a traditional switchblade (in which the button that activates the spring mechanism is located in the handle of the knife), the spring-assisted mechanisms cause, via inertia, the knives to open fully for instant use, potentially as a weapon. Such knives are prohibited by the Switchblade Knife Act.

Our interpretation of 15 U.S.C. § 1241(b) and 19 CFR 12.95(a)(1) is supported by case law. In *Demko v. United States*, 44 Fed. Cl. 83, 88–89 (Fed. Cl. 1999), the Court of Federal Claims, in analyzing a regulation regarding the grandfathered sale of "street sweeper" shotguns, recited the following interpretations of the word "or" as used in statutes and regulations:

> "Generally the term 'or' functions grammatically as a coordinating conjunction and joins two separate parts of a sentence." *Ruben v. Secretary of DHHS*, 22 Cl. Ct. 264, 266 (1991) (noting that "or" is generally ascribed disjunctive intent unless contrary to legislative intent). As a disjunctive, the word "or" connects two parts of a sentence, "but disconnect[s] their meaning, the meaning in the second member excluding that in the first." *Id.* (quoting G. Curme, A Grammar of the English Language, Syntax 166 (1986)); see *Quindlen v. Prudential Ins. Co.*, 482 F.2d 876, 878 (5th Cir. 1973) (noting disjunctive results in alternatives, which must be treated separately). Nonetheless, courts have not adhered strictly to such rules of statutory construction. See *Ruben*, 22 Cl. Ct. at 266. For instance, "it is settled that 'or' may be read to mean 'and' when the context so indicates." *Willis v. United States*, 719 F.2d 608, 612 (2d Cir. 1983); see *Ruben*, 22 Cl. Ct. at 266 (quoting same); see also *DeSylva v. Ballentine*, 351 U.S. 570, 573, 100 L. Ed. 1415, 76 S. Ct. 974 (1956) ("We start with the proposition that the word 'or' is often used as a careless substitute for the word 'and'; that is, it is often used in phrases where 'and' would express the thought with greater clarity."); *Union Ins. Co. v. United States*, 73 U.S. 759, 764, 18 L. Ed. 879 (1867) ("But when we look beyond the mere words to the obvious intent we cannot help seeing the word 'or' must be taken conjunctively. . . . This construction impairs no rights of the parties . . . and carries into effect the true intention of Congress. . . .").

In analyzing the language of 15 U.S.C. § 1241(b) and 19 CFR Part 12.95(a)(1), we conclude that the word "or" is used conjunctively yet distinguishes the paradigm switchblade knife (paraphrased: spring action blade with a button in the handle) from other knives which function similarly to the paradigm switchblade but do not have the "traditional" configuration or function. Given its legislative and judicial history, the Switchblade Knife Act is intended to proscribe the importation of any knife that opens automatically by hand pressure applied to a button or device in the handle of the knife *and* any knife with a blade which opens automatically by operation of inertia, gravity or both.

The knives at issue open via inertia – once pressure is applied to the thumb stud (or protrusion at the base of the blade), the blade continues in inertial motion (caused by the combined effect of manual and spring-

assisted pressure) until it is stopped by the locking mechanism of the knife. Such knives open instantly for potential use as a weapon. We therefore conclude, in consideration of the authorities and sources Switchblade Knife Act and implementing regulations, that the knives with spring-and release- assisted opening mechanisms, that such knives are described and prohibited by 15 U.S.C. § 1241(b)(2) and 19 CFR Part 12.95(a)(1).

We also have reconsidered our interpretation of the terms "utilitarian use", as we have in several rulings found knives with spring-assisted opening mechanisms to be admissible because they were equipped with blades for utilitarian use. The regulation defines, albeit by exemplar, the types of knife (subject to the condition precedent set forth in 19 CFR 12.96: Imported knives with a blade style designed for a primary utilitarian use, as defined in § 12.95(c), shall be admitted to unrestricted entry *provided that in condition as entered the imported knife is not a switchblade knife as defined in § 12.95(a)(1)* [italicized emphasis added] . . .) that are considered to be "utilitarian" for purposes of the statute. See 19 CFR 12.95(c):

> (c) Utilitarian use. "Utilitarian use" includes but is not necessarily limited to use:
>
> (1) For a customary household purpose;
>
> (2) For usual personal convenience, including grooming;
>
> (3) In the practice of a profession, trade, or commercial or employment activity;
>
> (4) In the performance of a craft or hobby;
>
> (5) In the course of such outdoor pursuits as hunting and fishing; and
>
> (6) In scouting activities.

As we stated in HQ H030606, dated August 12, 2008, with regard to the regulations implementing the Switchblade Knife Act:

> The relevant CBP regulations were implemented in 1971, following notice and comment, via Treasury Decision ("T.D.") 71–243, and the Final Rule was published in the Federal Register on September 13, 1971. See Final Rule, 36 FR 18859, Sept. 23, 1971. HQ H030606 at page 3.

The notice of proposed rulemaking, published in the Federal Register on October 24, 1970, set forth "[t]he proposed regulations . . . in tentative form as follows":

> (a) Definitions. As used in this section the term "switchblade knife" means any imported knife-
>
> (1) Having a blade which opens automatically by hand pressure applied to a button or device in the handle of the knife or by operation of inertia, gravity, or both; or
>
> (2) Having a handle over 3 inches in length with a stiletto or other blade style which is designed for purposes that include a primary use as a weapon, *as contrasted with blade styles designed for a primary utilitarian use*, when, by insignificant preliminary preparation a Customs officer can alter or convert such stiletto or other weapon to open automatically as described in subparagraph (1) of this paragraph, under the principle of the decision in the case of "Precise Imports Corporation and Others v. Joseph P. Kelly, Collector of Customs, and Others" (378 F. 2d

1014). *The term "utilitarian use" means use for any customary household purpose; use for any usual personal convenience; use in the practice of a profession, trade, or commercial or employment activity; use in the performance of a craft or hobby; use, in the course of such outdoor pursuits as hunting and fishing; use related to scouting activities; and use for grooming, as demonstrated by jack-knives and similar standard pocket knives, special purpose knives, scout knives, and other knives equipped with one or more blades of such single edge nonweapon styles as clip, skinner, pruner, sheep foot, spey, coping, razor, pen, and cuticle* [italicized emphasis added]. 35 FR 16594.

The introductory language to the Final Rule made the following prefatory declarations:

On October 24, 1970, notice was published in the Federal Register (35 FR 16594) of a proposal to prescribe regulations to govern the importation of articles subject to the so-called Switchblade Knife Act, sections 1 – 4, 72 Stat. 562 (15 U.S.C. 1241 – 1244).

Importers or other interested persons were given the opportunity to participate in the rule making through submission of relevant comments, suggestions or objections. No comments were received from importers or other persons. 36 FR 18859.

CBP announced its proposed intention to amend the regulations via Federal Register notice on August 18, 1989. See 54 FR 34186 of the same date. In the introductory "Background" in the proposed rule, CBP (then "Customs") emphasized the characteristics that would be considered in making determinations regarding the types of blades knives bore which would be proscribed by the Switchblade Knife Act and implementing regulations, stating that:

To implement the law, Customs adopted regulations which followed the legislative language extremely closely (19 CFR 12.95–12.103). Those regulations also specifically referred to the court decision of *Precise Imports Corp. and Others v. Joseph P. Kelly, Collector of Customs, and Others* (378 F. 2d 1014). *Because of this reference, the existing regulations appear to imply that one of the principal considerations in determining the legality of a knife is the type of blade style the weapon possesses. While style is relevant, it is not of overriding importance. Concealability, and the ease with which the knife can be transformed from a "safe" or "closed" condition to an "operational" or "open" state are much more important. The Customs position, which has been supported by court decisions, is that Congressional intent was to address the problem of the importation, subsequent sale, and use of a class of quick-opening, easily concealed knives most frequently used for criminal purposes.* The deletion of the reference to the *Precise Imports* case does not imply that customs does not consider the principles contained in that case important, or that they are in any way no longer relevant. Rather, the principles in the *Precise Imports* case could not be considered too limiting [italicized emphasis added]. 54 FR 34186

There is no reference in the statutory language of the Switchblade Knife Act to the term "utilitarian use"; the only references appear in the CBP regulations. Similarly, the term has received only passing reference judicially ("The government indicated that had the knives been "designed with a

Case 4:23-cv-00547-O Document 20-3 Filed 10/06/23 Page 175 of 462 PageID 848

single-edge blade and were primarily used for utilitarian purposes" rather than "double-edged stiletto-style blades" they would have been admitted." *Taylor v. United States*, 848 F.2d 715, 720 (6th Cir. Tenn. 1988)) and in the Federal Register notices cited above. Therefore, against the explanatory language from the Federal Register notices set forth above, we consider the ordinary meaning of the words employed:

> The term "utilitarian" is defined at *http://dictionary.reference.com/search?q=utilitarian* as:
>
> 1. ertaining to or consisting in utility.
>
> 2. having regard to utility or usefulness rather than beauty, ornamentation, etc.
>
> And at the same site:
>
> 1. having a useful function; "utilitarian steel tables".
>
> 2. having utility often to the exclusion of values; "plain utilitarian kitchenware".
>
> The term "utility" is defined at *http://www.merriam-webster.com/dictionary/utility* as:
>
> 1: fitness for some purpose or worth to some end.
>
> 2: something useful or designed for use.

From the exemplars set forth in 19 CFR 12.95(c), and definitions set forth above, we conclude that knives with a primary (constructively or practically vs. tactically, lethally or primarily as a weapon) utilitarian design and purpose that are not captured by the definition of switchblades are admissible pursuant to the Switchblade Knife Act. Thus, for example, pocketknives, tradesman's knives and other folding knives for a certain specific use remain generally admissible, with such determinations being made, by necessity, on a case-by-case basis. Further, the opening mechanisms of imported knives must be considered and those that open instantly subjected to strict scrutiny in order to determine admissibility. As we found in HQs W479898, dated June 29, 2007 and H017909 dated December 26, 2007, that "*all* knives can potentially be used as weapons"; likewise the blades of all knives have some utility. Therefore, consideration of the characteristics of the knives should be made, focused on those emphasized ("Concealability, and the ease with which the knife can be transformed from a "safe" or "closed" condition to an "operational" or "open" state . . .") in the Federal Register notice amending the regulations at issue. Thus, given the clear purpose enunciated during the notice and comment rulemaking process which amended the relevant regulation, we conclude that the type of opening mechanism is "much more important" than blade style in making admissibility determinations under the Switchblade Knife Act (see 54 FR 34186, *supra*).

We therefore find that knives with spring-assisted opening mechanisms that require minimal "human manipulation" in order to instantly spring the blades to the fully open and locked position cannot be considered to have a primary utilitarian purpose; such articles function as prohibited switchblade knives as defined by the relevant statute and regulations.

In reaching this conclusion, we reexamined the sample provided. We note that other than a bald assertion that the knives at issue are for a "primary

utilitarian purpose", no evidence substantiating that claim was presented. The knife at issue can be instantly opened into the fully locked and ready position with one hand, simply by pushing/applying thumb pressure on either of the thumb tabs. Although the knife is marketed as a "release assist" model, it nevertheless opens via human manipulation and inertia. See *Taylor, supra.* It is based upon this analysis and these factual observations that we conclude that the knife at issue is a switchblade prohibited from importation into the United States.

This decision is necessary to reconcile CBP's position regarding the admissibility of such knives and comports with the conclusions made in the following rulings:

In New York Ruling Letter ("NY") G83213, dated October 13, 2000, CBP determined that "a folding knife with a spring-loaded blade [which could] be easily opened by light pressure on a thumb knob located at the base of the blade, or by a flick of the wrist" was an "inertia-operated knife" that "is prohibited under the Switchblade Act and subject to seizure. See 19 C.F.R. §12.95 (a)(1)."

In NY H81084, dated May 23, 2001, CBP determined that 18 models of knives "may be opened with a simple flick of the wrist, and therefore are prohibited as inertial operated knives."

In HQ 115725, dated July 22, 2002, CBP determined that a "dual-blade folding knife" in which the "non-serrated blade is spring-assisted [and] is opened fully by the action of the spring after the user has pushed the thumb-knob protruding from the base of the blade near the handle to approximately 45 degrees from the handle" "is clearly a switchblade as defined in § 12.95(a)(4) (Knives with a detachable blade that is propelled by a spring-operated mechanism and components thereof.)"

In HQ 115713, dated July 29, 2002, CBP determined that four styles of knives, three of which could "be opened by the application of finger or thumb pressure against one of the aforementioned studs that protrudes from the side of the blade which activates a spring mechanism automatically propelling the blade into a fully open and locked position[,]" and the fourth which "opened by depressing a bar-like release on the handle which, when pushed, releases the blade which is then partially opened by a spring mechanism" were switchblades pursuant to the Switchblade Knife Act and pertinent regulations, prohibited from entry into the United States.

In H040319, dated November 26, 2008, we held that knives with spring-assisted opening mechanisms are "switchblades" within the meaning of 19 CFR Part 12.95(a)(1) and are therefore prohibited entry into the United States pursuant to the Switchblade Knife Act (15 U.S.C. §§ 1241–1245).

In turning to the knives at issue in HQ H016666, examination of and the description of the Tailwind assisted release mechanism and application of the regulatory criteria set forth above reveals that the subject knives are switchblades within the meaning of 19 CFR Part 12.95(a)(1) because they meet the criteria enumerated therein, *i.e.*, they open automatically by operation of inertia, gravity, or both.

HOLDING:

HQ H016666 is revoked.

The subject knives equipped with the Tailwind release assist mechanism are switchblade knives within the meaning of 15 U.S.C. § 1241(b)(2) and 19

CFR Part 12.95(a)(1). Therefore, pursuant to the Switchblade Knife Act, 15 U.S.C. §§ 1241–1245, the subject knives are prohibited from entry into the United States.

GEORGE FREDERICK MCCRAY,
Chief,
Intellectual Property Rights and,
Restricted Merchandise Branch.

[ATTACHMENT H]

DEPARTMENT OF HOMELAND SECURITY.
U.S. CUSTOMS AND BORDER PROTECTION,
HQ H043127
April 30, 2009
ENF–4–02–OT:RR:BSTC:IPR H043127 AML
CATEGORY: Restricted Merchandise

MR. MATTHEW K. NAKACHI
SANDLER, TRAVIS & ROSENBERG, P.A.
505 Sansome Street
Suite 1475
San Francisco, California 94111

RE: Revocation of HQ H032255; Admissibility of Knives; Switchblade Knife Act, 15 U.S.C. §§ 1241–1245; 19 CFR Parts 12.95–12.103

DEAR MR. NAKACHI:

This is in reference to Headquarters Ruling Letter ("HQ") H032255, dated August 12, 2008, which concerned the admissibility of the "VanHoy Assist", a "release-assisted" knife described below, pursuant to the Switchblade Knife Act, 15 U.S.C. § 1241, *et seq.* In the referenced ruling, U.S. Customs and Border Protection (hereinafter "CBP") determined that the knives at issue were admissible into the United States pursuant to the Switchblade Knife Act. We have reconsidered the rationale of, and the admissibility determination made in HQ H032255 and found both to be in error. For the reasons set forth below, we hereby revoke HQ H032255.

FACTS:

CBP paraphrased your description of the knives at issue in HQ H032255[11] as follows:

> [T]he knife at issue, tentatively planned by your client to be called the "VanHoy Assist," is a knife "of new design." The prototype is of standard knife construction with a single-edged, utilitarian blade. You state that "the unique nature of the knife is that the assisted-opening mechanism operates by thumb or hand pressure downward on the blade/ thumbscrew (rather than the traditional upward pressure)." You further

---

[11] In the ruling request, you indicated that the "VanHoy Assist" was similar to the knife at issue in New York Ruling Letter ("NY") I86378, dated October 1, 2002. Other than the similarity of the thumb stud on the base of the blade, there is no indication that the knife at issue in NY I86378 bore a spring-assisted opening mechanism.

indicate that "the downward pressure releases the locking mechanism and then a slight spring action assists the opening of the blade to the fully locked position." The knife has a 3 inch blade and measures approximately 4⅝ inches when closed. When extended, the overall length of the knife is approximately 7⅝ inches. The knife is refolded by depressing a manual release.

ISSUE:

Whether the subject knives are prohibited from entry into the United States pursuant to the Switchblade Knife Act, 15 U.S.C. §§ 1241–1245 and CBP Regulations promulgated pursuant thereto set forth in 19 CFR §§ 12.95–12.103.

LAW AND ANALYSIS:

Pursuant to the Act of August 12, 1958 (Pub. L. 85–623, codified at 15 U.S.C. §§ 1241–1245, otherwise known as the "Switchblade Knife Act"), whoever knowingly introduces, or manufactures for introduction, into interstate commerce, or transports or distributes in interstate commerce, any switchblade knife, shall be fined or imprisoned, or both.

The Switchblade Knife Act defines "interstate commerce" at 15 U.S.C. § 1241(a):

The term "interstate commerce" means commerce between any State, Territory, possession of the United States, or the District of Columbia, and any place outside thereof.

The Switchblade Knife Act defines "switchblade knife" at 15 U.S.C. § 1241(b):

The term "switchblade knife" means any knife having a blade which opens automatically—

(1) by hand pressure applied to a button or other device in the handle of the knife, or

(2) by operation of inertia, gravity, or both[.]

The CBP Regulations promulgated pursuant to the Switchblade Knife Act are set forth in 19 CFR §§ 12.95–12.103. We note the following definitions:

§ 12.95 Definitions.

Terms as used in §§ 12.96 through 12.103 of this part are defined as follows:

(a) Switchblade knife. "Switchblade knife" means any imported knife, or components thereof, or any class of imported knife, including "switchblade", "Balisong", "butterfly", "gravity" or "ballistic" knives, which has one or more of the following characteristics or identities:

(1) A blade which opens automatically by hand pressure applied to a button or device in the handle of the knife, or any knife with a blade which opens automatically by operation of inertia, gravity, or both;

(2) Knives which, by insignificant preliminary preparation, as described in paragraph (b) of this section, can be altered or converted so as to open automatically by hand pressure applied to a button or device in the handle of the knife or by operation of inertia, gravity, or both;

(3) Unassembled knife kits or knife handles without blades which, when fully assembled with added blades, springs, or other parts, are knives which open automatically by hand pressure applied to a button or device in the handle of the knife or by operation of inertia, gravity, or both; or

(4) Knives with a detachable blade that is propelled by a spring-operated mechanism, and components thereof[.]

(b) Insignificant preliminary preparation. "Insignificant preliminary preparation" means preparation with the use of ordinarily available tools, instruments, devices, and materials by one having no special manual training or skill for the purpose of modifying blade heels, relieving binding parts, altering spring restraints, or making similar minor alterations which can be accomplished in a relatively short period of time.

Other pertinent regulations are as follows:

§ 12.96 Imports unrestricted under the Act.

(a) Common and special purpose knives. Imported knives with a blade style designed for a primary utilitarian use, as defined in § 12.95(c), shall be admitted to unrestricted entry *provided that in condition as entered the imported knife is not a switchblade knife as defined in § 12.95(a)(1)* [italicized emphasis added] . . .

§ 12.97 Importations contrary to law.

Importations of switchblade knives, except as permitted by 15 U.S.C. § 1244, are importations contrary to law and are subject to forfeiture under 19 U.S.C. § 1595a(c).

The plain language of the Switchblade Knife Act and relevant CBP regulations prohibit, *inter alia*, the importation of knives which are for use as weapons while explicitly permitting the importation of "common and special purpose" knives (see 19 CFR 12.95(c) "Utilitarian Use" and 12.96(a) ("Unrestricted Imports")). Several courts have addressed the breadth of the prohibition set forth in the statute. See, *e.g.*, *Precise Imports Corp. v. Kelly*, 378 F.2d 1014, 1017 (2d Cir. 1967), *cert. denied*, 389 U.S. 973, 19 L. Ed. 2d 465, 88 S. Ct. 472 (1967), in which the Court of Appeals for the Second Circuit stated that:

> The report of the Senate Committee on Interstate and Foreign Commerce which recommended passage of the Switchblade Knife Act stated that the enforcement of state laws banning switchblade knives would be extremely difficult as long as such knives could be freely obtained in interstate commerce, and added:
>
> "In supporting enactment of this measure, however, your committee considers that the purpose to be achieved goes beyond merely aiding States in local law enforcement. The switchblade knife is, by design and use, almost exclusively the weapon of the thug and the delinquent. Such knives are not particularly adapted to the requirements of the hunter or fisherman, and sportsmen generally do not employ them. It was testified that, practically speaking, there is no legitimate use for the switchblade to which a conventional sheath or jackknife is not better

Case 4:23-cv-00547-O Document 20-3 Filed 10/06/23 Page 180 of 462 PageID 853

suited. This being the case, your committee believes that it is in the national interest that these articles be banned from interstate commerce." S.Rep. No. 1980, 85th Cong., 2d Sess., reprinted in 2 U.S. Code Cong. & Ad. News 1958, at 3435–37.

The congressional purpose of aiding the enforcement of state laws against switchblade knives and of barring them from interstate commerce could be easily frustrated if knives which can be quickly and easily made into switchblade knives, and one of whose primary uses is as weapons, could be freely shipped in interstate commerce and converted into switchblade knives upon arrival at the state of destination. We decline to construe the act as permitting such facile evasion.

. . . We hold, therefore, that a knife may be found to be a switchblade knife within the meaning of the Switchblade Knife Act if it is found that it can be made to open automatically by hand pressure, inertia, or gravity after insignificant alterations, and that one of its primary purposes is for use as a weapon.

In *Taylor v. United States*, 848 F.2d 715, 717 (6th Cir. 1988) the court, in describing a Balisong knife stated that:

[T]he district court described a Balisong knife as "basically a folding knife with a split handle." It went on to set out its prime use: while the exotic knife has some utilitarian use, it is most often associated with the martial arts and with combat . . . [and is] potentially dangerous, lethal. . . ." Citing another district court decision involving the same issue, *Precise Imports Corp. v. Kelly*, 378 F.2d 1014 (2d Cir.), *cert. denied*, 389 U.S. 973, 19 L. Ed. 2d 465, 88 S. Ct. 472 (1967) (upholding a seizure of certain knives with no legitimate purpose), the district court described it as of "minimal value" and distinguished another "seminal case interpreting the Act", *United States v. 1,044 Balisong Knives*, No. 70–110 (D. Ore. Sept. 28, 1970) (refusing to support seizure). The district court concluded that "congress intended to prohibit knives that opened automatically, ready for instant use . . . [and] was not concerned with whether the knife's blade would merely be exposed by gravity", . . . [it] intended 'open' to mean 'ready for use.' " *Taylor v. United States*, 848 F.2d 715, 717 (6th Cir. 1988).

See also *Taylor v. McManus*, 661 F. Supp. 11, 14–15 (E.D. Tenn. 1986), in which the Court of Appeals for the Eastern District of Tennessee observed:

In examining the congressional record, it seems obvious that congress intended to prohibit knives which opened automatically, ready for instant use. Rep. Kelly, for example, described the switchblade "as a weapon (which) springs out at the slightest touch and is ready for instant violence." *Switchblade Knives: Hearings Before a Subcommittee of the Committee on Interstate and Foreign Commerce*, House of Rep., 85th Cong., 2d Sess. 13, 29 (1958). She also noted that the prohibited gravity knife opens and "anchors in place automatically. Every bit as fast as the switchblade, it has proved to be as effective a killer." *Id.* at 29. Similarly, Rep. Delaney described the prohibited gravity knives as "knives (which) open and lock automatically at a quick flick of the wrist." 104 CONG. REC., 85th Cong., 2nd Sess. 12398 (June 26, 1958). (Emphasis supplied). Apparently, then, Congress was not concerned with whether the

> knife's blade would merely be exposed by gravity. Instead, they intended "open" to mean "ready for use", as exhibited in Rep. Kelley's testimony that the switchblade opened "ready for instant violence" and her and Rep. Delaney's comments that the gravity knife opened and locked automatically. While the Court does not intend to read into the Statute a requirement that the blades "lock" automatically, it does seem apparent that Congress intended "open" to mean "ready for use". Obviously a knife that has not locked into an open position is not ready for use. Since the Balisong knives cannot be used until the second handle is manually folded back and clasped, the Court finds that they do not open automatically by force of gravity or inertia.[12]

Based primarily on 15 U.S.C. § 1241(b)(1) (see also the first clause of 19 CFR Part 12.95(a)(1)) which defines a switchblade knife as being a knife having a blade which opens automatically by hand pressure applied to a button or device in the handle of the knife, as well as reliance upon the exception set forth at 19 CFR Part 12.95(c) regarding knives with a blade style designed for a primary utilitarian use, CBP decided in several rulings, including HQ H032255, that knives with spring- or release-assisted opening mechanisms are not switchblades as contemplated by the Switchblade Knife Act and implementing regulations.

Notwithstanding, because of the intrinsic health and public safety concerns underlying the statute and regulations, it is necessary to reassess our position regarding knives with spring-assisted opening mechanisms as 1) there are no judicial decisions interpreting, other than in the context of Balisong knives (discussed above), 15 U.S.C. § 1241(b)(2) and the second clause of 19 Part CFR 12.95(a) (discussed below) and 2) CBP has issued inconsistent rulings, of which HQ H032255 is one, regarding the issue of whether knives with spring-assisted opening mechanisms are admissible or prohibited from importation into the United States.

In *Alaska Trojan P'ship v. Gutierrez*, 425 F.3d 620, 628 (9th Cir. Alaska 2005), the Court of Appeals for the 9th Circuit stated, with regard to the interpretation of agency regulations that:

> "In ascertaining the plain meaning of [a] statute, the court must look to the particular statutory language at issue, as well as the language and design of the statute as a whole." *McCarthy v. Bronson*, 500 U.S. 136, 139, 114 L. Ed. 2d 194, 111 S. Ct. 1737 (1991) (quoting *K Mart Corp. v. Cartier, Inc.*, 486 U.S. 281, 291, 100 L. Ed. 2d 313, 108 S. Ct. 1811 (1988)) (alteration in original). When a statute or regulation defines a term, that definition controls, and the court need not look to the dictionary or common usage. *Compare F.D.I.C. v. Meyer*, 510 U.S. 471, 476, 127 L. Ed. 2d 308, 114 S. Ct. 996 (1994) ("In the absence of such a definition, we construe a statutory term in accordance with its ordinary

---

[12] The conclusion regarding Balisong knives was reversed by *Taylor v. United States*, 848 F.2d 715 (6th Cir. Tenn. 1988): "There is sufficient indication in the legislative history that the intent was to exclude these martial arts weapons, which even the district court admitted "can be opened very rapidly, perhaps in less than 5 seconds . . . [and] are potentially dangerous, lethal weapons." *Id.* at 720. Further, Balisongs were added to the list of prohibited knives when the regulations were amended in 1990. See the discussion of the regulatory amendments in HQ H030606, dated August 12, 2008, page 4.

or natural meaning."). An agency's interpretation of a regulation must "conform with the wording and purpose of the regulation." *Public Citizen Inc. v. Mineta*, 343 F.3d 1159, 1166 (9th Cir. 2003).

Because of the existence of conflicting rulings (*i.e.*, rulings which have determined that knives with spring-assisted opening mechanisms are switchblades as defined in the statute and others which have made the opposite conclusion), we have reexamined the definition of the word "switchblade knife" set forth at 15 U.S.C. § 1241(b) and 19 CFR Part 12.95(a)(1) and have determined that the definition captures and proscribes, in addition to "traditional" switchblades, the importation of knives with spring-assisted opening mechanisms, often equipped with thumb studs or protrusions affixed to the base of the blade (rather than in the handle of the knives as set forth in the first clause of 19 CFR Part 12.95(a)(1)). The relevant regulatory language identifies and defines "switchblade knives" by exemplars (" "switchblade", "Balisong", "butterfly", "gravity" or "ballistic" knives") and by definition ("or any class of imported knife . . . which has one or more of the following characteristics or identities: (1) A blade which opens automatically by hand pressure applied to a button or device in the handle of the knife, *or any knife with a blade which opens automatically by operation of inertia, gravity or both*[.]")

In reconsidering what types of knives are contemplated by the statute, we interpret the controlling terms according to their common meanings[13]. The term "automatically" is defined at *http://www.merriam-webster.com/dictionary/ automatically* as:

> 1 a: largely or wholly involuntary; especially: reflex 5 <automatic blinking of the eyelids> b: acting or done spontaneously or unconsciously c: done or produced as if by machine: mechanical <the answers were automatic> 2: having a self-acting or self-regulating mechanism <an automatic transmission> 3of a firearm: firing repeatedly until the trigger is released.
>
> The term "inertia" is defined at *http://www.merriam-webster.com/dictionary/inertia* as:
>
> 1 a: a property of matter by which it remains at rest or in uniform motion in the same straight line unless acted upon by some external force b: an analogous property of other physical quantities (as electricity).
>
> See also, *http://physics.about.com/od/glossary/g/inertia.htm:* Definition: Inertia is the name for the tendency of an object in motion to remain in motion, or an object at rest to remain at rest, unless acted upon by a force. This concept was quantified in Newton's First Law of Motion; and *http://dictionary.reference.com/browse/ inertia:* 2. Physics. a. the property of matter by which it retains its state of rest or its velocity

---

[13] A fundamental canon of statutory construction requires that "unless otherwise defined, words will be interpreted as taking their ordinary, contemporary, common meaning." *Perrin v. United States*, 444 U.S. 37, 42, 62 L. Ed. 2d 199, 100 S. Ct. 311 (1979); see also 2A Norman J. Singer, *Sutherland Statutory Construction* § 46:01 (6th ed. 2000). *United States v. Lehman*, 225 F.3d 426, 429 (4th Cir. S.C. 2000).

along a straight line so long as it is not acted upon by an external force.

In *Taylor v. United States*, 848 F.2d 715, 720 (6th Cir. Tenn. 1988), the United States Court of Appeals for the Sixth Circuit, in analyzing the terms of the statute and regulations at issue stated that:

> "Automatically" as used in the statute does not necessarily mean simply by operation of some inanimate connected force such as the spring in a literal switchblade. For example, the type of gravity or "flick" knife which is indisputably within the statute requires some human manipulation in order to create or unleash the force of "gravity" or "inertia" which makes the opening "automatic."

Knives equipped with spring- and release-assisted opening mechanisms are knives which "require[ ] some human manipulation in order to create or unleash the force of "gravity" or "inertia" which makes the opening "automatic." " See *Taylor, supra.* Despite the fact that they differ in design (most if not all are equipped with thumb studs affixed to the base of the blunt side of the blade; the VanHoy Assist a "button" on the blade) from a traditional switchblade (in which the button that activates the spring mechanism is located in the handle of the knife), the spring- and release-assisted mechanisms cause the knives to open fully for instant use, potentially as a weapon. Such knives are prohibited by the Switchblade Knife Act.

Our interpretation of 15 U.S.C. § 1241(b) and 19 CFR 12.95(a)(1) is supported by case law. In *Demko v. United States*, 44 Fed. Cl. 83, 88–89 (Fed. Cl. 1999), the Court of Federal Claims, in analyzing a regulation regarding the grandfathered sale of "street sweeper" shotguns, recited the following interpretations of the word "or" as used in statutes and regulations:

> "Generally the term 'or' functions grammatically as a coordinating conjunction and joins two separate parts of a sentence." *Ruben v. Secretary of DHHS*, 22 Cl. Ct. 264, 266 (1991) (noting that "or" is generally ascribed disjunctive intent unless contrary to legislative intent). As a disjunctive, the word "or" connects two parts of a sentence, "but disconnect[s] their meaning, the meaning in the second member excluding that in the first." *Id.* (quoting G. Curme, A Grammar of the English Language, Syntax 166 (1986)); see *Quindlen v. Prudential Ins. Co.*, 482 F.2d 876, 878 (5th Cir. 1973) (noting disjunctive results in alternatives, which must be treated separately). Nonetheless, courts have not adhered strictly to such rules of statutory construction. See *Ruben*, 22 Cl. Ct. at 266. For instance, "it is settled that 'or' may be read to mean 'and' when the context so indicates." *Willis v. United States*, 719 F.2d 608, 612 (2d Cir. 1983); see *Ruben*, 22 Cl. Ct. at 266 (quoting same); see also *DeSylva v. Ballentine*, 351 U.S. 570, 573, 100 L. Ed. 1415, 76 S. Ct. 974 (1956) ("We start with the proposition that the word 'or' is often used as a careless substitute for the word 'and'; that is, it is often used in phrases where 'and' would express the thought with greater clarity."); *Union Ins. Co. v. United States*, 73 U.S. 759, 764, 18 L. Ed. 879 (1867) ("But when we look beyond the mere words to the obvious intent we cannot help seeing the word 'or' must be taken conjunctively. . . . This construction impairs no rights of the parties . . . and carries into effect the true intention of Congress. . . .").

In analyzing the language of 15 U.S.C. § 1241(b) and 19 CFR Part 12.95(a)(1), we conclude that the word "or" is used conjunctively yet distinguishes the paradigm switchblade knife (paraphrased: spring action blade with a button in the handle) from other knives which function similarly to the paradigm switchblade but do not have the "traditional" configuration or function. Given its legislative and judicial history, the Switchblade Knife Act is intended to proscribe the importation of any knife that opens automatically by hand pressure applied to a button or device in the handle of the knife *and* any knife with a blade which opens automatically by operation of inertia, gravity or both.

The knives at issue open via inertia – once pressure is applied to the thumb stud (or button on the base of the blade), the blade continues in inertial motion (caused by the combined effect of manual and spring-assisted pressure) until it is stopped by the locking mechanism of the knife. Such knives open instantly for potential use as a weapon. We therefore conclude, in consideration of the authorities and sources Switchblade Knife Act and implementing regulations, that the knives with spring-and release- assisted opening mechanisms, that such knives are described and prohibited by 15 U.S.C. § 1241(b)(2) and 19 CFR Part 12.95(a)(1).

We also have reconsidered our interpretation of the terms "utilitarian use", as we have in several rulings found knives with spring-assisted opening mechanisms to be admissible because they were equipped with blades for utilitarian use. The regulation defines, albeit by exemplar, the types of knife (subject to the condition precedent set forth in 19 CFR 12.96: Imported knives with a blade style designed for a primary utilitarian use, as defined in § 12.95(c), shall be admitted to unrestricted entry *provided that in condition as entered the imported knife is not a switchblade knife as defined in § 12.95(a)(1)* [italicized emphasis added] . . .) that are considered to be "utilitarian" for purposes of the statute. See 19 CFR 12.95(c):

> (c) Utilitarian use. "Utilitarian use" includes but is not necessarily limited to use:
>
> (1) For a customary household purpose;
>
> (2) For usual personal convenience, including grooming;
>
> (3) In the practice of a profession, trade, or commercial or employment activity;
>
> (4) In the performance of a craft or hobby;
>
> (5) In the course of such outdoor pursuits as hunting and fishing; and
>
> (6) In scouting activities.

As we stated in HQ H030606, dated August 12, 2008, with regard to the regulations implementing the Switchblade Knife Act:

> The relevant CBP regulations were implemented in 1971, following notice and comment, via Treasury Decision ("T.D.") 71–243, and the Final Rule was published in the Federal Register on September 13, 1971. See Final Rule, 36 FR 18859, Sept. 23, 1971. HQ H030606 at page 3.

The notice of proposed rulemaking, published in the Federal Register on October 24, 1970, set forth "[t]he proposed regulations . . . in tentative form as follows":

(a) Definitions. As used in this section the term "switchblade knife" means any imported knife-

(1) Having a blade which opens automatically by hand pressure applied to a button or device in the handle of the knife or by operation of inertia, gravity, or both; or

(2) Having a handle over 3 inches in length with a stiletto or other blade style which is designed for purposes that include a primary use as a weapon, *as contrasted with blade styles designed for a primary utilitarian use*, when, by insignificant preliminary preparation a Customs officer can alter or convert such stiletto or other weapon to open automatically as described in subparagraph (1) of this paragraph, under the principle of the decision in the case of "Precise Imports Corporation and Others v. Joseph P. Kelly, Collector of Customs, and Others" (378 F. 2d 1014). *The term "utilitarian use" means use for any customary household purpose; use for any usual personal convenience; use in the practice of a profession, trade, or commercial or employment activity; use in the performance of a craft or hobby; use, in the course of such outdoor pursuits as hunting and fishing; use related to scouting activities; and use for grooming, as demonstrated by jack-knives and similar standard pocket knives, special purpose knives, scout knives, and other knives equipped with one or more blades of such single edge nonweapon styles as clip, skinner, pruner, sheep foot, spey, coping, razor, pen, and cuticle* [italicized emphasis added]. 35 FR 16594.

The introductory language to the Final Rule made the following prefatory declarations:

On October 24, 1970, notice was published in the Federal Register (35 FR 16594) of a proposal to prescribe regulations to govern the importation of articles subject to the so-called Switchblade Knife Act, sections 1 – 4, 72 Stat. 562 (15 U.S.C. 1241 – 1244).

Importers or other interested persons were given the opportunity to participate in the rule making through submission of relevant comments, suggestions or objections. No comments were received from importers or other persons. 36 FR 18859.

CBP announced its proposed intention to amend the regulations via Federal Register notice on August 18, 1989. See 54 FR 34186 of the same date. In the introductory "Background" in the proposed rule, CBP (then "Customs") emphasized the characteristics that would be considered in making determinations regarding the types of blades knives bore which would be proscribed by the Switchblade Knife Act and implementing regulations, stating that:

To implement the law, Customs adopted regulations which followed the legislative language extremely closely (19 CFR 12.95–12.103). Those regulations also specifically referred to the court decision of *Precise Imports Corp. and Others v. Joseph P. Kelly, Collector of Customs, and Others* (378 F. 2d 1014). *Because of this reference, the existing regulations appear to imply that one of the principal considerations in determining the legality of a knife is the type of blade style the weapon possesses. While style is relevant, it is not of overriding importance. Concealability, and the ease with which the knife can be transformed from a "safe" or*

> *"closed" condition to an "operational" or "open" state are much more important. The Customs position, which has been supported by court decisions, is that Congressional intent was to address the problem of the importation, subsequent sale, and use of a class of quick-opening, easily concealed knives most frequently used for criminal purposes.* The deletion of the reference to the *Precise Imports* case does not imply that customs does not consider the principles contained in that case important, or that they are in any way no longer relevant. Rather, the principles in the *Precise Imports* case could not be considered too limiting [italicized emphasis added]. 54 FR 34186

There is no reference in the statutory language of the Switchblade Knife Act to the term "utilitarian use"; the only references appear in the CBP regulations. Similarly, the term has received only passing reference judicially ("The government indicated that had the knives been "designed with a single-edge blade and were primarily used for utilitarian purposes" rather than "double-edged stiletto-style blades" they would have been admitted." *Taylor v. United States*, 848 F.2d 715, 720 (6th Cir. Tenn. 1988)) and in the Federal Register notices cited above. Therefore, against the explanatory language from the Federal Register notices set forth above, we consider the ordinary meaning of the words employed:

> The term "utilitarian" is defined at *http://dictionary.reference.com/search?q =utilitarian* as:
>
> 1. pertaining to or consisting in utility.
>
> 2. having regard to utility or usefulness rather than beauty, ornamentation, etc.
>
> And at the same site:
>
> 1. having a useful function; "utilitarian steel tables".
>
> 2. having utility often to the exclusion of values; "plain utilitarian kitchenware".
>
> The term "utility" is defined at *http://www.merriam-webster.com/dictionary/utility* as:
>
> 1: fitness for some purpose or worth to some end.
>
> 2: something useful or designed for use.

From the exemplars set forth in 19 CFR 12.95(c), and definitions set forth above, we conclude that knives with a primary (constructively or practically vs. tactically, lethally or primarily as a weapon) utilitarian design and purpose that are not captured by the definition of switchblades are admissible pursuant to the Switchblade Knife Act. Thus, for example, pocketknives, tradesman's knives and other folding knives for a certain specific use remain generally admissible, with such determinations being made, by necessity, on a case-by-case basis. Further, the opening mechanisms of imported knives must be considered and those that open instantly subjected to strict scrutiny in order to determine admissibility. As we found in HQs W479898, dated June 29, 2007 and H017909 dated December 26, 2007, that "*all* knives can potentially be used as weapons"; likewise the blades of all knives have some utility. Therefore, consideration of the characteristics of the knives should be made, focused on those emphasized ("Concealability, and the ease with which the knife can be transformed from a "safe" or "closed" condition

Case 4:23-cv-00547-O Document 20-3 Filed 10/06/23 Page 187 of 462 PageID 860

to an "operational" or "open" state . . .") in the Federal Register notice amending the regulations at issue. Thus, given the clear purpose enunciated during the notice and comment rulemaking process which amended the relevant regulation, we conclude that the type of opening mechanism is "much more important" than blade style in making admissibility determinations under the Switchblade Knife Act (see 54 FR 34186, *supra*).

We therefore find that knives with spring-assisted opening mechanisms that require minimal "human manipulation" in order to instantly spring the blades to the fully open and locked position cannot be considered to have a primary utilitarian purpose; such articles function as prohibited switchblade knives as defined by the relevant statute and regulations.

We note that other than a bald assertion that the knives at issue are for a primary utilitarian purpose (you stated that the knife is of standard construction and has a single-edged, utilitarian blade"), no evidence substantiating that claim was presented. The knife at issue can be instantly opened into the fully locked and ready position with one hand, simply by pushing on the thumb tab on the blade. Although the knife is marketed as a "release assist" model, it nevertheless opens via human manipulation and inertia. See *Taylor, supra.* It is based upon this analysis and these factual observations that we conclude that the knife at issue is a switchblade prohibited from importation into the United States.

This decision is necessary to reconcile CBP's position regarding the admissibility of such knives and comports with the conclusions made in the following rulings:

In New York Ruling Letter ("NY") G83213, dated October 13, 2000, CBP determined that "a folding knife with a spring-loaded blade [which could] be easily opened by light pressure on a thumb knob located at the base of the blade, or by a flick of the wrist" was an "inertia-operated knife" that "is prohibited under the Switchblade Act and subject to seizure. See 19 C.F.R. §12.95 (a)(1)."

In NY H81084, dated May 23, 2001, CBP determined that 18 models of knives "may be opened with a simple flick of the wrist, and therefore are prohibited as inertial operated knives."

In HQ 115725, dated July 22, 2002, CBP determined that a "dual-blade folding knife" in which the "non-serrated blade is spring-assisted [and] is opened fully by the action of the spring after the user has pushed the thumb-knob protruding from the base of the blade near the handle to approximately 45 degrees from the handle" "is clearly a switchblade as defined in § 12.95(a)(4) (Knives with a detachable blade that is propelled by a spring-operated mechanism and components thereof.)"

In HQ 115713, dated July 29, 2002, CBP determined that four styles of knives, three of which could "be opened by the application of finger or thumb pressure against one of the aforementioned studs that protrudes from the side of the blade which activates a spring mechanism automatically propelling the blade into a fully open and locked position[,]" and the fourth which "opened by depressing a bar-like release on the handle which, when pushed, releases the blade which is then partially opened by a spring mechanism" were switchblades pursuant to the Switchblade Knife Act and pertinent regulations, prohibited from entry into the United States.

In H040319, dated November 26, 1008, we held that knives with spring-assisted opening mechanisms are "switchblades" within the meaning of 19

CFR Part 12.95(a)(1) and are therefore prohibited entry into the United States pursuant to the Switchblade Knife Act (15 U.S.C. §§ 1241–1245).

In turning to the knives in HQ H032255, reconsideration of the "VanHoy Assist" and its assisted-release mechanism and application of the regulatory criteria set forth above reveals that the subject knives are switchblades within the meaning of 19 CFR Part 12.95(a)(1) because they meet the criteria enumerated therein, *i.e.*, they open automatically by operation of inertia, gravity, or both.

HOLDING:

HQ H032255 is hereby revoked.

The subject knives equipped with the Tailwind release assist mechanism are switchblade knives within the meaning of 15 U.S.C. § 1241(b)(2) and 19 CFR Part 12.95(a)(1). Therefore, pursuant to the Switchblade Knife Act, 15 U.S.C. §§ 1241–1245, the subject knives are prohibited from entry into the United States.

GEORGE FREDERICK MCCRAY,
Chief,
Intellectual Property Rights and,
Restricted Merchandise Branch.

REVOCATION OF A RULING LETTER AND REVOCATION OF TREATMENT RELATING TO THE TARIFF CLASSIFICATION OF WALL BANNERS AND PENNANTS

AGENCY: Bureau of Customs and Border Protection; Department of Homeland Security.

ACTION: Notice of revocation of a tariff classification ruling letter and revocation of treatment relating to the classification of wall banners and pennants

SUMMARY: Pursuant to section 625(c), Tariff Act of 1930, as by section 623 of Title VI (Customs Modernization) of the North American Free Trade Agreement Implementation Act (Pub. L. 103–182, 107 Stat. 2057), this notice advises interested parties that Customs and Border Protection (CBP) is revoking a ruling letter relating to the tariff classification of certain wall banners and pennants, under the Harmonized Tariff Schedule of the United States Annotated (HTSUSA). CBP is also revoking any treatment previously accorded by it to substantially identical transactions. Notice of the proposed revocation was published on March 19, 2009, in the Customs Bulletin, Volume 43, Number 12. No comments were received in response to the proposed revocation.

EFFECTIVE DATE: This action is effective for merchandise entered or withdrawn from warehouse for consumption on or after July 21, 2009.

KEN ONION EXHIBIT D

Sporting Knives and Tools in America:
Essential to Daily Life

Sporting Knives and Tools

Throughout the U.S. people use knives and edged tools daily:

- At work, from construction worker to florist
- During normal activities, from opening packages to cutting apples
- In recreational activities, from camping to fishing and hunting.
- In life-saving situations by EMTs, firefighters, law enforcement and the military.

They are an essential, fundamental tool for work and play in American lives.[1]

U.S. Sporting Knife & Tool Industry - $5.722 Billion Economic Impact[2]

- 4,704 direct U.S. Employees at 81 Companies
- 23,520 Ancillary Support Jobs in Other Industries and Services
- $953.7 Million Gross Revenues at Manufacturer/Importer Level
- $5.722 Billion Total Economic Impact on U.S. Economy

Millions of Americans Use Knives Daily

- 34 Million hunters and anglers carry knives[3]
- 3.2 Million law enforcement officers, EMT's, firefighters, security guards carry valuable tools every hour of the day[4]
- 2.2 Million active and reserve military forces carry knives[5]
- 5.2 Million construction workers rely on knives and multi-tools[4]
- Nearly 1 Million adult volunteers in local councils throughout the U.S. and its territories help Boy Scouts of America with 2.4 Million youth members to Be Prepared[6]
- Nearly half of all Americans - 48.4% - participated in at least one outdoor activity in 2014. This equates to 141.4 Million people involved in activities where knives are often carried and used.[7]

Majority of Knives Designed to Open Easily with One Hand[8]

- Knife users prefer easy to open, folding knives called pocket knives, one-hand opening or assisted opening and automatics, and multi-tools with one or more knife blades.
- The majority of activities using a knife require one hand free for holding something.
- Automatic knives currently are legal in approximately 34 states.
- Courts in California, llinois and Michigan have expressly ruled that assisted-openers are not illegal switchblades.
- The Federal Switchblade Act (1958) was amended in 2009 to clarify that these knives which have a bias toward closure are not illegal switchblades in interstate commerce.

Billions of Dollars Benefit the U.S. Economy

- Hunters and anglers are a $76 Billion economic force annually.[3]
- Outdoor recreation including camping, backpacking, kayaking, climbing, etc. generates $646 billion in consumer spending.[9]

[1]See http://www.akti.org/resources/people-use-knives for a partial list of knife users
[2]State of the Sporting Knife & Tool Industry, American Knife & Tool Institute (published 2015; data 2014)
[3]Hunting and Fishing: Bright Stars of the American Economy, Congressional Sportsmen's Foundation, 2013
[4]U.S. Department of Labor, Occupational Employment Statistics, May 2015
[5]Wikipedia.org
[6]2014 BSA Report to the Nation
[7]Outdoor Recreation Participation Topline Report 2015, Outdoor Foundation
[8]State of the Sporting Knife & Tool Industry Survey, American Knife & Tool Institute, 2015
[9]Outdoor Industry Association.org/research

12/2015

www.AKTI.org

KEN ONION EXHIBIT E

Terrain 365 P38-AT Manual

Terrain 365 P38-DA Dual-Action Auto

KEN ONION EXHBIT F

Benchmade Adamas AXIS Manual

Benchmade Adamas AXIS Auto

Buck 110 Manual (Original 2-Hand Opener)

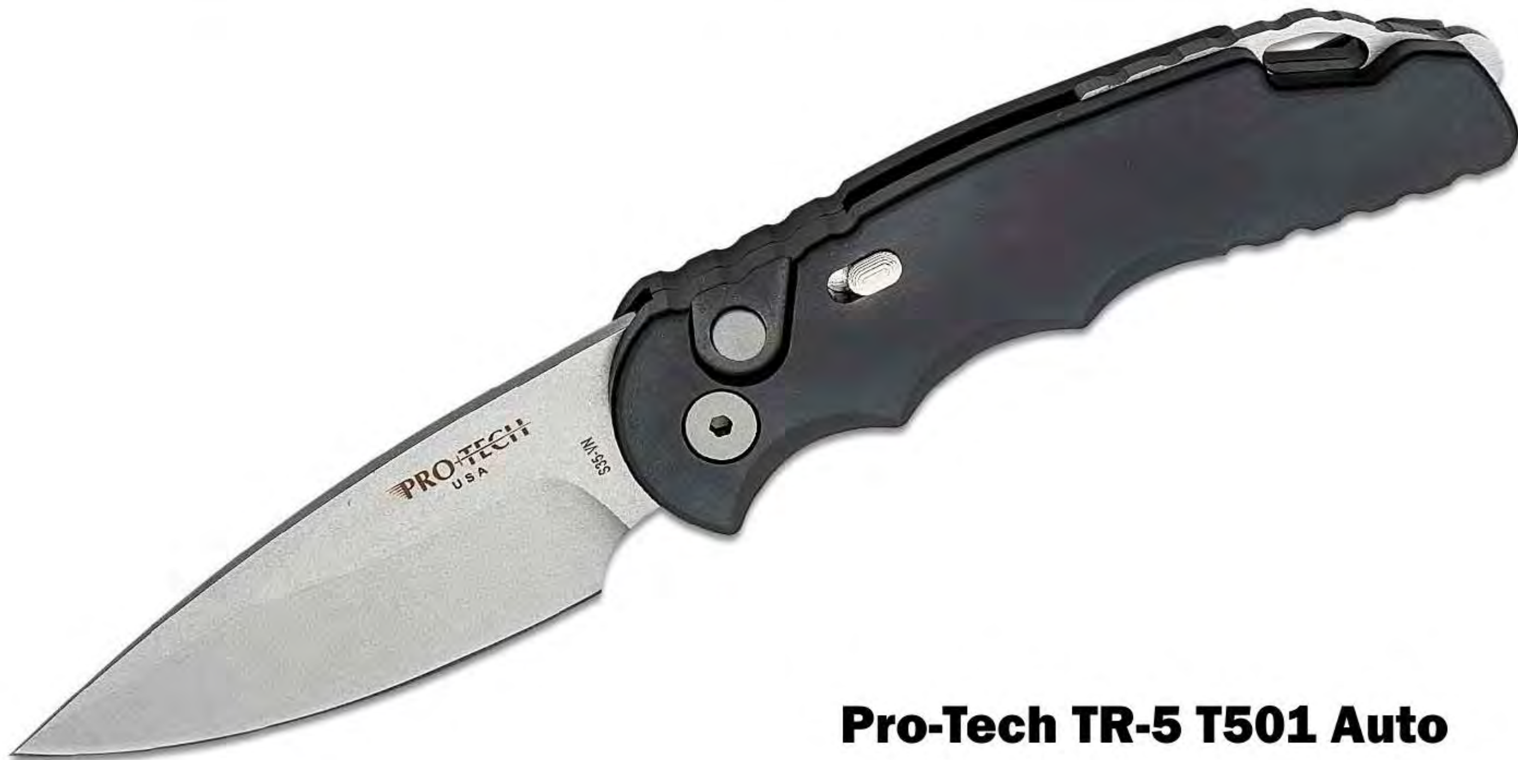
Buck 110 Manual (1-Hand Opener)

Buck 110 Auto

Hogue EX-01 Manual

Hogue EX-A01 Auto

Pro-Tech TR-5 SA.1 Spring Assisted



Pro-Tech TR-5 T501 Auto

EXHIBIT W

1
2
3
4
5
6
7
8
9
10
11
12
13
14
15
16
17
18
19
20
21
22
23
24
25
26
27
28

UNITED STATES DISTRICT COURT

FOR THE NORTHERN DISTRICT OF TEXAS, FORT WORTH DIVISION

KNIFE RIGHTS, INC.; RUSSELL ARNOLD; JEFFREY FOLLODER; RGA AUCTION SOLUTION d.b.a. FIREARM SOLUTIONS; AND MOD SPECIALTIES,

Plaintiffs,

v.

MERRICK B. GARLAND, Attorney General of the United States; UNITED STATES DEPARTMENT OF JUSTICE,

Defendants.

Case No. 4:23-cv-00547-O

Hon. Judge Reed O'Connor

DECLARATION OF J. BRUCE VOYLES IN SUPPORT OF PLAINTIFFS' MOTION FOR SUMMARY JUDGMENT

DECLARATION OF J. BRUCE VOYLES

I, J. Bruce Voyles, declare as follows:

1. I am not a party in the above-titled action, am over the age of 18, have personal knowledge of the facts in this declaration, and am competent to testify to the matters stated below. My declaration is executed in support of Plaintiffs' motion for summary judgment.

BACKGROUND AND QUALIFICATIONS

2. I live in Murphy, North Carolina, and have been involved in the knife industry as a journalist, editor, author, knife show owner, and buyer and seller of knives for more than 47 years.

3. I am the owner of J. Bruce Voyles, Auctioneers (specializing in knives) and have been operating the business from 1996 to the present.

4. I am also the owner of Voyles Cutlery and Heritage Antique Knives covering vintage and collectible knives and Bowie knives and have operated the business from 1973 to the present.

5. Further, I am the founder/owner of the Spirit of Steel Knife Show/Knife Roadshow from 2001 to the present.

6. I am an Editor-at-Large for Knife Magazine from 2015 to the present.

7. I was elected to the Blade Magazine Cutlery Hall of Fame in 1983, the first-ever member inducted by unanimous acclimation of the membership. This is the highest distinction one can receive in the knife industry.

8. I founded the internationally acclaimed Blade Show and International Cutlery Fair in 1982 and ran the show until 1994.

9. I have owned, published, edited, or written for 10 knife-related publications since 1976. I am the author or co-author of nine knife-related books.

10. I have assembled one of the most extensive cutlery reference libraries in the world.

11. Attached hereto as **Exhibit A** and incorporated by reference is a true and correct copy of my full Curricula Vitae setting forth my qualifications.

12. I have been retained as an expert witness by Plaintiffs in this case to render my professional expert opinion on the categorization and commonality of folding pocket knives and automatic knives, also known as switchblades, in the United States. I am not charging for my services in this case.

OPINIONS

13. Based on my over 47 years of experience in the knife industry, it is my professional opinion that automatic knives ("switchblades") are simply a variation of common folding pocket knives.

14. Based on my over 47 years of experience in the knife industry, excluding kitchen knives, common folding pocket knives are the most common knives manufactured and sold in the U.S. market and have been for over 100 years.

15. Additionally, based on my over 47 years of experience in the knife industry, automatic knives, or "switchblades," — being a variation of folding pocket knife — are also in common use within the United States.

I declare under penalty of perjury under the laws of the United States that the foregoing is true and correct, and that my declaration was executed on September 19, 2023 in Murphy, North Carolina.

J. Bruce Voyles

1
2
3
4
5
6
7
8
9
10
11
12
13
14
15
16
17
18
19
20
21
22
23
24
25
26
27
28

EXHIBIT A

J. Bruce Voyles Exhibit A

1
2
3
4
5
6
7
8
9
10
11
12
13
14
15
16
17
18
19
20
21
22
23
24
25
26
27
28

J. BRUCE VOYLES

P. O. Box 22007	48 Sycamore St.
Chattanooga, TN 37422	Murphy, NC 28906
423-667-3582	bruce@jbrucevoyles.com

Current Employment:

Owner	J. Bruce Voyles, Auctioneers (knife auctioneers) 1996-present
Editor-at-Large	Knife Magazine 2015-present

Knife-Related Positions Held:

Executive Director	National Knife Museum (2013-2014)
Editor	Knives Illustrated Magazine (Becket Media) 2000-2013
Editor	National Knife Collectors Association Newsletter 1976-77
Founding Editor	National Knife Collector Magazine 1977-1981
Editor/Publisher	Blade Magazine 1981-1994
Founding Ed/Pub	Edges 1981-1994
Founding Ed/Pub	Blade Trade 1984-1994
Publisher	"Combat Knives" and "Bowies" (Special newsstand issues)
Author	"Knife" section of the World Book Encyclopedia
Editor/Publisher	Knives Digest I (1999)

Knife Books:

Co-Author	The Official Price Guide to Knives, Collectible Knives, etc. Volume 1-8 (1976-84)
Co-Author	The Official Price Guide to Knives Pocket Guide (Vols. 1-3)
Author	The ABCA Price Guide to Antique Knives (1990)
Author	The IBCA Price Guide to Antique Knives (1995)

1
2
3
4
5
6
7
8
9
10
11
12
13
14
15
16
17
18
19
20
21
22
23
24
25
26
27
28

Author	The IBCA Price Guide to Commemorative Knives (1996)
Author/Photographer	The Antique Bowie Knife Book (1992)
Editor	Today's Knifemakers
Editor	The Knifemakers Guild Directory Third Edition
Author/Photographer	The Joseph Rodgers Exhibition Knives

Other:

Founded and developed the Blade Show and International Cutlery Fair (1982-1994)

Manager of the Knifemakers' Guild Show three years in the 2000's.

Founded knife sales show on shopping networks on Shop-At-Home Television Network, Knoxville, TN (1990-1993), America's Collectibles Network (1993-1994) Greenville, TN, Panda Television (1995) Los Angeles, CA, and Gem Shopping Channel (1995) Atlanta, GA.

Recognized as expert witness on knives in U. S. District Court, Greenville, TN., and in New York County (Manhattan), New York.

Knife appraisals for items donated to the Smithsonian Institution, and for the National Firearms Museum (NRA).

Owner of Voyles Cutlery and Heritage Antique Knives (1973-present) dealing in vintage and collectible knives and Bowies.

Retail knife shop owner (1975-1977)

Editor of the Case Knife Collectors Club Newsletter (1990-91)

Founder/Owner Spirit of Steel Knife Show/Knife Roadshow-2001-present.

Knifemaking and Forging Class completed at the American Bladesmith School (1993)

Speaker at Alabama Forge Council Knifemaking Seminar, Bowie Knife Symposiums in Winston-Salem, N. C. and Atlanta. Guadalupe Hammer-In and the Georgia Knifemakers Association Annual Meeting. and have spoken on knives at knife clubs in Oregon, Indiana, Georgia, Alabama, Tennessee and at various local civic groups.

Introductions written for Jim Weyer's Knives: Points of Interest (2 editions), Joseph Rodgers and Sons Knives by Samuel Setain, Sheffield Exhibition Knives by Bill Claussen et.al.

1 Cutlery/Advertising/Direct Mail consultants to: Parker Cutlery, W. R. Case & Sons Cutlery
2 Co., American Blade Cutlery Co.
3 Interviewed and quoted on knives in USA Today.
4
5 **Cutlery Centers and Factories Visited**
6 Sheffield, England: Kellam Island, Weston Park Museum, Several historical factory locations
7 in the area.
8 Solingen, Germany: Boker, Klingen Museum, Various historical sites
9 Seki City, Japan: Factories: Mitsuboshi, Kenward, Gerber/Sakai, Parker/Imai, Noda, and Seki
10 City Cutlery Fair, Nagoya Castle Museum.
11 London, England: Wallace Collection, Portobello Road Antique Market
12 Walden, NY Area: Orange County Museum, Schrade Cutlery, Ulster Cutlery.
13 Bradford, PA Area: W. R. Case Cutlery, Kabar, Cattaraugus site
14 Jacksonville, AL: Parker-Edwards Cutlery, Edwards Iron Works, Alabama Damascus
15 Portland, OR: Al Mar, Gerber, Kershaw, Benchmade
16 San Diego, CA: Buck Knives
17 San Antonio, TX, The Alamo
18 Jackson, Miss., Mississippi State Museum
19
20 **Knife Related Honors and Positions**
21 Cutlery Hall of Fame Member (first person picked by unanimous declaration of the 20+
22 existing members of the Hall of Fame).
23 Nate Posner Award from the Knifemakers Guild
24 Don Hastings Award from the American Bladesmith Society
25 Honorary Life Member Texas Knife Collectors Association
26 Publishers Award from Blade Magazine 1995 and 2020.
27 Secretary of the Cutlery Collectors Legislative Committee (1983-1996)
28 Former Board of Director Member of the Antique Bowie Knife Collectors Assoc.

Personal:

BA in Journalism: Georgia State University-1975

Stanford Publishing Course, Stanford University 1981

Stanford Refresher Course, Stanford University 1983

EXHIBIT X

1
2
3
4
5
6
7
8
9
10
11
12
13
14
15
16
17
18
19
20
21
22
23
24
25
26
27
28

UNITED STATES DISTRICT COURT

FOR THE NORTHERN DISTRICT OF TEXAS, FORT WORTH DIVISION

KNIFE RIGHTS, INC.; RUSSELL ARNOLD; JEFFREY FOLLODER; RGA AUCTION SOLUTION d.b.a. FIREARM SOLUTIONS; AND MOD SPECIALTIES, Plaintiffs, v. MERRICK B. GARLAND, Attorney General of the United States; UNITED STATES DEPARTMENT OF JUSTICE, Defendants.	Case No. 4:23-cv-00547-O Hon. Judge Reed O'Connor

DECLARATION OF LEROI PRICE IN SUPPORT OF PLAINTIFFS' MOTION FOR SUMMARY JUDGMENT

1
2
3
4
5
6
7
8
9
10
11
12
13
14
15
16
17
18
19
20
21
22
23
24
25
26
27
28

DECLARATION OF LEROI PRICE

I, LeRoi Price, declare as follows:

1. I am not a party in the above-titled action. I am over the age of 18, have personal knowledge of the facts referred to in this declaration, and am competent to testify to the matters stated below. This declaration is executed in support of Plaintiffs' motion for summary judgment.

BACKGROUND AND QUALIFICATIONS

2. I live in Saint Cloud, Florida, and have been an internal medicine doctor and cardiologist for 33 years.

3. I am also a knife designer, knife maker, and author of two books on knife mechanisms.

4. In 1966, I completed a one-year basic electronics fundamentals and advanced RADAR repair, at Keesler Air Force Base, Biloxi MS.

5. I obtained a four-year degree BA Biology in 1974 from Rutgers University Camden, NJ. I obtained my Doctor of Medicine degree in 1980 from the University of Medicine of New Jersey, Newark, NJ. I conducted my Internal Medicine residency at Long Branch Hospital, NJ from 1980-1983. My Cardiology Fellowship was at the the University of Kansas, Kansas City, KS.

6. I have taken many courses regarding knife design and knife making including (i) Texarcana College, Slip Joint folders, by Jerry Fisk, in 1995; (ii) Texarcana College, Liner Lock and push button switchblades, by Mel Pardue, in 1997; (iii) Montgomery Community College, Assisted Opening knives, by Ed Van Hoy, in 1999; (iv) New England School of Metalwork, Folding Knives, by Dellana Warren, in 2017.

7. I have been an attendee of the Florida Artists Blacksmith Association yearly conference since 1993. This is a 3-day conference of demonstrations on

KnifeRights MSJ App.000758

blacksmithing and knifemaking with some hands-on classes.

8. I have been an attendee of the Tannehill Knifemaking symposium hosted by Jim Batson since 1966. This is a 3-day conference of demonstrations on knifemaking with some hands-on classes.

9. I have two book publications regarding knife mechanisms.

- Knife Mechanisms just for the fun of it 2014, 272 pages
- Knife Mechanisms Book Two 2018, 394 pages

10. In conducting research for my books, I have conducted extensive information gathering, photography, video, networking, hands-on observation of knife designs, and conducted many personal interviews with knife designer and knife maker experts in the field of modern and antique knives.

11. I have authored several articles in Blade Magazine and Knives Illustrated Magazine which are the foremost knife magazines.

12. I was the editor of the Florida Artists Blacksmith Association monthly newsletter for two years.

13. I have 320 knife related videos on YouTube dating from 2014 to the present.

14. I have two knife patents: (i) 11766790 Pivoting lockbar in a folding knife mechanism; (ii) 10603781 Segmented Ergonomic Implement handle System.

15. At Blade Show 2023, I was chosen to be an expert judge for nomination of "The best factory produced folding knife of the year award." This category includes "switchblade", automatic knives.

16. I have been retained as an expert witness by Plaintiffs in this case to render my professional expert opinion on knife mechanisms, and the categorization and commonality of folding pocket knives and automatic knives, also known as

KnifeRights MSJ App.000759

1
2
3
4
5
6
7
8
9
10
11
12
13
14
15
16
17
18
19
20
21
22
23
24
25
26
27
28

switchblades, in the United States. I am charging $100.00 per hour for my services.

OPINIONS

17. I am the author of Knife Mechanisms: Just for the Fun of It Volume One and Knife Mechanisms: Volume Two.

18. In each book, I discuss in detail hundreds of different knife mechanisms and their function. This includes but is not limited to 1,200 knife design illustrations, 133 knife patents in volume one alone. Many of the knife designs that I cover in my books fall under the definition of an automatically opening knife or "switchblade." As such, I am intimately familiar with the designs and function of automatically opening knives.

19. Based on my research and experience in knife designs and knife mechanisms, automatically opening folding knives have been widely distributed throughout the United States since the mid-to-late 1800s and early 1900s.

20. I would estimate that the number of automatically opening knives owned and used in the United States is in the millions based on the mass production of these knives in the early 1900s and present-day production methods.

21. Since the 1900s, automatically opening folding knives have had many uses as a general utility knife. In fact, many of the early automatically opening knives in the early 1900s were smaller pocket knives explicitly designed and advertised as knives that allowed for easy opening so the user did not break or damage their nails. As such, these knives were popular in office and secretarial positions. The positive benefits of this kind of knife were so useful and popular, they were often included in sewing kits.

22. The ability to open a knife with one hand is incredibly useful in any number of circumstances including hunting, camping, fishing, construction, self-defense, and every day basic utility. In other words, automatically opening folding

KnifeRights MSJ App.000760

knives are incredibly useful in any task where one of the user's hands is occupied and one-handed opening of a knife is needed. Indeed, some of the earliest patents on automatically opening knives were described as "a good knife for a carpenter."

23. While there are internal mechanical differences between a manually opening, assisted opening, and automatically opening knife, there is no *functional* difference between these kinds of knives. Each open with minimal pressure applied by the user's finger to either the blade of the knife or a button on the handle of the knife.

24. Additionally, with modern technology and manufacturing processes, both assisted-opening knives and automatically opening knives open at similar speeds.

25. Based on my expertise in knife mechanisms, it is my professional opinion that automatic knives ("switchblades") are simply a variation of a common folding pocket knife.

26. Excluding kitchen knives, folding pocket knives are the most common knives manufactured and sold in the U.S. market and have been for over 100 years.

27. Additionally, it is my opinion that automatic knives ("switchblades") are in common use within the United States.

I declare under penalty of perjury under the laws of the United States that the foregoing is true and correct, and this declaration was executed on September 19, 2023 in Saint Cloud, Florida.

LeRoi Price

EXHIBIT Y

1
2
3
4
5
6
7
8
9
10
11
12
13
14
15
16
17
18
19
20
21
22
23
24
25
26
27
28

UNITED STATES DISTRICT COURT
FOR THE NORTHERN DISTRICT OF TEXAS, FORT WORTH DIVISION

KNIFE RIGHTS, INC.; RUSSELL ARNOLD; JEFFREY FOLLODER; RGA AUCTION SOLUTION d.b.a. FIREARM SOLUTIONS; AND MOD SPECIALTIES,

Plaintiffs,

v.

MERRICK B. GARLAND, Attorney General of the United States; UNITED STATES DEPARTMENT OF JUSTICE,

Defendants.

Case No. 4:23-cv-00547-O

Hon. Judge Reed O'Connor

DECLARATION OF MARK D. ZALESKY IN SUPPORT OF PLAINTIFFS' MOTION FOR SUMMARY JUDGMENT

DECLARATION OF MARK D. ZALESKY

I, Mark D. Zalesky, declare as follows:

1. I am not a party in the above-titled action. I am over the age of 18, have personal knowledge of the facts referred to in this declaration, and am competent to testify to the matters stated below. My declaration is executed in support of Plaintiffs' motion for summary judgment.

BACKGROUND AND QUALIFICATIONS

2. I live in Knoxville, Tennessee, United States and have been involved in the knife industry as a journalist, editor, author and publisher for 33 years. I have been a collector, buyer, and seller of knives since the age of 5, with my father. By the time I was in high school, I had made buying and selling knives into an income stream.

3. I have been the Publisher and Editor of *KNIFE Magazine* since 2015 and prior to that was Editor of *Knife World* magazine (predecessor of *KNIFE Magazine*) from 1997 to 2015.

4. I have edited over a thousand articles on knives for *Knife World* and *Knife Magazine* since 1997.

5. I have owned thousands of knives and handled many more including folding knives from antiques to the latest production folders over my lifetime.

6. I have co-authored or edited seven books and price guides on knives.

7. I have authored hundreds of articles and columns written for *Knife World* and *KNIFE Magazine*, as well as occasional articles for other knife books and periodicals.

8. My personal collection of knives currently numbers approximately 300 knives.

9. I have performed knife and razor evaluations and appraisals for many individuals and institutions since the 2000s, including Morphy Auctions (Denver, PA), and Heritage Auctions (Dallas, TX).

10. Since 1998 I have made presentations at a wide array of knife shows, knife-related events, hammer-ins and the like. Generally, these presentations are on antique knives and their features, design and evolution.

11. I have appeared on a number of TV Shows and video channels including the History Channel's "Man vs History," "Zac in the Wild" and the "Antique Bowie Knife Channel."

12. I have been a member of the American Bladesmith Society Board of Directors since 2011.

13. I have been a member of the Antique Bowie Knife Association Board of Directors since 2009.

14. In the 2000s I was a member of the National Knife Museum Advisory Committee.

15. I have received the following awards and honors:

- 2019 The Knifemakers' Guild Nate Posner Memorial Award for "Outstanding Service to the Handmade Knife Industry" (organization's highest honor for non-knifemaker)
- 2014 American Bladesmith Society's Don Hastings Memorial Award for "Untiring Efforts on Behalf of Bladesmithing" (organization's highest honor for non-knifemaker)
- 2014 Blade Magazine Publisher's Award (for "A Sure Defense" museum exhibit)
- 2005 Blade Magazine Publisher's Award (for campaign to gather and deliver knives to American soldiers overseas)

KnifeRights MSJ App.000765

1
2
3
4
5
6
7
8
9
10
11
12
13
14
15
16
17
18
19
20
21
22
23
24
25
26
27
28

- 2003 American Bladesmith Society, Chairman's Award for Outstanding Service

16. I have twice been nominated for the Blade Magazine Cutlery Hall of Fame.

17. I have twice been nominated for the American Bladesmith Society Hall of Fame.

18. I have been retained as an expert witness by Plaintiffs in this case to render my professional expert opinion on the categorization and commonality of folding pocket knives and automatic knives, also known as switchblades, in the United States. I am not charging for my services in this case.

OPINIONS

19. Based on my over 33 years of experience in the knife industry, it is my professional opinion that automatic knives ("switchblades") are simply a variation of a common folding pocket knife.

20. Excluding kitchen knives, folding pocket knives are the most common knives manufactured and sold in the U.S. market and have been for over 100 years.

21. Based on my 33 years of experience in the knife industry and decades of performing appraisals and valuations of antique knives and antique knife collections, automatic knives ("switchblades") are a common knife that I see and there is a large following collecting automatic knives ("switchblades") throughout the U.S.

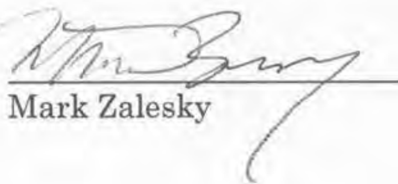
22. Additionally, based on my over 33 years of experience in the knife industry, automatic knives ("switchblades") — being a variation of folding pocket knife — are also in common use within the United States.

23. Based on my experience in the knife industry, there are over 22 knife manufacturers making automatic knives ("switchblades") throughout the U.S,

KnifeRights MSJ App.000766

today, many more than the handful of manufacturers manufacturing these knives in the 1950s when Schrade patents limited the number of manufacturers. Yet even then, there were millions of automatic knives ("switchblades") being sold every year based on historical data. Based on the innovations of mass production of knives that have occurred since the 1950s, and the large increase in manufacturers that make automatically opening knives, it would be a conservative estimate that the number of automatically opening knives owned and possessed throughout the United States today is in the many millions of knives.

I declare under penalty of perjury under the laws of the United States that the foregoing is true and correct, and this declaration was executed on September 19, 2023 in Knoxville, Tennessee.



Mark Zalesky

EXHIBIT Z

1
2
3
4
5
6
7
8
9
10
11
12
13
14
15
16
17
18
19
20
21
22
23
24
25
26
27
28

UNITED STATES DISTRICT COURT

FOR THE NORTHERN DISTRICT OF TEXAS, FORT WORTH DIVISION

KNIFE RIGHTS, INC.; RUSSELL ARNOLD; JEFFREY FOLLODER; RGA AUCTION SOLUTION d.b.a. FIREARM SOLUTIONS; AND MOD SPECIALTIES,

Plaintiffs,

v.

MERRICK B. GARLAND, Attorney General of the United States; UNITED STATES DEPARTMENT OF JUSTICE,

Defendants.

Case No. 4:23-cv-00547-O

Hon. Judge Reed O'Connor

DECLARATION OF ROBERT TERZUOLA IN SUPPORT OF PLAINTIFFS' MOTION FOR SUMMARY JUDGMENT

DECLARATION OF ROBERT TERZUOLA

I, Robert Terzuola, declare as follows:

1. I am not a party in the above-titled action. I am over the age of 18, have personal knowledge of the facts referred to in this declaration, and am competent to testify to the matters stated below. This declaration is executed in support of Plaintiffs' motion for summary judgment.

BACKGROUND AND QUALIFICATIONS

2. I live in San Marcos, California, and have been a knifemaker and knife designer for over 43 years.

3. I am known as the "God Father of the Tactical Knife" because of a tactical folding linerlock knife I designed in 1987.

4. I have designed scores of knives in my career.

5. My custom knives have sold for upwards of $7,500.00.

6. My knife designs have been produced by Spyderco, Strider Knives, Microtech Knives, Pro-Tech Knives, Civivi and MKM (Maniago Knife Makers), Boker, Fox Knives and LionSTEEL.

7. I am the author of *The Tactical Folding Knife: a Study of the Anatomy and Construction of the Liner Locked Folder* first published in 2000. An updated and expanded version was published in 2019.

8. I have authored numerous magazine articles for Blade Magazine and Soldier of Fortune Magazine.

9. Blade Magazine described me as "one of the four living Mount Rushmore Legends of modern knifemaking."

10. I have won 22 "Best of" awards and four Best Collaboration awards from Blade Show, as well two Best of Show awards from Munich International Knife

KnifeRights MSJ App.000770

Show.

11. In June of 2023, I was inducted into the Cutlery Hall of Fame. This recognition is described as "the highest honor on the planet for individuals who demonstrate exceptional contributions to the world of knives."

12. I have been retained as an expert witness by Plaintiffs in this case to render my professional expert opinion on the categorization and commonality of folding pocket knives and automatic knives, also known as switchblades, in the United States. I am not charging for my services in this case.

OPINIONS

13. As stated in my qualifications, I have designed scores of different knife designs throughout my career. I continue to design knives to this day. As a knife designer, I develop knife designs that meet the expectations and demands of the average knife consumer in the United States.

14. For many years now, one-handed opening knives have been in high demand in the knife industry. This demand includes manually opening knives, assisted opening knives, and automatically opening folding knives.

15. Based on my over 43 years as a knifemaker and knife designer, this feature, regardless of opening mechanism used, is essential for any person to deploy this tool quickly for all lawful purposes, no matter the circumstances in which they find themselves.

16. As such, 99% of the folding knife designs I currently make today and have licensed for production are one-hand openers.

17. The ability to open a knife with one hand is incredibly useful in any number of circumstances including hunting, camping, fishing, construction, self-defense, and every day basic utility. Regardless of the mechanism in which it opens, based on my 43 years of experience as a knife designer and knifemaker, the U.S.

KnifeRights MSJ App.000771

1 knife consumer seeks a fast, one-hand opening, folding knife. This demand is
2 satisfied by countless designs of manual, assisted-opening, and automatically
3 opening knives manufactured and sold in the United States.

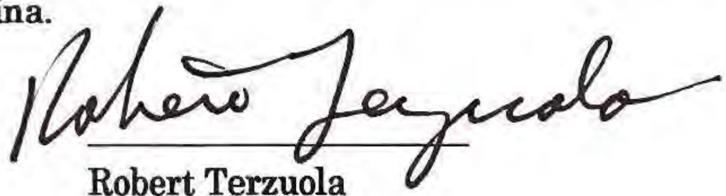
4 18. There is no functional difference between assisted-opening knives and
5 automatically opening knives. Each open with minimal pressure applied by the
6 user's finger to either the blade of the knife or a button on the handle of the knife.
7 Both assisted-opening knives and automatically opening knives also open at similar
8 speeds.

9 19. Based on my over 43 years as a knife designer and knife maker, it is
10 my professional opinion that automatic knives ("switchblades") are simply a
11 variation of a common folding pocket knife.

12 20. Excluding kitchen knives, folding pocket knives are the most common
13 knives manufactured and sold in the U.S. market and have been for over 100 years.

14 21. Additionally, based on my over 43 years as a knife designer and knife
15 maker, automatic knives ("switchblades") are in common use within the United
16 States.

17 I declare under penalty of perjury under the laws of the United States that
18 the foregoing is true and correct, and this declaration was executed on September
19 19, 2023 in Murphy, North Carolina.



Robert Terzuola

20
21
22
23
24
25
26
27
28

EXHIBIT AA

1
2
3
4
5
6
7
8
9
10
11
12
13
14
15
16
17
18
19
20
21
22
23
24
25
26
27
28

UNITED STATES DISTRICT COURT

FOR THE NORTHERN DISTRICT OF TEXAS, FORT WORTH DIVISION

KNIFE RIGHTS, INC.; RUSSELL ARNOLD; JEFFREY FOLLODER; RGA AUCTION SOLUTION d.b.a. FIREARM SOLUTIONS; AND MOD SPECIALTIES, Plaintiffs, v. MERRICK B. GARLAND, Attorney General of the United States; UNITED STATES DEPARTMENT OF JUSTICE, Defendants.	Case No. 4:23-cv-00547-O Hon. Judge Reed O'Connor

DECLARATION OF ERNEST R. EMERSON IN SUPPORT OF PLAINTIFFS' MOTION FOR SUMMARY JUDGMENT

DECLARATION OF ERNEST R. EMERSON

I, Ernest R. Emerson, declare as follows:

1. I am not a party in the above-titled action. I am over the age of 18, have personal knowledge of the facts referred to in this declaration, and am competent to testify to the matters stated below. This declaration is executed in support of Plaintiffs' motion for summary judgment.

BACKGROUND AND QUALIFICATIONS

2. I live in Rolling Hills Estate, California, United States, and have been a knife designer and knifemaker for over 45 years.

3. I am a member of The United States Martial Arts Hall of Fame and the United States Black Belt Hall of Fame

4. I have designed over 1,000 knives, the majority of which are common folding pocket knives. I have handled thousands of folding knives during my lifetime.

5. My custom knives have sold for upwards of $15,000.00.

6. My knife designs have been produced by Timberline, Benchmade, Gerber, Pro-Tech, Kershaw, Blue Ridge, Surefire, Blackhawk and Reed Knight Armaments

7. I have also designed folding knives for United States Navy SEAL Teams, United States Navy Rescue Swimmers, United States Special Boat Units and United States Navy Search and Rescue along with members of all United States military forces, law enforcement and other federal agencies.

8. I have authored nine books on surviving the worst scenarios encountered by members of the military and law enforcement.

9. I have been featured in over 300 articles including in the Wall Street Journal, New York Times, Forbes and Los Angeles Times. I have also appeared on

and been interviewed on many radio broadcasts throughout the U.S. and by the BBC regarding knives.

10. In 2000, the Japanese government hired me as an advisor to the Japanese Cutlery Industry.

11. I was hired by the U.K. government to train Prime Minister Tony Blair's personal security guards.

12. My SPECWAR knife, produced by Timberline for a military contract competition, was exhibited at the Metropolitans Museum of Art and the Smithsonian Institution.

13. In 1999, NASA contracted with me to build a folding knife for use on Space Shuttle missions and the International Space Station. This knife is only made for NASA and is not available to the general public.

14. In 1997, I patented (US5878500A) the "Wave-shaped Opening Feature" or "Wave Opening Feature" or "Wave Feature," commonly referred to in the knife community as "Emerson Opener."

15. In 1996, I formed Emerson Knives, Inc. to produce my knife designs as production knives.

16. My knives have won many awards at Blade Show, the world's largest knife show, as well numerous other knife shows throughout the U.S.

17. I have been retained as an expert witness by Plaintiffs in this case to render my professional expert opinion on the (i) mechanical and functional distinctions of the various forms of folding pocket knives; (ii) the speed of opening regarding manually opening, assisted opening, and automatically opening folding knives; and (iii) the categorization and commonality of folding pocket knives and automatic knives, also known as switchblades, in the United States. I am not charging for my services in this case.

1
2
3
4
5
6
7
8
9
10
11
12
13
14
15
16
17
18
19
20
21
22
23
24
25
26
27
28

OPINIONS

18. As stated above, I have designed over a thousand different knives, the majority of them being folding pocket knives. As such, I am intimately familiar with the mechanics and function of manual opening, assisted opening, and automatically folding pocket knives.

19. In 1997, I patented (US5878500A) the "Wave-shaped Opening Feature" or "Wave Opening Feature" or "Wave Feature," commonly referred to in the knife community as "Emerson Opener." This is one of my most well-known designs.

20. The "Wave Shaped Feature" was trademarked in 2016 (4,879,356). Besides incorporating the Wave Shaped Feature into my own knives, I have licensed its use to Spyderco, Southern Grind, Zero-Tolerance and Kershaw.

21. The "Wave Shaped Feature" has a hook on the spine of the blade which, when snagged on the edge of the pocket or sheath, causes the knife blade to open as it is drawn from the pocket. This feature provides essentially automatic deployment of the blade to the open and locked position as the knife is pulled from the pocket, providing deployment into a useable handhold at the same speed as a fixed blade knife and faster than any other folding or retractable knife, including automatically opening knives.

22. All of my folding knife designs I currently make today and have licensed for production are one-hand opening knives. Based on my over 45 years as a knifemaker, knife designer and tactical instructor, the one-handed opening feature on knives, regardless of opening mechanism used, is essential for any person to deploy this tool quickly for all lawful purposes, no matter the circumstances in which they find themselves.

23. In my opinion, one-hand opening knives are not only well-suited, but preferred, for self-defense. These knives are also well-suited and preferred for

countless other uses beyond self-defense which including hunting, camping, fishing, boating/sailing, construction, first responders, law enforcement, and general everyday use. Automatically opening knives, being a variation of a one-handed folding knife are also well-suited for these purposes.

24. The majority of folders I currently make today and have licensed for production that are not automatic ("switchblade") knives incorporate my "wave-shaped opening feature." I incorporate this feature on most of my non-automatic opening knives because this feature allows for even faster deployment of the one-hand opening knife and allows it to be used instantaneously for all lawful purposes, no matter the circumstances in which the user find themselves.

25. Despite the common mistaken belief, automatically opening knives do not open significantly faster than other one-handed opening knives including manually opening knives and assisted opening knives. In fact, manually opening folding knives that incorporate my “wave shaped opening feature” open faster than automatic knives.

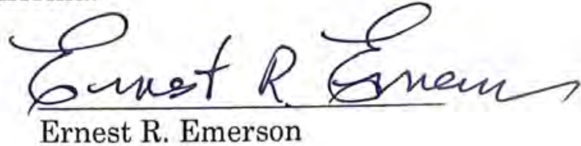
26. Based on my over 45 years as a knifemaker and knife designer, it is my professional opinion that automatic knives ("switchblades") are simply a variation of a common folding pocket knife.

27. Excluding kitchen knives, folding pocket knives are by far the most common knives manufactured and sold in the U.S. market and have been for over 100 years.

28. Additionally, based on my over 45 years as a knifemaker and knife designer, automatic knives ("switchblades") are commonly owned and possessed throughout the United States and are used for many lawful purposes. In my opinion, based on my experience in the knife industry and as a knife designer and knife maker, there are millions of automatically opening knives owned and possessed

throughout the United States.

I declare under penalty of perjury under the laws of the United States that the foregoing is true and correct, and this declaration was executed on September 19, 2023 in Rolling Hills Estate, California.



Ernest R. Emerson

EXHIBIT AB

The History of Bans on Types of Arms Before 1900

DAVID B. KOPEL*
JOSEPH G.S. GREENLEE**

TABLE OF CONTENTS

Introduction 3

I. English history 6
A. Arms Bans in England 6
B. Repeating Firearms in England 10
1. The Kalthoff Repeating Rifle 12
2. The Lorenzoni repeating handguns and rifles . 13

II. The Colonial Period and Early Republic 14
A. The English Colonies 15
B. New Sweden 17
C. New Netherland 18
D. Arms Mandates in Colonial America 21
1. Who was required to keep or bear arms? 21
2. Types of mandatory arms 24
E. Repeating Arms 37
F. Cannons 40
G. Overview 44

III. Nineteenth Century Advances in Arms 47
A. James Madison and James Monroe, ...
the founding fathers of modern firearms 48
B. The American system of manufacture 48
C. The revolution in ammunition 51

---

* Adjunct Professor Constitutional Law, University of Denver, Sturm College of Law; Senior Fellow, University of Wyoming College of Law, Firearms Research Center; Research Director, Independence Institute, Denver, Colorado; Adjunct Scholar, Cato Institute, Washington, D.C. http://davekopel.org.

** Director of Constitutional Studies, FPC Action Foundation, Las Vegas, Nevada; Policy Advisor for Legal Affairs, Heartland Institute, Arlington Heights, Illinois; http://josephgreenlee.org. The authors would like to thank Connor Cheadle for research assistance.

D. Advances in repeating arms 54
E. Continuing advances in firearms were well-known to the Founders 63
F. Perspective 66

IV. Firearms bans in the 19th Century 69
A. Georgia ban on handguns, Bowie knives, and other arms 69
B. Tennessee ban on many handguns 70
C. Arkansas ban on many handguns, and Bowie knives 71
D. Florida licensing law for repeating rifles and handguns 72

V. Bowie Knives 76
A. The history of Bowie knives and Arkansas toothpicks .. 78
  1. What is a Bowie knife? 78
  2. What is an Arkansas toothpick? 80
  3. The crime in the Arkansas legislature 80
B. Survey of Bowie knife statutes 82

VI. Other weapons 116
A. Daggers, dirks, and other sharp weapons 117
  1. Daggers and dirks 117
  2. Sword canes 121
  3. Spears 123
  4. Razors 124
  5. Butcher knives 125
  6. Swords 125
B. Slungshots and other flexible impact weapons 126
  1. Slungshots and colts 129
  2. Slingshots 139
  3. Sand Clubs 141
  4. Blackjacks 142
  5. Billies vs. Billy clubs 143
C. Rigid impact weapons 144
  1. Knuckles 144
  2. Loaded Canes 148
D. Cannons 148

VII. Doctrinal Analysis 151
A. Summary of possession or sales bans 152
B. The constitutional and racial background of possession or sales bans 154
C. Modern doctrines 157

1. “Dangerous and unusual” versus “not typically possessed by law-abiding citizens”: The distinction applied to slungshots and brass knuckles. 157
2. How many jurisdictions make a tradition? 160
D. Application of history and modern doctrine ....
to particular types of laws.. 164
1. Sales prohibitions on slungshots and knucles 164
2. Modern semiautomatic firearms and magazines165
3. Minors 169
4. Penalties for criminal misuse 170

Conclusion...173

INTRODUCTION

This Article describes the history of bans on particular types of arms in America, through 1899. It also describes arms bans in England until the time of American independence. Arms encompassed in this article include firearms, knives, swords, blunt weapons, and many others. While arms advanced considerably from medieval England through the nineteenth-century United States, bans on particular types of arms were rare.

The U.S. Supreme Court’s decision in *New York State Rifle & Pistol Association v. Bruen* instructed lower courts to decide Second Amendment cases “consistent with *Heller*, which demands a test rooted in the Second Amendment’s text, as informed by history.”[1] *Bruen* examined the legal history of restrictions on the right to bear arms through 1899.[2] This Article focuses on one aspect of the legal history of the right to *keep* arms: prohibitions on particular types of arms.

Part I describes prohibitions on possession of firearms and other arms in England. The launcegay, a type of light lance for horsemen, was banned, as

[1] N.Y. State Rifle & Pistol Ass’n v. Bruen, 142 S. Ct. 2111, 2126–27 (2022) (discussing District of Columbia v. Heller, 554 U.S. 570 (2008)).

[2] The further from the Founding, the less useful the legal history. While the Court did address some laws from the late nineteenth century, laws after 1900 were pointedly not examined: “We will not address any of the 20th-century historical evidence brought to bear by respondents or their amici. As with their late-19th-century evidence, the 20th-century evidence presented by respondents and their amici does not provide insight into the meaning of the Second Amendment when it contradicts earlier evidence.” *Id.* at 2154 n.28.

were small handguns, although the handgun ban was widely ignored. A class-based handgun licensing law was apparently little enforced. While most firearms were single-shot, repeating firearms existed for centuries in England, with no special restrictions.

Part II covers America from the colonial period through the Early Republic. No colonial law banned any particular arm. The Dutch colony New Netherland came the closest when it limited the number of flintlocks colonists could bring into the colony, in an effort to quash the trading of flintlocks to Indians. In the British colonies, there were many laws requiring most people, including many women, to possess particular types of arms. This Article is the first to provide a complete, item-by-item list of every mandated arm. Some private individuals owned repeating (multi-shot) firearms and cannons, but such arms were far too expensive for a government to mandate individual possession.

As summarized in Part III, the nineteenth century was the greatest century before or since for firearms technology and affordability. When the century began, an average person could afford a single-shot flintlock musket or rifle. By the end of the century, an average person could afford the same types of firearms that are available today, such as repeaters with semiautomatic action, slide action, lever action, or revolver action. Ammunition had improved even more.

The rest of the article describes nineteenth century laws forbidding particular types of arms. Part IV examines the four prohibitory laws on particular types of firearms: Georgia (most handguns), Tennessee and Arkansas (allowing only "Army & Navy" type handguns, *i.e.* large revolvers), and Florida (race-based licensing system for Winchesters and other repeating rifles).

Part V turns in depth to the most controversial arm of nineteenth-century America: the Bowie knife. Sales were banned in a few states, and possession was punitively taxed in a few others. The mainstream approach, adopted in most states that regulated Bowies, was to ban concealed carry, to forbid sales to minors, or to impose extra punishment for criminal misuse. As Part V explains, Bowie knife laws usually applied to various other weapons too.

Part VI summarizes the nineteenth century laws about the various other weapons. These include other sharp weapons (such as dirks, daggers, and sword canes), flexible impact arms (such as slungshots and blackjacks), rigid impact arms (such as brass knuckles), and cannons. Possession bans were rare, whereas laws on concealed carry, sales to minors, or extra punishment for misuse were more common.

Case 4:23-cv-00547-O Document 20-3 Filed 10/06/23 Page 236 of 462 PageID 909

Part VII applies modern Second Amendment doctrine to the legal history presented in the Article. It suggests that some arms prohibitions and regulations may be valid, but bans on modern semiautomatic rifles and magazines are not.

If this Article described only possession bans for adults, it would be very short. Besides outright bans on possession, the Article also describes laws that forbade sales or manufacture. These are similar to possession bans, at least for future would-be owners.[3] Even with sales or manufacture bans included, this Article would still be very short. So for all arms *except* firearms, the Article provides a comprehensive list of nonprohibitory regulations, such as concealed

---

[3] A sales ban that allows existing owners to continue possession is not as intrusive as a ban on all possession. But because a sales ban is a ban on new possession, it should be analyzed as a similar to a prohibition, rather than a regulation, as the Ninth Circuit explained in *Jones v. Bonta*:

> [E]ven though this is a commercial regulation, the district court's historical analysis focused not on the history of commercial regulations specifically but on the history of young adults' right to keep and bear arms generally. *See* [*Jones v. Becerra*, 498 F. Supp. 3d 1317, 1325–29 (S.D. Cal. 2020)]. The district court was asking the right question.
>
> "Commerce in firearms is a necessary prerequisite to keeping and possessing arms for self-defense." *Teixeira v. County of Alameda*, 873 F.3d 670, 682 (9th Cir. 2017). We have assumed without deciding that the "right to possess a firearm includes the right to purchase one." *Bauer v. Becerra*, 858 F.3d 1216, 1222 (9th Cir. 2017). And we have already applied a similar concept to other facets of the Second Amendment. For example, "[t]he Second Amendment protects 'arms,' 'weapons,' and 'firearms'; it does not explicitly protect ammunition." [*Jackson v. City & Cty. of S.F.*, 746 F.3d 953, 967 (9th Cir. 2014)]. Still, because "without bullets, the right to bear arms would be meaningless," we held that "the right to possess firearms for protection implies a corresponding right" to obtain the bullets necessary to use them. *Id.* (citing *Ezell v. City of Chicago*, 651 F.3d 684, 704 (7th Cir. 2011)).
>
> Similarly, without the right to obtain arms, the right to keep and bear arms would be meaningless. *Cf. Jackson*, 746 F.3d at 967 (right to obtain bullets). "There comes a point . . . at which the regulation of action intimately and unavoidably connected with [a right] is a regulation of [the right] itself." *Luis v. United States*, 578 U.S. 5, 136 S. Ct. 1083, 1097, 194 L. Ed. 2d 256 (Thomas, J., concurring in the judgment) (quoting *Hill v. Colorado*, 530 U.S. 703, 745, 120 S. Ct. 2480, 147 L. Ed. 2d 597 (2000) (Scalia, J., dissenting)). For this reason, the right to keep and bear arms includes the right to purchase them. And thus laws that burden the ability to purchase arms burden Second Amendment rights.

Jones v. Bonta, 34 F.4th 704, 715–16 (9th Cir. 2022).

carry bans, limits on sales to minors, and extra punishment for use in a crime. This Article is the first to provide a full list of all colonial, state, and territorial restrictions on these arms. We also list some local restrictions, such as by a county or municipality, but we have not attempted a comprehensive survey of the thousands of local governments. To be sure, however, the nonprohibitory regulations were not as severe as arms prohibitions. They still allowed peaceable adults to keep and bear the regulated arms. Laws that forbade a particular arm to be kept or carried were historical rarities.

I. ENGLISH HISTORY

According to *Bruen*, old English practices that ended long before American independence are of little relevance.[4] The only applicable English precedents are those that were adopted in America and continued up through the Founding Era.[5] For prohibition of particular types of arms, there are no such English precedents. Section A describes what prohibitions did exist at some point in England. Section B describes the availability of repeating arms, which were expensive, in England and the Continent.

A. Arms Bans in England

In 1181, King Henry II enacted the Assize of Arms, which required all his free subjects to be armed, except for Jews, who were forbidden to have armor.[6] The Assize grouped people into wealth categories. Every male in a particular category had to have certain quantities of particular types of arms and armor—

[4]

> English common-law practices and understandings at any given time in history cannot be indiscriminately attributed to the Framers of our own Constitution. . . . Sometimes, in interpreting our own Constitution, 'it is better not to go too far back into antiquity for the best securities of our liberties,' *Funk* v. *United States*, 290 U. S. 371, 382, 54 S. Ct. 212, 78 L. Ed. 369 (1933), unless evidence shows that medieval law survived to become our Founders' law.

Bruen, 142 S. Ct. at 2136 (brackets omitted).

[5] "A long, unbroken line of common-law precedent stretching from Bracton to Blackstone is far more likely to be part of our law than a short-lived, 14th-century English practice." *Id.* at 2136.

[6] 27 Henry II, art. 3 (1181).

Case 4:23-cv-00547-O Document 20-3 Filed 10/06/23 Page 238 of 462 PageID 911

no more and no less.[7] The Assize was prohibitory in that a person could own only the specified arms and armor for his particular income group. But the Assize was more concerned with armor than with weapons, and was not prescriptive about ownership of swords, knives, bows, or blunt weapons.[8]

The Assize of Arms was replaced in 1285 by the Statute of Winchester, under Edward I.[9] It required all males in certain income groups to have *at least* particular quantities of arms and armor.[10] The Statute of Winchester created

---

[7]

> Let every holder of a knight's fee have a hauberk, a helmet, a shield and a lance. And let every knight have as many hauberks, helmets, shields and lances, as he has knight's fees in his demesne.
>
> Also, let every free layman, who holds chattels or rent to the value of 16 marks, have a hauberk, a helmet, a shield and a lance. Also, let every layman who holds chattels or rent worth 10 marks an "aubergel" and a headpiece of iron, and a lance.
>
> Also, let all burgesses and the whole body of freemen have quilted doublets and a headpiece of iron, and a lance.
>
> . . .
>
> Any burgess who has more arms than he ought to have by this assize shall sell them or give them away, or in some way alienate them to such a man as will keep them for the service of the lord king of England. And none of them shall keep more arms than he ought to have by this assize.
>
> Item, no Jew shall keep in his possession a shirt of mail or a hauberk, but he shall sell it or give it away or alienate it in some other way so that it shall remain in the king's service.
>
> . . .
>
> Item, the justices shall have proclamation made in the counties through which they are to go that, concerning those who do not have such arms as have been specified above, the lord king will take vengeance, not merely on their lands or chattels, but their limbs.

27 Henry II, art. 3 (1181), *in* ENGLISH HISTORICAL DOCUMENTS 448 (David Douglas & G.W. Greenaway eds., 2d ed. 1981).

[8] We use the distinct terms "arms" and "armor" in the modern sense; a knife is an "arm" and a Kevlar vest is "armor." In medieval England, and early nineteenth century America, the two terms were not so different; the one often included the other.

[9] 13 Edward I, ch. 6 (1285), *in* 1 STATUTES OF THE REALM 97–98 (1800).

[10]

> It is commanded, That every Man have in his house Harness for to keep the Peace after the antient Assise; that is to say, Every Man between fifteen years of age, and sixty years, shall be assessed and sworn to Armor according to the quantity of their Lands and Goods; that is to wit, [from] Fifteen Pounds Lands,

only mandatory minima for arms, not maxima.[11] Persons could own whatever quantity they chose above the minima, and they could also own arms that were not mandatory for their income group.

In 1383, King Richard II outlawed the possession of "launcegays."[12] The ban was restated the following decade after its lack of enforcement led to a "great Clamour."[13] Launcegays were a type of light spears, "occasionally used as a dart," and considered "offensive weapons."[14] The heavier war lance was not prohibited.

> and Goods Forty Marks, an Hauberke, [a Breast-plate] of Iron, a Sword, a Knife, and an Horse; and [from] Ten Pounds of Lands, and Twenty Marks Goods, an Hauberke, [a Breast-plate of Iron,] a Sword, and a Knife; and [from] Five Pound Lands, [a Doublet,] [a Breast-plate] of Iron, a Sword, and a Knife; and from Forty Shillings Land and more, unto One hundred Shillings of Land, a Sword, a Bow and Arrows, and a Knife; and he that hath less than Forty Shillings yearly, shall be sworn to [keep Gis-armes,] Knives, and other [less Weapons]; and he that hath less than Twenty Marks in Goods, shall have Swords, Knives, and other [less Weapons]; and all other that may, shall have Bows and Arrows out of the Forest, and in the Forest Bows and [Boults.]

Id. (Brackets in original of *English Historical Documents*).

[11] *Id.*

[12]

> It is ordained and assented, and also the King doth prohibit, That from henceforth no Man shall ride in Harness within the Realm, contrary to the Form of the Statute of Northampton thereupon made, neither with Launcegay within the Realm, the which Launcegays be clearly put out within the said Realm, as a Thing prohibited by our Lord the King[.]

7 Richard II, ch. 13 (1383), *in* 2 STATUTES OF THE REALM 35 (1816).

[13]

> Our Lord the King, considering the great Clamour made to him in this present Parliament, because that the said Statute is not holden, hath ordained and established in the said Parliament, That the said Statutes shall be fully holden and kept, and duly executed; and that the said Launcegayes shall be clear put out upon the Pain contained in the said Statute of Northampton, and also to make Fine and Ransom to the King.

20 Richard II, ch. 1 (1396–97), *in* 2 STATUTES OF THE REALM 93 (1816).

[14] GEORGE CAMERON STONE, A GLOSSARY OF THE CONSTRUCTION, DECORATION AND USE OF ARMS AND ARMOR IN ALL COUNTRIES AND IN ALL TIMES 410 (1999) ("LANCE-AGUE, LANCEGAYE. A light lance, occasionally used as a dart. It was carried in place of the war lance in the 14th century; the latter, at the time, was about fourteen feet long and very heavy."); NATHAN BAILEY, AN UNIVERSAL ETYMOLOGICAL ENGLISH DICTIONARY BEING ALSO AN INTERPRETER OF HARD WORDS (2d ed. 1724) ("LAUNCEGAYS, Offensive Weapons prohibited and disused.").

There were many English laws based on class rule. For example, a 1388 statute from the notorious Richard II forbade servants and laborers from carrying swords and daggers, except when accompanying their masters.[15] During the late seventeenth century, until the Glorious Revolution of 1688, laws against hunting by commoners were interpreted so as to make firearms possession illegal for most of the population; the bans were often evaded.[16]

A 1541 statute from King Henry VIII outlawed handguns less than one yard in length and arquebuses and demihakes (types of shoulder guns) less than three-fourths of a yard in length. Additionally, people with an annual income below 100 pounds were prohibited from possessing any handgun, crossbow, arquebus, or demihake without a license.[17] Licenses were granted at discretion, as a reward from one's superiors.[18]

No license was needed by inhabitants of market towns or boroughs, anyone with a house more than two furlongs (440 yards) outside of town, persons who lived within five miles of the coasts, within 12 miles of the Scottish border, or

---

[15] 12 Richard II ch. 6 (1388).

[16] NICHOLAS J. JOHNSON, DAVID B. KOPEL, GEORGE A. MOCSARY, E. GREGORY WALLACE, & DONALD E. KILMER, FIREARMS LAW AND THE SECOND AMENDMENT: REGULATION, RIGHTS AND POLICY 2136–38 (Aspen Publishers, 3d ed. 2021).

[17]

> [T]hat noe pson or psons of what estate or degree he or they be, excepte he or they in their owne right or in the right of his or their Wyeffe to his or their owne uses or any other to the use of any suche pson or psons, have landes tente fees annuyties or Office to the yerely value of one hundred pounde, from or after the laste daye of June next comynge, shall shote in any Crosbowe handgun hagbutt or demy hake, or use or kepe in his or their houses or elswhere any Crosbowe handgun hagbut or demy hake, otherwise or in any other manner then ys hereafter in this Present Acte declared. . . .
>
> [N]o pson or psons, of what estate or degree soever he or they be, from or after the saide laste daye of June shall shote in carye kepe use or have in his house or els where any handgune other then suche as shalbe in the stock and gonne of the lenghe of one hole Yarde, or any hagbutt or demyhake other then suche as shalbe in the stock and gune of the lenghe of thre quarters of one Yarde. . .

33 Henry VIII, ch. 6, § 1 (1541), *in* 3 STATUTES OF THE REALM 832 (1817).

Hackbut is an archaic spelling of arquebus, a type of long gun. A demihake was a short hackbut. JOHNSON ET AL., *supra* note 16, at 2116–17.

[18] The Tudor monarchs handed out many licenses—including to commoners whom the king wanted to reward, and to nobles to allow their servants to be able to use the arms outside the home. LOIS G. SCHWOERER, GUN CULTURE IN EARLY MODERN ENGLAND 65–73 (2016).

on various small islands.[19] The Henrican 1541 statute "[g]radually . . . fell into disuse. Soon, only the ₤ 100 qualification was enforced. . . ."[20] The law was obviously contrary to *Heller* and is no precedent for today.[21]

In 1616, King James I outlawed dags—a type of small handgun.[22] As he noted, they were already technically illegal (due to the minimum barrel length rule from Henry VIII), but the law was being disregarded.[23] So was James's new order against dags.[24]

We are unaware of any evidence that launcegays were ever an issue in colonial America. We are likewise unaware of any American source recognizing the Henry VIII or James I handgun laws at all, let alone their application in America.

B. Repeating Firearms in England

In the words of Harold Peterson, Curator for the National Park Service, and one of the twentieth century's greatest experts on historic arms, "The desire for . . . repeating weapons is almost as old as the history of firearms, and there were numerous attempts to achieve this goal, beginning at least as early as the opening years of the 16th century."[25]

The first known repeating firearms were 10-shot matchlock arquebuses that date to between 1490 and 1530.[26] "The cylinder was manually rotated around a central axis pin."[27] While it "failed to . . . become a popular martial or utilitarian firearm" due to its complicated and expensive design,[28] King Henry VIII (reigned 1509–1547) owned a similar gun.[29]

Henry VIII also owned a multi-shot combination weapon called the Holy Water Sprinkler. "It is a mace with four sperate steel barrels, each 9" long.

---

[19] Henry VIII, ch. 6 (1541).

[20] ROBERT HELD, THE AGE OF FIREARMS: A PICTORIAL HISTORY 65 (1956).

[21] *Bruen*, 142 S. Ct. at 2141 n.10 (noting that the last attempted prosecutions, which failed, were in 1693).

[22] A Proclamation Against Steelets, Pocket Daggers, Pocket Dagges and Pistols (R. Barker printer 1616).

[23] *Id.*

[24] SCHWOERER, *supra* note 18, at 182.

[25] HAROLD L. PETERSON, ARMS AND ARMOR IN COLONIAL AMERICA 1526–1783, at 215 (1956).

[26] M.L. BROWN, FIREARMS IN COLONIAL AMERICA: THE IMPACT ON HISTORY AND TECHNOLOGY, 1492–1792, at 50 (1980).

[27] *Id.*

[28] *Id.* at 50–51.

[29] W.W. GREENER, THE GUN AND ITS DEVELOPMENT 81–82 (9th ed. 1910).

These barrels are formed into a wooden cylinder held with four iron bands, two of which have six spikes each."[30] Although made in Germany, these were sometimes referred to as "Henry VIII's walking staff,"[31] because "with it, he is represented to have traversed the streets at night, to see that the city-watch kept good order."[32]

The first known repeater capable of firing more than 10 shots was invented by a German gunsmith in the sixteenth century.[33] It could fire 16 superimposed rounds in Roman candle fashion[34]—meaning that one load was stacked on top of another and the user "could not stop the firing once he had started it."[35]

Charles Cardiff seemingly had something similar in mind with this 1682 patent, which protected "an Expedient with Security to make Musketts, Carbines, Pistolls, or any other small Fire Armes to Discharge twice, thrice, or more severall and distincte Shotts in a Singell Barrell and Locke with once Primeing."[36] While his firearms have been lost to time, they apparently contained "two fixed locks, with a separate touch hole for each, the forward one

---

[30] LEWIS WINANT, FIREARMS CURIOSA 14 (1955).

[31] 3 THE LONDON MAGAZINE, JAN–JUNE, 1829, at 46 (3d ser., 1829). It was sometimes called by the similar name, "Henry VIII's walking-stick." *See* 2 WILLIAM HOWITT, JOHN CASSELL'S ILLUSTRATED HISTORY OF ENGLAND 610 (1858).

[32] 3 THE LONDON MAGAZINE, JAN–JUNE 1829, at 46 (3d ser., 1829). According to one popular anecdote, Henry VIII was arrested while making his rounds in disguise one winter night for carrying his Holy Water Sprinkler. When his jailer discovered his true identity the next morning, those responsible feared execution, but instead received a raise for fulfilling their duties. *See id.*

[33] *16-Shot Wheel Lock*, AMERICA'S 1ST FREEDOM, May 10, 2014, http://bit.ly/2tngSDD.

[34] "[T]his oval-bore .67-caliber rifle . . . was designed to fire 16 stacked charges of powder and ball in a rapid 'Roman candle' fashion. One mid-barrel wheel lock mechanism ignited a fuse to discharge the upper 10 charges, and another rearward wheel lock then fired the remaining six lower charges." *Id.* There was some variety in the way such firearms functioned, as demonstrated by firearms historian Lewis Winant's description of another 16-shot German repeater from the 16th or 17th century: "The gun may be used as a single-shot, employing the rear lock only, or it may be charged with sixteen superposed loads so that the first pull of the trigger will release the wheel on the forward lock and fire nine Roman candle charges, a second pull will release the wheel on the rear lock and set off six more such charges, and finally a third pull will fire the one remaining shot." WINANT, FIREARMS CURIOSA, *supra* note __, at 168–70.

[35] WINANT, FIREARMS CURIOSA, *supra* note __, at 166.

[36] *Id.* at 167.

to fire a Roman candle series of charges, and the rear one to fire one or more charges after the series of explosion started by the forward lock."[37]

By the time of Cardiff's patent, however, more effective repeating arms had existed for several decades. "Successful systems" of repeating arms "definitely had developed by 1640, and within the next twenty years they had spread throughout most of Western Europe and even to Moscow."[38] "[T]he two principal magazine repeaters of the era" were "the Kalthoff and the Lorenzoni. These were the first guns of their kind to achieve success."[39]

1. The Kalthoff Repeating Rifle

"The Kalthoff repeater was a true magazine gun. In fact, it had two magazines, one for powder and one for balls. The earliest datable specimens that survive are two wheel-lock rifles made by Peter Kalthoff in Denmark in 1645 and 1646."[40] "[T]he number of charges in the magazines ran all the way from six or seven to thirty."[41]

Kalthoff repeaters "were undoubtedly the first magazine repeaters ever to be adopted for military purposes. About a hundred flintlock rifles of their pattern were issued to picked marksmen of the Royal Foot Guards and are believed to have seen active service during the siege of Copenhagen in 1658, 1659, and again in the Scanian War of 1675–1679."[42]

Kalthoff-type repeaters "spread throughout Europe wherever there were gunsmiths with sufficient skill and knowledge to make them, and patrons wealthy enough to pay the cost."[43] There were nineteen known gunsmiths, and perhaps others, who "made such arms in an area stretching from London on the west to Moscow on the east, and from Copenhagen south to Salzburg."[44]

---

[37] *Id.*

[38] HAROLD L. PETERSON, THE TREASURY OF THE GUN 229 (1962).

[39] *Id.*

[40] *Id.* The wheellock was invented by Leonardo da Vinci in the late 16th century. Vernard Foley, *Leonardo and the Invention of the Wheellock*, SCIENTIFIC AM., Jan. 1998, at 96. "When a wound-up steel wheel was released, the serrated wheel struck a piece of iron pyrite. A shower of sparks would ignite the powder in the pan. The wheellock mechanism is similar to the ignition for today's disposable cigarette lighters." JOHNSON ET AL., *supra* note 16, at 2151. The wheel-lock was superior to its predecessor, the matchlock, because it could be kept always ready for sudden use and was more reliable, albeit much more expensive. *Id.*

[41] PETERSON, THE TREASURY OF THE GUN, *supra* note 38, at 230.

[42] *Id.*

[43] *Id.*

[44] *Id.*

2. The Lorenzoni repeating handguns and rifles

"The Lorenzoni also was developed during the first half of the Seventeenth Century."[45] It was a magazine-fed Italian repeating pistol that "used gravity to self-reload."[46] In being able to self-reload, Lorenzonis are similar to semiautomatic firearms. The Lorenzonis' ammunition capacity was typically around seven shots. The gun's repeating mechanism quickly spread throughout Europe and to the American colonies, and the mechanism was soon applied to rifles as well.[47]

On July 3, 1662, famed London diarist Samuel Pepys wrote about seeing "a gun to discharge seven times, the best of all devices that ever I saw, and very serviceable, and not a bawble; for it is much approved of, and many thereof made."[48] Abraham Hill patented the Lorenzoni repeating mechanism in London on March 3, 1664.[49] The following day, Pepys wrote about "several people [] trying a new-fashion gun" that could "shoot off often, one after another, without trouble or danger, very pretty."[50] It is believed that Pepys was referring to a Lorenzoni-style firearm in his March 4, 1664 entry,[51] and perhaps he also was in his 1662 entry.

Despite Hill's patent, "[m]any other English gunsmiths also made guns with the Lorenzoni action during the next two or three decades."[52] Most notably, famous English gunsmiths John Cookson and John Shaw adopted the Lorenzoni action for their firearms. So did "a host of others throughout the 18th century."[53]

"The Kalthoff and Lorenzoni actions . . . were probably the first and certainly the most popular of the early magazine repeaters. But there were many others. Another version, also attributed to the Lorenzoni family, boasted brass tubular magazin1es beneath the forestock . . . Guns of this type seem to

---

[45] *Id*

[46] MARTIN DOUGHERTY, SMALL ARMS VISUAL ENCYCLOPEDIA 34 (2011)

[47] PETERSON, THE TREASURY OF THE GUN, *supra* note 38, at 232.

[48] 4 THE DIARY OF SAMUEL PEPYS 258 (Henry B. Wheatley ed., 1893).

[49] The patent was for a "gun or pistol for small shot carrying seven or eight charges of the same in the stock of the gun. . . ." CLIFFORD WALTON, HISTORY OF THE BRITISH STANDING ARMY. A.D. 1660 TO 1700, at 337 (1894).

[50] 7 PEPYS, *supra* note 48, at 61.

[51] PETERSON, THE TREASURY OF THE GUN, *supra* note 38, at 232.

[52] *Id.*

[53] PETERSON, ARMS AND ARMOR IN COLONIAL AMERICA, *supra* note 25, at 215.

have been made in several parts of Europe during the Eighteenth Century and apparently functioned well."[54] Repeaters were expensive in seventeenth and eighteenth centuries, and so were presumably owned almost entirely by economic elite. By around the middle of the nineteenth century, they would become broadly affordable. No English law before 1776, or, for that matter, in the following two hundred years, made any distinction regarding repeating firearms.[55]

II. THE COLONIAL PERIOD AND EARLY REPUBLIC

This Part describes the arms rights, arms mandates, and most common arms in the American colonies and Early Republic. According to *Bruen*, colonial laws are relevant to the extent that they show a wide tradition that existed when the Second Amendment was ratified.[56]

Sections A–C describe the arms prohibitions of the British, Dutch, and Swedish colonies within the future thirteen original United States. As with English traditions that did not survive American independence, Dutch and Swedish traditions not practiced in America's Founding Era are of little relevance—especially those that the British did not accept upon assuming control of the colonies.[57]

Section D lists the types of arms that were so common in America that colonial governments could mandate their ownership. Arms possession mandates applied to militiamen, to some women, and to some men who were exempted from militia duty.

Sections E and F describe the prevalence of repeating arms and cannons, which were far too expensive for mandatory general ownership. There were no laws against private ownership of such arms. Section G summarizes the situation in the United States at the time of the ratification of the Second Amendment.

---

[54] PETERSON, THE TREASURY OF THE GUN, *supra* note 38, at 233.

[55] In 1871 an annual tax was imposed for persons who wanted to carry handguns in public, and in 1920 a licensing system for handgun and rifle possession was introduced. Neither law distinguished single-shot guns from repeaters. JOHNSON ET AL., *supra* note 16, at 2168–69.

[56] *Bruen*, 142 S. Ct. at 2142 ("[W]e doubt that *three* colonial regulations could suffice to show a tradition of public-carry regulation.") (emphasis in original).

[57] *See id.* at 2136 (It is dubious "to rely on an 'ancient' practice that had become 'obsolete in England at the time of the adoption of the Constitution' and never 'was acted upon or accepted in the colonies.'") (quoting Dimick v. Schiedt, 293 U.S. 474, 477 (1935)).

A. The English Colonies

The 105 colonists who set sail on December 20, 1606, to establish the first permanent English settlement in North America, embarked with express and perpetual rights granted by the Royal Charter of King James I. Among the perpetual rights was to bring "sufficient Shipping, and Furniture of Armour, Weapons, Ordinance, Powder, Victual, and other things necessary for the said Plantations and for their Use and Defence there."[58] There were no restrictions on the types of arms they could bring or import.

The arms rights had been granted to the Virginia Company in perpetuity by the 1606 charter issued by King James I, and reiterated in a 1609 charter. The rights applied to all settlers of the Virginia Colony. The Virginia Charter was the first written arms rights guarantee for Englishmen; back in England, the first written guarantee would not come until the 1689 English Bill of Rights.[59]

The 1620 Charter of New England gave the inhabitants the same rights, including arms rights, as the Virginia colony.[60] Like the Virginia Charter, the Charter of New England contained no restrictions on the types of arms.

The 1606 Virginia Charter covered such a vast territory that it is a founding legal document of all the original 13 states, plus West Virginia, Kentucky, and

---

[58] 7 FEDERAL AND STATE CONSTITUTIONS COLONIAL CHARTERS, AND OTHER ORGANIC LAWS OF THE STATES, TERRITORIES, AND COLONIES NOW OR HERETOFORE FORMING THE UNITED STATES OF AMERICA 3783, 3786 (Francis Newton Thorpe ed., 1909); RICHARD MIDDLETON, COLONIAL AMERICA: A HISTORY, 1565–1776, at 48 (3d. ed. 2002) (2003 reprint).

The 105 colonists included "some 35 gentlemen, an Anglican minister, a doctor, 40 soldiers, and a variety of artisans and laborers." *Id.*

A previous attempt in 1585 to establish a colony at Roanoke Island, North Carolina, had failed.

[59] 1 Wm. & Mary, sess. 2, ch. 2 (1689).

[60] The New England Charter declared that it was lawful for

> our loving Subjects, or any other Strangers who become our loving Subjects," to "att all and every time and times hereafter, out of our Realmes or Dominions whatsoever, to take, load, carry, and transports in . . . Shipping, Armour, Weapons, Ordinances, Munition, Powder, Shott, Victuals, and all Manner of Cloathing, Implements, Furniture, Beasts, Cattle, Horses, Mares, and all other Things necessary for the said Plantation, and for their Use and Defense, and for Trade with the People there.

3 FEDERAL AND STATE CONSTITUTIONS COLONIAL CHARTERS, *supra* note 58, at 1834–35. For the New England and Virginia colonies, such imports and exports were untaxed for the first seven years. *Id.* at 1835, 3787–88.

Maine.[61] Similarly, the 1620 Charter of New England is a founding legal document of the New England states (except Vermont), Pennsylvania, New York, and New Jersey.[62]

To encourage immigration to America, all emigrants from England "and every of their children" born in America were guaranteed "all Liberties, Franchises and Immunities . . . as if they had been abiding and born, within this our Realm of *England*, or any other of our said Dominions."[63] Subsequent colonial charters often declared that American colonists had the rights of Englishmen.[64] So in addition to the express arms guarantees in the early colonial charters, the colonists were protected by the 1689 English Bill of Rights, which secured the right of "the subjects which are Protestants [to] have arms for their defence."[65]

All colonies except Pennsylvania required that arms be kept in most homes.[66] In addition to militia statutes, which typically covered males ages 16 to 60, many people not in the militia had to have the same arms as militiamen. As described *infra*, the nonmilitia mandates applied to men exempt from militia duties because of occupation (*e.g.*, doctors), infirmity, or advanced age.

---

[61] Before becoming separate states, West Virginia and Kentucky were part of Virginia, and Maine part of Massachusetts.

[62] 1 *id.* at iv–xiii.

[63] 7 *id.* at 3788 (Virginia, 1606); 3 *id.* at 1839 (New England, 1620) (slight differences in phrasing and spelling).

The colonists who sailed to establish the New England colony, unlike their Virginia predecessors, included many families, and thus women and children. MIDDLETON, *supra* note 58, at 70. In New England, where "[m]ost couples . . . raised large families, with between five and seven children commonly surviving to adulthood," providing the population growth that made the colonies viable. *Id.* at 89. "Twenty thousand people came to New England in the 1630s; thereafter the flow slowed to a trickle. The natural population increase, however, caused the number of towns in Massachusetts to grow from twenty-one in 1641 to thirty-three by 1647." *Id.*

[64] *See* 1 FEDERAL AND STATE CONSTITUTIONS COLONIAL CHARTERS, *supra* note 58, at 533 (Connecticut); 2 *id.* at 773 (Georgia); 3 *id.* at 1681 (Maryland); 3 *id.* at 1857 (Massachusetts Bay); 5 *id.* at 2747 (Carolina, later divided into North and South Carolina); 6 *id.* at 3220 (Rhode Island).

[65] English Bill of Rights, 1 William & Mary, sess. 2, ch. 2 (1689) ("The subjects which are protestants may have arms for their defence suitable to their conditions and as allowed by law.")

[66] Pennsylvania did not have a militia mandate until the adoption of the 1776 state constitution following Independence. PA. CONST. of 1776, § 5; 9 THE STATUTES AT LARGE OF PENNSYLVANIA FROM 1682-1801, at 77 (1903) (enacted 1777). During the French & Indian War, in 1755, the colonial legislature had enacted a statute for voluntary militia companies. 5 *Id.* at 197 (1898).

Arms possession mandates sometimes applied to heads of households, including women. Besides that, arms carrying was often mandatory, and to comply with a carry mandate, a person at least had to have access to arms.

There were no prohibitions on any particular type of arm, ammunition, or accessory in any English colony that later became an American State. The only restriction in the English colonies involving specific arms was a handgun and knife carry restriction enacted in Quaker-owned East New Jersey in 1686.[67]

Today's New Jersey was once part of New Netherland. New Netherland was not subdivided into different colonies. After the English seized New Netherland from the Dutch in 1664, East Jersey, West Jersey, and New York were created as separate colonies. The 1684 East Jersey restriction on carry was in force at most eight years, and was not carried forward when East Jersey merged with West Jersey in 1702.[68] That law imposed no restriction on the possession or sale of any arms.

B. New Sweden

New Sweden existed from 1638 to 1655. It included parts of the future states of Delaware, New Jersey, Maryland, and Pennsylvania. Its core was the region around the lower Delaware River and the Delaware Valley. The area

---

[67] The East Jersey law forbade the concealed carry of "any Pocket Pistol, Skeines [Irish-Scottish dagger], Stilladoes [stilettos], Daggers or Dirks, or other unusual or unlawful Weapons." Further, no "Planter" (frontiersman) could "Ride or go Armed with Sword, Pistol, or Dagger," except when in government service or if "Strangers" (*i.e.* travelers). 23 THE GRANTS, CONCESSIONS, AND ORIGINAL CONSTITUTIONS OF THE PROVINCE OF NEW-JERSEY 289–90 (1758).

[68]

> By 1694, East New Jersey provided that no slave "be permitted to carry any gun or pistol . . . into the woods, or plantations" unless their owner accompanied them. [An Act Against Wearing Swords, &c., ch. 9, in Grants, Concessions, and Original Constitutions of the Province of New Jersey 341 (2d ed. 1881)]. If slave-owning planters were prohibited from carrying pistols, it is hard to comprehend why slaves would have been able to carry them in the planter's presence. Moreover, there is no evidence that the 1686 statute survived the 1702 merger of East and West New Jersey. See 1 Nevill, Acts of the General Assembly of the Province of New-Jersey (1752). At most eight years of history in half a Colony roughly a century before the founding sheds little light on how to properly interpret the Second Amendment.

Bruen, 142 S. Ct. at 2144.

abounded in excellent locations for trade with Indians. In the course of trading, the colonists often sold firearms and cannons to Indians.

At the time, the Swedish Empire ruled Finland, and Finns constituted a large portion of New Sweden's settlers. A substantial subpopulation of the Finnish settlers were the Savo-Karelians, who, unlike many newcomers to North America, already had extensive experience inhabiting wooded frontiers and trading with indigenous peoples, namely the Lapps. In the New World, the Savo-Karelian Finns learned more woodcraft from the Delaware Indians. "On no other part of the colonial American frontier was such rapid and comprehensive acceptance of Indian expertise in hunting and gathering achieved."[69] The Finns hunted with flintlock rifles and shotguns, and many settlers were capable of manufacturing and repairing their own arms.[70]

We are aware of no law in New Sweden against the possession of any type of arm, ammunition, or accessory. Rather, the New Swedes used modern firearms (flintlocks) and cannons. Having friendly relations with nearby Indians, they traded these arms freely with them.

The Dutch Republic conquered New Sweden in 1655, assimilating it into New Netherland. The Dutch hoped the Swedes would continue to immigrate because "the Swedish people are more conversant with, and understand better than any other nation . . . hunting and fowling."[71] When the English gained control of the region a decade later, they too acknowledged the Finns' unique and welcome backwoods expertise.[72]

C. New Netherland

New Netherland stretched from Cape Henlopen (on the south side of the Delaware Bay) north to Albany, New York, and eastward to Cape Cod (in far southeastern Massachusetts). The colony included parts of present-day New York, New Jersey, Connecticut, and Delaware, in addition to small outposts that the colony claimed in Rhode Island and Pennsylvania.[73] New Netherland was part of the Dutch Republic, an industrial powerhouse that led the world

---

[69] TERRY G. JORDAN & MATTI E. KAUPS, THE AMERICAN BACKWOODS FRONTIER: AN ETHICAL AND ECOLOGICAL INTERPRETATION 232 (1988).

[70] *See id.* at 222–24.

[71] 2 JOHN R. BRODHEAD, DOCUMENTS RELATIVE TO THE COLONIAL HISTORY OF THE STATE OF NEW-YORK PROCURED IN HOLLAND, ENGLAND, AND FRANCE 242 (E. B. O'Callaghan ed., 1858).

[72] JORDAN & KAUPS, *supra* note 69, at 150.

[73] CHARLES MCLEAN ANDREWS, COLONIAL SELF-GOVERNMENT: 1652–1689, at 74 (1904).

in arms manufacturing. Dutch arms earned a reputation for reliability and affordability, and often made their way to America.[74]

The West India Company—a Dutch chartered company of merchants—founded New Netherland in 1624 and ruled it autocratically. The founding of New Netherland being motivated by commerce, the colonists soon began trading firearms.[75] This caused a problem that would last as long as the colony itself because their customers were often Indians who threatened the colony's existence.[76]

In 1639, "the Director General and Council of New Netherland hav[ing] observed that many persons . . . presumed to sell to the Indians in these parts, Guns, Powder and Lead, which hath already caused much mischief," made it "most expressly forbidden to sell any Guns, Powder or Lead to the Indians, on pain of being punished by Death."[77] In 1645, having been "informed with certainty, that our enemies [the Indians] are better provided with Powder than we," New Netherland reaffirmed the death penalty for "all persons . . . daring to trade any munitions of War with the Indians," and required vessels to obtain permission to travel with munitions, to ensure that they were not secretly engaging in such trade.[78] This prohibition was renewed in 1648.[79]

New Netherland continued to wrestle with the problem of colonists providing arms to Indians in the 1650s. A 1652 ordinance established another ban on the trading of firearms from "[p]rivate persons" to Indians.[80] But the ordinance "is not among the Records, and seems, indeed, not to have been very strictly enforced."[81] Indeed, in 1653, New Netherland's Directors noted that the colony's Director General had "been obliged . . . to connive somewhat in

---

[74] *See* DAVID J. SILVERMAN, THUNDERSTICKS: FIREARMS AND VIOLENT TRANSFORMATION OF NATIVE AMERICA 25 (2016); H. Ph. Vogel, *The Republic as an Arms Exporter 1600-1650*, *in* THE ARSENAL OF THE WORLD: THE DUTCH ARMS TRADE IN THE SEVENTEENTH CENTURY 13–21 (Jan Peit Puype & Macro van der Hoeven eds., B.J. Martens, G. de Vries & Jan Peit Puype trans., 1996) (Dutch edition 1993).

[75] SILVERMAN, *supra* note 74, at 96–98.

[76] *See generally* Shaun Sayres, *"A Dangerous Liberty": Mohawk-Dutch Relations and the Colonial Gunpowder Trade, 1534–1665*, Master's Thesis in History, U. of N.H. (2018), https://scholars.unh.edu/cgi/viewcontent.cgi?article=2173&context=thesis.

[77] LAWS AND ORDINANCES OF NEW NETHERLAND, 1638-1674, at 18–19 (E. B. O'Callaghan ed., 1868).

[78] *Id.* at 47.

[79] *Id.* at 101.

[80] *Id.* at 128.

[81] *Id.*

regard to the" trading ban; they instructed him "to deal herein with a sparing hand, and take good care that through this winking no more ammunition be sold to the Indians than each one has need of for the protection of his house and for obtaining the necessaries of life, so that this cruel and barbarous Nation may not be able, at any time, to turn and employ their weapons against ourselves there."[82] The Director General and his Council did not deal sparingly enough; instead, as a 1656 law pointed out, they personally profited from the Indian arms trade.[83]

Consequently, previous restrictions were "revive[d] and renew[ed]," with "the following amplification":

> That henceforth no person, of what nation or quality soever he may be, shall be at liberty to bring into the Country for his own or ship's use any sort of Snaphance or Gunbarrels, finished or unfinished, not even on the Company's permit, save only, according to order, one Carbine, being a firelock of three to three and a half feet barrel and no longer.[84]

In addition to limiting the number of flintlocks colonists could bring into the colony, the law targeted the smuggling of arms by requiring all private ships to submit to searches "both on their arrival and departure."[85]

In 1664, after the Duke of York's English forces conquered New Netherland with ease, New Netherland became the British colony of New York.[86]

---

[82] *Id.*

[83]

> [T]he Director General and Council of New Netherland are to their regret informed and told of the censure and blame under which they are lying among Inhabitants and Neighbors on account of the non-execution of their previously enacted and frequently renewed Edicts . . . some not only presuming that the Director General and Council connive with the violators, but even publicly declaring that the Director General and Council aforesaid have made free the importation and trade in Contraband which, for that reason, is carried on with uncommon licentiousness and freedom.

Id. at 236–37.

[84] *Id.* Another 1656 law "forb[ade] the admission of any Indians with a gun or other weapon, either in this City or in the Flatland, into the Villages and Hamlets, or into any Houses or any places." *Id.* at 235.

[85] *Id.* at 237–38.

[86] CARL P. RUSSELL, GUNS ON THE EARLY FRONTIERS 10 (1957).

The one-flintlock law of 1656 is the only a restriction on a particular type of arm in what would become the original thirteen American states. It was enacted out of desperation at the end of a futile decades-long attempt to restrict gun sales to adversaries who threatened the colony's survival. The law did not ban any colonist from possessing flintlocks or limit how many they could own; it limited the number they could bring into the colony. No English colony enacted a similar restriction. The one-flintlock import limit vanished upon the British takeover of New Netherland.

D. Arms Mandates in Colonial America

Subsection 1 describes who was required to possess or carry arms. Subsection 2 lists the various types of arms whose possession was mandatory. In colonial America, "the gun was more abundant than the tool. It furnished daily food; it maintained its owner's claims to the possession of his homestead among the aboriginal owners of the soil; it helped to win the mother country's wars for possession of the country as a whole."[87]

1. Who was required to keep or bear arms?

The most common age for militia service in the colonies was 16 to 60 years of age. Typical militia statutes required militia-eligible males to own at least one cutting weapon (such as a sword or bayonet) and at least one firearm.[88]

Many colonies also required ownership by people who were *not* in the militia. These included males with occupational exemptions from the militia and males who were too old for militia service.[89] No state authorized female

[87] 1 CHARLES WINTHROP SAWYER, FIREARMS IN AMERICAN HISTORY 1 (1910).

[88] *See* David B. Kopel & Joseph G.S. Greenlee, *The Second Amendment Rights of Young Adults*, 43 S. ILL. U.L.J. 495, 533–89 (2019).

[89] For example, Delaware exempted certain occupations from routine militia service, but still ordered them to be armed and ready to serve in an emergency:

> [A]ll Justices of the Peace, Physicians, Lawyers, and Millers, and Persons incapable through Infirmities of Sickness or Lameness, shall be exempted and excused from appearing to muster, except in Case of an Alarm [an attack on the locality]: They being nevertheless obliged, by this Act, to provide and keep by them Arms and Ammunition as aforesaid, as well as others. And if an Alarm

service in the militia, but several—Massachusetts, Maryland, Virginia, New Hampshire, Vermont, and Connecticut—at least sometimes required females to have the same arms as militiamen.[90] Like males who were militia-exempt because of age or occupation, armed females were part of their communities' emergency defense. Whenever a small town was attacked, everybody who was able would fight as needed, including women, children, and the elderly.[91]

> happen, then all those, who by this Act are obliged to keep Arms as aforesaid . . . shall join the General Militia.

LAWS OF THE GOVERNMENT OF NEW-CASTLE, KENT AND SUSSEX UPON DELAWARE 176–77 (1741).

[90] In order of enactment:

Maryland: "every housekeeper or housekeepers within this Province shall have ready continually upon all occasions within his her or their house for him or themselves and for every person within *his her or their house* able to bear armes one Serviceable fixed gunne of bastard muskett boare," plus, a pound of gunpowder, four pounds of shot, and firearms ignition accessories. 1 ARCHIVES OF MARYLAND 77 (enacted 1639) (William Hand Browne ed., 1885) (emphasis added).

Virginia: "ALL persons except negroes to be provided with arms and ammunition or be fined at pleasure of the Governor and Council." WILLIAM WALLER HENING, 1 THE STATUTES AT LARGE; BEING A COLLECTION OF ALL THE LAWS OF VIRGINIA, FROM THE FIRST SESSION OF THE LEGISLATURE, IN THE YEAR 1619, at 226 (1823) (enacted 1639).

Massachusetts: "all inhabitants." 2 RECORDS OF THE GOVERNOR AND COMPANY OF THE MASSACHUSETTS BAY IN NEW ENGLAND 134 (Nathaniel B. Shurtleff ed. 1853) (enacted 1645). *Cf. id*. at 99 (requiring arms training for children of both sexes, ages 10–16).

Rhode Island: "that every Inhabitant of the Island above sixteen or under sixty years of age, shall always be provided with a Musket," a pound of gunpowder, twenty bullets, a sword, and other accessories. *Acts and Orders of 1647*, *in* COLONIAL ORIGINS OF THE AMERICAN CONSTITUTION: A DOCUMENTARY HISTORY 183–84 (Donald S. Lutz ed., 1998).

Connecticut: "all persons that are above the age of sixteene yeares, except magistrates and church officers, shall beare arms . . . ; and every male person within this jurisdiction, above the said age, shall have in continuall readines, a good muskitt or other gunn, fitt for service, and allowed by the clark of the band." 1 PUBLIC RECORDS OF THE COLONY OF CONNECTICUT 542–43 (J. Hammond Trumbull ed., 1850) (enacted 1650).

New Hampshire: every "Householder" to have musket, bandoliers, cartridge box, bullets, powder, cleaning tools, and a sword. 2 LAWS OF NEW HAMPSHIRE: PROVINCE PERIOD 285 (Albert Stillman Batchellor ed., 1904) (enacted 1718).

Vermont: "every listed soldier and other householder" must have a firearm, a blade weapon, gunpowder, bullets, and cleaning equipment. VERMONT STATE PAPERS, BEING A COLLECTION OF RECORDS AND DOCUMENTS, CONNECTED WITH THE ASSUMPTION AND ESTABLISHMENT OF GOVERNMENT BY THE PEOPLE OF VERMONT; TOGETHER WITH THE JOURNAL OF THE COUNCIL OF SAFETY, THE FIRST CONSTITUTION, THE EARLY JOURNALS OF THE GENERAL ASSEMBLY, AND THE LAWS FROM THE YEAR 1779 TO 1786, INCLUSIVE 307 (1823).

[91] *See* STEVEN C. EAMES, RUSTIC WARRIORS: WARFARE AND THE PROVINCIAL SOLDIERS ON THE NEW ENGLAND FRONTIER, 1689-1748, at 28–29 (2011).

As *Heller* observed, "Many colonial statutes required individual arms-bearing for public-safety reasons."[92] Colonies required arms carrying to attend church,[93] public assemblies,[94] travel,[95] and work in the field.[96]

The carry mandates referred to a "man" or "he," except in Massachusetts, which mandated carry by any "person."[97] They did not require that the individual carry of a specific type of firearm, and sometimes allowed a sword instead of a firearm. Nor did they require that the carrier personally own the firearm; the statutes presumed that a person engaged in the listed activities would have ready access to a firearm.

---

[92] *Heller*, 554 U.S. at 601.

[93] Proceedings of the Virginia Assembly, 1619, in LYON GARDINER TYLER, NARRATIVES OF EARLY VIRGINIA, 1606-25, at 273 (1907) (enacted 1619); 1 HENING, *supra* note 90, at 198 (1632); VIRGINIA LAWS 1661-1676, at 37 (1676) (enacted 1665); THE COMPACT WITH THE CHARTER AND LAWS OF THE COLONY OF NEW PLYMOUTH 102 (William Brigham ed., 1836) (enacted 1656) (Apr. 1 through Nov. 30, militiamen only); *id.* at 115 (1658) (changing Apr. 1 to Mar. 1); *id.* at 176 (1675) (year-round); 3 ARCHIVES OF MARYLAND, *supra* note 90, at 103 (1642); 1 THE PUBLIC RECORDS OF THE COLONY OF CONNECTICUT 95–96 (J. Hammond Trumbull ed. 1850) (enacted 1643); RECORDS OF THE COLONY AND PLANTATION OF NEW HAVEN, FROM 1638 TO 1649, at 131–32 (Charles J. Hoadly ed., 1857) (enacted 1644) (New Haven was a separate colony from Connecticut until 1662); DAVID J. MCCORD, 7 STATUTES AT LARGE OF SOUTH CAROLINA 417–19 (1840) (enacted 1740, re-enacted 1743) (militiamen only); 19 THE COLONIAL RECORDS OF THE STATE OF GEORGIA, Part 1, at 137–40 (Allen D. Candler ed., 1904) (enacted 1770, militiamen only).

[94] 1 RECORDS OF THE GOVERNOR AND COMPANY OF THE MASSACHUSETTS BAY IN NEW ENGLAND 190 (Nathaniel B. Shurtleff ed., 1853) (enacted 1637); 2 *id.* at 38 (1638 repeal of 1637 law; replaced in 1643 with instruction for each town's militia head to "appoint what armes to bee brought to the meeting houses on the Lords dayes, & other times of meeting."); 1 RECORDS OF THE COLONY OF RHODE ISLAND AND PROVIDENCE PLANTATIONS, IN NEW ENGLAND 94 (John Russell Bartlett ed., 1856) (enacted 1639) ("none shall come to any public Meeting without his weapon").

[95] 1 HENING, *supra* note 90, at 127 (Virginia, 1623); *id.* at 173 (1632); 1 MASS. BAY RECS. at 85 (1631, travel to Plymouth); *id.* at 190 (1636) ("travel above one mile from his dwelling house, except in places wheare other houses are neare together"); 1 RECORDS OF THE COLONY OF RHODE ISLAND at 94 (1639) ("noe man shall go two miles from the Towne unarmed, eyther with Gunn or Sword"); 3 ARCHIVES OF MARYLAND at 103 (1642) ("any considerable distance from home").

[96] 1 HENING, *supra* note 90, at 127 (Virginia, 1624); *id.* at 173 (1632).

[97] 1 Mass. Bay Recs. at 190 (1637, meetings), repealed the next year, 1 Mass. Bay Recs. at 190; 1 *id.* at 85 (travelers, 1631), 1 *id.* at 190 (travelers, 1636).

2. Types of mandatory arms

The statutes that required the keeping of arms—by all militia and some nonmilitia—indicate some of the types of arms that were so common during the colonial period that it was practical to mandate ownership. Collectively, the colonial statutes mandated ownership of a wide range of arms.

We will list the different types of mandated arms, starting with cutting weapons.

Knives, swords, and hatchets

- *Backsword*.[98] "A kind of sabre. A sword having a straight, or very slightly curved, single-edged blade."[99]
- *Bayonet*.[100] A knife attached to the muzzle of a gun.[101]
- *Broad Sword*.[102] "A sword with a straight, wide, single-edged blade. It was the military sword of the 17th century" and "also the usual weapon of the common people."[103]

[98] 2 BACKGROUNDS OF SELECTIVE SERVICE: MILITARY OBLIGATION: THE AMERICAN TRADITION, Part 2, at 14 (Arthur Vollmer ed., 1947) (Connecticut 1650).

[99] STONE, *supra* note 14, at 84 ("Back Sword").

[100] BACKGROUNDS OF SELECTIVE SERVICE, *supra* note 98, Part 2 (Connecticut), at 176, 177 (1775), 205 (1775), 256 (1784); Part 3 (Delaware), at 28 (1785); Part 4 (Georgia), at 7 (1755, 57 (1765), 80 (1773), 122 (1778); Part 5 (Maryland), at 102 (1756); Part 6 (Massachusetts), at 200 (1758), 223 (1776); 231 (1776-7); 246 (1781); Part 7 (New Hampshire), at 82 (1776), 104, 105 (1780), 116 (1780); Part 8 (New Jersey), at 12 (1713), 16 (1722), 20 (1730), 25, 26, 27 (1746), 33, 34, 37 (1757), 41 (1777), 64 (1779), 70 (1781); Part 9 (New York), at 267 (1778), 271 (1778), 311 (1782), 326 (1783); Part 12 (Rhode Island), at 37 (1705), 39 (1718), 90 (1767), 99 (1774), 184 (1781), 197 (1781), 201 (1781), 203 (1781), 204, 206 (1793), 217, 219 (1798); Part 13 (South Carolina), at 9 (1703), 24 (1721), 40 (1747), 67 (1778); Part 14 (Virginia), at 78 (1723), 105 (1738), 146, 150 (1755), 206, 210 (1757), 258, 274, 277 (1775), 306 (1775), 322, 323 (1777).

[101] *See* STONE, *supra* note 14, at 107 ("Bayonet").

[102] BACKGROUNDS OF SELECTIVE SERVICE, *supra* note 98, Part 8 (New Jersey), at 81 (1781); Part 9 (New York), at 311 (1782); Part 10 (North Carolina, at 21 (1756), 29 (1760), 35 (1764), 42 (1766), 52 (1774).

[103] STONE, *supra* note 14, at 150–51.

- *Cutlas, Cutlass, Cutlace.*[104] "A broad curving sword; a hanger; used by soldiers in the cavalry, by seamen, etc."[105]
- *Cutting-Sword.*[106] A category of "short, single-edged" swords, which included cutlasses and hangers.[107]
- *Hanger.*[108] "A short broad sword, incurvated towards the point."[109]
- *Hatchet.*[110] "A small ax with a short handle, to be used with one hand."[111] A popular substitute for a sword.[112]
- *Jack-knife.*[113] A folding pocket-knife, with blades ranging from three to twelve inches.[114]
- *Rapier.*[115] "A sword especially designed for thrusting and provided with a more or less elaborate guard."[116]

---

[104] BACKGROUNDS OF SELECTIVE SERVICE, *supra* note 98, Part 2 (Connecticut), at 131 (1741); Part 8 (New Jersey), at 41, 45 (1777); Part 10 (North Carolina), at 11 (1746), 39 (1766), 49 (1774); Part 13 (South Carolina), at 68 (1778).

[105] 1 NOAH WEBSTER, AN AMERICAN DICTIONARY OF THE ENGLISH LANGUAGE (1828) (unpaginated) ("Cutlas"); *see also* STONE, *supra* note 14, at 198 ("a family of backswords.")

[106] BACKGROUNDS OF SELECTIVE SERVICE, *supra* note 98, Part 6 (Massachusetts), at 223 (1776), 231 (1776-7); Part 14 (Virginia), 78 (1723), 105 (1738), 145, 146 (1755), 150, 151 (1755), 211 (1757).

[107] PETERSON, ARMS AND ARMOR IN COLONIAL AMERICA, *supra* note 25, at 79–80.

[108] BACKGROUNDS OF SELECTIVE SERVICE, *supra* note 98, Part 4 (Georgia), at 122 (1778); Part 5 (Maryland), at 91 (1756); Part 7 (Maryland), at 105 (1780); Part 9 (New York), at 4 (1694), 16 (1691), 46 (1702), 53 (1702), 80 (1721), 89 (1724), 116 (1739), 134 (1743), 148 (1744), 165 (1746), 188 (1755), 227 (1764), 243 (1772), 252 1775); Part 10 (North Carolina), at 10 (1746), 19 (1756), 26 (1760), 32 (1764), 39 (1766), 49 (1774); Part 12 (Rhode Island), at 204, 206 (1793), 217 (1798).

[109] 1 WEBSTER, *supra* note 105, (unpaginated).

[110] BACKGROUNDS OF SELECTIVE SERVICE, *supra* note 98, Part 4 (Georgia), at 7, 35 (1755), 69 (1765), 80, 109 (1773), 122 (1778); Part 6 (Massachusetts), at 133 (1689), 199 (1758), 223 (1776), 231 (1776-7); Part 7 (New Hampshire), 31 (1692), 82 (1776), 117 (1780); Part 8 (New Jersey), at 10 (1693); Part 13 (South Carolina), at 9 (1703), 17 (1707), 24 (1721), 40, 52 (1747).

[111] 1 WEBSTER, *supra* note 105, (unpaginated).

[112] *See* PETERSON, ARMS AND ARMOR IN COLONIAL AMERICA, *supra* note 25, at 87–88.

[113] BACKGROUNDS OF SELECTIVE SERVICE, *supra* note 98, Part 6 (Massachusetts), at 223 (1776); Part 7 (New Hampshire), at 82 (1776).

[114] GEORGE G. NEUMANN, SWORDS & BLADES OF THE AMERICAN REVOLUTION 231 (3d ed. 1991).

[115] BACKGROUNDS OF SELECTIVE SERVICE, *supra* note 98, Part 9 (New York), at 4 (1694), 16 (1691), 46 (1702), 53 (1702).

[116] STONE, *supra* note 14, at 524–26.

- *Scabbards.*[117] "The sheath of a sword."[118]
- *Scimeter, scymiter, simeter, semeter, cimeter.*[119] "The strongly curved Oriental sabre."[120]
- *Sword.*[121] "An offensive weapon worn at the side, and used by hand either for thrusting or cutting."[122]
- *Tomahawk.*[123] "An Indian hatchet."[124]

---

[117] BACKGROUNDS OF SELECTIVE SERVICE, *supra* note 98, Part 6 (Massachusetts), at 200 (1758), 223 (1776), 246 (1781), 263 (1789); Part 7 (New Hampshire), at 82 (1776), 104 (1780).

[118] 2 WEBSTER, *supra* note 105, (unpaginated).

[119] BACKGROUNDS OF SELECTIVE SERVICE, *supra* note 98, Part 14 (Virginia), at 59 (1701).

[120] STONE, *supra* note 14, at 545 ("Scymiter, Scimeter"). "Guard" means a handguard, a barrier between the handle and the blade.

[121] BACKGROUNDS OF SELECTIVE SERVICE, *supra* note 98, Part 2 (Connecticut), at 5 (1638), 12 (1650), 18 (1658), 28 (1673), 30 (1673), 44 (1677), 46 (1687), 60, 61, 63 (1702), 92, 94, 95 (1715), 123, 124, 129 (1741), 131, 138 (1741), 150, 151, 156 (1754), 256 (1784); Part 4 (Georgia), at 57 (1765), 80 (1773), 122 (1778); Part 5 (Maryland), at 6 (1638), 17 (1678), 25 (1681), 32 (1692), 39 (1695), 42 (1699), 51 (1704), 66 (1715), 91 (1756); Part 6 (Massachusetts), at 21 (1643), 25 (1643), 29 (1645), 39 (1647), 59 (1649), 68 (1658), 86, 91 (1671), 100, 105 (1672), 129 (1685), 133 (1689), 139 (1693); Part 7 (New Hampshire), at 12, 13 (1687), 31 (1692), 52 (1718), 82 (1776), 105 (1780); Part 8 (New Jersey), at 5 (1675); 8 (1682), 12 (1713), 16 (1722), 20 (1730), 25, 27, 30 (1746), 33, 35, 37 (1757), 41, 45 (1777); Part 9 (New York), at 4 (1694), 16 (1691), 46 (1702), 52, 53 (1702), 80 (1721), 89, 90 (1724), 116 (1739), 118 (1739), 134 (1743), 148, 150 (1744), 164, 165 (1746), 188 (1755), 227, 229 (1764), 243, 245 (1772), 252, 255 (1775), 273 (1778), 311 (1782); Part 10 (North Carolina), at 7 (1715), 10, 13 (1746), 19 (1754), 26 (1760), 32 (1764), 39 (1766), 49 (1774), 123 (1781); Part 11 (Pennsylvania), at 10, 14 (1676), 16 (1676); Part 12 (Rhode Island), at 3 (1647), 26 (1701), 34, 37 (1705), 42 (1718), 90, 95 (1767), 204, 206 (1793), 217, 219 (1798); Part 13 (South Carolina), at 9 (1703), 17 (1707), 24, 31 (1721), 40 (1747); Part 14 (Virginia), at 48 (1684), 50 (1684), 65, 66 (1705), 211 (1757), 277 (1775), 322 (1777), 424 (1784).

[122] 2 WEBSTER, *supra* note 105, (unpaginated).

[123] BACKGROUNDS OF SELECTIVE SERVICE, *supra* note 98, Part 6 (Massachusetts), at 223 (1776), 231 (1776-7); Part 7 (New Hampshire), at 82 (1776); Part 8 (New Jersey), at 41 (1777), 70 (1781); 10 (North Carolina), at 57 (1777), 62 (1777), 69 (1778); Part 13 (South Carolina), at 68 (1778); Part 14 (Virginia), at 274 (1775), 322 (1777).

[124] 2 WEBSTER, *supra* note 105, (unpaginated).

Pole arms

- *Halberd, Halbard, Halbart.*[125] "[A] polearm bearing an axehead balanced by a break or fluke and surmounted by a sharp point."[126]
- *Half-Pike.*[127] "A small pike carried by officers."[128]
- *Lance.*[129] "A spear, an offensive weapon in form of a half pike, used by the ancients and thrown by the hand. It consisted of the shaft or handle, the wings and the dart."[130]
- *Partisan.*[131] "A broad-bladed pole arm usually having short, curved branches at the base of the blade."[132]
- *Pike.*[133] "A military weapon consisting of a long wooden shaft or staff, with a flat steel head pointed; called the spear."[134]
- *Spontoon, Espontoon.*[135] A six-foot-long pole arm.[136] Sometimes "spontoon" was used interchangeably with "half-pike," but "spontoon" sometimes described a more decorative type.[137]

---

[125] BACKGROUNDS OF SELECTIVE SERVICE, *supra* note 98, Part 14 (Virginia), at 151 (1755), 211 (1757). Some towns and counties were required to provide halberds. *See e.g.*, BACKGROUNDS OF SELECTIVE SERVICE, *supra* note 98, Part 3 (Delaware), at 5 (1741), 14 (1756), 22 (1757); Part 6 (Massachusetts), at 49 (1653), 68 (1658), 80 (1669), 88 (1671), 102 (1672), 130 (1685), 135 (1690), 143 (1693), 168 (1738), 170 (1742), 201 (1758); Part 7 (New Hampshire), at 57 (1718); Part 11 (Pennsylvania), at 12 (1676); Part 14 (Virginia), at 277 (1775).

[126] PETERSON, ARMS AND ARMOR IN COLONIAL AMERICA, *supra* note 25, at 93; *see also* STONE, *supra* note 14, at 275 ("Halbard, Halbart, Halberd").

[127] THE PUBLIC RECORDS OF THE COLONY OF CONNECTICUT, FROM 1665 TO 1678, at 208 (J. Hammond Trumbull ed., 1852) (1673 Connecticut); BACKGROUNDS OF SELECTIVE SERVICE, *supra* note 98, Part 7 (New Hampshire), at 105 (1780).

[128] 1 WEBSTER, *supra* note 105, (unpaginated).

[129] BACKGROUNDS OF SELECTIVE SERVICE, *supra* note 98, Part 9 (New York), at 4 (1694), 16 (1691), 46 (1702), 52 (1702).

[130] 2 WEBSTER, *supra* note 105, (unpaginated).

[131] BACKGROUNDS OF SELECTIVE SERVICE, *supra* note 98, Part 14 (Virginia), at 151 (1755).

[132] STONE, *supra* note 14, at 484 ("Partizan").

[133] BACKGROUNDS OF SELECTIVE SERVICE, *supra* note 98, Part 2 (Connecticut), at 25 (1666), 46 (1687); Part 6 (Massachusetts), at 22 (1643), 86 (1671), 100 (1672); Part 9 (New York), at 4 (1694), 16 (1691), 53 (1702).

[134] 2 WEBSTER, *supra* note 105, (unpaginated).

[135] BACKGROUNDS OF SELECTIVE SERVICE, *supra* note 98, Part 7 (New Hampshire), at 105 (1780); Part 12 (Rhode Island), at 204 (1793), 217 (1798); Part 14 (Virginia), at 424 (1784).

[136] *See* NEUMANN, *supra* note 114, at 191.

[137] *See* PETERSON, ARMS AND ARMOR IN COLONIAL AMERICA, *supra* note 25, at 286–87.

Firearms

- Bastard muskets[138] "In military affairs, bastard is applied to pieces of artillery which are of an unusual make or proportion."[139] Bastard muskets were shorter and lighter than typical muskets.
- *Caliver*.[140] "A kind of handgun, musket or arquebuse."[141]
- *Carbine*.[142] "A short gun or fire arm, carrying a ball of 24 to the pound, borne by light horsemen, and hanging by a belt over the left shoulder. The barrel is two feet and a half long, and sometimes furrowed."[143]
- Case of pistols.[144] Handguns were often sold in matched pairs. A "case of pistols"—sometimes called a "brace of pistols"—is such a pair.[145]

---

[138] BACKGROUNDS OF SELECTIVE SERVICE, *supra* note 98, Part 2 (Connecticut), at 30 (1673), 60 (1702); 92 (1715); Part 5 (Maryland), at 6 (1638); Part 6 (Massachusetts), at 41 (1647), 45 (1647), 56 (1660), 86 (1671), 129 (1685), 139 (1693); Part 7 (New Hampshire), at 52 (1718).

[139] 1 WEBSTER, *supra* note 105, (unpaginated).

[140] BACKGROUNDS OF SELECTIVE SERVICE, *supra* note 98, Part 2 (Connecticut), at 30 (1673); Part 6 (Massachusetts), at 124 (1677).

[141] 2 WEBSTER, *supra* note 105, (unpaginated).

[142] 2 The Public Records of the Colony of Connecticut, From 1665 to 1678, at 207 (J. Hammond Trumbull ed., 1852) (1673 Connecticut); BACKGROUNDS OF SELECTIVE SERVICE, *supra* note 98, Part 2 (Connecticut), at 28 (1673), 30 (1673), 46 (1687), 57 (1696), 60 (1702), 92 (1715), 124 (1741), 131 (1741), 151 (1754), 202 (1775); Part 5 (Maryland), at 17 (1678), 25 (1681), 32 (1692), 39 (1695), 42 (1699), 51 (1704), 66 (1715), 91 (1756); Part 6 (Massachusetts), at 59 (1660), 91 (1671), 105 (1672), 116 (1675), 132 (1685), 139 (1693); Part 7 (New Hampshire), at 13 (1688), 52 (1718); Part 8 (New Jersey), at 30 (1746), 45 (1777); Part 9 (New York), at 5 (1694), 16 (1691), 47 (1710), 53 (1702), 80 (1721), 116 (1739), 134 (1743), 148 (1744), 165 (1746), 188 (1755), 243 (1772), 252 (1775), 273 (1778), 311 (1782); Part 10 (North Carolina), at 21 (1756), 29 (1760), 35 (1764), 42 (1766), 52 (1774), 75 (1778); Part 11 (Pennsylvania), at 14, 16 (1676); Part 12 (Rhode Island), at 29 (1701), 45 (1730), 95 (1767); Part 13 (South Carolina), at 31 (1721); Part 14 (Virginia), at 50 (1684), 65, 66 (1705), 78 (1723), 105 (1738), 145 (1755).

[143] 1 WEBSTER, *supra* note 105, (unpaginated).

[144] BACKGROUNDS OF SELECTIVE SERVICE, *supra* note 98, Part 2 (Connecticut), at 46 (1687), 92 (1715), 131 (1741), 151 (1754), 256 (1784); Part 6 (Massachusetts), at 139 (1693); Part 8 (New Jersey), at 30 (1746); 45 (1777); Part 9 (New York), at 4 (1694), 16 (1691), 46 (1702), 53 (1702), 80 (1721), 89 (1724), 116 (1739), 134 (1743), 148 (1744), 188 (1755), 227 (1764), 243 (1772), 252 (1775), 273 (1778), 311 (1782); Part 10 (North Carolina), at 13 (1746), 21 (1756), 29 (1760), 35 (1764), 42 (1766), 52 (1774), 75 (1778); Part 12 (Rhode Island), at 45 (1730); Part 14 (Virginia)), at 65, 66 (1705), 78 (1723), 105 (1738), 145, 150 (1755).

[145] Clayton E. Cramer & Joseph Edward Olson, *Pistols, Crime, and Public: Safety in Early America*, 44 WILLAMETTE L. REV. 699, 709, 719 (2008).

- *Firelock.*[146] "A musket, or other gun, with a lock, which is discharged by striking fire with flint and steel."[147] Today, commonly called a flintlock. As of the late eighteenth century, all modern firearms were flintlocks.
- *Fowling piece.*[148] "A light gun for shooting fowls."[149]
- *Fusee, fuse, fuze, fuzee, fusil.*[150] "[A] light, smoothbore shoulder arm of smaller size and caliber than the regular infantry weapon."[151]
- *Matchlock.*[152] "[T]he lock of a musket which was fired by a match."[153] The standard firearm of the early seventeenth century. During the century Americans shifted from matchlocks to flintlocks (a/k/a firelocks), which were more reliable and faster to reload.

---

[146] BACKGROUNDS OF SELECTIVE SERVICE, *supra* note 98, Part 2 (Connecticut), at 18 (1656), 60 (1702), 92 (1715), 123, 129 (1741), 131, 138 (1741), 150, 156 (1754), 236 (1780); Part 3 (Delaware), at 2, 3 (1741), 28 (1785); Part 5 (Maryland), at 6 (1638), 102 (1756); Part 6 (Massachusetts), at 25 (1643), 124 (1677), 139 (1693), 255 (1781); Part 7 (New Hampshire), at 52 (1718), 116 (1780); Part 8 (New Jersey), at 5 (1675), 8 (1682); Part 9 (New York), at 267 (1778), 271 (1778), 282 (1779), 287 (1780), 310 (1782), 326 (1783); Part 11 (Pennsylvania), at 10 (1676); Part 12 (Rhode Island), at 204 (1793), 217 (1798); Part 14 (Virginia), at 65 (1705), 78 (1723), 146, 150 (1755), 206, 211 (1757), 274 (1775), 322 (1777).

[147] 1 WEBSTER, *supra* note 105 (unpaginated).

[148] BACKGROUNDS OF SELECTIVE SERVICE, *supra* note 98, Part 4 (Georgia), at 146 (1784).

[149] 1 WEBSTER, *supra* note 105 (unpaginated).

[150] BACKGROUNDS OF SELECTIVE SERVICE, *supra* note 98, Part 3 (Delaware), at 11 (1756), 17 (1757); Part 4 (Georgia), at 146 (1784); Part 7 (New Hampshire), at 105 (1780); Part 8 (New Jersey), at 12 (1713), 16, 18 (1722), 20 (1730), 25, 26, 27 (1746), 33, 35, 37 (1757); Part 9 (New York), at 16 (1691), 46 (1702), 52 (1702), 80 (1721), 90 (1724), 118 (1739), 136 (1743), 150 (1744), 164 (1746), 188 (1755), 229 (1764), 245 (1772), 255 (1775); Part 10 (North Carolina), at 13 (1746); Part 12 (Rhode Island), at 42 (1718), 90 (1767), 99 (1744), 206 (1793), 219 (1798); Part 13 (South Carolina), at 30, 32 (1721); Part 14 (Virginia), at 59 (1701), 65 (1705), 78 (1723), 105 (1738).

[151] GEORGE C. NEUMANN, BATTLE WEAPONS OF THE AMERICAN REVOLUTION 19 (2011).

[152] BACKGROUNDS OF SELECTIVE SERVICE, *supra* note 98, Part 2 (Connecticut), at 8 (1638), 14 (1650), 18, 19 (1656), 30 (1673); Part 5 (Maryland), at 6 (1638); Part 6 (Massachusetts), at 2 (1631), 25 (1643), 29 (1645), 34 (1645), 39 (1647), 86 (1671); Part 11 (Pennsylvania), at 10 (1676); Part 12 (Rhode Island), at 3 (1647).

[153] 2 WEBSTER, *supra* note 105 (unpaginated).

- *Musket*.[154] "The term 'musket' has always referred to a heavy military gun. In the 16th an 17th century it was a matchlock."[155] "Later the name came to signify any kind of a gun used by regular infantry."[156]
- *Pistol*.[157] "A small fire-arm, or the smallest fire-arm used, differing from a musket chiefly in size. Pistols are of different lengths, and borne by horsemen in cases at the saddle bow, or by a girdle. Small pistols are carried in the pocket."[158]
- *Rifle*.[159] "A gun about the usual length and size of a musket, the inside of whose barrel is rifled, that is, grooved, or formed with spiral channels."[160]

---

[154] 2 The Public Records of the Colony of Connecticut, From 1665 to 1678, at 207 (J. Hammond Trumbull ed., 1852) (1673 Connecticut); BACKGROUNDS OF SELECTIVE SERVICE, *supra* note 98, Part 2 (Connecticut), at 5 (1638), 12 (1650), 28 (1673), 30 (1673), 46 (1687), 60 (1702), 92 (1715), 256 (1784); Part 3 (Delaware), at 2 (1741), 3 (1741), 11 (1756), 17 (1757); Part 4 (Georgia), at 6 (1755), 80 (1773), 146 (1784); Part 5 (Maryland), at 6 (1638); Part 6 (Massachusetts), at 2 (1631), 10 (1634), 25 (1643), 29 (1645), 39 (1646), 45 (1647), 56 (1660), 86 (1671), 116 (1675-6), 124 (1677), 129, 131 (1685), 139 (1693); Part 7 (New Hampshire), at 12 (1687), 52 (1718), 104 (1780); Part 8 (New Jersey), at 25, 27 (1746), 12 (1713), 18 (1722), 20, 23 (1730), 33, 35, 37 (1757), 41 (1777), 64 (1779), 70 (1781); Part 9 (New York), at 16 (1691), 4 (1694), 46 (1702), 52 (1702), 80 (1721), 90 (1724), 117 (1739), 136 (1743), 150 (1744), 164 (1746), 180 (1746), 188 (1755), 229 (1764), 245 (1772), 255 (1775), 271, 273 (1778), 282 (1779), 233 (1780), 310, 311 (1782), 326 (1783); Part 12 (Rhode Island), at 3 (1647), 22 (1677), 26 (1701), 42 (1718), 147 (1779), 184 (1781), 204 (1793), 217 (1798); Part 13 (South Carolina), at 40 (1747), 67 (1778); Part 14 (Virginia), at 59 (1701), 65 (1705), 78 (1723), 105 (1738), 258 (1775), 306 (1775), 312 (1775), 424 (1784).

[155] PETERSON, ARMS AND ARMOR IN COLONIAL AMERICA, *supra* note 25, at 14.

[156] STONE, *supra* note 14, at 461 ("Musquet, Musket"). Stone notes that the musket was originally "a matchlock gun too heavy to be fired without a rest, therefore the smallest of cannon. As many cannon were given the names of birds and animals, this was called a musket, the falconer's name for the male sparrow hawk, the smallest of hawks." *Id.*

[157] BACKGROUNDS OF SELECTIVE SERVICE, *supra* note 98, Part 2 (Connecticut), at 57 (1696); Part 4 (Georgia), at 74 (1766); Part 5 (Maryland), at 17 (1678), 25 (1681), 32 (1692), 39 (1695), 42 (1699), 51 (1704), 66 (1715), 91 (1756); Part 6 (Massachusetts), at 91 (1671), 105 (1672), 132 (1685); Part 8 (New York), at 81 (1781); Part 9 (New York), at 4 (1694), 16 (1691), 46 (1702), 52, 53 (1702); Part 10 (North Carolina), at 123 (1781); Part 11 (Pennsylvania), at 14, 16 (1676); Part 12 (Rhode Island), at 29 (1701), 95 (1676), 206 (1793), 219 (1798); Part 13 (South Carolina), at 31 (1721); Part 14 (Virginia), at 59 (1701), 150 (1755), 419 (1782).

[158] 2 WEBSTER, *supra* note 105, (unpaginated).

[159] BACKGROUNDS OF SELECTIVE SERVICE, *supra* note 98, Part 4 (Georgia), at 146 (Georgia 1784); Part 8 (New Jersey), at 41 (1777), 70 (1784); Part 9 (New York), at 310 (1782); Part 12 (Rhode Island), at 204 (1793), 217 (1798); Part 13 (South Carolina), at 68 (1778); Part 14 (Virginia), at 258 (1775), 274 (1775), 306 (1775), 322 (1777), 425 (1784).

[160] 2 WEBSTER, *supra* note 105, (unpaginated).

- *Snaphaunce.*[161] "During the 17th century, *snaphaunce* commonly referred to any flintlock system."[162]

Armor

In the usage of the time, "arms" included missile weapons (*e.g.*, guns, bows, cannons), cutting weapons (*e.g.*, knives, swords, bayonets), and blunt impact weapons (*e.g.*, clubs, slungshots, canes). As *Heller* explained, "arms" also included armor: "Timothy Cunningham's important 1771 legal dictionary defined 'arms' as 'any thing that a man wears for his defence, or takes into his hands, or useth in wrath to cast at or strike another.'"[163] Also cited in *Heller*, Samuel Johnson's and Thomas Sheridan's dictionaries defined "arms" as "weapons of offence, or armour of defence."[164] Also cited was the first dictionary of *American* English, by Noah Webster, defining "arms" as "Weapons of offense, or armor for defense and protection of the body."[165]

As described in Part 1.A., England's 1181 Assize of Arms mandated ownership of certain armor and also restricted types of armor by economic class. No armor restrictions existed in America.

---

[161] BACKGROUNDS OF SELECTIVE SERVICE, *supra* note 98, Part 6 (Massachusetts), at 124 (1677).

[162] NEUMANN, *supra* note 114, at 8; *see also* RICHARD M. LEDERER, JR., COLONIAL AMERICAN ENGLISH 216 (1985) ("snaphance (*n*.) A flintlock.").

[163] *Heller*, 554 U.S. at 581 (quoting 1 TIMOTHY CUNNINGHAM, A NEW AND COMPLETE LAW DICTIONARY (1771)).

[164] 1 SAMUEL JOHNSON, DICTIONARY OF THE ENGLISH LANGUAGe 107 (4th ed.); T. SHERIDAN, A COMPLETE DICTIONARY OF THE ENGLISH LANGUAGE (1796) (slightly different capitalization in Sheridan).

[165] 1 WEBSTER, *supra* note 105, (unpaginated).

The *Heller* Court relied on Johnson, Sheridan, and Webster in its analysis of the Second Amendment's text. For Johnson, *see Heller*, 554 U.S. at 581 ("arms"), 582 ("keep"), 584 ("bear"), 597 ("regulate"). For Sheridan, *see id.* at 584 (defining "bear"). For Webster, s*ee id.* at 581 ("arms"), 582 ("keep"), 584 ("bear"), 595 ("militia").

- *Breastplate.*[166] "A plate, or set of plates, covering the front of the body from the neck to a little below the waist."[167]
- *Buff coat.*[168] "A heavy leather coat . . . . originally made of buffalo leather."[169] "It was a long skirted coat, frequently without a collar."[170]
- *Corslet.*[171] "Originally it meant leather armor . . . . [l]ater its meaning was strictly plate armor for the body only."[172]
- *Cotton coat.*[173] "A thick cotton coat which covered part of the arms and thighs, made in one piece," which protected against arrows.[174]

---

[166] BACKGROUNDS OF SELECTIVE SERVICE, *supra* note 98, Part 2 (Connecticut), at 46 (1687); Part 7 (New Hampshire), at 13 (1687); Part 9 (New York), at 4 (1694), 16 (1691), 46 (1702), 53 (1702), 80 (1721), 89 (1724), 116 (1739), 134 (1743), 148 (1744), 165 (1746), 188 (1755), 227 (1764), 243 (1772), 252 (1775), 273 (1778), 311 (1782); Part 10 (North Carolina), 29 (1760), 35 (1764), 41–42 (1766), 52 (1774); Part 12 (Rhode Island), 45 (1718), 206 (1793), 219 (1798); Part 14 (Virginia), at 65 (1705), 78 (1723), 105 (1738), 145, 150 (1755).

[167] STONE, *supra* note 14, at 143.

[168] BACKGROUNDS OF SELECTIVE SERVICE, *supra* note 98, Part 6 (Massachusetts), at 78 (1666), 95 (1671), 107 (1672).

[169] STONE, *supra* note 14, at 152.

[170] *Id.*

[171] BACKGROUNDS OF SELECTIVE SERVICE, *supra* note 98, Part 6 (Massachusetts), at 29 (1646), 56 (1660), 86 (1671), 100 (1672); THE PUBLIC RECORDS OF THE COLONY OF CONNECTICUT, PRIOR TO THE UNION WITH NEW HAVEN COLONY, MAY 1665, at 14 (J. Hammond Trumbull ed., 1850) (1637, "Harteford 21 Coslets, Windsor 12, Weathersfeild 10, Agawam 7"); BACKGROUNDS OF SELECTIVE SERVICE, *supra* note 98, Part 2, at 7–8 (Connecticut, 1638, "corseletts or cotton coates": Wyndsor (12), Hartford (20), Weathersfield (8), Seabrook (3), Farmington (3), Fairfield (6), Strattford (6), Southhampton (3), Pequett (3); *id.* at 13–14 (Connecticut, 1650, "cotton coates or corseletts": Wyndsor (9), Hartford (12), Weathersfield (8), Seabrook (3), Farmington (3), Fairfield (6), Strattford (6), Southhampton (3), Pequett (3).

[172] STONE, *supra* note 14, at 192 ("Corselet, Corslet").

[173] A 1638 act required Connecticut towns to keep "corseletts" or "cotton coates": Wyndsor (12), Hartford (20), Weathersfield (8), Seabrook (3), Farmington (3), Fairfield (6), Strattford (6), Southhampton (3), Pequett (3). BACKGROUNDS OF SELECTIVE SERVICE, *supra* note 98, Part 2 (Connecticut), at 7–8. A 1642 act ordered 90 coats "basted with cotton wooll and made defensive against Indean arrowes; Hartford 40, Wyndsor 30, Wethersfield 20." *Id.* at 10. A 1650 act required Connecticut towns to keep "cotton coates" or "corseletts": Wyndsor (9), Hartford (12), Weathersfield (8), Seabrook (3), Farmington (3), Fairfield (6), Strattford (6), Southhampton (3), Pequett (3). *Id.* at 13–14.

[174] Walter Hough, *Primitive American Armor*, *in* ANNUAL REPORT OF THE BOARD OF REGENTS THE SMITHSONIAN INSTITUTION 647 (1895).

- *Crupper.*[175] "The armor for the hind quarters of a horse."[176]
- *Helmet.*[177] "Generally any headpiece, specifically the open headpiece of the time of the Norman conquest."[178]
- *Pectoral.*[179] "A covering for the breast, either defensive or ornamental."[180]
- *Quilted coat.*[181] "Armor made of several thicknesses of linen, or other cloth, quilted or pour-pointed together."[182]

Ammunition

Of course ammunition and gunpowder were mandatory. While many laws required owning certain quantities of gunpowder and ammunition, some required specific types of ammunition.

- *Buck shot.*[183] Multiple large pellets often used for deer hunting.[184]

---

[175] BACKGROUNDS OF SELECTIVE SERVICE, *supra* note 98, Part 2 (Connecticut), at 46 (1687); Part 7 (New Hampshire), at 13 (1687); Part 9 (New York), at 4 (1694), 16 (1691), 46 (1702), 53 (1702), 80 (1721), 89 (1724), 116 (1739), 134 (1743), 148 (1744), 165 (1746), 188 (1755), 227 (1764), 243 (1772), 252 (1775), 273 (1778), 311 (1782); Part 10 (North Carolina), at 29 (1760), 35 (1764), 42 (1766), 52 (1774); Part 12 (Rhode Island), 45 (1718), 206 (1793), 219 (1798); Part 14 (Virginia), at 65 (1705), 78 (1723), 105 (1738), 145, 150 (1755).

[176] STONE, *supra* note 14, at 195 ("Crupper, Croupiere Bacul").

[177] BACKGROUNDS OF SELECTIVE SERVICE, *supra* note 98, Part 2 (Connecticut), at 256 (1784); Part 6 (Massachusetts), at 29 (1646) ("head peeces"), 56 (1660) ("head peece"), 86 (1671) ("head piece"), 100 (1672) ("head-piece").

[178] STONE, *supra* note 14, at 289.

[179] BACKGROUNDS OF SELECTIVE SERVICE, *supra* note 98, Part 2 (Connecticut), at 60 (1702).

[180] STONE, *supra* note 14, at 492.

[181] BACKGROUNDS OF SELECTIVE SERVICE, *supra* note 98, Part 6 (Massachusetts), at 78 (1666), 95 (1671), 107 (1672).

[182] STONE, *supra* note 14, at 520 ("Quilted Armor").

[183] BACKGROUNDS OF SELECTIVE SERVICE, *supra* note 98, Part 6 (Massachusetts), at 223, 228 (1776); Part 7 (New Hampshire), at 82 (1776).

[184] R.A. STEINDLER, THE FIREARMS DICTIONARY 250 (1970) (the largest shotgun pellets are "small & large buck shot").

- *Swan shot, Goose shot*.[185] "Large shot, but smaller than buckshot, used for hunting large fowl, small game, and occasionally used in battle."[186]

Equipment

Mandatory equipment included tools for carrying or loading ammunition, and for cleaning or repairing firearms.

- *Bandoleer*.[187] "A large leathern belt, thrown over the right shoulder, and hanging under the left arm; worn by ancient musketeers for sustaining their fire arms, and their musket charges, which being put into little wooden cases, and coated with leather, were hung, to the number of twelve, to each bandoleer."[188]
- *Worm*.[189] A corkscrew-shaped device attached to the end of a ramrod that is used for cleaning and for extracting unfired bullets and other ammunition components from firearms.[190]

---

[185] BACKGROUNDS OF SELECTIVE SERVICE, *supra* note 98, Part 10 (North Carolina), at 8 (1715), 10 (1746), 19 (1756), 26 (1760), 32 (1764), 39 (1766), 49 (1774); Part 13 (South Carolina), 68 (1778); Part 14 (Virginia), at 59 (1701).

[186] MARK M. BOATNER III, ENCYCLOPEDIA OF THE AMERICA REVOLUTION 1085 (3d ed. 1994) ("Swan Shot").

[187] BACKGROUNDS OF SELECTIVE SERVICE, *supra* note 98, Part 2 (Connecticut), at 5 (1650).

[188] 1 WEBSTER, *supra* note 105, (unpaginated) ("Bandoleers").

[189] BACKGROUNDS OF SELECTIVE SERVICE, *supra* note 98, Part 2 (Connecticut), at 18 (1656), 60 (1702), 92 (1714), 123 (1741), 131 (1741), 150 (1754); Part 3 (Delaware), at 11 (1756), 17, 18 (1757); Part 4 (Georgia), at 7 (1755), 57 (1765), 80 (1773), 122 (1778); Part 6 (Massachusetts), at 25 (1643), 41 (1645), 45 (1647), 56 (1649), 86 (1671), 129 (1685), 139 (1693), 223 (1776), 246 (1781), 263 (1789); Part 7 (New Hampshire), at 52 (1718), 82 (1776), 104 (1780); Part 8 (New Jersey), at 5 (1758), 8 (1758), 41 (1777), 64 (1779), 70 (1781); Part 10 (North Carolina), at 19 (1756), 26 (1760), 32 (1764), 39 (1766), 49 (1774); Part 11 (Pennsylvania), at 10 (1676); Part 12 (Rhode Island), at 147 (1779), 191 (1781); Part 13 (South Carolina), at 9 (1703), 17 (1707), 24 (1721), 40 (1747), 68 (1778).

[190] GEORGE C. NEUMANN & FRANK J. KRAVIC, COLLECTOR'S ILLUSTRATED ENCYCLOPEDIA OF THE AMERICAN REVOLUTION 264 (1975); STEINDLER, *supra* note __, at 278; LEDERER, JR., *supra* note __, at 246 ("wormer").

- *Horn, Powderhorn.*[191] "A horn in which gunpowder is carried by sportsmen."[192] Most horns came from cattle, rams, or similar animals.[193]
- *Rest.*[194] "A staff with a forked head to rest the musket on when fired, having a sharp iron ferule at bottom to secure its hold in the ground."[195]
- *Shot bag.*[196] This term may refer to a charger or to a bag for carrying bullets.[197]
- *Scourer.*[198] A ramrod.[199]

---

[191] BACKGROUNDS OF SELECTIVE SERVICE, *supra* note 98, Part 2 (Connecticut), at 18 (1656), 166 (1758), 169 (1759); Part 4 (Georgia), at 6 (1755), 57, 69 (1765), 80, 109 (1773), 122 (1778), 146 (1784); Part 6 (Massachusetts), at 133 (1689), 199 (1758), 229 (1776), 250 (1781); Part 7 (New Hampshire), at 31 (1692); Part 8 (New Jersey), at 5 (1758), 8 (1682), 12 (1713), 16, 18 (1722), 20, 23 (1730), 25, 27 (1746), 33, 34, 37 (1757); Part 9 (New York), at 271 (1778), 310 (1782); Part 10 (North Carolina), at 57 (1777), 62 (1777), 69 (1778), 101 (1781); Part 11 (Pennsylvania), at 10 (1676); Part 12 (Rhode Island), at 204 (1793), 217 (1798); Part 13 (South Carolina), at 24 (1721), 40 (1747), 52 (1747); Part 14 (Virginia), at 323 (1777).

[192] 1 WEBSTER, *supra* note 105, (unpaginated).

[193] RAY RILING, THE POWDER FLASK BOOK 13 (1953).

[194] BACKGROUNDS OF SELECTIVE SERVICE, *supra* note 98, Part 2 (Connecticut), at 5 (1638), 12 (1650), 18 (1656); Part 6 (Massachusetts), at 25 (1643), 29 (1645), 86 (1671); Part 5 (Maryland), at 6 (1638); Part 12 (Rhode Island), at 3 (1647).

[195] 2 F. W. FAIRHOLT, COSTUME IN ENGLAND: A HISTORY OF DRESS TO THE END OF THE EIGHTEENTH CENTURY 293 (H. A. Dillon ed., 4th ed. 1910) ("Musket-Rest"); *see also* STEPHEN BULL, ENCYCLOPEDIA OF MILITARY TECHNOLOGY AND INNOVATION 184 (2004) ("[A] forked pole about four feet in length").

[196] BACKGROUNDS OF SELECTIVE SERVICE, *supra* note 98, Part 2 (Connecticut), at 18 (1656), 166 (1758), 169 (1759); Part 4 (Georgia), at 69 (1765), 80 (1773); Part 9 (New York), at 271 (1778), 310 (1782); Part 10 (North Carolina), at 57 (1777), 62 (1777), 69 (1778), 101 (1781); Part 11 (Pennsylvania), at 10 (1676); Part 12 (Rhode Island), at 204 (1793), 217 (1798); Part 13 (South Carolina), at 24 (1721), 40 (1747); Part 14 (Virginia), at 258, 274 (1775), 306 (1775), 323 (1777).

[197] RILING, *supra* note __, at 256–57, 430–31; JIM MULLINS, OF SORTS FOR PROVINCIALS: AMERICAN WEAPONS OF THE FRENCH AND INDIAN WAR 43–44 (2008).

[198] BACKGROUNDS OF SELECTIVE SERVICE, *supra* note 98, Part 2 (Connecticut), at 18 (1656); Part 6 (Massachusetts), at 41 (1645), 45 (1647), 86 (1671), 100 (1672); Part 11 (Pennsylvania), at 10 (1676).

[199] CHARLES JAMES, AN UNIVERSAL MILITARY DICTIONARY 791 (4th ed. 1816).

- *Charger*.[200] A bulb-shaped flask for carrying powder, attached to metal components that release a premeasured quantity of the powder.[201]
- *Priming wire, Picker*.[202] Used to clean the flashpan and the touch hole (the small hole where the fire from the priming pan connected with the main powder charge).[203]
- *Cartridge Box*.[204] A box for storing and carrying cartridges.[205]

In America, unlike England, militiamen were never required to own bows and arrows. By the time that immigration to America began, the age of the bow was passing away. Only Massachusetts, which always valued education highly, required girls and boys to be taught archery. A 1645 statute ordered "that all youth within this jurisdiction, from ten years old to the age of sixteen

---

[200] BACKGROUNDS OF SELECTIVE SERVICE, *supra* note 98, Part 2 (Connecticut), at 18 (1656); Part 7 (New Hampshire), at 31 (1692); Part 11 (Pennsylvania), at 10 (1676).

[201] STONE, *supra* note 14, at 563.

[202] BACKGROUNDS OF SELECTIVE SERVICE, *supra* note 98, Part 2 (Connecticut), at 18 (1656), 60 (1702), 92 (1715), 123 (1741), 131 (1741), 150 (1754), 256 (1784); Part 3 (Delaware), at 11 (1756), 17, 18 (1757), 28 (1785); Part 4 (Georgia), at 7 (1755), 57 (1765), 80 (1773), 122 (1778); Part 6 (Massachusetts), 41 (1645), 86 (1671), 100 (1672), 129 (1685), 139 (1693), 223 (1776), 246 (1781), 263 (1789); Part 7 (New Hampshire), at 52 (1718), 82 (1776), 104 (1780); Part 8 (New Jersey), at 5 (1675), 41 (1777), 64 (1779), 70 (1781); Part 10 (North Carolina), at 19 (1756), 26 (1760), 32 (1764), 39 (1766), 49 (1774); Part 11 (Pennsylvania), at 10 (1676); Part 12 (Rhode Island), at 147 (1779), 191 (1781), 211 (1793), 230 (1798); Part 13 (South Carolina), at 9 (1703), 17 (1707), 24 (1721), 40 (1747), 68 (1778).

[203] NEUMANN & KRAVIC, *supra* note __, at 264.

[204] BACKGROUNDS OF SELECTIVE SERVICE, *supra* note 98, Part 2 (Connecticut), at 123 (1741), 131 (1741), 150 (1754); Part 3 (Delaware), at 2, 3 (1741), 11 (1756), 17 (1757), 28 (1785); Part 4 (Georgia), at 6 (1755), 57 (1765), 122 (1778), 146 (1784); Part 6 (Massachusetts), at 131 (1685), 133 (1689), 139 (1693), 223 (1776), 231 (1776), 246 (1781), 255 (1781), 263 (1789); Part 7 (New Hampshire), at 12 (1687), 52 (1718), 82 (1776), 104 1780), 116 (1780); Part 8 (New Jersey), at 8 (1682), 12 (1713), 16, 18 (1722), 20, 22 (1730), 25, 27, 30 (1746), 33, 35, 37 (1757), 41, 45 (1777); Part 9 (New York), at 4 (1694), 16 (1691), 52, 53 (1702), 80 (1721), 90, 91 (1724), 118 (1739), 136 (1743), 150 (1744), 154 (1746), 164 (1746), 180 (1746), 188 (1755), 230 (1764), 245 (1772), 252, 255 (1775), 267 (1778), 271, 273 (1778), 282 (1779), 310, 311 (1782), 326 (1783); Part 10 (North Carolina), at 11 (1746), 19, 21 (1756), 39 (1766), 49 (1774), 101, 108 (1781); Part 12 (Rhode Island), at 206 (1793), 219, 230 (1798); Part 13 (South Carolina), at 9 (1703), 16 (1707), 24 (1721), 40 (1747); Part 14 (Virginia), at 65, 66 (1705), 78 (1723), 105 (1738), 145, 146, 150 (1755), 206, 210 (1757), 274 (1775), 322, 323 (1777), 425 (1784).

[205] RILING, *supra* note __, at 483. "Cartouche" is the French word for "cartridge." Cartouche boxes were used for carrying paper cartridges; these contained the bullet and a measured quantity of gunpowder, wrapped in paper. *Id.*

years, shall be instructed . . . in the exercise of arms," including "small guns, half-pikes, bows and arrows &c."[206]

E. Repeating Arms

Repeating arms were far too expensive to mandate. Some did end up in North America.[207] These included mid-1600s repeaters using a revolving cylinder that was rotated by hand.[208] An English Cookson repeater with a 10-round magazine is "believed to have found its way into Maryland with one of the early English colonists." It later became "perhaps the capstone of the collection of arms in the National Museum at Washington, D.C."[209] "Beginning about 1710 commerce brought wealth to some of the merchants in the northern Colonies, and with other luxuries fancy firearms began to be in demand."[210]

In 1722 Boston's John Pim demonstrated a gun he had built. According to an observer, the gun "loaded but once" "was discharged eleven times following, with bullets, in the space of two minutes, each which went through a double door at fifty yards' distance."[211] Another Boston gunsmith, Samuel Miller, advertised a 20-shot repeater, which he would demonstrate for a fee.[212]

However, there are no presently known records, such as newspaper advertisements, of an American before the Revolution manufacturing repeaters for sale as a business.[213]

With the Revolution underway in 1777, Joseph Belton of Philadelphia demonstrated a musket that shot 16 rounds all at once. The observers included top military leaders General Horatio Gates and Major General Benedict Arnold

---

[206] BACKGROUNDS OF SELECTIVE SERVICE, *supra* note 98, Part 6 (Massachusetts), at 26, 31 (1645).

[207] "A few repeating arms were made use of in a military way in America." 1 SAWYER, *supra* note 87, at 28–29. For example, there is "record that [Louis de Buade de] Frontenac in 1690 astonished the Iroquois with his three and five shot repeaters." *Id.* at 29.

[208] *See, e.g.*, 2 *id.* at 5 (six-shot flintlock); CHARLES EDWARD CHAPEL, GUNS OF THE OLD WEST 202–03 (1961) (revolving snaphance).

[209] *The Cookson Gun and the Mortimer Pistols*, AMERICAN RIFLEMAN, vol. 63, at 3, 4 (Sep. 29, 1917).

[210] 1 SAWYER, *supra* note 87, at 31.

[211] Samuel Niles, A Summary Historical Narrative of the Wars in New England, *in* 5 MASSACHUSETTS HISTORICAL SOCIETY COLLECTIONS, 4th ser., at 347 (1837).

[212] NEW-ENGLAND WEEKLY JOURNAL, Mar. 2, 1730.

[213]

and one of America's greatest scientists, David Rittenhouse.[214] At their recommendation, the Continental Congress ordered one hundred Belton guns, but wanted them to fire 8 shots, not 16.[215] (Gunpowder availability was very tight.) However, Belton demanded what the Congress deemed "an extraordinary allowance," which the Continental Congress could not afford. [216]

The U.S. Congress that in 1789 sent the Second Amendment to the States for ratification included men who had served in the Continental Congress, and who were therefore well aware that 16-shot repeaters were possible, albeit very expensive.[217]

---

[214] Letter from Joseph Belton to the Continental Congress (Jul. 10, 1777), *in* 1 PAPERS OF THE CONTINENTAL CONGRESS, COMPILED 1774–1789, *supra* note **Error! Bookmark not defined.**, at 139.

> Philadelphia July 10th 1777
>
> Having Carefully examined M. Beltons New Constructed Musket from which He discharged Sixteen Balls loaded at one time, we are fully of Opinion that Muskets of his Construction with some small alterations, or improvements might be Rendered, of great Service, in the Defense of lives, Redoubts, Ships &c, & even in the Field, and that for his Ingenuity, & improvement he is Intitled to a hansome reward from the Publick.
>
> Dav. Rittenhouse B Arnold Charles Wm Seale Horatio Gates G Nash Th F Proctor J W Strickland

[215] Report of the Continental Congress (May 3, 1777), *in* 7 JOURNALS OF THE CONTINENTAL CONGRESS 1774–1789, at 324 (Worthington Chauncey Ford ed., 1907).

> Resolved, That John Belton be authorized and appointed to superintend, and direct, the making or altering of one hundred muskets, on the construction exhibited by him, and called 'the new improved gun,' which will discharge eight rounds with once loading; and that he receive a reasonable compensation for his trouble, and be allowed all just and necessary expences.

[216] Report of the Continental Congress (May 15, 1777), in 7 JOURNALS OF THE CONTINENTAL CONGRESS 1774–1789, *supra* note 215, at 361.

[217] Delegates who served in the Second Continental Congress in 1777 include Roger Sherman, Lyman Hall, both Charles Carroll(s), future Supreme Court Justice Samuel Chase, John Adams, Samuel Adams, Elbridge Gerry, John Hancock, John Witherspoon, future first U.S. Supreme Court Chief Justice John Jay, future Supreme Court Justice James Wilson, Benjamin Harrison (father and grandfather of two future Presidents), Richard Henry Lee, and Francis Lightfoot Lee. *List of delegates to the Continental Congress*, Wikipedia, https://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/List_of_delegates_to_the_Continental_Congress.

After the war, Belton moved to England, where he made 7-shot repeaters for the British East India Company.[218] During the war, some British forces used the breechloading single-shot Ferguson Rifle, which "fired six shots in one minute" in a government test on June 1, 1776.[219] The Royal Navy's 1779 Nock volley gun had seven barrels (six outer barrels around a center barrel) that fired simultaneously.

When the Second Amendment was ratified, the state-of-the-art repeater was the Girardoni air rifle. It could consecutively shoot 21 or 22 rounds in .46 or .49 caliber, utilizing a tubular spring-loaded magazine.[220] Although an air gun, the Girardoni was ballistically equal to a powder gun.[221] It could take an elk with one shot.[222] The tubular magazine was quick to reload with speedloading tubes. A Girardoni could fire 40 times before the air bladder needed to be pumped up again.[223]

At the time, "there were many gunsmiths in Europe producing compressed air weapons powerful enough to use for big game hunting or as military weapons."[224] The Girardoni was invented for the Austrian army around 1779; 1,500 were issued to sharpshooters and remained in service for 25 years,

---

[218] It could be reloaded by switching in a preloaded metal magazine. *See* Jonathan Ferguson, *"Flintlock Repeating – 1786"* youtube.com/watch?v=-wOmUM40G2U.

[219] ROGER LAMB, AN ORIGINAL AND AUTHENTIC JOURNAL OF OCCURRENCES DURING THE LATE AMERICAN WAR 309 (1809). Because the Ferguson was loaded from the breech, not the muzzle, reloading was much faster. PAUL LOCKHART, FIREPOWER: HOW WEAPONS SHAPED WARFARE 173 (2021).

[220] JAMES B. GARRY, WEAPONS OF THE LEWIS AND CLARK EXPEDITION 100–01 (2012).

[221] JOHN PLASTER, THE HISTORY OF SNIPING AND SHARPSHOOTING 69–70 (2008).

[222] JIM SUPICA, ET AL., TREASURES OF THE NRA NATIONAL FIREARMS MUSEUM 31 (2013).

[223] Pumping was not fast. It took about 1,500 strokes to completely fill the air reservoir. A modern writer called the Girardoni "a stone cold killer at up to 100 yards." He reported from test firing that the muzzle velocity of the .46 caliber bullet was 900 foot-pounds per second—comparable to a 21st century 45 ACP handgun. But the Girardoni could be too delicate. "The rudimentary fabrication methods of the day engineered weak threading on the [air] reservoir neck and this was the ultimate downfall of the weapon. The reservoirs were delicate in the field and if the riveted brazed welds parted the weapon was rendered into an awkward club as a last resort." John Paul Jarvis, *The Girandoni Air Rifle: Deadly Under Pressure*, Guns.com, Mar. 15, 2011, https://www.guns.com/news/2011/03/15/the-girandoni-air-rifle-deadly-under-pressure.

[224] GARRY, *supra* note 220, at 91.

including in the Napoleonic Wars.[225] Isaiah Lukens of Pennsylvania manufactured Girardoni rifles,[226] as did "many makers in Austria, Russia, Switzerland, England, and various German principalities."[227]

Meriwether Lewis is believed to have acquired from Lukens the Girardoni rifle that he famously carried on the Lewis and Clark Expedition.[228] Lewis mentioned it in his journal at least twenty-two times. Sixteen times, Lewis was demonstrating the rifle to impress various Native American tribes encountered on the expedition—often "astonishing" or "surprising" them,[229] and making the point that although the expedition was usually outnumbered, the smaller group could defend itself.[230]

F. Cannons

Cannons were manufactured and privately owned in colonial America. When the Quaker-dominated Pennsylvania legislature would not fund a militia in 1747, Benjamin Franklin and some friends arranged a lottery to purchase some cannons and borrowed other cannons from New York.[231] During the French and Indian War, Georgia's legislature authorized militia officers to impress privately owned cannons for use by the militia.[232]

On the frontiers, cannons were kept to defend fortified buildings against attacks by Indians, the French, or Spanish. In a seaport, the greatest concern might be resistance to bombardment by an enemy fleet.

---

[225] GERALD PRENDERGHAST, REPEATING AND MULTI-FIRE WEAPONS 100–01 (2018); GARRY, *supra* note 220, at 91–94.

As a testament to the rifle's effectiveness, "[t]here are stories that Napoleon had captured air riflemen shot as terrorists, making it hard to recruit men for the air rifle companies." *Id.* at 92.

[226] Nancy McClure, *Treasures from Our West: Lukens Air Rifle*, BUFFALO BILL CENTER FOR THE AMERICAN WEST, Aug. 3, 2014, https://centerofthewest.org/2014/08/03/treasures-west-lukens-air-rifle/.

[227] GARRY, *supra* note 220, at 99.

[228] *Id.*

[229] *See e.g.*, 6 MERIWETHER LEWIS & WILLIAM CLARK, THE JOURNALS OF THE LEWIS & CLARK EXPEDITION at 233 (Gary Moulton ed. 1983) (Jan. 24, 1806, entry) ("My Air-gun also astonishes them very much, they cannot comprehend it's shooting so often and without powder; and think that it is *great medicine* which comprehends every thing that is to them incomprehensible.").

[230] *See generally id.* (13 vols.).

[231] 1 JAMES PARTON, LIFE AND TIMES OF BENJAMIN FRANKLIN 267 (1864). The authors thank Clayton Cramer for bringing this example to our attention.

[232] BACKGROUNDS OF SELECTIVE SERVICE, *supra* note 98, Part 4 (Georgia), at 24 (1755).

In December 1774, when tensions with Great Britain were rising towards war, a meeting of "Freeholders and other Inhabitants of the Town," chaired by revolutionary firebrand Samuel Adams, complained that "a Number of Cannon, the Property of a respectable Merchant in this Town were seized & carried off by force" by the British.[233]

As during the French & Indian war, private contributions of cannons to the common cause were necessary. In New Jersey in September 1777, Brigadier-General Forman lent the state militia his personal "three Pieces of Field Artillery." These would establish a militia artillery company.[234]

A Pennsylvania law to disarm "disaffected" persons authorized militia officers to "take from every such person" various weapons. The weapons listed were apparently common enough that some members of the public possessed them: "any cannon, mortar, or other piece of ordinance, or any blunderbuss, wall piece, musket, fusee, carbine or pistols, or other fire arms, or any hand gun; and any sword, cutlass, bayonet, pike or other warlike weapon."[235]

In 1783, Boston passed a fire-prevention law forbidding citizens who kept cannons in their home or outbuildings from keeping them loaded with gunpowder.[236] Any "cannon, swivels, mortars, howitzers, cohorns, fire-arms, bombs, grenades, and iron shells of any kind" that were stored loaded with gunpowder could be confiscated and "sold at public auction" back to private individuals.[237]

At sea, privately owned cannons were especially important. As long as there had been American vessels, some merchant or other civil ships carried cannons for protection against pirates.

---

[233] BOSTON GAZETTE, Jan. 2, 1775.

[234] 1776-1777 N.J. Acts 107, ch. 47.

[235] 1779 Pa. Laws 193, sec. 5.

[236] 1783 Mass. Acts 218, ch. 13.

The law also applied to firearms. According to *Heller*, "That statute's text and its prologue, which makes clear that the purpose of the prohibition was to eliminate the danger to firefighters posed by the 'depositing of loaded Arms' in buildings, give reason to doubt that colonial Boston authorities would have enforced that general prohibition against someone who temporarily loaded a firearm to confront an intruder (despite the law's application in that case)." 554 U.S. at 631–32.

[237] *Id.*

Under longstanding international law, governments during wartime issued letters of marque and reprisal.[238] The letters authorized privately owned ships, *privateers*, to attack and capture the military or commercial ships of the enemy.[239] The captured property (*prizes*) would be divided among the privateer's crew and owners, according to contract. Typically, prizes were put up for auction in a friendly port. A captured ship might be kept by the privateers, or sold.

Naval combat at the time used cannon fire, so anyone issued a letter of marque or reprisal would have to buy a significant number of cannons to turn his civil vessel into a warship for offensive use.

In the American Revolution, the Massachusetts Bay Colony was the first to issue letters of marque and reprisal, in November 1775.[240] The Continental Congress followed suit later that month.[241]

During the war, the number of American privateers far exceeded the combined number of warships of the Continental Navy and the State naval militias. Every privateer, by definition, was armed at private expense.[242]

Operating up and down the Atlantic seaboard, in the British West Indies, and even off the West African coast, American privateers were rarely strong enough to engage a British navy warship. Instead, they massively damaged

---

[238] To be precise, a letter of marque authorizes the holder to enter enemy territory. A letter of reprisal authorizes the holder to transport a captured prize to the holder's nation.

Cases on letters of marque and reprisal include Murray v. Schooner Charming Betsy, 6 U.S. (2 Cranch) 64 (1800); Bas v. Tingy, 4 U.S. (4 Dall.) 37 (1800) (Quasi-War with France); Schooner Exchange v. M'Faddon, 11 U.S. (7 Cranch) 116 (1812); The Thomas Gibbons, 12 U.S. (8 Cranch) 421 (1814) (War of 1812); Prize Cases, 7 U.S. (2 Black) 635 (1862) (Civil War).

For legal history, a leading survey is Theodore M. Cooperstein, *Letters Of Marque And Reprisal: The Constitutional Law And Practice Of Privateering*, 40 J. MAR. L. & COM. 221 (2009) (including a thorough bibliography of authorities).

[239] *See* ERIC J. DOLIN, REBELS AT SEA: PRIVATEERING IN THE AMERICAN REVOLUTION (2022). Capturing a military ship happened only rarely. A privateer had a much better chance of outgunning an enemy merchant ship.

[240] An Act & Resolve for Encouraging the Fixing out of Armed Vessels, Mass. Gen. Ct., Nov. 1, 1775; DOLIN at 11.

[241] 3 J. Cont. Cong. 373 (Nov. 25, 1775); 4 J. Cont. Cong. 229-30 (Mar. 23. 1776).

[242] Acquiring at private expense was achieved by purchase in the United States, often with shareholder financing, or by seizure from enemy vessels.

Privateers frequently sought investors for outfitting a ship, in exchange for a share of the prize. Among such investors were George Washington and Robert Morris. *See* FORREST MCDONALD, WE THE PEOPLE 38, 43 (1968) (Washington); Francis R. Stark, *The Abolition of Privateering and the Declaration of Paris*, in 8 STUDS. IN HIST., ECON. & PUB. L. 343 (1897) (Morris).

British commercial shipping. The captured prizes—including gunpowder, firearms, and silver—were crucial to the American war effort.[243] The privateers did not win the war by themselves; the war could not have been won without them.[244]

The U.S. Constitution grants Congress the powers to "grant Letters of Marque and Reprisal, and make Rules concerning Captures on Land and Water."[245] The congressional power is predicated on the existence of ships that can be outfitted with privately-purchased cannon, and of small arms for seamen, such as firearms and swords.

Wartime privateering aside, cannons were outfitted on commercial ships for protection against pirates. A peacetime 1789 advertisement in Philadelphia touted a store "where owners and commanders of armed vessels may be supplied, for either the use of small arms or cannon, at the shortest notice."[246] The ad was published again in 1799.[247] In 1787, Paul Revere, already famous as a silversmith, opened an iron and brass foundry and copper mill that soon went into the business of casting bells and cannons.[248]

---

[243] DOLIN at xix.

[244] In the words of Secretary of the Navy John Lehman (1981–87):

> From the beginning of the American Revolution until the end of the War of 1812, America's real naval advantage lay in its privateers. It has been said that the battles of the American Revolution were fought on land, and independence was won at sea. For this we have the enormous success of the American privateers to thank even more than the continental Navy.

JOHN LEHMAN, ON SEAS OF GLORY, HEROIC MEN, GREAT SHIPS, AND EPIC BATTLES OF THE AMERICAN NAVY 41–42 (New York: The Free Press, 2001).

[245] U.S. CONST., art. I, § 8. Pursuant to the text, the power to grant such letters lies in the federal legislative branch, not the executive, although the former may delegate to the latter. *See* William Young, *A Check on Faint-Hearted Presidents: Letters of Marque and Reprisal*, 66 WASH. & LEE L. REV. 895, 905–06 (2009).

A unified national approach to international war being necessary, the Constitution restricts State international warfare, including issuing letters of marque and reprisal. U.S. CONST., art. I, § 10.

[246] Edward Pole, *Military laboratory, at No. 34, Dock street near the Drawbridge, Philadelphia: where owners and commanders of armed vessels may be supplied, for either the use of small arms or cannon, at the shortest notice, with every species of military store*. Phil., 1789, https://www.loc.gov/item/rbpe.1470090a/.

[247] GAZETTE OF THE UNITED STATES, AND PHILADELPHIA DAILY ADVERTISER, July 1, 1799, p.2, https://chroniclingamerica.loc.gov/lccn/sn83025881/1799-07-01/ed-1/seq-2/.

[248] *See Revere's Foundry & Copper Mill*, The Paul Revere House, https://www.paulreverehouse.org/reveres-foundry-copper-mill/.

The freedom Americans always enjoyed to possess the arms of one's choosing was reflected in Ira Allen's defense when he was seized by British forces in 1796 while transporting 20,000 muskets and 24 "field pieces" (cannons and other artillery) from France to America. Allen said the arms were for Vermont's militia, whereas the British suspected he planning to arm a Canadian revolt against the British. He was prosecuted in Britain's Court of Admiralty. At trial, the idea of one individual possessing 20,000 arms was received with skepticism. Allen retorted that in America, "[a]rms and military stores are free merchandise, so that any who have property and choose to sport with it, may turn their gardens into parks of artillery, and their houses into arsenals, without danger to Government."[249] The arms were restored to Allen.[250]

G. Overview

The Revolution had started when Americans resisted with arms the Redcoats' attempt to confiscate arms at Lexington and Concord on April 19, 1775. Before that, to effectively disarm the Americans, the British had banned the import of firearms and gunpowder into the colonies,[251] prevented Americans from accessing arms stored in town magazines,[252] and confiscated

---

[249] IRA ALLEN, PARTICULARS OF THE CAPTURE OF THE OLIVE BRANCH, LADEN WITH A CARGO OF ARMS 403–04 (1798).

[250] *Id.*

[251] King George III imposed an embargo on arms and gunpowder imports on October 19, 1774. 5 ACTS OF THE PRIVY COUNCIL OF ENGLAND, COLONIAL SERIES, A.D. 1766-1783, at 401 (Burlington, Can.: TannerRitchie Pub., 2005) (James Munro & Almeric Fitzroy eds., 1912). Secretary of State Lord Dartmouth sent a letter that day "to the Governors in America," announcing "His Majesty's Command that [the governors] do take the most effectual measures for arresting, detaining, and securing any Gunpowder, or any sort of arms and ammunition, which may be attempted to be imported into the Province under your Government. . . ." Letter from Earl of Dartmouth to the Governors in America, Oct. 19, 1774, *in* 8 DOCUMENTS RELATIVE TO THE COLONIAL HISTORY OF THE STATE OF NEW YORK 309 (1857). The order, initially set to expire after six months, was "repeatedly renewed, remaining in effect until the Anglo-American peace treaty in 1783." David B. Kopel, *How the British Gun Control Program Precipitated the American Revolution*, 6 CHARLESTON L. REV. 283, 297 (2012).

[252] For example, Massachusetts's Royal Governor Thomas Gage "order'd the Keeper of the Province's Magazine not to deliver a kernel of powder (without his express order) of either public or private property. . . ." JOHN ANDREWS, LETTERS OF JOHN ANDREWS, ESQ., OF BOSTON 19–20 (Winthrop Sargent ed., 1866); *id.* at 39 ("a Guard of soldiers is set upon the Powder house at the back of ye. Common, so that people are debar'd from selling their own property.");

arms and ammunition.[253] During the Revolution the British government devised a plan for the permanent disarmament of the Americans after an American surrender.[254]

Naturally, after facing the threat of disarmament and thus certain destruction, America's Founders were extremely protective of the right to arms. Before, during, and after the Revolution, no state banned any type of arm, ammunition, or accessory. Nor did the Continental Congress, the Articles of Confederation Congress, or the federal government created by the U.S. Constitution in 1787.[255] Instead, the discussions about arms during the

Letter from Thomas Gage to Earl of Dartmouth, Nov. 2, 1774, *in* 1 AMERICAN ARCHIVES, 4th ser., at 951 (Peter Force ed., 1843) (Gage stating that he issued "an order to the Storekeeper not to deliver out any Powder from the Magazine, where the Merchants deposit it.").

[253] *See* O.W. Stephenson, *The Supply of Gunpowder in 1776 in* 30 THE AMERICAN HISTORICAL REVIEW 272 (J. Franklin Jameson ed., 1925) ("Within a few hours of the time when the minute-men faced the redcoats on Lexington green and at Concord bridge, Governor Dunmore, down in Virginia, laid hold of the principal supplies in the Old Dominion."); Brown, *supra*, at 298 ("the American Revolution was nearly precipitated in Virginia on the night of April 20–21 [1775], for in Williamsburg Gov. Dunmore had ordered the Royal Marines to remove the colony gunpowder supply from the magazine. As in Massachusetts the plan was discovered and the militia called to arms. . . . Lord Dunmore . . . placated the irate populace by making immediate restitution for the powder."). The British had wanted to confiscate arms door-to-door, but Governor Gage deemed it too dangerous a proposition. Extract of a Letter from Governor Gage to the Earl of Dartmouth, Dec. 15, 1774, *in* 1 AMERICAN ARCHIVES, *supra* note 252, 4th. Ser., at 1046 ("Your Lordship's idea of disarming certain Provinces, would doubtless be consistent with prudence and safety; but it neither is or has been practicable, without having recourse to force, and being master of the Country.").

[254] Colonial Under Secretary of State William Knox presented the plan to disarm Americans:

> The Militia Laws should be repealed and none suffered to be re-enacted, & the Arms of all the People should be taken away . . . nor should any Foundery or manufactuary of Arms, Gunpowder, or Warlike Stores, be ever suffered in America, nor should any Gunpowder, Lead, Arms or Ordnance be imported into it without Licence.

William Knox, *Considerations on the Great Question, What Is Fit to be Done with America, Memorandum to the Earl of Shelburne*, *in* 1 SOURCES OF AMERICAN INDEPENDENCE: MANUSCRIPTS FROM THE COLLECTIONS OF THE WILLIAM L. CLEMENTS LIBRARY 176 (Howard Peckham ed., 1978).

[255] As far as we know, only one person has ever claimed the contrary. That person is President Joseph Biden, who has repeatedly stated that when the Second Amendment was ratified, people could not possess cannons. He has repeated the claim despite repeated debunking by factcheckers. *See* Glenn Kessler, *Biden's False Claim that the 2nd Amendment*

ratification of the Constitution and the Bill of Rights centered on ensuring that the people had enough firepower to resist a tyrannical government. There is no evidence that any of the Founders were concerned about individuals having too much firepower. After a long, grueling war against the world's strongest military, limiting individuals' capabilities was not a concern.

Americans' hostility to any limit on their ability to resist a tyrannical government was demonstrated by their response to a Pennsylvania order—issued while the States were debating the Constitution—directing lieutenants of the militia "to collect all the public arms" to "have them repaired" and then reissued.[256] "Public arms" were firearms owned by a government and given to militiamen who could not afford to purchase a firearm themselves.[257]

Pennsylvanians fiercely opposed the recall. Even though militiamen were free to acquire whatever personal arms they could afford, they denounced the order as "a temporary disarming of the people."[258] They suggested that "our Militia . . . may soon be called to defend our sacred rights and privileges, against the despots and monarchy-men" who supported the order.[259]

Because "the people were determined not to part with" and "refused to deliver up the arms," the Pennsylvania government "cancelled the order."[260] If the people threatened armed resistance to the government's attempt to temporarily recover its own arms, an attempt to ban any privately owned arms would have been met with even greater opposition. [261]

Bans Cannon Ownership, WASHINGTON POST, June 28, 2021; D'Angelo Gore, *Biden Repeats False Claims at Gun Violence Meeting*, FACTCHECK.ORG, Feb. 7, 2022, https://www.factcheck.org/2022/02/biden-repeats-false-claims-at-gun-violence-meeting/; Louis Jacobson, *Joe Biden's dubious claim about Revolutionary War cannon ownership*, POLITIFACT, June 29, 2020, https://www.politifact.com/factchecks/2020/jun/29/joe-biden/joe-bidens-dubious-claim-about-revolutionary-war-c/.

[256] 33 THE DOCUMENTARY HISTORY OF THE RATIFICATION OF THE CONSTITUTION 739 (John Kaminski et al. eds., 2019).

[257] David B. Kopel & Stephen P. Halbrook, *Tench Coxe and the Right to Keep and Bear Arms in the Early Republic*, 7 WM. & MARY BILL RTS J. 347 (1999) (describing public arms programs of the Jefferson and Madison administrations).

[258] An Old Militia Officer of 1776, PHILADELPHIA INDEPENDENT GAZETTEER, Jan. 18, 1788, *in* 33 DOCUMENTARY HISTORY, *supra* note 256, at 740.

[259] PHILADELPHIA FREEMAN'S JOURNAL, Jan. 23, 1788, *in* 33 DOCUMENTARY HISTORY, *supra* note 256, at 741.

[260] PHILADELPHIA INDEPENDENT GAZETTEER, Apr. 30, 1788, *in* 34 DOCUMENTARY HISTORY, *supra* note 256, at 1266.

[261] Pennsylvania's experience is relevant to modern-day confiscation laws. According to *Bruen*, "if some jurisdictions actually attempted to enact analogous regulations during this

Firearms and cutting weapons were ubiquitous in the colonial era, and a wide variety existed of each. Repeating arms and cannons were freely owned by those who could afford them. The historical record up to 1800 provides no support for general prohibitions on any type of arms or armor.

III. NINETEENTH CENTURY ADVANCES IN ARMS

This Part describes how the nineteenth century brought the greatest advances in firearms before or since. The century began with the single-shot muzzleloading blackpowder muskets and ended with semiautomatic pistols employing detachable magazines and centerfire ammunition with modern smokeless powder. Then Part IV will examine the very small lawmaking response to the immense technological changes.

Here in Part III the technological changes are summarized. Many of the advances detailed below had already been invented long before 1791, as described in Parts I.B. and II.D. But firearms incorporating these advances were quite expensive. Compared to single-shot firearms, repeating firearms require closer fitting of their more intricate parts. As of 1750, firearms manufacture was a craft industry.[262] Firearms were built one at time by a lone craftsman or perhaps in a workshop.[263] The labor cost of building an advanced firearm was vastly higher than for a one-shot musket, rifle, or handgun.[264]

Advanced firearms were made possible by the American industrial revolution. That revolution created machine tools—tools that can make uniform parts and other tools.[265] Thanks to machine tools, the number of

---

timeframe [the eighteenth century], but those proposals were rejected on constitutional grounds, that rejection surely would provide some probative evidence of unconstitutionality. 142 S. Ct. at 2131.

[262] JOHNSON ET AL., *supra* note 16, at 2210. Some of this Part is based on *The Evolution of Firearms Technology from the Sixteenth Century to the Twenty-first Century*, which is Chapter 23 in JOHNSON ET AL., *supra* note 16. Much more detail about the technological developments described in this Part is presented in that chapter, available online at http://firearmsregulation.org/www/FRRP3d_CH23.pdf.

[263] *Id.*

[264] *Id.* at 2199.

[265] *Id.* at 2208–14.

human labor hours to manufacture advanced firearms plunged, while machinists prospered.[266]

A. James Madison and James Monroe, the founding fathers of modern firearms

U.S. Representative James Madison is well-known as the author of the Second Amendment and the rest of the Bill of Rights. What is not well-known is how his presidency put the United States on the path to mass production of high-quality affordable firearms.

Because of weapons procurement problems during the War of 1812, President Madison's Secretary of War James Monroe, who would succeed Madison as President, proposed a program for advanced weapons research and production at the federal armories, which were located in Springfield, Massachusetts, and Harpers Ferry, Virginia. The Madison-Monroe program was to subsidize technological innovation.[267] It was enthusiastically adopted with the support of both the major parties in Congress: the Madison-Monroe Democratic-Republicans, and the opposition Federalists.[268] Generous federal arms procurement contracts had long lead times and made much of the payment up-front, so that manufacturers could spend several years setting up and perfecting their factories.[269] The program succeeded beyond expectations, and helped to create the American industrial revolution.

B. The American system of manufacture

The initial objective was interchangeability, so that firearms parts damaged in combat could be replaced by functional spare parts.[270] If there are

---

[266] *See* FELICIA JOHNSON DEYRUP, ARMS MAKERS OF THE CONNECTICUT VALLEY: A REGIONAL STUDY OF THE ECONOMIC DEVELOPMENT OF THE SMALL ARMS INDUSTRY, 1798-1870, at 217 app'x A, tbl. 1 (1948) (from 1850 to 1940, average annual wages in the arms industry always exceeded wages in overall U.S. industry, sometimes by large margins).

[267] ROSS THOMSON, STRUCTURES OF CHANGE IN THE MECHANICAL AGE: TECHNOLOGICAL INNOVATION IN THE UNITED STATES 1790-1865, at 54-59 (2009).

[268] JOHNSON ET AL., *supra* note 16, at 2209.

[269] *Id.*

[270] Thomas Jefferson had previously attempted to bring interchangeable gun parts to America after meeting with French inventor Honoré Blanc, who was developing such a system, While ambassador to France in 1785, Jefferson wrote to U.S. Secretary of Foreign Affairs (under the Confederation government) John Jay about the meeting:

two damaged firearms found after a battle, and their parts could be combined into one functional firearm, that was the first step. After that would come higher rates of factory production. And after that, it was hoped, production at lower cost than artisanal production. Achieving these objectives for the more intricate and closer-fitting parts of repeating firearms would be even more difficult.

To carry out the federal program, the inventors associated with the federal armories first had to invent machine tools. Consider for example, the wooden stock of a long gun. The back of the stock is held against the user's shoulder. The middle of the stock is where the action is attached. (The action is the part of the gun containing the moving parts that fire the ammunition.) For many guns, the forward part of the stock would contain a groove to hold the barrel.

> An improvement is made here in the construction of muskets, which it may be interesting to Congress to know. . . . It consists in the making every part of them so exactly alike, that what belongs to any one, may be used for every other musket in the magazine. . . . Supposing it might be useful to the United States, I went to the workman; he presented me the parts of fifty locks taken to pieces, and arranged in compartments. I put several together myself, taking pieces at hazard as they came to hand, and they fitted in the most perfect manner. The advantages of this, when arms need repair, are evident.

Letter from Thomas Jefferson to John Jay, Aug. 30, 1785, *in* 1 MEMOIRS, CORRESPONDENCE, AND PRIVATE PAPERS, OF THOMAS JEFFERSON 299 (Thomas Jefferson Randolph ed., 1829). Jefferson also wrote to Patrick Henry and Henry Knox about Blanc. 8 THE PAPERS OF THOMAS JEFFERSON 455 (Julian P. Boyd ed., 1953) (1990 3d printing); 9 *id.* at 214; 15 *id.* at 421–43, 454–55. In 1801, President Jefferson recounted his experience with Blanc to James Monroe, while expressing hope for Eli Whitney's plan for interchangeable gun parts:

> mr Whitney . . . has invented moulds & machines for making all the peices of his locks so exactly equal, that take 100 locks to pieces & mingle their parts, and the hundred locks may be put together as well by taking the first pieces which come to hand. this is of importance in repairing, because out of 10. locks e.g. disabled for the want of different pieces, 9 good locks may be put together without employing a smith. Leblanc in France had invented a similar process in 1788. & had extended it to the barrel, mounting & stock. I endeavored to get the US. to bring him over, which he was ready for on moderate terms. I failed & I do not know what became of him.

Letter from Thomas Jefferson to James Monroe, Nov. 14, 1801, *in* 35 THE PAPERS OF THOMAS JEFFERSON 662 (Barbara B. Oberg ed., 2008).

Making a stock requires many different cuts of wood, few of them straight. The artisanal gunmaker would cut with hand tools such as saws and chisels. Necessarily, one artisanal stock would not be precisely the same size as another.

To make stocks faster and more uniformly, Thomas Blanchard invented fourteen different machine tools. Each machine would be set up for one particular cut. As the stock was cut, it would be moved from machine to machine. By mounting the stock to the machine tools with jigs and fixtures, a manufacturer could ensure that each stock would be placed in precisely the same position in the machine as the previous stock. The mounting was in relation to a bearing — a particular place on the stock that was used as a reference point. To check that the various parts of the firearm, and the machine tools themselves, were consistent, many new gauges were invented.[271] What Blanchard did for stocks, John H. Hall, of the Harpers Ferry Armory, did for other firearms parts.

Hall shipped some of his machine tools to Simeon North, in Connecticut. In 1834, Hall and North made interchangeable firearms. This was the first time that geographically separate factories had made interchangeable parts.[272]

Because Hall "established the efficacy" of machine tools, he "bolstered the confidence among arms makers that one day they would achieve in a larger, more efficient manner, what he had done on a limited scale. In this sense, Hall's work represented an important extension of the industrial revolution in America, a mechanical synthesis so different in degree as to constitute a difference in kind."[273]

The technological advances from the federal armories were widely shared among American manufacturers. The Springfield Armory built up a large network of cooperating private entrepreneurs and insisted that advances in manufacturing techniques be widely shared. By mid-century, what had begun as the mass production of firearms from interchangeable parts had become globally known as "the American system of manufacture"—a system that encompassed sewing machines, and, eventually typewriters, bicycles, and automobiles.[274]

---

[271] DEYRUP, *supra* note 266, at 97–98; THOMSON, *supra* note 267, at 56–57.

[272] THOMSON, *supra* note 267, at 58; MERRITT ROE SMITH, HARPERS FERRY ARMORY AND THE NEW TECHNOLOGY: THE CHALLENGE OF CHANGE 212 (1977).

[273] SMITH, *supra* note 272, at 249.

[274] *See, e.g.*, DAVID R. MEYER, NETWORKED MACHINISTS: HIGH-TECHNOLOGY INDUSTRIES IN ANTEBELLUM AMERICA 81–84, 252–62, 279–80 (2006).

Springfield, in western Massachusetts on the Connecticut River, had been chosen for the federal armory in part because of its abundance of waterpower and for the nearby iron ore mines. Many private entrepreneurs, including Colt and Smith & Wesson, made the same choice. The Connecticut River Valley became known as the Gun Valley. It was the Silicon Valley of its times, the center of industrial revolution.[275]

C. The revolution in ammunition

The gunpowder charge in a gun's firing chamber must be ignited by a primer. Before 1800, the primer was a small quantity of gunpowder in the gun's firing pan. The gunpowder in the firing pan was connected to the main powder charge in the firing chamber via a small opening, the touch-hole. In a flintlock, the priming powder in the firing pan is ignited by a shower of sparks from flint striking steel. In the older matchlock guns, the powder charge was ignited by the lowering of a slow-burning hemp cord to touch the firing pan. In either system, the user pressed the trigger to start the process.

Then in the 1810s, the percussion cap began to spread.[276] It used a primer made of chemical compounds, known as fulminate. The percussion cap sat on a nipple next to the firing chamber. When the user pressed the trigger, a hammer would strike the fulminate. The explosion would then ignite the gunpowder charge. Percussion ignition was faster and far more reliable than priming pan ignition.[277] Percussion cap guns "shot harder and still faster than the best flintlock ever known."[278]

Retrofitting flintlocks to convert them to percussion ignition was easy.[279] So starting in the 1810s, anyone's old flintlock from 1791 could suddenly became more powerful than any firearm that had existed in 1791.

---

[275] *Id.* at 73–103, 229–80.

[276] "[T]he percussion cap was developed as a result of Reverend Alexander Forsyth's bringing out in 1807 his detonator lock—the most important development in guns since gunpowder." 23 LEWIS WINANT, FIREARMS CURIOSA 23 (Odysseus 1996) (1955); *see* Joseph G.S. Greenlee, *The American Tradition of Self-Made Arms*, 54 ST. MARY'S L.J. 35, 72 (2023). There were other systems of percussion ignition. For example, Washington, D.C., dentist Edward Maynard invented the tape primer; similar to the tapes still used today in toy cap guns. The percussion cap proved to be the best system. *See* JOHNSON ET AL. at 2215–16.

[277] J.F.C. FULLER, ARMAMENT AND HISTORY 113 (Da Capo Pr. 1998) (1945).

[278] HELD, *supra* note 20, at 171.

[279] LOCKHART at 167.

The bullets of 1791 were spheres. That is why a unit of ammunition today is still called "a round." In the early nineteenth century, conoidal bullets were invented. These are essentially the same type of bullets used today. The shape is far more aerodynamically stable, allowing longer shots with much better accuracy. The back of the bullet helped to prevent the expanding gas of the gunpowder explosion from exiting the barrel before the bullet did. As the result, the gas gave the bullet a stronger push, imparting more energy and making the bullet more powerful.[280]

In 1846, modern metallic cartridge ammunition was invented. Instead of the bullet, gunpowder, and primer being three separate items to insert into a firearm one at a time, ammunition was now a single unit, the cartridge. The bullet, gunpowder, and primer were all contained in a metal case.[281]

An initial result of the cartridge was to make breechloading firearms become very common.[282] Instead of loading from the front of the barrel (the *muzzle*), a firearm could be loaded from the back of the barrel (the *breech*), near

---

[280] JOHNSON ET AL., *supra* note 16, at 2127. For example, in the Minié ball, the base of the bullet was hollowed out. Therefore, the gunpowder explosion would force the rim to the base to expand outward to the size of the rifle bore. LOCKHART, at 178–80.

[281] GREENER, *supra* note 29, at 773; DEYRUP, *supra* note 266, at 28; HELD, *supra* note 20, at 183–84.

[282] Breechloaders had always existed, and their inherent advantage in faster reloading was obvious. The great firearms designer John M. Hall patented a breechloader in 1811 that was adopted by the U.S. Army in 1819. About 50,000 Hall Rifles were produced through the 1840s. ROY THEODORE HUNTINGTON, HALL'S BREECHLOADERS (1972). It could shoot as far as a thousand yards, at a rate of 8 or 9 shots per minute. However, before the invention of the metallic cartridge, all breechloaders, including the British Ferguson Rifle of the American War of Independence, shared a basic problem. In a muzzleloader, the opening at bottom of the barrel, near the trigger, is sealed shut by a breechblock. The barrel is open only at the muzzle. When the gunpowder charge in the barrel explodes, the breechblock at the base of the muzzle prevents gas from blowing back to the user. For a breechloader, the breechblock must be movable. The user moves the breechblock, inserts the bullet and ammunition into the empty barrel bore at the base of the muzzle, and then moves the breechblock back into place. If all goes well, the breechblock prevents any expanding gas from escaping the breech. However, the breechblock's fit on the barrel must be absolutely tight and perfect. Over time, wear and tear on a movable breechblock would weaken the seal. As a result, some gunpowder gas would escape and blow back towards the user. This could make shooting much less comfortable. The metallic cartridge solves the problem. The base of the metal shell has a wide rim that seals the bottom of the barrel. PAUL LOCKHART, FIREPOWER: HOW WEAPONS SHAPED WARFARE 173–75 (2021). The first metallic cartridge had been invented in 1812, but not until 1846 was a metallic cartridge invented that would seal (*obturate*) the breech. *Id.* at 256–57.

the trigger. Even a novice could quickly learn to shoot nine shots a minute from the single-shot breechloading Sharps' rifle, brought to market in 1850.[283]

The combination of the modern cartridge and breechloading ammunition greatly facilitated the development of repeating firearms, as will be described in the next section.

In 1866 the centerfire metallic cartridge was invented. In a rimfire (the metallic cartridge created in 1846), the primer is contained in the base of the cartridge, next to the cartridge wall. In a centerfire, the primer is contained in a small cup at the center of the base of the cartridge. The centerfire is more reliable and easier to manufacture.[284] Today, most firearms use centerfire ammunition, while the venerable rimfire is still widely used for .22 caliber or smaller guns.

A stupendous development in ammunition was the invention of a new type of gunpowder in 1884. Previously, all gunpowder had been "blackpowder," the same product the Chinese had first formulated in the 900s.[285] In the West ever since the 1400s, blackpowder had always been improving, with changes in the ratio of ingredients and refinements in the shapes of individual grains of powder.[286] Then in 1884 came white powder (a/k/a smokeless powder), with an entirely different formulation.[287] Smokeless powder burned far more efficiently, imparting much more power to bullets.[288] Firearms now shot further and with a flatter trajectory than ever before.[289] White, smokeless powder is still the gunpowder in use today, with continuing refinements.

Because lead bullets are relatively soft, they abrade from friction when being spun by the rifling as they travel down the barrel. Built-up lead residue makes the gun barrel less accurate. That problem was solved in 1882 with the invention of the jacketed bullet. A thin coating of copper or nickel on the lead bullet would keep it intact during its movement through the barrel.[290]

---

[283] *Sharps' Breech-loading Patent Rifle*, SCIENTIFIC AMERICAN, Mar. 9, 1850.

[284] *See* LOCKHART at 264.

[285] The ingredients of blackpowder are sulfur, charcoal, and saltpeter. JOHNSON ET AL., *supra* note 16, at 2126, 2225.

[286] *See*, *e.g.*, ARTHUR PINE VAN GELDER & HUGO SCHLATTER, HISTORY OF THE EXPLOSIVES INDUSTRY IN AMERICA (Ayer 2004) (1927).

[287] Insoluble nitrocellulose, soluble nitrocellulose, and paraffin. JOHNSON ET AL., *supra* note 16, at 2225.

[288] GREENER, *supra* note 29, at 560.

[289] *See* LOCKHART at 271–72.

[290] *See* LOCKHART at 273.

With blackpowder, the muzzle velocity of a good firearm was around 1,000 feet per second.[291] Smokeless powder promptly doubled that to about 2,000 fps. The change increased range and stopping power.[292]

D. Advances in repeating arms

During the nineteenth century, repeating arms became some of America's most popular arms. "Flintlock revolving pistols had been given trials and some practical use very early in the nineteenth century, but the loose priming powder in the pan of each cylinder constituted a hazard that was never eliminated."[293] It was the invention of the percussion cap that made it possible for repeating firearms to become widely adopted.

The first American military contract for repeating firearms was the U.S. Navy's 1813 purchase of 200 repeating muskets and 100 repeating pistols from Joseph Chambers, who also sold firearms to the State of Pennsylvania.[294]

In 1821, the *New York Evening Post* lauded New Yorker Isaiah Jennings for inventing a repeater, "importan[t], both for public and private use," whose "number of charges may be extended to fifteen or even twenty . . . and may be fired in the space of two seconds to a charge."[295] "[T]he principle can be added to any musket, rifle, fowling piece, or pistol" to make it capable of firing "from two to twelve times."[296] "About 1828 a New York State maker, Reuben Ellis, made military rifles under contract on the Jennings principle."[297] However, neither of the New York repeaters became major commercial successes.

---

[291] As a bullet travels downrange, air friction reduces velocity.

[292] The muzzle velocities of modern handguns are around 1,000 fps; modern rifles are around 2,000 to 3,000 fps.

[293] CARL P. RUSSELL, GUNS ON THE EARLY FRONTIER 91 (1957).

[294] PETERSON, TREASURY OF THE GUN, at 197.

[295] *Newly Invented Muskets*, N.Y. EVENING POST, Apr. 10, 1822, *in* 59 ALEXANDER TILLOCH, THE PHILOSOPHICAL MAGAZINE AND JOURNAL: COMPREHENDING THE VARIOUS BRANCHES OF SCIENCE, THE LIBERAL AND FINE ARTS, GEOLOGY, AGRICULTURE, MANUFACTURES, AND COMMERCE 467 (Richard Taylor ed., 1822).

[296] *Id.* The writer added:

> As a sporting or hunting gun, its advantages are not less important. It enables the sportsman to meet a flock with twice the advantage of a double barrel gun, without any of its incumbrances, and it enables the hunter to meet his game in any emergency. The gun has been shown to many different officers of our army and navy, and has been highly approved of, and indeed no one who has seen a fair trial of its powers has ever been able to find an objection to it.

Id. at 468.

[297] WINANT, FIREARMS CURIOSA, *supra* note __, at 174.

Pepperbox handguns had been around for a long time and became a mass market product starting in the 1830s.[298] These pistols had multiple barrels that could fire sequentially; four to eight barrels were most common.[299] Starting in 1847, the leading American manufacturer was Ethan Allen.[300]

"Ethan Allen was a pioneer in the transition from handmade to machine-made and interchangeable parts."[301] "The Allen pepperbox was the first American double-action pepperbox and it was a big success. . . . As quickly as the trigger could be pulled fully back, the hammer was released and the gun fired."[302] "For a dozen years and more after the Colt revolver was first made, sales of Allen's far outstripped those of Colt's."[303] "The Allens were very popular with the Forty Niners," who headed to California in 1849 for the Gold Rush.[304] "The pepperbox was the fastest shooting handgun of its day. Many were bought by soldiers and for use by state militia. Some saw service in the Seminole Wars and the War with Mexico, and more than a few were carried in the Civil War."[305] Their last use in a major engagement by the U.S. Cavalry was in an 1857 battle with the Cheyenne.[306]

The first American patent for a revolver was issued to Samuel Colt in 1836. Like pepperboxes, revolvers fire repeating rounds, but revolvers use a rotating cylinder that lines up each firing chamber, in sequence, behind a single barrel. The difference improves the balance of the gun, by reducing the front weight. The Colt revolvers were the best firearms of their time and priced accordingly.

Colt's first notable sales were to the Navy of the Republic of Texas (1839) and then to the Texas Rangers. For rapidity of fire, the ordinary single-shot

---

[298] The first pepperboxes were made with matchlock ignition. Around 1790, Henry Nock invented the "first commonly produced flintlock pepperbox, a six-barreled long gun. A Closer Look at Pepperbox Pistols, TheFirearmBlog.com, Dec. 8, 2021, https://www.thefirearmblog.com/blog/2021/12/08/wheelgun-wednesday-pepperbox-pistols/.

[299] JACK DUNLAP, AMERICAN BRITISH & CONTINENTAL PEPPERBOX FIREARMS 148–49, 167 (1964); LEWIS WINANT, PEPPERBOX FIREARMS 7 (1952). An American-made 10-shot model was patented in 1849. WINANT at 58. The manufacturer, Pecare & Smith, was one of five American firearms manufacturers exhibiting at the famous 1851 Crystal Palace Exhibition in London. *Id.* at 62 (So was Samuel Colt, who won a prize.)

[300] WINANT at 27. He was not the same person as the Revolutionary War Vermont patriot. He was the ancestor of the twenty-first century furniture maker.

[301] WINANT at 28.

[302] WINANT at 28.

[303] WINANT at 28.

[304] WINANT at 30.

[305] WINANT at 30.

[306] WINANT at 30.

firearm had always been far outmatched by the ordinary bow. The 1841 Battle of Bandera Pass was a turning point in the Texas-Indian wars. A Texan with two five-shot Colt revolvers could keep up with the Comanche rate of bow fire.[307]

Colt's first big success was the Colt Navy Revolver. With one modification by the user, the Colt could be quickly reloaded by swapping out an empty cylinder for a fresh, preloaded cylinder.[308]

Pin-fire revolvers with capacities of up to 21 rounds entered the market in the 1850s in Europe, but pinfires had only modest sales in America.[309] The American-made Walch 12-Shot Navy Revolver had six chambers holding two rounds that fired separately. It was used in the Civil War and made its way to

---

[307] Like other Indians, the Comanche also had firearms and were highly proficient users. Like the Englishmen of 1500, the Indians were also highly proficient with the bow, which Americans were not. The heyday of English archery had ended long before the 1607 establishment of the Virginia Colony at Jamestown. An Indian raid might commence with firearms, and then transition to rapid fire from bows.

The Comanche controlled a very large area, from eastern New Mexico to East Texas. As a regional power, they were the equals and sometimes the superiors of the Spanish, Mexicans, French, English, Americans, and Texans, all of whose expansion they bottled up for many years. The Comanche economy was based on the trade of slaves (people of any race, but mainly people of other Indian tribes, who were captured in war or raids) and horses (also captured from enemies) to adjacent powers for other goods, including firearms. *See* PEKKA HÄMÄLÄINEN, THE COMANCHE EMPIRE (2008). Like the economy of other tribes, such as the Utes, who were highly successful in capturing people for trade, the Comanche economy was based on predation of humans. *See* ANDRÉS RESÉNDEZ, THE OTHER SLAVERY: THE UNCOVERED STORY OF INDIAN ENSLAVEMENT IN AMERICA (2016).

[308] The Colt Navy was a cap and ball revolver. It was loaded from the front of the cylinder. The user would pour premeasured gunpowder into a chamber from a cup. Then the user would insert the bullet and wad. The wad is a small greased cloth; it fills the empty space around the bullet, and prevents expanding gunpowder gas from escaping the muzzle before the bullet does. The powder, bullet, and the wad surrounding the bullet would be rammed into place by a hinged ramrod underneath the barrel. Next, the user would insert a percussion cap on a nipple on the back of the just-loaded cylinder chamber. Finally, the user would rotate the cylinder, to bring the next chamber into loading position. So although a cap and ball revolver could quickly fire five or six shots, reloading took a while.

As a result, users developed an expedient. In the Colt Navy, the barrel is attached to the frame of the gun by a single pin. Users would file the pin so that it was easy to remove. Then, the user could speedily detach the barrel, replace the empty cylinder with a fresh preloaded cylinder, and then put the barrel back into place and reinsert the pin. The process was slower than swapping detachable magazines today, but it allowed continuous fire with only a short pause to reload.

[309] SUPICA ET AL., supra note 202, at 48–49; WINANT, PEPPERBOX FIREARMS, *supra* note 299, at 67–70.

the western frontier, although not in large numbers.[310] In 1866, the 20-round Josselyn belt-fed chain pistol debuted. Some later chain pistols had greater capacities.[311] These models never came close to challenging conventional revolvers or pepperboxes for popularity.

The 1857 expiration of Colt's patent for its cap and ball revolvers brought new companies into the revolver business. During the Civil War, combatants used revolvers from 37 different companies.[312] In a cap and ball revolver, the bullet, gunpowder, and percussion cap must be inserted one at a time into each of the five or six firing chambers.

Smith and Wesson brought out a revolver entirely different from the Colt patent. The 1857 Smith & Wesson Model 1 was a breechloader using metallic cartridges.[313] Now, when reloading an empty firing chamber, the user only had to insert one item, not three. Smith & Wesson invented a special cartridge for the revolver: the .22 Short Rimfire. It is still in use today.[314] "The S&W factory in Springfield, Massachusetts, couldn't keep up with the demand—the new revolver and its unique cartridge were such a hit with the American public that they flew off store shelves nationwide."[315]

While repeating handguns were widely available before the Civil War, repeating long guns were not. As with most advances in technologies, the early stages saw inventions that advanced the state of knowledge but did not win commercial success. In the 1830s, the Bennett and Haviland Rifle used a chain-drive system with 12 rectangular chambers—each loaded with powder and ball—to fire 12-rounds consecutively.[316] Alexander Hall's rifle with a 15-round rotating cylinder (like a revolver) was introduced in the 1850s.[317] In 1851, Parry Porter created a rifle with a 9-shot canister magazine; it was said to be

---

[310] CHAPEL, *supra* note 208, at 188–89.

[311] WINANT, FIREARMS CURIOSA, *supra* note 297, at 204, 206.

[312] JOHN F. GRAF, STANDARD CATALOGUE OF CIVIL WAR FIREARMS 187–233 (2008) (20 models from Colt, plus 73 models from 36 other manufacturers).

[313] The design had been patented in 1855 by Rollin White, who licensed it to Smith & Wesson. Patent No. 12,648, *Improvement in Repeating Fire-Arms* (Apr. 3, 1855).

[314] Reloading was one round at a time. The cylinder would be rotated to a loading gate on the bottom or side of the frame. The gate would be opened, and one cartridge inserted. Then the user would rotate the cylinder so that the next chamber could be loaded.

[315] LOCKHART at 257.

[316] NORM FLAYDERMAN, FLAYDERMAN'S GUIDE TO ANTIQUE AMERICAN FIREARMS AND THEIR VALUES 711 (9th ed. 2007).

[317] FLAYDERMAN, *supra* note 317, at 713, 716.

able to fire 60 shots in 60 seconds.[318] In 1855, Joseph Enouy invented a 42-shot Ferris Wheel pistol.[319]

An 1855 alliance between Daniel Wesson (later, of Smith & Wesson) and Oliver Winchester led to a series of famous lever-action repeating rifles. First came the 30-shot Volcanic Rifle, which an 1859 advertisement boasted could be fired 30 times within a minute.[320] But like the previous repeating rifles, it did not sell well.

Then came the 16-shot Henry Rifle in 1861, a much-improved version of the Volcanic. Tested at the Washington Navy Yard in 1862:

> 187 shots were fired in three minutes and thirty-six seconds (not counting reloading time), and one full fifteen-shot magazine was fired in only 10.8 seconds . . . hits were made from as far away as 348 feet, at an 18-inch-square target. . . . It is manifest from the above experiment that this gun may be fired with great rapidity.[321]

"Advertisements claimed a penetration of eight inches at one hundred yards, five inches at four hundred yards, and power to kill at a thousand yards."[322]

"[F]ueled by the Civil War market, the first Henrys were in the field by mid-1862."[323] Indeed, the most famous testimonial for the Henry came from Captain James M. Wilson of the 12th Kentucky Cavalry, who used a Henry Rifle to kill seven of his Confederate neighbors who broke into his home and ambushed his family. Wilson praised the rifle's 16-round capacity: "When attacked alone by seven guerillas I found it [the Henry rifle] to be particularly useful not only in regard to its fatal precision, but also in the number of shots

---

[318] *A New Gun Patent*, ATHENS (Tenn.) POST, Feb. 25, 1853, http://bit.ly/2tmWUbS (reprinted from N.Y. Post); 2 SAWYER, *supra* note 87, at 147.

[319] WINANT, FIREARMS CURIOSA, *supra* note 297, at 208.

Before the invention of the metallic cartridge, every repeating firearm had a risk of chain fire. The gunpowder fire might leak to another primer and set it off. In the worst case, every round would be ignited. The result could destroy the gun and injure the user. *See* LOCKHART at 258. The buyers of repeating firearms before the metallic were balancing risks: the risk of a chain fire versus the risk of not having a second, third, or additional shot available in an emergency.

[320] HAROLD F. WILLIAMSON, WINCHESTER: THE GUN THAT WON THE WEST 26–27 (1952).

[321] R.L. WILSON, WINCHESTER: AN AMERICAN LEGEND 11–12 (1991).

[322] PETERSON, THE TREASURY OF THE GUN, *supra* note 38, at 240.

[323] *Id.* at 11.

held in reserve for immediate action in case of an overwhelming force."[324] Soon after, Wilson's entire command was armed with Henry rifles.[325]

About 14,000 Henrys were produced, by the Henry factory operating as fast as it could.[326] Building a rifle that complicated took extra time. Over 8,000 were purchased by Union soldiers for personal use. The War Department bought about 1,700.

Deployed in far larger numbers during the war—over 100,000—was the 7-shot Spencer repeating rifle.[327] The internal magazine was located in the rifle's buttstock, and was fast to reload with patented tubes that poured in 7 fresh rounds of ammunition.[328] The most common use of Spencers was by cavalrymen, who had always been first in line for repeating firearms. President Lincoln, a gun enthusiast, test-fired a Spencer on the White House lawn and was impressed. A Spencer could fire 20 aimed shots per minute.[329]

The Union's repeating rifles were supplied by private businesses operating at maximal capacity. If the U.S. government's own factories had been able to produce repeaters like the Henry or Spencer for the entire infantry, the war would have been much shorter. But the federal factories did not have the capacity for mass production of repeaters. They were struggling just to produce the necessary huge quantities of the infantry rifle that had been the state of the art in the late 1840s: the single-shot muzzleloading rifled musket. It was not until two years into the war when all the infantry were supplied with that arm. As for the Confederacy, none of its armories had the capability of producing anything as complex as a Spencer or Henry.[330]

After the Confederacy surrendered at Appomattox, the defeated Confederates were allowed to take their firearms home. As with the Union forces, some of the Confederates' arms had been brought to service by individual soldiers, and some had been supplied by their armies' ordnance

---

[324] H.W.S. Cleveland, HINTS TO RIFLEMEN 181 (1864).

[325] Andrew L. Bresnan, *The Henry Repeating Rifle*, RAREWINCHESTERS.COM, Aug. 17, 2007, https://www.rarewinchesters.com/articles/art_hen_00.shtml.

[326] GRAF, at 101.

[327] JOHN F. GRAF, STANDARD CATALOGUE OF CIVIL WAR FIREARMS 112, 171–72 (2008).

[328] *See Blakeslee cartridge box,* CivilWar@Smithsonian, https://civilwar.si.edu/weapons_blakeslee.html (patent no. 45,469, Dec. 20, 1864).

[329] LOCKHART at 259.

[330] LOCKHART at 260–62. "The limitations of the factory economy, and not some kind of stodgy, conservative resistance to new technology, were what would delay the large-scale use of repeating rifles in combat." *Id.* at 262.

departments. The Union soldiers of course took home the guns that they had bought; as for the arms that had been issued by the government, Union soldiers were allowed to buy them for an eight-dollar deduction from their monthly pay.

Shortly after the Civil War, the Henry evolved into the 18-shot Winchester Model 1866, which was touted as having a capacity of "eighteen charges, which can be fired in nine seconds."[331] Another advertisement contained pictures of Model 1866 rifles underneath the heading, "Two shots a second."[332] "[T]he Model 1866 was widely used in opening the West and, in company with the Model 1873, is the most deserving of Winchesters to claim the legend 'The Gun That Won the West.'"[333] Over 170,000 Model 1866s were produced, many of them sold to foreign militaries who recognized the firearm as a game-changer. Then came the Winchester Model 1873, whose magazine ranged from 6 to 25.[334] Over 720,000 Model 1873s were produced by 1919.[335]

Separate from the Winchester and Henry patents was the 1873 Evans Repeating Rifle. With an innovative rotary helical magazine, it held 34 rounds. The Evans had some commercial success—about 12,000 made—although far from the level of the Winchesters.[336] All of the Winchesters and Henrys are still made today.[337]

The Henry rifle had appeared during the Civil War, and its improved version, the 1866 Winchester, during Reconstruction, in the same year that Congress sent the Fourteenth Amendment to the States for ratification. During Reconstruction, no government in the United States attempted to prohibit the possession of any particular type of firearm. Rather, the major gun control controversy of the time was efforts to prevent the freedmen in the former Confederate states from having firearms at all, or only having them

---

[331] LOUIS A. GARAVAGLIA & CHARLES G. WORMAN, FIREARMS OF THE AMERICAN WEST 1866-1894, at 128 (1985). The Winchester 1866 was made in a variety of calibers. Only the smallest caliber could hold 18 rounds.

[332] PETERSON, THE TREASURY OF THE GUN, *supra* note 38, at 234–35.

[333] *Id.* at 22. The gun was a particularly strong seller in the West. R.L. WILSON, THE WINCHESTER: AN AMERICAN LEGEND 34 (1991).

[334] ARTHUR PIRKLE, WINCHESTER LEVER ACTION REPEATING FIREARMS: THE MODELS OF 1866, 1873 & 1876, at 107 (2010).

[335] FLAYDERMAN, *supra* note 317, at 306–09.

[336] DWIGHT DEMERITT, MAINE MADE GUNS & THEIR MAKERS 293–95 (rev. ed. 1997); FLAYDERMAN, *supra* note 317, at 694.

[337] The Henry is made by Henry Repeating Arms, in Wisconsin. The Winchesters are made by Uberti, an Italian company that specializes in reproductions of historic guns. The modern Henrys and Ubertis are built for modern ammunition and calibers.

with a special license.[338] These restrictions were rebuffed by the Second Freedmen's Bureau Act, the Civil Rights Act, and then the Fourteenth Amendment.[339]

The final quarter of the nineteenth century saw more iconic Winchesters, namely the Model 1886, and then the Model 1892, made legendary by Annie Oakley, and later by John Wayne.[340] These arms had a capacity of 15 rounds.[341] Over a million were produced from 1892 to 1941.[342]

The first commercially successful repeating long guns, the Henrys and Winchesters, had been lever actions. After firing one round, the user moves a lever down and then up to eject the empty metal case and reload a fresh cartridge into the firing chamber. Pump action guns came next; to eject and reload, the user pulls and then pushes the sliding fore-end of the gun, located underneath the barrel. The most famous pump-action rifle of the nineteenth century was the Colt Lightning, introduced in 1884. It could fire 15 rounds.[343]

In bolt action guns, discussed below, the user moves the bolt's handle in four short movements: up, back, forward, down. For semiautomatic rifles, no manual steps are needed to eject the empty shell and reload the next cartridge. The semiautomatic can be fired as fast as the user can press the trigger. Each press of the trigger fires one new shot. The Girardoni rifle of the Founding Era had a similar capability, although its internal mechanics were not the same as a semiautomatic.[344]

Meanwhile, revolvers kept getting better. The double-action revolver allows the user to shoot as fast as he or she can press the trigger. In the earlier, single-action revolvers, the user first had to cock the hammer with the thumb.[345] The first double-action revolver was invented in England in 1851, but it was expensive and did not make much impact in America.[346] Double-action

---

[338] *McDonald v. City of Chicago*, 561 U.S. 742, 771 (2008).

[339] *Id.* at 773–75.

[340] *Model 1892 Rifles and Carbines*, WINCHESTER REPEATING ARMS, http://bit.ly/2tn03IN.

[341] *Id.*

[342] FLAYDERMAN, *supra* note 317, at 307–12.

[343] *Id.* at 122. Pump action guns are also called slide action.

[344] For the Girardoni, the user had to tip the rifle slightly to roll a new bullet into place.

[345] The most common American pepperboxes, by Ethan Allen, had been double-action. *See* text at note __.

[346] *Revolver: Double Action Revolver*, FIREARMS HISTORY, TECHNOLOGY & DEVELOPMENT, July 1, 2010, http://firearmshistory.blogspot.com/2010/07/revolver-double-action-revolver.html.

revolvers in America took off with the 1877 introduction of three models by Colt.

The other improvement was fast reloading. As described above, in the early revolvers the five or six chambers in a cylinder had to be reloaded one chamber at a time. For the Colt Navy revolver, there was a work-around that allowed quickly removing an empty cylinder and replacing it with a preloaded one.[347]

More straightforward were revolver improvements that allowed the user to access the entire back side of the cylinder at once. The first top-break revolver was the 1870 Smith & Wesson Model 3. Releasing a hinge made the cylinder and barrel fall forward, so that all chambers were exposed for reloading. Just as fast to reload, and sturdier, was the 1889 Colt Navy with its swing-out cylinder. Virtually all modern revolvers are swing-out. The user presses a knob that releases the cylinder to swing out from the revolver (usually to the left of the frame), so that all six chambers are exposed at once.

In the early revolvers, the user had to rotate the cylinder before adding each round. With a top-break or the swing-out, the user could quickly drop in one round after another.

With a simple accessory, users could drop in all six rounds at once. The first speedloader for a revolver was patented in 1879. A revolver speedloader holds all 6 (or 5) fresh cartridges in precise position so that they can be dropped into an empty cylinder all at once. With practice, the speedloader is a fast reload, although not as fast as swapping detachable magazines.

As described above, rifles with tubular magazines—such as 22-shot Girardoni or the 7-shot Spencer—had their own speedloaders; the rifle speedloaders were precisely-sized tubes to pour in a new load of ammunition.

As for detachable box magazines, the first one was invented in 1862,[348] but they did not catch on until the advent of semiautomatic firearms, beginning in the last fifteen years of the nineteenth century.

The first functional semiautomatic firearm was the Mannlicher Model 85 rifle, invented in 1885.[349] Mannlicher introduced new models in 1891, 1893, and 1895.[350] Semiautomatic handguns before the turn of the century included

---

[347] *See* text at note ___.

[348] The 1862 model was the 10-round Jarre harmonica pistol. WINANT, CURIOUSA, at 244–45. As the name implied, the magazine stuck out horizontally from the side of the firing chamber, making the handgun awkward to carry. SUPICA ET AL., at 33.

[349] U.S. NAVY SEAL SNIPER TRAINING PROGRAM 87 (2011).

[350] JOHN WALTER, RIFLES OF THE WORLD 568–69 (3rd ed. 2006).

the Mauser C96,[351] Bergmann Simplex,[352] Borchardt M1894,[353] Borchardt C-93,[354] Fabrique Nationale M1899,[355] Mannlicher M1896 and M1897,[356] Luger M1898 and M1899,[357] Roth-Theodorovic M1895, M1897, and M1898,[358] and the Schwarzlose M1898.[359] The ones that became major commercial successes were the Mauser and the Luger, both of which would sell millions in the following decades, to militaries and civilians. The Luger used a detachable magazine; the original Mauser's internal magazine was reloaded with stripper clips.

American-made semi-automatic handguns, rifles, and shotguns were just around the corner, to be introduced in the early years of the twentieth century.[360]

E. Continuing advances in firearms were well-known to the Founders

While the Founders could not foresee all the specific advances that would take place in the nineteenth century, the Founders were well aware that firearms were getting better and better.

Tremendous improvements in firearms had always been part of the American experience. The first European settlers in America had mainly owned matchlocks. When the trigger is pressed, a smoldering hemp cord is lowered to the firing pan; the powder in the pan then ignites the main gunpowder charge in the barrel.[361]

---

[351] DOUGHERTY, *supra* note 46, at 84.

[352] *Id.* at 85.

[353] *Springfield Armory Museum – Collection Record*, REDISCOV.COM, http://ww2.rediscov.com/spring/VFPCGI.exe?IDCFile=/spring/DETAILS.IDC,SPECIFIC=9707,DATABASE=objects.

[354] Leonardo Antaris, *In the Beginning: Semi-Automatic Pistols of the 19th Century*, AMERICAN RIFLEMAN, Jan. 4, 2018.

[355] *Id.*

[356] *Id.*

[357] *Id.*

[358] *Id.*

[359] *Id.*

[360] Many of the first American semiautomatics were invented by John Moses Browning, the greatest of all American firearms inventors. The semiautomatics of the twenty-first century are refinements of the work of Browning, Borchaldt, Mauser, and the other great inventors of their time.

[361] *See* text at notes ___.

As described *infra*, the first firearm more reliable than the matchlock was the wheel lock, invented by Leonardo da Vinci.[362] In a wheel lock, the powder in the firing pan is ignited when a serrated wheel strikes a piece of iron pyrite.[363] The wheel lock was the first firearm that could be kept loaded and ready for use in a sudden emergency. Although matchlock pistols had existed, the wheel lock made pistols far more practical and common.[364] The wheel lock was the "preferred firearm for cavalry" in the sixteenth and seventeenth centuries.[365] The proliferation of wheel locks in Europe in the sixteenth century coincided with the homicide rate falling by half.[366]

However, wheel locks cost much more than a matchlock. Moreover, their moving parts were far more complicated than the matchlocks'. Under conditions of hard use in North America, wheel locks were too delicate and too difficult to repair. The path of technological advancement often involves expensive inventions eventually leading to products that are affordable to average consumers and are even better than the original invention. That has been the story of firearms in America.

The gun that was even better than the wheel lock, but simpler and less expensive, was the flintlock. The earliest versions of flintlocks had appeared in the mid-sixteenth century. But not until the end of the seventeenth century did most European armies replace their matchlocks with flintlocks. Americans, individually, made the transition much sooner.[367]

Indian warfare in the thick woods of the Atlantic seaboard was based on ambush, quick raids, and fast individual decision-making in combat—the opposite of the more orderly battles and sieges of European warfare. In America, the flintlock became a necessity.

Unlike matchlocks, flintlocks can be kept always ready.[368] There is no smoldering hemp cord to give away the location of the user. Flintlocks are more reliable than matchlocks—all the more so in adverse weather, although still

[362] *See* text at notes ___.
[363] *See* text at notes ___.
[364] *See* LOCKHART at 80.
[365] *See* LOCKHART at 80.
[366] *See* Carlisle E. Moody, *Firearms and the Decline of Violence in Europe: 1200-2010*, 9 REV. EUR. STUD. 53 (2017)
[367] *See* LOCKHART at 106.
[368] With the caveat that gunpowder is hygroscopic, and too much water could ruin the gunpowder. Hence the practice of storing a firearm on the mantel above the fireplace.

far from impervious to rain and moisture. Flintlocks are also simpler and faster to reload than matchlocks.[369]

Initially, the flintlock could not shoot further or more accurately than a matchlock.[370] But it could shoot much more rapidly. A matchlock more than a minute to reload once.[371] In experienced hands, a flintlock could be fired and reloaded five times in a minute, although under the stress of combat, three times a minute was a more typical rate.[372] Compared to a matchlock, a flintlock was more likely to ignite the gunpowder charge instantaneously, rather than with a delay of some seconds.[373] "The flintlock gave infantry the ability to generate an overwhelmingly higher level of firepower."[374]

The Theoretical Lethality Index (TLI), which will be discussed further in the next section, is a measure of a weapon's effectiveness in military combat. The TLI of a seventeenth century musket is 19 and the TLI of an eighteenth century flintlock is 43.[375] So the transition of firearm type in the American colonies more than doubled the TLI. There is no reason to believe that the American Founders were ignorant of how much better their own firearms were compared to those of the early colonists.

As described in Part II.E, founders who had served in the Continental Congress knew of Joseph Belton's 16-shot firearm.[376] Likewise, the 22-shot Girardoni rifle famously carried by Lewis & Clark was no secret, and it had been invented in 1779. As of 1785, South Carolina gunsmith James Ransier of Charleston, South Carolina, was advertising four-shot repeaters for sale.[377]

The founding generation was especially aware of one of the most common firearms of their time, the Pennsylvania-Kentucky rifle. The rifle was invented by German and Swiss immigrants in the early eighteenth century. It was

---

[369] JOHNSON ET AL., *supra* note 16, at 2189–90; GREENER, *supra* note 29, at 66–67; CHARLES C. CARLTON, THIS SEAT OF MARS: WAR AND THE BRITISH ISLES 1585-1746, at 171–73 (2011).

[370] *See* LOCKHART at 105.

[371] *See* LOCKHART at 107.

[372] *See* LOCKHART at 107–08.

[373] *See* LOCKHART at 104.

[374] LOCKHART at 107.

[375] TREVOR DUPUY, THE EVOLUTION OF WEAPONS AND WARFARE 92 (1984).

[376] Delegates to the 1777 Continental Congress included the two Charles Carrolls from Maryland, future Supreme Court Chief Justice Samuel Chase, John Adams, Samuel Adams, Francis Dana, Elbridge Gerry, John Hancock, John Witherspoon (President of Princeton, the great American college for free thought), Benjamin Harrison (father and grandfather of two Presidents). Francis Lightfoot Lee, a d Richard Henry Lee (hero of the *1776* musical).

[377] COLUMBIAN HERALD (Charleston), Oct. 26, 1785.

created initially for the needs of frontiersmen who might spend months on a hunting expedition in the dense American woods. "What Americans demanded of their gunsmiths seemed impossible": a rifle that weighed ten pounds or less, for which a month of ammunition would weigh one to three pounds, "with proportionately small quantities of powder, be easy to load," and "with such velocity and flat trajectories that one fixed rear sight would serve as well at fifty yards as at three hundred, the necessary but slight difference in elevation being supplied by the user's experience."[378] "By about 1735 the impossible had taken shape" with the creation of the iconic Pennsylvania-Kentucky rifle.[379]

As for the most common American firearm, the smoothbore (nonrifled) flintlock musket, there had also been great advances. To a casual observer, a basic flintlock musket of 1790 looks very similar to flintlock musket of 1690. However, improvements in small parts, many of them internal, had made the best flintlocks far superior to their ancestors. For example, thanks to English gunsmith Henry Nock's 1787 patented flintlock breech, "the gun shot so hard and so fast that the very possibility of such performance had hitherto not even been imaginable."[380]

The Founders were well aware that what had been impossible or unimaginable to one generation could become commonplace in the next. With the federal armories advanced research and development program that began in the Madison administration, the U.S. government did its best to make the impossible possible.

F. Perspective

In the early nineteenth century, the finest maker of flintlock shotguns was Old Joe Manton of London. A "strong, plain gun" from Manton cost hundreds of dollars. By 1910, a modern shotgun, "incomparably superior, especially in fit, balance, and artistic appearance" to Manton's cost about ten dollars.[381]

Military historian Trevor Dupuy created a "Theoretical Lethality Index" (TLI) to compare the effectiveness of battlefield weapons from ancient times through the twentieth century.[382] While the TLI was never intended describe weapon utility in civilian defense situations, such as against home invaders, it

---

[378] HELD, *supra* note 20, at 142.

[379] *Id.*

[380] *Id.* at 137.

[381] CHARLES ASKINS, THE AMERICAN SHOTGUN 21–22 (1910). Ten dollars in 1913 is approximately equal to $250 today. Three hundred dollars in 1913 would be over $7,000 today.

[382] TREVOR DUPUY, THE EVOLUTION OF WEAPONS AND WARFARE (1984).

is a usable rough estimate for community defense situations, such as militia use. According to Dupuy, the TLI of an 18th century flintlock (the common service arm of the American Revolution) was 43.[383] The TLI of the standard service arm 112 years after the Second Amendment was ratified—the 1903 Springfield bolt-action magazine-fed rifle—is 495.[384] Dupuy did not calculate a TLI for late twentieth century firearms. Using Dupuy's formula, Kopel calculated the TLI for two modern firearms: an AR semiautomatic rifle is 640, and a 9mm semiautomatic handgun is 295.[385]

Again, the TLI has nothing to do with personal defense. An AR rifle is not always twice as good as a 9mm pistol for defense against a rapist or home invader. The modern rifle might be better or worse than the modern handgun, depending on other circumstances.

For militia utility, the 11-fold advance from the single-shot flintlock to the magazine-fed bolt action rifle of 1903 is enormous. The founding generation did not precisely predict the Springfield bolt action or its 11-fold improvement over the long guns of the founding period. The Founders did do all they could to make that improvement take place.

---

[383] *Id.* at 92.

[384] *Id.* The previous U.S. military standard rifle was the 1892 bolt action Krag–Jørgensen. Its underperformance in the 1898 Spanish-American War led the War Department to start looking for something better. *See* LOCKHART at 279–80.

The British had adopted the bolt action magazine-fed Lee-Metford rifle in 1888, and the Germans the Mauser Gewehr 98 in 1898. The 1903 Springfield was essentially a modified Mauser, for which the U.S. government had to pay damages to settle a patent suit. The Springfield 1903 stayed in service through the Vietnam War, although it lost is role as the standard rifle during World War II to the semiautomatic M1 Garand. A huge number of twentieth and twenty-first century American hunting rifles are variants of the Springfield; many use the Springfield's famous .30-'06 cartridge. It is "the most flexible, useful, all-around big game cartridge available to the American hunter." CARTRIDGES OF THE WORLD ___ (17th ed. 2022).

[385] David Kopel, *The Theoretical Lethality Index is useful for military history but not for gun control policy*, REASON.COM/VOLOKH CONSPIRACY, Nov. 1, 2022.

A modern mid-power handgun, such as 9mm, is far superior to a flintlock long gun of the late 1700s in reliability and rate of fire. But handguns have much shorter barrels than long guns. As a result handguns, even the best modern ones, have lesser range than rifles. While the difference usually does not matter for personal defense, longer range is often very important in military combat, such as militia use. Hence the modern handgun's rating far below modern rifles in the combat-oriented TLI.

As firearms historian Robert Held wrote in 1957, "the *history* of firearms" came to an end in the late nineteenth century.[386] Although manufacturing quality has always been improving, design refinements continue, and ergonomics are the better than ever, in the twentieth century there were no major innovations in firearms. For the average citizen, the nineteenth century brought in the revolver action, the lever action, the pump action, and the semiautomatic action. Those are still the types of firearms that are most common today.[387] The firearms you can own today are better-manufactured and more affordable versions of types that were introduced before 1900.

The big exception is for optics, thanks to lasers (now broadly affordable), high-power scopes, and handheld computers integrated with scopes, for long range hunting.

During the nineteenth century, bans on particular types of firearms were rare. As will be described in the next Part, there were four state statutes that aimed at particular firearms. Three of them covered handguns, old and new; one of them aimed at repeating rifles.

---

[386] HELD, *supra* note 20, at 186 ("Although the age of firearms today thrives with ten thousand species in the fullest heat of summer, the *history* of firearms ended between seventy and eighty years ago. There has been nothing new since, and almost certainly nothing will come hereafter."). According to Held, any modern bolt-action is "essentially" an updated version of the Mauser bolt-actions of the 1890s or the Mannlicher bolt-actions of the 1880s. "All lever-action rifles are at heart Henrys of the early 1860s," and all semi-automatics "descend from" the models of the 1880s. *Id.* at 185.

[387] Also still common today are firearms that were typical in the eighteenth century and before: single-shot and double-barrel (2-shot) guns.

The automatic firearm—what is commonly called a machine gun—was invented by Hiram Maxim in 1884. During the nineteenth century, it had strong sales to militaries, except in the United States. There, the military was mainly a "frontier constabulary." Unlike France, Germany, and other European states, the United States was not engaged in a arms race with nearby rivals that might invade. Maxim contacted American firearms manufacturers with offers to license his machine gun system for their models. He was universally rebuffed, sometimes with colorful language. The first and only machine gun marketed to American consumers was the Thompson submachinegun, starting in 1920. In the consumer market, it was a failure. The gun was popular with criminals, especially bootleggers, and had some sales to law enforcement. The National Firearms Act of 1934 followed the lead of several state laws starting in the mid-1920s, and imposed a stiff tax and registration system on machine guns. *See* JOHN ELLIS, THE SOCIAL HISTORY OF THE MACHINE GUN (1986),

The Thompson finally found a constructive role in World War II, where it was widely issued to American and British special forces, such as paratroopers.

IV. FIREARMS BANS IN THE 19TH CENTURY

This Part describes bans on particular types of firearms in the nineteenth century. The discussion also notes some Bowie knife legislation that was enacted along with some of the handgun laws. Bowie knives will be discussed in much more detail in Part V.

A. Georgia ban on handguns, Bowie knives, and other arms

Between 1791 and the beginning of the Civil War in 1861, there was one law enacted against acquiring particular types of firearms. An 1837 Georgia statute made it illegal for anyone "to sell, or to offer to sell, or to keep or to have about their persons, or elsewhere" any:

> Bowie or any other kinds of knives, manufactured and sold for the purpose of wearing or carrying the same as arms of offence or defence; pistols, dirks,[388] sword-canes, spears, &c., shall also be contemplated in this act, save such pistols as are known and used as horseman's pistols.[389]

Horse pistols were the only type of handgun not banned in Georgia. These were large handguns, usually sold in a pair, along with a double holster that was meant to be draped over a saddle. They were too large for practical carry by a person who was walking.

At the time, there was no right to arms in the Georgia Constitution. In 1846, the Georgia Supreme Court held the statute unconstitutional.[390] The court explained that the Second Amendment stated an inherent right, and nothing in the Georgia Constitution had ever authorized the state government to

---

[388] A fighting knife originally created in Scotland. HAROLD L. PETERSON, DAGGERS & FIGHTING KNIVES OF THE WESTERN WORLD 60 (1968).

[389] 1837 Ga. Laws 90, sec. 1. Although section 1 of the act was prohibitory, Section 4 contained an exception allowing open carry of some of the aforesaid arms, not including handguns: "*Provided, also*, that no person or persons, shall be found guilty of violating the before recited act, who shall openly wear, externally, Bowie Knives, Dirks, Tooth Picks, Spears, and which shall be exposed plainly to view…" The same section also allowed vendors to sell inventory they already owned, through the next year.

[390] Nunn v. State, 1 Ga. 243 (1846).

violate the right.[391] For all the weapons, including handguns, the ban on concealed carry was upheld, while the sales ban, possession ban, and open carry ban were held unconstitutional.[392] The U.S. Supreme Court's 2008 *District of Columbia v. Heller* extolled *Nunn* because the "opinion perfectly captured the way in which the operative clause of the Second Amendment furthers the purpose announced in the prefatory clause."[393] *Nunn* was a leader among the many antebellum state court decisions holding that a right enumerated in the U.S. Bill of Rights was protected against state infringement.[394]

B. Tennessee ban on many handguns

After the end of Reconstruction, the white supremacist legislature of Tennessee in 1879 banned the sale "of belt or pocket pistols, or revolvers, or any other kind of pistol, except army or navy pistols"—that is, large handguns of the sort carried by military officers, artillerymen, cavalrymen, etc. These big and well-made guns were already possessed in quantity by many former Confederate soldiers. The big handguns were more expensive than smaller pistols. Although some ordinary Confederate infantrymen did have handguns, many infantrymen had only long guns.

Because officers and cavalrymen tended to come from the upper strata of society, the effect of the 1879 Tennessee law was to make new handguns unaffordable to poor people of all races. The vast majority of the former slaves were poor, and so were many whites. While some Jim Crow era laws had a focused racial impact, the Tennessee statute was one of many Jim Crow laws that disadvantaged black people *and* poor whites, both of whom were viewed with suspicion by the ruling classes.

The ban on sales of small handguns was upheld under the Tennessee state constitution because it would help reduce the concealed carrying of handguns.[395]

---

[391] *Id.* at 250–51.
[392] *Id.* at 251.
[393] *Heller*, 554 U.S. at 612.
[394] *See* Jason Mazzone, *The Bill of Rights in Early State Courts*, 92 MINN. L. REV. 1 (2007); AKHIL REED AMAR, THE BILL OF RIGHTS 145–56 (1998) (discussing "the Barron contrarians").
[395] State v. Burgoyne, 75 Tenn. (7 Lea) 173 (1881).

C. Arkansas ban on many handguns, and Bowie knives

Arkansas followed suit with a similar law in 1881. That law also forbade the sale of Bowie knives, dirks (another type of knife), sword-canes (a sword concealed in a walking stick), and metal knuckles. In a prosecution for the sale of a pocket pistol, the Arkansas Supreme Court rejected a constitutional defense. The statute was "leveled at the pernicious habit of wearing such dangerous or deadly weapons as are easily concealed about the person. It does not abridge the constitutional right of citizens to keep and bear arms for the common defense; for it in no wise restrains the use or sale of such arms as are useful in warfare."[396]

The 1868 Arkansas Constitution's right to arms, still in effect, states, "The citizens of this State shall have the right to keep and bear arms for their common defence."[397] Similarly, the right to arms provision of the Tennessee Constitution, as adopted in 1870 and still in effect, states, "the citizens of this State have a right to keep and to bear arms for their common defense; but the Legislature shall have power, by law, to regulate the wearing of arms with a view to prevent crime."[398]

In both states, the "common defense" language was interpreted by the courts as protecting an individual right of everyone, but only for militia-type arms. Such arms included the general types of handguns used in the U.S. military. When Congress was drafting the future Second Amendment, there was a proposal in the Senate to add similar "common defence" language. The Senate rejected the proposal.[399]

Whatever the merits of the state courts' interpretations of the state constitutions, the Tennessee and Arkansas statutes are unconstitutional under the Second Amendment. The U.S. Supreme Court in *Heller* repudiated the notion that the Second Amendment is for only military-type arms. Dick

[396] Dabbs v. State, 39 Ark. 353, 357 (1885).
[397] ARK. CONST. of 1868, art. I, § 5 (retained in 1874 Ark. Const.).
[398] TENN. CONST. of 1870, art. I, § 26.
[399] Senate Journal, 1st Cong., 1st Sess. 77 (Sept. 9, 1789).

Heller's 9-shot .22 caliber revolver was certainly not a military-type handgun.[400]

D. Florida licensing law for repeating rifles and handguns

The closest historic analogue to twenty-first century bans on semiautomatic rifles is an 1893 Florida statute that required owners of Winchesters and other repeating rifles to apply for a license from the board of county commissioners.[401] In 1901 the law was extended to also include handguns.[402] As amended, "Whoever shall carry around with, or have in his manual possession, in any county in this State, any pistol, Winchester rifle, or other repeating rifle, without having a license from the county commissioners of the respective counties of this State," should be fined up to $100 or imprisoned up to 30 days.[403]

The county commissioners could issue a two-year license only if the applicant posted a bond of $100.[404] The commissioners were required to record "the maker of the firearm so licensed to be carried, and the caliber and number of the same."[405] The bond of $100 was exorbitant. It was equivalent to over $3,400 today.[406]

A 1909 case involved Giocomo Russo's petition for a writ of mandamus against county commissioners who had refused his application for a handgun carry license.[407] Based on his name, Russo may have been an Italian immigrant. At the time, Italians were sometimes considered to be in a separate racial category. When Russo applied, the county commissioners said that they only issued licenses to applicants whom they knew personally, and they did

[400] Dick Heller's particular handgun, a single action Buntline revolver manufactured by High Standard, is identified at Plaintiffs' Motion for Summary Judgment, Exhibit A, Parker v. District of Columbia, 311 F. Supp. 2d 103 (D.D.C. 2004), https://web.archive.org/web/20111117110734/http://www.gurapossessky.com/news/parker/documents/SJExhibitA.pdf.

[401] 1893 Fla. Laws 71, ch. 4147.

[402] 1901 Fla. Laws 57, ch. 4928.

[403] *Id.* Codified at REVISED GENERAL LAWS OF FLORIDA, §§ 7202–03 (1927).

[404] *Id.*

[405] *Id.*

[406] Fed. Reserve Bank of Minneapolis, Consumer Price Index 1800, https://www.minneapolisfed.org/about-us/monetary-policy/inflation-calculator/consumer-price-index-1800-. 2022=884.6. 1893=27. 1901= 25. Avg. = 26.

[407] State v. Parker, 57 Fla. 170, 49 So. 124 (1909).

not think the applicant needed to carry a handgun.[408] Russo argued that the licensing statute was unconstitutional.[409]

The Florida Supreme Court denied Russo's petition for a writ of mandamus.[410] According to the court, there were two possibilities: 1. If the statute is constitutional, then mandamus to the county commissioners would be incorrect, because they acted within their legal discretion. 2. If the statute is unconstitutional, then mandamus would be improper, because a writ of mandamus cannot order an official to carry out an unconstitutional statute.[411] Either way, Russo was not entitled to a writ of mandamus.[412] Pursuant to the doctrine of constitutional avoidance, the court declined to opine on the statute's constitutionality.[413]

Decades later, a case arose as to whether a handgun in an automobile glovebox fit within the statutory language, "on his person or in his manual possession."[414] By 5–2, the Florida Supreme Court held that it did not; no license was necessary to carry a handgun or repeating rifle in an automobile.[415] A four Justice majority granted the defendant's petition for habeas corpus because of the rule of lenity: in case of ambiguity criminal statutes should be construed narrowly.[416] Automobile travelers "should be recognized and accorded the full rights of free and independent American citizens," said the majority.[417]

Justice Rivers H. Buford concurred with the majority.[418] His opinion went straight to the core problem with the statute.

Born in 1878, Buford had worked from ages 10 to 21 in Florida logging and lumber camps. In 1899, at the suggestion of a federal judge who owned a logging camp, Buford began the study of law. He was admitted to the Florida bar the next year. In 1901, he was elected to the Florida House of Representatives. Later, he was appointed county prosecuting attorney, elected

[408] *Id.* at 171–72.
[409] *Id.*
[410] *Id.* at 173.
[411] *Id.*
[412] *Id.*
[413] *Id.* at 172–73.
[414] Watson v. Stone, 148 Fla. 516, 518 (1941).
[415] *Id.* at 522–23.
[416] *Id.* at 517–23.
[417] *Id.* at 522–23.
[418] *Id.* at 523–24.

state's attorney for the 9th district, and elected state attorney general. He was appointed to the Florida Supreme Court in 1925.[419] As of 1923, "His principal diversion is hunting."[420]

The Florida Constitution of 1885 had provided: "The right of the people to bear arms in defence of themselves and the lawful authority of the State, shall not be infringed, but the Legislature may prescribe the manner in which they may be borne."[421]

Concurring, Justice Buford wrote that the statute should be held to violate the Florida Constitution and the Second Amendment:

> I concur in the judgment discharging the relator because I think that Section 5100, R.G.S., § 7202, C.G.L., is unconstitutional because it offends against the Second Amendment to the Constitution of the United States and Section 20 of the Declaration of Rights of the Constitution of Florida.
>
> Proceedings in habeas corpus will lie for the discharge of one who is held in custody under a charge based on an unconstitutional statute. [citations omitted]
>
> The statute, supra, does not attempt to prescribe the manner in which arms may be borne but definitely infringes on the right of the citizen to bear arms as guaranteed to him under Section 20 of the Declaration of Rights of the Florida Constitution.[422]

He explained the history of the exorbitant licensing laws of 1893 and 1901:

> I know something of the history of this legislation. The original Act of 1893 was passed when there was a great influx of negro laborers in this State drawn here for the purpose of working in turpentine and lumber camps. The same condition existed when the Act was amended in 1901 and the Act was passed for the purpose of disarming the negro laborers and to thereby reduce the unlawful homicides that were prevalent in turpentine and saw-mill camps and to give the white citizens in sparsely settled areas

---

[419] 3 HISTORY OF FLORIDA: PAST AND PRESENT 156 (1923); *Justice Rivers Henderson Buford*, FLORIDA SUPREME COURT, https://supremecourt.flcourts.gov/Justices/Former-Justices/Justice-Rivers-Henderson-Buford.

[420] 3 HISTORY OF FLORIDA, *supra* note 419, at 156.

[421] Fla. Const. of 1885, art. I, § 20.

[422] *Watson*, 148 Fla. at 523–24.

Case 4:23-cv-00547-O Document 20-3 Filed 10/06/23 Page 306 of 462 PageID 979

> a better feeling of security. The statute was never intended to be applied to the white population and in practice has never been so applied. We have no statistics available, but it is a safe guess to assume that more than 80% of the white men living in the rural sections of Florida have violated this statute. It is also a safe guess to say that not more than 5% of the men in Florida who own pistols and repeating rifles have ever applied to the Board of County Commissioners for a permit to have the same in their possession and there had never been, within my knowledge, any effort to enforce the provisions of this statute as to white people, because it has been generally conceded to be in contravention of the Constitution and non-enforceable if contested.[423]

Justice Buford had described some of the changed societal conditions underlying the 1893 and 1901 enactments. There may have been additional factors involved. Repeating rifles had been around for decades.[424] By the 1880s, manufacturing improvements had made such rifles affordable even for some poor people. Blacks were using such rifles to drive off lynch mobs, such as in famous 1892 incidents in Paducah, Kentucky and Jacksonville, Florida.[425]

In sum, the nineteenth century history of firearms bans is not helpful for justifying prohibitions today on semiautomatic firearms. The only pre-1900 statutory precedent for such a law is Florida in 1893, and it is dubious. Before that, there were three prior sales prohibitions that covered many or most handguns. One of these was held to violate the Second Amendment, and the other two are plainly unconstitutional under *Heller*. Accordingly, renewed

---

[423] *Id.* at 524.

[424] *See* text at notes 320–343.

[425] In Jacksonville,

> [W]hen a white man, having been killed by a negro, and threats of lynching the prisoner from the Duval County Jail being made, a large concourse, or mob of negroes, assembled around the jail and defied and denied the sheriff of the county ingress to the building. This mob, refusing to disburse upon the reading of the riot act by the sheriff, he called for assistance from the militia to aid him in enforcing the laws.

REPORT OF THE ADJUTANT-GENERAL FOR THE BIENNIAL PERIOD ENDING DECEMBER 31, 1892, at 18, *in* [Florida] *Journal of the Senate* (1893); NICHOLAS J. JOHNSON, NEGROES AND GUN: THE BLACK TRADITION OF ARMS 110–12 (2014).

attention is being given to precedents involving Bowie knives, which we will examine next.

V. BOWIE KNIVES

Starting in 1837, many states enacted legislation about Bowie knives. Defending Maryland's ban on many modern rifles, state Attorney General Brian Frosh argues that nineteenth century laws about Bowie knives provide a historical analogy to justify the present ban.[426] Prohibitory laws for adults, however, were exceptional. As with firearms, sales bans or bans on all manner of carrying existed, but were rare.

Section A explains the definition and history of Bowie knives, and of a related knife, the Arkansas toothpick. Part B is a state-by-state survey of all Bowie knife legislation in the United States before 1900.

Among the 221 state or territorial statutes with the words "Bowie knife" or "Bowie knives," only 5 were just about Bowie knives (along with their close relative, the Arkansas toothpick). Almost always, Bowie knives were regulated the same as other knives that were well-suited for fighting against humans and animals—namely "dirks" or "daggers." That same regulatory category frequently also included "sword-canes." About 98 percent of statutes on "Bowie knives" treated them the same as various other blade arms. Bowie knives did not set any precedent for a uniquely high level of control. They were regulated the same as a butcher's knife.

Bowie knives and many other knives were often regulated like handguns. Both types of arms are concealable, effective for defense, and easy to misuse for offense.

For Bowie knives, handguns, and other arms, a few states prohibited sales. The very large majority, however, respected the right to keep and bear arms, including Bowie knives. These states allowed open carry while some of them forbade *concealed* carry. In the nineteenth century, legislatures tended to prefer that people carry openly; today, legislatures tend to favor concealed carry. Based on history and precedent, legislatures may regulate the mode of carry, as the U.S. Supreme Court affirmed in *Bruen.*[427]

---

[426] Supplemental Brief for Appellees, *Bianchi v. Frosh* (No. 21-1255) (4th Cir.),

[427] *Bruen*, 142 S. Ct. 2150 ("The historical evidence from antebellum America does demonstrate that *the manner* of public carry was subject to reasonable regulation. . . . States could lawfully eliminate one kind of public carry—concealed carry—so long as they left open the option to carry openly.").

Besides regulating the mode of carry, many states restricted sales to minors. They also enacted special laws against misuse of arms.

Of the 221 state or territorial statutes cited in this article, 115 come from just 5 states: Mississippi, Alabama, Georgia, Virginia, and North Carolina. This is partly because these were the only states whose personal property tax statutes specifically included "Bowie knife" in their lists of taxable arms, along with other knives, such as "dirks."

Before delving into the Bowie knife laws, here is a glossary of the arms types that often appear in the same statutes as Bowie knives:

Bowie knife. This was the marketing and newspaper term for old or new models of knives suitable for fighting, hunting, and utility. There was no common feature that distinguished a "Bowie knife" from older knives. For example, a "Bowie knife" could have a blade sharpened on only one edge, or on two edges. It could be straight or curved. It might or might not have a handguard. There was no particular length.[428]

Arkansas toothpick. A loose term for some Bowie knives popular in Arkansas.[429]

Dagger. A straight knife with two cutting edges and a handguard.

Dirk. Small stabbing weapons, with either one or two sharpened edges.[430] Originally, a Scottish fighting knife with one cutting edge.[431] Many nineteenth century laws forbade concealed carry of "dirks" and/or "daggers." The statutory formula of "bowie knife + (dirk and/or dagger)" covered many knives well-suited for defense or offense. The category does not include pocket knives.

Sword-cane. A sword concealed in a walking stick. Necessarily with a slender blade.

Slungshot. The original slungshot was a nautical tool, a rope looped on both ends, with a lead weight or other small, dense item at one end.[432] It helps sailors accurately cast mooring lines and other ropes.[433] A slungshot rope that is shortened to forearm length and spun rapidly is an effective blunt force

---

[428] *See* text at notes __.

[429] *See* text at notes __.

[430] "Dirks in America were small stabbing weapons, usually small daggers but sometimes single edged." Mark Zalesky, publisher of *Knife Magazine*, email to David Kopel, Nov. 19, 2022.

[431] PETERSON, DAGGERS & FIGHTING KNIVES OF THE WESTERN WORLD, *supra* note 388, at 60.

[432] *See* text at notes __.

[433] *See* text at notes __.

weapon.[434] As will be detailed in Part VI.B.1, many slungshots were made of leather instead of rope, intended for use as weapons, and very easily concealed.

Colt. Similar to a slungshot.[435]

Knucks, knuckles. Linked rings or a bar, often made of metal, with finger holes. They make the fist a more potent weapon. Laws about knuckles are also detailed in part VI.

Revolver. A handgun in which the ammunition is held in a rotating cylinder.

Pistol. Often a generic term for handguns. Sometimes used to indicate non-revolvers, as in a law covering "pistols or revolvers."

A. The history of Bowie knives and Arkansas toothpicks

1. What is a Bowie knife?

The term "Bowie knife" originated after frontiersman Col. Jim Bowie used one at a famous "Sandbar Fight" on the lower Mississippi River near Natchez, Mississippi, on September 19, 1827.

The knife had been made by Rezin Bowie, Jim's brother. According to Rezin, the knife was intended for bear hunting. He stated, "The length of the knife was nine and a quarter inches, its width one and a half inches, single-edged, and blade not curved."[436] Nothing about the knife was novel.

The initial and subsequent media coverage of the Sandbar Fight was often highly inaccurate.[437] As "Bowie knife" entered the American vocabulary, manufacturers began labeling all sorts of large knives as "Bowie knives." Some of these were straight (like Rezin's) and other had curved blades. Rezin's knife was single-edged, but some "Bowie knives" were double-edged. Rezin's knife did not have a clip point, but some so-called "Bowie knives" did. Likewise, some had crossguards (to protect the user's hand), and others did not. "Bowie knife" was more a sloppy marketing term than a description of a particular type of knife—just as some people today say "Coke" to mean many kinds of carbonated beverages. (The difference is that true "Coke" products, manufactured by the Coca-Cola Company, do exist; there never was a true "Bowie knife," other than the one used at the Sandbar Fight.) Manufacturers slapped the "Bowie knife"

---

[434] *See* text at notes __.

[435] 1 SHORTER OXFORD ENGLISH DICTIONARY 444 ("4. A short piece of weighted rope used as a weapon").

[436] R.P. Bowie, *Letter to the Editor*, PLANTER'S ADVOCATE, Aug. 24, 1838, *reprinted in* MARRYAT, 1 A DIARY IN AMERICA, WITH REMARKS ON ITS INSTITUTIONS 291 (1839).

[437] *See id.* at 289–91.

label on a wide variety of large knives that were well-suited for hunting and self-defense. In words of knife historian Norm Flayderman, "there is no one specific knife that can be exactingly described as a Bowie knife."[438]

From the beginning, laws about "Bowie knives" have been plagued by vagueness. For example, a Tennessee statute against concealed carry applied to "any Bowie knife or knives, or Arkansas tooth picks, or any knife or weapon that shall in form, shape or size resemble a Bowie knife or any Arkansas tooth pick. . . ."[439]

When Stephen Hayes was prosecuted for concealed carry, the witnesses disagreed about whether his knife was a Bowie knife.[440] One said it was too small and slim to be a Bowie knife and would properly be called a "Mexican pirate-knife."[441] The jury found Haynes innocent of wearing a Bowie knife but guilty on a second charge "of wearing a knife in shape or size resembling a bowie-knife."[442] Note the disjunctive "form, shape *or* size." On appeal, the Tennessee Supreme Court agreed that the legislature could not declare "war against the name of the knife."[443] A strict application of the letter of the law could result in injustices, "for a small pocket-knife, which is innocuous, may be made to resemble in form and shape a bowie-knife or Arkansas tooth-pick."[444] The court affirmed the conviction, held that the statute must be construed "within the spirit and meaning of the law," and relied on the judge and jury to make the decision as a matter of fact.[445]

---

[438] NORM FLAYDERMAN, THE BOWIE KNIFE: UNSHEATHING AN AMERICAN LEGEND 490 (2004).

[439] 22 Tenn. Gen. Assemb. Acts 200, ch. 137.

[440] Haynes v. State, 24 Tenn. (5 Hum.) 120, 120–21 (1844).

[441] *Id.* at 121.

[442] *Id.*

[443] *Id.* at 122.

[444] *Id.*

[445] *Id.* at 122–23.

Similarly, a North Carolina law prohibited carrying "concealed about his person any pistol, bowie knife, dirk, dagger, slung-shot, loaded cane, brass, iron or metallic knuckles, or razor, or other deadly weapon of like kind." Defendant argued that his butcher's knife was not encompassed by the statute. He argued that the statute applied to weapons "used only for purposes offensive and defensive." The North Carolina Supreme Court disagreed, for such an interpretation would allow concealed carry of "deadly weapons of a very fatal type; as for example, a butcher's knife, a shoe knife, a carving knife, a hammer, a hatchet, and the like." Defendant had argued that a broad interpretation would

2. What is an Arkansas toothpick?

As for "Arkansas Toothpick," Flayderman says that it was mainly another marketing term for "Bowie knife."[446] But he notes that some Mississippi tax receipts, and some other writings, expressly distinguish an "Arkansas Toothpick" from a "Bowie knife."[447]

Mark Zalesky, publisher of *Knife Magazine*, explains:

> The idea of the "Arkansas toothpick" being a large dagger seems to stem from Raymond Thorp's 1948 book *Bowie Knife* (Thorp actually did some good research, but much of the book is complete nonsense); *The Iron Mistress* novel and movie in 1951/52; and the subsequent interest in Bowie, Crockett, the Alamo etc. during the 1950s and early 1960s. You are dealing with a definition that has changed over the years.[448]

But as of 1840, "Most evidence supports the idea that 'Arkansas toothpick' was originally a 'frontier brag' of sorts, a casual nickname for any variety of bowie knife but particularly types that were popular in Arkansas." [449]

3. The crime in the Arkansas legislature

The sandbar fight had taken place in 1827. Jim Bowie died on March 6, 1836, as one of the defenders of the Alamo. In 1840, he would become the namesake of Bowie County, the northeasternmost in Texas. According to Zalesky, "we first see the term 'Bowie knife' beginning to come into use in 1835

> embrace small and large pocket knives, and like useful practical things that men constantly carry in their pockets and about their persons, and are more or less deadly instruments in their character. The answer to this is, that these things are not ordinarily carried and used as deadly weapons, but for practical purposes, and the ordinary pocket knife cannot be reckoned as per se a deadly weapon; but it would be indictable to so carry them for such unlawful purpose if deadly in their type and nature. If one should carry a pocket knife, deadly in its character, as a weapon of assault and defense, he would be indictable, just as he would be if he carried a dirk or dagger.

State v. Erwin, 91 N.C. 545, 546–48 (1884).

[446] FLAYDERMAN, THE BOWIE KNIFE, *supra* note at __, at 265–74.

[447] *Id.*

[448] Mark Zelesky, email to David Kopel, Nov. 10, 2022.

[449] Mark Zelesky, email to David Kopel, Nov. 19, 2022.

and by mid-1836 it was everywhere. It is clear that such knives existed before the term for them became popular."[450]

The first legislation about Bowie knives, from Mississippi and Alabama in mid-1837, may have been a response to a continuing problem of criminal misuse. Legislative attention to the topic was surely intensified by an infamous crime in late 1837, which may have helped lead to the enactment of several laws in succeeding weeks. Historian Clayton Cramer explains:

> Two members of the Arkansas House of Representatives turned from insults to Bowie knives during debate as to which state official should authorize payment of bounties on wolves. Speaker of the House John Wilson was president of the Real Estate Bank. Representative J.J. Anthony sarcastically suggested that instead of having judges sign the wolf bounty warrants, some *really* important official should do so, such as the president of the Real Estate Bank.
>
> Speaker Wilson took offense and immediately confronted Anthony, at which point both men drew concealed Bowie knives. Anthony struck the first blows, and nearly severed Wilson's arm. Anthony then threw down his knife (or threw it at Wilson), then threw a chair at Wilson. In response, Wilson buried his Bowie knife to the hilt in Anthony's chest (or abdomen, depending on the account), killing him. "Anthony fell, exclaiming, 'I'm a dead man,' and immediately expired."[451] "The Speaker himself fell to the floor, weak from loss of blood. But on hands and knees he crawled to his dead opponent, withdrew his Bowie, wiped it clean on Anthony's coat, replaced it in its sheath, and fainted."[452] While Wilson was expelled from the House, he was acquitted at trial, causing "the most intense indignation through the entire State."[453]

---

[450] *Id.*

[451] Quoting WILLIAM F. POPE, EARLY DAYS IN ARKANSAS 225 (Dunbar H. Pope ed., 1895); *The Murder in Arkansas*, 54 NILES' NATIONAL REGISTER 258 (June 23, 1838).

[452] RAYMOND W. THORP, BOWIE KNIFE 4 (1991).

[453] Clayton Cramer, email to David Kopel, Nov. 2022, quoting and citing POPE, *supra* note __, at 225–26; THORP, *supra* note __, at 1–5; *General Assembly*, ARKANSAS STATE GAZETTE, Dec. 12, 1837, at 2 (expulsion two days later); *The trial of John Wilson . . .* , SOUTHERN RECORDER (Milledgeville, Ga.), Mar. 6, 1838; *The Murder in Arkansas*, NILES' NATIONAL REGISTER, *supra*.

B. Survey of Bowie knife statutes

Section B surveys every Bowie knife statute enacted by any American state or territory in the nineteenth century. Jurisdictions are discussed chronologically, by date of first enactment.

In the footnotes, a cite to an enacted statute also includes a string cite of re-enactments of the same statute, such as part of a recodification of the criminal code.

Mississippi (1837).

The first "Bowie knife" law was enacted by Mississippi on May 13, 1837. The statute punished three types of misuse of certain arms: "any rifle, shot gun, sword cane, pistol, dirk, dirk knife, bowie knife, or any other deadly weapon."[454]

It was forbidden to use such arms in a fight in a city, town, or other public place.[455] It became illegal to "exhibit the same in a rude, angry, and threatening manner, not in necessary self defence."[456] Finally, if one of the arms were used in a duel and caused a death, the duelist would be liable for the debts owed by the deceased.[457] All these provisions would later be enacted by some other states.

Another Bowie knife law was also signed on May 13 by Governor Charles Lynch. The state legislature's incorporation of the town of Sharon empowered the local government to pass laws "whereby . . . the retailing and vending of ardent spirits, gambling, and every species of vice and immorality may be suppressed, together with the total inhibition of the odious and savage practice of wearing dirks, bowie knives, or pistols."[458] Similar language appeared in the incorporation of towns in 1839 and 1840.[459]

Starting in 1841, the state annual property tax included "one dollar on each and every Bowie Knife."[460] The tax was cut to fifty cents in 1850.[461] But then raised back to a dollar, and extended to each "Arkansas tooth-pick, sword cane,

[454] 1837 Miss. L. pp. 291–92.
[455] *Id.*
[456] *Id.*
[457] *Id.*
[458] 1837 Miss. Laws 294.
[459] 1839 Miss. Laws 385, ch. 168, p. 385 (Emery); 1840 Miss. Laws 181, ch. 111 (Hernando).
[460] 1841 Miss. Laws 52, ch. 1; 1844 Miss. Laws 58, ch. 1.
[461] 1850 Miss. Laws 43, ch. 1.

duelling or pocket pistol."[462] In the next legislature, pocket pistols were removed from the tax.[463]

When the Civil War came, the legislature prohibited "any Sheriff or Tax-Collector to collect from any tax payer the tax heretofore or hereafter assessed upon any bowie-knife, sword cane, or dirk-knife, and that hereafter the owner of any howie-knife, sword-cane or dirk-knife shall not be required to give in to the tax assessor either of the aforesaid articles as taxable property."[464] That was a change for before, when tax collectors were allowed to confiscate arms from people who could not pay the property tax.[465]

After the Confederacy surrendered, the legislature was still controlled by Confederates, and an arms licensing law for the former slaves was enacted.

> [N]o freeman, free negro or mulatto, not in the military service of the United States Government, and not licensed so to do by the board of police of his or her county, shall keep or carry fire-arms of any kind, or any ammunition, dirk or bowie knife, and on conviction thereof, in the county court, shall be punished by fine, not exceeding ten dollars, and pay the costs of such proceedings, and all such arms or ammunition shall be forfeited to the informer, and it shall be the duty of every civil and military officer to arrest any freedman, free negro or mulatto found with any such arms or ammunition, and cause him or her to be committed for trial in default of bail.[466]

As detailed in Justice Alito's opinion and Justice Thomas's concurrence in *McDonald v. Chicago*, laws such as Mississippi's prompted Congress to pass the Second Freedmen's Bureau Bill, the Civil Rights Act, and the Fourteenth Amendment, all with the express intent of protecting the Second Amendment rights of the freedmen.[467]

---

[462] 1854 Miss. Laws 50, ch. 1.

[463] 1856–57 Miss. Laws 36, ch. 1 ("each bowie knife, dirk knife, or sword cane").

[464] 1861–62 Miss. Laws 134, ch. 125 (Dec. 19, 1861).

[465] Alabama's system of confiscating arms for unpaid taxes and then selling them at public auction is described *infra*.

[466] 1865 Miss. L. ch. 23, pp. 165-66.

[467] 561 U.S. 742 (2010).

After the war, the Auditor of Public Accounts had to "furnish each clerk of the board of supervisors" with a list of taxable property owned by each person. This included "pistols, dirks, bowie-knives, sword-canes, watches, jewelry, and gold and silver plate."[468]

Concealed carry was outlawed for "any bowie knife, pistol, brass knuckles, slung shot or other deadly weapon of like kind or description."[469] There was an exception for persons "threatened with, or having good and sufficient reason to apprehend an attack."[470] Also excepted were travelers, but not "a tramp."[471] Sales to minors or to intoxicated persons were outlawed.[472] A father who permitted a son under 16 to carry concealed was criminally liable.[473] Students at "any university, college, or school" could not carry concealed.[474]

The forbidden items for concealed carry were expanded in 1896: "any bowie knife, dirk knife, butcher knife, pistol, brass or metalic knuckles, sling shot, sword or other deadly weapon of like kind or description."[475] Two years later, the legislature corrected the spelling of "metallic," and provided that the jury "may return a verdict that there shall be no imprisonment," in which case the judge would impose a fine.[476]

Alabama (1837).

The legislature imposed a $100 per knife tax on the sale, transfer, or import of any "Bowie-Knives or Arkansaw Tooth-picks," or "any knife or weapon that shall in form, shape or size, resemble" them. The $100 tax was equivalent to about $2,600 dollars today.[477]

Additionally, if any person carrying one "shall cut or stab another with such knife, by reason of which he dies, it shall be adjudged murder, and the offender shall suffer the same as if the killing had been by malice aforethought."[478]

---

[468] 1871 Miss. Laws 819–20; 1876 Miss. Laws 131, 134, ch. 104; 1878 Miss. Laws 27, 29, ch. 3; 1880 Miss. Laws 21, ch. 6; 1892 Miss. Laws 194, 198, ch. 74; 1894 Miss. Laws 27, ch. 32; 1897 Miss. Laws 10, ch. 10.

[469] 1878 Miss. Laws 175–76, ch. 46.

[470] *Id.*

[471] *Id.*

[472] *Id.*

[473] *Id.*

[474] *Id.*

[475] 1896 Miss. Laws 109–10, ch. 104.

[476] 1898 Miss. Laws 86, ch. 68.

[477] Fed. Reserve Bank of Minneapolis, *supra* note __ (2022=884.6. 1837 = 34).

[478] ACTS PASSED AT THE CALLED SESSION OF THE GENERAL ASSEMBLY OF THE STATE OF ALABAMA 7 (Tuscaloosa: Ferguson & Eaton, 1837) (June 30, 1837).

Then in 1839 Alabama outlawed concealed carry of "any species of fire arms, or any bowie knife, Arkansaw tooth-pick, or any other knife of the like kind, dirk, or any other deadly weapon."[479] An 1856 statute prohibited giving a male minor a handgun or bowie knife.[480]

According to the U.S. Supreme Court's analysis of the historical record, concealed carry bans are constitutionally unproblematic, as long as open carry is allowed. Or vice versa. The American legal tradition of the right to arms allows the legislature to regulate the mode of carry.[481]

The exorbitant $100 transfer tax was replaced with something less abnormal. The annual state taxes on personal property included $2 on "every bowie knife or revolving pistol."[482] Even that amount was hefty for a poor person. As the defense counsel in an 1859 Texas case examined *infra* had pointed out, a person who could not afford a firearm could buy a common butcher knife (which fell within the expansive definition of "Bowie knife") for no more than 50 cents.[483] As described next, the cost of manufacturing a high-quality Bowie knife was a little less than $3, which approximately implies a retail price around $6. Whether a knife cost 50 cents or 6 dollars, an annual $2 tax likely had an effect in discouraging ownership, as the tax was so high in relation to the knife's value. The cumulative annual taxes on the knife would far exceed the knife's cost.

The legislature having aggressively taxed Bowie knives, there were not enough of them in Alabama when the Civil War began in 1861. The legislature belatedly recognized that the militia was under-armed. In military crisis, the legislature appropriated funds for the state armory at Mobile to manufacture Bowie knives:

---

[479] ACTS PASSED AT THE ANNUAL SESSION OF THE GENERAL ASSEMBLY OF THE STATE OF ALABAMA 67–68 (Tuscaloosa: Hale & Eaton, 1838 [1839]) (Feb. 1, 1839).

[480] ACTS OF THE FIFTH BIENNIAL SESSION OF THE GENERAL ASSEMBLY OF ALABAMA, HELD IN THE CITY OF MONTGOMERY, COMMENCING ON THE SECOND MONDAY IN NOVEMBER, 1855, at 17 (1856).

[481] *Bruen*, 142 S. Ct. at 2150.

[482] 1851-52 Ala. Laws 3, ch. 1.

[483] Cockrum v. State, 24 Tex. 394, 395–96 (1859) ("A common butcher-knife, which costs not more than half a dollar, comes within the description given of a bowie-knife or dagger, being very frequently worn on the person. To prohibit such a weapon, is substantially to take away the right of bearing arms, from him who has not money enough to buy a gun or a pistol.").

> Whereas there is a threatened invasion of our State by those endeavoring to subjugate us; and whereas there is a great scarcity of arms, and the public safety requires weapons to be placed in the hands of our military, therefore
>
> . . . [S]ix thousand dollars . . . is hereby appropriated . . . to purchase one thousand Bowie-knife shaped pikes [similar to a spear], and one thousand Bowie knives for the use of the 48th regiment, Alabama militia.[484]

The Governor was authorized to draw further on the treasury, as he saw appropriate, "to cause arms of a similar, with such improvements as he may direct, to be manufactured for any other regiment or battalion of militia, or other troops."[485]

If Alabama legislatures starting in 1837 had not suppressed the people's acquisition of militia-type knives, then the 1861 wartime legislature might not have been forced to divert scarce funds to manufacture Bowie knives for the militia. The men and youth of Alabama militia could have just armed themselves in the ordinary course of affairs, buying large knives for themselves for all legitimate uses.

The legislature had appropriated $6,000 to buy 2,000 Bowie knives and pikes. This works out to $3 manufacturing cost per knife or pike.

A little later, a wartime tax of 5% on net profits was imposed on many businesses, including "establishments for manufacturing or repairing shoes, harness, hats, carrigos [horse-drawn carriages], wagons, guns, pistols, pikes, bowie knives."[486]

After Reconstruction ended, an 1881 concealed carry ban applied to "a bowie knife, or any other knife, or instrument of like kind or description, or a pistol, or fire arms of any other kind or description, or any air gun."[487] "[E]vidence, that the defendant has good reason to apprehend an attack may be admitted in the mitigation of the punishment, or in justification of the offense."[488]

Throughout the nineteenth century, and all over the United States, grand and petit juries often refused to enforce concealed carry laws against defendants who had been acting peaceably. The statute attempted to address

---

[484] 1861 Ala. Laws 214-15, ch. 22 (Nov. 27, 1861).
[485] *Id.*
[486] 1862 Ala. Laws 8, ch. 1.
[487] 1880–81 Ala. Laws 38–39, ch. 44.
[488] *Id.*

the problem: "grand juries . . . shall have no discretion as to finding indictments for a violation of this, act . . . if the evidence justifies it, it shall be their duty to find and present the indictment."[489] To make the law extra-tough, "the fines under this act shall be collected in money only" (rather than allowing payment by surrender of produce, livestock, personal chattels, etc.).[490]

Shortly after the end of the Civil War, the unreconstructed white supremacist legislature had enacted a harsh property tax, designed to disarm poor people of any color. It was $2 on "all pistols or revolvers" possessed by "private persons not regular dealers holding them for sale."[491] For "all bowie-knives, or knives of the like description," the tax was $3.[492] If the tax were not paid, the county assessor could seize the arms.[493] To recover the arms, the owner had to pay the tax plus a 50% penalty.[494] After 10 days, the assessor could sell the arms at auction.[495]

Later, the arms seizure provisions were removed, and the tax reduced to levels for other common household goods. "All dirks and bowie knives, sword canes, pistols, on their value, three-fourths of one percent; and fowling pieces and guns, on their value, at the rate of seventy-five cents on the one hundred dollars."[496]

State law provided that county assessors could require a person to disclose under oath the taxable property he owned, by answering questions such as "What is the value of your household and kitchen furniture, taxable library, jewelry, silverware, plate, pianos and other musical instruments, paintings, clocks, watches, gold chains, pistols, guns, dirks and bowie-knives . . ."[497] The tax rate was 3/4 of 1% of the value.[498]

---

[489] *Id.*
[490] *Id.*
[491] 1865-66 Ala. Laws 7, ch. 1 (Feb. 22, 1866); 1866-67 Ala. Laws 263, ch. 260.
[492] 1865-66 Ala. Laws 7, ch. 1 (Feb. 22, 1866); 1866-67 Ala. Laws 263, ch. 260.
[493] 1865-66 Ala. Laws 7, ch. 1 (Feb. 22, 1866); 1866-67 Ala. Laws 263, ch. 260.
[494] 1865-66 Ala. Laws 7, ch. 1 (Feb. 22, 1866); 1866-67 Ala. Laws 263, ch. 260.
[495] 1865-66 Ala. Laws 7, ch. 1 (Feb. 22, 1866); 1866-67 Ala. Laws 263, ch. 260.
[496] 1874-75 Ala. Laws 6, ch. 1.
[497] 1875-76 Ala. Laws 46, ch. 2; 1876-77 Ala. Laws 4, ch. 2.
[498] 1875-76 Ala. Laws 46, ch. 2; 1876-77 Ala. Laws 4, ch. 2.

The tax was cut in 1882 to 55 cents per hundred dollars of value.[499] Then raised to 60 cents for inter alia, "all dirks and bowie knives, swords, canes, pistols and guns; all cattle, horses, mules, studs, jacks and jennets and race horses; all hogs, sheep and goats."[500]

Separately, the legislature imposed occupational taxes. At the time, state sales taxes were rare, and the occupational tax levels sometimes approximated the amount that a vendor might have collected in sales taxes. "For dealers in pistols, bowie knives and dirk knives, whether the principal stock in trade or not, twenty-five dollars."[501] Finally, in 1898, the license for pistol, bowie, and dirk sellers become $100.[502] Separately, there was a $5 tax for wholesale dealers in pistol and rifle cartridges, raised to $10 for dealers in towns of 20,000 or more.[503] The wholesale license also authorized retail sales.[504]

State legislative revisions to municipal charters gave a municipality the power "to license dealers in pistols, bowie-knives and dirk-knives."[505]

---

[499] For "silverware, ornaments and articles of taste, pianos and other musical instruments, paintings, clocks, gold Furniture, and silver watches, and gold safety chains; all wagons or other vehicles; all mechanical tools and farming implements; all dirks and bowie knives, swords, canes, pistols and guns; all cattle, horses, mules, studs, jacks and-jennets, and race horses; all hogs, sheep and goats."1882 Ala. Laws 71, ch. 61.

[500] 1884 Ala. Laws 6, ch. 1.

[501] 1874 Ala. Laws 41, ch. 1. *See also* 1875-76 Ala. Laws 82, ch. 1 ($50); 1886 Ala. Laws 36, ch. 4 (adding "pistol cartridges"); 1892 Ala. Laws 183, ch. 95 ($300, "provided that any cartridges whether called rifle or pistol cartridges or by any other name that can be used in a pistol shall be deemed pistol cartridges within the meaning of this section").

[502] 1898 Ala. Laws 190, ch. 9036.

[503] *Id.*

[504] *Id.*

[505] 1878 Ala. Laws 437, ch. 314 (Uniontown); 1884 Ala. Laws 552, ch. 314 (Uniontown) (adding dealer in "brass knuckles"; "the sums charged for such licenses" may "not exceed the sums established by the revenue laws of the State. . . ."); 1884-85 Ala. Laws 323, ch. 197 (Tuscaloosa) ("to license and regulate pistols or Shooting galleries, the game of quoits, and all kind and description of games of chance played in a public place; . . . and dealers in pistols, bowie-knives and shotguns or fire arms, and knives of like kind or description") (unusually broad, not repeated for other charters); 1888 Ala. Laws 965, ch. 550 (Faunsdale); 1890 Ala. Laws 764, ch. 357 (Uniontown); 1890 Ala. Laws 1317, ch. 573 (Decatur) (to license dealers in "pistols, or pistol cartridges, bowie knives, dirk knives, whether principal stock in trade or not, $100.00."); 1892 Ala. Laws 292, ch. 140 (Demopolis) (same as Decatur); 1894 Ala. Laws 616, ch. 345 (Columbia) (same); 1894-95 Ala. Laws 1081, ch. 521, p. 1081 (Tuskaloosa) (to license and collect an annual tax on "gun shops or gun repair shops" and "dealers in pistols or pistol cartridges or bowie knives or dirk knives."); 1896 Ala. Laws 71, ch. 62 (Uniontown) ("to license . . . dealers in pistols, bowie knives, dirk knives or brass knuckles"); 1898-99 Ala. Laws 1046,

Georgia (1837).

As discussed *supra*, the legislature in 1837 forbade the sale, possession, or carry of Bowie and similar knives, pistols (except horseman's pistols), dirks, sword-canes, and spears.[506]

The Georgia Supreme Court held all of the law to violate the Second Amendment, except a section outlawing concealed carry.[507]

After the November 1860 election of Abraham Lincoln, with a secession crisis in progress, the Georgia legislature forbade "any person other than the owner" to give "any slave or free person of color, any gun, pistol, bowie knife, slung shot, sword cane, or other weapon used for purpose of offence or defence."[508] The act was not be construed to prevent "owners or overseers from furnishing a slave with a gun for the purpose of killing birds, &c., about the plantation of such owner or overseer."[509]

An 1870 statute forbade open or concealed carry of "any dirk, bowie-knife, pistol or revolver, or any kind of deadly weapon" at "any court of justice, or any general election ground or precinct, or any other public gathering," except for militia musters.[510]

The old 1837 statute against concealed carry was updated in 1882 to eliminate the exception for a "horsemen's pistol."[511] Thus, concealed carry remained illegal with "any pistol, dirk, sword in a cane, spear, Bowie-knife, or any other kind of knives manufactured and sold for the purpose of offense and defense."[512] Any "kind of metal knucks" was added in 1898.[513]

---

ch. 549 (Fayette) (maximum dealer license fee shall not exceed "Pistols, pistol cartridges, bowie knives, dirk knives, whether principal stock in trade or not, $50.00"); 1898 Ala. Laws 1102, ch. 566 (Uniontown) (same as previous Uniontown charter); 1898 Ala. Laws 1457, ch. 704 (Uniontown) (same).

[506] ACTS OF THE GENERAL ASSEMBLY OF THE STATE OF GEORGIA PASSED IN MILLEDGEVILLE AT AN ANNUAL SESSION IN NOVEMBER AND DECEMBER, 1837, at 90–91 (Milledgeville: P. L. Robinson, 1838) (Dec. 25, 1837).

[507] *Nunn*, 1 Ga. 243.

[508] 1860 Ga. Laws 56–57, ch. 64.

[509] *Id.*

[510] 1870 Ga. Laws 421, ch. 285; 1879 Ga. Laws 64, ch. 266 (creating law enforcement officer exception).

[511] 1882-83 Ga. Laws 48-49, ch. 93.

[512] *Id.*

[513] 1898 Ga. Laws 60, ch. 106.

Furnishing "any minor" with "any pistol, dirk, bowie knife or sword cane" was outlawed in 1876.[514]

A $25 occupational tax was enacted in 1882 for "all dealers in pistols, revolvers, dirk or Bowie knives."[515] The tax was later raised to $100, adding dealers of "pistol or revolver cartridges."[516] Then the tax was reduced to $25.[517] But raised back to $100 in 1890.[518] In 1892, "metal knucks" were added, and the ammunition expanded to "shooting cartridges."[519] The tax was cut to $25 in 1894.[520]

The state property tax statute required taxpayers to disclose all sorts of personal and business property, including by answering, "What is the value of your guns, pistols, bowie-knives and such articles?"[521] The same question was included in the municipal charter for the town of Jessup.[522] And in the new charter for Cedartown.[523]

South Carolina (1838).

The legislature received a "petition of sundry citizens of York, praying the passage of a law to prevent the wearing of Bowie Knives, and to exempt managers of elections from militia duty." A member "presented the presentment of the Grand Jury of Union District, in relation to carrying Bowie knives, and retailing spirituous liquors." The knife and liquor issues were referred to the Judiciary Committee.[524]

The legislature did not enact any law with the words "bowie knife" in 1838, or in the nineteenth century.

---

[514] 1876 Ga. Laws 112, ch. 128 (O. no. 63).

[515] 1882-83 Ga. Laws 37, ch. 18.

[516] 1884-85 Ga. Laws 23, ch. 52; 1886 Ga. Laws 17, ch. 54.

[517] 1888 Ga. Laws 22, ch. 123.

[518] 1890 Ga. Laws 38, ch. 131.

[519] 1892 Ga. Laws 25, ch. 133.

[520] 1894 Ga. Laws 21, ch. 151; 1896 Ga. Laws 25, ch. 132; 1898 Ga. Laws 25, ch. 150 (changing ammunition to "shooting cartridges, pistol or rifle cartridges").

[521] 1884 Ga. Laws 30, ch. 457; 1886 Ga. Laws 26, 28, ch. 101; 1888 Ga. Laws 261, ch. 103; 1889 Ga. Laws 993, ch. 640.

[522] 1888 Ga. Laws 261, ch. 103.

[523] 1889 Ga. Laws 993, ch. 640.

[524] 1838 S.C. Acts (Journal to the Proceedings) 29, 31.

Tennessee (1838).

Like Georgia, Tennessee enacted Bowie knife legislation just a few weeks after the nationally infamous December crime on the floor of the Arkansas House of Representatives.

In January 1838, the Tennessee legislature statute forbade sale or transfer of "any Bowie knife or knives, or Arkansas tooth picks, or any knife or weapon that shall in form, shape or size resemble a Bowie knife or any Arkansas tooth pick."[525]

Further, if a person "shall maliciously draw or attempt to draw" such a concealed knife "for the purpose of sticking, cutting, awing, or intimidating any other person," the person would be guilty of a felony.[526] Whether the carrying was open or concealed, if a person in "sudden rencounter, shall cut or stab another person with such knife or weapon, whether death ensues or not, such person so stabbing or cutting shall be guilty of a felony."[527] Civil officers who arrested and prosecuted a defendant under the act would receive a $50 per case bonus; the Attorney General would receive $20 for the same, to be paid by the defendant.[528]

The concealed carry ban was upheld against a state constitution challenge.[529] The court said that the right to arms was an individual right to keep militia-type arms, and a Bowie knife would be of no use to a militia.[530]

In *Day v. State*, the 1838 law against drawing a Bowie knife was applied against a victim who had drawn in immediate self-defense.[531] Upholding the

---

[525] ACTS PASSED AT THE FIRST SESSION OF THE TWENTY-SECOND GENERAL ASSEMBLY OF THE STATE OF TENNESSEE: 1837-8, 200–01 (Nashville: S. Nye & Co., 1838) (Jan. 21, 1838).

[526] *Id.*

[527] *Id.*

[528] *Id.*

[529] Aymette v. State, 21 Tenn. (2 Hum.) 154 (1840).

[530] *Id.* at 158 ("These weapons would be useless in war. They could not be employed advantageously in the common defence of the citizens. The right to keep and bear them is not, therefore, secured by the constitution.").

[531] Day v. State, 37 Tenn. (5 Sneed.) 496 (1857).

> It seems that during an altercation between the defendant and Bacon, at the house of the latter, the defendant was ordered by Bacon to leave the house, which he did, Bacon following him to the door, with a large bottle in his hand. While Bacon was standing upon the door-step, the defendant approached him and, laying his left hand upon Bacon's shoulder, told him not to rush upon him,

conviction the Tennessee Supreme Court noted that laws against selling and carrying Bowie knives were "generally disregarded in our cities and towns."[532] Likewise, a post-Reconstruction statute, allowed carrying only of Army or Navy type pistols.[533] When a person's "life had been threatened within the previous hour by a dangerous and violent man, who was in the wrong," the victim carried a concealed pistol that was not an Army or Navy type.[534] The conviction was upheld, citing *Day v. State.*[535]

The legislature in 1856 forbade selling, loaning, or giving any minor "a pistol, bowie-knife, dirk, or Arkansas tooth-pick, or hunter's knife."[536] The act "shall not be construed so as to prevent the sale, loan, or gift to any minor of a gun for hunting."[537]

In October 1861, after Tennessee had seceded from the Union, all the laws against importing, selling, or carrying "pistols, Bowie knives, or other weapons" were suspended for the duration of the war.[538]

In 1869, the legislature forbade carrying any "pistol, dirk, bowie-knife, Arkansas tooth-pick," any weapon resembling a bowie knife or Arkansas toothpick, "or other deadly or dangerous weapon" while "attending any election" or at "any fair, race course, or public assembly of the people."[539]

Virginia (1838).

A few weeks after the Arkansas legislative crime, Virginia made it illegal to "habitually or generally" carry concealed "any pistol, dirk, bowie knife, or any other weapon of the like kind."[540] If a habitual concealed carrier were prosecuted for murder or felony, and the weapon had been removed from concealment within a half hour of the infliction of the wound, the court had to formally note the fact.[541] Even if the defendant were acquitted or discharged,

---

> at the same time drawing a large knife from beneath his vest, which he held in his right hand behind him, but made no effort to use.

Id. at 496–97.

532 *Id.* at 499.

533 Text at notes __.

534 *Coffee v. State*, 72 Tenn. (4 Lea.) 245, 246 (1880).

535 *Id.*

536 1855-56 Tenn. Pub. Acts 92, ch. 81.

537 *Id.*

538 1861 Tenn. Pub. Acts 16–17, ch. 23.

539 1869-70 Tenn. Pub. Acts 23-24, ch. 22.

540 ACTS OF THE GENERAL ASSEMBLY OF VIRGINIA, PASSED AT THE SESSION OF 1838, at 76-77 (Richmond: Thomas Ritchie, 1838) (Feb. 3, 1838).

541 *Id.*

he could be prosecuted within a year for the unlawful carry.[542] Or alternatively, in the original prosecution, a jury that acquitted for the alleged violent felony still had to consider whether the defendant was a habitual carrier, drew within the half-hour period, and if so, convict the defendant of the concealed carry misdemeanor.[543]

The law was simplified in 1847 to simply provide a fine for habitual concealed carry by "[a]ny free person," with "one moiety of the recovery to the person who shall voluntarily cause a prosecution for the same."[544]

An 1881 statute forbade concealed carry, even if not habitual, of "any pistol, dirk, bowie-knife, razor, slung-shot, or any weapon of the like kind."[545]

Whether or not concealed, carrying "any gun pistol, bowie-knife, dagger, or other dangerous weapon to a place of public worship" during a religious meeting was forbidden in 1869.[546] So was carrying "any weapon on Sunday, at any place other than his own premises, except for good and sufficient cause."[547]

After the Civil War, the state property tax law included in the list of taxable items of personal property: "The aggregate value of all rifles, muskets, and other fire-arms, bowie-knives, dirks, and all weapons of a similar kind."[548] There was an exception for arms issued by the state "to members of volunteer companies."[549]

The legislature in 1890 forbade selling "to minors under sixteen years of age" any "cigarettes or tobacco in any form, or pistols, dirks, or bowie knives."[550]

---

[542] *Id.*

[543] *Id.*

[544] 1847 Va. Acts 110; 1870 Va. Acts 510, ch. 349.

[545] 1881 Va. Acts 233, ch. 219; 1883-84 Va. Acts 180, ch. 144 (1884); 1896 Va. Acts 826, ch. 745 (allowing "the hustings judge of any husting court" to issue one-year concealed carry permits).

[546] 1875 Va. Acts 102, ch. 124; 1877 Va. Acts 305, ch. 7.

[547] 1875 Va. Acts 102, ch. 124; 1877 Va. Acts 305, ch. 7.

[548] 1874 Va. Acts 282–83, ch. 239; 1875 Va. Acts 164, ch. 162; 1881 Va. Acts 499, ch. 119; 1883 Va. Acts 563, ch. 450; 1889 Va. Acts 19, ch. 19; 1889 Va. Acts 200, ch. 244; 1893 Va. Acts 931, ch. 797.

[549] 1874 Va. Acts 282–83, ch. 239; 1875 Va. Acts 164, ch. 162; 1881 Va. Acts 499, ch. 119; 1883 Va. Acts 563, ch. 450; 1889 Va. Acts 19, ch. 19; 1889 Va. Acts 200, ch. 244; 1893 Va. Acts 931, ch. 797.

[550] 1889-90 Va. Acts 118, ch. 152; 1893-94 Va. Acts 425-26, ch. 366.

Florida (1838).

Two months after the Arkansas homicide, the Florida legislature supplemented an 1835 statute against concealed carry in general. The new statute provided that any person who wants to "vend dirks, pocket pistols, sword canes, or bowie knives" must pay an annual $200 tax.[551] Any individual who wants to carry one openly must pay a $10 tax.[552] The county treasurer must give the individual a receipt showing that the open carry tax has been paid.[553]

After the Civil War, a new Black Code forbade "any negro, mulatto, or other person of color, to own, use or keep in his possession or under his control, any Bowie-knife, dirk, sword, fire-arms or ammunition of any kind, unless he first obtain a license to do so from the Judge of Probate of the county."[554] The applicant needed "the recommendation of two respectable citizens of the county, certifying to the peaceful and orderly character of the applicant."[555] A person who informed about a violation could keep the arms.[556] Violators of the statute "shall be sentenced to stand in the pillory for one hour, or be whipped, not exceeding thirty-nine stripes, or both, at the discretion of the jury."[557]

There were no published Florida statutory compilations from 1840 until 1881. By then, the 1838 tax law ($200 annually for vendors; $10 for open carry), had been replaced with a $50 occupational license tax for vendors.[558] The merchant license tax was raised to $100 in 1889 for vendors of "pistols, bowie knives, or dirk knives."[559] Additionally, The "merchant, store-keeper, or dealer" could not sell the items "to minors."[560] The tax was cut to $10 in 1893, but extended to cover sellers of "pistols, Springfield rifles [the standard U.S. Army rifle], repeating rifles, bowie knives or dirk knives."[561]

---

[551] 1838 Fla. Laws 36, ch. 24 (Feb. 10, 1838).

[552] *Id.*

[553] *Id.*

[554] 1865 Fla. Laws 25, ch. 1466.

[555] *Id.*

[556] *Id.*

[557] *Id.*

[558] 1 DIGEST OF THE LAWS OF THE STATE OF FLORIDA, FROM THE YEAR ONE THOUSAND EIGHT HUNDRED AND TWENTY-TWO, TO THE ELEVENTH DAY OF MARCH, ONE THOUSAND EIGHT HUNDRED AND EIGHTY-ONE INCLUSIVE 873 (James F. McClellan, comp.) (1881) (Fla. ch. 174, § 24, item 14).

[559] 1889 Fla. Laws 6, ch. 3847 (2d reg. sess.); 1891 Fla. Laws 9, ch. 4010 (3d regular sess.).

[560] 1889 Fla. Laws 6, ch. 3847 (2d reg. sess.); 1891 Fla. Laws 9, ch. 4010 (3d regular sess.).

[561] 1893 Fla. Laws 18, ch. 4115 (4th regular sess.); 1895 Fla. Laws 14, ch. 4322 (5th regular sess.).

North Carolina (1840).

In 1840, North Carolina prohibited "any free Negro, Mulatto, or free Person of Colour" to "wear or carry about his or her person, or keep in his or her house, any Shot-gun, Musket, Rifle, Pistol, Sword, Dagger or Bowie-knife, unless he or she shall have obtained a license therefor from the Court of Pleas and Quarter Sessions."[562] An 1846 statute forbade "any slave" to receive "any sword, dirk, bowie-knife, gun, musket, or fire-arms of any description whatsoever, or any other deadly weapons of offence, or any lead, leaden balls, shot, powder, gun cotton, gun flints, gun caps, or other material used for shooting."[563] There were exceptions if "a slave" with "written permission" from a "manager" were picking up items for the manager, or if the items were "to be carried in the presence of such manager."[564]

The state property tax laws covered Bowie knives and other arms. The arms were tax-exempt if the owner did not use or carry them:

> on all pistols (except such as shall be used exclusively for mustering, and also those kept in shops and stores for sale) one dollar each; on all bowie knives, one dollar each; and dirks and sword canes, fifty cents each; (except such as shall be kept in shops and stores for Sale) Provided, however, that only such pistols, bowie knives, dirks, and sword canes, as are used, worn or carried about the person of the owner. . . .[565]

In the arms licensing law for free people of color, the Black Code continued to treat Bowie knives like firearms. "If any free negro shall wear or carry about his person, or keep in his house, any shot-gun, musket, rifle, pistol, sword, dagger, or bowie-knife," he shall be guilty of a misdemeanor, unless he had been issued a one-year license from the court of pleas and quarter-sessions.[566] When the Civil War drew near, the legislature repealed the licensing law, and

[562] 1840 N.C. Sess. Laws 61, ch. 30–31.

[563] 1846 N.C. Sess. Laws 107, ch. 42.

[564] *Id.*

[565] 1850 N.C. Sess. Laws 243, ch. 121. *See also* 1856-57 N.C. Sess. Laws 34, ch. 34 (raising the tax on dirks and sword canes to 65 cents); 1866 N.C. Sess. Laws 33–34, ch. 21, § 11 (one dollar on "every dirk bowie-knife, pistol, sword-cane, dirk-cane and rifle cane (except for arms used for mustering and police duty) used or worn about the person of any one during the year"; tax did not "apply to arms used or worn previous to the ratification of this act").

[566] 1856 N.C. Sess. Laws 577, ch. 107, § 66.

forbade "any free negro" to "wear or carry about his person or keep in his house any shot gun, musket, rifle, pistol, sword, sword cane, dagger, bowie knife, powder or shot."[567]

An 1877 private act banned concealed carry in Alleghany County, under terms similar to what would be enacted statewide in 1879.[568] The statewide statute outlawed concealed carry of "any pistol, bowie knife, dirk, dagger, slungshot, loaded cane, brass, iron or metallic knuckles or other deadly weapon of like kind," "except when upon his own premises."[569]

An 1893 statute made it illegal to "in any way dispose of to a minor any pistol or pistol cartridge, brass knucks, bowie-knife, dirk, loaded cane, or sling-shot."[570] A loaded cane had a hollowed section filled with lead.[571] It is a powerful impact weapon.[572]

As the legislature revised municipal charters, it specified what sorts of arms-related taxes the municipality could impose. There was much variation, and sometimes the legislature set maxima.[573]

---

[567] 1860–61 N.C. Sess. Laws 68, ch. 34 (Feb. 23, 1861).

[568] 1877 N.C. Sess. Laws 162–63, ch. 104.

[569] 1879 N.C. Sess. Laws 231, ch. 127.

[570] 1893 N.C. Sess. Laws 468–69, ch. 514.

[571] *See* Part VI.C.2.

[572] *Id.*

[573] In chronological order: Wilmington: to tax "every pistol gallery . . . on all pistols, dirks, bowie-knives or sword-canes, if worn about the person at any time during the year." 1860 N.C. Sess. Laws 219–20, ch. 180. Charlotte: $50 on "every pistol, bowie-knife, dirk, sword-cane, or other deadly weapons worn upon the person, except a pocket knife, without special permission of the board of aldermen." 1866 N.C. Sess. Laws 63, ch. 7, § 19. Salisbury: "on all pistols, except when part of stock in trade, a tax not exceeding one dollar; on all dirks, bowie-knives and sword canes, if worn about the person at any time during the year, a tax not exceeding ten dollars." 1868 N.C. Sess. Laws 202, ch. 123. Lincolnton: $5 for worn weapons. 1870 N.C. Sess. Laws 73, ch. 32. Lumberton: Can tax "pistols, dirks, bowie knives or sword canes" as seen fit. 1873 N.C. Sess. Laws 279, ch. 7; 1883 N.C. Sess. Laws 808, ch. 89 (Lumberton recharter); Asheville: anyone "selling pistols, bowie knives, dirks, slung shot, brass knuckles or other like deadly weapons, in addition to all other taxes, a license tax not exceeding fifty dollars." 1883 N.C. Sess. Laws 872, ch. 111. Waynesville: like Ashville, but $40. 1885 N.C. Sess. Laws 1097, ch. 127. Reidsville: $25 "On every pistol, bowie-knife, dirk, sword-cane, or other deadly weapon, except carried by officers in the discharge of their duties." 1887 N.C. Sess. Laws 885, ch. 58, § 50. Rockingham: to tax pistols, dirks, bowie knives, or sword canes. 1887 N.C. Sess. Laws 988, ch. 101. Hickory: $50 on sellers; "sling-shots" replaces "slung shot." 1889 N.C. Sess. Laws 956, ch. 238. Marion: $25 on every "pistol, bowie-knife, dirk, sword-cane or other deadly weapon, except carried by officers in discharge of their duties." 1889 N.C. Sess. Laws 836, ch. 183, § 27. Mount Airy: $10 on open carry of "a pistol, bowie-knife, dirk, sword-cane or other deadly

Washington territory (1854).

Similar to 1837 Mississippi, the Washington Territory provided a criminal penalty for, "Every person who shall, in a rude, angry, or threatening manner, in a crowd of two or more persons, exhibit any pistol, bowie knife, or other dangerous weapon . . ."[574]

California (1855).

California adopted a more elaborate version of the 1837 Mississippi law that if a person killed another in a duel with "a rifle, shot-gun, pistol, bowie-knife, dirk, small-sword, back-sword or other dangerous weapon," the duelist would have to pay the decedent's debts.[575] The duelist would also be liable to the decedent's family for liquidated damages.[576]

Louisiana (1855).

The legislature banned concealed carry of "pistols, bowie knife, dirk, or any other dangerous weapon."[577]

During Reconstruction, when election violence was a major problem, the legislature forbade carry of "any gun, pistol, bowie knife or other dangerous weapon, concealed or unconcealed weapon" within a half-mile of a polling place when the polls were open, or within a half-mile of a voter registration site on registration days.[578]

---

weapon, except guns, shot-guns, and rifles for shooting game." Wadesborough: "on all pistols, dirks, bowie-knives, or sword-canes." 1891 N.C. Sess. Laws 705, ch. 26. Columbus: same. 1891 N.C. Sess. Laws 902, ch. 101. Buncombe: same. 1891 N.C. Sess. Laws 1423, ch. 327. Asheville: $500 on vendors selling "pistols, bowie-knives, dirks, slung-shots, brass or metallic knuckles, or other deadly weapons of like character." 1895 N.C. Sess. Laws 611, ch. 352. Morven: "on all pistols, dirks, bowie knives, or sword canes." 1897 N.C. Sess. Laws 115–16, ch. 71. Lilesville: same. 1897 N.C. Sess. Laws 237, ch. 130. Mount Airy: $75 on "every vendor or dealer in pistols and other deadly weapons." 1897 N.C. Sess. Laws 154, ch. 90. Salisbury: same $500 as Asheville. 1899 N.C. Sess. Laws 503, ch. 186. Monroe: Same, but $100. 1899 N.C. Sess. Laws 968, ch. 352. Manly: tax "on all pistols, dirks, bowie knives or sword canes." 1899 N.C. Sess. Laws 766, ch. 260.

[574] 1854 Wash. Sess. Laws 80, ch. 2; 1859 Wash. Sess. Laws 109, ch. 2; 1862 Wash. Sess. Laws 284, ch. 2; 1869 Wash. Sess. Laws 203–04, ch. 2; 1873 Wash. Sess. Laws 186, ch. 2.

[575] 1855 Cal. Stat. 152–53, ch. 127.

[576] *Id.*

[577] 1855 La. Acts 148, ch. 120; 1898 La. Acts. 159, ch. 112 (same).

[578] 1870 La. Acts 159–60, ch. 100; 1873 La. Acts. 27, ch. 98.

Giving a person "under age of twenty-one years" any "any pistol, dirk, bowie-knife or any other dangerous weapon, which may be carried concealed to any person" was forbidden.[579]

New Hampshire (1856).

Like all of the Northeast, New Hampshire in mid-century had no interest in Bowie knife laws. But Bowie knives did appear in a legislative resolution that considered Bowie knives and revolvers to be effective for legitimate defense.

On May 19, 1856, U.S. Sen. Charles Sumner (R-Mass.) delivered one of the most famous speeches in the history of the Senate, "The Crime Against Kansas."[580] Among the crimes he described, pro-slavery settlers in the Kansas Territory were trying to make Kansas a slave territory, by attacking and disarming anti-slavery settlers, in violation of the Second Amendment. Sumner turned his fire on South Carolina Democrat Andrew Butler:

> Next comes the Remedy of Folly . . . from the senator from South Carolina, who . . . thus far stands alone in its support. . . . This proposition, nakedly expressed, is that the people of Kansas should be deprived of their arms.
>
> . . .
>
> Really, sir, has it come to this? The rifle has ever been the companion of the pioneer, and, under God, his tutelary protector against the red man and the beast of the forest. Never was this efficient weapon more needed in just self-defence than now in Kansas, and at least one article in our National Constitution must be blotted out, before the complete right to it can in any way be impeached. And yet, such is the madness of the hour, that, in defiance of the solemn guaranty, embodied in the Amendments of the Constitution, that "the right of the people to keep and bear arms shall not be infringed," the people of Kansas have been arraigned for keeping and bearing them, and the senator from South Carolina has had the face to say openly, on this floor, that they should be disarmed — of course, that the fanatics of Slavery, his allies and constituents, may meet no

[579] 1890 La. Acts 39, ch. 46.

[580] SPEECH OF HON. CHARLES SUMNER, IN THE SENATE OF THE UNITED STATES, 19TH AND 20TH, MAY 1856.

> impediment. Sir, the senator is venerable . . . but neither his years, nor his position, past or present, can give respectability to the demand he has made, or save him from indignant condemnation, when, to compass the wretched purposes of a wretched cause, he thus proposes to trample on one of the plainest provisions of constitutional liberty.[581]

That wasn't even close to the worst that Sumner said about Brooks that day. Most notably, he compared Butler to Don Quixote:

> The senator from South Carolina has read many books of chivalry, and believes himself a chivalrous knight, with sentiments of honor and courage. Of course he has chosen a mistress to whom he has made his vows, and who, though ugly to others, is always lovely to him; though polluted in the sight of the world, is chaste in his sight; — I mean the harlot Slavery.[582]

Three days later, Butler's nephew, U.S. Rep. Preston Brooks (D-S.C.) snuck up behind Sumner while he working at his desk on the Senate floor and assaulted him with a cane.[583] He nearly killed Sumner, who was not able to resume his Senate duties for two and a half years.[584] The assault was widely applauded in the South.[585] The attack symbolized a broader problem: In the slave states, the law and the mobs suppressed any criticism of slavery, lest it inspire slave revolt.[586] Even in free states, abolitionist speakers were attacked by mobs.[587]

---

[581] *Id.* at 64–65.

[582] *Id.* at 9.

[583] *See* Gregg M. McCormick, Note, *Personal Conflict, Sectional Reaction: The Role of Free Speech in the Caning cf Charles Sumner*, 85 Tex. L. Rev. 1519, 1526–27 (2007).

[584] *See id.* at 1527.

[585] *See id.* at 1529–33.

[586] *See id.* at 1519–20 ("Prior to the Sumner-Brooks affair, the suppression of abolitionist mailings, the Congressional Gag Rule, the murder of Reverend Lovejoy, and suppression of antislavery speech in the Kansas Territory served as concrete examples of slavery's threat to Northern rights.").

[587] *See, e.g.*, *McDonald*, 561 U.S. at 846 (Thomas, J., concurring) ("Mob violence in many Northern cities presented dangers as well."); Michael Kent Curtis, *The Fraying Fabric of Freedom: Crisis and Criminal Law in Struggles for Democracy and Freedom of Expression*, 44 TEX. TECH. L. REV. 89, 102 (2011) ("In the North, mobs disrupted abolitionist meetings and destroyed the presses of anti-slavery newspapers.").

In response, the New Hampshire legislature on July 12 passed a resolution "in relation to the late acts of violence and bloodshed by the Slave Power in the Territory of Kansas, and at the National Capital."[588] As one section of the resolution observed, it was becoming difficult for people to speak out against slavery unless they were armed for self-defense:

> Resolved, That the recent unmanly and murderous assaults which have disgraced the national capital, are but the single outbursts of that fierce spirit of determined domination which has revealed itself so fully on a larger field, and which manifests itself at every point of contact between freedom and slavery, and which, if it shall not be promptly met and subdued, will render any free expression of opinion, any independence of personal action by prominent men of the free States in relation to the great national issue now pending, imprudent and perilous, unless it shall be understood that it is to be backed up by the bowie-knife and the revolver.[589]

Despised as Bowie knives and revolvers were by some slave state legislatures, New Hampshire recognized that the First Amendment is backed up by the Second Amendment, as a last resort.

Texas (1856).

Bowie knives were omnipresent in Texas. The Texan had won their independence from Mexico at the April 21, 1836, Battle of San Jacinto. Outnumbered, they had routed the Mexican army, in part thanks to their deadly Bowie knives.[590]

Many Texans carried a Bowie knife. Texans were described as "desperate whittlers of sticks," who would start whittling whenever a conversation began.[591] But the Texans were not carrying Bowie knives because they were whittling addicts. As a visiting British diplomat reported, murder and other crime was rampant, and "the Perpetrators escape with the greatest impunity .

---

588 1856 N.H. Laws 1781–82, ch. 1870.

589 *Id.*

590 *See* CHARLES EDWARDS LESTER, SAM HOUSTON AND HIS REPUBLIC 97 (1846).

591 *See* JOSEPH WILLIAM SCHMITZ, TEXAS CULTURE 1836-1846, at 22 (1960); N. DORAN MAILLARD, HISTORY OF THE REPUBLIC OF TEXAS FROM THE DISCOVERY OF THE COUNTRY TO THE PRESIDENT TIME 213 (1842).

. . It is considered unsafe to walk through the Streets of the principal Towns without being armed. The Bowie Knife is the weapon most in vogue."[592]

After a decade as an independent republic, Texas joined the United States on December 29, 1845. An 1856 statute provided that if a person used a "bowie knife" or "dagger" in manslaughter, the offense "shall nevertheless be deemed murder, and punished accordingly." A "bowie knife" or "dagger" were defined as "any knife intended to be worn upon the person, which is capable of inflicting death, and not commonly known as a pocket knife."[593]

The Texas Supreme Court upheld the law in *Cockrum v. State*.[594] Under the Second Amendment and the Texas Constitution right to arms and the Second Amendment, "The right to carry a bowie-knife for lawful defense is secured, and must be admitted."[595] However, extra punishment for a crime with a Bowie knife did not violate the right to arms.[596]

In the chaotic years after the Civil War, the legislature prohibited carrying "any gun, pistol, bowie-knife or other dangerous weapon, concealed or unconcealed," within a half mile of a polling place while the polls are open.[597]

Then came one of the most repressive anti-carry laws enacted by an American state in the nineteenth century. It did not apply to long guns. It did apply to "any pistol, dirk, dagger, slung-shot, sword-cane, spear, brass-knuckles, bowie-knife, or any other kind of knife manufactured or sold for the purposes of offense or defense."[598] Both open and concealed carry were

---

[592] Francis Sheridan, letter to Garraway, July 12, 1840, 15 BRITISH CORRESPONDENCE Q. 221; SCHMITZ at 80.

[593] Tex. Penal Code arts. 611–12 (enacted Aug. 28, 1856), *in* 1 A DIGEST OF THE GENERAL STATUTE LAWS OF THE STATE OF TEXAS: TO WHICH ARE SUBJOINED THE REPEALED LAWS OF THE REPUBLIC AND STATE OF TEXAS (Williamson S. Oldham & George W. White, comp.) 458 (1859). *See also* art. 493 (doubling penalty for assault with intent to murder, if perpetrated with "a bowie knife, or dagger"); 1871 Tex. Gen. Laws 20, ch. 26 (doubling penalty for perpetrator "in disguise").

[594] 24 Tex. 394 (1859).

[595] *Id.* at 402.

[596] *Id.* at 403. "Such admonitory regulation of the abuse must not be carried too far. It certainly has a limit. For if the legislature were to affix a punishment to the abuse of this right, so great, as in its nature, it must deter the citizen from its lawful exercise, that would be tantamount to a prohibition of the right." *Id.*

[597] 1870 Tex. Gen. Laws 139, ch. 73.

[598] 1871 Tex. Gen. Laws 25–26, ch. 34; 1887 Tex. Gen. Laws 7, ch. 9 (amending); 1889 Tex. Gen. Laws 33, ch. 37; 1897 Tex. Gen. Laws 24, ch. 25.

forbidden.[599] The exceptions were "immediate and pressing" self-defense, or in a person's home or business, or travelers with arms in their baggage.[600] Another section of the bill banned all firearms, plus the arms previously listed, from many places, including churches, all public assemblies, and even "a ball room, social party, or social gathering."[601] The Act did not apply in any county proclaimed by the Governor "as a frontier county, and liable to incursions of hostile Indians."[602]

The Texas Supreme Court upheld the handgun carry ban in 1872.[603] According to the court, the statutory exceptions to the carry ban (travelers, or in response to a specific threat, or in militia service) sufficiently allowed the exercise of the right to bear arms.

The court stated that the Texas right to arms protected only arms that "are used for purposes of war," such as "musket and bayonet . . . the sabre, holster pistols and carbine . . . the field piece, siege gun, and mortar, with side arms [military handguns]."[604] In contrast, the Constitution did not cover arms "employed in quarrels and broils, and fights between maddened individuals," such as "dirks, daggers, slungshots, swordcanes, brass-knuckles and bowie knives."[605]

In 1889, written consent of a parent, guardian, "or someone standing in lieu thereof" was required to give or sell to a minor a pistol, "bowie knife or any other knife manufactured or sold for the purpose of offense of defense," and various other weapons.[606] The statute did not apply to long guns.[607]

New Mexico (1858).

The territory's first Bowie knife law outlawed giving "to any slave any sword, dirk, bowie-knife, gun, pistol or other fire arms, or any other kind of

[599] 1871 Tex. Gen. Laws 25–26, ch. 34; 1887 Tex. Gen. Laws 7, ch. 9 (amending); 1889 Tex. Gen. Laws 33, ch. 37; 1897 Tex. Gen. Laws 24, ch. 25.

[600] 1871 Tex. Gen. Laws 25–26, ch. 34; 1887 Tex. Gen. Laws 7, ch. 9 (amending); 1889 Tex. Gen. Laws 33, ch. 37; 1897 Tex. Gen. Laws 24, ch. 25.

[601] 1871 Tex. Gen. Laws 25–26, ch. 34; 1887 Tex. Gen. Laws 7, ch. 9 (amending); 1889 Tex. Gen. Laws 33, ch. 37; 1897 Tex. Gen. Laws 24, ch. 25.

[602] 1871 Tex. Gen. Laws 25–26, ch. 34; 1887 Tex. Gen. Laws 7, ch. 9 (amending); 1889 Tex. Gen. Laws 33, ch. 37; 1897 Tex. Gen. Laws 24, ch. 25.

[603] English v. State, 35 Tex. 473 (1872).

[604] *Id.* at 476.

[605] *Id.* at 475. The Texas court was plainly wrong that Bowie knives are not used in warfare. *See* text at notes __.

[606] 1887 Tex. Gen. Laws 221–22, ch. 155.

[607] *Id.*

deadly weapon of offence, or any ammunition of any kind suitable for fire arms."[608] Slavery in New Mexico was usually in the form of peonage.[609] The Comanche and Ute Indians, among others, brought captives from other tribes to the territory and sold them to buyers of all races.[610]

Concealed and open carry were prohibited in 1859. The scope was expansive:

> any class of pistols whatever, bowie knife (cuchillo de cinto), Arkansas toothpick, Spanish dagger, slung-shot, or any other deadly weapon, of whatever class or description they may be, no matter by what name they may be known or called . . .[611]

New Mexico was part of a pattern: legislative enthusiasm for Bowie knife laws was greatest in slave states. After slavery was abolished by the 13th Amendment in December 1865, the most oppressive Bowie knife controls and gun controls were enacted in areas where slavery had been abolished by federal action, rather than by choice of the legislature before the Civil War.

An 1887 statute forbade almost all carry of Bowie knives and other arms.[612] It applied to defined "deadly weapons":

> all kinds and classes of pistols, whether the same be a revolver, repeater, derringer, or any kind or class of pistol or gun; any and all kinds of daggers, bowie knives, poniards [small, thin daggers], butcher knives, dirk knives, and all such weapons with which dangerous cuts can be given, or with which dangerous thrusts can be inflicted, including sword canes, and any kind of sharp pointed

---

[608] 1856 N.M. Laws 68, ch. 26.

[609] *See* ANDRÉS RESÉNDEZ, THE OTHER SLAVERY: THE UNCOVERED STORY OF INDIAN ENSLAVEMENT IN AMERICA (2016).

[610] *See id.*

[611] 1859 N.M. Laws 94–96; 1864-65 N.M. Laws 406–10, ch. 61.

Territorial statues were published bilingually. The arms list in Spanish: "ninguna pistola de cualesquiera clase que sea, ni bowie knife (cachillo de cinto) [*s.i.c.* cuchillo, lit., belt knife] Arkansas toothpick, daga española, huracana, ó cualesquiera otra arma mortifera de cualesquiera clase ó descripcion."

[612] 1886-87 N.M. Laws 55–58, ch. 30.

> canes: as also slung shots, bludgeons or any other deadly weapons with which dangerous wounds can be inflicted . . .[613]

A person carrying a deadly weapon was not allowed to "insult or assault another."[614] Nor to unlawfully "draw, flourish, or discharge" a firearm, "except in the lawful defense of himself, his family or his property."[615]

The law forbade carrying "either concealed or otherwise, on or about the settlements of this territory."[616] The statute defined a "settlement" as anyplace within 300 yards of any inhabited house.[617] The exceptions to the carry ban were:

> in his or her residence, or on his or her landed estate, and in the lawful defense of his or her person, family, or property, the same being then and there threatened with danger . . .[618]

Travelers could ride armed through a settlement.[619] If they stopped, they had to disarm within 15 minutes, and not resume until the eve of departure.[620] Hotels, boarding houses, saloons, and similar establishments had to post bilingual copies of the Act.[621]

Law enforcement officers "may carry weapons . . . when the same may be necessary, but it shall be for the court or the jury to decide whether such carrying of weapons was necessary or not, and for an improper carrying or using deadly weapons by an officer, he shall be punished as other persons are punished. . . ."[622]

Ohio (1859).

Without limiting open carry, the legislature prohibited concealed carry of "a pistol, bowie knife, dirk, or any other dangerous weapon."[623] The jury must acquit if it were proven that the defendant was "engaged in pursuit of any

---

[613] *Id.*
[614] *Id.*
[615] *Id.*
[616] *Id.*
[617] *Id.*
[618] *Id.*
[619] *Id.*
[620] *Id.*
[621] *Id.*
[622] *Id.*
[623] 1859 Ohio Laws 56–57.

lawful business, calling, or employment, and the circumstances in which he was placed at the time aforesaid were such as to justify a prudent man in carrying the weapon or weapons aforesaid for the defense of his person, property, or family…"[624]

Kentucky (1859).

"If any person, other than the parent or guardian, shall sell, give, or loan, any pistol, dirk, bowie-knife, brass-knucks, slung-shot, colt [similar to a slungshot], cane-gun, or other deadly weapon which is carried concealed, to any minor, or slave, or free negro, he shall be fined fifty dollars."[625]

In 1891, an occupational license tax was enacted: "To sell pistols," $25. "To sell bowie-knives, dirks, brass-knucks or slung-shots," $50.[626]

Indiana (1859).

Except for travelers, no concealed carry of "any dirk, pistol, bowie-knife, dagger, sword in cane, or any other dangerous or deadly weapon."[627] Open carry of such weapons was unlawful, if "with the intent or avowed purpose of injuring his fellow man."[628]

It was forbidden in 1875 to give any person "under the age of twenty-one years, any pistol, dirk, or bowie-knife, slung-shot, knucks, or other deadly weapon that can be worn, or carried, concealed upon or about the person."[629] Or to give such person pistol ammunition.[630]

Nevada (1861).

If a person fought a duel with "a rifle, shot-gun, pistol, bowie-knife, dirk, small-sword, back-sword, or other dangerous weapon," and killed his opponent or anyone else, the killing was murder in the first degree.[631]

---

[624] *Id.*

[625] 1859 Ky. Acts 245, ch. 33.

[626] 1885 Ky. Acts 154, ch. 1233; 1891 Ky. Acts 346, ch. 103 (Nov. 11, 1892); 1891-92 Ky. Acts 1001, ch. 217 (June 9, 1893).

[627] 1859 Ind. Acts 129, ch. 78; 1881 Ind. Acts 191, ch. 37.

[628] *Id.*

[629] 1875 Ind. Acts 59, ch. 40.

[630] *Id.*

[631] 1861 Nev. Stat. 61.

Idaho territory (1863).
Like Nevada.[632]

Montana territory (1864).
No concealed carry "within any city, town, or village" of "any pistol, bowie-knife, dagger, or other deadly weapon."[633] Duelists who kill using "a rifle, shot-gun, pistol, bowie-knife, dirk, small sword, back-sword, or other dangerous weapon" are guilty of murder.[634]

Colorado territory (1867).
No concealed carry "within any city, town or village" of "any pistol, bowie-knife, dagger or other deadly weapon."[635]

Arizona territory (1867).
Split from the New Mexico Territory in 1863, the new Arizona Territory did not copy New Mexico's 1859 comprehensive carry ban. Instead, the laws targeted misuse. Anyone "who shall in the presence of two or more persons, draw or exhibit" any "dirk, dirk knife, bowie knife, pistol, gun, or other deadly weapon," "in a rude, angry or threatening manner, not in necessary self defence" was guilty of a crime.[636] So was anyone "who shall in any manner unlawfully use the same in any fight or quarrel."[637]

Carrying "maliciously or with design therewith, to intimidate or injure his fellow-man," was specifically forbidden for everyone "in the Counties of Apache and Graham, over the age of ten years."[638] The arms were "any dirk, dirk-knife, bowie-knife, pistol, rifle, shot-gun, or fire-arms of any kind."[639]

Reenacting the statute against drawing a gun in a threatening manner, the 1883 legislature added a proviso against persons "over the age of ten and under the age of seventeen years" carrying concealed or unconcealed "any dirk, dirk-knife, bowie-knife, slung-shot, brass-knuckles, or pistol" in any city, village, or

[632] 1863 Ida. Sess. Laws 441, ch. 3; 1864 Ida. Sess. Laws 303–04, ch. 3.
[633] 1864-65 Mont. Laws 355.
[634] 1879 Mont. Laws 359, ch. 4; 1887 Mont. Laws 505, ch. 4.
[635] 1867 Colo. Sess. Laws 229, ch. 22; 1876 Colo. Sess. Laws 304, ch. 24; 1881 Colo. Sess. Laws 74 (post-statehood); 1885 Colo. Sess. Laws 170; 1891 Colo. Sess. Laws 129 ("any pistol, revolver, derringer, bowie-knife, razor, dagger, sling-shot or other deadly weapon").
[636] 1867 Ariz. Sess. Laws 21; 1875 Ariz. Sess. Laws 101.
[637] *Id.*
[638] 1883 Ariz. Sess. Laws 21–22, ch. 19.
[639] *Id.*

town.[640] Concealed carry of those same arms in a city, village, or town was forbidden for everyone in 1887.[641] And then everywhere in 1893, for "any pistol or other firearm, dirk, dagger, slung-shot, sword cane, spear, brass knuckles, or other knuckles of metal, bowie knife or any kind of knife or weapon except a pocket-knife not manufactured and used for the purpose of offense and defense."[642]

In 1889 Arizona enacted an open carry ban in "any settlement town village or city," for any "firearm, dirk, dagger, slung shot, sword-cane, spear, brass knuckles, bowie knife, or any other kind of a knife manufactured and sold for the purposes of offense or defense."[643] Arriving travelers could carry for the first half hour, or on the way out of town.[644] Hotels had to post notices about the no carry rule.[645] Carry was also forbidden at public events, and even at some private social gatherings.[646]

Illinois (1867).

The legislature's revision of the municipal charter of Bloomington allowed the town "To regulate or prohibit" concealed carry of "any pistol, or colt, or slung-shot, or cross knuckles, or knuckles of brass, lead or other metal, or bowie-knife, dirk-knife, dirk or dagger or any other dangerous or deadly weapon."[647]

Only a "father, guardian or employer" or their agent could give a minor "any pistol, revolver, derringer, bowie knife, dirk or other deadly weapon of like character."[648]

Kansas (1868).

No carrying of "a pistol, bowie-knife, dirk or other deadly weapon" by any "person who is not engaged in any legitimate business, any person under the

---

[640] 1883 Ariz. Sess. Laws 65–66, ch. 36.
[641] 1887 Ariz. Sess. Laws 726, ch. 11.
[642] 1893 Ariz. Sess. Laws 3, ch. 2.
[643] 1889 Ariz. Sess. Laws 30–31, ch. 13.
[644] *Id.*
[645] *Id.*
[646] *Id.*
[647] 1867 Ill. Laws 650.
[648] 1881 Ill. Laws 73.

influence of intoxicating drink, and any person who has ever borne arms against the government of the United States."[649]

No furnishing of "any pistol, revolver or toy pistol, by which cartridges or caps may be exploded, or any dirk, bowie-knife, brass knuckles, slung shot, or other dangerous weapons to any minor, or to any person of notoriously unsound mind"[650] "Any minor who shall have in his possession any pistol, revolver or toy pistol, by which cartridges may be exploded, or any dirk, bowie-knife, brass knuckles, slung shot or other dangerous weapon, shall be deemed guilty of a misdemeanor."[651]

West Virginia (1868).

An 1868 statute copied Virginia's law against "habitually" carrying a concealed "pistol, dirk, bowie knife, or weapon of the like kind."[652] Justices of the Peace had a duty to enforce the statute.[653]

Then in 1882, West Virginia adopted a law similar to the Texas carry ban of 1871.[654] Without restricting carry of long guns, it broadly outlawed carrying pistols, Bowie knives, and numerous other arms.[655] Among the exceptions were that the person had "good cause to believe he was in danger of death or great bodily harm."[656] Additionally, there was a prohibition on selling or furnishing such arms to a person under 21.[657]

The West Virginia Supreme Court of Appeals in *State v. Workman* upheld the statute, because the arms protected by the Second Amendment:

> must be held to refer to the weapons of warfare to be used by the militia, such as swords, guns, rifles, and muskets—arms to be used in defending the State and civil liberty—and not to pistols, bowie-knives, brass knuckles, billies, and such other weapons as are usually employed in brawls, street-fights, duels, and affrays, and are only habitually carried by bullies, blackguards, and

[649] 1868 Kan. Sess. Laws 378, ch/ 31.

[650] 1883 Kan. Sess. Laws 159, ch. 55.

[651] *Id.*

[652] Code of West Virginia Comprising Legislation to the Year 1870, ch. 148, p. 692.

[653] 1872-73 W.V. Acts 709, ch. 226, *in* CONSTITUTION AND SCHEDULE ADOPTED IN CONVENTION AT CHARLESTON, APRIL 9TH, 1872 (Charleston, W.V.: John W. Gentry, 1874).

[654] 1882 W.V. Acts 421–22, ch. 135.

[655] *Id.*

[656] *Id.*

[657] *Id.*

desperadoes, to the terror of the community and the injury of the State.[658]

Maryland (1870).

Any person who was arrested in Baltimore, brought to the station house, and found to be carrying "any pistol, dirk, bowie knife," various other weapons, "or any other deadly weapon whatsoever" would be fined 3 to 10 dollars.[659]

It became illegal in 1872 in Annapolis to carry concealed "any pistol, dirk-knife, bowie-knife, sling-shot, billy, razor, brass, iron, or other metal knuckles, or any other deadly weapon."[660]

A ban on carrying "with the intent of injuring any person," was enacted in 1886 for "any pistol, dirk-knife, bowie-knife, slung-shot, billy, sand-club, metal knuckles, razor or any other dangerous of deadly weapon of any kind whatsoever, (penknives excepted)."[661]

District of Columbia (1871).

The Legislative Assembly of the District of Columbia prohibited concealed carry of "any deadly or dangerous weapons, such as daggers, air-guns, pistols, bowie-knives, dirk-knives, or dirks, razors, razor-blades, sword-canes, slung-shots, or brass or other metal knuckles."[662]

In 1892, Congress enacted a similar statute for D.C., with additional provisions.[663] It prohibited concealed carry of the same weapons as 1871, plus "blackjacks."[664] A concealed carry permit valid up to one month could be issued by any Judge of Police Court, with "proof of the necessity," and a bond.[665]

---

[658] State v. Workman, 14 S.E. 9, 11 (W. Va. 1891).

[659] 1870 Md. Laws 892, ch. 473. Reenactments, changes in the fine amount: 1874 Md. Laws 243–44, ch. 178; 1884 Md. Laws 249–50, ch. 187; 1890 Md. Laws 606–07, ch. 534; 1898 Md. Laws 533, ch. 123.

[660] 1872 Md. Laws 56–57, ch. 42.

[661] 1886 Md. Laws 602, ch. 375.

[662] 1 THE COMPILED STATUTES IN FORCE IN THE DISTRICT OF COLUMBIA, INCLUDING THE ACTS OF THE SECOND SESSION OF THE FIFTIETH CONGRESS, 1887–89 (William Stone Albert & Benjamin G. Lovejoy, comps.) 178, § 119 (1894) (citing Leg. Assem., July 20, 1871).

[663] 27 Stat. 116–17, ch. 159 (July 13, 1892).

[664] *Id.*

[665] *Id.*

Open carry was lawful, except "with intent to unlawfully use."[666] The statute was not to be construed to prevent anyone "from keeping or carrying about his place of business, dwelling house, or premises" the listed arms, or from taking them to and from a repair place.[667]

Giving a deadly weapon to a minor was forbidden.[668] Vendors had to be licensed by Commissioners of the District of Columbia.[669] The license itself was "without fee," but the licensee could be required to post a bond.[670] Sellers had to keep a written list of purchasers, which was subject to police inspection.[671] Weekly sales reports to the police were required.[672]

Nebraska (1873).

No concealed carry of weapons "such as a pistol, bowie-knife, dirk, or any other dangerous weapon."[673] As in Ohio, there was a "prudent man" defense.[674]

A revised municipal charter for Lincoln made it unlawful in the city to carry "any concealed pistol, revolver, dirk, bowie knife, billy, sling-shot, metal knuckles, or other dangerous or deadly weapons of any kind."[675] The city's police were authorized to arrest without a warrant a person found "in the act of carrying" concealed "and detain him."[676]

Missouri (1874).

Concealed carry was forbidden in many locations:

> [A]ny church or place where people have assembled for religious worship, or into any school-room, or into any place where people may be assembled for educational, literary or social purposes, or to any election precinct on any election day, or into any court-room during the sitting of court, or into any other public assemblage of persons met for other than militia drill or meetings, called under the militia law of this state, having concealed about

[666] *Id.*
[667] *Id.*
[668] *Id.*
[669] *Id.*
[670] *Id.*
[671] *Id.*
[672] *Id.*
[673] 1873 Neb. Laws 724; 1875 Neb. Laws 3; 1899 Neb. Laws 349, ch. 94.
[674] 1873 Neb. Laws 724; 1875 Neb. Laws 3; 1899 Neb. Laws 349, ch. 94.
[675] 1895 Neb. Laws 209–10.
[676] *Id.*

Case 4:23-cv-00547-O Document 20-3 Filed 10/06/23 Page 342 of 462 PageID 1015

> his person any kind of fire-arms, bowie-knife, dirk, dagger, slung-shot, or other deadly weapon…[677]

This was similar to the 1871 Texas statute, but unlike Texas, it applied only to concealed carry.

Like states from 1837 Mississippi onward, Missouri forbade the exhibit of "any kind of firearms, bowie knife, dirk, dagger, slung shot or other deadly weapon, in a rude, angry or threatening manner, not in the necessary defence of his person, family or property."[678]

The exhibiting statute and the concealed carry statute were combined in 1885.[679] The new law also forbade carrying the listed weapons when intoxicated or under the influence.[680] Providing one of the arms to a minor "without the consent of the parent or guardian" was outlawed.[681]

Arkansas (1874).

Antebellum Arkansas had legislation against concealed carry, but not specifically about Bowie knives.

The 1874 election was the first in which the voting rights of former Arkansas Confederates were fully restored.[682] They elected Democratic majorities and ended Reconstruction.[683] In 1875, the new state legislature banned the open or concealed carry of "any pistol of any kind whatever, or any dirk, butcher or Bowie knife, or sword or spear in a cane, brass or metal knucks, or razor, as a weapon."[684]

The next year, the state Supreme Court heard a case of a man who had been convicted of carrying a pocket revolver.[685] In *Fife v. State*, the Arkansas court quoted with approval a recent Tennessee case stating that the state constitution right to arms covered,

---

[677] 1874 Mo. Laws 43; 1875 Mo. Laws 50–51.
[678] 1877 Mo. Laws 240.
[679] 1885 Mo. Laws 140.
[680] *Id.*
[681] *Id.*
[682] *Civil War through Reconstruction, 1861 through 1874*, THE ENCYCLOPEDIA OF ARKANSAS HISTORY & CULTURE, http://www.encyclopediaofarkansas.net/encyclopedia/entry-detail.aspx?entryID=388.
[683] *Id.*
[684] 1874-75 Ark. Acts 156–57 (Feb. 16, 1875).
[685] Fife v. State, 31 Ark. 455, 455–56 (1876).

> Such, then, as are found to make up the usual arms of the citizen of the country, and the use of which will properly train and render him efficient in defense of his own liberties, as well as of the State. Under this head, with a knowledge of the habits of our people, and of the arms in the use of which a soldier should be trained, we hold that the rifle, of all descriptions, the shot gun, the musket and repeater, are such arms, and that, under the Constitution, the right to keep such arms cannot be infringed or forbidden by the Legislature.[686]

The Arkansas court continued: "The learned judge might well have added to his list of war arms, the sword, though not such as are concealed in a cane."[687] The pocket pistol not being a war arm, the defendant's conviction was upheld.[688] Needless to say, *Fife*'s protection of "the rifle of all descriptions" makes *Fife* and the 1875 statute poor precedents for today's efforts to outlaw common rifles.

Two years later, a conviction for concealed carry of "a large army size pistol" was reversed:[689]

> [T]o prohibit the citizen from wearing or carrying a war arm . . . [was] an unwarranted restriction upon [the defendant's] constitutional right to keep and bear arms.
>
> If cowardly and dishonorable men sometimes shoot unarmed men with army pistols or guns, the evil must be prevented by the penitentiary and gallows, and not by a general deprivation of a constitutional privilege."[690]

The legislature responded in 1881 with a new statute against the sale or disposition of "any dirk or bowie knife, or a sword or a spear in a cane, brass or metal knucks, razor, or any pistol of any kind whatever, except such pistols as

---

[686] *Id.* at 460.
[687] *Id.*
[688] *Id.* at 461.
[689] Wilson v. State, 33 Ark. 557, 560 (1878).
[690] *Id.*

are used in the army or navy."[691] As discussed *supra*, the 1881 Arkansas statute might have been consistent with the state constitution, but it is contrary to modern Second Amendment doctrine.[692]

Wisconsin (1874).

Some municipal charters enacted or amended by the Wisconsin legislature included provisions authorizing localities to regulate or prohibit concealed carry "of any pistol or colt, or slung shot, or cross knuckles, or knuckles of lead, brass or other metal, or bowie knife, dirk knife, or dirk or dagger, or any other dangerous or deadly weapon."[693]

Wyoming (1882).

As in other states, it was unlawful to "exhibit any kind of fire arms, bowie knife, dirk, dagger, slung shot or other deadly weapon in a rude, angry or threatening manner not necessary to the defense of his person, family or property."[694]

---

[691] 1881 Ark. Acts 191–92, ch. 96 § 3. The carry ban in section 1 was phrased slightly differently from the quoted sales ban in section 3. The section 1 carry ban applied to "or a sword, or a spear in a cane." The section 1 carry ban could, in isolation, be read as a banning all sword carry. Whereas section 3 is only about concealed swords—that is swords/spears in a cane.

The best reading of the statute as whole is application to sword canes, and not to ordinary swords. A ban on sword sales or open carry would have directly defied the Arkansas Supreme Court's recent *Wilson* decision. Such defiance seems unlikely, since the legislature was adjusting the law (by allowing open carry of Army & Navy handguns) to comply with the Arkansas Supreme Court ruling.

[692] Text at notes __.

[693] 1874 Wis. Sess. Laws 334 (Milwaukee); 1875 Wis. Sess. Laws 471, ch. 262 (Green Bay); 1876 Wis. Sess. Laws 218, ch. 103 (Platteville); 1876 Wis. Sess. Laws 737, ch. 313 (Racine); 1877 Wis. Sess. Laws 367, ch. 162 (New London); 1878 Wis. Sess. Laws 119–20, ch. 112 (Beaver Dam); 1882 Wis. Sess. Laws 309, ch. 92 (Lancaster); 1882 Wis. Sess. Laws 524, ch. 169 (Green Bay); 1883 Wis. Sess. Laws 713, ch. 183 (Oshkosh); 1883 Wis. Sess. Laws 990, ch. 341 Sturgeon Bay); 1883 Wis. Sess. Laws 1034, ch. 351 (Nicolet); 1885 Wis. Sess. Laws 26, ch. 37 (Kaukauna); 1885 Wis. Sess. Laws 753, ch. 159 (Shawano); 1885 Wis. Sess. Laws 1109, ch. 227 (Whitewater); 1887 Wis. Sess. Laws 336, ch. 124 (Sheboygan); 1887 Wis. Sess. Laws 1308, ch. 161 (Clintonville); 1887 Wis. Sess. Laws 754, ch. 162 (La Crosse); 1887 Wis. Sess. Laws 1308, ch. 409 (Berlin); 1891 Wis. Sess. Laws 699, ch. 123 (Menasha); 1891 Wis. Sess. Laws 61, ch. 23 (Sparta); 1891 Wis. Sess. Laws 186, ch. 40 (Racine).

[694] 1882 Wyo. Sess. Laws 174, ch. 81; 1884 Wyo. Sess. Laws 114, ch. 67.

Oklahoma territory (1890).

Oklahoma had a confusing statute, although what matters for present purposes is that the law applied to "any pistol, revolver, bowie knife, dirk, dagger, slung-shot, sword cane, spear, metal knuckles, or any other kind of knife or instrument manufactured or sold for the purpose of defense."[695] Section 1 forbade anyone to "carry concealed on or about his person, or saddle bags" the aforesaid arms, which do not include long guns.[696] Section 2 made it illegal "to carry upon or about his person any pistol, revolver, bowie knife, dirk knife, loaded cane, billy, metal knuckles, or any other offensive or defensive weapon."[697] Unlike section 1, section 2 applied to carry in general, not just concealed carry.[698] Whereas the residual term of section 1 was anything "manufactured or sold for the purpose of defense," the section 2 residual was "any other offensive or defensive weapon."[699] What the difference was is unclear. Section 3 banned sales of the aforesaid items to minors.[700] The statute affirmed the legality of carrying long guns for certain purposes, such as hunting or repair.[701]

Iowa (1887).

There was no state legislation on Bowie knives in the nineteenth century, notwithstanding the California Attorney General's claim in a brief that "Iowa banned their possession, along with the possession of other 'dangerous or deadly weapon[s],' in 1887."[702]

---

[695] 1890 Okla. Sess. Laws 495, ch. 25; 1893 Okla. Sess. Laws 503, ch. 25.
[696] 1890 Okla. Sess. Laws 495, ch. 25; 1893 Okla. Sess. Laws 503, ch. 25.
[697] 1890 Okla. Sess. Laws 495, ch. 25; 1893 Okla. Sess. Laws 503, ch. 25.
[698] 1890 Okla. Sess. Laws 495, ch. 25; 1893 Okla. Sess. Laws 503, ch. 25.
[699] 1890 Okla. Sess. Laws 495, ch. 25; 1893 Okla. Sess. Laws 503, ch. 25.
[700] 1890 Okla. Sess. Laws 495, ch. 25; 1893 Okla. Sess. Laws 503, ch. 25.
[701] 1890 Okla. Sess. Laws 495, ch. 25; 1893 Okla. Sess. Laws 503, ch. 25.
[702] Defendant's Supplemental Brief in Response to the Court's Order of September 26, 2022, *Duncan v. Bonta*, at 41–42 (Case No. 17-cv-1017-BEN-JLB) (S.D. Cal. Nov. 10, 2022). The brief's cite is Declaration of Robert Spitzer, p. 24, electronic page no. 163 of 230, available at https://michellawyers.com/wp-content/uploads/2022/11/2022-11-10-Dec-of-Robert-Spitzer-ISO-Defendants-Supp-Brief-re-Bruen.pdf. The Declaration reproduces without comment an 1887 Council Bluffs municipal ordinance making it illegal to "carry under his clothes or concealed about his person, or found in his possession, any pistol or firearms" and many other weapons, including Bowie knives. The California Attorney General reads "or found in his possession" as a ban on possession in the home. In context, the more appropriate reading would be for concealed carrying that did not involve wearing the weapon, for example, carrying in a bag. If the Council Bluffs government really meant something as monumental as outlawing all firearms in the home, the ordinance would be a very oblique way of saying so.

Michigan (1891).

A charter revision allowed the town of Saginaw to make and enforce laws against concealed carry of "any pistol, revolver, bowie knife, dirk, slung shot, billie, sand bag [a small bag with a handle; used as an impact weapon], false knuckles [same as metal knuckles, but could be made of something else], or other dangerous weapon."[703]

Vermont (1891).

No possession "while a member of and in attendance upon any school," of "any firearms, dirk knife, bowie knife, dagger or other dangerous or deadly weapon."[704]

Rhode Island (1893).

No concealed carry of "any dirk, bowie knife, butcher knife, dagger, razor, sword in cane, air gun, billy [club], brass or metal knuckles, slung shot, pistol or fire arm of any description, or other weapon of like kind of description."[705]

Local ordinances on Bowie knives.

As described above, state legislative enactments of municipal charters sometimes authorized a municipality to regulate Bowie knives, usually by taxation of dealers or owners, or by prohibition of concealed carry. Additionally, there were Bowie knife laws that were simply enacted by municipalities, without any need for state action. Here is a list of such laws, taken from the Declaration of Robert Spitzer as an expert supporting a California arms prohibition statute.[706] The cities are in alphabetical order by state. The year is often the year of publication of the municipal code, and not necessarily the date of enactment. All the ordinances covered Bowie knives and various other weapons.

Against concealed carry: Fresno, California (1896); Georgetown, Colorado (1877); Boise City, Idaho (1894); Danville, Illinois (1883); Sioux City, Iowa (1882); Leavenworth, Kansas (1863); Saint Paul, Minnesota (1871); Fairfield,

[703] 1891 Mich. Pub. Acts 409, ch. 257; 1897 Mich. Pub. Acts 1030, ch. 465. Sand bags are discussed in Part VI.B.3, knuckles in Part VI.C.1.

[704] 1891 Vt. Acts & Resolves 95, ch. 85.

[705] 1893 R.I. Pub. Laws 231, ch. 1180.

[706] Spitzer, *supra* note ___,

Nebraska (1899); Jersey City, New Jersey (1871) (and no carrying of "any sword in a cane, or air-gun"); Memphis, Tennessee (1863).[707]

No carrying: Nashville, Tennessee (1881); Provo City, Utah territory (1877).[708]

Against hostile display: Independence, Kansas (1887).[709]

Against carry with intent to do bodily harm: Syracuse, New York (1885).[710]

Extra punishment if carried by someone who breached the peace or attempted to do so: Little Rock, Arkansas (1871);[711] Denver, Colorado (1886).[712]

No sales or loans to minors by a "junk-shop keeper or pawnbroker . . . without the written consent of the parent or guardian of such minor." Fresno, California (1896).[713]

VI. OTHER WEAPONS

This Part covers restrictions on arms other than firearms or Bowie knives. Most of these restrictions were enacted in statutes that also covered Bowie knives, so the statutes were quoted in Part V. Here in Part VI, we will repeat or cross-reference the citations, but rarely quote at length.

The arms covered in this Article are in two broad classes. *Missile weapons* send a projectile downrange. Firearms, bows, and cannons are missile weapons. *Impact weapons* strike an adversary while being held by the user. Knives and swords are impact weapons, as are clubs, blackjacks, and slungshots.[714]

Section A covers sharp weapons that are not Bowie knives. The main categories are "daggers and dirks." Also included in Section A are sword canes, spears, swords, butcher knives, razors, and swords.

Section B addresses flexible impact weapons. That is, handheld weapons with a heavy tip and a flexible body, meant to be swung. The most important of these, in terms of number of laws enacted, is the slungshot. Section B also

---

[707] *Id.* at 10, 19, 21, 23–25, 35–36, 43, 45, 66.

[708] *Id.* at 68, 70.

[709] *Id.* at 26–27.

[710] *Id.* at 51.

[711] *Id.* at 7.

[712] *Id.* at 7, 13.

[713] *Id.* at 10.

[714] Some weapons can cross over from one category to another. A firearm can be used as a club, and a knife can be thrown as a missile. A spear can be thrown as a missile or held while striking in close combat.

Case 4:23-cv-00547-O Document 20-3 Filed 10/06/23 Page 348 of 462 PageID 1021

covers colts, blackjacks, sand clubs, sand bags, and billies. Additionally, Section B addresses slingshots; although they are missile weapons, they are sometimes confused with slungshots, including perhaps in statutes.

Section C covers rigid impact weapons. These are brass knuckles, knuckles made from other materials, and loaded canes (hollow canes filled with lead).

Section D deals with cannons.

A. Daggers, dirks, and other sharp weapons

1. Daggers and dirks

Dirks are fighting knives. They can come in a variety of sizes and shapes. We start with a list of every Bowie knife statute that also included dirks. If daggers were included in a statute, along with Bowie knives and dirks, a parenthetical so notes.

As previously described, an 1837 Georgia ban on sale and open carry of dirks was held to violate the Second Amendment, whereas a ban on concealed carry was upheld.[715] But a similar law was enacted in Arkansas in 1881.[716] Other laws were:

No possession by "any slave." North Carolina (1846);[717] New Mexico Terr. (1858).[718]

No possession by black people; licenses for black people. Mississippi (1865);[719] Florida (1865).[720]

Extra punishment for misuse or carrying with malign intent. Mississippi (1837);[721] California (1855);[722] Indiana (1859);[723] Nevada (1861);[724] Idaho

---

[715] Nunn v. State, *supra*.
[716] *See* text at note ___, *supra*.
[717] *See* text at note ___, *supra*.
[718] *See* text at note ___, *supra*.
[719] *See* text at note ___, *supra*.
[720] *See* text at note ___, *supra*.
[721] *See* text at note ___, *supra*.
[722] *See* text at note ___, *supra*.
[723] *See* text at note ___, *supra*.
[724] *See* text at note ___, *supra*.

(1863);[725] Montana (1864);[726] Arizona Terr. (1867);[727] Missouri (1873) (also daggers);[728] Wyoming Terr. (1882) (also daggers);[729] Maryland (1883);[730] D.C. (1892).[731]

No concealed carry. Alabama (1838);[732] Virginia (1838) (if "habitually") (1881);[733] Louisiana (1855, 1898);[734] Ohio (1856);[735] Indiana (1859) (also daggers);[736] West Virginia (1868) ("habitually");[737] Montana (1864) (in towns);[738] Maryland 1872 (for Annapolis);[739] D.C. (1871, 1892) (also daggers);[740] Georgia (1873);[741] Nebraska (1873);[742] Missouri (1873) (certain locations) (also daggers);[743] North Carolina (1877) (for one county), 1879 (statewide) (both also for daggers), (1884);[744] Arizona (1883, by persons 10–16 in towns) (1887) (everyone in towns), 1893 (generally, adding daggers);[745] Rhode Island (1893) (also daggers);[746] Mississippi (1896).[747]

No open or concealed carry in certain locations. Tennessee (1869) (horse races);[748] Georgia (1870) (churches, court houses);[749] Louisiana (1870, 1873) (polling places);[750] Vermont (1891) (schools) (also daggers).[751]

---

[725] *See* text at note ___, *supra*.
[726] *See* text at note ___, *supra*.
[727] *See* text at note ___, *supra*.
[728] *See* text at note ___, *supra*.
[729] *See* text at note ___, *supra*.
[730] *See* text at note ___, *supra*.
[731] *See* text at note ___, *supra*.
[732] *See* text at note ___, *supra*.
[733] *See* text at note ___, *supra*.
[734] *See* text at note ___, *supra*.
[735] *See* text at note ___, *supra*.
[736] *See* text at note ___, *supra*.
[737] *See* text at note ___, *supra*.
[738] *See* text at note ___, *supra*.
[739] *See* text at note ___, *supra*.
[740] *See* text at note ___, *supra*.
[741] *See* text at note ___, *supra*.
[742] *See* text at note ___, *supra*.
[743] *See* text at note ___, *supra*.
[744] 1883-1884 Va. Acts 180, ch. 143.
[745] *See* text at note ___, *supra*.
[746] *See* text at note ___, *supra*.
[747] *See* text at note ___, *supra*.
[748] *See* text at note ___, *supra*.
[749] *See* text at note ___, *supra*.
[750] *See* text at note ___, *supra*.
[751] *See* text at note ___, *supra*.

Case 4:23-cv-00547-O Document 20-3 Filed 10/06/23 Page 350 of 462 PageID 1023

No carry while intoxicated. Missouri (1873).[752]

No carry, with a few exceptions. Texas (1871) (daggers);[753] Arkansas (1874, 1881);[754] West Virginia (1882);[755] N.M. Terr. (1887) (also "all kinds of daggers" plus "poinards," which are a type of small, slim dagger);[756] Ariz. Terr. (1889) (in towns) (also daggers);[757] Oklahoma Terr. (1890) (also daggers).[758]

Specific property or vendor taxes. Florida (1835, 1881, 1889, 1893);[759] North Carolina 1850, 1856–57, 1866);[760] Alabama (1865–66, 1866–67, 1875-76, 1877–78, 1882, 1884, 1898);[761] Mississippi (1871, 1876, 1878, 1880, 1892, 1894, 1897);[762] Virginia (1874, 1875, 1881, 1883, 1889, 1893); Georgia (1882, 1884, 1886, 1888, 1892);[763] Kentucky (1891).[764]

Authorizing certain municipalities to license and tax vendors. North Carolina (1860–99);[765] Illinois (1867) (also daggers);[766] Wisconsin (1874–91) (allowing concealed carry bans) (also daggers);[767] Alabama (1878–98).[768]

Exemption from seizure for unpaid property taxes. Mississippi (1861).[769]

Restricting sales to minors. Tennessee (1856);[770] Indiana (1875);[771] Illinois 1881 (transfers only by father, guardian, employer);[772] West Virginia (1882);[773] Kansas (1882) (also banning possession by minors);[774] Missouri (1885)

---

[752] *See* text at note ___, *supra*.
[753] *See* text at note ___, *supra*.
[754] *See* text at note ___, *supra*.
[755] *See* text at note ___, *supra*.
[756] *See* text at note ___, *supra*.
[757] *See* text at note ___, *supra*.
[758] *See* text at note ___, *supra*.
[759] *See* text at note ___, *supra*.
[760] *See* text at note ___, *supra*.
[761] *See* text at note ___, *supra*.
[762] *See* text at note ___, *supra*.
[763] *See* text at note ___, *supra*.
[764] *See* text at note ___, *supra*.
[765] *See* text at note ___, *supra*.
[766] *See* text at note ___, *supra*.
[767] *See* text at note ___, *supra*.
[768] *See* text at note ___, *supra*.
[769] *See* text at note ___, *supra*.
[770] *See* text at note ___, *supra*.
[771] *See* text at note ___, *supra*.
[772] *See* text at note ___, *supra*.
[773] *See* text at note ___, *supra*.
[774] *See* text at note ___, *supra*.

(parental consent);[775] Florida (1889);[776] Texas (1889) (parental permission) (also daggers);[777] Oklahoma (1890) (also daggers);[778] Virginia (1890);[779] Louisiana (1890);[780] D.C. (1892);[781] North Carolina (1893).[782]

The next list is Bowie knife statutes that also included daggers, but not dirks:

Free blacks need a license to carry or possess. N.C. (1856).[783]

Free blacks may not carry or possess. N.C. (1861).[784]

Extra punishment for misuse. Texas (1856).[785]

No concealed carry. Montana Terr. (1864);[786] Colorado Terr. (1867) (state reenactments in 1876, 1885, 1891).[787]

No open or concealed carry in certain locations. Virginia (1869) (religious meetings).[788]

No open or concealed carry generally, with a few exceptions. N.M. Terr. (1859) ("Spanish dagger").[789]

The following laws about dirks or daggers were enacted in statutes that did not mention Bowie knives:

No carry. Harrisburg, Pennsylvania (1873) ("dirk-knife").[790]

No concealed carry. Wisconsin (unless with reasonable cause) (1872) (dirk or dagger);[791] South Carolina (1880) (dirk or dagger);[792] (1897) (dirk or

---

[775] *See* text at note ___, *supra*.
[776] *See* text at note ___, *supra*.
[777] *See* text at note ___, *supra*.
[778] *See* text at note ___, *supra*.
[779] *See* text at note ___, *supra*.
[780] *See* text at note ___, *supra*.
[781] *See* text at note ___, *supra*.
[782] *See* text at note ___, *supra*.
[783] *See* text at note ___, *supra*.
[784] *See* text at note ___, *supra*.
[785] *See* text at note ___, *supra*.
[786] *See* text at note ___, *supra*.
[787] *See* text at note ___, *supra*.
[788] *See* text at note ___, *supra*.
[789] *See* text at note ___, *supra*.
[790] 1873 Pa. Laws 735–36.
[791] 1872 Wis. Sess. Laws 17, ch.7.
[792] 1880 S.C. Acts 447–48, no. 362.

Case 4:23-cv-00547-O Document 20-3 Filed 10/06/23 Page 352 of 462 PageID 1025

dagger);[793] Oregon (1885) (dirk or dagger);[794] Michigan (1887) (dirk or dagger).[795]

Carrying concealed created a presumption that the weapon was being carried for use against another person. New York (1866) ("dirk or dagger (not contained as a blade of a pocket knife)").[796]

Sureties could be required for carry if the carrier had previously threatened to breach the peace. Oregon (1853) (dirk or dagger);[797] Wisconsin (1878) (dirk or dagger).[798]

On the whole, whatever combination of "bowie knives," "dirks," and "daggers" that a statute mentioned by name may not have been of great practical importance. Statutes that mentioned at least two of the three often had a catchall that included other "dangerous weapons." So if a statute said "Bowie knives, dirks, and other dangerous weapons," the statute might be applied to carrying a dagger.

This possibility would be less likely in property tax or vendor tax statutes, which did not typically include catchalls. Thus, a person who owned a dagger might not be liable for a property tax applicable to "bowie-knives and dirks."

2. Sword canes

Except as noted, all these sword cane laws also applied to Bowie knives.

Sales ban. Georgia (1837).[799] Held to violate the Second Amendment. Arkansas (1881).[800]

No giving to "any slave." N.M. Terr. (1859).[801]

No giving to "any slave or free person of color." Georgia (1860).[802]

---

[793] 1897 S.C. Acts 423, no. 251.

[794] 1885 Or. Laws 33.

[795] 1887 Mich. Pub. Acts 144, No. 129.

[796] 1866 N.Y. Laws 1523, ch. 716.

[797] 1853 Or. Laws 220, ch. 17.

[798] REVISED STATUTES OF THE STATE OF WISCONSIN, PASSED AT THE EXTRA SESSION OF THE LEGISLATURE COMMENCING JUNE 4, 1878, AND APPROVED JUNE 7, 1878, at 1121, ch. 196, sec. 4834 (1878).

[799] *See* text at note ___, *supra*.

[800] 1881 Ark. Acts 191, ch. 96. See note ___ for why we read the statute as a ban on spear canes and sword canes, not swords in general.

[801] *See* text at note ___, *supra*.

[802] 1860 Ga. Laws 56, No. 64.

No possession or carry by "any free negro." North Carolina (1861).[803]

No concealed carry. Georgia (1852);[804] D.C. (1871, 1892);[805] Ariz. Terr. (1891);[806] Oklahoma (1890,[807] 1893[808]); R.I. (1893).[809]

No concealed carry except for travelers. Kentucky (1813, Bowies not included);[810] Indiana (1820,[811] 1831,[812] 1843,[813] 1859,[814] 1881,[815] Bowies added in 1881); Arkansas (1837, 1881);[816] Georgia (1852,[817] 1883,[818] 1898[819]) (Bowies in 1883 and 1898); California (1863,[820] 1864[821]) (Bowies in neither); Nevada (1867).[822]

No carry in most circumstances. Tennessee (1821,[823] 1870,[824] 1879 ("sword cane" or "loaded cane");[825] Texas (1871,[826] 1887,[827] 1889[828]) (1887 and 1889 including bowies); Arkansas (1875,[829] 1881[830]); N.M. Terr. 1887; [831] Ariz. Terr.

---

[803] 1860-1861 N.C. Sess. Laws 68, ch. 34.
[804] 1851-1852 Ga. Laws 269, no. 165.
[805] *See* text at note ___, *supra*.
[806] 1893 Ariz. Terr. Laws 3, no. 2.
[807] 1890 Okla. Sess. Laws 495, art. 47, sec. 1.
[808] 1893 Okla. Terr. Laws 503, art. 45, sec. 3.
[809] 1893 R.I. Laws 231–32, ch. 1180.
[810] 1812 Ky. Acts 100, ch. 89.
[811] 1819 Ind. Acts 39, ch. 23.
[812] 1831 Ind. Acts 192, ch. 26, sec. 58.
[813] 1843 Ind. Acts 982, ch. 53, sec. 107.
[814] 1859 Ind. Acts 129, ch. 78, sec. 1.
[815] 1881 Ind. Acts 191, ch. 37, sec. 82.
[816] *See* text at note ___, *supra*.
[817] 1851–1852 Ga. Laws 269, No. 165.
[818] 1882–1883 Ga. Laws 49, No. 93.
[819] 1898 Ga. Laws 60, No. 106.
[820] 1863 Cal. Stat. 748.
[821] 1864 Cal. Stat. 115, ch. 128.
[822] 1867 Nev. Stat. 66, ch. 30.
[823] 1821 Tenn. Laws 15, ch. 13.
[824] 1870 Tenn. Laws 55, ch. 41.
[825] 1879 Tenn. Laws 231, ch. 86.
[826] 1871 Tex. Gen. Laws 25, ch. 34, sec. 1–2
[827] 1887 Tex. Gen. Laws 7.
[828] 1889 Tex. Gen. Laws 33, ch. 37.
[829] 1874–75 Ark. Acts 156.
[830] 1881 Ark. Acts 191, ch. 96.
[831] *See* text at note ___, *supra*.

Case 4:23-cv-00547-O Document 20-3 Filed 10/06/23 Page 354 of 462 PageID 1027

(1889) ("within any settlement, town, village or city") (including Bowies);[832] Idaho (1889) ("any city, town or village").[833]

Carrying concealed created a presumption that the weapon was being carried for use against another person. New York (1866).[834]

No transfer to minors. Georgia (1876) (including Bowies);[835] Oklahoma (1890,[836] 1893[837]); Texas (1897) (parental permission, including Bowies).[838]

Special taxation. Mississippi (1854,[839] 1856–57,[840] 1865 (including bowies),[841] 1871, 1876, 1878, 1880, 1892, 1894, 1897;[842] N.C. (1858–59,[843] 1866,[844] 1887,[845] 1889,[846] 1898,[847] including Bowies).

Authorizing municipal regulation: N.C. (1860–99) (various laws allowing taxes on sales, carrying, or possession).[848]

3. Spears

Sales and concealed carry ban. Georgia (1837).[849] Sales ban held to violate the Second Amendment, concealed carry ban upheld.[850]

No carry. Texas (1871) (unless carried openly with reasonable cause);[851] Arkansas ("spear in a cane") (1881).[852]

---

[832] 1889 Ariz. Terr. Laws 30, No. 13, sec. 1.
[833] 1888 Ida. Laws 23, sec. 1.
[834] 1866 N.Y. Laws 1523, ch. 716.
[835] 1876 Ga. Laws 112 ch. 128.
[836] 1890 Okla. Terr. Laws 495, art. 47, sec. 3.
[837] 1893 Okla. Terr. Laws 503, art. 45, sec. 3.
[838] 1897 Tex. Gen. Laws 221, ch. 155.
[839] 1854 Mich. Pub. Acts 50, ch. 1.
[840] 1856-1857 Mich. Pub. Acts 36.
[841] 1867 Miss. Laws 412, ch. 317.
[842] *See* text at note ___, *supra*.
[843] 1858-1859 N.C. Sess. Laws 35–36, ch. 25.
[844] 1866-1867 N.C. Sess. Laws 63.
[845] 1887 N.C. Sess. Laws 885, ch. 58.
[846] 1889 N.C. Sess. Laws 836, ch. 183.
[847] 1897 N.C. Sess. Laws 154, ch. 90.
[848] *See* text at note ___, *supra*.
[849] *See* text at note ___, *supra*.
[850] *See* text at note ___, *supra*.
[851] 1871 Tex. Gen. Laws 25, ch. 34.
[852] 1881 Ark. Acts 191. No. 96.

No concealed carry. Georgia (1852);[853] Arizona Terr. (1889) ("within any settlement, town, village, or city," unless with reasonable cause),[854] (1893);[855] Oklahoma Terr. (1890).[856]

No transfer to minors. Oklahoma Terr. (1890).[857]

4. Razors

During the nineteenth century, men shaved with straight-edge razors. These consisted of a single straight blade, sharpened on one edge. Often, the blade could fold into the handle, like a pocket-knife.

No concealed carry. D.C. (1871, 1892) ("razors, razor-blades");[858] Maryland (1872) (Annapolis), (1886, 1890);[859] Tennessee (1879);[860] South Carolina (1880, 1887, 1897); [861] Virginia (1881, 1884,[862] 1896); Illinois (1881);[863] North Carolina (1883);[864] Michigan (1887);[865] Colorado (1891);[866] Rhode Island (1893).[867]

No carry in most circumstances. Arkansas (1875, 1881);[868] West Virginia (1882) (exception for peaceable citizen with good cause).[869]

Carry limited to self-defense. Maryland (1894).[870]

West Virginia in the late nineteenth century prohibited carrying handguns and many other weapons (but not long guns) in public in most circumstances. In a case where a train passenger sued a railroad for facilitating his arrest for carrying a razor, the state supreme court explained:

---

[853] 1851-52 Ga. Laws 269, No. 165.
[854] 1889 Ariz. Terr. Laws 30.
[855] 1893 Ariz. Terr. Laws 3, No. 2, sec.1.
[856] 1890 Okla. Terr. Laws 495, art. 47, sec. 1.
[857] 1890 Okla. Terr. Laws 495, art. 47, sec. 3.
[858] *See* text at note ___, *supra*.
[859] *See* text at note ___, *supra*.
[860] *See* text at note ___, *supra*.
[861] *See* text at note ___, *supra*.
[862] 1883-1884 Va. Acts 180, ch. 143.
[863] 1881 Ill. Laws 74.
[864] *See* text at note ___, *supra*.
[865] *See* text at note ___, *supra*.
[866] *See* text at note ___, *supra*.
[867] *See* text at note ___, *supra*.
[868] *See* text at note ___, *supra*.
[869] *See* text at note ___, *supra*.
[870] An 1874 Maryland law forbade the carry of "any gun, pistol, dirk, dirk-knife, razor, billy or bludgeon" in Kent, Queen Anne's, or Montgomery counties. 1874 Md. Laws 366.

> The razor was undoubtedly added to this section on account of the proneness of the Americanized African to carry and use the same as a deadly weapon. To such the razor is what the machete is to the Cuban. It is his implement of livelihood in time of peace, and his weapon of destruction in time of war. This is matter of common report. . . . The excuse given by the plaintiff, that he was carrying such razor to shave himself while in the country, is not a legal one. Such an excuse might be given by every person thus carrying a razor, and, if allowed as sufficient, would render the law of no affect.[871]

5. Butcher knives

No concealed carry. Mississippi (1888,[872] 1898);[873] Rhode Island (1893).[874]

No carry in most circumstances. Arkansas (1837,[875] 1875);[876] N.M. Terr. (1887).[877]

No carry to public assemblies or gatherings. Texas (1870).[878]

6. Swords

Banning carry. Idaho (1889) ("any city, town or village").[879]

Extra punishment for use in a crime. California (1855) ("small-sword, back-sword" used in a duel);[880] Nevada (1861) (same as California);[881] Mont. Terr. (1864) (a homicide in a duel with a "small sword, back-sword" is murder).[882]

---

[871] Claiborne v. Chesapeake & O. Ry. Co., 46 W.Va. 363, 370–71 (1899).

[872] 6 THE LAWS OF TEXAS 1822-1897, at 63 (H. P. N. Gammel ed., 1898).

[873] 1896 Miss. Laws 109, ch. 104.

[874] 1893 R.I. Laws 231–32, ch. 1880, sec. 1.

[875] REVISED STATUTES OF THE STATE OF ARKANSAS, ADOPTED AT THE OCTOBER SESSION OF THE GENERAL ASSEMBLY OF SAID STATE, A. D. 1837, at 280 (William Mck. Ball & Sam C. Roane ed., 1838).

[876] 1875 Ark. Acts 156.

[877] *See* text at note ___, *supra*.

[878] *See* text at note ___, *supra*.

[879] 1888 Ida. Laws 23, sec. 1.

[880] *See* text at note ___, *supra*.

[881] *See* text at note ___, *supra*.

[882] *See* text at note ___, *supra*.

B. Slungshots and other flexible impact weapons

This section describes a variety of weapons that are obscure to the twenty-first century reader. Although there are many books describing the history of firearms and knives, there is only one book on the history of flexible impact weapons, Robert Escobar's *Saps, Blackjacks and Slungshots: A History of Forgotten Weapons*.[883] "At their most basic, they are all small, concealable, flexible and weighted bludgeons," he explains.[884]

It is extremely easy to make such a weapon at home. For example, take a sock and put some pocket change or a few tablespoons of sand or dirt in the toe.[885] Grasp the sock by the other end. You now have a flexible impact weapon. You can swing it and strike whoever is attacking you.

---

[883] ROBERT ESCOBAR, SAPS, BLACKJACKS AND SLUNGSHOTS: A HISTORY OF FORGOTTEN WEAPONS (2018). "[T]ry to find a group of weapons used as broadly as our was or for as long while having as little written about it." *Id.* at 241.

Proper techniques of defensive use are detailed in MASSAD AYOOB, FUNDAMENTAL OF MODERN POLICE IMPACT WEAPONS (1996).

[884] ESCOBAR, *supra* note __, at 9.

[885] Should you be alone in the outdoors and decide that you need a weapon, you can turn "your socks, or wrapped up shirt, into an impromptu sand-club" by adding dirt. "Throw in a rock or two if they are handy and you're even more prepared." *Id.* at 21.

Some examples of improvised flexible impact weapons, for good or ill:

During the 1863 anti-draft riots in New York City, two criminals, apparently taking advantage of the fact that the police were busy trying to suppress the riots, ordered two women to vacate their home within a day, or else the criminals would burn it. In defense, the women "tied stout cords to heavy lead fishing sinkers . . . What these amounted to, ironically, were crude versions of the slung-shot so highly favored by the New York thugs themselves." JAMES MCCAGUE, THE SECOND REBELLION: THE STORY OF THE NEW YORK CITY DRAFT RIOTS OF 1863, at 155 (1968).

In 1861, an English sailor fashioned a "slung shot" from "four revolver bullets" with "some paper round them" and attached to "a lanyard." Adolphus Manton, in PROCEEDINGS OF THE CENTRAL CRIMINAL COURT, 25th November 1861, at 78, reprinted at ref. no. t18611125-55 (Cent. Crim. Ct., London, Nov. 25, 1861), *in* The Proceedings of the Old Bailey, 1674-1913, www.oldbaileyonline.org.

During the eighteenth century, English criminals often used a "stocking filled with sand or lead shot." Rictor Norton, *St. Giles's Footpads & James Dalton's Gang: Footpads & Street Robbers*, *in* The Georgian Underworld: A Study of Criminal Subcultures in Eighteenth-Century England (website), http://rictornorton.co.uk/gu09.htm.

A leader of a women's auxiliary during the 1936–37 auto workers strike in Flint, Michigan, recalled, "we all carried a hard-milled bar of soap in one pocket and a sock in the other. That way, we couldn't be charged with carrying a weapon. But if somebody was creating trouble on the picket line, we'd slip that bar of soap into the sock and swing that sock very fast and sharp.

With these weapons, a blow to the head could be fatal, but usually not. A blow anywhere else on the body was unlikely to be lethal.[886] As Escobar explains:

> these objects were not designed to inflict maximum damage. You do not put a soft or semi-soft covering on a weapon to increase its destructive capabilities nor do you make its striking surface smooth when it could be angular. You also don't use loads like lead powder, shot or sand instead of solid metal . . . [T]he lead pod inside most saps and jacks is about the size of a spoon head so there is little margin for errors if you want to maximize the impact.[887]

The vagueness of the term "Bowie knife"—which does not consistently describe any particular type of knife—was discussed in Part V.A. Definitions of categories of flexible impact weapons are even more confusing.[888] The meaning "depends on the year, who you ask(ed); and what country or part of the country you occupy when asked."[889] The "deliciously sloppy usages of the

---

It was as good as a blackjack." STRIKING FLINT: GENORA (JOHNSON) DOLLINGER REMEMBERS THE 1936-37 GENERAL MOTORS SIT-DOWN STRIKE AS TOLD TO SUSAN ROSENTHAL (1995), web reprint available at https://www.marxists.org/history/etol/newspape/amersocialist/genora.htm#women.

In 2018, organized crime leader Whitey Bulger was transferred to the general prison population, and within hours was murdered by another inmate with "a lock in a sock." Bulger v. Hurwitz, 2023 WL 2335958 at *2 (4th Cir. Mar. 3, 2023).

[886] "Many police departments allowed head shots only in cases where deadly force was deemed necessary." ESCOBAR, *supra* note __, at 232.

[887] *Id.* at 237.

[888] "Perhaps because they thrived outside of polite society, their names are colorful, sometimes comical, and never really used consistently." *Id.* at 11. Various names were "slungshot, blackjack, jack, jacksap, billyjack, slapjack, flat sap, spoon sap, slap-stick, slapper, zapper, slock, sand-club, sandbag, billet, billie, convoy, cosh, life-preserver, persuader, starter, bum starter, priest, fish priest, Shanghai tool, monkey fist, Sweet William, joggerhead, beavertail." *Id.*

[889] *Id.* at 12. Changes in usage are nothing new. As of the eighteenth and early nineteenth centuries, a "gun" meant a long gun; handguns were called "pistols." Later, "gun" came to encompass everything that fired a bullet. Today, and in the twentieth century, "pistol" is sometimes used as a synonym for handgun, although the more precise meaning is a semiautomatic handgun, as distinct from a revolver.

past" make it difficult to determine what particular type of flexible impact weapon is being discussed in historical sources.[890]

Escobar's book provides an appendix of definitions, which he calls "more art than science," an effort to put "a sensible framework over the whole mess."[891] According to Escobar, "[s]aps and jacks" were shorthands "for everything except slungshots."[892]

Whatever the term used for a particular flexible impact weapon, the class as a whole has the following characteristics:

- Non-lethal except for a blow to the head. Even then, less likely to be lethal than a firearm or knife strike to the head.
- Exceptionally compact and easy to conceal, because they are flexible.[893] Unlike firearms or knives, which are rigid.
- Silent, like blade arms, and unlike firearms.
- Unlikely to cause surface bleeding, unlike firearms or blades.

We now turn to the flexible impact weapon that led to the most legislation in the nineteenth century, the slungshot.

---

[890] *Id.* at 17.

[891]

> If you're thinking everything mentioned in this appendix must have made research a complete nightmare, you are correct. It was difficult enough to find references to any of our terms and the fun only began then. . . . I was not . . . interested in proposing a codified way of this for book but instead wanted to put a sensible framework over the whole mess that goes with the modern meanings of the terms while still honoring the past. In short, it's more art than science . . .

Id. at 226–27.

[892] *Id.* at 11.

[893] "Saps and jacks remain half hidden even when openly brandished." *Id.* at 11. A sap has the stopping power of a billy club, "but in a much smaller package. [For a law enforcement officer] This made it an ideal backup in case you lost your bafa ton in a scuffle or while running." *Id.* at 73.

1. Slungshots and colts

The "slungshot was a tool turned weapon."[894] In the original slungshot, one end of the rope is wound around a lead weight, or other small, dense item.[895] Sailors use slungshots to cast mooring lines and other ropes over water. Resources on a ship at sea are very finite, and slungshots are easy to construct.[896] Definitionally, "slungshot" has been more stable than its flexible weapon cousins.[897]

The term slungshot, however, was applied to many items that had nothing to do with nautical affairs or ropes. Many slungshots were manufactured from leather and hardly looked like sailors' tools.

Compared to other flexible impact weapons, "slungshots are the clear champion in terms of pure impact. One strike to the head, without regard to particular target, usually results in the immediate cessation of hostility in the opponent or defense in the victim. Whether or not full unconsciousness does mercifully come, the person is usually incapacitated and in for unpleasant long

---

[894] *Id.* at 39.

[895] "A weight, usually hard loaded, tied to the end of a rope or similar material which swings freely. The end was often a sling, presumably indicating a common linguistic link between it, the ancient sling and the slingshot." *Id.* at 14. "[A]t heart just a small round weight surrounded by a clever knot", "It was tied so that one or two ends of the rope trail away from the ball shaped knot, providing material for the handle. A common additional feature once weaponized was a loop at the opposite end of the load so the entire contraption could be secured to the wrist. The original purpose" "was to allow one to cast a line across open water." *Id.* at 41.

[896] One could be made with a "bit of rope, cloth, sand, fishing weights and more." *Id.* at 44.

[897] "Slungshots are always called slungshots and clubs . . . generally called clubs." *Id.* at 133.

"The term appears common in the mid-19th century and *usually* describes the right weapon or at least something close to it." *Id.* at 226.

> Still you can unsurprisingly encounter instances where it is used to describe our entire subject matter and more (like brass knuckles). The most important note on slungshot as a term is that once into modernity but prior to the late 19th century it is written about very often while our other terms are almost non-existent. That's good in that eytmologists say that sap and blackjack only started later, it's bad in that we don't know if that means any kind of sap would have been called a slungshot back then or that the slungshot configuration was simply much more popular in those days.

Id.

term effects. So it hits harder. . . ."[898] "One reason is simply the length. Both saps and blackjacks are normally less than 10 inches long."[899] A slungshot could be 22 inches.[900] The slungshot "provided the reach of a substantial club while fitting easily inside a pocket. Unlike a club, knife or brass knuckles, it could be held in a closed hand completely unseen while being ready to instantly lash out. This was very likely a factor in the slungshot's later popularity with street criminals."[901] Compared to other impact weapons, "The slungshot was even more suited for a sneak attack. With its long coiled shaft/handle and small load taking up little space in a pocket, it could be quickly unleashed and strike a man from a much greater distance than a sap or jack."[902]

A variety of slungshot, known as a "life-preserver" was popular with burglars in Victorian England. Besides the advantage of concealability, the life-preservers were "less lethal for dealing with interruptions; murder only being a way of increasing police attention after the fact."[903]

Slungshots were popular with criminals for obvious reasons, but they were also carried at least sometimes by the law-abiding. An 1863 cartoon from the English humor magazine *Punch*, titled "Going Out to Tea in the Suburbs," shows a "society outing" of men and women "armed to the teeth," with "the life-preserver" as "the most common choice in the arsenal."[904] The cartoon, subtitled "A Pretty State of Things for 1862," portrays in exaggerated fashion the public response to the garroting scare of 1862.[905]

According to a historian of New Orleans life during Reconstruction, the "people fairly bristled with lethal weaponry: revolvers, pepperbox pistols,

---

[898] *Id.* at 45.

[899] *Id.*

[900] CLIFFORD W. ASHLEY, THE ASHLEY BOOK OF KNOTS (1944)

[901] ESCOBAR, *supra* note __, at 44.

[902] *Id.* at 233.

[903] *Id.* at 76.

Attorney Abraham Lincoln's most famous case was the Almanac Trial of 1858. According to the charges, one evening around midnight Duff Armstrong fatally hit James Metzger in the head with a "slung-shot," made of "a copper ball covered with lead, sewn into a leather bag and attached to a strap." A witness who had been about 150 feet away claimed he could clearly identify Armstrong as the perpetrator because the moon was full that night. Lincoln won an acquittal by producing an almanac showing that the moon was at quarter phase, and about to set. JOHN EVANGELIST WALSH, MOONLIGHT: ABRAHAM LINCOLN AND THE ALMANAC TRIAL (2000).

[904] ESCOBAR, *supra* note __, at 78.

[905] "Going Out to Tea in the Suburbs," PUNCH'S ALMANACK FOR 1863 (Jan.-June); Andy Croll, *Who's afraid of the Victorian underworld?* THE HISTORIAN 30, 34 (Winter 2004).

dirks, bowie knives and slung-shots—a private arsenal concealed in the pockets and waist bands of respectable gentlemen and proletarian thugs alike."[906]

According to Escobar, "Court records of the 1800's have many cases of civilians (e.g. neither professional criminal nor cop) using slungshots, etc."[907] But "[a]t least in the incidents combed for this book, a man bringing one out after being threatened comes up rarely. As a reminder, the slungshot is particularly well suited to the sneak attack as it is not seen until it hits and does so from a surprising distance."[908] A "man avenging himself for a perceived slight to his honor via a possibly deadly sucker punch with these comes up quite a bit."[909]

In sum, "It's clear they were often carried by criminals with ill intent but also by men who just wanted to be ready to defend (or I guess avenge) themselves. Granted, it looks like men with short fuses who were more prone to break the law via assault than your average Joe."[910]

Slungshot laws are different from the laws on other arms that have been discussed above. Starting in 1849, eight states and one territory outlawed sales and manufacture. Vermont (1849);[911] New York (1849),[912] (1881),[913] (1884),[914] (1889);[915] Massachusetts (1850),[916] (1882);[917] Kentucky (1855);[918] Florida

---

[906] Dennis C. Rousey, *Black Policemen in New Orleans During Reconstruction* in A QUESTION OF MANHOOD: A READER IN U.S. BLACK MEN'S HISTORY AND MASCULINITY, vol. 2 THE 19TH CENTURY: FROM EMANCIPATION TO JIM CROW 85, 89 (Darlene Clark Hine & Earnestine Jenkins eds., 2001).

[907] ESCOBAR, *supra* note __, at 131.

[908] *Id.* at 74.

[909] *Id.*

[910] *Id.* at 75.

[911] 1849 Vt. Acts & Resolves 26.

[912] 1849 NY Laws 403, ch. 278.

[913] 1881 N.Y. Laws 102.

[914] 3 THE REVISED STATUTES, CODE AND GENERAL LAWS OF THE STATE OF NEW YORK 3330 (Clarence F. Birdseye ed., 1890).

[915] 1889 N.Y. Laws 167, ch. 140.

[916] 1850 Mass. Acts 401, ch. 194, sec. 2.

[917] THE PUBLIC STATUTES OF THE COMMONWEALTH OF MASSACHUSETTS, ENACTED NOVEMBER 19, 1881; TO TAKE EFFECT FEBRUARY 1, 1882, at 1163 (1886).

[918] 1855 Ky. Acts 96, ch. 636. This restriction was restated the following year. 1856 Ky. Acts 97, ch. 636.

(1868),[919] (1893);[920] Dakota Terr. (1877),[921] (1883);[922] Illinois (1881);[923] Minnesota (1886);[924] Pennsylvania (1889).[925]

Illinois also prohibited possession. Vermont prohibited possession for interpersonal use, and Maryland did the same for carrying. The laws still allowed use as tool, such as for nautical purposes.[926] The Kentucky sales ban was repealed later in the century.[927]

The nine jurisdictions with slungshot sales bans were the most for any weapon in America in the nineteenth century. Only metallic knuckles, discussed in Part VI.C.1, came close.

Most jurisdictions did not ban slungshot sales. The majority approach was similar to Bowie knives:

No giving to "any slave or free person of color," except by "the owner." Georgia (1860).[928]

---

[919] DIGEST OF THE LAWS OF THE STATE OF FLORIDA, FROM THE YEAR ONE THOUSAND EIGHT HUNDRED AND TWENTY-TWO, TO THE ELEVENTH DAY OF MARCH, ONE THOUSAND EIGHT HUNDRED AND EIGHTY-ONE, INCLUSIVE 403 (James F. McClellan ed., 1881).

[920] 1893 Fla. Laws 52.

[921] 1877 N.D. Laws 794, ch. 38, sec. 455.

[922] 1883 Dakota Terr. Laws 1211, sec. 456.

[923]

> That whoever shall have in his possession, or sell, give or loan, hire or barter, or whoever shall offer to sell, give, loan, hire or barter, to any person within this state, any slung-shot or metallic knuckles, or other deadly weapon of like character, or any person in whose possession such weapons shall be found, shall be guilty of a misdmeanor, and upon conviction shall be fined in any sum not less than ten dollars ($10) nor more than two hundred dollars ($200).

1881 Ill. Laws 73.

[924] THE PENAL CODE OF THE STATE OF MINNESOTA TO TAKE EFFECT JANUARY 1, A. D. 1886, at 127 (1885).

[925]

[926] The first section of the Vermont statute made it a misdemeanor to manufacture or transfer a slungshot. The second section made it a felony to "carry, or be found in the possession of, use or attempt to use, as against any other person, any instrument, or weapon, of the kind usually known as a slung shot."1849 Vt. Acts & Resolves 26. The felony punishment for violating the second section suggests that it referred to possessing or carrying the slungshot for the purpose of using it against another person.

The Maryland law forbade concealed carry of slungshots and open carry if done "with the intent or purpose of injuring any person." 1886 Md. Laws ch. 395.

The Vermont and Maryland laws apparently intended to outlaw all use of slungshots in fighting, while still allowing use as a nautical tool and for similar purposes.

[927] Text at notes *infra.*

[928] *See* text at note ___, *supra.*

No concealed carry. California (1864);[929] Nevada (1867);[930] Wisconsin (1872);[931] Alabama (1873);[932] Illinois (1881);[933] North Carolina (1877, Alleghany County; 1879 statewide);[934] Dakota Terr. (1877);[935] Mississippi (1878);[936] South Carolina (1880);[937] Virginia (1884);[938] Missouri (1885);[939] Arizona Terr. (1887) (in towns) (1893) (in general); Oregon (1885);[940] Arizona (1887);[941], Michigan (1887);[942] Rhode Island (1893);[943] Maryland (1894) (unless reasonable cause);[944] District of Columbia (1899).[945]

Carrying concealed created a presumption that the weapon was being carried for use against another person. New York (1866),[946] (1884);[947] Minnesota (1891).[948]

No open or concealed carry in most circumstances. N.M. Terr. (1859, 1887);[949] California (1863);[950] Texas (1871) (without reasonable cause);[951]

---

[929] 1864 Cal. Stat. 115, ch. 128.

[930] 1867 Nev. Stat. 66, ch. 30.

[931] 1872 Wis. Sess. Laws 17, ch. 7.

[932] 1873 Ala. Laws 130–31, no. 87.

[933] 1881 Ill. Laws 73.

[934] *See* text at note ___, *supra*.

[935] 1877 N.D. Laws 794, ch. 38, sec. 456.

[936] *See* text at note ___, *supra*.

[937] THE GENERAL STATUTES AND THE CODE OF CIVIL PROCEDURE OF THE STATE OF SOUTH CAROLINA, ADOPTED BY THE GENERAL ASSEMBLY OF 1881–82, at 699 (1882).

[938] 1883-1884 Va. Laws 180, ch. 143.

[939] 1 THE REVISED STATUTES OF THE STATE OF MISSOURI 854 (1889).

[940] 1 THE CODES AND GENERAL LAWS OF OREGON 977 (William Lair Hill ed., 1887).

[941] REVISED STATUTES OF ARIZONA 726 (1887).

[942] 3 THE GENERAL STATUTES OF THE STATE OF MICHIGAN 3800 (Andrew Howell ed., 1890).

[943] 1893 R.I. Laws 231–32, ch. 1180.

[944] 1894 Md. Laws 834.

[945] 1899 U.S. Stat. 1270, ch. 429, sec. 117.

[946] 1866 N.Y. Laws 1523, ch. 716.

[947] 3 THE REVISED STATUTES, CODE AND GENERAL LAWS OF THE STATE OF NEW YORK 3330 (Clarence F. Birdseye ed., 1890).

[948] 2 GENERAL STATUTES OF THE STATE OF MINNESOTA, IN FORCE JANUARY 1891, at 517 (1891).

[949] *See* text at note ___, *supra*.

[950] 1863 Cal. Stat. 115–16, ch. 128.

[951] 1871 Tex. Gen. Laws 25.

Harrisburg, Pennsylvania (1873);[952] Tennessee (1879);[953] West Virginia (1882);[954] Dakota Terr. (1883);[955] Arizona Terr. (1889) ("within any settlement, town, village, or city," unless with reasonable cause).[956]

No carry to public assemblies or gatherings. Texas (1871);[957] Missouri (1885).[958]

Ban on carry with intent to injure. Maryland (1882).[959]

Sales to minors. Kentucky (1859) (parental permission);[960] Indiana (1875);[961] West Virginia (1882);[962] Kansas (1882) (also banning possession by minors);[963] Missouri (1885) (under 21);[964] New York (1889) (18, unless police magistrate consents);[965] Oklahoma (1890) (under 21);[966] Texas (1897, parental consent). [967]

Limiting carry by young people. Nevada (1881) (under 18),[968] (1885) (under 21);[969] Ariz. Terr. (1883, ages 10-16, in towns).[970]

Specific taxation. Kentucky (1891) (occupational tax for vendors).[971]

Authorizing municipalities to regulate. Illinois (1867) (Bloomington, concealed carry, "colt, or slung-shot");[972] Wisconsin (1874–91) (concealed carry, "colt, or slung shot");[973] Michigan (1891) (Saginaw, concealed carry).[974]

---

[952] 1873 Pa. Laws 735–36.

[953] 1879 Tenn. Pub. Acts 231, ch. 86, sec. 1.

[954] *See* text at note ___, *supra*.

[955] 1883 Dakota Terr. 1211, sec. 456.

[956] 1889 Ariz. Terr. Laws 30.

[957] 2 A DIGEST OF THE LAWS OF TEXAS: CONTAINING THE LAWS IN FORCE, AND THE REPEALED LAWS ON WHICH RIGHTS REST, FROM 1754 TO 1874, at 1323 (George W. Paschal ed., 4th ed. 1874).

[958] 1 THE REVISED STATUTES OF THE STATE OF MISSOURI 854 (1889).

[959] *See* text at note ___, *supra*.

[960] *See* text at note ___, *supra*.

[961] *See* text at note ___, *supra*.

[962] *See* text at note ___, *supra*.

[963] *See* text at note ___, *supra*.

[964] *Id.*

[965] 1899 N.Y. Laws 1341, ch. 603.

[966] 1890 Okla. Terr. Laws 495, art. 47, sec. 3.

[967] *See* text at note ___, *supra*.

[968] 1881 Nev. Stat. 143.

[969] 1885 Nev. Stat. 51.

[970] *See* text at note ___, *supra*.

[971] *See* text at note ___, *supra*.

[972] *See* text at note ___, *supra*.

[973] *See* text at note ___, *supra*.

[974] *See* text at note ___, *supra*.

No possession. Illinois (1881).[975]

In the nineteenth century, "colt" seems to have been an alternative term for "slungshot." The Shorter Oxford English Dictionary defines a "colt" as "4. A short piece of weighted rope used as a weapon, *spec. (Naut.)* a similar instrument used for corporal punishment, *slang*, M18."[976]

An 1855 Kentucky prohibiting slungshot sales also applied to two other types of arms:

> That any person or persons who may hereafter be found guilty of vending, buying, selling, or doling in the weapons popularly known as colts, brass knuckles, slung-shots, or any imitation or substitute therefor, shall forfeit or pay 25 dollars.[977]

The Kentucky ban on sale of "colts," stayed on the books for several decades, and was eventually replaced with a ban only on sales to minors, plus a tort cause of action for anyone injured with the listed weapons as a result of an illegal sale.[978]

---

[975] 1881 Ill. Laws 73.

[976] 1 SHORTER OXFORD ENGLISH DICTIONARY 444.

[977] 1855 Ky. Acts 96, ch. 636. This restriction was restated the following year. 1856 Ky. Acts 97, ch. 636.

[978] One might guess that "colts" referred to the revolvers produced by Colt's Manufacturing Co., in New Haven, Conn. The first models of Samuel Colt's revolver handguns were introduced in the late 1830s, and by 1855 they were a huge commercial success. Protected by a patent that did not expire until 1857, they faced no competition in the category of high-quality modern revolver.

The theory that the Kentucky legislature was taking aim at the Colt's revolvers is buttressed by the late nineteenth century version of the statute, which changed the spelling to "Colt's."

By the time Kentucky's revised statute changed "colts" to "Colt's," and banned sales only to minors, the Colt's Manufacturing revolver patent was expired; there were many companies selling high-quality modern revolvers at affordable prices. At that point, a sales restriction on Colt's revolvers only would have made no sense, although perhaps similar revolvers could be said to be covered by "or any imitation of substitute therefor."

Even so, in the latter nineteenth century a Kentucky ban on revolvers "similar" to Colt's would be the opposite of gun control efforts of the time in other states. As discussed in Part IV.B. & C., those were bans on the most concealable handguns, and they exempted large handguns ("Army and Navy" models) like the Colt's.

In short, the laws for slungshots/colts are the most restrictive of any of the weapons examined in this article. Most jurisdictions that chose to regulate followed the typical course for other weapons—such as concealed carry bans or limits on sales to minors. As for bans on carry in general, there are of course the usual suspects, namely some of the jurisdictions that also banned open handgun carry, and likewise banned carrying most other weapons, while still allowing long gun open carry. However, the Dakota Territory banned slungshot carry, and Dakota was not among the jurisdictions that banned handgun carry.

More importantly, there were nine states or territories that at some point banned manufacture or sale, and two of them banned possession. This is substantially more than the number that imposed such restrictions on any other arm in the nineteenth century.

We reviewed every pre-1900 case on Westlaw with the words "slungshot," "slung shot," or "slung-shot." Few of them are instructive on right to arms law. Some involve some other weapon, such as a gun or knife, and simply quote a statute that also mentions slungshots.[979] Many involve homicides or assaults; a defendant of course could not raise the right to arms.[980] A few asked whether

---

We suggest that the 1855 Kentucky statute was not about handguns. If the successor statutes were, they were anomalous to the extent that they singled out large handguns for stricter regulations than small handguns.

[979] *See*, *e.g.*, State v. Seal, 47 Mo. App. 603 (1892) (defendant convicted of "exhibiting a gun in a rude, angry and threatening manner"; statute also applied to slungshots); People v. Izzo, 60 Hun. 583, 39 N.Y. St. Rep. 166, 14 N.Y.S. 906 (1st Dept. 1891) (conviction for carrying a concealed dagger with intent to use in a crime reversed because of improper testimony; statute also applied to slungshots).

[980] *See*, *e.g.*¸ State v. Marshall, 35 Or. 265, 57 P. 902 (1899) (insanity defense for assault with a slungshot); People v. Turner, 118 Cal. 324. 50 P. 537 (1897) (cross-examination of victim who identified defendant as perpetrator of assault with a slungshot); People v. Wyman, 15 Cal. 70 (1860) (upholding conviction of manslaughter for stabbing victim in the ribs; victim's nose had been broken, and a physician testified that the break was not caused by a knife, and "might have been made a slungshot, a round stick, or possibly with the fist"); State v. Melton, 102 Mo. 683, 15 S.W. 139 (1891) (claim of self-defense not supported by the facts); State v. Fowler, 52 Iowa 103, 2 N.W. 983 (1879) (admissibility of witness testimony in support of self-defense); State v. Yeaton, 53 Me. 125 (1865) (refused entrance to an event at a private school, defendants assaulted the school personnel with slungshots); People v. Casey, 72 N.Y. 393 (1872) (defendant convicted of assault with a sharp weapon; indictment had also mentioned "certain knife, pistol, slung-shot, billy and club"; jury conviction of sharp weapon was implausible, since evidence showed a bludgeon and not a cut, but defendant's attorney had failed to object below); People v. Emerson, 6 N.Y.Crim.R. 157, 20 N.Y.St.Rep. 155 N.Y.S. 374 (Sup. Ct. N.Y. County 1888) (defendant convicted of running an illegal lottery; prosecution was correctly allowed to

a municipality had the power to enact an ordinance.[981] Two cases involved sailors who carried slungshots, and the courts did not consider the slungshots to indicate anything nefarious about the sailors' characters.[982] In a lawsuit about a "rough and abusive" passenger who had been struck by a train employee with a slungshot and ejected from a slow-moving train for not paying the fare, an Illinois appellate court ruled that the trial court had improperly excluded evidence that the train employee had legitimate defensive purposes for carrying a "billy or slungshot" (terms that the court used interchangeably).[983]

The one case that addressed the constitutionality of slungshot laws in depth was the 1871 *English v. State*, which upheld the recently enacted Texas statute against public carry of handguns and many other arms, while allowing long gun carry.[984] As for the Second Amendment right to bear arms, the Texas Supreme Court held that arms protected were the types of arms useful in a militia:

---

introduce testimony about the nature of "a lottery policy," just as other cases allow testimony about "the nature and description of a weapon commonly known as a 'slungshot,' or, under section 508, what is an instrument adapted or commonly used for the commission of burglary, etc.").

[981] *See*, *e.g.* Collins v. Hall, 92 Ga. 411, 17 S.E. 622 (1893) (municipality did not have the power to enact on concealed carry ban on various arms, including slungshots); Ex parte Caldwell, 138 Mo. 233, 39 S.W. 761 (1897) (municipal law imposing fine for carrying concealed weapons was consistent with city charter; defendant's weapon not specified, but ordinance included slungshots).

[982] Gardner v. Bibbins, 1 Blatchf. & H. 356, 9 F.Cas. 1159 (S.D.N.Y. 1833) ("He produces the evidence of a laborer, to prove that the libellant was in possession of a slung-shot on shore, which might have been used as a dangeous weapon . . . but he does not pretend, in his own deposition, that he ever regarded those circumstances as importing any danger to him or to the vessel."); Smith v. U.S., 1 Wash. Terr. 262 (1869) ("The evidence excluded appears to have been offered for the purpose of showing that Butler . . . 'had a slung-shot on board the bark Marinus at the time of the affray.' It nowhere appears in the evidence that Butler, at the time of the affray, was making an assault upon the prisoner, or attempting or threatening to make any.").

[983] Chicago, B. & Q.R. Co. v. Boger, 1 Ill. App. 472 (1877) ("The appellant offered to prove by the witness that a short time before he had had trouble with roughs and confidence men jumping on the train as it was passing out of the city, where he had been attacked by them, and that he carried the billy for his personal protection against any future assault. We think this evidence should have been admitted to the jury.").

[984] English v. State, 35 Tex. 473 (1871).

> Arms of what kind? Certainly such as are useful and proper to an armed militia. The deadly weapons spoken of in the statute are pistols, dirks, daggers, slungshots, swordcanes, spears, brass-knuckles and bowie knives. Can it be understood that these were contemplated by the framers of our bill of rights? Most of them are the wicked devices of modern craft.
>
> . . .
>
> To refer the deadly devices and instruments called in the statute "deadly weapons," to the proper or necessary arms of a "well-regulated militia," is simply ridiculous. No kind of travesty, however subtle or ingenious, could so misconstrue this provision of the constitution of the United States, as to make it cover and protect that pernicious vice, from which so many murders, assassinations, and deadly assaults have sprung, and which it was doubtless the intention of the legislature to punish and prohibit. The word "arms" in the connection we find it in the constitution of the United States, refers to the arms of a militiaman or soldier, and the word is used in its military sense. The arms of the infantry soldier are the musket and bayonet; of cavalry and dragoons, the sabre, holster pistols and carbine; of the artillery, the field piece, siege gun, and mortar, with side arms.
>
> The terms dirks, daggers, slungshots, sword-canes, brass-knuckles and bowie knives, belong to no military vocabulary. Were a soldier on duty found with any of these things about his person, he would be punished for an offense against discipline.[985]

The Texas State Constitution right to arms guaranteed "the right to keep and bear arms in the lawful defense of himself or the state, under such regulations as the legislature may prescribe."[986] The language authorizing regulations in the 1866 Constitution was a change from the 1845 statehood Constitution, and the 1836 Constitution of the Republic of Texas.[987] The court

[985] *Id.* at 474, 476–77.

[986] Tex. Const. of 1868, art. I, § 13: "Every person shall have the right to keep and bear arms, in the lawful defence of himself or the State, under such regulations as the legislature may prescribe."

[987] Tex. Const. of 1845, art. I, § 13: "Every citizen shall have the right to keep and bear arms in the lawful defence of himself or the State." Tex. Const. of 1836, Declaration of Rights,

Case 4:23-cv-00547-O Document 20-3 Filed 10/06/23 Page 370 of 462 PageID 1043

held that "arms" in the Texas Constitution meant the same thing as in the Second Amendment.

According to the court, the carry ban was a reasonable regulation: "We confess it appears to us little short of ridiculous, that any one should claim the right to carry upon his person any of the mischievous devices inhibited by the statute, into a peaceable public assembly, as, for instance into a church, a lecture room, a ball room, or any other place where ladies and gentlemen are congregated together."[988] As for Texans' preferences for carrying arms, it came from the pernicious Spanish influence on the State—which had once been part of New Spain, and then part of the United States of Mexico:

> A portion of our system of laws, as well as our public morality, is derived from a people the most peculiar perhaps of any other in the history and derivation of its own system. Spain, at different periods of the world, was dominated over by the Carthagenians, the Romans, the Vandals, the Snevi, the Allani, the Visigoths, and Arabs; and to this day there are found in the Spanish codes traces of the laws and customs of each of these nations blended together into a system by no means to be compared with the sound philosophy and pure morality of the common law.[989]

The English decision did not mention the 1856 *Cockrum* case, stating that the right to keep and bear Bowie knives is protected by Texas Constitution and the Second Amendment, while misuse in violent crime is not.[990]

2. Slingshots

Slingshots are entirely different from slungshots. A slungshot is an impact weapon, and a slingshot is a missile weapon. The first slingshot law does not appear until 1872, the next one 1886, and the remainder in the 1890s.

§ 14: "Every citizen shall have the right to bear arms in defence of himself and the republic. The military shall at all times and in all cases be subordinate to the civil power."

[988] *English*, 35 Tex. at 478–79.

[989] *Id.* at 480.

[990] Text at notes____.

According to Escobar, "we don't know if 'slingshot' was a confused attempt to outlaw slungshots, but it's a good guess."[991]

Today we think of actual slingshots as children's toys, as famously carried by mischievous cartoon character Dennis the Menace. Dennis was not inclined to "malicious mischief," but if he had been, the expected result would have been a broken window or a dead bird. However, a slingshot can also be a formidable weapon.

In the legions of classical Rome, the legionnaire soldier was expected to be proficient with a sling and a rock. Every Roman soldier carried a sling. So if a soldier's sword were lost or broken in combat, he could still use the sling.[992]

The Bible story of the young shepherd David killing the giant Goliath with a sling reflects the typicality of slings as combat weapon in ancient times.[993]

To be sure, a "slingshot" is not a "sling." But a powerful slingshot hurling a rock is certainly a weapon that can be, and has been, used for hunting, for defense, and for offense.

The following statutes restricted "slingshots." Whether they were meant to apply to slungshots or to slingshots is unknown.

No concealed carry. Wisconsin (1887),[994] Mississippi (1896),[995] (1898);[996] Maryland (1872) (in Annapolis);[997] Washington (1886);[998] Colorado (1891);[999] South Carolina (1897).[1000]

No sales to minors. North Carolina (1893).[1001]

Authorizing municipal regulation. Michigan (1891) (Saginaw, concealed carry);[1002] Nebraska (1895) (Lincoln, concealed carry).[1003]

---

[991] ESCOBAR, *supra* note __, at 105.

[992] Heather Pringle, *Ancient Slingshot Was as Deadly as a .44 Magnum: An excavation in Scotland shows that Roman soldiers used lead ammo with lethal accuracy*, NAT'L GEOGRAPHIC, May 23, 2017, https://www.nationalgeographic.com/history/article/ancient-slingshot-lethal-44-magnum-scotland.

[993] 1 Samuel 17.

[994] 1887 Wis. Sess. Laws 1308, ch. 4.

[995] 1896 Miss. Laws 109–10, ch. 104.

[996] 1898 Miss. Laws 86, ch 68.

[997] 1872 Md. Laws 57, ch. 43.

[998] 1885–86 Wash. Terr. Laws 81–82.

[999] 1891 Colo. Sess. Laws 129.

[1000] 1897 S.C. Acts 423, no. 251.

[1001] *See* text at note___,

[1002] *See* text at note___,

[1003] *See* text at note___,

If the laws applied to actual slingshots, they fit into the mainstream established by Bowie knife laws. There were no prohibitions on possession, open carry, or sales to adults. If the laws applied to slungshots, they add to the total of states with standard restrictions, rather than prohibitions on sales.

3. Sand Clubs

A sand club is a small bag of sand attached to a short handle.[1004] A sand club is also called a "sand bag" or "sandbag." If a sand club is filled with something other than sand, such as lead pellets, it might be called a "blackjack" or a "sap." All these clubs were often carried by law enforcement officers.

One advantage for either law enforcement or criminal use is that a sand club does not leave a mark on the target.[1005] The "ability here outstrips that of saps, jacks, slungshots and all their variations" because of the soft load.[1006]

The sand club "might be the only easily adjustable impact weapon known to man. . . If you want up its destructive capabilities . . . just add water. Wet sand weighs more."[1007]

The only specific state laws we found on these arms were bans on carry with intent to injure. Maryland (1882) ("sand-club");[1008] Michigan (1891) (Saginaw, concealed carry, "sand bag").[1009] The pervasive law enforcement use was perhaps an indicia that responsible citizens might choose similar arms.

[1004] "A long sausage-shaped bag of sand used as a weapon." ERIC PARTRIDGE, A DICTIONARY OF SLANG AND UNCONVENTIONAL ENGLISH (1971). *See also* ESCOBAR, *supra* note __, at 19 ("a sand-club, formed by filling an eel-skin with sand"), quoting 1 THE LONDON MEDICAL RECORD 576 (Ernest Abraham Hart ed., 1873) (describing an 1871 homicide in San Francisco).

Like other flexible impact weapons other than the slungshot, a sand club is sometimes called a "sap." For example, in a 1983 case,

> Officer Casey testified that at first he thought the object, which was very common in the North Park area of Pittsburgh, was a "sap." That is, a sock filled with sand that when swung, according to the officer, was "almost a stone, and [if] you hit somebody in the side of the head or temple with it, you'll kill him. It's a very effective weapon."

Commonwealth v. Hook, 313 Pa. Super. 1, 459 A.2d 379, 384 n.2 (1983) (Popovich, J., dissenting).

[1005] ESCOBAR, *supra* note __, at 19, 21.

[1006] *Id.* at 21.

[1007] *Id.*

[1008] *See* text at note___,

[1009] *See* text at note___,

4. Blackjacks

Blackjack laws begin to appear in the last quarter of the nineteenth century. The dating indicates that the statutes were referring to the modern blackjack.[1010]

The "classic modern blackjack" is "a coil spring body with cylindrical shaped head and a hard load. As such this focuses the impact into a small area and loses the soft sap's lower peak force distribution."[1011] The "blackjack" is distinct from the broader, earlier nineteenth century use of "jack" to refer to all sorts of flexible impact weapons.

The blackjack became "a police constant for about 100 years."[1012] "Policemen's uniforms in the U.S. had a special pocket where they were stored."[1013] Theodore Roosevelt carried one when he was Police Commissioner of New York City, and when he was President of the United States.[1014]

Blackjacks were favored by law enforcement officers for the same reasons that officers liked saps and jacks in general:

> [E]ven in the days when law enforcement had much freer rein than today, stabbing a suspect with a knife you technically should or should not have had on you was going to be a problem. Shooting him would be even more complicated. By process of elimination we can understand how saps became the go to backup tool for an officer. At least you were already officially issued a club . . . In this way saps came to straddle that unique middle ground between law and lawless that was their place for so long.[1015]

[1010] *Id.* at 85. But confusingly, "Later authors apparently then applied the term retroactively to all kinds of saps. . . ." *Id.* In San Francisco, "unlike elsewhere," "the term slungshot" was "applied almost universally" to blackjacks. *Id.* at 101.

[1011] *Id.* at 127. Yet "there were modern blackjacks with other methods of construction," according to very early twentieth century order forms, and some of these variants were still being made in the 1970s. *Id.*

[1012] *Id.* at 135.

[1013] *Id.* at 11.

[1014] R.L. WILSON & GREGORY C. WILSON, THEODORE ROOSEVELT: OUTDOORSMAN 138 (1971).

[1015] ESCOBAR, *supra* note __, at 105–06.

Starting in 1881, New York banned sale or manufacture, with a police exemption that Roosevelt used.[1016] The New York law was eccentric. Other jurisdictions that specifically regulated blackjacks imposed lesser restrictions.

No concealed carry. North Carolina (Alleghany County, 1877),[1017] statewide (1879);[1018] Maryland (1886);[1019] D.C. (1892); Rhode Island (1893);[1020] Maryland (1894) (unless reasonable cause).[1021]

Carrying concealed created a presumption that the weapon was being carried for use against another person. New York (1866);[1022] Michigan (1887).[1023]

No carry. Tennessee (1879);[1024] Oklahoma (1890),[1025] (1893).[1026]

Limiting Sales to Minors. Oklahoma (1890),[1027] (1893);[1028] New York (1889).[1029]

5. Billies vs. Billy clubs

A "billy" or "billie" can be confusing. They are not the same as a "billy club." "A policeman's old fashioned billy club was usually a solid piece of turned hardwood."[1030] In contrast, "the words billie and billet were used for saps and blackjacks in particular from the late nineteenth century to early in the 20th century."[1031]

Specific laws were as follows:

[1016] 1881 N.Y. Laws 102; 1884 N.Y. Laws 46, ch. 46, § 7; 1889 N.Y. Laws 167, ch. 140; 1899 N.Y. Laws 1341, ch. 603.

[1017] 1876-1877 N.C. Sess. Laws 162–63, ch. 104.

[1018] 1879 N.C. Sess. Laws 231, ch. 127.

[1019] 1866 Md. Laws 602, ch. 375.

[1020] 1893 R.I. Laws 231–32, ch. 1880, sec. 1.

[1021] 1894 Md. Laws 834 (1894).

[1022] 1866 N.Y. Laws 1523, ch. 716.

[1023] 1887 Mich. Acts 144, No. 129.

[1024] 1879 Tenn. Pub. Acts 231, ch. 86, sec. 1.

[1025] 1890 Okla. Terr. Laws 495.

[1026] 1893 Okla. Terr. Laws 503.

[1027] 1890 Okla. Terr. Laws 495.

[1028] 1893 Okla. Terr. Laws 503.

[1029] 1889 N.Y. Laws 167, ch. 140.

[1030] ESCOBAR, *supra* note __, at 9.

[1031] *Id.* at 226. *See id.* at 3 (Describing a 1910 hardware store catalogue: "Notice that the sap and blackjacks are just called billies." The slungshot has a separate heading.).

Ban on carry with intent to injure. Maryland (1882) (billy).[1032]

No concealed carry. Rhode Island (1893) (billy), Michigan (1897).[1033]

No carry, with some exceptions. Okla. Terr. (1890) (billy).[1034]

Authorizing municipal regulation. Michigan (1891) (Saginaw, concealed carry, "billie");[1035] Nebraska (1895) (Lincoln, concealed carry, billy).[1036]

C. Rigid impact weapons

1. Knuckles

Knuckles are devices attached to one's second through fifth fingers to make the fist a more powerful weapon. They can be made of brass, other metals, or non-metallic material.[1037]

Abraham Lincoln's friend, the lawyer Ward Hill Lamon, served as his bodyguard for Lincoln's midnight train ride into Washington, D.C., to assume the presidency. Lamon carried a pair of "fine pistols, a huge bowie knife, a black-jack, and a pair of brass knuckles."[1038]

Six states banned sales, and some of them also banned manufacture. Vermont (1849);[1039] Massachusetts (1850);[1040] Kentucky ("brass knuckles" 1856);[1041] Florida ("metallic knuckles") (1868),[1042] (1893);[1043] New York ("metal

---

[1032] *See* text at note___,

[1033] 1897 Mich. Acts 1030, sec. 15.

[1034] *See* text at note___,

[1035] 1891 Mich. Acts 409, no. 257.

[1036] *See* text at note___,

[1037] Knuckles are "fashioned from a single piece of metal." ESCOBAR, *supra* note __, a 9. They are descendants of the *cestus*, a glove worn by Greek and Roman boxers, sometimes loaded with a weight. *Id.* at 199; *cf.* VIRGIL, THE AENEID, book 5 ("The gloves of death—with seven distinguished folds Of tough bulls' hides; the space within is spread With iron or heavy loads of lead."), *in* 14 THE WORKS OF JOHN DRYDEN (1808) (Dryden's translation of the Aeneid).

[1038] HAROLD HOLZER, LINCOLN PRESIDENT-ELECT: ABRAHAM LINCOLN AND THE GREAT SECESSION WINTER 1860-1861, at 391 (2008).

[1039] 1849 Vt. Acts & Resolves 26.

[1040] 1850 Mass. Acts 401, ch. 194.

[1041] 1856 Ky. Acts 96, ch. 636.

[1042] 1868 FL Laws 95, ch. 7, sec. 11.

[1043] 1893 FL Laws 52, ch. 4124.

knuckles") (1881),[1044] (1889),[1045] (1899);[1046] Arkansas (1881) ("metal knuckles").[1047]

The Kentucky ban was later repealed.[1048] Only Illinois outlawed possession for adults (1881),[1049] (1893).[1050] Kansas included knuckles in the long list of arms, other than rifles and shotguns, for which possession by minors was forbidden (1882).[1051]

The majority approach was nonprohibitory:

No concealed carry. D.C. (1871) ("brass or other metal knuckles");[1052] Maryland 1872 (for Annapolis, "brass, iron, or other metal knuckles");[1053] Wisconsin (unless with reasonable cause) ("brass knuckles") (1872);[1054] Alabama ("brass knuckles") (1873);[1055] North Carolina (1877, Alleghany County, "brass, iron or metallic knuckles") (1879, statewide);[1056] Mississippi (1878),[1057] (1896),[1058] (1898)[1059] "brass or metallic knuckles"); Washington Terr. (1886);[1060] Michigan (1887);[1061] Arizona Terr. (1893) ("brass knuckles, or other knuckles of metal");[1062] Rhode Island (1893) ("brass or metal knuckles"); South Carolina (1897).[1063]

Carrying concealed created a presumption that the weapon was being carried for use against another person. Illinois ("steel or iron knuckles")

[1044] 1881 N.Y. Laws 102.
[1045] 1889 N.Y. Laws 167, ch. 140.
[1046] 1899 N.Y. Laws 1341, ch. 603.
[1047] *See* text at note___,
[1048] Text at notes *supra*.
[1049] 1881 Ill. Laws 73.
[1050] 1893 Ill. Laws 477–78.
[1051] *See* text at note___,
[1052] *See* text at note___,
[1053] *See* text at note___,
[1054] 1872 Wis. Sess. Laws 17, ch.7.
[1055] 1873 Ala. Laws 130–31, no. 87.
[1056] *See* text at note___,
[1057] *See* text at note___,
[1058] 1896 Mich. Pub. Acts 109, ch. 104.
[1059] 1898 Mich. Pub. Acts 86, ch. 68.
[1060] 1885-86 Wash. Terr. Laws 82.
[1061] 1887 Mich. Pub. Acts 144, no. 129.
[1062] 1893 Ariz. Sess. Laws 3, no 2.
[1063] 1897 S.C. Acts 450–52, no. 251.

(1874),[1064] (1879);[1065] New York ("metal knuckles") (1866),[1066] (1881);[1067] South Carolina ("metal knuckles") (1880).[1068]

No carry in most circumstances. Texas (1871) ("brass-knuckles");[1069] Arizona Terr. (1889) ("brass knuckles" "within any settlement, town, village or city");[1070] Okla. Terr. (1890) ("metal knuckles").[1071]

No carry by minors. Ariz. Terr. (1883) ("brass-knuckles," ages 10–16, in towns).[1072]

No sales to minors. Indiana (1875) ("knucks");[1073] Kansas (1882) (also banning possession by minors, "brass knuckles");[1074] West Virginia (1882);[1075] Texas (1897) (parental permission, "knuckles made or any metal or hard substance").[1076] No transfer to minors. Oklahoma (1890).[1077] No sales to a minor without written consent of a police magistrate. New York (1889).[1078]

Authorizing municipal regulation. Illinois (1867) (Bloomington, concealed carry, "cross knuckles, or knuckles of brass, lead or other metal");[1079] Wisconsin (1874–91) (concealed carry, "cross knuckles, or knuckles of lead, brass or other metal");[1080] Michigan (1891) (Saginaw, concealed carry, "false knuckles" [non-metallic]);[1081] Nebraska (1895) (Lincoln, concealed carry, "metal knuckles").[1082]

[1064] 1874 Ill. Laws 360, ch. 38, sec. 56.

[1065] REVISED STATUTES OF THE STATE OF ILLINOIS, 1880, at 365 (Harvey B. Hurd ed., 1880).

[1066] 1866 N.Y. Laws 1523, ch. 716.

[1067] 1881 N.Y. Laws 102.

[1068] 1880 S.C. Acts 448, no. 362.

[1069] *See* text at note___,

[1070] 1889 Ariz. Terr. Laws 30.

[1071] *See* text at note___,

[1072] *See* text at note___,

[1073] *See* text at note___,

[1074] *See* text at note___,

[1075] *See* text at note___,

[1076] *See* text at note___,

[1077] 1890 Okla. Terr. Laws 495, art. 47, sec. 3.

[1078] 1889 NY Laws 167, ch. 140.

1893 Fla. Laws 51, 52, ch. 4124.

Whoever manufactures, or causes to be manufactured, or sells or exposes for sale any instrument or weapon of the kind, usually known as slung shot, or metallic knuckles, shall be punished by imprisonment not exceeding three months, or by Penalty.

[1079] *See* text at note___,

[1080] *See* text at note___,

[1081] *See* text at note___,

[1082] *See* text at note___,

License required to sell. South Carolina ("metal knuckles") (1891).[1083]

While the statutes varied in what kind of "knuckles" were illegal, a Texas court ruled that "brass knuckles" encompassed knuckles made of steel or other materials.[1084]

Throughout this article we have focused on laws that named specific weapons. However, it should be recognized that many laws, particularly those involving public carry, had catch-all phrases such as "other deadly weapon." These laws might encompass weapons not named in the statute. Such a law against concealed carry in Missouri was held to encompass "a pair of brass knucks."[1085]

Consistent with the express text of the Missouri state constitution, the Missouri Court of Appeals said that *concealed* carry of knuckles was not part of the right to arms.[1086] Alabama's statute against concealed carry had an exception for carrying a firearm or knife with good reason to apprehend an attack. Defendant had indisputably been carrying knuckles because of danger of imminent attack, but his conviction was upheld, because the statutory exception allowing concealed carry did not include knuckles. The Alabama Supreme Court held that the trial court:

> did not err in ruling that this provision did not embrace brass knuckles, slung-shots, or weapons of like kind. . . . The carrying concealed of a barbarous weapon of this class, which is usually the instrument of an assassin, and an index of a murderous heart, is absolutely prohibited by section 3776 of the Criminal Code of

[1083] 1891 S.C. Acts 1101–02, no. 703.

[1084] Harris v. State, 22 Tex. App. 677, 3 S.W. 477 (1887).

[1085] State v. Hall, 20 Mo. App. 397 (1886) (statute prohibited concealed carry of "fire arms, bowie knife, dirk, dagger, slungshot, or other deadly weapon").

[1086] A St. Louis ordinance forbade concealed carry without a permit of "cross-knuckles, or knuckles of lead, brass or other metal." "In the constitution the citizen has many priceless rights guaranteed to him; but unluckily for appellant, the 'right' to carry concealed in his hip pocket knuckles of brass, a weapon of dangerous and deadly character, is not a "right' protected by any constitutional guaranty." City of St. Louis v. Vert, 84 Mo. 204, 209 (1884); Mo. Const. of 1875, art. II, § 17 ("[T]he right of no citizen to keep and bear arms in defense of his home, person and property, or in aid of the civil power, when thereto legally summoned, shall be called in question; but nothing herein contained is intended to justify the practice of wearing concealed weapons.").

this state. The law does not recognize it as a weapon of self-defense.[1087]

2. Loaded Canes

A loaded cane has a hollowed section filled with lead.[1088] It is a powerful impact weapon.[1089]

No concealed carry. N.C. 1877 (Alleghany County),[1090] 1879 (statewide).[1091]

No carry in most circumstances. Tennessee (1821),[1092] (1870),[1093] (1879) ("sword cane" or "loaded cane");[1094] Oklahoma Terr. (1893).[1095]

No disposing to a minor. N.C. (1879).[1096]

D. Cannons

As detailed in Part II.F, the laws of the colonial and Founding laws presumed personally owned cannons. Under the Constitution, cannons were necessary so that Congress could "grant Letters of Marque and Reprisal."[1097] Such letters were granted during the War of 1812.[1098] Cannons were advertised for sale in an 1813 newspaper ad in Newport, Rhode Island, one of America's busiest seaports.[1099]

[1087] Bell v. State, 89 Ala. 61, 8 So. 133 (1890).

[1088] Harry Schenawolf, *Loaded Cane – How Revolutionary War Officers and Gentlemen Protected Themselves from Drunken Soldiers and Muggings*, REVOLUTIONARY WAR J., June 28, 2019, https://www.revolutionarywarjournal.com/loaded-cane-how-revolutionary-war-officers-and-gentlemen-dealt-with-drunken-soldiers-and-riff-raff/.

[1089] *Id.*

[1090] 1877 N.C. Sess. Laws 162–63, ch. 104.

[1091] 1879 N.C. Sess. Laws ch. 127, p. 231.

[1092] 1821 Tenn. Pub. Acts 15, ch. 13.

[1093] 1870 Tenn. Pub. Acts 55, ch. 41.

[1094] 1879 Tenn. Pub. Acts 231, ch. 86.

[1095] 1893 Okla. Sess. Laws 503, art. 45.

[1096] 1893 N.C. Sess. Laws 468–69, ch. 514.

[1097] U.S. CONST., art. I, § 8.

[1098] 2 Stat. 755 (1812). The privateers "were of incalculable benefit to us, and inflicted enormous damage" on Great Britain. THEODORE ROOSEVELT, THE NAVAL WAR OF 1812, at 416 (1882).

[1099] *The Rhode-Island Republican. [volume]* (Newport, R.I.), June 10, 1813, https://chroniclingamerica.loc.gov/lccn/sn83025561/1813-06-10/ed-1/seq-4/.

Case 4:23-cv-00547-O Document 20-3 Filed 10/06/23 Page 380 of 462 PageID 1053

An international declaration in 1856 prohibited signatory nations from issuing letters of marque and reprisal.[1100] The United States chose not to join. During the Civil War, the Confederacy issued letters of marque and reprisal.[1101] The Spanish-American War of 1898, like previous naval wars, generated cases about the ownership of prizes.[1102]

On the land, legislation provided rules for cannon owners. The 1881 Pennsylvania legislature made it a misdemeanor to "knowingly and willfully sell" to buyers "under sixteen years of age, any cannon, revolver, pistol or other such deadly weapon."[1103] By implication, sales of cannons to persons 16 and over was legal.

Most cannon laws nineteenth-century cannon laws prevented people from firing cannons in certain locations, typically public ones. In 1844, Ohio forbade anyone to "fire any cannon . . . upon any public street or highway, or nearer than ten rods to the same," "except in case of invasion by a foreign enemy or to suppress insurrections or mobs, or for the purpose of raising drowned human bodies, or for the purpose of blasting or removing rocks."[1104]

Other localities also prevented people from firing cannons in certain locations. Northern Liberties Township, Pennsylvania (1815),[1105] Cincinnati,

---

[1100] Paris Declaration respecting Maritime Law, art. 1 (1856) ("Privateering is and remains abolished."). Later, the United States announced it would comply with the Declaration, even the U.S. has never formally joined the Declaration.

[1101] COOPERSTEIN, *supra* note __, at 246. Congress in 1863 passed and President Lincoln signed a law authorizing privateering for three years, but no letters were granted. *See* 12 Stat. 758 (1863); Nicholas Parrillo, *The De-Privatization of American Warfare: How the U.S. Government Used, Regulated, and Ultimately Abandoned Privateering in the Nineteenth Century*, 19 YALE J.L. & HUMANITIES 1, 72–73 (2007).

[1102] The Paquete Habana, 175 U.S. 677 (1900) (applying customary international law that coastal fishing vessels may not be seized).

For contemporary arguments in favor of issuing letters of marque and reprisal against pirates around Somalia, see Todd Emerson Hutchins, Comment, *Structuring a Sustainable Letters of Marque Regime: How Commissioning Privateers Can Defeat The Somali Pirates*, 99 CALIF. L. REV. 819 (2011); Joshua Stauba, *Letters of Marque: A Short-Term Solution to an Age Old Problem*, 40 J. MAR. L. & COM. 261 (2009).

[1103] 1881 Pa. Laws 111, no. 124.

[1104] 1844 Ohio Laws 17, sec. 1.

[1105] A DIGEST OF ACTS OF ASSEMBLY, RELATING TO THE INCORPORATED DISTRICT OF THE NORTHERN LIBERTIES 94 (1847) ("within the regulated parts . . . in said township, without permission from the president of the board of commissioners").

Ohio (1828),[1106] Jersey City, New Jersey (1843),[1107] St. Louis, Missouri (1843),[1108] Detroit, Michigan (1848),[1109] Dayton, Ohio (1855),[1110] Peoria, Illinois (1856),[1111] (1869),[1112] Chicago, Illinois (1861),[1113] San Francisco, California (1869),[1114] Meriden, Connecticut (1869),[1115] Dover, New Hampshire (1870),[1116] Little Rock, Arkansas (1871),[1117] Martinsburg, West Virginia

---

1106 ACT INCORPORATING THE CITY OF CINCINNATI, AND THE ORDINANCES OF SAID CITY NOW IN FORCE 43 (1828) ("within the limits of said city"); *id.* at 43–44 ("It shall not be lawful for any person or persons having charge or being on board of any boat upon the Ohio river . . . to cause any cannon . . . to discharge its contents towards the city").

1107 ORDINANCES OF JERSEY CITY 9 (1844) ("within this city . . . unless in defense of his property or person").

1108 THE REVISED ORDINANCES OF THE CITY OF SAINT LOUIS, REVISED AND DIGESTED BY THE FIFTH CITY COUNCIL 304 (1843) ("within the city").

1109 THE REVISED CHARTER AND ORDINANCES OF THE CITY OF DETROIT 199 (1855) ("within this city, unless by permission of the Mayor or two Aldermen").

1110 LAWS AND GENERAL ORDINANCES OF THE CITY OF DAYTON 229 (1862) ("within the bounds of the building lots, or cemetery ground in this city, or within one hundred yards of any public road, within this corporation, except by permission of council").

1111 THE CITY CHARTER, WITH THE SEVERAL LAWS AMENDATORY THERETO, AND THE REVISED ORDINANCES, OF THE CITY OF PEORIA, ILLINOIS 168 (James M. Cunningham ed., 1857) ("in said city, without permission from the mayor or city marshal").

1112 THE CITY CHARTER AND THE REVISED ORDINANCES OF THE CITY OF PEORIA, ILLINOIS 254 (James M. Cunningham ed., 1869) ("in said city, without permission from the mayor or superintendent of police").

1113 1861 Ill. Private Laws 144, sec. 78 ("within the city limits . . . without permission from the mayor or common council").

1114 THE GENERAL ORDERS OF THE BOARD OF SUPERVISORS, CITY AND COUNTY OF SAN FRANCISCO 13 (1869) ("within that portion of this city and county lying between Larkin and Ninth Streets and the outer line of the streets forming the water-front, except by special permission").

1115 THE CHARTER AND BY-LAWS OF THE CITY OF MERIDEN 135 (1875) ("within the limits of said city").

1116 THE CHARTER, WITH ITS AMENDMENTS AND THE GENERAL ORDINANCES OF THE CITY OF DOVER 32 (1870) ("within the compact part of any town").

1117 A DIGEST OF THE LAWS AND ORDINANCES OF THE CITY OF LITTLE ROCK 231 (George E. Dodge & John H. Cherry eds, 1871) ("No person shall fire or discharge any cannon . . . without permission from the may which permission shall limit the time of such firing, and shall be subject to be revoked by the mayor at any time after it has been granted.").

(1875),[1118] La Crosse, Wisconsin (1881),[1119] Lynchburg, Virginia (1887),[1120] and Lincoln, Nebraska (1895).[1121]

These regulations indicate both that private citizens possessed cannons and that they were common enough to place limitations on where they could be fired.

The obvious dangers of firing a cannon in town are justifications for the discharge restrictions. The near-complete absence of any other restrictions in the nineteenth century might be explained by great rarity of use of cannons in crime. Cannons are often fixed in a single location, such as a rooftop. If wheeled, they must be slowly moved by draft animals. It would seem difficult for criminals to make use of them.[1122]

VII. Doctrinal Analysis

This Part offers doctrinal suggestions based on the legal history above.

- Part A summarizes bans on sales or possession of particular arms.
- Part B describes the constitutional background following the adoption of the Fourteenth Amendment; notwithstanding clear congressional intent to make the Bill of Rights enforceable against the States, the Supreme Court held that States could disregard the Bill of Rights, including the Second Amendment.

[1118] Ordinances and By-laws of the Corporation of Martinsburg, Berkeley Co., West Virginia 25 (1875) ("within such parts of the town which are or shall be laid out into lots, or within two hundred yards of said limits").

[1119] Charter and Ordinances of the City of La Crosse 202 (1888) ("within the limits of the city of La Crosse, without having first obtained written permission from the mayor").

[1120] The Code of the City of Lynchburg, Va 116 (Thomas D. Davis ed., 1887) ("in the city" or "within one hundred yards of any dwelling-house without the consent of the owner or occupant of such house").

[1121] 1895 Neb. Laws 238, art. 26, sec. 8 ("in any street, avenue, alley, park, or place, within the corporate limits of the city").

[1122] Mortars are a different story. They are short tubes and man-portable. The rear sits on the ground and the front is elevated by legs, such as a bipod. Some of the above laws also covered mortars. The absence of legislative attention, other than discharge restrictions for inappropriate places, may, as with cannons, be the result of the rarity of criminal use. We guess that few criminals were interested in bombarding fortified buildings.

- Part C applies legal history to two core Second Amendment doctrines. First, *Heller*'s affirmation on prohibitions of "dangerous and unusual weapons." Second, the *Bruen* question of how many jurisdictions make a precedential "tradition."
- Part D applies history and doctrine to four specific issues:
  - First, the historical bans on slungshots and knuckles might be justifiable under *Heller*'s allowance of bans on arms "not typically possessed by law-abiding citizens."
  - Second, bans on modern semiautomatic firearms and magazines lack historical support.
  - As for minors, the final third of the nineteenth century provides substantial support for limitations on purchases by minors of some arms without parental consent. The tradition of restrictions on minors does not support modern long gun bans for young adults, 18–20.
  - Finally, penalties for misuse of a particular arm in a violent crime are supported by tradition. They do not involve activity that is protected by the Second Amendment.

A. Summary of possession or sales bans

From 1607 through 1899, American bans on possession or sale to adults of particular arms are uncommon. For firearms, the bans are:

- Georgia (1837), all handguns except horse pistols.[1123] Held unconstitutional in *Nunn v. State*.[1124]
- Tennessee (1879)[1125] and Arkansas (1881).[1126] Bans on sales of concealable handguns. Based on militia-centric interpretations of the state constitutions, the laws did not ban the largest and most powerful revolvers, namely those like the Army or Navy models.

[1123] *See* text at note ____.
[1124] *See* text at note ____.
[1125] *See* text at note ____.
[1126] *See* text at note ____.

Case 4:23-cv-00547-O Document 20-3 Filed 10/06/23 Page 384 of 462 PageID 1057

- Florida (1893).[1127] Discretionary licensing and an exorbitant licensing fee for repeating rifles. The law was "never intended to be applied to the white population" and "conceded to be in contravention of the Constitution and non-enforceable if contested."[1128]

For some nonfirearms arms, several states enacted sales bans:

- Bowie knife. Sales bans Georgia, Tennessee, and later in Arkansas.[1129] Georgia ban held to violate the Second Amendment.[1130] Prohibitive transfer or occupational vendor taxes in Alabama and Florida, which were repealed.[1131] Personal property taxes at levels high enough to discourage possession by poor people in Mississippi, Alabama, and North Carolina.[1132]
- Dirk. Georgia (1837) (held to violate Second Amendment);[1133] Arkansas (1881).[1134]
- Sword cane. Georgia (1837), held to violate the Second Amendment.[1135] Arkansas (1881).[1136]
- Slungshot or "colt." Sales bans in nine states or territories.[1137] The Kentucky ban was later repealed.[1138] Illinois also banned possession.[1139]
- Metallic knuckles. Sales bans in six states, later repealed in Kentucky.[1140] Illinois also banned possession.[1141]
- Sand club or blackjack. New York (1881).[1142]

[1127] *See* text at note ____.
[1128] *See* text at note ____.
[1129] *See* text at note ____.
[1130] *See* text at note ____.
[1131] *See* text at note ____.
[1132] *See* text at note ____.
[1133] *See* text at note ____.
[1134] *See* text at note ____.
[1135] *See* text at note ____.
[1136] *See* text at note ____.
[1137] *See* text at note ____.
[1138] *See* text at note ____.
[1139] *See* text at note ____.
[1140] *See* text at note ____.
[1141] *See* text at note ____.
[1142] *See* text at note ____.

B. The constitutional and racial background of possession or sales bans

The legal background of the laws discussed above was very different than it is today. The Supreme Court in *Barron v. Baltimore* had said that the Bill of Rights was not binding on the states.[1143] Some state courts, which Akhil Amar calls "the *Barron* contrarians," had taken a different view.[1144] These include the Georgia Supreme Court in *Nunn v. State*, which used the Second Amendment to overturn a statute prohibiting handguns, Bowie knives, and various other arms. [1145]

After the Civil War, the Fourteenth Amendment was ratified, with express congressional intent to make the Bill of Rights, specifically including the Second Amendment, enforceable against the States, as among the "privileges or immunities of citizens of the United States."[1146] But the U.S. Supreme Court mostly nullified the Privilege or Immunities Clause in the *Slaughterhouse Cases*.[1147] The Court's decisions in *United States v. Cruikshank*[1148] and *Presser v. Illinois*[1149] had seemed to many to affirm the *Slaughterhouse* approach specifically for Second Amendment rights.

The idea that the Fourteenth Amendment's Due Process Clause might "incorporate" individual elements in the Bill of Rights did not appear until the Court's 1897 incorporation of the Fifth Amendment Takings Clause in *Chicago, Burlington & Quincy Railroad Company v. Chicago*.[1150] It took the Court until the 1920s to begin "selective incorporation" of parts of the First Amendment, until the 1940s to begin incorporating the criminal law and procedure provisions of Amendments Four, Five, Six, and Eight, until 2010 to incorporate the Second Amendment,[1151] and 2019 to incorporate the Excessive Fines Clause of the Eighth Amendment.[1152] So in the nineteenth century, reasonable legislators might believe they had no obligation to respect anything in the U.S. Bill of Rights, including the Second Amendment.

[1143] 32 U.S. 2 (7 Pet.) 43 (1833)
[1144] AMAR, at __.
[1145] *See* text at note ____.
[1146] *McDonald*, 561 U.S. at 838–60 (Thomas, J., concurring).
[1147] 83 U.S. (16 Wall.) 36 (1873).
[1148] 92 U.S. (2 Otto) 542 (1875).
[1149] 116 U.S. 252 (1886).
[1150] 166 U.S. 226 (1897).
[1151] McDonald v. City of Chicago, 561 U.S. 742 (2010).
[1152] Timbs v. Indiana, 139 S.Ct. 682 (2019).

Many states had their own state constitution guarantees of the right to keep and bear arms.[1153] But New York did not, and that is a partial explanation of its eccentric ban on the sale or manufacture of blackjacks and sand clubs.[1154] The other most prohibitive states were Tennessee and Arkansas, with their bans on sales of all handguns except the most powerful ones, the Army & Navy type revolvers.[1155] Both states also banned sales of Bowie knives, and Arkansas did the same for sword canes.[1156] In both states, the supreme courts had interpreted the state constitutional right to arms as solely applicable to militia-suitable arms.[1157]

Even with a militia-centric premise, the Tennessee and Arkansas legislatures and courts were incorrect. The Tennessee Supreme Court in *Aymette* had upheld a statute against Bowie knives on the grounds that such knives are not militia-type arms.[1158] The 1836 Texas War of Independence and the 1861–65 Civil War decisively proved the opposite. Indeed, the Tennessee legislature suspended the Bowie knife law for the duration of the Civil War.[1159] During the war, the Alabama legislature, having used property taxes to discourage Bowie ownership, had to pay for manufacturing Bowie knives of the state militia.[1160]

Overall, restrictions on the right to keep and bear arms in the nineteenth century were most frequent in slave states that later became Jim Crow states.[1161] The modern precedential value of these white supremacy laws may be limited.[1162]

[1153] *See* JOHNSON ET AL., *supra* note 16, at 791–804 (texts of all state guarantees, and years of enactment).

[1154] In 1909, the legislature enacted a statutory Bill of Rights, including a verbatim copy of the Second Amendment. N.Y. Civil Rights L, § 4; 1909 N.Y.L. ch. 14. As a mere statute, it could not override any other statute the legislature chose to enact.

[1155] *See* text at note ____.

[1156] *See* text at note ____.

[1157] *See* text at note ____.

[1158] *See* text at note ____.

[1159] *See* text at note ____.

[1160] *See* text at note ____.

[1161] *See* text at note ____.

[1162] *See* Justin W. Aimonetti & Christian Talley*, Race, Ramos, and the Second Amendment Standard of Review,* 107 VA. L. REV. ONLINE 193 (2021) (arguing that Jim Crow gun control laws are not valid precedents today).

This does not mean that all nineteenth century arms control laws were entirely racist. In the slave/Jim Crow states, laws that disarmed poor whites as well as blacks were enacted.[1163]

A good refutation of the notion that *every* arms control laws is necessarily racist is the law of Massachusetts. During the nineteenth century, the state Constitution right to arms was interpreted in the standard way, as an important but not unlimited right of all people.[1164] The Massachusetts right was interpreted to protect the rights of everyone to own and carry arms. Unlike some restrictive Southern cases, Massachusetts courts never claimed that only militia-type arms were protected.[1165] A person's right to bear arms could be restricted if a court found that the person had been carrying in a manner leading to a breach of the peace. If so, the person could only continue to carry if he posted a bond.

Massachusetts was always a leading anti-slavery state and was the first state in which the highest court held slavery to violate the state constitution. By the end of the nineteenth century, Massachusetts was the only state that had *not* outlawed at least some interracial marriages.[1166] In anti-racist Massachusetts, the right to own and carry arms was necessarily respected. *And* Massachusetts was an early adopter of a ban on sales of slungshots and brass knuckles.[1167]

The Massachusetts story does not prove or disprove the wisdom of sales bans on slungshots and brass knuckles. It does disprove the notion that *all* historic arms control laws were motivated by racial animus.

[1163] For example, the laws in some southeastern states imposed relatively high annual property taxes on owning Bowie knives or handguns. The Tennessee and Arkansas bans on sales of handguns other than the Army & Navy models favored people who could afford the largest and most powerful handguns. Many former officers of the Confederate military had retained their service handguns; then as now, military officers tend to be disproportionately from the better-educated and wealthier classes. So were cavalrymen, which is to say men who could afford to bring their own horse to military service. A former Confederate infantry private likely retained his service musket, but he would not necessarily be able to afford the most expensive type of modern handguns.

[1164] Mass. Const. of 1780, pt. 1, art. XVII.

[1165] *See*, *e.g.*, Commonwealth v. Murphy, 44 N.E. 138 (Mass. 1896) (upholding ban on armed parades without advancing permission, citing to state cases that states may regulate the mode of carry); Commonwealth v. Blanding, 3 Pick. 304 (Mass. 1825) ("The liberty of the press was to be unrestrained, but he who used it was to be responsible in case of its abuse; like the right to keep fire arms, which does not protect him who uses them for annoyance or destruction.)

[1166] PEGGY PASCOE, WHAT COMES NATURALLY: MISCEGENATION LAW AND THE MAKING OF RACE IN AMERICA (2010).

[1167] *See* text at note ____.

C. Modern doctrines

1. "Dangerous and unusual" versus "not typically possessed by law-abiding citizens": The distinction applied to slungshots and brass knuckles.

Heller cited a litany of precedents for the prohibition of carrying certain arms. Some of the sources called such arms "dangerous and unusual" and others said "dangerous or unusual."[1168] From these precedents, *Heller*

[1168] *Heller* at 627, citing, in order: 4 WILLIAM BLACKSTONE, COMMENTARIES *148–49 (1769) ("The offence of riding or going armed, with dangerous or unusual weapons, is a crime against the public peace, by terrifying the good people of the land; and is particularly prohibited by the statute of Northampton, 2 Edw. III. c.3. upon pain of forfeiture of the arms, and imprisonment during the king's pleasure: in like manner as, by the laws of Solon, every Athenian was finable who walked about the city in armour."); 3 THE WORKS OF THE HONOURABLE JAMES WILSON 79 (Bird Wilson ed., 1804) ("In some cases, there may be an affray, where there is no actual violence; as where a man arms himself with dangerous and unusual weapons, in such a manner, as will naturally diffuse a terrour among the people."); JOHN A. DUNLAP, THE NEW-YORK JUSTICE 8 (1815) ("It is likewise said to be an affray, at common law, for a man to arm himself with dangerous and unusual weapons, in such manner as will naturally cause terror to the people."); CHARLES HUMPHREYS, COMPENDIUM OF THE COMMON LAW IN FORCE IN KENTUCKY 482 (1822) ("Riding or going armed with dangerous or unusual weapons, is a crime against the public peace, by terrifying the people of the land, which is punishable by forfeiture of the arms, and fine and imprisonment. But here it should be remembered, that in this country the constitution guarranties to all persons the right to bear arms; then it can only be a crime to exercise this right in such a manner, as to terrify the people unnecessarily."); 1 WILLIAM OLDNALL RUSSELL, A TREATISE ON CRIMES AND INDICTABLE MISDEMEANORS 271–72 (2d ed. 1831) ("as where people arm themselves with dangerous and unusual weapons; in such a manner as will naturally cause a terror to the people; which is said to have been always an offence at common law, and is strictly prohibited by several statutes."); HENRY J. STEPHEN, SUMMARY OF THE CRIMINAL LAW 48 (1840) ("Riding or going armed with dangerous or unusual Weapons" is "[b]y statute of Northampton, 2 Edw. III, c. 3, . . . a misdemeanor, punishable with forfeiture of the arms and imprisonment during the king's pleasure."); ELLIS LEWIS, AN ABRIDGMENT OF THE CRIMINAL LAW OF THE UNITED STATES 64 (1847) ("where persons openly arm themselves with dangerous and unusual weapons, in such a manner as will naturally cause a terror to the people, which is said to have been always an offence at common law, an affray may be committed without actual violence."); FRANCIS WHARTON, A TREATISE ON THE CRIMINAL LAW OF THE UNITED STATES 726 (2d ed. 1852) ("there may be an affray where there is no actual violence; as where a man arms himself with dangerous and unusual weapons, in such a manner as will naturally cause a terror to the people, which is said to have been always an offence at common law, and is strictly prohibited by the statute [Statute of Northampton]."); *State v. Langford*, 10 N.C. 381, 383–84 (1824) ("there may be an affray when there is no actual

extrapolated a rule that the government may forbid possession (not just carrying) of arms that are dangerous *and* unusual.[1169]

Bruen, noting some of the many nineteenth-century laws against concealed carry, inferred the principle that governments may regulate the *manner* of carry.[1170] That is, the government may require that carry be open rather than concealed (in compliance with nineteenth century sensibilities), or the government may require that carry be concealed rather than open (in compliance with modern sensibilities in some areas). As for the jurisdictions that prohibited *all* modes of handgun carry, the Court dismissed them as outliers.[1171]

We can synthesize two subrules from *Heller*'s dangerous and unusual rule and from *Bruen*'s modes of carry rule. Subrule 1: the types of arms for which possession can be prohibited can include those for which carry in every mode was historically prohibited. Subrule 2: in applying subrule 1, outlier jurisdictions that banned all modes of handgun carry are low-value precedents. The subrules provide some additional structure for "dangerous and unusual," and reduce judicial temptation to use the phrase for epithetical jurisprudence.[1172]

---

violence: as when a man arms himself with dangerous and unusual weapons, in such a manner as will naturally cause a terror to the people; which is said always to have been an offence at common law, and is strictly prohibited by statute."); *O'Neill v. State*, 16 Ala. 65, 67 (1849) ("It is probable, however, that if persons arm themselves with deadly or unusual weapons for the purpose of an affray, and in such manner as to strike terror to the people, they may be guilty of this offence, without coming to actual blows."); *English v. State*, 35 Tex. 473, 476–77 (1872) ("Blackstone says, the offense of riding or going round with dangerous or unusual weapons, is a crime against the public peace, by terrifying the good people of the land."); *State v. Lanier*, 71 N.C. 288, 289 (1874) ("The elementary writers say that the offence of going armed with dangerous or unusual weapons is a crime against the public peace by terrifying the good people of the land, and this Court has declared the same to be the common law in *State* v. *Huntley*, 3 Ired. 418.").

[1169] *Heller*, 554 U.S. at 627 (emphasis added).

[1170] "The historical evidence from antebellum America does demonstrate that *the manner* of public carry was subject to reasonable regulation. . . . States could lawfully eliminate one kind of public carry—concealed carry—so long as they left open the option to carry openly." *Bruen*, 142 S. Ct. at 2150.

[1171] *See* Part VII.B.2, *infra*.

[1172] *Cf.* Joseph H. Drake, Note, *Epithetical Jurisprudence and the Annexation of Fixtures*, 18 MICH. L. REV. 405 (1919-1920) (creating the phrase); Jerome Frank, *Epithetical Jurisprudence and the Work of the Securities and Exchange Commission in the Administration of Chapter X of the Bankruptcy Act*, 18 N.Y.U. L.Q. REV. 317 (1941) (popularizing it).

Therefore, the 1871 Texas and 1890 Oklahoma Territory laws against almost all carrying of handguns are of little value in assessing the constitutional status of other arms that were also prohibited from carry in those jurisdictions.

As *Bruen* points out, just because a weapon might have been considered "dangerous and unusual" at one point in time does not prevent it from becoming "common" later; if so, it becomes protected. *Bruen* articulates the rule in response to claims that handguns had been considered dangerous and unusual in the colonial period:

> Whatever the likelihood that handguns were considered "dangerous and unusual" during the colonial period, they are indisputably in "common use" for self-defense today. They are, in fact, "the quintessential self-defense weapon." [*Heller*] *Id*., at 629, 128 S. Ct. 2783, 171 L. Ed. 2d 637. Thus, even if these colonial laws prohibited the carrying of handguns because they were considered "dangerous and unusual weapons" in the 1690s, they provide no justification for laws restricting the public carry of weapons that are unquestionably in common use today.[1173]

The *Bruen* argument above is *arguendo*. Handguns were never "dangerous and unusual." To the contrary, they were mandatory militia arms for officers and horsemen, who were expected to bring their own handguns to militia service.[1174]

As described in Part III.D, firearms with ammunition capacities over ten rounds were never considered "dangerous and unusual" in the nineteenth century. However, during the alcohol prohibition era of the 1920s and early 1930s, six states enacted laws that limited ammunition capacity in certain contexts, albeit less severely than prohibitory twenty-first century laws.[1175] If

[1173] Bruen, 142 S. Ct. at 2143.

[1174] *See* Part II.D.

[1175] 1927 R.I. Pub. Laws 256, §§ 1, 4 (banning sales of guns that fire more than 12 shots semi-automatically without reloading); 1927 Mich. Pub. Acts ch. 372, § 3 (prohibiting sale of firearms "which can be fired more than sixteen times without reloading"); 1933 Minn. Laws ch. 190 (prohibiting the "machine gun," and including semi-automatics "which have been changed, altered or modified to increase the magazine capacity from the original design as manufactured by the manufacturers"); 1933 Ohio Laws 189, 189 (license needed for semi-

it were to be argued that these restrictions from the days of Prohibition were permissible at the time as "dangerous and unusual" laws, that argument could no longer be applied today. Today (unlike in 1690 or 1925), Americans own over one hundred million handguns and hundreds of millions of magazines with capacities over 10 rounds.[1176]

2. How many jurisdictions make a tradition?

Bruen offers some guidelines for how the government can carry its burden of proof to demonstrate a "historical tradition of firearm regulation" necessary to uphold a law.[1177] *Bruen* held that "the historical record compiled by respondents does not demonstrate a tradition" of restricting public handgun carry.[1178] Here is list of the (insufficient) sources cited by advocates of the notion that the right to "bear Arms" can be prohibited or can be limited only to persons whom the government believes have shown a "special need." For some of these sources, the Court was not convinced by the advocates' characterization of the laws, but the Court addressed them *arguendo*:[1179]

---

automatics with capacity of more than 18); 1933 Cal. Stat., ch. 450 (licensing system for machine guns, defined to include semi-automatics actually equipped with detachable magazines of more than ten rounds); 1934 Va. Acts ch. 96, §§ 1(a), 4(d) (regular sess.) (defining machine guns as anything able to fire more than 16 times without reloading, and prohibiting possession for an "offensive or aggressive purpose"; presumption of such purpose when possessed outside one's residence or place of business, or possessed by an alien; registration required for "machine gun" pistols of calibers larger than .30 or 7.62 mm).

All these laws were later repealed. See David B. Kopel, *The History of Firearms Magazines and of Magazine Prohibition*, 78 ALBANY L. REV. 849, 864–66 (2015) (Michigan repeal in 1959; R.I. limit raised to 14 and .22 caliber exempted in 1959, full repeal in 1975; Ohio limit raised to 32 and .22 caliber exempted in 1971, full repeal in 2014, statute had not applied to sale of magazines, but only to unlicensed insertion of a magazine into a firearm); 1963 Minn. Sess. L. ch. 753, at 1229 (defining "machine gun" as automatics only); 1965 Stats. of Calif., ch. 33, at 913 ("machine gun" fires more than one shot "by a single function of the trigger"); 1975 Va. Acts, ch. 14, at 67 (defining "machine gun" as automatics only); 1979 N.C. Sess. Laws 1230, ch. 895, § 1 (eliminating licensing for pump guns).

[1176] "48.0% of gun owners – about 39 million individuals – have owned magazines that hold over 10 rounds (up to 542 million such magazines in total" and "approximately 171 million handguns." William English, PhD, 2021 National Firearms Survey: Updated Analysis Including Types of Firearms Owned, at 1–2 (May 13, 2022), https://bit.ly/3HaqmKv.

[1177] *Bruen*, 142 S. Ct. at 2130.

[1178] *Id.* at 2138.

[1179] *Id.* at 2144 ("even if" the government's reading were correct, the record would not justify the challenged regulation).

Case 4:23-cv-00547-O Document 20-3 Filed 10/06/23 Page 392 of 462 PageID 1065

- Two colonial statutes against the carrying of dangerous and unusual weapons (1692 Massachusetts, 1699 New Hampshire).[1180]
- One colonial law restricting concealed carry for everyone and handgun carry for "planters," a/k/a frontiersmen (1686 East Jersey).[1181]
- Three late-18th-century and early-nineteenth-century state laws that "parallel[] the colonial statutes" (1786 Virginia, 1795 Massachusetts, 1801 Tennessee).[1182]
- Two nineteenth-century common-law offenses for going armed for a wicked or terrifying purpose (1843 North Carolina, 1849 Alabama).[1183]
- Four statutory prohibitions on handgun carry (1821 Tennessee,[1184] 1870 Tennessee,[1185] 1871 Texas (without reasonable cause),[1186] 1887 West Virginia (without good cause).[1187]
- One state statute against going armed to the terror of the public (1870 South Carolina).[1188]
- Eleven nineteenth-century surety statutes, requiring that a person found by a court to have threatened to breach the peace must post a bond in order to continue carrying. (1836 Massachusetts,[1189] 1870 West Virginia,[1190] and "nine other jurisdictions"[1191]).
- Two Western territory laws banning handgun carry (1869 New Mexico,[1192] 1881 Arizona).[1193]

[1180] *Id.* at 2142–43. Like many of the "dangerous and unusual" laws cited by *Heller*, these laws intended to prohibit "bearing arms to terrorize the people." *Id.* at 2143.

[1181] *Id.* at 2143.

[1182] *Id.* at 2144–45.

[1183] *Id.* at 2145–s46.

[1184] *Id.* at 2147.

[1185] *Id.* at 2153. This law was interpreted by courts, however, as allowing the carry of "large pistols suitable for military use." *Id.*

[1186] *Id.* at 2153.

[1187] *Id.*

[1188] Bruen at ___.

[1189] *Id.* at 2148–50.

[1190] *Id.* at 2152–53.

[1191] *Id.* at 2148. "'[U]nder surety laws . . . everyone started out with robust carrying rights" and only those reasonably accused [of creating fear of an injury or breach of the peace] were required to show a special need in order to avoid posting a bond." *Id.* at 2149 (quoting *Wrenn v. District of Columbia*, 864 F.3d 650, 661 (D.C. Cir. 2017).

[1192] *Id.* at 2154.

[1193] *Id.*

- Two Western territory laws banning the carry of any arms in towns, cities, and villages (1875 Wyoming,[1194] 1889 Idaho.)[1195]
- One Western territory law banning all handgun carry and most long-gun carry (1890 Oklahoma).[1196]
- One Western State law instructing but not convincing large cities to ban all carry (1881 Kansas).[1197]

So the general rule seems to be: In any given time period, it is possible to find several jurisdictions that in some way prohibited the exercise of the right to bear arms. But the aggregate of jurisdictions with prohibitory laws is insufficient to overcome the mainstream approach of respecting the right to bear arms.

Let us put aside the Court's *arguendo* treatment of tendentious claims, such as assertions that laws against carrying dangerous and unusual weapons to terrify the public were actually prohibitions on peaceable defensive carry. For laws that actually did prohibit peaceable carry in many circumstances, there are:

- East Jersey, which for a few years in the late seventeenth century prohibited any form of handgun carry by "planters" (frontiersmen).
- Tennessee in 1821, but later the state supreme court and state statute acknowledged the right to open carry of Army & Navy revolvers (the best and most powerful handguns of the time). Texas 1871 and West Virginia 1887. All three state supreme courts at the relevant time interpreted their state constitutional rights to arms as militia-centric.
- Two Western Territories with general prohibitions on defensive handgun carry, and three with prohibitions on such carry in towns. All the territorial restrictions were later repudiated by statehood constitutions and jurisprudence thereunder.[1198]
- A Kansas state legislature instruction for large towns to ban handgun carry, which most towns apparently ignored.[1199]

[1194] *Id.*
[1195] *Id.*
[1196] *Id.*
[1197] *Id.* at 2155–56.
[1198] JOHNSON ET AL., *supra* note 16, at 517–18.
[1199] *Id.*

From this list, we might cull even further, by eliminating the state laws that were upheld only because the relevant state constitutions were interpreted as militia-centric, in contrast to *Heller*'s interpretation of the Second Amendment. We could also cull the territorial laws that were repudiated by the people of the territories as soon as they could form their own constitutions. The list of precedential carry bans is thus reduced to "half a colony" for eight years (East Jersey),[1200] and one state instruction to local governments that was ignored (Kansas). That leaves carry bans with only two feeble precedents relevant to the Second Amendment.

Our analysis indicates that *Bruen* was correctly decided, there being very few good precedents for general bans on bearing arms. However, we did not write the *Bruen* opinion. Justice Thomas's list of precedents, not ours, is legally controlling. That list shows that even substantial handfuls of restrictive minority precedents are insufficient to overcome the text of the Second Amendment.

On the other hand, some advocates suggest that *Bruen*'s long list of insufficient precedents does not provide the controlling rule. Rather, they say that one of our articles does. In discussing the use of historical analogies, Justice Thomas's opinion cited with approval a legal history article we had written about the "sensitive places" doctrine. The doctrine is based on *Heller*'s statement that bearing arms can be prohibited in "sensitive places such as schools and government buildings."[1201] Our article had surveyed the history of locational limits on bearing arms, and *Bruen* cited the article:

> Although the historical record yields relatively few 18th- and 19th-century "sensitive places" where weapons were altogether prohibited—e.g., legislative assemblies, polling places, and courthouses—we are also aware of no disputes regarding the lawfulness of such prohibitions. See D. Kopel & J. Greenlee, The "Sensitive Places" Doctrine, 13 Charleston L. Rev. 205, 229–236, 244–247 (2018) . . . . We therefore can assume it settled that these

[1200] *Bruen*, 142 S. Ct. at 2144 ("At most eight years of history in half a Colony roughly a century before the founding sheds little light on how to properly interpret the Second Amendment.").

[1201] 554 U.S. at 626.

> locations were "sensitive places" where arms carrying could be prohibited consistent with the Second Amendment.[1202]

The above suggests that "relatively few" precedents may be needed for "uncontested" laws. Perhaps this is particularly true for laws that simply affect the fringe of a right (putting a few places off-limits for bearing arms) as opposed to laws with broader restrictions. Certainly there was lots of litigation in the nineteenth century challenging various restrictions on keeping and bearing firearms and knives, including the cases described in Parts IV and V.[1203]

D. Application of history and modern doctrine to particular types of laws

1. Sales prohibitions on slungshots and knuckles

If we are going to count historical precedents as rigorously as *Bruen* did, it is not clear that even the most prohibitory laws from the nineteenth century—the bans on slungshot sales and manufacture in nine states or territories—can clear the hurdle. Nor can such laws be retroactively justified under *Heller* and *Bruen* as covering "dangerous and unusual" weapons. We do not have manufacturing data, but it seems unlikely that slungshots and knuckles were so rare as to be considered "unusual."

However, another part of *Heller* may provide reconciliation. The "Second Amendment does not protect those weapons not typically possessed by law-abiding citizens for lawful purposes . . ."[1204] Based on Escobar's overview, legitimate defensive carry of slungshots was not common; carry by people who were not professional criminals was mainly for fast revenge to verbal insults,

---

[1202] *Id.* at 2133. It is correct that bans on polling places were not contested. The ban on courthouses was in fact contested, and, in our view, correctly upheld. *See* State v. Hill, 53 Ga. 472, 477–78 (1874):

> [T]he right to go into a court-house and peacefully and safely seek its privileges, is just as sacred as the right to carry arms, and if the temple of justice is turned into a barracks, and a visitor to it is compelled to mingle in a crowd of men loaded down with pistols and Bowie-knives, or bristling with guns and bayonets, his right of free access to the courts is just as much restricted as is the right to bear arms infringed by prohibiting the practice before courts of justice.

[1203] *See* David B. Kopel, *The First Century of Right to Arms Litigation*, 14 GEORGETOWN J.L. & PUB. POL'Y 127 (2016).

[1204] *Heller*, 554 U.S. at 625.

rather than for protection against violent attack. Some of the judicial remarks quoted in Part VI are, while not conclusive, supportive of this interpretation.[1205]

This approach distinguishes slungshots and knuckles from blackjacks, which were highly favored by law enforcement officers. Some modern courts have ruled that widespread law enforcement use is powerful evidence that a type of arm *is* "typically possessed by law-abiding citizens for lawful purposes." The principle was recognized for electric weapons, such as stun guns or tasers, in Justice Alito's concurrence in *Caetano v. Massachusetts* and by the Michigan Court of Appeals.[1206] The Connecticut Supreme Court took the same approach for "police batons."[1207]

Our analysis of nongun, nonblade arms is tentative. While the history of flexible impact weapons is told only in a single book, recently published, there is no similar scholarship of which we are aware regarding knuckles.[1208] This Article being the only post-*Heller* article to examine flexible and rigid impact weapons, we do not claim to have resolved every legal issue. We do point out that, as with Bowie knives, the mainstream historical American approach was nonprohibitory.

2. Modern semiautomatic firearms and magazines

Today the most controversial bans on particular arms today are possession or sales bans on semiautomatic rifles and on magazines with capacities over

[1205] *See* text at note ____.

[1206] Caetano v. Massachusetts, 577 U.S. 411, 419 (2016) (Alito, J., concurring) (noting that Massachusetts "allows law enforcement and correctional officers to carry stun guns and Tasers, presumably for such purposes as nonlethal crowd control. Subduing members of a mob is little different from 'suppress[ing] Insurrections,' a traditional role of the militia"); People v. Yanna, 297 Mich. App. 137, 145, 824 N.W.2d 241, 245 (2012) ("By some reports, nearly 95 percent of police departments in America use Tasers" so there is "there is "no reason to doubt that the majority of Tasers and stun guns are used only for lawful purposes").

[1207] State v. DeCiccio, 315 Conn. 79, 105 A.3d 165, 200 (2014) ("expandable metal police batons, also known as collapsible batons, are instruments manufactured specifically for law enforcement use as nonlethal weapons. Furthermore, the widespread use of the baton by the police, who currently perform functions that were historically the province of the militia; see, e.g., D. Kopel, "The Second Amendment in the Nineteenth Century," 1998 BYU L.Rev. 1359, 1534; demonstrates the weapon's traditional military utility"). The court also relied on military use to hold that "dirk knives" are Second Amendment arms. 105 A.3d at 192–93.

[1208] A Westlaw search for law journal articles with "knuckles" in the title yielded no results.

10 or (less often) 15 rounds. These bans are unsupported. First, "[d]rawing from America's "historical tradition," the Supreme Court has held that "the Second Amendment protects" arms that are ""in common use at the time.""[1209] Thus, in *Heller*, the Court held that because "handguns are the most popular weapon chosen by Americans" and therefore in common use, "a complete prohibition of their use is invalid."[1210] Concurring in *Caetano*—a *per curiam* reversal of case that upheld a stun gun prohibition—Justices Alito and Thomas reasoned that because "stun guns are widely owned and accepted as a legitimate means of self-defense across the country. Massachusetts' categorical ban of such weapons therefore violates the Second Amendment."[1211]

As for the ever-shifting category of so-called "assault weapons," "about 24.6 million individuals – have owned an AR-15 or similarly styled rifle (up to 44 million such rifles in total)."[1212] The best estimate for magazines over 10 rounds is 542 million, owned by 48 percent of gun owners.[1213] The firearms and magazines are unquestionably in common use; according to the Court's interpretation of legal history, they cannot be banned.

Being common arms, the firearms and magazines cannot be treated as "dangerous and unusual weapons." A weapon that is "unusual" is the antithesis of a weapon that is "common." So an arm "in common use" cannot be dangerous *and* unusual.[1214] The Supreme Court *per curiam* in *Caetano* did not address dangerousness of stun guns because the Court had already determined that the lower court's "unusual" analysis was flawed.[1215] Concurring, Justices Alito and Thomas elaborated:

> As the *per curiam* opinion recognizes, this is a conjunctive test: A weapon may not be banned unless it is *both* dangerous *and* unusual. Because the Court rejects the lower court's conclusion

---

[1209] *Bruen*, 142 S. Ct. at 2143 (quoting *Heller*, 554 U.S. at 627).

[1210] *Heller*, 554 U.S. at 529.

[1211] 136 S.Ct. at 1033 (Alito, J., concurring).

[1212] English, *supra* note __, at 2; David B. Kopel, *Defining "Assault Weapons"*, THE REGULATORY REV (Univ. of Pennsylvania), Nov. 14, 2018 ("assault weapon" bills have encompassed almost every type of firearm, other than machine guns), https://www.theregreview.org/2018/11/14/kopel-defining-assault-weapons/.

[1213] English, *supra* note __, at 24–25.

[1214] See *Friedman v. City of Highland Park, Illinois*, 784 F.3d, 406, 409 (7th Cir. 2015) (if "the banned weapons are commonly owned … then they are not unusual.").

[1215] 136 S. Ct. at 1028.

> that stun guns are "unusual," it does not need to consider the lower court's conclusion that they are also "dangerous."[1216]

As some of the most popular arms in America,[1217] semiautomatic rifles and magazines cannot be "dangerous and unusual."

None of the above analysis of the rules from pre-*Bruen* cases is new, nor was most of it disputed even by lower courts that upheld bans pre-*Bruen*. The courts agreed that semiautomatic firearms and standard magazines are "in common use," or they assumed commonality *arguendo*. The courts upheld the bans by applying interest-balancing, which *Bruen* forbids.[1218]

What this Article demonstrates is that such a ban cannot be rescued by historical analogy. In considering analogies, *Bruen* states that there are "at least two metrics: how and why the regulations burden a law-abiding citizen's right to armed self-defense."[1219] "How" means: "whether modern and historical regulations impose a comparable burden on the right of armed self-defense."[1220] "Why" means: "whether that burden is comparably justified."[1221]

As Part IV showed, the history of nineteenth century bans on particular types of firearms is close to nil. Likewise, as described in Part II, the only colonial analogy was the New Netherland limit on flintlock quantity, and that briefly existing law disappeared when New Netherland was assimilated into the American colonies, where there were zero laws against particular types of arms.[1222]

The 1837 Georgia ban on most handguns and on "Bowie or any other kinds of knives, manufactured and sold for the purpose of wearing or carrying the

---

[1216] *Id.* at 1031 (Alito, J., concurring) (emphasis in original).

[1217] The number of AR rifles (just one type of "assault weapon") is larger than the "total U.S. daily newspaper circulation (print and digital combined) in 2020 . . . 24.3 million" for weekdays. *See Newspapers Fact Sheet,* Pew Research Center (June 29, 2021), https://pewrsr.ch/3CNXFS0.

[1218] *See*, *e.g.*, Heller v. District of Columbia, 670 F.3d 1244 (D.C. Cir. 2011) ("Heller II"); New York State Rifle & Pistol Ass'n v. Cuomo, 804 F.3d 242 (2d Cir. 2015); Worman v. Healey, 922 F.3d 26 (1st Cir. 2019).

[1219] *Bruen*, 142 S. Ct. at 2132–33. In *Bruen*'s analysis, *Heller* and *McDonald* declared that "whether modern and historical regulations impose a comparable burden on the right of armed self-defense and whether that burden is comparably justified are '*central*' considerations when engaging in an analogical inquiry." *Id.* at 2133 (citing McDonald, 561 U.S. at 767).

[1220] *Id.*

[1221] *Id.*

[1222] Part II.A (English colonies), Part II.C (New Netherland).

same as arms of offence or defence; pistols, dirks, sword-canes, spears" was held in 1846 to violate the Second Amendment in *Nunn v. State*.[1223] Being much closer to the Founding than are post-Reconstruction enactments, *Nunn* is powerful precedent. All the more so given the *Heller* Court's extollation of *Nunn,*

The 1879 Tennessee and 1881 Arkansas laws against the sale of handguns smaller than the Army & Navy models, and bans on the sale of certain blade arms, were validated under state court decisions that held the state constitution right to arms to be applicable only to militia-type arms.

Even if those precedents controlled the Second Amendment, which they do not, they did not ban guns because they were supposedly too powerful, as modern rifles and magazines are sometimes claimed to be. To the contrary, the Tennessee and Arkansas laws banned concealable firearms that were, being smaller, *less* powerful than the large, state-of-art revolvers that were recognized to be constitutionally protected. So the Tennessee and Arkansas laws against small, concealable handguns have a very different "why" than bans on modern rifles and rifles.

Indeed, modern prohibition advocates point to similarities between modern AR semiautomatic rifles and modern military automatic rifles such as the M16 and M4. The prohibitionist argument thus concedes the very strong militia suitability of AR rifles. That makes prohibition unconstitutional under every nineteenth century case precedent, including the ones that upheld bans on certain arms. The unanimous judicial view of the time was that, at the least, no government could outlaw militia-suitable arms.

The only arguable nineteenth-century statutory precedent for bans on modern rifles and magazines is Florida's 1893 licensing law for Winchesters and other repeating rifles. That law was conceded to be unconstitutional and was "never intended to be applied to the white population. [1224]

Bans on modern rifles and magazines cannot be rescued by diverting attention away from the legal history of firearms law, and instead pointing to laws about other arms. Dozens of state and territorial legislatures enacted laws about Bowie knives, as well as dirks and daggers.[1225] Prohibitory laws for these blades are fewer than the number of bans on carrying handguns,[1226] and *Bruen*

[1223] *See* text at note ____.
[1224] *See* text at note ____.
[1225] *See* text at note ____.
[1226] *See* text at note ____.

found the handgun laws insufficient to establish a tradition constricting the Second Amendment.[1227]

As for other nonblade impact weapons, the sales and manufacture bans in a minority of states for slungshots and knuckles could be considered as involving arms "not typically possessed by law-abiding citizens for lawful purposes."[1228]

Other flexible impact arms, most notably blackjacks, were "typically possessed by law-abiding citizens for lawful purposes," especially by law enforcement officers. Likewise, modern semiautomatic rifles and standard magazines are also highly preferred by today's law enforcement officers.

For blackjacks and sand clubs, only one state, New York, enacted a sales and manufacture ban. That came at a time when the legislature was unencumbered by a Second Amendment enforceable against the states or by a state constitution right to arms. As *Bruen* teaches, a lone eccentric state does not create a national legal tradition.

For every arm surveyed in this article, the mainstream American legal tradition was to limit the mode of carry (no concealed carry), to limit sales to minors (either with bans or requirements for parental permission), and/or to impose extra punishment for use in a crime.

The fact that most states banned concealed carry of Bowie knives is not a precedent to criminalize the mere possession of modern rifles and magazines.

3. Minors

Restrictions on transfers of particular arms to minors were numerous in the last third of the nineteenth century. In two previous articles, we provided the legal history of age-based firearm restrictions.[1229] In the present article, we have described many age restrictions for other arms, in Parts V and VI.

Some of those restrictions listed an age, while others simply said "minor." The distinction is important today, regarding laws that prohibit arms for young adults18–20, who today are legally recognized as adults. Similarly, if an 1870 law had limited the exercise of a civil right only to "voters," that law today

[1227] *See* text at note ____.

[1228] *Heller*, 554 U.S. at 625.

[1229] Kopel & Greenlee, *The Second Amendment Rights of Young Adults*, *supra* note __; David B. Kopel & Joseph G.S. Greenlee, *History and Tradition in Modern Circuit Cases on the Second Amendment Rights of Young People*, 43 S. ILL. U. L.J. 119 (2018).

would not be a good precedent for restricting the civil rights of women, although it might still be a good precedent for restricting the right for non-citizens.

The following laws, in chronological order of first enactment, restricted sales of at least one type of arm based on age; some of them also restricted nonsale transfers: Alabama (1856, male minor); Tennessee (1856, minor); [1230] Kentucky (1859, minor, parental permission), Indiana (1875, age 21), Georgia (1876, minor), Illinois (parent or employer consent, age 18), West Virginia (1882, age 21), Kansas (1883, minor, also banning possession), Missouri (1885, minor parental consent), Texas (1889, minor, parental consent), Florida (1889, minor), Louisiana (1890, age 21), New York (1889, consent of police magistrate), Oklahoma Terr. (1890, age 21), Virginia (1890, "minor under sixteen years of age"), D.C. (1892, minor), North Carolina (1893, minor). A few laws limited carry based on age: Nevada (1881, no concealed carry, age 18) (1883, raised to 21), Arizona Terr. (1883, ages 10 to 16, no carry in towns).[1231]

Only Kansas criminalized possession of a regulated arm based on age.[1232] None of the age restrictions applied to rifles or shotguns [1233] Moreover, the first laws come over 60 years after the Second Amendment, and only three of them precede the Fourteenth Amendment.[1234] According to *Bruen*, "late-19th-century evidence . . . does not provide insight into the meaning of the Second Amendment when it contradicts earlier evidence."[1235] Earlier evidence shows that in the colonial and founding eras, no age-based firearm restrictions applied to 18-to-20-year-olds, and as part of the militia, they were required to possess a wide array of firearms, edged weapons, and accoutrements.[1236] Thus, whatever may be concluded from analogies to statutory precedents, modern restrictions on long gun acquisition by young adults ages 18 to 20 are constitutionally dubious, and bans on possession appear indefensible.

4. Penalties for criminal misuse

[1230] *See* text at note ____.
[1231] *See* Kopel & Greenlee at note ____.
[1232] *See* text at note ____.
[1233] *See* text at note ____.
[1234] *See* text at note ____.
[1235] 142 S.Ct. at 2154 n.28.
[1236] Kopel & Greenlee, *The Second Amendment Rights of Young Adults*, *supra* note __, at 533–89.

As described in Parts V and VI, there were also many laws imposing extra penalties of use of particular arms in violent crimes,[1237] We have not surveyed the colonial criminal codes to look for analogues. There was a longstanding tradition in common law, sometimes codified in statutes, with special punishment for breaches of the peace involving weapons.[1238]

For the most part, the search of precedents is unnecessary. Perpetrating criminal homicides, armed robberies, or armed burglaries is not conduct that is protected by the Second Amendment. Violent crimes with firearms, Bowie knives, or other arms harm "the security of a free State."[1239] Likewise, the First

---

[1237] *See* text at note ____.

[1238] *See*, *e.g.*, David B. Kopel & George A. Mocsary, *Errors of Omission: Words Missing from the Ninth Circuit's Young v. State of Hawaii*, 2021 U. Ill. L. Rev. Online 172, 174–83 (May 13, 2021).

[1239] U.S. Const. Amend. II. "Such admonitory regulation of the abuse must not be carried too far. It certainly has a limit. For if the legislature were to affix a punishment to the abuse of this right, so great, as in its nature, it must deter the citizen from its lawful exercise, that would be tantamount to a prohibition of the right." Cockrum v. State, 24 Tex. 394, 403 (1859) (upholding law imposing extra punishment for use of a Bowie knife in manslaughter).

Beyond the scope of this Article are extra penalties for possessing arms while committing a nonviolent crime. For example, body armor is a Second Amendment "arm." *See Heller* 554 U.S. at 581 (quoting dictionary definitions of "arms" that include "armour for defence" or "any thing a man wears for his defence"). Laws that punished arms possession in the course of a crime even if the possession had nothing to do with a crime might raise constitutional problems. A bill introduced in the U.S. Senate in 1999 would have imposed a sentence enhancement of up to 36 months for committing any crime while using body armor—for example, if the proprietor of a liquor store, who always wore body armor for protection from robbers, filled out his tax forms at work and cheated on the taxes. S. 254, § 1644, U.S. Sen., 106th Cong., 1st Sess. (1999) (Sen. Lautenberg); David B. Kopel & James Winchester, *Unfair and Unconstitutional: The New Federal Juvenile Crime and Gun Control Proposals*, Independence Institute Issue Paper no. 3-99, Part VIII (June 3, 1999).

Today's U.S. Sentencing Guidelines impose a two-step (up to 36 months) sentence enhancement for possessing a firearm during a drug trafficking crime. The only exception is if the defendant can show that any connection of the gun to the crime was "clearly improbable." U.S.S.G. § 2D1.1(b)(1) Cmt. 11. One federal district court recently held that there was "a substantial question" for appellate review as to whether the "clearly improbable" standard is consistent "with the nation's traditions of firearm regulation." United States v. Alaniz, No. 1:21-cr-00243-BLW, 2022 WL 4585896, *3 (D. Ida. Sept. 29, 2022).

Amendment freedom of speech does not protect verbal or written conspiracies in restraint of trade, in violation of antitrust laws.[1240]

[1240] *See*, *e.g.*, Giboney v. Empire Storage & Ice Co., 336 U.S. 490, 502 (1949) (First Amendment does not "make it . . . impossible ever to enforce laws against agreements in restraint of trade").

CONCLUSION

According to the Supreme Court's *Bruen* decision, the Second Amendment's textual "unqualified command" about "the right to keep and bear arms" is not violated by established traditions in our legal history for regulation of the right. No bans on types of arms from English legal history are relevant to Second Amendment analysis under *Bruen*, for none were adopted in America. During the colonial period and the Founding Era, there were no bans in the English colonies or the new nation on types of arms.

Under *Bruen*, the nineteenth century is relevant to the extent that it informs the original meaning.[1241] Thus, legal history close to the Founding is most important, and the latter part of the century much less so.[1242] Based on this Article's survey of all state and territorial laws before 1900, bans on the sale or possession of any type of arm are eccentricities that do not overcome the plain text of the Second Amendment. Punitive taxation of some arms existed in three southeastern states, but these laws did not create a national tradition. Bans on concealed carry were very common, and under *Heller* and *Bruen* limitations on the mode of handgun carry have been expressly stated to be constitutional, as long as some mode of carry (open or concealed) was allowed.

The deviant jurisdictions that entirely banned carry of Bowie knives, daggers, or other arms are almost entirely the same as the few that restricted handgun carry. *Bruen* held that a few repressive jurisdictions did not establish a national tradition allowing a general ban on carrying handguns.

In contrast, many American jurisdictions limited sales to minors or imposed enhanced punishment for misuse of certain weapons. For at least some weapons, there is an established American tradition in favor of such laws.

[1241] *Bruen*, 142 S. Ct. at 2136 ("when it comes to interpreting the Constitution, not all history is created equal. "Constitutional rights are enshrined with the scope they were understood to have *when the people adopted them*.") (quoting *Heller*, 554 U. S., at 634–35 (emphasis added in *Bruen*); *id.* at 2132 (the Second Amendment's "meaning is fixed according to the understandings of those who ratified it").

[1242] *Id.* at 2137 ("*Heller*'s interest in mid- to late-19th-century commentary was secondary. . . . In other words, this 19th-century evidence was 'treated as mere confirmation of what the Court thought had already been established'" by earlier evidence. (quoting Gamble v. United States, 139 S. Ct. 1960, 1975–76 (2019)); *Heller*, 554 U.S. at 614 ("discussions [that] took place 75 years after the ratification of the Second Amendment . . . do not provide as much insight into its original meaning as earlier sources.").

As described in Part III, firearms improved more in the nineteenth century than in any century before or since. Although repeating arms had been around for centuries, during the nineteenth century they became affordable to an average consumer. The semiautomatic handgun with detachable magazines was an innovation of the nineteenth century. Despite the amazing technological progress during the nineteenth century, only one American statute—a racist Florida law from 1893—treated repeating firearms worse than other firearms. Indeed, the two most repressive handgun laws from the Jim Crow period—Tennessee (1879) and Arkansas (1881)—privileged the most powerful repeating handguns above lesser handguns. American legal history from 1606 to 1899 provides no precedent for special laws against semiautomatic firearms or against magazines.

The mainstream of American legal history supports controls on the mode of carry, limitations for minors, and punishment for misuse. The mainstream history does not support prohibitions of arms that are well-known to be kept for lawful purposes, including self-defense.

EXHIBIT AC

***Miller v. Bonta*, No. 3:19-cv-01537-BEN-JLB**

Defendants' Survey of Relevant Statutes (Pre-Founding – 1888)[1, 2]

No.	Year of Enactment	Jurisdiction	Citation	Description of Regulation	Subject of Regulation	Repeal Status	Judicial Review
1	1383	England	7 Rich. 2, ch. 13 (1383)	Prohibited possession of launcegays. Punished by forfeiture of the weapon.	Launcegay		
2	1396	England	20 Rich. 2, ch. 1 (1396)	Prohibited possession of launcegays. Punished by forfeiture of the weapon.	Launcegay		
3	1541	England	33 Hen. 8, ch. 6 §§ 1, 18 (1541)	Prohibited possession of any crossbow, handgun, hagbutt, or demy hake. Exempted subjects living within 12 miles of the Scottish border. Punishable by forfeiture or payment of 10 pounds.	Pistol; Crossbow		
4	1606	England	4 Jac. I, ch. 1 (1606)	Repealed exemption for subjects living with 12 miles of the Scottish border for the keeping of crossbows, handguns, and demy hakes.	Club; Other weapon		
5	1664	New York	The Colonial Laws of New York from the Year 1664 to the Revolution . . ., at 687 (1894)	Prohibited a slave from possessing or using a gun, pistol, sword, club, or other kind of weapon unless in the presence	Gun; Pistol; Sword; Club;	Unconstitutional under the Thirteenth and/or Fourteenth	

[1] In compliance with the Court's Order dated December 15, 2022 (Dkt. 161), Defendants created this survey of statutes, laws, and regulations that Defendants have determined are relevant to this action. Plaintiffs have indicated that, "due to the length of defendants' surveys, plaintiffs will reserve all objections to the form of the surveys, and the relevance of the purported statutes contained therein, until the filing of their responsive brief in thirty (30) days per the court's order of Dec. 12, 2022 (ECF 161)."

[2] The surveys have been filed in compliance with the Court's Order directing the parties to identify all relevant laws, statutes, and regulations from the time of the Second Amendment to twenty years after adoption of the Fourteenth Amendment. In compliance with that Order and in recognition of the historical inquiry mandated by *Bruen*, the spreadsheets identify hundreds of relevant firearms laws, some of which were drafted well before the Thirteenth Amendment's abolition of slavery and the Fourteenth Amendment's Equal Protection Clause. While our subsequent briefing, as ordered by the Court, will explain in more detail the historical context and relevance of such laws, the Attorney General emphasizes his strong disagreement with racial and other improper discrimination that existed in some such laws, and which stand in stark contrast to California's commonsense firearm laws, which are designed to justly and equitably protect all Californians. The listing of such racist and discriminatory statutes should in no way be construed as an endorsement of such laws by the Attorney General or his counsel in this matter.

No.	Year of Enactment	Jurisdiction	Citation	Description of Regulation	Subject of Regulation	Repeal Status	Judicial Review
				and at the direction of their Master or Mistress.	Other kind of weapon	Amendments to the U.S. Constitution	
6	1686	New Jersey	The Grants, Concessions, and Original Constitutions of The Province of New Jersey 289-90 (1881) (1686)	Prohibited the carrying "privately" of any pocket pistol, skeines, stilettoes, daggers or dirks, or other unusual or unlawful weapons. Punishable by fine of 5 pounds for first conviction, and punishable by imprisonment for 6 months and a fine of 10 pounds.	Pistol; Skeines; Stilettoes; Dagger; Dirk; Other unusual or unlawful weapons		
7	1689	England	English Bill of Rights of 1689, 1 Wm. & Mary ch. 2, § 7	Provided a right for Protestants to have "Arms for their Defense . . . as allowed by law."	Arms for defense		
8	1750	Massachusetts	1750 Mass. Acts 544, An Act for Preventing and Suppressing of Riots, Routs and Unlawful Assemblies, ch. 17, § 1	Prohibited the carrying of a club or other weapon while unlawfully, riotously, or tumultuously assembling. Punishable by seizing the weapon and a hearing before the court.	Club; Other weapon		
9	1769	England	1 Blackstone ch. 1 (1769)	Recognized the "fifth and last auxiliary right," which provided that Protestant subjects had the right to "arms for their defence" "such as are allowed by law."	Arms for defense		
10	1771	New Jersey	1763-1775 N.J. Laws 346, An Act for the Preservation of Deer and Other Game, and to Prevent Trespassing with Guns, ch. 539, § 10	Prohibited the setting of any trap gun intended to discharge by any string, rope, or other contrivance. Punishable by forfeiture of the firearm and fine of 6 pounds.	Trap gun		

No.	Year of Enactment	Jurisdiction	Citation	Description of Regulation	Subject of Regulation	Repeal Status	Judicial Review
11	1783	Massachusetts – City of Boston	1783 Mass. Acts 37, § 2	Prohibited the possession of any "fire arms," and among other devices, loaded with any gun powder. Punishable by forfeiture and sale at public auction.	Gunpowder		
12	1784	New York – City of New York City	1784 Laws of N.Y. 627, ch. 28	Prohibited any person to keep any quantity of gun powder exceeding 28 pounds and required storage in separate containers. Punishable by forfeiture and fine.	Gunpowder		
13	1786	Massachusetts	An Act to Prevent Routs, Riots, and Tumultuous assemblies, and the Evil Consequences Thereof, reprinted in Cumberland Gazette (Portland, MA), Nov. 17, 1786, at 1	Prohibited being armed with a club or other weapon while rioting.	Club; Other weapon		
14	1788	Ohio [Territory]	1788-1801 Ohio Laws 20, A Law Respecting Crimes and Punishments . . ., ch. 6	Prohibited the carrying of any "dangerous weapon" that indicates a violent intention while committing a burglary. Punishable by imprisonment for up to 40 years.	Any dangerous weapon		
15	1792	Virginia	Collection of All Such Acts of the General Assembly of Virginia, of a Public and Permanent Nature, as Are Now in Force . . . ., at 187 (1803), §§ 8-9	Prohibited any "negro or mulatto" from possessing or carrying a gun, powder, shot, club, or other weapon.	Gun; Powder; Shot; Club; Other weapon; Ammunition	Unconstitutional under the Thirteenth and/or Fourteenth Amendments to the U.S. Constitution	

No.	Year of Enactment	Jurisdiction	Citation	Description of Regulation	Subject of Regulation	Repeal Status	Judicial Review
16	1797	Delaware	Del. Laws 104, An Act for the Trial of Negroes, ch. 43, § 6	Prohibited "any Negro or Mulatto slave" from carrying guns, swords, pistols, fowling pieces, clubs, or other arms and weapons without the master's special license.	Gun; Sword; Pistol; Fowling pieces; Club; other arms and weapons	Unconstitutional under the Thirteenth and/or Fourteenth Amendments to the U.S. Constitution	
17	1798	Kentucky	1798 Ky. Acts 106	Prohibited "negro, mulatto, or Indian" from possessing or carrying a gun, powder, shot, club, or other weapon or ammunition.	Gun; Powder; Shot; Club; Other weapon	Unconstitutional under the Thirteenth and/or Fourteenth Amendments to the U.S. Constitution	
18	1799	Mississippi [Territory]	1799 Miss. Laws 113, A Law for The Regulation of Slaves	Prohibited any "Negro or mulatto" from carrying gun, powder, shot, club, or other weapon. Also prohibits a "negro or mulatto" from possessing a gun, weapon, or ammunition.	Gun; Powder; Shot; Cub; Other weapon; Ammunition	Unconstitutional under the Thirteenth and/or Fourteenth Amendments to the U.S. Constitution	
19	1799	New Jersey	Charles Nettleton, Laws of the State of New-Jersey, at 474 (1821), [An Act to Describe, Apprehend and Punish Disorderly Persons (1799)], § 2	Prohibited the carrying of any pistol, hanger, cutlass, bludgeon, or other offensive weapon, with intent to assault any person."	Pistol; Hanger; Cutlass; Bludgeon; Other offensive weapon		
20	1801	Tennessee	1801 Tenn. Act 260-61	Prohibited the private carrying of "any dirk, large knife, pistol, or any other dangerous weapon, to	Dirk; Large knife; Pistol;		

No.	Year of Enactment	Jurisdiction	Citation	Description of Regulation	Subject of Regulation	Repeal Status	Judicial Review
				the fear or terror of any person," unless a surety is posted. Punishable as for "breach of the peace, or riot at common law."	Other dangerous weapon		
21	1804	Indiana [Territory]	1804 Ind. Acts 108, A Law Entitled a Law Respecting Slaves, § 4	Prohibited a "slave or mulatto" from carrying or possessing a gun, powder, shot, club or other weapon and ammunition.	Gun; Powder; Shot; Club; Other weapon	Unconstitutional under the Thirteenth and/or Fourteenth Amendments to the U.S. Constitution	
22	1804	Mississippi [Territory]	1804 Miss. Laws 90, An Act Respecting Slaves, § 4	Prohibited a "Slave" from keeping or carrying a gun, powder, shot, club, or other weapon.	Gun; Powder; Shot; Club; Other weapon; Ammunition	Unconstitutional under the Thirteenth and/or Fourteenth Amendments to the U.S. Constitution	
23	1811	Maryland	The Laws of Maryland, with the Charter, the Bill Of Rights, the Constitution of the State, and Its Alterations, the Declaration of Independence, and the Constitution of the United States, and Its Amendments, at 465 (1811)	Prohibited the carrying of any pistol, hanger, cutlass, bludgeon, or other offensive weapon with the intent to assault a person. Punishable by imprisonment for 3 months to 2 years.	Pistol; Hanger; Cutlass; Bludgeon; Other offensive weapon		
24	1813	Louisiana	1813 La. Acts 172, An Act Against Carrying	Prohibited the carrying of any concealed weapon, including a	Dirk; Dagger;		

No.	Year of Enactment	Jurisdiction	Citation	Description of Regulation	Subject of Regulation	Repeal Status	Judicial Review
			Concealed Weapons, and Going Armed in Public Places in an Unnecessary Manner, § 1	dirk, dagger, knife, pistol, or any other deadly weapon.	Knife; Pistol; Other deadly weapon		
25	1816	Georgia	Lucius Q.C. Lamar, A Compilation of the Laws of the State of Georgia, Passed by the Legislature since the Year 1810 to the Year 1819, Inclusive. Comprising all the Laws Passed within those Periods, Arranged under Appropriate Heads, with Notes of Reference to those Laws, or Parts of Laws, which are Amended or Repealed to which are Added such Concurred and Approved Resolutions, as are Either of General, Local, or Private Moment. Concluding with a Copious Index to the Laws, a Separate one to the Resolutions, at 599 (1821), Offences Against the Public Peace, (1816) § 19	Prohibited the carrying of any pistol, hanger, cutlass, bludgeon, or other offensive weapon with the intent to assault a person. Punishable by imprisonment with hard labor for a period of time to be determined by a jury.	Picklock; Key; Crow; Jack; Bit or other implement; Pistol; Hanger; Cutlass; Bludgeon; Other offensive weapon		
26	1818	Missouri [Territory]	Organic Laws:-Laws of Missouri Territory, (Alphabetically	Prohibited "slave or mulatto" from carrying a gun, powder, shot, club or other weapon and	Gun; Powder; Shot;	Unconstitutional under the Thirteenth	

No.	Year of Enactment	Jurisdiction	Citation	Description of Regulation	Subject of Regulation	Repeal Status	Judicial Review
			Arranged):-Spanish Regulations for the Allotment of Lands:- Laws of the United States, for Adjusting Titles to Lands, &c. to Which are Added, a Variety of Forms, Useful to Magistrates, at 374 (1818), Slaves, § 3	from possessing a gun or ammunition.	Club; Other weapon; Ammunition	and/or Fourteenth Amendments to the U.S. Constitution	
27	1821	Maine	1821 Me. Laws 98, An Act for the Prevention of Damage by Fire, and the Safe Keeping of Gun Powder, chap. 25, § 1	Prohibited any person from possessing any gunpowder, in any quantity, unless permitted by local rules and regulations.	Gunpowder		
28	1835	Arkansas [Territory]	Slaves, in Laws of the Arkansas Territory 521 (J. Steele & J. M'Campbell, Eds., 1835)	Prohibited any "slave or mulatto" from keeping or carrying a gun, powder, shot, club, or other weapon.	Firearm; Powder; Shot; Club; Other weapon	Unconstitutional under the Thirteenth and/or Fourteenth Amendments to the U.S. Constitution	
29	1836	Massachusetts	Mass. Rev. Stat., ch. 134, § 16 (1836)	Prohibited the carrying of a dirk, dagger, sword, pistol, or other offensive and dangerous weapon without reasonable cause to fear an assault. Punishable by finding sureties for keeping the peace for a term up to 6 months.	Dirk; Dagger; Sword; Pistol; Other offensive and dangerous weapon		
30	1836	Connecticut – Cities of Hartford, New Haven, New	1836 Conn. Acts 105, ch. 1, § 20	Authorizing the local court of common counsel to prohibitand regulate the storage of gun powder.	Gunpowder		

No.	Year of Enactment	Jurisdiction	Citation	Description of Regulation	Subject of Regulation	Repeal Status	Judicial Review
		London, Norwich, and Middletown					
31	1837	Alabama	1837 Ala. Acts 7, §§ 1, 2	Imposed tax of $100 on any person selling, giving, or disposing of any Bowie knife or Arkansas toothpick. Failure to pay the tax was subject to penalty of perjury.	Knife	Tax reduced in 1851.	
32	1837	Arkansas	Josiah Gould, A Digest of the Statutes of Arkansas Embracing All Laws of a General and Permanent Character in Force the Close of the Session of the General Assembly of 1856 380 381–82 (1837)	Prohibited the concealed carrying of any pistol, dirk, butcher or large knife, sword cane, unless "upon a journey."	Pistol; Dirk; Butcher knife; Sword cane		*State v. Buzzard*, 4 Ark. 18 (1842) (upholding law under the Second Amendment and state constitution); *Fife v. State*, 31 Ark. 455 (1876)
33	1837	Georgia	Acts of the General Assembly of the State of Georgia Passed in Milledgeville at an Annual Session in November and December 1837, at 90-91 (1838)	Prohibited any merchant, or "any other person or persons whatsoever," to sell, offer to sell, keep, or have on their person or elsewhere any Bowie knife or "any other kind of knives, manufactured and sold for the purpose of wearing, or carrying the same as arms of offence or defence," pistols, swords, sword canes, or spears. Exempted	Bowie knife; Other knife manufactured for wearing or carrying for offense or defense; Pistol; Sword; Sword cane; Spear		*Nunn v. State*, 1 Ga. 243 (1846) (held unconstitutio nal under Second Amendment).

No.	Year of Enactment	Jurisdiction	Citation	Description of Regulation	Subject of Regulation	Repeal Status	Judicial Review
				"such pistols as are known as horseman's pistols" from these restrictions. Punishable by a fine of up to $100-500 for the first offense and $500-1,000 for subsequent offenses.			
34	1837	Mississippi	1837 Miss. L. 291-92	Prohibited the use of any rifle, shotgun, sword cane, pistol, dirk, dirk knife, Bowie knife, or any other deadly weapon in a fight in which one of the combatants was killed, and the exhibition of any dirk, dirk knife, Bowie knife, sword, sword cane, or other deadly weapon in a rude or threatening manner that was not in necessary self-defense. Punishable by liability to decedent and a fine of up to $500 and imprisonment for up to 3 months.	Rifle; Shotgun; Sword cane; Pistol; Dirk; Dirk knife; Bowie knife; Sword; Sword cane; Other deadly weapon		
35	1837	Mississippi – Town of Sharon	1837 Miss. L. 294	Authorized the town of Sharon to enact "the total inhibition of the odious and savage practice" of carrying dirks, Bowie knives, or pistols.	Dirk; Bowie knife; Pistol		
36	1837	Tennessee	1837-38 Tenn. Pub. Acts 200-01, An Act to Suppress the Sale and Use of Bowie Knives and Arkansas Tooth Picks in this State, ch. 137, § 2	Prohibited the carrying of a concealed Bowie knife, Arkansas tooth pick, or other knife or weapon. Punishable by fine of $200-500 and imprisonment for 3-6 months.	Bowie knife; Arkansas toothpick; Other knife or weapon		*Haynes v. Tennessee*, 24 Tenn. 120 (1844) (upheld conviction for unlawful

No.	Year of Enactment	Jurisdiction	Citation	Description of Regulation	Subject of Regulation	Repeal Status	Judicial Review
							carrying of a Bowie knife).
37	1837	Tennessee	1837-1838 Tenn. Pub. Acts 200, An Act to Suppress the Sale and Use of Bowie Knives and Arkansas Tooth Picks in this State, ch. 137, § 1.	Prohibited any merchant from selling a Bowie knife or Arkansas tooth pick. Punishable by fine of $100-500 and imprisonment for $1-6 months.	Bowie knife; Arkansas toothpick		
38	1837	Tennessee	1837-1838 Tenn. Pub. Acts 201, An Act to Suppress the Sale and Use of Bowie Knives and Arkansas Tooth Picks in the State, ch. 137, § 4	Prohibited the stabbing or cutting of another person with any knife or weapon known as a "Bowie knife, Arkansas tooth pick, or any knife or weapon that shall in form, shape or size resemble a Bowie knife," regardless of whether the person dies. Punishable by imprisonment for 3-15 years.	Bowie knife; Arkansas toothpick; Any knife or weapon that resembles a bowie knife		
39	1838	Tennessee	Acts Passed at the First Session of the Twenty-Second General Assembly of the State of Tennessee: 1837-38, at 200-01, ch. 137	Prohibited the sale or transfer of any Bowie knife or knives, Arkansas toothpicks, or "any knife or weapon that shall in form shape or size resemble a Bowie knife or any Arkansas toothpick."	Bowie knife; Arkansas toothpick; Any similar knife		*Aymette v. State*, 21 Tenn. (2 Hum.) 154 (1840) (upheld under state constitution).
40	1838	Virginia	Acts of the General Assembly of Virginia, Passed at the Session of 1838, at 76-77, ch. 101 (1838)	Prohibited "habitually or generally" carrying any concealed pistol, dirk, Bowie knife, or any other weapon of like kind.	Pistol; Dirk; Bowie knife; Other similar weapon		
41	1839	Alabama	1839 Ala. Acts 67, § 1	Prohibited the concealed carrying of "any species of fire	Knife; Deadly weapon		*State v. Reid*, 1 Ala. 612

No.	Year of Enactment	Jurisdiction	Citation	Description of Regulation	Subject of Regulation	Repeal Status	Judicial Review
				arms, or any bowie knife, Arkansas tooth-pick, or any other knife of the like kind, dirk, or any other deadly weapon." Punished by fine of $50-100 and imprisonment not to exceed 3 months.			(1840) (upheld under Alabama Constitution); *Whatley v. State*, 49 Ala. 355 (1947) (necessity required).
42	1839	Florida [Territory]	John P. Duval, Compilation of the Public Acts of the Legislative Council of the Territory of Florida, Passed Prior to 1840, at 423 (1839), An Act to Prevent any Person in this Territory from Carrying Arms Secretly	Prohibited the concealed carrying of "any dirk, pistol, or other arm, or weapon, except a common pocket-knife." Punishable by fine of $50-500 or imprisonment for 1-6 months.	Dirk; Pistol; Other arm or weapon		
43	1839	Mississippi – Town of Emery	1839 Miss. L. 385, ch. 168	Authorized the town of Emery to enact restrictions on the carrying of dirks, Bowie knives, or pistols.	Dirk; Bowie knife; Pistol		
44	1840	Mississippi – Town of Hernando	1840 Miss. L. 181, ch. 111	Authorized the town of Hernando to enact restrictions on the carrying of dirks, Bowie knives, or pistols.	Dirk; Bowie knife; Pistol		
45	1841	Alabama	1841 Ala. Acts 148–49, Of Miscellaneous Offences, ch. 7, § 4	Prohibited the concealed carrying of "a bowie knife, or knife or instrument of the like kind or description, by whatever name called, dirk or any other deadly weapon, pistol or any	Knife; Pistol; Air gun; Other deadly weapon		

No.	Year of Enactment	Jurisdiction	Citation	Description of Regulation	Subject of Regulation	Repeal Status	Judicial Review
				species of firearms, or air gun," unless the person is threatened with an attack or is traveling or "setting out on a journey." Punished by a fine of $50-100.			
46	1841	Maine	1841 Me. Laws 709, ch. 169, § 16.	Prohibited the carrying of a dirk, dagger, sword, pistol, or other offensive and dangerous weapon without reasonable cause to fear an assault. Upon complaint of any person, the person intending to carry such weapons may be required to find sureties for keeping the peace for up to six months.	Dirk; Dagger; Sword; Pistol; Other offensive and dangerous weapon		
47	1841	Mississippi	1841 Miss. 52, ch. 1	Imposed an annual property tax of $1 on each Bowie knife.	Bowie knife	Tax reduced in 1850	
48	1842	Louisiana	Henry A. Bullard & Thomas Curry, 1 A New Digest of the Statute Laws of the State of Louisiana, from the Change of Government to the Year 1841 at 252 (E. Johns & Co., New Orleans, 1842)	Prohibited the carrying of " any concealed weapon, such as a dirk, dagger, knife, pistol, or any other deadly weapon." Punishable by fine of $20-50.	Dirk; Dagger; Knife; Pistol; Other deadly weapon		
49	1845	Illinois	Mason Brayman, Revised Statutes of the State of Illinois: Adopted by the General Assembly of Said State, at Its Regular Session, Held in the Years A.D. 1844-45: Together with an Appendix	Prohibited the carrying of "any pistol, gun, knife, dirk, bludgeon or other offensive weapon, with intent to assault any person. Punishable by fine up to $100 or imprisonment up to 3 months.	Pistol; Gun; Knife; Dirk; Bludgeon; Other offensive weapon		

No.	Year of Enactment	Jurisdiction	Citation	Description of Regulation	Subject of Regulation	Repeal Status	Judicial Review
			Containing Acts Passed at the Same and Previous Sessions, Not Incorporated in the Revised Statutes, but Which Remain in Force , at 176 (1845), Criminal Jurisprudence, § 139				
50	1846	North Carolina	1846 N.C. L., ch. 42	Prohibited "any slave" from receiving any sword, dirk, Bowie knife, gun, musket, firearms, or "any other deadly weapons of offense" without written permission.	Sword; Dirk; Bowie knife; Gun; Musket; Firearms; Other deadly weapons of offense	Unconstitutional under the Thirteenth and/or Fourteenth Amendments to the U.S. Constitution	
51	1847	Maine	The Revised Statutes of the State of Maine, Passed October 22, 1840; To Which are Prefixed the Constitutions of the United States and of the State of Maine, and to Which Are Subjoined the Other Public Laws of 1840 and 1841, with an Appendix, at 709 (1847), Justices of the Peace, § 16	Prohibited the carrying of a dirk, dagger, sword, pistol, or other offensive and dangerous weapon without reasonable cause to fear an assault. Upon complaint of any person, the person intending to carry such weapons may be required to find sureties for keeping the peace for up to one year.	Dirk; Dagger; Sword; Pistol; Other offensive and dangerous weapon		
52	1849	California – City of San Francisco	1849 Cal. Stat. 245, An Act to Incorporate the City of San Francisco, § 127	Prohibited the carrying, with intent to assault any person, any pistol, gun, knife, dirk, bludgeon, or other offensive	Pistol; Gun; Knife; Dirk;		

No.	Year of Enactment	Jurisdiction	Citation	Description of Regulation	Subject of Regulation	Repeal Status	Judicial Review
				weapon with the intent to assault another person.. Punished by fine of up to $100 and imprisonment for up to 3 months.	Bludgeon; Other offensive weapon		
53	1850	Mississippi	1850 Miss. 43, ch. 1	Imposed an annual property tax of 50 cents on each Bowie knife.	Bowie knife	Tax increased to $1 in 1854	
54	1851	Alabama	1851-52 Ala. 3, ch. 1	Tax of $2 on "every bowie knife or revolving pistol."	Bowie knife; Pistol	Additional weapons added in 1867.	
55	1851	Illinois – City of Chicago	Ordinances of the City of Chicago, Ill., ch. 16, § 1	Prohibiting the keeping, sale, or giving away of gun powder or gun cotton "in any quantity" absent written permission of the authorities. Punishable by a fine of $25 per offense.	Gunpowder		
56	1851	Pennsylvania – City of Philadelphia	1851 Pa. Laws 382, An Act Authorizing Francis Patrick Kenrick, Bishop of Philadelphia, to Convey Certain Real Estate in the Borough of York, and a Supplement to the Charter of Said Borough, § 4	Prohibited the willful and malicious carrying of any pistol, gun, dirk, knife, slungshot, or deadly weapon. Punishable by imprisonment for 6 months to 1 year and security for future good behavior.	Pistol; Gun; Dirk; Slungshot; Deadly weapon		
57	1853	California	S. Garfielde, Compiled Laws of the State of California: Containing All the Acts of the Legislature of a Public and General Nature, Now in Force,	Prohibited carrying of pistol, gun, knife, dirk, bludgeon, or other offensive weapon with intent to assault. Punishable by fine of up to $100 or imprisonment for up to 3 months.	Pistol; Gun; Knife; Dirk; Bludgeon; Other offensive weapon		

No.	Year of Enactment	Jurisdiction	Citation	Description of Regulation	Subject of Regulation	Repeal Status	Judicial Review
			Passed at the Sessions of 1850-51-52-53, § 127				
58	1853	New Mexico [Territory]	1853 N.M. Laws 406, An Act Prohibiting the Carrying of Weapons Concealed or Otherwise, § 25	Prohibited the carrying of a concealed pistol, Bowie knife, cuchillo de cinto (belt buckle knife), Arkansas toothpick, Spanish dagger, slungshot, or any other deadly weapon.	Pistol; Bowie knife; Cuchillo de cinto (belt buckle knife); Arkansas toothpick; Spanish dagger; Slungshot; Other deadly weapon	*See also* 1859 N.M. L. 94-96 (same).	
59	1854	Mississippi	1854 Miss. 50, ch. 1	Imposed an annual property tax of $1 on each Bowie knife, Arkansas toothpick, sword cane, and dueling or pocket pistol.	Bowie knife; Arkansas toothpick; Sword cane; Dueling or pocket pistol	Amended in 1856 to exclude pocket pistols from the tax	
60	1854	Washington [Territory]	1854 Wash. Sess. Law 80, An Act Relative to Crimes and Punishments, and Proceedings in Criminal Cases, ch. 2, § 30	Prohibited exhibiting, in a rude, angry, or threatening manner, a pistol, Bowie knife, or other dangerous weapon. Punishable by imprisonment up to 1 year and a fine up to $500.	Pistol; Bowie knife; Other dangerous weapon		
61	1855	California	1855 Cal. L. 152-53, ch. 127	Provided that a person who killed another in a duel with "a rifle, shot-gun, pistol, bowie-knife, dirk, small-sword, back-sword or other dangerous weapon" would pay the decedent's debts and be liable to	Rifle; Shotgun; Pistol; Bowie knife; Dirk; Small-sword; Back-sword;		

No.	Year of Enactment	Jurisdiction	Citation	Description of Regulation	Subject of Regulation	Repeal Status	Judicial Review
				the decedent's family for liquidated damages.	Other dangerous weapon		
62	1855	Indiana	1855 Ind. Acts 153, An Act to Provide for the Punishment of Persons Interfering with Trains or Railroads, ch. 79, § 1	Prohibited the carrying of any dirk, pistol, Bowie knife, dagger, sword in cane, or any other dangerous or deadly weapon with the intent of injuring another person. Exempted any person who was a "traveler." Punishable by fine up to $500.	Dirk; Pistol; Bowie knife; Dagger; Sword cane; Other dangerous or deadly weapon	*See also* 1859 Ind. L. 129, ch. 78 (same); 1881 Ind. L. 191, ch. 37.	
63	1855	Louisiana	1855 La. L. 148, ch. 120	Prohibited the concealed carrying of "pistols, bowie knife, dirk, or any other dangerous weapon."	Pistol; Bowie knife; Dirk; Other dangerous weapon		
64	1856	Mississippi	1856-1857 Miss. L. 36, ch. 1	Imposed an annual property tax of $1 on each Bowie knife, dirk knife, or sword cane.	Bowie knife; Dirk knife; Sword cane	Modified in 1861 to preclude collection of the tax during the Civil War (1861-1862 Miss. L. 134, ch. 125)	
65	1856	Tennessee	1855-56 Tenn. L. 92, ch. 81	Prohibited the sale or transfer of any pistol, Bowie knife, dirk, Arkansas toothpick, or hunter's knife to a minor. Excepted the transfer of a gun for hunting.	Pistol; Bowie knife; Dirk; Arkansas toothpick; Hunter's knife		

No.	Year of Enactment	Jurisdiction	Citation	Description of Regulation	Subject of Regulation	Repeal Status	Judicial Review
66	1856	Texas	Tex. Penal Code arts. 611-12 (enacted Aug. 28, 1856)	Provided that the use of a Bowie knife or a dagger in manslaughter is to be deemed murder.	Bowie knife; Dagger		*Cockrum v. State*, 24 Tex. 394 (1859) (upheld under Second Amendment and Texas Constitution).
67	1858	Minnesota – City of St. Paul	Ordinances of the City of St. Paul, Minn., ch. 21, § 1	Prohibited the keeping, sale, or giving away of gun powder or gun cotton "in any quantity" absent payment of $5 to the City Treasurer and written permission of the authorities. Authorized any person to "keep for his own use" no more than 1 pound of gun powder or gun cotton at any one time. Punishable by a fine not to exceed $50 per offense.	Gunpowder		
68	1858	Nebraska [Territory]	1858 Neb. Laws 69, An Act to Adopt and Establish a Criminal code for the Territory of Nebraska, § 135	Prohibited the carrying of a pistol, gun, knife, dirk, bludgeon or other offensive weapon with the intent to assault a person. Punishable by fine up to $100.	Pistol; Gun; Knife; Dirk; Bludgeon; Other offensive weapon		
69	1859	Kentucky – Town of Harrodsburg	1859 Ky. Acts 245, An Act to Amend An Act Entitled "An Act to Reduce to One the Several Acts in Relation to the Town of Harrodsburg, § 23	Prohibited the selling, giving, or loaning of a concealed pistol, dirk, Bowie knife, brass knuckles, slungshot, colt, cane-gun, or other deadly weapon to a "minor, slave, or free negro." Punishable by fine of $50.	Pistol; Dirk; Bowie knife; Brass knuckles; Slungshot; Colt; Cane-gun;	Unconstitutional under the Thirteenth and/or Fourteenth Amendments	

No.	Year of Enactment	Jurisdiction	Citation	Description of Regulation	Subject of Regulation	Repeal Status	Judicial Review
					Other deadly weapon	to the U.S. Constitution	
70	1859	Ohio	1859 Ohio Laws 56, An Act to Prohibit the Carrying or Wearing of Concealed Weapons, § 1	Prohibited the concealed carrying of any pistol, Bowie knife, or any other "dangerous weapon." Punishable by fine of up to $200 or imprisonment of up to 30 days for the first offense, and a fine of up to $500 or imprisonment for up to 3 months for the second offense.	Pistol; Bowie knife; Other dangerous weapon		
71	1859	Washington [Territory]	1859 Wash. Sess. Laws 109, An Act Relative to Crimes and Punishments, and Proceedings in Criminal Cases, ch. 2, § 30	Prohibited exhibiting, in a rude, angry, or threatening manner, a pistol, Bowie knife, or other dangerous weapon. Punishable by imprisonment up to 1 year and a fine up to $500.	Pistol; Bowie knife; Other dangerous weapon		
72	1860	Georgia	1860 Ga. Laws 56, An Act to add an additional Section to the 13th Division of the Penal Code, making it penal to sell to or furnish slaves or free persons of color, with weapons of offence and defence; and for other purposes therein mentioned, § 1.	Prohibited the sale or furnishing of any gun, pistol, Bowie knife, slungshot, sword cane, or other weapon to a "slave or free person of color." Punishable by fine up to $500 and imprisonment up to 6 months.	Gun; Pistol; Bowie knife; Slungshot; Sword cane; Other weapon	Unconstitutional under the Thirteenth and/or Fourteenth Amendments to the U.S. Constitution	
73	1861	California	William H. R. Wood, Digest of the Laws of California: Containing All Laws of a General Character Which were in	Prohibited the display of any dirk, dirk-knife, Bowie knife, sword, sword cane, pistol, gun, or other deadly weapon in a threatening manner, or use of	Dirk; Bowie knife; Sword; Sword cane; Pistol;		

No.	Year of Enactment	Jurisdiction	Citation	Description of Regulation	Subject of Regulation	Repeal Status	Judicial Review
			Force on the First Day of January, 1858; Also, the Declaration of Independence, Constitution of the United States, Articles of Confederation, Kentucky and Virginia Resolutions of 1798-99, Acts of Congress Relative to Public Lands and Pre-Emptions. Together with Judicial Decisions, Both of the Supreme Court of the United States and of California, to Which are Also Appended Numerous Forms for Obtaining Pre-Emption and Bounty Lands, Etc., at 334 (1861)	such weapon in a fight. Punishable by a fine of $100-500 or imprisonment for 1-6 months.	Gun; Other deadly weapon		
74	1861	Nevada [Territory]	1861 Nev. L. 61	Provided that the killing of another in a duel with a rifle, shotgun, pistol, Bowie knife, dirk, small-sword, back-sword, or other "dangerous weapon" in the killing of another in a duel is to be deemed murder.	Rifle; Shotgun; Pistol; Bowie knife; Dirk; Small-sword; Back-sword; Other dangerous weapon		
75	1862	Colorado [Territory]	1862 Colo. Sess. Laws 56, § 1	Prohibited the concealed carrying in any city, town, or village any pistol, Bowie knife,	Pistol; Bowie knife; Dagger;		

No.	Year of Enactment	Jurisdiction	Citation	Description of Regulation	Subject of Regulation	Repeal Status	Judicial Review
				dagger, or other deadly weapon. Punished by fine of $5-35.	Other deadly weapon		
76	1863	Kansas – City of Leavenworth	C. B. Pierce, Charter and Ordinances of the City of Leavenworth, with an Appendix, at 45 (1863), An Ordinance Relating to Misdemeanors, § 23	Prohibited the carrying of any concealed "pistol, dirk, bowie knife, revolver, slung shot, billy, brass, lead or iron knuckles, or any other deadly weapon within this city." Punishable by a fine of $3-100.	Pistol; Dirk; Bowie knife; Revolver; Slungshot; Billy; Brass; lead or iron knuckles; Other deadly weapon		
77	1863	Tennessee – City of Memphis	William H. Bridges, Digest of the Charters and Ordinances of the City of Memphis, Together with the Acts of the Legislature Relating to the City, with an Appendix, at 190 (1863), Offences Affecting Public Safety: Carrying Concealed Weapons, § 3	Prohibited the carrying of a concealed pistol, Bowie knife, dirk, or any other deadly weapon. Punishable by fine of $10-50.	Pistol; Bowie knife; Dirk; Other deadly weapon		
78	1864	California	Theodore Henry Hittell, The General Laws of the State of California, from 1850 to 1864, Inclusive: Being a Compilation of All Acts of a General Nature Now in Force, with Full References to Repealed Acts, Special and Local Legislation, and Statutory Constructions of	Prohibited the concealed carrying of any dirk, pistol, sword cane, slungshot, or "other dangerous or deadly weapon." Exempted any peace officer or officer acting under the law of the United States. Punishable by imprisonment for 30-90 days or fine of $20-200.	Dirk; Pistol; Sword cane; Slungshot; Other deadly or dangerous weapon	Repealed 1869-70 Cal. Sess. Laws, ch. 63 (provided that pending cases be heard and tried as if not repealed)	

No.	Year of Enactment	Jurisdiction	Citation	Description of Regulation	Subject of Regulation	Repeal Status	Judicial Review
			the Supreme Court. To Which are Prefixed the Declaration of Independence, Constitution of the United States, Treaty of Guadalupe Hidalgo, Proclamations to the People of California, Constitution of the State of California, Act of Admission, and United States Naturalization Laws, with Notes of California Decisions Thereon, at 261, § 1 (1868)				
79	1864	Montana [Territory]	1864 Mont. Laws 355, An Act to Prevent the Carrying of Concealed Deadly Weapons in the Cities and Towns of This Territory, § 1	Prohibited the carrying of a concealed "any pistol, bowie-knife, dagger, or other deadly weapon" within any town or village in the territory. Punishable by fine of $25-100.	Pistol; Bowie knife; Dagger; Other deadly weapon		
80	1865	Utah [Territory]	An Act in relation to Crimes and Punishment, Ch. XXII, Title VII, Sec. 102, in Acts, Resolutions and Memorials Passed at the Several Annual Sessions of the Legislative Assembly of the Territory of Utah 59 (Henry McEwan 1866), § 102	Prohibited the "set[ting] of any gun." Punishable by imprisonment of up to 1 year or a fine of up to $500.	Trap gun		

No.	Year of Enactment	Jurisdiction	Citation	Description of Regulation	Subject of Regulation	Repeal Status	Judicial Review
81	1866	New York	Montgomery Hunt Throop, The Revised Statutes of the State of New York; As Altered by Subsequent Legislation; Together with the Other Statutory Provisions of a General and Permanent Nature Now in Force, Passed from the Year 1778 to the Close of the Session of the Legislature of 1881, Arranged in Connection with the Same or kindred Subjects in the Revised Statutes; To Which are Added References to Judicial Decisions upon the Provisions Contained in the Text, Explanatory Notes, and a Full and Complete Index, at 2512 (Vol. 3, 1882), An Act to Prevent the Furtive Possession and use of slungshot and other dangerous weapons, ch. 716, § 1	Prohibited using, attempting to use, concealing, or possessing a slungshot, billy, sandclub or metal knuckles, and any dirk or dagger, or sword cane or air-gun. Punishable by imprisonment for up to 1 year and/or a fine up to $500.	Slungshot; Billy; Sandclub; Metal knuckles; Dirk; Dagger; Sword cane; Air gun		
82	1866	North Carolina	1866 N.C. L. ch. 21, at 33-34, § 11	Imposed a $1 tax on every dirk, Bowie knife, pistol, sword cane, dirk cane, and rifle cane used or worn during the year.	Dirk; Bowie knife; Pistol; Sword cane;		

No.	Year of Enactment	Jurisdiction	Citation	Description of Regulation	Subject of Regulation	Repeal Status	Judicial Review
					Dirk cane; Rifle cane		
83	1867	Alabama	1867 Ala. Rev. Code 169	Tax of $2 on pistols or revolvers in the possession of private persons, excluding dealers, and a tax of $3 on "all bowie knives, or knives of the like description." Non-payment was punishable by seizure and, unless payment was made within 10 days with a penalty of an additional 50%, subject to sale by public auction.	Pistol; Bowie knife		
84	1867	Colorado [Territory]	1867 Colo. Sess. Laws 229, § 149	Prohibited the concealed carrying of any pistol, Bowie knife, dagger, or other deadly weapon within any city, town, or village in the territory. Punishable by fine of $5-35. Exempted sheriffs, constables, and police officers when performing their official duties.	Pistol; Bowie knife; Dagger; Other deadly weapon		
85	1867	Tennessee – City of Memphis	William H. Bridges, Digest of the Charters and Ordinances of the City of Memphis, from 1826 to 1867, Inclusive, Together with the Acts of the Legislature Relating to the City, with an Appendix, at 44 (1867), Police Regulations of the State, Offences Against Public	Prohibited the carrying of a concealed Bowie knife, Arkansas tooth pick, dirk, sword cane, Spanish stiletto, belt or pocket pistol, or other knife or weapon. Also prohibited selling such a weapon or using such a weapon to threaten people.	Bowie knife; Arkansas toothpick; Dirk; Sword cane; Spanish stiletto; Belt; Pocket pistol; Other knife or weapon		

No.	Year of Enactment	Jurisdiction	Citation	Description of Regulation	Subject of Regulation	Repeal Status	Judicial Review
			Peace, §§ 4746, 4747, 4753, 4757				
86	1867	Tennessee – City of Memphis	William H. Bridges, Digest of the Charters and Ordinances of the City of Memphis, from 1826 to 1867, Inclusive, Together with the Acts of the Legislature Relating to the City, with an Appendix, at 50 (1867), Police Regulations of the State. Selling Liquors or Weapons to Minors, § 4864	Prohibited selling, loaning, or giving to a minor a pistol, Bowie knife, dirk, Arkansas tooth-pick, hunter's knife, or like dangerous weapon, except a gun for hunting or self defense in traveling. Punishable by fine of minimum $25 and imprisonment.	Pistol; Bowie knife; Dirk; Arkansas toothpick; Hunter's knife; Dangerous weapon		
87	1868	Alabama	Wade Keyes, The Code of Alabama, 1876, ch. 3, § 4111 (Act of Aug. 5, 1868, at 1)	Prohibited the carrying of any rifle or "shot-gun walking cane." Punishable by fine of $500-1000 and imprisonment of no less than 2 years.	Rifle; Shotgun walking cane		
88	1868	Florida	Fla. Act of Aug. 8, 1868, as codified in Fla. Rev. Stat., tit. 2, pt. 5 (1892), at 2425	Prohibited the manufacture or sale of slungshots or metallic knuckles. Punishable by imprisonment for up to 6 months or a fine up to $100.	Slungshot; Metallic knuckles		
89	1868	Florida	1868 Fla. Laws 2538, Persons Engaged in Criminal Offence, Having Weapons, ch. 7, § 10	Prohibited the carrying of a slungshot, metallic knuckles, billies, firearms or other dangerous weapon if arrested for committing a criminal offence or disturbance of the peace. Punishable by imprisonment up to 3 months or a fine up to $100.	Slungshot; Metallic knuckles; Billy; Firearms; Other dangerous weapon		

No.	Year of Enactment	Jurisdiction	Citation	Description of Regulation	Subject of Regulation	Repeal Status	Judicial Review
90	1868	Florida	James F McClellan, A Digest of the Laws of the State of Florida: From the Year One Thousand Eight Hundred and Twenty-Two, to the Eleventh Day of March, One Thousand Eight Hundred and Eighty-One, Inclusive, at 403 (1881), Offences Against Public Peace, § 13 (Fla. Act of Aug. 6, 1868, ch. 1637)	Prohibited the carrying "about or on their person" any dirk, pistol or other arm or weapon, except a "common pocket knife." Punishable by fine up to $100 or imprisonment up to 6 months.	Dirk; Pistol; Other arm or weapon		
91	1869	Tennessee	1869-70 Tenn. L. 23-24, ch. 22	Prohibited the carrying of any "pistol, dirk, bowie-knife, Arkansas tooth-pick," any weapon resembling a bowie knife or Arkansas toothpick, "or other deadly or dangerous weapon" while "attending any election" or at "any fair, race course, or public assembly of the people."	Pistol; Dirk; Bowie knife; Arkansas toothpick; Other "deadly or dangerous weapon"		*Andrews v. State*, 50 Tenn. 165 (1871) (upheld under state constitution)
92	1869	Washington [Territory]	1869 Wash. Sess. Laws 203-04, An Act Relative to Crimes and Punishments, and Proceedings in Criminal Cases, ch. 2, § 32	Prohibited exhibiting, in a rude, angry, or threatening manner, a pistol, Bowie knife, or other dangerous weapon. Punishable by imprisonment up to 1 year and a fine up to $500.	Pistol; Bowie knife; Other dangerous weapon		
93	1870	Georgia	1870 Ga. L. 421, ch. 285	Prohibited the open or concealed carry of "any dirk, bowie-knife, pistol or revolver, or any kind of deadly weapon" at "any court of	Dirk; Bowie knife; Pistol; Revolver;	Law enforcement exception added in	*Hill v. State*, 53 Ga. 472 (1874) (upheld

No.	Year of Enactment	Jurisdiction	Citation	Description of Regulation	Subject of Regulation	Repeal Status	Judicial Review
				justice, or any general election ground or precinct, or any other public gathering," except for militia musters.	Any kind of deadly weapon	1879. *See* 1879 Ga. L. 64, ch. 266	under state constitution)
94	1870	Louisiana	1870 La. Acts 159–60, An Act to Regulate the Conduct and to Maintain the Freedom of Party Election . . ., § 73	Prohibited the carrying of a concealed or open gun, pistol, Bowie knife or other dangerous weapon on an election day during the hours the polls are open or during registration. Punishable by fine of minimum $100 and imprisonment of minimum 1 month.	Gun; Pistol; Bowie knife; Other dangerous weapon		
95	1870	New York	"The Man Trap," The Buffalo Commercial, Nov. 1, 1870	Referenced prohibition on the use of "infernal machines."	Trap gun; Infernal machine		
96	1871	Arkansas – City of Little Rock	George Eugene Dodge, A Digest of the Laws and Ordinances of the City of Little Rock, with the Constitution of State of Arkansas, General Incorporation Laws, and All Acts of the General Assembly Relating to the City 230-31 (1871)	Prohibited carrying of a pistol, revolver, Bowie knife, dirk, rifle, shot gun, slungshot, colt, or metal knuckles while engaged in a breach of the peace. Punishable by a fine of $25-500.	Pistol; Revolver; Bowie knife; Dirk; Rifle; Shotgun; Slungshot; Colt; Metal knuckles		
97	1871	District of Columbia	An Act to Prevent the Carrying of Concealed Weapons, Aug. 10, 1871, reprinted in Laws of the District of Columbia: 1871-1872, Part II, 33 (1872) (Dist. of Col., An	Prohibited the carrying or having concealed "any deadly or dangerous weapons, such as daggers, air-guns, pistols, Bowie knives, dirk-knives, or dirks, razors, razor-blades, sword-canes, slungshots, or brass or	Dangerous weapon; Dagger; Air-guns; Pistols; Bowie knife; Dirk;		

No.	Year of Enactment	Jurisdiction	Citation	Description of Regulation	Subject of Regulation	Repeal Status	Judicial Review
			Act to Prevent the Carrying of Concealed Weapons, 1871, ch. XXV)	other metal knuckles." Punishable by forfeiture of the weapon and a fine of $20-50.	Razor; Sword-cane; Slungshot; Metal knuckles		
98	1871	Mississippi	1871 Miss. L. 819-20, ch. 33	Imposed property tax on pistols, dirks, Bowie knives, and sword canes.	Pistol; Dirk; Bowie knife; Sword cane	*See also* 1876 Miss. L. 131, 134, ch. 103; 1878 Miss. L. 27, 29, ch. 3; 1880 Miss. L. 21, ch. 6; 1892 Miss L. 194, ch. 74; 1894 Miss L. 27, ch. 32	
991	1871	Missouri – City of St. Louis	Everett Wilson Pattison, The Revised Ordinance of the City of St. Louis, Together with the Constitution of the United States, and of the State of Missouri; the Charter of the City; and a Digest of the Acts of the General Assembly, Relating to the City, at 491-92 (1871), Ordinances of the City of St. Louis, Misdemeanors, §§ 9-10.	Prohibited the carrying of a concealed pistol, or revolver, colt, billy, slungshot, cross knuckles, or knuckles of lead, brass or other metal, Bowie knife, razor, dirk knife, dirk, dagger, or any knife resembling a Bowie knife, or any other dangerous or deadly weapon without written permission from the Mayor. Punishable by fine of $10-500.	Pistol; Revolver; Colt; Billy; Slungshot; Cross knuckles; Metal knuckles; Bowie knife; Razor; Dirk; Dagger; Any knife resembling a bowie knife; Other dangerous or deadly weapon		

No.	Year of Enactment	Jurisdiction	Citation	Description of Regulation	Subject of Regulation	Repeal Status	Judicial Review
100	1871	Tennessee	James H. Shankland Public Statutes of the State of Tennessee, since the Year 1858. Being in the Nature of a Supplement to the Code, at 108 (Nashville, 1871)	Prohibited the carrying of a pistol, dirk, Bowie knife, Arkansas tooth pick, or other weapon in the shape of those weapons, to an election site. Punishable by fine of minimum $50 and imprisonment at the discretion of the court.	Pistol; Dirk; Bowie knife; Arkansas toothpick		
101	1871	Texas	1871 Tex. Laws 25, An Act to Regulate the Keeping and Bearing of Deadly Weapons. § 1	Prohibited the carrying of a concealed pistol, dirk, dagger, slungshot, sword cane, spear, brass knuckles, Bowie knife, or any other kind of knife used for offense or defense, unless carried openly for self-defense. Punishable by fine of $20-100, forfeiture of the weapon, and for subsequent offenses, imprisonment up to 60 days.	Pistol; Dirk; Dagger; Slungshot; Sword cane; Spear; Metal knuckles; Bowie knife; Any other kind of knife used for offense or defense		*English v. State*, 35 Tex. 473 (1872) (upheld as constitutional under Second Amendment and Texas Constitution); *State v. Duke*, 42 Tex. 455 (1875) (upheld as constitutional under Texas Constitution)
102	1871	Texas	Tex. Act of Apr. 12, 1871, as codified in Tex. Penal Code (1879). Art. 163.	Prohibited the carrying of a concealed or open gun, pistol, Bowie knife, or other dangerous weapon within a half mile of a polling site on an election day. Also prohibited generally carrying a pistol, dirk, dagger, slungshot, sword cane, spear, brass knuckles, Bowie knife, or	Pistol; Dirk; Dagger; Slungshot; Sword cane; Spear; Brass-knuckles; Bowie knife;		

No.	Year of Enactment	Jurisdiction	Citation	Description of Regulation	Subject of Regulation	Repeal Status	Judicial Review
				other kind of knife used for offense or defense. Punishable by fine and forfeiture of the weapon.	Other dangerous weapon; Other knife used for offense or defense		
103	1872	Maryland – City of Annapolis	1872 Md. Laws 57, An Act to Add an Additional Section to Article Two of the Code of Public Local Laws, Entitled "Anne Arundel County," Sub-title "Annapolis," to Prevent the Carrying of Concealed Weapons in Said City, § 246	Prohibited the carrying of a concealed pistol, dirk-knife, Bowie knife, slingshot, billy, razor, brass, iron or other metal knuckles, or any other deadly weapon. Punishable by a fine of $3-10.	Pistol; Dirk; Bowie knife; Slingshot; Billy; Razor; Brass; Metal knuckles; Other deadly weapon		
104	1872	Nebraska – City of Nebraska	Gilbert B. Colfield, Laws, Ordinances and Rules of Nebraska City, Otoe County, Nebraska, at 36 (1872), Ordinance No. 7, An Ordinance Prohibiting the Carrying of Fire Arms and Concealed Weapons, § 1	Prohibited the carrying openly or concealed of a musket, rifle, shot gun, pistol, sabre, sword, Bowie knife, dirk, sword cane, billy slungshot, brass or other metallic knuckles, or any other dangerous or deadly weapons.	Musket; Rifle; Shot gun; Pistol; Sabre; Sword; Bowie knife; Dirk; Sword cane; Billy; Slungshot; Metal knuckles; Other dangerous or		

No.	Year of Enactment	Jurisdiction	Citation	Description of Regulation	Subject of Regulation	Repeal Status	Judicial Review
					deadly weapons		
105	1873	Alabama	Wade Keyes, The Code of Alabama, 1876, ch. 3, § 4110 (Act of Apr. 8, 1873, p. 130)	Prohibited the concealed carrying of any brass knuckles, slungshots, or "other weapon of like kind or description." Punishable by a fine of $20-200 and imprisonment or term of hard labor not to exceed 6 months.	Metal knuckles; Slungshot		*State v. Reid*, 1 Ala. 612 (1840) (upheld under Alabama Constitution); *Whatley v. State*, 49 Ala. 355 (1947) (necessity required).
106	1873	Georgia	R. H. Clark, The Code of the State of Georgia (1873) § 4528	Prohibited the carrying of any dirk, Bowie knife, pistol, or other deadly weapon to a court, election site, precinct, place of worship, or other public gathering site. Punishable by fine of $20-50 or imprisonment for 10-20 days.	Dirk; Bowie knife; Pistol; Any kind of deadly weapon		
107	1873	Massachusetts	1850 Mass. Gen. Law, ch. 194, §§ 1, 2, as codified in Mass. Gen. Stat., ch. 164 (1873) § 10	Prohibited the carrying of a slungshot, metallic knuckles, bills, or other dangerous weapon if arrested pursuant to a warrant or while committing a crime. Punishable by fine.	Slungshot; Metallic knuckles; Billy; Other dangerous weapon		
108	1873	Massachusetts	1850 Mass. Gen. Law, ch. 194, §§ 1, 2 as codified in Mass. Gen. Stat., ch. 164 (1873) § 11	Prohibited manufacturing or selling a slungshot or metallic knuckles. Punishable by fine up	Slungshot; Metallic knuckles		

No.	Year of Enactment	Jurisdiction	Citation	Description of Regulation	Subject of Regulation	Repeal Status	Judicial Review
				to $50 or imprisonment up to 6 months.			
109	1873	Minnesota	The Statutes at Large of the State of Minnesota: Comprising the General Statutes of 1866 as Amended by Subsequent Legislation to the Close of the Session of 1873: Together with All Laws of a General Nature in Force, March 7, A.D. 1873 with References to Judicial Decisions of the State of Minnesota, and of Other States Whose Statutes are Similar to Which are Prefixed the Constitution of the United States, the Organic Act, the Act Authorizing a State Government, and the Constitution of the State of Minnesota, at 993 (Vol. 2, 1873), Of Crimes and Their Punishment, Setting Spring Guns Unlawful, § 64-65	Prohibited the setting of any spring or trap gun. Punished by imprisonment for at least 6 months or a fine of up to $500 if no injury results; imprisonment for up to 5 years if non-fatal injury results; and imprisonment for 10-15 years if death results.	Spring gun; Trap gun		
110	1873	Nevada	Bonnifield, The Compiled Laws of the State of Nevada. Embracing Statutes of 1861 to 1873,	Prohibited dueling and killing a person with a rifle, shotgun, pistol, Bowie knife, dirk, small	Rifle; Shotgun; Pistol; Bowie knife;		

No.	Year of Enactment	Jurisdiction	Citation	Description of Regulation	Subject of Regulation	Repeal Status	Judicial Review
			Inclusive, at 563 (Vol. 1, 1873), Of Crimes and Punishments, §§ 35-36	sword, backsword, or other dangerous weapon.	Dirk; Small sword; Back sword; Other dangerous weapon		
111	1873	Tennessee	Seymour Dwight Thompson, A Compilation of the Statute Laws of the State of Tennessee, of a General and Permanent Nature, Compiled on the Basis of the Code of Tennessee, With Notes and References, Including Acts of Session of 1870-1871, at 125 (Vol. 2, 1873), Offences Against Public Policy and Economy, § 4864	Prohibited selling, loaning, or giving to a minor a pistol, Bowie knife, dirk, Arkansas tooth-pick, hunter's knife, or like dangerous weapon, except a gun for hunting or self defense in traveling. Punishable by fine of minimum $25 and imprisonment for a term determined by the court.	Pistol; Bowie knife; Dirk; Arkansas toothpick; Hunter's knife; Dangerous weapon		
112	1874	Alabama	1874 Ala. L. 41, ch. 1	Imposed $25 occupational tax on dealers of pistols, Bowie knives, and dirk knives.	Pistol; Bowie knife; Dirk	Increased tax to $50 in 1875-76.	
113	1874	Illinois	Harvey Bostwick Hurd, The Revised Statutes of the State of Illinois. A. D. 1874. Comprising the Revised Acts of 1871-72 and 1873-74, Together with All Other General Statutes of the State, in Force on the First Day of July, 1874, at 360 (1874),	Prohibited the carrying a concealed weapon, including a pistol, knife, slungshot, brass, steel, or iron knuckles, or other deadly weapon while disturbing the peace. Punishable by fine up to $100.	Pistol; Knife; Slungshot; Other deadly weapon		

No.	Year of Enactment	Jurisdiction	Citation	Description of Regulation	Subject of Regulation	Repeal Status	Judicial Review
			Disorderly Conduct: Disturbing the Peace, § 56				
114	1874	New Jersey – City of Jersey City	Ordinances of Jersey City, Passed by the Board of Aldermen since May 1, 1871, under the Act Entitled "An Act to Re-organize the Local Government of Jersey City," Passed March 31, 1871, and the Supplements Thereto, at 41 (1874), An Ordinance to Prevent the Carrying of Loaded or Concealed Weapons within the Limits of Jersey City. The Mayor and Aldermen of Jersey City do ordain as follows: §§ 1-2	Prohibited the carrying of a concealed slungshot, billy, sandclub or metal knuckles, and any dirk or dagger (not contained as a blade of a pocket-knife), and loaded pistol or other dangerous weapon, including a sword in a cane, or air-gun. punishable by confiscation of the weapon and a fine of up to $20. Exempted policemen of Jersey City.	Slungshot; Billy; Sandclub; Metal knuckles; Dirk; Dagger; Pistol; Other dangerous weapon; Sword cane; Air gun		
115	1874	Virginia	1874 Va. L. 239, ch. 239	Included the value of all "rifles, muskets, and other fire-arms, bowie-knives, dirks, and all weapons of a similar kind" in list of taxable personal property.	Rifle; Musket; Other firearm; Bowie knife; Dirk		
116	1875	Alabama	1875-1876 Ala. L. 82, ch. 1	Imposed $50 occupational tax on dealers of pistols, Bowie knives, and dirk knives.	Pistol; Bowie knife; Dirk	Added pistol cartridges in 1886 and increased the tax to $300 in 1887.	

No.	Year of Enactment	Jurisdiction	Citation	Description of Regulation	Subject of Regulation	Repeal Status	Judicial Review
117	1875	Alabama	1875-1876 Ala. L. 46, ch. 2	Imposed tax rate of 0.75% of the value of any pistols, guns, dirks, and Bowie knives.	Pistols; Guns; Dirks; Bowie knives	Tax rate reduced to 55 cents in 1882, with additional weapons added.	
118	1875	Arkansas	Act of Feb. 16, 1875, 1874-75 Ark. Acts 156, § 1	Prohibited the carrying in public of any "pistol, gun, knife, dirk, bludgeon, or other offensive weapon, with intent to assault any person." Punishable by a fine of $25-100.	Pistol; Dirk; Butcher knife; Bowie knife; Sword cane; Metal knuckles		*Wilson v. State*, 33 Ark. 557 (1878) (held unconstitutional).
119	1875	Idaho [Territory]	Crimes and Punishments, in Compiled and Revised Laws of the Territory of Idaho 354 (M. Kelly, Territorial Printer 1875), § 133.	Prohibited the carrying of "any pistol, gun, knife, dirk, bludgeon, or other offensive weapon, with intent to assault any person." Punishable by imprisonment for up to 3 months or a fine up to $100.	Pick-lock; Crow-key; Bit; Other instrument or tool; Pistol; Knife; Dirk; Bludgeon; Other offensive weapon		
120	1875	Indiana	1875 Ind. Acts 62, An Act Defining Certain Misdemeanors, and Prescribing Penalties Therefore, § 1	Prohibited the drawing or threatening to use a pistol, dirk, knife, slungshot, or any other deadly or dangerous weapon. Punishable by fine of $1-500, and potentially imprisonment up to 6 months.	Pistol; Dirk; Knife; Slungshot; Other deadly or dangerous weapon		

No.	Year of Enactment	Jurisdiction	Citation	Description of Regulation	Subject of Regulation	Repeal Status	Judicial Review
121	1875	Michigan	1875 Mich. Pub. Acts 136, An Act To Prevent The Setting Of Guns And Other Dangerous Devices, § 1	Prohibited the setting of any spring or trap gun.	Spring gun; Trap gun		
122	1876	Alabama	1876-77 Ala. Code 882, § 4109	Prohibited the carrying of a Bowie knife, pistol, or air gun, or any other weapon of "like kind or description," unless threatened with or having good cause to fear an attack or while traveling or setting out on a journey. Punishable by a fine of $50-300 and imprisonment or hard labor for no more than 6 months.	Bowie knife; Pistol; Air gun; Other similar weapon		*State v. Reid*, 1 Ala. 612 (1840) (upheld under Alabama Constitution); *Whatley v. State*, 49 Ala. 355 (1947) (necessity required).
123	1876	Colorado	1876 Colo. Sess. Laws 304, § 154	Prohibited the carrying with intent to assault another any pistol, gun, knife, dirk, bludgeon, or other offensive weapon.	Pistol; Gun; Knife; Dirk; Bludgeon; Other offensive weapon		
124	1876	Georgia	1876 Ga. L. 112, ch. 128	Prohibited the transfer of any pistol, dirk, Bowie knife, or sword cane to a minor.	Pistol; Dirk; Bowie knife; Sword cane		
125	1876	Illinois – Village of Hyde Park	Consider H. Willett, Laws and Ordinances Governing the Village of Hyde Park [Illinois] Together with Its Charter and General Laws	Prohibited the carrying a concealed pistol, revolver, slungshot, knuckles, Bowie knife, dirk knife, dirk, dagger, or any other dangerous or deadly	Pistol; Revolver; Slungshot; Knuckles; Bowie knife;		

No.	Year of Enactment	Jurisdiction	Citation	Description of Regulation	Subject of Regulation	Repeal Status	Judicial Review
			Affecting Municipal Corporations; Special Ordinances and Charters under Which Corporations Have Vested Rights in the Village. Also, Summary of Decisions of the Supreme Court Relating to Municipal Corporations, Taxation and Assessments, at 64 (1876), Misdemeanors, § 39	weapon without written permission from the Captain of Police. Exempted peace officers.	Dirk; Dagger; Other dangerous or deadly weapon		
126	1876	Wyoming [Territory]	Wyo. Comp. Laws (1876) ch. 35, § 127, as codified in Wyo. Rev. Stat., Crimes (1887), Having possession of offensive weapons, § 1027	Prohibited the carrying of a pistol, knife, dirk, bludgeon, or other offensive weapon with the intent to assault a person. Punishable by fine up to $500 or imprisonment up to 6 months.	Pistol; Knife; Dirk; Bludgeon; Other offensive weapon		
127	1877	Alabama	Wade Keyes, The Code of Alabama, 1876, ch. 6, § 4230	Prohibited the sale, giving, or lending of any pistol, Bowie knife, or "like knife" to any boy under the age of 18.	Pistol; Bowie knife		*Coleman v. State*, 32 Ala. 581 (1858) (affirming conviction of letting minor obtain a pistol).
128	1877	Alabama	Wade Keyes, The Code of Alabama, 1876, ch. 3, § 4109	Prohibited the concealed carrying of any Bowie knife, or any other knife of like kind or description, pistol, air gun, slungshot, brass knuckles, or other deadly or dangerous weapon, unless the person was	Bowie knife; Pistol; Air gun; Slungshot; Metal knuckles; Other deadly or		

No.	Year of Enactment	Jurisdiction	Citation	Description of Regulation	Subject of Regulation	Repeal Status	Judicial Review
				threatened with, or had good reason to apprehend, an attack, or "while traveling, or setting out on a journey." Punishable by fine of $50-300 and imprisonment of not more than 6 months.	dangerous weapon		
129	1877	Colorado – Town of Georgetown	Edward O. Wolcott, The Ordinances of Georgetown [Colorado] Passed June 7th, A.D. 1877, at 100, § 9	Prohibited the concealed carrying of any pistol, Bowie knife, dagger, or other deadly weapon. Punishable by a fine of $5-50.	Pistol; Bowie knife; Dagger; Other deadly weapon		
130	1877	New Jersey	Mercer Beasley, Revision of the Statutes of New Jersey: Published under the Authority of the Legislature; by Virtue of an Act Approved April 4, 1871, at 304 (1877), An Act Concerning Disorderly Persons, § 2	Prohibited The carrying of "any pistol, hanger, cutlass, bludgeon, or other offensive weapon, with intent to assault any person." Punishable as a "disorderly person."	Pistol; Hanger; Cutlass; Bludgeon; Other offensive weapon		
131	1877	South Dakota [Territory]	S.D. Terr. Pen. Code (1877), § 457 as codified in S.D. Rev. Code, Penal Code (1903), §§ 470-471.	Prohibited the carrying, "whether concealed or not," of any slungshot, and prohibited the concealed carrying of any firearms or sharp or dangerous weapons.	Slungshot; Firearm; Sharp or dangerous weapon		
132	1877	Utah – City of Provo [Territory]	Chapter 5: Offenses Against the Person, undated, reprinted in The Revised Ordinances Of Provo City, Containing All The Ordinances In Force	Prohibited carrying a pistol, or other firearm, slungshot, false knuckles, Bowie knife, dagger or any other "dangerous or deadly weapon." Punishable by fine up to $25.	Pistol; Other firearm; Slungshot; Metal knuckles; Bowie knife;		

No.	Year of Enactment	Jurisdiction	Citation	Description of Regulation	Subject of Regulation	Repeal Status	Judicial Review
			105, 106-07 (1877) (Provo, Utah). § 182:		Dagger; Other dangerous or deadly weapon		
133	1878	Alabama – City of Uniontown	1878 Ala. L. 437, ch. 314	Authorized Uniontown to license dealers of pistols, Bowie knives, and dirk knives.	Pistol; Bowie knife; Dirk	Added dealers of "brass knuckles" in 1884. Similar to law enacted in 1884 authorizing Tuscaloosa to regulate dealers in pistols, Bowie knives, shotguns or firearms, and knives "of like kind or description." 1884-1885 Ala. 323, ch. 197	
134	1878	Mississippi	1878 Miss. Laws 175, An Act to Prevent the Carrying of Concealed Weapons and for Other Purposes, § 1	Prohibited the carrying of a concealed Bowie knife, pistol, brass knuckles, slungshot or other deadly weapon. Excepted travels other than "a tramp." Punishable by fine of $5-100.	Bowie knife; Pistol; Brass knuckles; Slungshot; Other deadly weapon	Prohibited weapons were expanded in 1896	

No.	Year of Enactment	Jurisdiction	Citation	Description of Regulation	Subject of Regulation	Repeal Status	Judicial Review
135	1879	Alabama – City of Montgomery	J. M. Falkner, The Code of Ordinances of the City Council of Montgomery [Alabama] (1879), § 428	Prohibited carrying of a concealed Bowie knife, pistol, air gun, slungshot, brass knuckles, or other deadly or dangerous weapon. Punishable by a fine of $1-100.	Bowie knife; Pistol; Air gun; Slungshot; Metal knuckles; Other deadly or dangerous weapon		
136	1879	Idaho – City of Boise [Territory]	Charter and Revised Ordinances of Boise City, Idaho. In Effect April 12, 1894, at 118-19 (1894), Carrying Concealed Weapons, § 36	Prohibited the carrying a concealed Bowie knife, dirk knife, pistol or sword in cane, slungshot, metallic knuckles, or other dangerous or deadly weapon, unless traveling or setting out on a journey. Punishable by fine up to $25 and/or imprisonment up to 20 days.	Bowie knife; Dirk; Pistol; Sword cane; Slungshot; Metallic knuckles; Other dangerous or deadly weapons		*State v. Hart*, 66 Idaho 217 (1945) (upheld under state constitution)
137	1879	Louisiana	La. Const. of 1879, art. III	Provided the right to bear arms, but authorizes the passage of laws restricting the carrying of concealed weapons.	Concealed weapons		
138	1879	Montana [Territory]	1879 Mont. Laws 359, Offences against the Lives and Persons of Individuals, ch. 4, § 23	Prohibited dueling and killing a person involved with a rifle, shot-gun, pistol, Bowie knife, dirk, small-sword, back-sword, or other dangerous weapon. Punishable by death by hanging.	Rifle; Shotgun; Pistol; Bowie knife; Dirk; Small sword; Back sword; Other		

No.	Year of Enactment	Jurisdiction	Citation	Description of Regulation	Subject of Regulation	Repeal Status	Judicial Review
					dangerous weapon		
139	1879	North Carolina	North Carolina: N.C. Sess. Laws (1879), ch. 127, as codified in North Carolina Code, Crim. Code, ch. 25 (1883) § 1005, Concealed weapons, the carrying or unlawfully, a misdemeanor	Prohibited the concealed carrying of any pistol, Bowie knife, dirk, dagger, slungshot, loaded case, metal knuckles, razor, or other deadly weapon. Exemption for carrying on the owner's premises. Punishable by fine or imprisonment at the discretion of the court.	Pistol; Bowie knife; Dirk; Dagger; Slungshot; Metal knuckles; Razor; Other deadly weapon		
140	1880	Ohio	Michael Augustus Daugherty, The Revised Statutes and Other Acts of a General Nature of the State of Ohio: In Force January 1, 1880, at 1633 (Vol. 2, 1879), Offences Against Public Peace, § 6892	Prohibited the concealed carrying of any pistol, Bowie knife, dirk, or other dangerous weapon. Punishable by a fine of up to $200 or imprisonment for up to 30 days for the first offense, and a fine of up to $500 or imprisonment for up to 3 months for the second offense.	Pistol; Bowie knife; Other dangerous weapon		
141	1880	South Carolina	1880 S.C. Acts 448, § 1, as codified in S.C. Rev. Stat. (1894), § 129	Prohibited the carrying of a concealed pistol, dirk, dagger, slungshot, metal knuckles, razor, or other deadly weapon. Punishable by fine up to $200 and/or imprisonment up to 1 year.	Pistol; Dirk; Dagger; Slungshot; Metal knuckles; Razor; Other deadly weapon		
142	1881	Alabama	1880-1881 Ala. L. 38-39, ch. 44	Prohibited the concealed carrying of any Bowie knife, or any other knife of like kind or	Bowie knife; Pistol; Air gun;	Amended in 2022 to remove	

No.	Year of Enactment	Jurisdiction	Citation	Description of Regulation	Subject of Regulation	Repeal Status	Judicial Review
				description, pistol, or firearm of "any other kind or description," or air gun. Punishable by fine of $50-300 and imprisonment of not more than 6 months. Further provided that fines collected under the statute would be monetary and not in-kind payments.	Slungshot; Metal knuckles; Other deadly or dangerous weapon	prohibition on concealed carry of Bowie knives. *See* Ala. Stat. § 13A-11-50.	
143	1881	Arkansas	1881 Ark. Acts 191, ch. 96, § 1-2	Prohibited the carrying of any dirk, Bowie knife, sword, spear cane, metal knuckles, razor, or any pistol (except pistols that are used in the Army or Navy if carried openly in the hand).	Dirk; Bowie knife; Sword; Spear cane; Metal knuckles; Razor; Pistol		
144	1881	Colorado	Colo. Rev. Stat 1774, § 248 (1881)	Prohibited the concealed carrying of any firearms, any pistol, revolver, Bowie knife, dagger, slingshot, brass knuckles, or other deadly weapon, unless authorized by chief of police.	Pistol; Revolver; Bowie knife; Dagger; Slingshot; Metal knuckles; Other deadly weapon		
145	1881	Delaware	1881 Del. Laws 987, An Act Providing for the Punishment of Persons Carrying Concealed Deadly Weapons, ch. 548, § 1	Prohibited the carrying of concealed deadly weapons or selling deadly weapons other than an ordinary pocket knife to minors. Punishable by a fine of $25-200 or imprisonment for 10-30 days.	Deadly weapon		

No.	Year of Enactment	Jurisdiction	Citation	Description of Regulation	Subject of Regulation	Repeal Status	Judicial Review
146	1881	Illinois	Ill. Act of Apr. 16, 1881, as codified in Ill. Stat. Ann., Crim. Code 73 (1885), ch. 38, Possession or sale forbidden, § 1	Prohibited the possession, selling, loaning, or hiring for barter of a slungshot or metallic knuckles or other deadly weapon. Punishable as a misdemeanor.	Slungshot; Metallic knuckles; Other deadline weapon		
147	1881	Illinois	Harvey Bostwick Hurd, Late Commissioner, The Revised Statutes of the State of Illinois. 1882. Comprising the "Revised Statutes of 1874," and All Amendments Thereto, Together with the General Acts of 1875, 1877, 1879, 1881 and 1882, Being All the General Statutes of the State, in Force on the First Day of December, 1882, at 375 (1882), Deadly Weapons: Selling or Giving to Minor, § 54b.	Prohibited selling, giving, loaning, hiring for barter any minor a pistol, revolver, derringer, Bowie knife, dirk or other deadly weapon. Punishable by fine of $25-200.	Pistol; Revolver; Derringer; Bowie knife; Dirk; Other deadly weapon		
148	1881	Indiana	The Revised Statutes of Indiana: Containing, Also, the United States and Indiana Constitutions and an Appendix of Historical Documents. Vol. 1, at 366 (1881), Crimes, § 1957	Prohibited maliciously or mischievously shooting a gun, rifle, pistol, or other missile or weapon, or throwing a stone, stick, club, or other substance at a vehicle. Punishable by imprisonment for 30 days to 1 year and a fine of $10-100.	Gun; Rifle; Pistol; Other missile or weapon; Stone; Stick; Club; Other substance		

No.	Year of Enactment	Jurisdiction	Citation	Description of Regulation	Subject of Regulation	Repeal Status	Judicial Review
149	1881	Nevada	David E. Baily, The General Statutes of the State of Nevada. In Force. From 1861 to 1885, Inclusive. With Citations of the Decisions of the Supreme Court Relating Thereto, at 1077 (1885), An Act to prohibit the carrying of concealed weapons by minors, § 1	Prohibited a minor from carrying a concealed dirk, pistol, sword in case, slungshot, or other dangerous or deadly weapon. Punishable by fine of $20-200 and/or imprisonment of 30 days to 6 months.	Dirk; Pistol; Sword in case; Slungshot; Other dangerous or deadly weapon		
150	1881	New York	George S. Diossy, The Statute Law of the State of New York: Comprising the Revised Statutes and All Other Laws of General Interest, in Force January 1, 1881, Arranged Alphabetically According to Subjects, at 321 (Vol. 1, 1881), Offenses Against Public Decency; Malicious Mischief, and Other Crimes not Before Enumerated, Concealed Weapons, § 9	Prohibited using, attempting to use, or concealing a slungshot, billy, sandclub or metal knuckles, and any dirk. Punishable by imprisonment for up to 1 year and/or a fine up to $500.	Slungshot; Billy; Sandclub; Metal knuckles; Dirk		
151	1881	Tennessee – City of Nashville	William King McAlister Jr., Ordinances of the City of Nashville, to Which are Prefixed the State Laws Chartering and Relating to the City, with an Appendix, at 340-41	Prohibited the carrying of pistol, Bowie knife, dirk, slungshot, brass knuckles, or other deadly weapon. Punishable by fine of $10-50 for a first offense and $50 for subsequent offenses.	Pistol; Bowie knife; Dirk; Slungshot; Metal knuckles;		

No.	Year of Enactment	Jurisdiction	Citation	Description of Regulation	Subject of Regulation	Repeal Status	Judicial Review
			(1881), Ordinances of the City of Nashville, Carrying Pistols, Bowie-Knives, Etc., § 1		Other deadly weapon		
152	1881	Washington [Territory]	1881 Wash. Code 181, Criminal Procedure, Offenses Against Public Policy, ch. 73, § 929	Prohibited the carrying of "any concealed weapon." Punishable by fine up to $100 or imprisonment up to 30 days.	Concealed weapon		
153	1881	Washington – City of New Tacoma [Territory]	1881 Wash. Sess. Laws 76, An Act to Confer a City Govt. on New Tacoma, ch. 6, § 34, pt. 15	Authorized New Tacoma to regulate transporting, storing, or selling gunpowder, giant powder, dynamite, nitroglycerine, or other combustibles without a license, as well as the carrying concealed deadly weapons, and the use of guns, pistols, firearms, firecrackers.	Gunpowder; Giant powder; Dynamite; Nitroglycerine; Other combustible; Concealed deadly weapon; Gun; Pistol; Firearm		
154	1881	Washington [Territory]	William Lair Hill, Ballinger's Annotated Codes and Statutes of Washington, Showing All Statutes in Force, Including the Session Laws of 1897, at 1956 (Vol. 2, 1897)	Prohibited exhibiting a dangerous weapon in a manner likely to cause terror. Punishable by fine up to $25.	Dangerous weapon		
155	1882	Georgia	1882-83 Gal. L. 48-49, ch. 94	Prohibited the concealed carrying of any "pistol, dirk, sword in a cane, spear, Bowie-knife, or any other kind of knives manufactured and sold	Pistol; Dirk; Sword cane; speak Bowie knife;		

No.	Year of Enactment	Jurisdiction	Citation	Description of Regulation	Subject of Regulation	Repeal Status	Judicial Review
				for the purpose of offense and defense."	Other kind of knife		
156	1882	Georgia	1882-83 Ga. L. 37, ch. 18	Imposed $25 occupational tax on dealers of pistols, revolvers, dirks, or Bowie knives.	Pistol; Revolver; Dirk; Bowie knife	Raised to $100 in 1884.	
157	1882	Iowa – City of Sioux City	S. J. Quincy, Revised Ordinances of the City of Sioux City, Iowa, at 62 (1882), Ordinances of the City of Sioux City, Iowa, § 4.	Prohibited the carrying a concealed pistol, revolver, slungshot, cross-knuckles, knuckles of lead, brass or other metal, or any Bowie knife, razor, billy, dirk, dirk knife or Bowie knife, or other dangerous weapon.	Pistol; Revolver; Slungshot; Cross-knuckles; Metal Knuckles; Bowie knife; Razor; Billy; Dirk; Other dangerous weapon		
158	1882	West Virginia	1882 W. Va. Acts 421-22; W. Va. Code, ch. 148, § 7	Prohibited the carrying of a pistol, dirk, Bowie knife, razor, slungshot, billy, metallic or other false knuckles, or any other dangerous or deadly weapon. Also prohibited selling any such weapon to a minor. Punishable by fine of $25-200 and imprisonment of 1-12 months.	Pistol; Dirk; Bowie knife; Razor; Slungshot; Billy; Metal knuckles; Other dangerous or deadly weapon		*State v. Workman*, 35 W. Va. 367 (1891) (upheld under the Second Amendment), *abrogated by New York State Rifle & Pistol Ass'n v. Bruen*, 142

No.	Year of Enactment	Jurisdiction	Citation	Description of Regulation	Subject of Regulation	Repeal Status	Judicial Review
							S. Ct. 2111, 2153 (2022)
159	1883	Illinois – City of Danville	Revised Ordinances of the City of Danville [Illinois], at 66 (1883), Ordinances of the City of Danville. Concealed Weapons, § 22.	Prohibited the carrying of a concealed pistol, revolver, derringer, Bowie knife, dirk, slungshot, metallic knuckles, or a razor, as a weapon, or any other deadly weapon. Also prohibited displaying the weapon in a threatening or boisterous manner. Punishable by fine of $1-100 and forfeiting the weapon, if ordered by the magistrate.	Pistol; Revolver; Derringer; Bowie knife; Dirk; Slungshot; Metallic knuckles; Razor; Other deadly weapon		
160	1883	Kansas	1883 Kan. Sess. Laws 159, An Act to Prevent Selling, Trading Or Giving Deadly Weapons or Toy Pistols to Minors, and to Provide Punishment Therefor, §§ 1-2	Prohibited the selling, trading, giving, or loaning of a pistol, revolver, or toy pistol, dirk, Bowie knife, brass knuckles, slungshot, or other dangerous weapons to any minor, or to any person of notoriously unsound mind. Also prohibited the possession of such weapons by any minor. Punishable by fine of $5-100. Also prohibited a minor from possessing a pistol, revolver, toy pistol by which cartridges may be exploded, dirk, Bowie knife, brass knuckles, slungshot, or other dangerous weapon. Punishable by fine of $1-10.	Pistol; Revolver; Toy pistol; Dirk; Bowie knife; Brass knuckles; Slungshot; Other dangerous weapons		

No.	Year of Enactment	Jurisdiction	Citation	Description of Regulation	Subject of Regulation	Repeal Status	Judicial Review
161	1883	Missouri	1883 Mo. Laws 76, An Act to Amend Section 1274, Article 2, Chapter 24 of the Revised Statutes of Missouri, Entitled "Of Crimes And Criminal Procedure" § 1274	Prohibited the carrying of a concealed fire arms, Bowie knife, dirk, dagger, slungshot, or other deadly weapon to a church, school, election site, or other public setting or carrying in a threatening manner or while intoxicated. Punishable by fine of $25-200 and/or by imprisonment up to 6 months.	Fire arms; Bowie knife; Dirk; Dagger; Slungshot; Other deadly weapon		
162	1883	Washington – City of Snohomish [Territory]	1883 Wash. Sess. Laws 302, An Act to Incorporate the City of Snohomish, ch. 6, § 29, pt. 15	Authorized City of Snohomish to regulate and prohibit carrying concealed deadly weapons and to prohibit using guns, pistols, firearms, firecrackers, bombs, and explosives.	Deadly weapon; Gun; Pistol; Firearm; Firecracker; Bomb		
163	1883	Wisconsin – City of Oshkosh	1883 Wis. Sess. Laws 713, An Act to Revise, consolidate And Amend The Charter Of The City Of Oshkosh, The Act Incorporating The City, And The Several Acts Amendatory Thereof, ch. 6, § 3, pt. 56	Prohibited the carrying of a concealed pistol or colt, or slungshot, or cross knuckles or knuckles of lead, brass or other metal or Bowie knife, dirk knife, or dirk or dagger, or any other dangerous or deadly weapon. Punishable by confiscation of the weapon.	Pistol; Colt; Slungshot; Cross knuckles; Knuckles of lead; Metal knuckles; Bowie knife; Dirk; Dagger; Any other dangerous or deadly weapon		

No.	Year of Enactment	Jurisdiction	Citation	Description of Regulation	Subject of Regulation	Repeal Status	Judicial Review
164	1884	Georgia	1884-85 Ga. L. 23, ch. 52	Imposed $100 occupational tax on dealers of pistols, revolvers, dirks, or Bowie knives.	Pistol; Revolver; Dirk; Bowie knife	Reduced to $25 in 1888.	
165	1884	Maine	The Revised Statutes of the State of Maine, Passed August 29, 1883, and Taking Effect January 1, 1884, at 928, (1884), Prevention of Crimes, § 10	Prohibited the carrying of a dirk, dagger, sword, pistol, or other offensive and dangerous weapon without reasonable cause to fear an assault.	Dirk; Dagger; Sword; Pistol; Other offensive and dangerous weapon		
166	1884	Minnesota – City of Saint Paul	W. P. Murray, The Municipal Code of Saint Paul: Comprising the Laws of the State of Minnesota Relating to the City of Saint Paul, and the Ordinances of the Common Council; Revised to December 1, 1884, at 289 (1884), Concealed Weapons – License, § 1	Prohibited the carrying of a concealed pistol or pistols, dirk, dagger, sword, slungshot, cross-knuckles, or knuckles of lead, brass or other metal, Bowie knife, dirk knife or razor, or any other dangerous or deadly weapon. Punishable by seizure of the weapon.	Pistol; Dirk; Dagger; Sword; Slungshot; Cross-knuckles; Metal knuckles; Bowie knife; Dirk; Razor; Other dangerous or deadly weapon		
167	1884	Tennessee	Tenn. Pub. Acts (1879), ch. 186, as codified in Tenn. Code (1884)	Prohibited the carrying, "publicly or privately," of any dirk, razor, sword cane, loaded cane, slungshot, brass knuckles, Spanish stiletto, belt or pocket pistol, revolver, or any kind of pistol.	Dirk; Razor; Sword cane; Loaded cane; Slungshot; Metal knuckles;		

No.	Year of Enactment	Jurisdiction	Citation	Description of Regulation	Subject of Regulation	Repeal Status	Judicial Review
					Spanish stiletto; Pistol; Revolver		
168	1884	Vermont	1884 Vt. Acts & Resolves 74, An Act Relating To Traps, § 1	Prohibited the setting of any spring gun trap. Punishable by a fine of $50-500 and liability for twice the amount of any damage resulting from the trap.	Spring gun		
169	1884	Wyoming [Territory]	1884 Wyo. Sess. Laws, ch. 67, § 1, as codified in Wyo. Rev. Stat., Crimes (1887): Exhibiting deadly weapon in angry manner. § 983	Prohibited exhibiting in a threatening manner a fire-arm, Bowie knife, dirk, dagger, slungshot or other deadly weapon. Punishable by fine of $10-100 or imprisonment up to 6 months.	Pistol; Bowie knife; Dirk; Dagger; Slungshot; Other deadly weapon		
170	1885	Montana [Territory]	1885 Mont. Laws 74, Deadly Weapons, An Act to Amend § 62 of Chapter IV of the Fourth Division of the Revised Statutes, § 62-63	Prohibited possessing, carrying, or purchasing a dirk, dirk-knife, sword, sword cane, pistol, gun, or other deadly weapon, and from using the weapon in a threatening manner or in a fight. Punishable by fine of $10-100 and/or imprisonment for 1-3 months.	Dirk; Sword; Sword cane; Pistol; Gun; Other deadly weapon		
171	1885	New York	George R. Donnan, Annotated Code of Criminal Procedure and Penal Code of the State of New York as Amended 1882-85, at 172 (1885), Carrying, Using, Etc., Certain Weapons, § 410	Prohibited using or attempting to use, carrying, concealing, or possessing a slungshot, billy, sandclub or metal knuckles, or a dagger, dirk or dangerous knife. Punishable as a felony, and as a misdemeanor if a minor.	Slungshot; Billy; Sandclub; Metal knuckles; Dagger; Dirk;		

No.	Year of Enactment	Jurisdiction	Citation	Description of Regulation	Subject of Regulation	Repeal Status	Judicial Review
					Dangerous knife		
172	1885	New York – City of Syracuse	Charter and Ordinances of the City of Syracuse: Together with the Rules of the Common Council, the Rules and Regulations of the Police and Fire Departments, and the Civil Service Regulations, at 215 (1885), [Offenses Against the Public Peace and Quiet,] § 7	Prohibited the carrying or using with the intent to do bodily harm a dirk, Bowie knife, sword or spear cane, pistol, revolver, slungshot, jimmy, brass knuckles, or other deadly or unlawful weapon. Punishable by a fine of $25-100 and/or imprisonment for 30 days to 3 months.	Dirk; Bowie knife; Sword; Spear cane; Pistol; Revolver; Slungshot; Jimmy; Metal knuckles; Other deadly or unlawful weapon		
173	1885	Oregon	1885 Or. Laws 33, An Act to Prevent Persons from Carrying Concealed Weapons and to Provide for the Punishment of the Same, §§ 1-2	Prohibited the concealed carrying of any revolver, pistol, or other firearm, or any knife (other than an "ordinary pocket knife"), or any dirk, dagger, slungshot, metal knuckles, or any instrument that could cause injury. Punishable by a fine of $10-200 or imprisonment for 5-100 days.	Revolver; Pistol; Other firearm; Knife; Dirk; Dagger; Slungshot; Metal knuckles		
174	1886	Colorado – City of Denver	Isham White, The Laws and Ordinances of the City of Denver, Colorado, at 369, § 10 (1886)	Prohibited the carrying of any slungshot, colt, or metal knuckles while engaged in any breach of the peace. Punishable by a fine of $25-300.	Slungshot; Colt; Metal knuckles		
175	1886	Georgia	1886 Ga. L. 17, ch. 54	Imposed $100 occupational tax on dealers of pistols, revolvers,	Pistol; Revolver; Dirk;		

No.	Year of Enactment	Jurisdiction	Citation	Description of Regulation	Subject of Regulation	Repeal Status	Judicial Review
				dirks, Bowie knives, and "pistol or revolver cartridges."	Bowie knife; Pistol or revolver cartridges		
176	1886	Maryland – County of Calvert	1886 Md. Laws 315, An Act to Prevent the Carrying of Guns, Pistols, Dirk-knives, Razors, Billies or Bludgeons by any Person in Calvert County, on the Days of Election in said County, Within One Mile of the Polls § 1	Prohibited the carrying of a gun, pistol, dirk, dirk-knife, razor, billy or bludgeon on an election day. Punishable by a fine of $10-50.	Gun; Pistol; Dirk; Razor; Billy; Bludgeon		
177	1886	Maryland – County of Calvert	John Prentiss Poe, The Maryland Code. Public Local Laws, Adopted by the General Assembly of Maryland March 14, 1888. Including also the Acts of the Session of 1888 Incorporated Therein, and Prefaced with the Constitution of the State, at 468-69 (Vol. 1, 1888), Concealed Weapons, § 30	Prohibited the carrying of a concealed pistol, dirk knife, Bowie knife, slungshot, billy, sandclub, metal knuckles, razor, or any other dangerous or deadly weapon. Punishable by fine of up to $500 or imprisonment of up to 6 months.	Pistol; Dirk; Bowie knife; Slungshot; Billy; Sandclub; Metal knuckles; Razor; Other dangerous or deadly weapon		
178	1886	Maryland	1886 Md. Laws 315, An Act to Prevent the Carrying of Guns, Pistols, Dirk-knives, Razors, Billies or Bludgeons by any Person in Calvert County, on the Days of	Prohibited the carrying of a gun, pistol, dirk, dirk-knife, razor, billy or bludgeon on an election day within 300 yards of the polls. Punishable by fine of $10-50.	Gun; Pistol; Dirk; Razo; Billy; Bludgeon		

No.	Year of Enactment	Jurisdiction	Citation	Description of Regulation	Subject of Regulation	Repeal Status	Judicial Review
			Election in said County, Within One Mile of the Polls § 1				
179	1887	Alabama	1886 Ala. L. 36, ch. 4	Imposed $300 occupational tax on dealers of pistols, pistol cartridges, Bowie knives, and dirk knives.	Pistol; Pistol cartridges; Bowie knife; Dirk		
180	1887	Iowa – City of Council Bluffs	Geoffrey Andrew Holmes, Compiled Ordinances of the City of Council Bluffs, and Containing the Statutes Applicable to Cities of the First-Class, Organized under the Laws of Iowa, at 206-07 (1887), Carrying Concealed Weapons Prohibited, § 105	Prohibited the carrying of a concealed pistol or firearms, slungshot, brass knuckles, or knuckles of lead, brass or other metal or material , or any sandbag, air guns of any description, dagger, Bowie knife, or instrument for cutting, stabbing or striking, or other dangerous or deadly weapon, instrument or device.	Pistol; Slungshot; Metal knuckles; Sandbag; Air guns; Dagger; Bowie knife; Instrument for cutting; stabbing or striking; Other dangerous or deadly weapon		
181	1887	Kansas – City of Independence	O. P. Ergenbright, Revised Ordinances of the City of Independence, Kansas: Together with the Amended Laws Governing Cities of the Second Class and Standing Rules of the City Council, at 162 (1887), Weapons, § 27	Prohibited using a pistol or other weapon in a hostile or threatening manner. Also prohibited carrying a concealed pistol, dirk, Bowie knife, revolver, slungshot, billy, brass, lead, or iron knuckles, or any deadly weapon. Punishable by fine of $5-100.	Pistol; Dirk; Bowie knife; Revolver; Slungshot; Billy; Metal knuckles; Any deadly weapon		

No.	Year of Enactment	Jurisdiction	Citation	Description of Regulation	Subject of Regulation	Repeal Status	Judicial Review
182	1887	Michigan	1887 Mich. Pub. Acts 144, An Act to Prevent The Carrying Of Concealed Weapons, And To Provide Punishment Therefore, § 1	Prohibited the carrying of a concealed dirk, dagger, sword, pistol, air gun, stiletto, metallic knuckles, pocket-billy, sandbag, skull cracker, slungshot, razor or other offensive and dangerous weapon or instrument.	Dirk; Dagger; Sword; Pistol; Air gun; Stiletto; Metallic knuckles; Billy; Sand bag; Skull cracker; Slungshot; Razor; Other offensive and dangerous weapon or instrument		
183	1887	Montana [Territory]	1887 Mont. Laws 549, Criminal Laws, § 174	Prohibited the carrying of a any pistol, gun, knife, dirk-knife, bludgeon, or other offensive weapon with the intent to assault a person. Punishable by fine up to $100 or imprisonment up to 3 months.	Pistol; Knife; Dirk; Bludgeon; Other offensive weapon		
184	1887	New Mexico [Territory]	An Act to Prohibit the Unlawful Carrying and Use of Deadly Weapons, Feb. 18, 1887, reprinted in Acts of the Legislative Assembly of the Territory of New Mexico, Twenty-Seventh Session 55, 58 (1887)	Defined "deadly weapons" as including pistols, whether the same be a revolved, repeater, derringer, or any kind or class of pistol or gun; any and all kinds of daggers, Bowie knives, poniards, butcher knives, dirk knives, and all such weapons with which dangerous cuts can	Pistol; Dagger; Bowie Knife; Poniard; Butcher Knife; Dirk		

No.	Year of Enactment	Jurisdiction	Citation	Description of Regulation	Subject of Regulation	Repeal Status	Judicial Review
				be given, or with which dangerous thrusts can be inflicted, including sword canes, and any kind of sharp pointed canes; as also slungshots, bludgeons or any other deadly weapons.			
185	1887	Virginia	The Code of Virginia: With the Declaration of Independence and the Constitution of the United States; and the Constitution of Virginia, at 897 (1887), Offences Against the Peace, § 3780	Prohibited the carrying of a concealed pistol, dirk, Bowie knife, razor, slungshot, or any weapon of the like kind. Punishable by fine of $20-100 and forfeiture of the weapon.	Pistol; Dirk; Bowie knife; Razor; Slungshot; Any weapon of the like kind		
186	1888	Maryland – County of Kent	John Prentiss Poe, The Maryland Code : Public Local Laws, Adopted by the General Assembly of Maryland March 14, 1888. Including also the Public Local Acts of the Session of 1888 incorporated therein, at 1457 (Vol. 2, 1888), Election Districts–Fences, § 99	Prohibited carrying, on days of an election, any gun, pistol, dirk, dirk-knife, razor, billy or bludgeon. Punishable by a fine of $5-20.	Gun; Pistol; Dirk; Razor; Billy; Bludgeon		
187	1888	Florida	Fla. Act of Aug. 6, 1888, ch. 1637, subch. 7, § 10, as codified in Fla. Rev. State., tit. 2, pt. 5 (1892)	Prohibited the concealed carrying of slungshot, metallic knuckles, billies, firearms, or other dangerous weapons if arrested for committing a criminal offense or disturbance of the peace. Punishable by	Slungshot; Metallic knuckles; Billy; Firearms; Other		

No.	Year of Enactment	Jurisdiction	Citation	Description of Regulation	Subject of Regulation	Repeal Status	Judicial Review
				imprisonment up to 1 year and a fine up to $50.	dangerous weapon		
188	1888	Georgia	1888 Ga. L. 22, ch. 123	Imposed $25 occupational tax on dealers of pistols, revolvers, dirks, or Bowie knives.	Pistol; Revolver; Dirk; Bowie knife; Pistol or revolver cartridges	Raised to $100 in 1890.	
189	1888	Maryland – City of Baltimore	John Prentiss Poe, The Maryland Code. Public Local Laws, Adopted by the General Assembly of Maryland March 14, 1888. Including also the Public Local Acts of the Session of 1888 Incorporated Therein, at 522-23 (Vol. 1, 1888), City of Baltimore, § 742	Prohibited the carrying of a pistol, dirk knife, Bowie knife, slingshot, billy, brass, iron or any other metal knuckles, razor, or any other deadly weapon if arrested for being drunk and disorderly. Punishable by fine of $5-25, and confiscation of the weapon.	Pistol; Dirk; Bowie knife; Slingshot; Billy; Metal knuckles; Razor; Other deadly weapon		
190	1888	Minnesota	George Brooks Young. General Statutes of the State of Minnesota in Force January 1, 1889, at 1006 (Vol. 2, 1888), Making, Selling, etc., Dangerous Weapons, §§ 333-34	Prohibited manufacturing, selling, giving, or disposing of a slungshot, sandclub, or metal knuckles, or selling or giving a pistol or firearm to a minor without magistrate consent. Also prohibited carrying a concealed slungshot, sandclub, or metal knuckles, or a dagger, dirk, knife, pistol or other fire-arm, or any dangerous weapon.	Slungshot; Sandclub; Metal knuckles; Dagger; Dirk; Knife; Pistol; Any dangerous weapon		
191	1888	Utah – City of Salt Lake City	Dangerous and Concealed Weapon, Feb. 14, 1888,	Prohibited carrying a slingshot or any concealed deadly weapon	Slingshot; Deadly weapon		

No.	Year of Enactment	Jurisdiction	Citation	Description of Regulation	Subject of Regulation	Repeal Status	Judicial Review
		[Territory]	reprinted in The Revised Ordinances Of Salt Lake City, Utah 283 (1893) (Salt Lake City, Utah). § 14	without permission of the mayor. Punishable by fine up to $50.			